

**NODIA**

# **SOCIAL SCIENCE**

**10<sup>th</sup>  
CBSE  
2025**

**CHAPTERWISE QUESTION BANK**

20 Years (2024–2005) Solved Exam Papers



CBSE 2025

# SOCIAL SCIENCE

Including Case Based Questions

CLASS 10

**Chapter-wise Question Bank**  
Based on Previous 20 Years 63 Papers

NODIA AND COMPANY

CBSE Social Science Class 10 Question Bank  
Edition July2024  
Copyright © By Nodia and Company

Information contained in this book has been obtained by author, from sources believes to be reliable. However, neither Nodia and Company nor its author guarantee the accuracy or completeness of any information herein, and Nodia and Company nor its author shall be responsible for any error, omissions, or damages arising out of use of this information. This book is published with the understanding that Nodia and Company and its author are supplying information but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services.

ISBN : 978-9384843625  
NODIA AND COMPANY

**MRP Rs 790.00**

Now Available at  
**amazon.com®**

This book is available on amazon and flipkart only and not available in market.

Published by :  
NODIA AND COMPANY  
125, Sector 6, Vidyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039  
Phone :+91 9024037387

# CONTENTS

## History

CHAP 1.	The Rise of Nationalism In Europe	5-46
CHAP 2.	Nationalism In India	47-86
CHAP 3.	Making of a Global World	87-112
CHAP 4.	Print Culture and the Modern World	113-142

## Geography

CHAP 5.	Resources and Development	143-172
CHAP 6.	Forest and Wildlife Resources	173-196
CHAP 7.	Water Resources	197-230
CHAP 8.	Agriculture	231-270
CHAP 9.	Mineral and Energy Resources	271-298
CHAP 10.	Manufacturing Industries	299-336

## Political Science

CHAP 11.	Power-sharing	337-360
CHAP 12.	Federalism	361-390
CHAP 13.	Gender, Religion and Caste	391-416
CHAP 14.	Political Parties	417-442
CHAP 15.	Outcome of Democracy	443-470

## Economics

CHAP 16.	Development	471-500
CHAP 17.	Sectors of the Indian Economy	501-532
CHAP 18.	Money and Credit	533-564
CHAP 19.	Globalization and the Indian Economy	565-596

## MAP Work

CHAP 20.	Map Work	597-626
----------	----------	---------

**NODIA APP**  
From Class 1th to Class 12th

Free PDF For All Study Material

Search Play Store by NODIA

# CHAPTER 1

## THE RISE OF NATIONALISM IN EUROPE

---

### SUMMARY

1. Absolutist : A form of monarchical government centralised, militarised and repressive.
2. Utopian : A vision of society so ideal that it is unlikely or exaggerated imagination to actually exist.
3. Plebiscite : A direct vote by which all the people of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.
4. Suffrage : The right to vote.
5. Conservatism : The political belief that society should change as little as possible.
6. Feminist : A person who supports the belief that women should have the same right and opportunities as men.
7. Ideology : System of ideas that reflects a particular social and political vision.
8. Ethnic : Connected with or belonging to a nation, race or tribe that shares a cultural tradition.
9. Allegory : When an abstract idea (for instance, greed, envy, freedom, liberty) is expressed through a person or a thing. An allegorical story has two meanings, one literal and other symbolic.
10. Statue of Liberty : It has been put in Paris, the capital of France. It personified liberty as a female figure. It has the torch of Enlightenment in one hand and Charter of the Rights of Man in the other.
11. Act of Union A document signed by authorities in England and Scotland that formed United Kingdom of Great Britain in 1707.
12. Authoritarianism : Favouring or enforcing strict obedience to authority, especially that of the state at the expense of personal freedom.
13. Balance of Power : A condition in which political or military strength is divided between two countries or groups of countries.
14. Blood and Iron policy : Bismarck's policy for the unification of Germany adopted by the Prussian monarchy ignoring the Prussian Parliament.
15. Bilateral : Involving two countries came in condition of mutual support under an agreement executed.
16. Bourgeoisie : It means the middle class. It is derived from a French word meaning 'City dwellers'.
17. Buffer State : A small country located between two powerful states that helps keep peace between them.
18. Ceasefire : A temporary suspension of war/battle.
19. Movements : A group of people working together to advance their shared political or social ideas.
20. Multiracial State : A state made of people of many races. For example, before birth of nation states several states of Europe were multi-racial states.
21. Nationalism : The sense of unity felt by people who share a common history, language and culture.
22. Pact : A formal written or oral agreement between two or more countries, individuals or parties.
23. Policy of Containment : The action or policy of preventing the expansion of a hostile country or its influence.
24. Policy of Encirclement : The policy of forming a cordon of allies around a country, pursued in international politics.
25. Protectorate : A weak country under the protection and partial control of a strong country.

26. Convention : An agreement between or among states covering particular matters, especially less formal than a treaty.
27. Federation : The action of forming states into a single group with some kind of central organisation.
28. Humanism : A Renaissance cultural movement which turned away from medieval scholasticism and revived interest in ancient Greek and Roman thoughts.
29. Humanitarianism : Concerned with or seeking to promote human welfare.
30. Liberalism : The 19<sup>th</sup> century European doctrine of the middle class encouraging greater political participation and economic opportunity for members of their class.
31. Capitalism : An economic system in which a country's businesses and industry are controlled and run for profit by private owners rather than by the government.
32. National Assembly : Renamed Estates General in France after French Revolution of 1789.
33. Romanticism : A belief focused on emotions, institutions and mystical feelings to inculcate spirit of nationalism among people.
34. Andreas Rebmann : He was a German journalist and a member to Jacobin Club.
35. Carl Welcker : He was a famous politician in Frankfurt Parliament (Prussia/Germany).
36. Count Camillo de Cavour : He was most popular leader, Chief Minister of Sardinia (Italy) Piedmont.
37. Duke Metternich : He was supporter of absolute monarchy and Chancellor of Austria.
38. Ernest Renan : He was a great French philosopher, who founded essential of a nation.
39. Friedrich Wilhelm-IV : He was monarch or king of Prussia (the most powerful state of Germany).
40. Friedrich List : He was a great German economist.
41. General Von Boen : He was Chief Commander of the Prussian Army.
42. Giuseppe Garibaldi : He was a great Italian nationalist and freedom fighter.
43. Giuseppe Mazzini : He was a great Italian revolutionary, nationalist and freedom fighter. He founded two secret societies (Underground Societies) Young Italy and Young Europe.
44. Frederic Sorrieu : He was a French artist in 1848, who prepared a series of four prints visualising his dream of a world made up of democratic and social republics.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. From which of the following countries Giuseppe Garibaldi belonged to?

- (a) Austria
- (b) Italy
- (c) Greece
- (d) Spain

Ans :

OD 2024

- (b) Italy

2. Match the following and choose the correct option.

(Leader)	(Role)
A. Victor Emmanuel II	1. Chief Minister of Italy
B. Giuseppe Mazzini	2. Young Italy Movement
C. Giuseppe Garibaldi	3. Conquered the Kingdom of Sicillies
D. Count Cavour	4. Proclaimed as king of Unified Italy

- (a) A - 1, B - 4, C - 3, D - 2
- (b) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3
- (c) A - 4, B - 2, C - 3, D - 1
- (d) A - 1, B - 4, C - 2, D - 3

Ans :

OD 2023

- (c) A - 4, B - 2, C - 3, D - 1

3. Arrange the following events in chronological order and choose the correct option from the following :

- I. Treaty of Constantinople
  - II. Defeat of Napoleon
  - III. Unification of Italy
  - IV. Unification of Germany

## Options :

- (a) I, II, IV and III
  - (b) II, III, I and IV
  - (c) II, I, III and IV
  - (d) IV, I, III and II

**Ans :**

OD 2024

(c) II, I, III and IV

4. Who among the following was the founder of 'Young Europe' underground secret society in Berne?

  - (a) Giuseppe Garibaldi
  - (b) Giuseppe Mazzini
  - (c) Count Cavour
  - (d) Otto Von Bismark

Ans :

SOP 2022 Term 1

(b) Giuseppe Mazzini

5. In the above picture of sorrien's utopian vision, the saints, angle and Christ symbolise-



- (a) Equality among people
  - (b) Fraternity among nations
  - (c) Freedom of nations
  - (d) Resentment against nations

**Ans :**

OD 2020

(b) Fraternity among nations

6. **Assertion (A)** : The most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 was Balkan.

**Reason (R) :** A large part of the Balkan was under the control of Ottoman Empire.

- (a) Both, (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).
  - (b) Both, (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (A).
  - (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.
  - (d) (A) is false but (R) is true.

**Ans :**

OP 2024

(a) Both, (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A).

7. Identify the personality-

  - He was an English poet, peer and politician.
  - He organised funds and later went to fight in the war.
  - He died of fever in 1824.
  - He fought on behalf of the Greeks against the Ottoman empire.

(a) Lord Byron      (b) Napoleon  
(c) Friedrich  
(d) Metternich

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

(a) Lord Byron

8. Which of the following was the result of the Act of Union, 1707?

  - (a) Unification of Germany
  - (b) Unification of the kingdom of Great Britain
  - (c) Unification of Italy
  - (d) Unification of Vietnam

Ans :

SOP 2022 Term 1

(b) Unification of the kingdom of Great Britain

9. Arrange the following events in the correct sequence and select correct option.

  1. Frederic Sorrieu prepared a series of 4 paintings.
  2. French Revolution.
  3. Napoleon was defeated.
  4. Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed the king of united Italy.

(a) 3, 4, 1, 2  
(b) 2, 3, 1, 4  
(c) 1, 2, 3, 4  
(d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2020, SQP 2018

- (b) 2, 3, 1, 4

**10.** Which of the following aspect best signifies this image?



- (a) A map explaining the sea routes used in 18th century by Europeans  
 (b) A map celebrating the British Empire.  
 (c) A map showcasing the importance of British Empire.  
 (d) A map expressing the British ambitions of contouring the world.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (b) A map celebrating the British Empire.

**11.** Which of the following countries were involved in the Three Wars with Prussia and ended with victory and unification of Germany?  
 (a) Austria, Poland and France  
 (b) Austria, Denmark and France  
 (c) Austria, Turkey and France  
 (d) Austria, England and France

**Ans :**

SQP 2022 Term 1

- (b) Austria, Denmark and France

**12.** Complete the following table with the correct information regarding congress of Vienna.

Name of Meeting	Held in (year)	Hosted by	Main Objective
Congress of Vienna	A - ?	B - ?	To settle the lost peace in Europe

- (a) A-1834, B-Otto von Bismarck

- (b) A-1830, B-The Bourbon kings

- (c) A-1824, B-Lord Byron

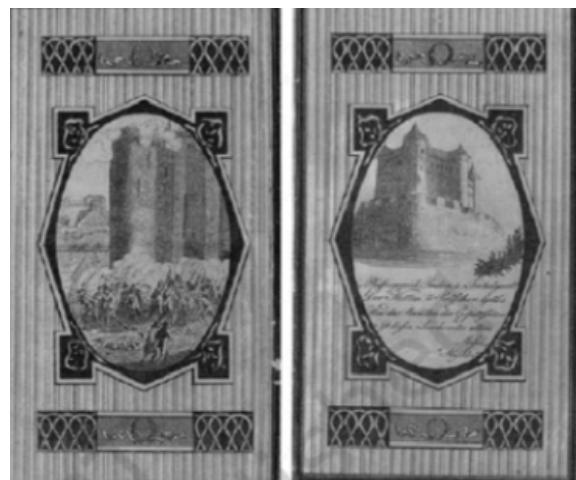
- (d) A-1815, B-Austrian chancellor duke Metternich

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (d) A -1815 B -Austrian chancellor duke Metternich.

**13.** Identify the name of the Prussian King who was pStudy the picture and answer the following question-



Who designed the cover of German almanac?

- (a) Otto von Bismarck

- (b) Andreas Rebmann

- (c) Giuseppe Mazzini

- (d) Napoleon

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (b) Andreas Rebmann

**14.** Which of the following option(s) is/are correct about Balkan nationalism?

- I. The Balkan region became part of the conflict because of the Ottoman Empire.  
 II. The region comprised of ethnic groups included Greeks, Serbs, Montenegro, etc.  
 III. British and ethnic nationalities struggled to establish their identity.

**Options:**

- (a) I and II

- (b) II and III

- (c) Only II

- (d) Only 1

**Ans :**

SQP 2022 Term 1

- (a) I & II

**15.** Assertion (A) : The growth of revolutionary nationalism in Europe sparked off a struggle for independence amongst the Greeks which began in 1821.

Reason (R): Greece was suffering under subjugation of the Ottoman Empire.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**16.** Why did the weavers in Silesia revolt against contractors in 1845? Identify the appropriate reason from the following options.

- (a) Contractors did not pay their dues
- (b) Contractors appointed few on high posts
- (c) Contractors used government policies
- (d) Contractors gave them loans on high interests

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (a) Contractors did not pay their dues

**17.** Identify the personality-

- Two female allegories of France and German.
  - They stood as personifications of the 'Republic' and 'Liberty'.
  - These allegories remind the public of the national symbol of unity and to persuade them to identify with it.
  - They were portrayed that they game the abstract idea of a nation in a concrete form.
- (a) Germania and Artistia
  - (b) Germania and Christia
  - (c) Marianne and Germania
  - (d) Marianne and Christia

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009, 2007

- (c) Marianne and Germania

**18.** Which of the following treaty recognized Greece as an independent nation?

- (a) Treaty of Sevres
- (b) Treaty of Versailles
- (c) Treaty of Lausanne
- (d) Treaty of Constantinople

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (d) Treaty of Constantinople

**19.** Study the picture and answer the following question -



Each letter dropping out of Napoleon's bag bears-

- (a) The names of the territories he lost.
- (b) The names of the territories he conquered.
- (c) The names of his soldiers.
- (d) The names of those who had these letters.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (a) The names of the territories he lost.

**20.** Which one of the following was not included in the 'Napoleonic Code' of 1804 ?

- (a) Privilege based on birth
- (b) Abolished the feudal system
- (c) Right to property
- (d) Equality before law

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) Privilege based on birth

**21.** Identify the correct statement with regard to the 'Zollverein' from the following options:

- (a) It was a coalition of Prussian states formed to manage political alliances.

- (b) Its aim was to bind the Prussia politically into an association.
- (c) It was a Custom Union at the initiative of Prussia.
- (d) It helped to awaken and raise national sentiment in Europe.

**Ans :** SQP 2022 Term 1

- (c) It was a Custom Union at the initiative of Prussia.

- 22.** Assertion (A) : In Britain the formation of the nation-state was not the result of a sudden upheaval or revolution.

Reason (R) : The first clear expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :** OD 2006

- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A

- 23.** Complete the following table with the correct information-

Column A	Column B
A - ?	Giuseppe Mazzine
King of united Italy in 1861	B - ?

- (a) A-Austrian chancellor, B-Lord Byron
- (b) A-Australian chancellor, B-Napoleon
- (c) A-President of Prussia, B-Otto von Bismarck
- (d) A-Italian Politician,B-Emmanuel - II.

**Ans :** SQP 2020, Delhi 2014

- (d) A-Italian Politician,B-Emmanuel - II.

- 24.** Identify the ideology under which people demanded freedom of markets in early-nineteenth-century Europe.

- (a) Romanticism
- (b) Liberalism
- (c) Socialism

- (d) Rationalism

**Ans :**

SQP 2022 Term 1

- (b) Liberalism

- 25.** Arrange the following events in the correct sequence and select correct option.

- 1. Fall of Napoleon.
  - 2. Napoleon invades Italy.
  - 3. The defeat of Napoleon by Britain, Russia.
  - 4. Napoleon lost the battle of Leipzig.
- (a) 3, 4, 1, 2
  - (b) 2, 4, 3, 1
  - (c) 2, 4, 1, 3
  - (d) 2, 1, 3, 4

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (c) 2, 4, 1, 3

- 26.** Complete the following table with correct information regarding Acts of Union-

Name of Act	Year	Leads to the creation of	Passed by the parliament of
Acts of Union	1707	A - ?	B - ?

- (a) A-Unification of Germany, B-England and Italy
- (b) A-Unification of Italy., B-Scotland and Germany
- (c) A-The Act of Union, B-England and Scotland
- (d) A-Vienna Peace Settlement, B-Scotland and Italy

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (c) A -United kingdom of Great Britain., B -England and Scotland.

- 27.** roclaimed German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles.

- (a) William I
- (b) William II
- (c) Henry VII
- (d) Louis IV

**Ans :**

SQP 2022 Term 1

- (a) William I

- 28.** Which among the following best signifies the idea of liberal nationalism of nineteenth century Europe ?  
 (a) Emphasis on social justice  
 (b) State planned socio-economic system  
 (c) Freedom for individual and equality before law  
 (d) Supremacy of State oriented nationalism.

**Ans :** OD 2020

(d) Supremacy of State oriented nationalism.

- 29.** Assertion (A) : Serfdom and bonded labour were abolished in Habsburg dominion and Russia.

Reason (R): Monarchs had realised that revolution could be resisted only by granting concessions to liberal nationalist rebels.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
 (c) A is true but R is false.  
 (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :** Delhi 2011, 2009

(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

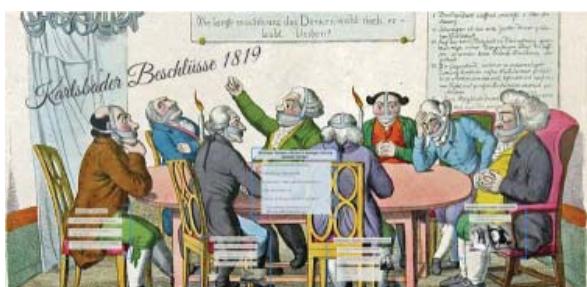
- 30.** Which of the following revolutions is called as the first expression of nationalism?

- (a) French Revolution  
 (b) Russian Revolution  
 (c) Glorious Revolution  
 (d) The Revolution of the liberals

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

(a) French Revolution

- 31.** Consider these statements about the Image given below



- 1.** Title of this caricature is “The Club of Thinkers”.

- 2.** The plaque on the left bears the inscription: ‘The most important question of today’s meeting: How long will thinking be allowed to us?’

- 3.** This was a caricature of meeting called by liberals.

- 4.** This caricature was created in 1820. Which of the above statement(s) is/are correct?

- (a) A. 1 only  
 (b) 2 only  
 (c) Both 1 and 2  
 (d) 1 , 2 and 4

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (d) 1 , 2 and 4

- 32.** “When France sneezes, the rest of Europe catches cold”. Who among the following said this popular line?

- (a) Giuseppe Mazzini  
 (b) Matternich  
 (c) Otto Von Bismarck  
 (d) Guiseppe Garibaldi

**Ans :**

OD 2020, SQP 2014

- (b) Matternich

- 33.** Which of the following is not a part of the ‘United Kingdom of Great Britain’ ?

- (a) England  
 (b) Poland  
 (c) Scotland  
 (d) Ireland

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (d) Ireland

- 34.** Identify the correct statement with regard to ‘The Act of Union -1707’ from the following options.

- (a) The British monarchy surrendered the power to English Parliament.  
 (b) The British parliament seized power from Ireland.  
 (c) The formation of the ‘United Kingdom of Great Britain’.  
 (d) The British nation was formed as a result of a war with Scotland and Wales.

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (c) The formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain'.

**35.** Who among the following was proclaimed as the 'German Emperor' in 1871 ?

- (a) William I
- (b) Otto von Bismarck
- (c) Kaiser William
- (d) Count Cavour

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) William I

**36.** Match the column A and column B and choose the correct option.

Column A		Column B	
A	Giuseppe Mazzini	1.	Ruler of an Italian princely house
B	King Victor Emmanuel II	2.	Revolutionary who tried to unify Italy
C	Chief Minister Cavour	3.	led an army of volunteers to Rome to fight the last obstacle to the unification of Italy, the Papal States where a French garrison was stationed.
D	Giuseppe Garibaldi	4.	Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France he succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859

- (a) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4
- (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 2, D - 3
- (c) A - 3, B - 2, C - 1, D - 4
- (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019, 2017

- (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3

**37.** Assertion (A) : The issue of extending political rights to women was a controversial one within the liberal movement.

Reason (R) : Women were considered

more superior and independent of men by the society, because of their enthusiastic performance in liberal movement.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (c) A is true but R is false.

**38.** Why was Otto von Bismarck considered as the chief architect of German unification ? Choose the correct option from the following:

- (a) He allieded with Italy and France for the unification process.
- (b) He granted autonomy to Prussia with Conservatives.
- (c) He carried the nation-building process with the army and the bureaucracy.
- (d) He carried Liberal list and Romantic scholars for cultural movement.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (b) He granted autonomy to Prussia with Conservatives.

**39.** Choose the correct statement about the image given below.



- (a) This image was painted by artist Lorenz Clasen.
- (b) This image was painted by artist Julius Hübler
- (c) Germania guarding the Rhine was the title of this painting.
- (d) Philip Veit, was the artist who have made this painting.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (b) This image was painted by artist Julius Hübner
- 40.** Who among the following leaders formed a secret society called 'Young Italy' ?
- Victor Emmanuel II
  - Giuseppe Mazzini
  - Count Cavour
  - Giuseppe Garibaldi

Ans :

Comp 2020

(b) Giuseppe Mazzini

- 41.** Arrange the following events related to the formation of nation-state of Britain in chronological order :

- Act of Union between England and Scotland.
  - English Parliament seized power from Monarchy.
  - Ireland was forcibly incorporated into the United Kingdom.
  - Catholic revolt against British dominance.
- Options :
- III – I – II – IV
  - I – II – III – IV
  - IV – I – II – III
  - II – I – IV – III

Ans :

Comp 2020

(d) II – I – IV – III

- 42.** Identify the personality-

- He was a French philosopher.
  - He insisted on social capital.
  - According to him, nations are not formed by common language, race and religion.
  - According to him liberty would be lost if there was only one law and only one master.
- Renan
  - Atto Von Bismarck
  - Carl Weker
  - Carbonari

Ans :

OD 2014

(d) Carbonari

- 43.** Which of the following was NOT visualised by Frederic Sorrieu in his first print of series

of four prints made up of 'Democratic and social republic'?

- The people of America and Europe men and women of all ages.
- Social classes marching on a long train
- Offering homage to the statue of unity.
- None of the above

Ans :

Delhi 2018, OD 2012

(c) Offering homage to the statue of unity

- 44.** The postage stamp shows the female allegory - Marianne. Which country does she represents?



- France
- Germany
- Britain
- Italy

Ans :

SQP 2016

(a) France

- 45.** Which one of the following statements is true about nation-states?

- Citizens share a common sense of shared identity or history.
- Nation-state is a state ruled by one absolute ruler.
- Commonness is forged through linguistic factor only
- Nation-states are directly ruled by the people and based on heterogenization of society.

Ans :

Foreign 2010

- Citizens share a common sense of shared identity or history.

**46.** Assertion (A) : King Victor Emmanuel II tried to unify the Italian states through war. Reason (R) : In the eyes of the ruling elites of this region, a unified Italy offered them the possibility of economic development and political dominance.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :** OD 2005

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A

**47.** Choose the correct option from column A and column B -

Column A		Column B	
A.	Broken chains	1.	Symbol of the German empire – strength
B.	Breastplate with eagle	2.	Readiness to fight
C.	Sword	3.	Being freed
D.	Rays of the rising sun	4.	Beginning of a new era

- (a) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4
- (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 2, D - 3
- (c) A - 3, B - 1, C - 2, D - 4
- (d) A - 2, B - 3, C - 4, D - 1

**Ans :** Comp 2014

- (c) A - 3, B - 1, C - 2, D - 4

**48.** Select the correct definition to define the term 'Plebiscite'.

- (a) Plebiscite is a direct vote by which only the female members of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.
- (b) Plebiscite is a direct vote by the male members of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.
- (c) Plebiscite is a direct vote by only a chosen few from the total population of a particular region to accept or reject a proposal.

- (d) Plebiscite is a direct vote by which all the citizens of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.

**Ans :**

SOP 2017

- (d) Plebiscite

**49.** Identify the class

- They owned states in the countryside and also town houses.
  - They spoke French for purposes of diplomacy and in high society.
  - Their families were often connected by ties of marriage.
- (a) Liberals middle class
  - (b) Aristocrats
  - (c) 3rd Estate
  - (d) Nationalists

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (b) Aristocrats

**50.** Which among the following best signifies the idea of liberal nationalism of nineteenth century Europe?

- (a) Emphasis on social justice
- (b) State planned socio economic system
- (c) Freedom for individual and equality before law
- (d) Supremacy of state oriented nationalism

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (c) Freedom for individual and equality before law

**51.** Arrange the following events in the correct sequence and select correct option.

1. Unification of Germany.
  2. Acts of Union.
  3. Unification of Italy.
  4. Vienna Peace Settlement.
- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4
  - (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
  - (c) 2, 4, 3, 1
  - (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

- (c) 2, 4, 3, 1

**52.** Which of the following was not the objective of Treaty of Vienna 1815 ?

- (a) The Bourbon dynasty was restored to power.  
 (b) France lost the territories it had annexed under Napoleon.  
 (c) A series of states were set up on the boundaries of France to prevent French expansion in future.  
 (d) The main intention was to restore the liberal democratic order that had been overthrown by Napoleon.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (d) The main intention was to restore the liberal democratic order that had been overthrown by Napoleon

53. Who is shown in this picture sitting on knees?



- (a) Giuseppe Mazzini  
 (b) Giuseppe Garibaldi  
 (c) Victor Emmanuel II  
 (d) Cavour

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010, SQP 2008

- (b) Giuseppe Garibaldi

54. Match column A and column B and choose the correct option.

Column A	Column B
A. Absolutist	1. A vision of society
B. Utopian	2. A form of government
C. Plebiscite	3. A system of direct vote
D. Suffrage	4. A system of holding election

- (a) A - 2, B - 3, C - 1, D - 4  
 (b) A - 4, B - 3, C - 2, D - 1  
 (c) A - 3, B - 1, C - 2, D - 4  
 (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4

55. What were the consequences of the July revolution of 1830 ?

- (a) A constitutional monarchy with Louis Philippe at its head was installed in France  
 (b) Uprising in Brussels took place which led to Belgium breaking away from the United Kingdom of the Netherlands  
 (c) Both a and b  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (c) Both a and b

56. Identify the group of people who had -

- Commitment to oppose monarchical forms that had been established after the Vienna Congress
  - Willingness to fight for liberty and freedom.
  - They saw the creation of nation-states as a necessary part of this struggle for freedom.
- (a) Conservatives  
 (b) Liberal nationalist  
 (c) Revolutionaries  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (c) Revolutionaries

57. Which among the following was the main reasons for the weavers to revolt against contractors in Silesia, in 1845?

- (a) Contractors reduced their payments drastically.  
 (b) They stopped the supply of the raw material to them.  
 (c) They refuse to place orders for finished textiles.  
 (d) It was the wave of revolution.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2015

- (a) Contractors reduced their payments drastically
- 58.** Select the name of painter in following image?



- (a) Napoleon  
 (b) Hübner  
 (c) Delacroix  
 (d) Lorenz Clasen

Ans :

SQP 2011

- (c) Delacroix

- 59.** Consider the following statements -
- During 1789 paintings of females appeared as symbols of liberty.
  - Female figure in France was named as Marianne.
  - Germania was depicted by Kaiser William I.
  - The idea behind Marianne was to represent the French nation as people's nation.

Which of the above statement(s) is/are correct?

- (a) 1, 2 and 3  
 (b) 2 and 3  
 (c) 1, 2 and 4  
 (d) 1 and 4

Ans :

Foreign 2010

- (c) 1, 2 and 4

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 60.** Choose the incorrect matched option from column A and B

	Column A	Column B
(a)	Frederic Sorrieu	A british artist
(b)	Wolfe Tone	Struggled for Ireland
(c)	Lord Byron	An english poet
(d)	Karol Karpinski	A polish music composer

Ans :

OD 2007

- (a) Frederic Sorrieu - A british artist

- 61.** What happened to Poland at the end of 18th century. Select the correct option?

- (a) Poland achieved independence at the end of the 18th century.  
 (b) Poland came totally under the control of Russia and became part of Russia.  
 (c) Poland became the part of East Germany.  
 (d) Poland was partitioned at the end of the 18th century by three Great Powers: Russia, Prussia and Austria.

Ans :

SQP 2011

- (d) Poland was partitioned at the end of the 18th century by three Great Powers: Russia, Prussia and Austria

- 62.** Identify the event-

- The first clear expression of nationalism in France.
  - The transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizen.
  - A new French Flag, the tricolour was chosen to replace the former royal standards
  - The liberation of the people of Europe from despotism.
- (a) Unification of Germany  
 (b) Greek struggle for independence  
 (c) French Revolution 1789  
 (d) Revolutions in Europe

Ans :

Foreign 2009

- (c) French Revolution 1789.

- 63.** Which one of the following statement is false regarding the Act of Union 1707?

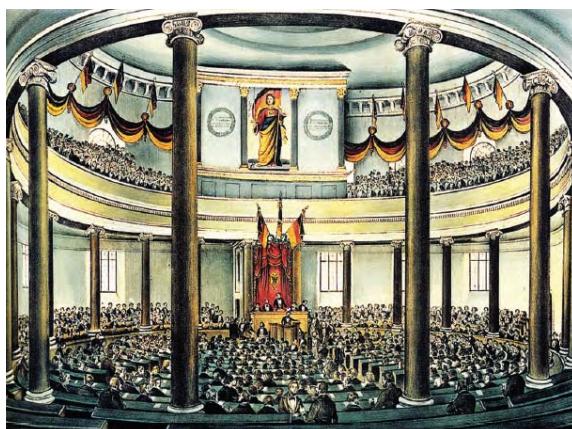
- (a) It was an agreement between England and Scotland
- (b) It was an agreement between England and Ireland
- (c) It resulted in the formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain'
- (d) It gave England control over Scotland

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (b) It was an agreement between England and Ireland

- 64.** Which of the following aspect best signifies this image?



- (a) Round table conference at London
- (b) Constituent Assembly of India
- (c) The Frankfurt Parliament in the church of St. Paul
- (d) The Hall of Mirrors of Versailles

**Ans :**

OD 2019, 2012

- (c) The Frankfurt Parliament in the church of St. Paul

- 65.** Which of the following is the correct definition of Conservatism?

- (a) A direct vote by which all the people of region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.
- (b) A government that has no restraints on the power exercised.
- (c) A political philosophy that stressed the importance of tradition, established customs and institutions and preferred gradual development to quick change.
- (d) It was a political association who founded a women's journal.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (c) A political philosophy that stressed the importance of tradition, established customs and institutions and preferred gradual development to quick change.

- 66.** Arrange the following events of world history in increasing order of their date of occurrence

1. Unification of Italy
  2. Vienna Peace Settlement
  3. Napoleon wars begin
  4. Unification of Germany
- (a) 3, 2, 1, 4
  - (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
  - (c) 2, 4, 3, 1
  - (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (a) 3, 2, 1, 4

- 67.** Which one of the following was not implemented under the Treaty of Vienna of 1815?

- (a) Restoration of Bourbon dynasty
- (b) Setting up series of states on the boundaries of France
- (c) Restoration of monarchies
- (d) Diluting the German confederation of 39 states

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (d) Diluting the German confederation of 39 states

- 68.** Identify the major aspect that helped in the formation of a nation-state in Britain.

- (a) In 1688, the monarch of Britain fought war with English Parliament.
- (b) The Parliament through a bloodless revolution seized power from the monarchy.
- (c) The British nation was formed as a result of a war with Ireland and Wales.
- (d) The formation of a nation-state in Britain was the result of many revolts.

**Ans :**

SQP 2022 Term 1

- (b) The Parliament through a bloodless revolution seized power from the monarchy.

- 69.** ‘Nationalism’, which emerged as a force in the late 19th century, means
- strong devotion for one’s own country and its history and culture.
  - strong devotion for one’s own country without appreciation for other nations.
  - strong love for one’s own country and hatred for others.
  - equally strong devotion for all the countries of the world.

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- strong devotion for one’s own country and its history and culture

- 70.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspects best suits the ‘sword’ in the image?

- Heroism
- Symbol of Strength
- Readiness to Fight
- Symbol of freedom

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

- Readiness to Fight

- 71.** Which of the following statements about the ‘French Revolution’ are correct?

- After the end of the French Revolution it was proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.
- France will have a constitutional monarchy and the new republic will be headed by a member of the royal family.
- A centralised administrative system will be put in place to formulate uniform laws

for all citizens.

- (2) and (3)
- (2) and (4)
- (1) and (3)
- (3) and (4)

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018, SQP 2011

- (1) and (3)

- 72.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows.



Who among the following has painted this image of Germania?

- Nathaniel Currier
- Lorenz Clasen
- Edward Bailey
- Richard Saltonstall Greenough

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- Lorenz Clasen

- 73.** With reference to the cause of Silesian Weavers consider the following statements--

- The cause of the silesian weavers uprising was the contractors cheating on the weavers.
- The contractors who supplied the weavers raw materials and gave order for finished materials reduced the payments of the weavers.

Which one of the above statement(s) is/are correct?

- 1 only
- 2 only
- Both 1 and 2
- Neither 1 nor 2

Ans :

Comp 2007

- (c) Both 1 and 2

**74.** Match the columns and choose correct option.

Column -I		Column -II	
A.	1797	1.	Vienna Peace Settlement
B.	1814	2.	Invasion of Italy
C.	1821	3.	Revolution in Europe
D.	1848	4.	Struggle for Independence in Greek.

- (a) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4  
 (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 2, D - 3  
 (c) A - 3, B - 2, C - 1, D - 4  
 (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3

Ans :

Comp 2012

- (d) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3

**75.** Which of the following is not a feature or belief of 'Conservatism'?

- (a) Conservatives believe in established, traditional institutions of state and policy.  
 (b) Conservatives stressed the importance of tradition and preferred gradual development to quick change.  
 (c) Conservatives proposed to return to the society of pre-revolutionary days and were against the ideas of modernisation to strengthen monarchy.  
 (d) Conservatives believed in the monarchy, church, and other social hierarchies.

Ans :

OD 2009

- (c) Conservatives proposed to return to the society of pre-revolutionary days and were against the ideas of modernisation to strengthen monarchy

**76.** Assertion (A) : The Balkan area became an area of intense conflict.

Reason (R) : The Balkan states were fiercely jealous of each other and each hoped to gain more territory at the expense of the others.

**Codes :**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the

correct explanation of A.

- (c) A is true but R is false.  
 (d) Both A and R are false.

Ans :

SOP 2019

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**77.** What was the result of the activities and campaigns held at the Jacobin clubs?

- (a) prepared the way for the French armies to move to different countries  
 (b) they brought about unrest in the society  
 (c) they brought about crime and destruction  
 (d) there was immediate peace

Ans :

Delhi 2013

- (a) prepared the way for the French armies

**78.** Following image is the personification of Germany commonly associated with the Romantic Era and the Revolutions of 1848.



Identify its name from among the following options.

- (a) Marianna  
 (b) Philip Viet  
 (c) Germania  
 (d) La Italia

Ans :

SOP 2022 Term 1

- (c) Germania

**79.** Identify the personality -

- She was a political activist.
- She was an elected member of Frankfurt parliament.
- She founded a political association who

- was feminist in nature.
- She founded a women's journal.
- (a) Otto Peter  
 (b) Carl Welcker  
 (c) Frederic Sorrien  
 (d) Giuseppe Mazzini

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2016

- (a) Otto Peter

- 80.** What did Napoleon do to make the system efficient and rational in France?

- (a) in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles  
 (b) brought about different reforms  
 (c) worked on military  
 (d) worked on the financial conditions

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

- (a) in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles

- 81.** Which of the following was a part of the Napoleonic Code?

1. The feudal system was abolished.
  2. Guild restrictions were removed.
  3. Weights and measures were standardised.
  4. A common national currency was introduced.
- (a) Only 1 and 2  
 (b) Only 2 and 3  
 (c) Only 3 and 4  
 (d) All the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (d) All the above.

- 82.** Which of the following statements about the 'French Revolution' are correct?

1. After the end of the French Revolution it was proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.
2. France will have a monarchy and will be headed by a member of the royal family.
3. A centralised administrative system will be put in place to formulate uniform laws for all citizens.
4. Imposition of internal custom duties and dues will continue to exist in France.

- (a) 2 and 3  
 (b) 2 and 4  
 (c) 1 and 3  
 (d) 3 and 4

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (c) 1 and 3

- 83.** Assertion (A) : Italy was divided into seven states, of which only one was ruled by an Italian princely house.

Reason (R) : The north was under the domination of the Bourbon kings of Spain.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
 (c) A is true but R is false.  
 (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (c) A is true but R is false

- 84.** Which of the following is not associated with the revolt of 1848 in Paris?

1. Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England.
2. Food shortages and widespread unemployment brought the population of Paris out on the roads.
3. National Assembly proclaimed a constitutional monarchy, granted suffrage to all adult males above 21.
4. Men and women of the liberal middle classes combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification.

- (a) 1 and 2  
 (b) 2, 3 and 4  
 (c) 3 and 4  
 (d) Only 4

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (c) 3 and 4

- 85.** Which of the following aspect best signifies this image of 'Germania'?



- (a) Heroism and Justice
- (b) Folk and Cultural Tradition
- (c) Austerity and Asceticism
- (d) Revenge and Vengeance

**Ans :**

OD 2012

Heroism and Justice

- 86.** Which of the following is associated with the 'Revolution of the liberals 1848' ?
1. Unlike the revolt of poor in France it was led by educated middle class in Ottoman empire.
  2. Men and women of the liberal middle classes combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification
  3. Demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles – a constitution, freedom of the press and freedom of association.
- (a) 1 and 2
  - (b) 1, 2 and 3
  - (c) 2 and 3
  - (d) Only 3

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014, 2009

(c) 2 and 3

- 87.** With reference to unification of Italy consider the following statements.
1. Cavour who led the movement to unify the regions of Italy was neither a revolutionary nor a democrat.
  2. After the unification of Italy, the Habsburg rulers had more autonomy to

the Hungarians

Which one of the above statement(s) is/are correct?

- (a) 1 only
- (b) 2 only
- (c) Both 1 and 2
- (d) Neither 1 nor 2

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007

- (a) 1 only

**88.** Consider the following statements -

1. Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic regions.
  2. A large part of Balkans was free from the Ottoman empire.
  3. The dismembering of Ottoman empire with its Balkan states became a scene of big power rivalry.
  4. Balkan states were jealous of each other.
- Which of the above statements are correct?
- (a) 1, 3 and 4
  - (b) 1, 2 and 3
  - (c) 1 and 4
  - (d) 2 and 3

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

- (a) 1, 3 and 4

**89.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies the above image?

- (a) Romanticism
- (b) Conservatism
- (c) Federalism
- (d) Feminism

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2012

(a) Romanticism

- 90.** Arrange the following events of German unification in increasing order of their date of occurrence

- 1 Friedrich Wilhelm IV rejected the demand of all German national assembly
  2. The Frankfurt parliament convened in the Church of St Paul.
  3. Kaiser William I of Prussia was proclaimed as the new German emperor.
  4. Three wars over 7 years with Austria, Denmark and France was fought.
- (a) 3, 2, 1, 4  
 (b) 2, 3, 4, 1  
 (c) 2, 1, 4, 2  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

(c) 2, 1, 4, 2

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

- 91.** How did the ‘Treaty of Constantinople’ of 1832 recognize Greece as an independent nation? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

The Treaty of Constantinople was signed in August 1832 and it recognised Greece as an independent nation. Some of the terms of the treaty are:

- (1) The Great powers ratified this treaty and fixed the terms concerning the border between the Greece and Ottoman Empire. It ended the war between the Ottomans and the Greeks and gave recognition to Greek independence.
- (2) The withdrawal of Leopold to occupy the throne of Greece was an instrumental event that led to the signing of this treaty in the presence of the officials of Great Powers like Britain and France.

- 92.** Why did Europeans flee to America in nineteenth century ? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

During the nineteenth century, the conditions in Europe were such that people in large numbers fled to America.

- (1) Poverty and hunger were common in Europe and cities were crowded and deadly diseases were widespread.
- (2) Religious conflicts were common and religious dissenters were persecuted.
- (3) By the eighteenth century, plantations worked by slaves captured in Africa were growing cotton and sugar for European markets.

- 93.** Why were big European powers met in Berlin in 1885?

**Ans :**

OD 2018

All the major European states were invited in Berlin Conference in 1885. The conference was organised by Otto Von Bismarck, first Chancellor of Germany. The European powers met to decide the carving up of Africa among them. The states were Germany, Spain, Netherlands, Belgium, Portugal, France and Great Britain. No African was invited to this conference.

- 94.** The French used school textbooks in Vietnam to justify colonial rule. Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

The French used school textbooks in Vietnam to glorify themselves and justify colonial rule:

- (1) The Vietnamese were represented in the text books as primitive and backward.
- (2) They were shown capable of manual labour but not of intellectual reflection; They could only work in the fields but not rule themselves. They were ‘skilled copyists’ but not creative.
- (3) School children were told that only French rule could ensure peace in Vietnam.

- 95.** Describe any three consequences of liberal revolution of 1848.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (1) It provided a base to the unification of Germany and Italy.

- (2) It abolished serfdom and bonded labour both in the Habsburg domination and Russia  
 (3) The Habsburg rulers granted more autonomy to the Hungarians.
- 96.** Which values are attached to a national state?
- Ans :** Delhi 2018
- The values attached to a national state are :  
 (1) Sacrifices for nation.  
 (2) Proud of nation's past and present.  
 (3) Respect for national anthem and national flag.  
 (4) Proud of nation's brave personalities.
- 97.** Describe main characteristics of Bismarck and his political policy.
- Ans :** SOP 2019, 2017
- Bismarck was a great statesman, conservative, Prussian Diet, leader of the ruling group and Prime Minister to the king of Germany in 1861.  
 Some main characteristics of his political policy were as given below :  
 (1) He was a staunch enemy to liberals/ liberalism.  
 (2) He opposed democracy and supported monarchy.  
 (3) He contributed considerably in unification of Germany. His "Blood and Iron" policy became famous through his strengthening military power of the state.
- 98.** What were the impacts of Act of Union Scotland ?
- Ans :** Delhi 2010
- The Impacts of the 'Act of Union on Scotland were::  
 (1) Formation of the United Kingdom of Great Britain.  
 (2) Dominance of English members in British Parliament.  
 (3) Suppression of Scotland's distinctive culture and political institutions.
- 99.** Write short note on the role of economists in awakening of nationalism.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

Economists began to think in terms of the national economy. They talked of how the nation could develop and what economic measures could help for this nation together. Friedrich List, Professor of Economics at the University of Tübingen in Germany wrote that a free economic system is the only means to engender national feelings.

- 100.** Explain in short how Ireland was incorporated into United Kingdom in 1801.

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

Ireland was a country divided between Catholics and Protestants. The English helped trickily the Protestants of Ireland to impose their dominance over Catholics who were in majority there. Catholics revolted against British (Protestants) dominance but were brutally suppressed. Last bid of revolt was organised by Wolfe Tone and his United Irishmen in 1798 but their efforts were also failed. Thus, Ireland was forcibly incorporated into the United Kingdom in 1801 C.E.

- 101.** Explain the role of women in the nationalist struggles of Europe of the liberals.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (1) Women formed their own political associations.  
 (2) They founded newspapers and took part in political meetings and demonstrations.  
 (3) However, they were still denied the right to vote.  
 (4) They could not enter the Frankfurt Parliament as representatives but attended only as observers.

- 102.** 'The issue of extending political rights to women was a controversial one within the liberal movement, in which large numbers of women had participated actively over the years.' Explain the statement with the help of suitable examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012, 2017

- (1) The issue of extending political rights to women was a controversial one within the

liberal movements in which large number of women had participated actively over the years.

- (2) Though women had formed their own political associations, published newspapers and taken part in political meetings and demonstrations but they were denied suffrage.
  - (3) When the Frankfurt Parliament convened in the Church of St. Paul, women were admitted only as observers to stand in the visitors' gallery.
- 103.** Write any three values which are considered very important in democratic structure but are suppressed in monarchy.

**Ans :** Foreign 2009

Following values are suppressed in monarchy or in despotic rule but are of praise in democracy i.e. democratic set up :

- (1) Personal freedom.
- (2) Right to equality.
- (3) Right to express his/her opinion freely.
- (4) Equality before law.

- 104.** Explain any three features of Frankfurt Parliament.

**Ans :** OD 2010

- (1) In the German region, a large number of political associations came together in the city of Frankfurt and decided to vote for an all-German National Assembly.
- (2) On 18th May 1848, 831 elected representatives marched in a festive procession to take their places in the Frankfurt Parliament convened in the Church of St. Paul.
- (3) They drafted a Constitution for a German nation to be headed by a monarch subject to a Parliament.

- 105.** Who founded 'Young Italy' and when ? Write about it in brief.

**Ans :** Foreign 2019

Giuseppe Mazzini founded in 1832 "Young Italy" in the city of Marseilles in France. It was a new party to take revolutionary works

in Italy. The branches of this party were set-up all over Italy with 50,000 members dedicated to cause of unification of Italy. Its motto was "God, People and Italy".

- 106.** Write short notes on Zollverein and Romanticism.

**Ans :** SQP 2011

- (1) **Zollverein :** It was a custom union. It was formed in 1834 to abolish tariff barriers and reduce the number of currencies from over 30 to two. It created a wave of economic nationalism and thus, strengthened the wider nationalist sentiments.
- (2) **Romanticism :** It was an artistic, literary and intellectual movement that originated in 18th century to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiment. It glorified folk art and vernacular language.

- 107.** Write the characteristics of European nationalism which emerged after 1830s.

**Ans :** Comp 2023, Delhi 2011

Nationalism in Europe after 1830s:

- (1) The sense of unity that they belong to one country, sharing a common history, language and culture.
- (2) It was developed in extreme nationalism through romantic imagination and national feeling.
- (3) It was neither exclusive nor chauvinistic.

- 108.** What do you understand by the following two concepts :

- (1) Conservatism
- (2) A Modern State

**Ans :** SQP 2014

- (1) **Conservatism :** It was a political philosophy that stressed importance of tradition, established institutions and customs and preferred gradual development to quick change. Generally people considered it negative philosophy. Some people condemned it as enemy of progress.

- (2) A Modern State : It relates to a centralised power that exercises sovereign control over a clearly defined territory e.g., modern U.K., France etc.
- 109.** Explain the significance of portraying nations as female figures by the European artists of the 18th and 19th centuries.

**Ans :** OD 2019

Since it is difficult to comprehend abstract ideas as ‘nation’ so the 18th and 19th centuries’ artists personified ‘nation’ as a female figure.

The figure was not the image of any person in life but a female figure having its own attributes, which came to be an allegory representing a nation.

For example Marianne, which represented French nation and attributes of liberty such as broken chain, red cap, etc. Similarly Germania was imagined as the allegory of German nation, a female figure wearing a crown of oak leaves which represented heroism.

- 110.** Discuss the role of any two great personalities of Italy in its unification and welfare.

**Ans :** OD 2013

- (1) Role of Garibaldi : He was a great patriot, organiser and liberal of Italy. He organised a force named “Red-Shirts”. His forces defeated the powerful Austrian forces and liberated Naples and Sicily. After achieving his mission of Italy’s liberation and unification, this selfless patriot took to the peaceful life of a peasant.
- (2) Role of Victor Emmanuel : Victor Emmanuel was the son of Charles Albert who belonged to the royal family of Savoy. He was regarded as the body of Italy. He annexed Venetia and Rome (The Papal territories). Thus, he completed the task of unification of Italy which was left incomplete by Cavour.

- 111.** How was the Habsburg Empire a patchwork of many different regions and peoples in Europe ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

- (1) Habsburg Empire included many regions such as Tyrol, Austria, Sudetenland and Bohemia.
- (2) The aristocracy spoke German and in the provinces of Lombardy and Venetia.
- (3) In Hungary, half of the population spoke Magyar and other local dialects.
- (4) In Galicia, the aristocracy spoke Polish.

- 112.** Differentiate between the concept of a modern state and a nation state. How did the sense of common identity develop in Europe ?

**Ans :** Foreign 2013

- (1) In a modern state a centralised power exercised sovereign control over a clearly defined territory. It had been developing over a long period of time in Europe.
- (2) A nation state was one in which the majority of its citizens and not only its rulers, came to develop a sense of common identity and shared history or descent.
- (3) This commonness was forged through struggles, through the actions of the leaders and the common people and did not exist from time immemorial.

- 113.** The artist has portrayed Garibaldi as holding on to the base of the boot, so that the King of Sardinia-Piedmont can enter it from the top. Look at the map of Italy once more. What statement is this caricature making?



**Ans :**

OD 2018

According to the picture, the boots epitomized the kingdom of two Sicily that

remained in Southern Italy. Garibaldi succeeded in gaining these kingdoms and subsequently, handed over them to king of Sardinia-Piedmont, Victor Emmanuel II. He was proclaimed the emperor of the united Italy. The picture shows the role played by Garibaldi in unifying Italy.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 114.** Explain the measures and practices introduced by the French revolutionaries to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people.

**Ans :** SQP 2021  
The French revolutionaries took many important steps to create a sense of collective identity among the French people which were:  
 (1) Ideas of la patrie (the fatherland) and le citoyen (the citizen) emphasising the notion of a united community enjoying equal rights under a constitution.  
 (2) A new French flag, a tricolour replaced the royal standard.  
 (3) The Estates General was renamed the National Assembly and was elected by a group of active citizens.  
 (4) New hymns, oaths and martyrs commemorated in the name of the nation.  
 (5) A central administrative system made uniform laws for the entire nation.  
 (6) Discouraging regional dialects and promoting French as a common language of the nation.

- 115.** “Like Germany, Italy too had a long history of political fragmentation”. Explain.

**Ans :** SQP 2021  
Yes, it is true that Italy had a long history of political fragmentation. It is said so because –

- (1) Italians were scattered over several dynastic states
- (2) Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by an Italian princely house.

- (3) Italy was unified in 1861 and Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed King of United Italy.
- (4) Giuseppe Mazzini had sought to put together a programme for a unitary Italian Republic.
- (5) The unification of Italy was a result of many wars. Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France by Chief Minister Cavour.
- (6) Garibaldi joined the fray.

- 116.** How did Greek war of independence mobilise nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe? Explain.

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

The Greek war of independence mobilise nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe are discussed below :

- (1) Greek nationalists received support from other Greeks living in exile.
- (2) Many western Europeans had a natural sympathy due to the ancient Greek culture.
- (3) Greece was viewed as a part of Europe that had been annexed by Ottomans and now needed to be liberated.
- (4) Greece perceived as the foundation and cradle of civilisation in Europe by poets and artists and this led to a rise in nationalist consciousness.
- (5) The treaty of Constantinople of 1832 recognised Greece as an independent nation.

- 117.** Why did merchants moved to the countryside Europe during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries ? Explain.

**Ans :** SQP 2020

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for an international market.

- (1) The urban crafts and trade guilds were powerful and did not allow the merchants to expand production within towns.
- (2) These were associations of producers that trained craftspeople, maintained control

over production, regulated competition and prices, and restricted the entry of new people into the trade.

- (3) The rulers granted different guild the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products.

It was therefore difficult for new merchants to set up business in towns. Hence, they turned to the countryside.

- 118.** How had Napoleonic code exported to the regions under French control? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

Napoleonic code exported to the regions under the French control :

- (1) It did away with all privileges based on birth.
- (2) It established equality before the law.
- (3) It secured the right to property.
- (4) Abolished feudal dues.

Through a return to monarchy, Napoleon had, no doubt, destroyed democracy in France, but in the administrative field he had incorporated revolutionary principles in order to make the whole system more rational and efficient. In Dutch Republic, Switzerland, Italy and Germany, Napoleon simplified administrative divisions, abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues. In the towns too, guild restrictions were removed. Transport and communication systems were improved. Peasants, artisans, workers and new businessmen enjoyed a new-found freedom. Businessmen and small-scale producers of goods, in particular, began to realise that uniform laws, standardised weights and measures, and a common national currency would facilitate the movement and exchange of goods and capital from one region to another.

- 119.** How did the local people in the areas conquered by the Napoleon react to France rule ? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

Napoleon conquered France, Poland, Switzerland, Italy and Germany. He

converted the democracy of these countries into royal living standard. In 1804 he made a constitution named as Napoleon Constitution which made several changes in the life of French people. There were the following three main reasons:

- (1) The load of taxes were increased on the people.
- (2) The enquiry was set up on newspapers.
- (3) Young ones were compelled to take their jobs in military.

On the basis of three main reasons mentioned above, the public understand Napoleon as their enemy. In later period the army of Britain, Russia, Prasha and Austria (Germany) unitedly fought against Napoleon in the battle of Waterloo where he was defeated. He died in Saint Helena Island.

- 120.** Why did the achievement of national unity in Germany and Italy not result in the establishment of republics in these countries?

**Ans :**

OD 2012, 2009

Although the unifications took place in Germany and Italy, yet the republics could not be established in these countries. The main reasons are given below. :

- (1) The people in both the countries wanted freedom from the foreign rule. They were not against their own kings. Moreover, the kings of both the countries were quite popular among their people.
- (2) The Prime Ministers of both the countries were the main figures in the unification of their respective countries. But both of them were loyal to their kings and were not in favour of establishing republics in their countries. (iii) The leaders of both these countries had views that their interests would be better safeguarded by their own kings. They themselves were not in favour of harming their kings. On the other hand, they helped to restore and strengthen their national monarchies.

- 121.** Which social groups came in the forefront in bringing socio-political change in the

continent of Europe ? Answer the question by examining their role in the national movement in Europe.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

- (1) During the process of industrialisation new social groups came into existence in Europe. For example working class people and people of middle class which were mainly from industrialists, traders and the people engaged in service sector.
- (2) Upto the last decades of the 19th century the size of these new social groups in mid and Eastern Europe was limited.
- (3) After the end of privileges of elite classes of Europe the thoughts of unity became popular among the educated and liberal middle classes of entire Europe.

**122.** Why was the decade of 1830s known as great economic hardship in Europe? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (1) The sense of unity developed through cultural movement bearing nationalist sentiment. Artists and poets focussed on emotions, intuition and mystical feelings. They wanted to create a sense of shared cultivate heritage, a common cultural past as the basis of nation.
- (2) Nationalist movements become aggressive because monarchy did not accept their demands of forming republics with political rights and freedom of speech to all people as in Germany, France and Italy. The frequent repressive measures had made grossly upset to revolutionaries.
- (3) Diplomatic alliances were formed and several tactics resorted to establish republics but under monarchy as it was difficult to bring democracy in its full shape in the presence of conservatism pervaded all over Europe.

**123.** Which three ideas of French Revolution inspire the democratic all over the world ? Write about these ideas in brief also.

or

Name and explain those three major

principles of 18th century Europe, which influenced almost the entire world.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

These are liberty, equality and fraternity.

- (1) **Liberty** : It means freedom of speech and expression. It is a most important political pillar of democracy. Generally in democracy right to liberty is given or granted to all citizens.
- (2) **Equality** : It means being equal. After liberty it is the second most important principle of democracy. Due to it every citizen is considered equal and it favours equality for all and does not like discrimination between people on the basis of gender, colour, religion, region, status etc.
- (3) **Fraternity** : It means brotherliness. It strengthen the mutual relation between people. Due to it love, affection, co-operation etc. are promoted among the people of a nation. It helps in success of democracy.

**124.** Describe the events of French Revolution which had influenced the people belonging to other parts of Europe.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

The following events of French Revolution had influenced the people belonging to the other parts of Europe :

- (1) The political and constitutional changes that came in the wake of the French Revolution led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to National Assembly — a body of French citizens.
- (2) The revolution proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.
- (3) When the news of the events in France reached the different cities of Europe, students and other members of educated middle classes began setting up Jacobin clubs. Their activities and campaigns, prepared the way for the French armies which moved into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and much of Italy in the 1790s. With the outbreak of the revolutionary

wars, the French armies began to carry the idea of nationalism abroad.

- 125.** Explain with examples the three barriers that are responsible to economic growth in Vietnam.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

There were several barriers to economic growth in Vietnam :

- (1) High population level in Vietnam hindered the growth of the country.
- (2) Another barrier was low agricultural productivity. To reduce rural poverty and increase agricultural productivity it was necessary to carry out land reforms as the Japanese had done in 1890s. But sufficient employment could not be generated as expected.
- (3) Extensive indebtedness among the peasants because of less funds.
- (4) The French colonialists did little to industrialise Vietnam and in the rural areas, landlordism spread and the standard of living declined.

- 126.** Who was Count Camilo De Cavour ? Mention any two of his contributions.

Ans :

SOP 2019

Cavour was the Chief Minister of the kingdom of Piedmont and Sardinia. Following are the contributions of Cavour :

- (1) His main aim was to emancipate Italy from Austria.
- (2) He led the movement of Italian unification tact and diplomacy.
- (3) Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France by the Chief Minister Cavour, Sardinia - Piedmont defeated the Austrian forces in 1859.
- (4) This defeat of Austria paved the way for unification of Italy.

- 127.** Mention any two economic obstacles that the liberal nationalists wanted to overcome ? In what ways did the Zollverein customs union of 1834 try to overcome these shortcomings ?

Ans :

Comp 2008

(1) Following were the economic obstacles that the liberal nationalists wanted to overcome :

- (i) Absence of freedom of markets
- (ii) State imposed restrictions on movement of goods and capital.
- (iii) Time consuming calculations resulting from difference in currency, weight and measurement in the thirty-nine states.

(2) Zollverein customs union of 1834 tried to overcome these shortcomings in the following ways :

- (i) An initiative of Prussia and most of the German states.
- (ii) Abolition of tariff barriers
- (iii) Reduction of number of currencies
- (iv) Creation of a network of railways

- 128.** “Nationalism spreads when people begin to believe that they are all part of the same nation.” Support the statement.

Ans :

Delhi 2011

- (1) The sense of collective belonging came partly through the experience of united struggles:
- (2) Variety of cultural processes through which nationalism captured people's imagination.
- (3) History and fiction, folklore and songs helped with promotion of nationalism.
- (4) Literature also helped to arouse national feelings.
- (5) The idea of nationalism also developed through the celebration of regional festivals.
- (6) As the national movement developed, nationalist leaders became more and more of icons and symbols in unifying and inspiring in them a feeling of nationalism.

- 129.** Describe any three problems faced by the French in the sphere of education in Vietnam.

Ans :

Foreign 2017

The French faced the following problems in the sphere of education in Vietnam :

- (1) After receiving western education, the Vietnamese might question colonial

domination as it was done by Indians in India under British rule. They would become aware of the western democracies and would put forward various demands before the French government.

- (2) Educated Vietnamese might demand various white collar jobs or better-paid jobs such as the jobs of teachers, policemen, etc. which were being done by the French citizens called colons living in Vietnam. Thus, there was opposition from the French citizens to give education to the Vietnamese.

(3) The elites in Vietnam were under the powerful influence of the Chinese culture. It was necessary for the French to counter this influence too.

What was Frederic Sorrieu's Utopian vision ? Discuss the three expressions that he depicted in his famous 'First Print'.

- 130.** What was Frederic Sorrieu's Utopian vision ? Discuss the three expressions that he depicted in his famous 'First Print'.

Ans :

OD 2019 2015

In his Utopian vision, Sorrieu saw the countries of Europe as nation states having their own flags and national costumes.

In the ‘First Print’, he depicted a procession of people of different groups paying homage to the Statue of Liberty. This gives following expressions :

- (1) The procession led by the US shows that the other countries should also become nation-states like the US and Switzerland.
  - (2) The tricolour flags in the hands of the people of France inspire other countries for revolution to become nation-states.
  - (3) The flags of different colours in the hands of German people show the need of unity.
  - (4) The fourth group, formed by other countries, moving towards the Statue of Liberty, shows the final goal of becoming nation-states.
  - (5) The depiction of Christ, saints and angels symbolizes fraternity among the nations of the world.

- 131.** How did Romanticism seek to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiments during 18th century? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (1) Romanticism refers to a cultural Movement which sought to develop a particular form of national sentiment.
  - (2) Romantic artists and poets generally criticised the glorification of reason and science and focussed on emotion, intention and mystical feeling.
  - (3) Their effort was to create a sense of shared collective heritage, a common culture past, as the basis of nation.

Some German romantics believed that through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances, the true spirit of the nation be popularised. German culture was to be discovered among common people.

- 132.** Discuss in brief the reaction of the local population against the administrative changes introduced by Napoleon in order to make it more efficient.

**Ans:**

Delhi 2017

A mixed reaction was witnessed against administrative changes enforced by Napoleon.

- (1) People in states like Holland and Switzerland and those urban people living in Brussels, Mainz, Milan and Warsaw appreciated French armies as harbingers of liberty.
  - (2) Increase in taxation, censorship, forced conscription of youth etc., measures enforced by Napoleon were criticised. These had reduced people's freedom to minimum.
  - (3) Administrative changes like removal of privileges based on birth, equality before the law, abolition of feudalism, removal of guilded restrictions etc., could not appease the people there.

- 133.** Explain the process of unification of Italy.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (1) Italy was scattered over several dynastic states as well as the multi-national Habsburg Empire.
  - (2) After the failure of the 1848 revolutionary uprisings, King Victor Emmanuel II of

- Sardinia-Piedmont took upon himself the task of unification of Italy.
- (3) Sardinia-Piedmont entered into a diplomatic alliance with France. With the help of France, it succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859.
  - (4) In 1860, regular troops, along with a large number of armed volunteers, marched into South Italy and the kingdom of the Two Sicilies. They succeeded in driving out the Spanish rulers. In 1861, Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed the king of United Italy.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

134. Why did the achievement of national unity in Germany and Italy not result in the establishment of republics in these countries?

Ans : Foreign 2017

Although the unifications took place in Germany and Italy, yet the republics could not be established in these countries. The main reasons are given below. :

- (1) The people in both the countries wanted freedom from the foreign rule. They were not against their own kings. Moreover, the kings of both the countries were quite popular among their people.
- (2) The Prime Ministers of both the countries were the main figures in the unification of their respective countries. But both of them were loyal to their kings and were not in favour of establishing republics in their countries. (iii) The leaders of both these countries had views that their interests would be better safeguarded by their own kings. They themselves were not in favour of harming their kings. On the other hand, they helped to restore and strengthen their national monarchies.

135. In some scholar's view, Great Britain was the model of nation or nation-state. Justify the view.

or

How was the formation of nation-state in Britain different from that of rest of the

Europe ? Discuss.

Ans :

OD 2011, SQP 2014

- (1) Unlike in Germany and Italy or France, formation of nation-state in Britain was not an outcome of any revolution.
- (2) Before 18th century, no British nation-state existed. The British nation was the result of a long and gradual political, cultural and economic processes.
- (3) The Parliament in Britain obtained power from the monarch in a long-run ideological conflict and Britain emerged as a nation-state.
- (4) A new and enlarged British nation was forged by propagating English culture in the nearby state. Ireland and Scotland were the examples.

136. Describe any four dissimilarities between the process of unification of Italy and Germany.

Ans :

OD 2020

- (1) The German unification was not supported by armed volunteers. In Italian unification, Garibaldi had won the support of local peasants to drive out the Spanish rulers.
- (2) No secret societies were formed so as to achieve the goal of unification of Germany. But in Italy, Mazzini formed Young Italy.
- (3) Italian unification was completed 10 years before Germany was united.
- (4) Germany, in its unification had to fight against France and Austria, while in Italian unification Cavour had a tactful diplomatic alliance with France to defeat Austria.
- (5) Bismarck followed the policy of 'Blood and Iron' for German unification, while Cavour used his excellent diplomatic skills in Italian unification.

137. Give four examples to explain the way the artists represented a nation in the nineteenth century, in Europe.

or

"The female figure became an allegory of the nation in Europe in the 18th and 19th centuries." Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (1) In the 18th and 19th centuries Europe, the artists personified a nation, i.e., they represented a nation as a person. They chose female (not the real one) figure to represent a nation.
  - (2) The female figure, in itself, contained ideas like liberty, justice and republic.
  - (3) In France, the female figure (Marianne) represented the idea of people's nation. These figures were marked on coins and stamps.
  - (4) In Germany, this work was done in the form of Germania. In Germany, oak stands for heroic acts, so Germania wore a crown of oak leaves.
- 138.** Explain the conditions that were viewed as obstacles to the economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes during the nineteenth century in Europe.

or

Which conditions were viewed as obstacles to economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes during Napoleon's rule ? State.

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

During the nineteenth century, Europe faced many great obstacles to economic exchange and growth by the commercial classes due to the following reasons :

- (1) There was enormous increase in population all over Europe.
- (2) Population from rural areas migrated to the cities to live in overcrowded slums and could not afford to fulfil the basic needs.
- (3) Unemployment increased. In most countries, there were more job seekers than employment.
- (4) Cheap machine-made goods from England were giving stiff competition to small producers of European towns.
- (5) The prices of food inflated manyfolds due to bad harvest. It led to a widespread pauperism in European towns.

- 139.** Describe any five economic hardships faced by Europeans during the mid-nineteenth century.

or

The period between 1830-48 is called the age of revolutions in Europe and characterised by hunger and hardship? Give any five reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

Europe saw the worst days from 1830 to 1848. Hunger, hardship, revolt and revolution of the liberals made economic condition worst. There was enormous increase in population all over Europe.

- (1) There were more seekers of job than employment in most of the countries.
- (2) Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England.
- (3) Textile industry was most affected by England's industrialisation.
- (4) The rise of food prices or a year of bad harvest led to wide-spread pauperism in towns and villages.
- (5) The year 1848 was such a year. Food shortages and widespread unemployment brought the population of Paris out on the roads which forced Louis Philippe flee.

- 140.** Through a focus on any two European countries, explain how nations developed over the 19th century.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

In the nineteenth century, nations developed in many ways. For example :

- (1) (i) Italy emerged after the long drawn wars between the forces of Sardinia-Piedmont and those who ruled over the different parts of Italy such as Austria, Spanish, etc.
- (ii) But, it was only through the successful diplomatic engineering of Cavour that the military could attain the end result.
- (2) (i) Britain, on the other hand, did not have any history of bloodshed.

- (ii) There the one ethnic group — English, exerted its power over the other ethnic groups —Scottish, Irish etc. of the land.
- (iii)The English abolished their national symbols, political institutions, national dresses and other cultural identities.
- (iv)The English put them to follow the British flag, national symbol and anthem, etc.

**141.** Write any five points to show the importance of Giuseppe Garibaldi.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, 2010

Role of Garibaldi in unification of Italy :

- (1) Garibaldi headed the armed volunteers who fought for unification of Italy.
- (2) The Kingdom of Two Sicilies was ruled over by the Spanish rulers. Garibaldi wanted to win the support of the local Italian peasant population.
- (3) In 1860, Garibaldi marched into the South Italy and the Kingdom of Two Sicilies and succeeded in winning the support of the local peasants. He drove out the Spanish rulers.
- (4) The peasant masses who had supported Garibaldi in southern Italy had never heard of Italia, and believed that 'La Talia' was Victor Emmanuel's wife!
- (5) In 1861, Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed the king of United Italy.

**142.** Discuss the role of Mazzini, Cavour and Garibaldi in the unification of Italy.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

(1) **Cavour :**

- (i) He led the movement to unify the regions of Italy.
- (ii) Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France, engineered by Cavour, Sardinia—Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces.

(2) **Garibaldi :** He gathered a large number of armed volunteers and marched into South Italy and the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies

and succeeded in winning the support of locals to drive out Spanish rulers.

(3) **Mazzini :**

- (i) He had sought to put together a coherent programme for a Unitary Italian Republic.
- (ii) He had also formed a secret society called 'Young Italy' for dissemination of his goal.

**143.** How has French artist Frederic Sorrieu, visualised in his first print of the series of his dream of democratic and republic.

or

What do you know about Frederic Sorrieu? Discuss four prints prepared by him expressing his vision.

**Ans :**

Comp 2006

Frederic Sorrieu was a French artist who prepared a series of four prints visualising his dreams of world made up of democratic and social republic.

- (1) The first print of the series, show the peoples of Europe and America—men and women of all ages and social classes—marching in a long train. These offering homage to Statue of Liberty as they pass by it.
- (2) Second print is that of allegory of liberty in female figure holding torch of enlightenment in one hand and Charter on Rights of Man on the other.
- (3) The third print is that of shattered remains of the symbols of absolutist institutions.
- (4) The fourth print refers to his utopian vision in which the peoples of the world are shown marching together on the path of development. It is a vision of world peace and prosperity.

**144.** How was a nation visualized in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries in Europe ? Explain with the help of two suitable examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (1) Artists represented nations as a female figure which did not stand for any

- particular woman but gave the abstract idea of the nation a concrete form.
- (2) Thus, female figures became an allegory of a nation. During the French Revolution, artists used female figures to portray ideas such as liberty, justice and republic through symbols.
  - (3) In France, she was christened Marianne underlining the idea of a people's nation with characteristics drawn from those of liberty and republic.
  - (4) Her statues were erected in public places to remind the people of unity and persuade them to identify with it. Her images were also marked on coins and stamps.
  - (5) In Germany, 'Germania' became the allegory of the nation wearing a crown of German oak leaves, as the German oak stood for heroism.

**145.** What is this caricaturist trying to depict?



**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

This caricature aims to depict the true characteristics of the conservative monarchies of the nineteenth century Europe. As a matter of fact, the ideals of liberalism and individual freedom did not flourish. In this picture, the club involved thinkers are they sitting in a club but they do not have the power to express their thoughts as reflected by the cloth tied on their mouths. This is the most effective way to project that the people did not have the freedom of thought or speech in those times.

**146.** Describe the caricature. How does it represent the relationship between Bismarck and

the elected deputies of parliament? What interpretation of democratic processes is the artist trying to convey?



**Ans :**

Comp 2008

- (1) In this caricature, Bismarck is holding and elected representatives of waving a hunter in the air, which is a symbol of autocracy. It demonstrates that the rest of the elected representative of parliament representatives are fearful of him.
- (2) In order to show him reverence, the representatives bowed down under the benches of the parliament.
- (3) The caricature puts Bismarck on a higher pedestal and shows that he is ruling the roost of the parliament.
- (4) The revolutionary artist is trying to narrate democracy through a sarcastic caricature. It shows that democracy existed for the sake of name. In reality, the power and influence of Bismarck ruled the parliament.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

**147.** Explain the process of formation of 'United Kingdom of Great Britain'.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

- (1) There was no British nation prior to the eighteenth century. The primary identities of the people who inhabited the British Isles were English, Welsh, Scot or Irish
- (2) The formation of the nation-state was not the result of a sudden upheaval or revolution

- (3) The formation of the nation-state was the result of a long-drawn-out process. As the English nation steadily grew in wealth it was able to extend its influence over other nations of the islands
- (4) The English parliament was the instrument through which a nation-state, with England at its centre, came to be forged
- (5) The Act of Union (1707) between England and Scotland that resulted in the formation of the United Kingdom of Great Britain
- (6) Ireland was forcibly incorporated into the United Kingdom in 1801. A new 'British nation' was forged through the propagation of a dominant English culture.

**148.** How did the ideology of 'liberalism' affect the Europe in early nineteenth century? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, OD 2024

- (1) The term liberalism derives from the Latin root liber which means free
- (2) It stood for freedom of the individual and equality for all before the law but they were against universal suffrage
- (3) It stood for the end of autocracy and clerical privileges
- (4) It stood for constitution and representative government through parliament
- (5) It also stressed the inviolability of private property
- (6) It stood for the freedom of markets and the abolition of state-imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital

**149.** Why was the period of 1848 considered as phase of the revolution of the Liberals in Europe ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

Events of February, 1848 in France had brought about the abdication of the monarch and a republic based on universal male suffrage had been proclaimed.

- (1) In other parts of Europe where independent nation-states did not yet exist, such as Germany, Italy, Poland, the Austro-Hungarian Empire, men and women

of the liberal middle classes combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification.

- (2) They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to push their demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles, a constitution, freedom of the press and freedom of association.
- (3) In the German regions a large number of political associations whose members were middle-class professionals, businessmen and prosperous artisans came together in the city of Frankfurt and decided to vote for an all German National Assembly.
- (4) While the opposition of the aristocracy and military became stronger, the social basis of Parliament eroded. The Parliament was dominated by the middle classes who resisted the demands of workers and artisans and consequently lost their support. In the end troops were called in and the assembly was forced to disband.
- (5) The issue of extending political rights to women was a controversial one within the liberal movement, in which large numbers of women had participated actively over the years.
- (6) Women had formed their own political associations, founded newspapers and taken part in political meetings and demonstrations.

**150.** "The first clear expression of nationalism came with the 'French Revolution' in 1789." Examine the statement.

**Ans :**

OD 2017

It is true that "the first clear expression of nationalism came with the 'French revolution' in 1789".

- (1) Till 1789, France was a full-fledged territorial state under the rule of absolute monarch. The political and constitutional changes that came during the rise of the French Revolution, led to the transfer of sovereignty from monarchy to the body of French citizen.

- (2) The revolution proclaimed that it was the people who would hence forth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.

From the beginning, the French revolutionaries introduced various measures and practices that could create a sense of collective identity, and a feeling of nationalism among the French people. The community was enjoying equal rights under the constitution.

- (3) A new French flag, the tri-colour, was chosen to replace the former royal standard. The Estates General was deleted by the body of active citizens and renamed as National Assembly. New hymns were composed, oaths were taken and martyrs were commemorated, all in the name of nation.
- (4) Regional dialects were discouraged and French, as it was spoken and written in Paris, became the common language of the nation.

The revolutionaries further declared that they would help other people of Europe to become free nations. When the news of the events of France reached different cities of Europe, students and other members of educated middle classes began setting up Jacobin Clubs. Their activities and campaigns prepared the way for the French armies which moved into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and much of Italy in 1790s. Thus, with the outbreak of revolutionary wars, nationalism spread in the entire Europe.

- 151.** How did a wave of economic nationalism strengthen the wider nationalist sentiment growing in Europe ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, SQP 2017

The main features of the economic condition of the German speaking regions in the first-half of the nineteenth century were as follows:

(1) Napoleon's administrative measures had created out of countless small principalities a confederation of 39 states.

- (2) Each of these possessed its own currency, weights and measures.

- (3) Duties were often levied according to the weight or measurement of the goods.

The above conditions were also viewed as obstacles to economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes.

As a result of the above circumstances Zollverein was formed in 1834 at the initiative of Prussia and was joined by most of the German States.

It was formed for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing the unhindered movement of goods, people and capital.

It created a national unity in economic matters at a time when Germany was divided. It accustomed German states to co-operate without Austria who had not become a member of zollverein. It was the beginning of German unity. Thus, economic nationalism strengthened the wider nationalist sentiments in Germans as well as in Europe.

- 152.** “The idealistic liberal-democratic sentiment of nationalism in the first half of the 19th century became a narrow creed with limited ends.” Examine the statement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (a) The nature of nationalism in the last quarter of the nineteenth century was as mentioned below :

- (i) It no longer retained its idealistic liberal-democratic sentiment of the first-half of the century but became a narrow creed with limited ends.
- (ii) During this period nationalist groups became increasingly intolerant of each other and ever ready to go to war.

- (b) The example of this narrow creed with limited ends was Balkans area as mentioned below :

- (i) A large part of the Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman Empire. However, with the weakening and disintegration of the Ottoman Empire, the nationalist tensions emerged in the area. Its European subject nationalities broke away and declared their independence.

- (ii) The people of the Balkans argued that they were once independent before the foreign powers controlled them. So their object was to regain their lost independence.
- (c) Results : Rivalries of the European powers and among the Balkan states led to a series of wars in the region and finally the First World War.
- 153.** "The Habsburg Empire that ruled over Austria-Hungary, was a patchwork of many different regions and people." Justify the statement with suitable examples.
- Ans :** Comp 2016
- (1) In mid-eighteenth century, there was no 'nation-states' as we know them today.
  - (2) Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, duchies and cantons whose rulers had their autonomous territories.
  - (3) Even Eastern and Central Europe were under autocratic monarchies within the territories of which lived diverse people.
  - (4) They did not see themselves as sharing a collective identity or a common culture. Different languages were spoken. People belonged to different ethnic groups.
  - (5) The Habsburg Empire that ruled over Austria-Hungary was a patchwork of many different regions and people which included the Alpine regions — the Tyrol Austria and the Sudetenland as well as Bohemia where the aristocracy was predominantly German-speaking.
  - (6) In Hungary, half of the population spoke Magyar and other local dialects.
  - (7) In Galicia, the aristocracy spoke Polish. Within the boundaries of the empire, a mass of subject peasant people also lived.
- 154.** How did nationalism develop through culture in Europe ? Explain.
- or
- Describe the cultural process through which nationalism captured people's imagination.

**Ans :**

SQP 2015, 2011

Culture played an important role in creating the idea of nation in Europe in the following ways :

- (1) Art and poetry, stories and music helped in shaping nationalist feeling in Europe.
- (2) Romanticism, a cultural movement, sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiments. For example, 'The massacre at Chios' by Eugene Delacroix, appealed to the emotions of Greek.
- (3) German philosopher, Johann Gottfried Herder said that true German culture could be discovered among the common people through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances that express the true spirit of the nation.
- (4) 'Das Volk' portrayed the German culture.
- (5) 'Karol Kurpinski' celebrated nationalist movement through folk dances and operas.
- (6) Allegories were developed such as Marianne and Germania.
- (7) Vernacular languages strengthened the nationalist feelings.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
**Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**  
**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 155.** How did a wave of economic nationalism strengthen the wider nationalist sentiment growing in Europe ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

The main features of the economic condition of the German speaking regions in the first-half of the nineteenth century were as follows:

- (1) Napoleon's administrative measures had created out of countless small principalities a confederation of 39 states.
- (2) Each of these possessed its own currency, weights and measures.
- (3) Duties were often levied according to the weight or measurement of the goods.

The above conditions were also viewed as obstacles to economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes.

As a result of the above circumstances Zollverein was formed in 1834 at the initiative of Prussia and was joined by most of the German States.

It was formed for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing the unhindered movement of goods, people and capital.

It created a national unity in economic matters at a time when Germany was divided. It accustomed German states to co-operate without Austria who had not become a member of zollverein. It was the beginning of German unity. Thus, economic nationalism strengthened the wider nationalist sentiments in Germans as well as in Europe.

- 156.** Why was the Balkans the most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 ? Explain any four reasons ?

or

Why did nationalist tension emerge in the Balkans? Explain any four reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

For the following reasons, Balkans was the most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 :

- (1) Balkans were a region of geographical and ethical variations comprising modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia, Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were known as Slays.
- (2) A large part of the Balkans were under the control of the Ottoman Empire. The spread of the ideas of romantic nationalism in the Balkan together with the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire made this region very explosive.
- (3) As the different Slavic nationalities struggled to define their identity and independence, the Balkan area became an area of intense conflict.
- (4) The Balkan states were jealous of each other and each hoped to gain more territory at the expense of each other.

Balkans also became an area of big power library.

- (5) Each European power such as Russia, Germany, England, Austria-Hungary was keen countering the hold of other powers over Balkans and this led to a series of wars eventually the First World War.

- 157.** Explain any five social and administrative reforms introduced by Napoleon in the regions under his control.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013, 2008

Napoleon finished the imperialism and reformed social and administrative rule in the regions under his control. For this purpose he took the following steps:

- (1) He made the administration logical and successful.
- (2) He wrote a book named as Napoleon Constitution in 1806 with the help of which he abolished the special rights which were given to the people on the basis of birth. According to him, all are equal in the eyes of law. The right of capital and asset is equal to all.
- (3) Napoleon made the administrative constitution simple. He abolished the dictatorship.
- (4) He set free the peasants from Zamindari and land slavery.
- (5) In the towns he set free to all union labours and small and petty labourers.
- (6) He improved all the laws regarding transport and communication.
- (7) He approved and released weights and measurement scales similar in the whole regions. He also released the naional currency in all regions.

- 158.** How was the history of the development of nationalism in England different from the rest of Europe ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007

Different pattern of nationalism in Engand: We can make crystal clear the different pattern of nationalism in England in the following points :

- (a) Emergence of nationalism here was not the result of sudden revolution or uprising.
- (b) There was no British nation prior to the 18th century. England is inhabited by different ethnic groups, i.e. English, Welsh, Scots and Irish.
- (c) These ethnic groups had their own cultural and political traditions. English group, out of them steadily grew up in power, wealth and importance and it extended its influence over others.
- (d) In 1688, through a bloodless revolution, the English parliament seized power from monarchy and became the instrument to set-up a nation-state with England at its centre.
- (e) By the Act of Union in 1707 Scotland was incorporated in United Kingdom.
- (f) Though the Irish Catholics were against a union with England, Ireland was forcibly incorporated into the United Kingdom in 1801. Thus, it was the parliamentary action and not revolution or war that was the instrument through which United Kingdom was forged into a strong democratic state.
- 159.** What were the similarities between the process of unification of Germany and Italy ? Write in detail.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

The main points of similarity between the unification of Germany and Italy:

- (1) Both the countries (Italy and Germany) were divided into small states which lacked unity.
- (2) Napoleon Bonaparte encouraged (indirectly) unification and nationalism in these two countries.
- (3) The Vienna Congress (of 1815) again divided these countries into smaller states.
- (4) Both suffered the reactionary policies of Austria.
- (5) Efforts (by the revolutionaries) were made in 1830 C.E. and 1848 C.E. but failed.

- (6) Both had to battle against Austria.
- (7) The unifications in both the countries were not accomplished by the people but by the rulers themselves.
- (8) After their liberation and unification, both Germany and Italy became monarchies instead of the republics.
- (9) The Prime Ministers of Germany and Italy, Bismarck and Cavour respectively, made much contribution in the unification of their respective countries through the diplomatic moves and wars.
- (10) Though the democratic and revolutionary leaders and people played vital role in the unification of these countries, yet they were loyal to their respective kings.

- 160.** Discuss the general characteristics of the nationalist movement in Poland.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

Poland in the 17th century was a fairly big state. Her neighbours Russia, Austria and Prussia were very hostile and fought long and bloody wars with her. Consequently Poland was divided thrice and by 1795, she ceased to be an independent state.

- (1) Thus, Poland disappeared as an independent country. The idea of Polish position was not new (it had already taken place thrice 1772, 1793 and 1795).
- (2) Czar Nicholas I, who was a terrible autocrat, mercilessly suppressed the patriotic Polish. According to Grant and Temperly this iron rule ran twenty five years unabated.
- (3) Alexander-I granted a constitution to Poland but the monarch gave up his liberalism and became an arch reactionary when he came under the reactionary influence of Metternich (of Austria). He died in 1825.
- (4) The revolutionaries of Poland (within Russia) started their movement but Nicholas-I mercilessly crushed the Polish when they revolted in 1830. About 45,000 Polish were banished from their home country.

- (5) Inspite of so partitioned, Polish kept alive their national feelings through music and languages. For example, Karol Kurpinski celebrated the national struggle through his operas and music. He transformed folk dances like the polonaise and mazurka into nationalist symbols. The use of Polish came to be seen as a symbol of the struggle against Russian dominance.
- 161.** How did nationalism develop through culture in Europe ? Explain.

or

“Culture has played an important role in the development of nationalism in Europe during eighteenth and nineteenth centuries.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

Culture played an important role in creating the idea of the nation : art and poetry stories and music helped express and shape nationalist feelings. Romanticism helped in developing a particular form of nationalist sentiments.

- (1) The Romantic artists focused on emotions, intuition and mystical feelings in order to create a sense of a shared collective heritage, a common cultural past, as the basis of a nation.
- (2) German philosopher Johann Gottfried tried to popularise the true spirit of the nation through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances.
- (3) The emphasis on Vernacular language and the collection of local folklore was to recover an ancient national spirit and to carry the modern nationalist message to large audiences who were mostly illiterate. For example, in Poland which had been partitioned by the Great Powers, national feelings were kept alive through music and language. The use of Polish was seen as symbol of the struggle against Russian dominance. After the failure of an armed rebellion against Russian rule, many members of the clergy in Poland began to use language as a weapon of national

resistance. Polish was used for church gatherings and all instructions.

- (4) French language brought a collective identity among the French people.

- 162.** Discuss the characteristics of the nationalist movement in Greece.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015, 2014

Characteristics of Nationalist Movement in Greece :

- (1) The people of Greece (Greek) started their war of independence in 1820, against Turkey or Ottoman Empire. The much-awaited opportunity came in 1821 when Ali Pasha, the Turkish Governor of Janina, quarrelled with the Sultan and went to war with him. Prince Hysilanti was defeated in the battle at Moldavia by the Ircs and the movement fizzled out for a short time.
- (2) The war, developed into one of mutual exterminations, and was conducted on both sides with the utmost ferocity and blood-curdling atrocities. For the first six years (1821-28) the powers did not intervene and Greeks were left to their own efforts. Metternich was against giving help to revolutionaries and had to fight alone.
- (3) To prevent independent action on the part of Russia, Metternich induced France and Czar Nicholas I to combine with England in forcing an armistice on the Sultan, and compelling him to accept the joint mediation of the allied powers.
- (4) Conference was held in London in July, 1827 and a joint note was accordingly despatched to Turkey to grant autonomy but the Sultan refused to accede to the proposals of armistice and granting autonomy to Greece. Thereupon the allied fleets of France and England completely destroyed the Turkish fleet at Navasino after a fierce encounter on 20th October, 1827.
- (5) This victory encouraged the Greeks to secure their liberation. But apart from this, all the advantages of joint

- intervention were reaped by Russia alone. Lord Canning was dead and his policy was reversed by Duke of Wellington who now became the British Prime Minister. England was still officially at peace with Turkey.
- (6) By the Convention of London in 1832 the new kingdom of Greece was placed under the joint guarantee of the powers and Prince Otto of Bavaria was selected as its king.
  - (7) The Greek afforded the first example of the victory of nationalism against the reactionary policy of the Congress of Vienna and as such it struck a blow to Metternich's system. Secondly, it demonstrated the common interest of the European powers and the practical possibility of a resuscitation of the Christian states.

- 163.** Describe the process of unification of Germany.

Ans :

SQP 2007, OD 2005

After 1848, nationalism in Europe moved away from an association with democracy and evolution. Nationalist sentiments were often mobilised by conservatives for promoting state power and achieving political domination over Europe. Thus, Germany and Italy were unified as nation states as mentioned below :

- (1) Thirty nine German States were grouped together in an organisation known as German Confederation.

- (2) In 1834, a customs union or Zollverein was established. It allowed free trade among its members. It created a real national unity in economic matters.
- (3) In May 1848, a large number of political associations decided to vote for an all-German National Assembly at Frankfurt and drafted a constitution for a German Nation to be headed by a monarchy subject to a parliament. The offer was made to Prussian King but it was rejected by him. Thus, the liberal initiative to nation building failed.

- (4) Thereafter the task of unification of Germany was taken over by Prussia and its chief minister, Otto von Bismarck who was architect of modern Germany.
- (5) Bismarck followed a policy of 'blood and iron'. He carried out his plans with the help of the Prussian army and bureaucracy. Within a period of seven years, three wars were fought with Denmark, Austria and France. These wars ended in Prussian victory and completed the process of unification.
- (6) Ultimately in January 1871, in the Hall of Mirrors at the Palace of Versailles, The Prussian King William I was proclaimed German Emperor. Thus, unification of Germany was completed.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 164.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*Ernst Renan, 'What is a Nation?': In a lecture delivered at the University of Sorbonne in 1882, the French philosopher Ernst Renan (1823-92) outlined his understanding of what makes a nation. The lecture was subsequently published as a famous essay entitled 'Qu'est-ce qu'une nation?' ('What is a Nation?'). In this essay Renan criticises the notion suggested by others that a nation is formed by a common language, race, religion, or territory: 'A nation is the culmination of a long past of endeavours, sacrifice and devotion. A heroic past, great men, glory, that is the social capital upon which one bases a national idea. To have common glories in the past, to have a common will in the present, to have performed great deeds together, to wish to perform still more, these are the essential conditions of being a people. A nation is therefore a large-scale solidarity... Its existence is a daily plebiscite... A province is its inhabitants; if anyone has the right to be consulted, it is the inhabitant. A nation never has any real interest in annexing or holding*

*on to a country against its will. The existence of nations is a good thing, a necessity even. Their existence is a guarantee of liberty, which would be lost if the world had only one law and only one master.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by the term Nation?
2. Write any two requirements for the formation of a nation.
3. How does a heroic past helps in the formation of a nation?

**Ans :**

1. A country or all the people in a country.
2. Population and Territory are two requirements to form a nation.
3. A heroic part gives a sense of pride and identity to a people. This helps in the formation of a nation.

**165.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*The Civil Code of 1804 – usually known as the Napoleonic Code – did away with all privileges based on birth, established equality before the law and secured the right to property. This Code was exported to the regions under French control. In the Dutch Republic, in Switzerland, in Italy and Germany, Napoleon simplified administrative divisions, abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues. In the towns too, guild restrictions were removed. Transport and communication systems were improved. Peasants, artisans, workers and new businessmen enjoyed a new-found freedom.*

*In Western and parts of Central Europe the growth of industrial production and trade meant the growth of towns and the emergence of commercial classes whose existence was based on production for the market. Industrialisation began in England in the second half of the eighteenth century, but in France and parts of the German states it occurred only during the nineteenth century. In its wake, new social groups came into being: a working-class population, and middle classes made up of industrialists, businessmen, professionals.*

*Following the defeat of Napoleon in 1815, European governments were driven by a spirit of conservatism. Conservatives believed that established, traditional institutions of state and society – like the monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the family – should be preserved. Most conservatives, however, did not propose a return to the society of pre-revolutionary days. Rather, they realised, from the changes initiated by Napoleon, that modernisation could in fact strengthen traditional institutions like the monarchy.*

**Questions :**

1. What was the core concept of the Napoleonic Code?
2. Who were the new middle class in Europe?
3. What do you meant by conservatism?

**Ans :**

1. The Napoleonic Code defined the concept of equality before the law and secured the right to property. This code abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues as well as improvement in the transport and communication system.
2. The growth of industrial production and trade in Europe led to emergence of commercial classes whose existence was based on production for the market. In its wake, new social group came into being such as a working class population and middle classes population. The middle class population were industrialists, businessmen, professionals.
3. A political philosophy that stressed the importance of tradition, established institutions and customs, and preferred gradual development to quick change is called conservatism.

**166.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Ideas of national unity in early-nineteenth-century Europe were closely allied to the ideology of liberalism. The term ‘liberalism’*

*derives from the Latin root liber, meaning free. For the new middle classes liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law. Politically, it emphasised the concept of government by consent. Since the French Revolution, liberalism had stood for the end of autocracy and clerical privileges, a constitution and representative government through parliament. Nineteenth-century liberals also stressed the inviolability of private property.*

*Following the defeat of Napoleon in 1815, European governments were driven by a spirit of conservatism. Conservatives believed that established, traditional institutions of state and society – like the monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the family – should be preserved. Most conservatives, however, did not propose a return to the society of pre-revolutionary days. Rather, they realised, from the changes initiated by Napoleon, that modernisation could in fact strengthen traditional institutions like the monarchy. It could make state power more effective and strong. A modern army, an efficient bureaucracy, a dynamic economy, the abolition of feudalism and serfdom could strengthen the autocratic monarchies of Europe.*

*Conservative regimes set up in 1815 were autocratic. They did not tolerate criticism and dissent, and sought to curb activities that questioned the legitimacy of autocratic governments. Most of them imposed censorship laws to control what was said in newspapers, books, plays and songs and reflected the ideas of liberty and freedom associated with the French Revolution. The memory of the French Revolution nonetheless continued to inspire liberals. One of the major issues taken up by the liberal-nationalists, who criticised the new conservative order, was freedom of the press.*

#### **Questions :**

1. What is the literal meaning of ‘liberalism’?
2. What was the belief of Conservatives?
3. Why Conservative regimes was characterised by the autocrats?

**Ans :**

1. The term ‘liberalism’ is derived from the Latin
2. Conservatives believed that established, traditional institutions of state and society – like the monarchy, the Church, social hierarchies, property and the family – should be preserved.
3. Conservative regimes did not tolerate criticism and dissent, and sought to curb activities that questioned the legitimacy of autocratic governments.

- 167.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*To be revolutionary at this time meant a commitment to oppose monarchical forms that had been established after the Vienna Congress, and to fight for liberty and freedom. Most of these revolutionaries also saw the creation of nation-states as a necessary part of this struggle for freedom. One such individual was the Italian revolutionary Giuseppe Mazzini, born in Genoa in 1807, he became a member of the secret society of the Carbonari. As a young man of 24, he was sent into exile in 1831 for attempting a revolution in Liguria. He subsequently founded two more underground societies, first, Young Italy in Marseilles, and then, Young Europe in Berne, whose members were like-minded young men from Poland, France, Italy and the German states. Mazzini believed that God had intended nations to be the natural units of mankind.*

*So Italy could not continue to be a patchwork of small states and kingdoms. It had to be forged into a single unified republic within a wider alliance of nations. This unification alone could be the basis of Italian liberty. Following his model, secret societies were set up in Germany, France, Switzerland and Poland. Mazzini’s relentless opposition to monarchy and his vision of democratic republics frightened the conservatives. Metternich described him as ‘the most dangerous enemy of our social order’. As conservative regimes tried to consolidate their power, liberalism and nationalism came to*

be increasingly associated with revolution in many regions of Europe such as the Italian and German states, the provinces of the Ottoman Empire, Ireland and Poland. These revolutions were led by the liberal-nationalists belonging to the educated middle-class elite, among whom were professors, schoolteachers, clerks and members of the commercial middle classes. The first upheaval took place in France in July 1830. The Bourbon kings who had been restored to power during the conservative reaction after 1815, were now overthrown by liberal revolutionaries who installed a constitutional monarchy with Louis Philippe at its head. 'When France sneezes,' Metternich once remarked, 'the rest of Europe catches cold.' The July Revolution sparked an uprising in Brussels which led to Belgium breaking away from the United Kingdom of the Netherlands.

#### Questions :

1. In which place the Italian revolutionary Giuseppe Mazzini was born? Which secret society was joined by Giuseppe Mazzini?
2. What was the basis of Italian unification? When did the first upheaval took place?
3. What is the belief of Mazzini on nation?

**Ans :**

1. The Italian revolutionary Giuseppe Mazzini was born in Genoa in 1807 AD. He joined the secret society of the Carbonari.
2. (i) The liberty was the basis of Italian unification.  
(ii) The first upheaval took place in France in July 1830.
3. Mazzini believed that God had intended nations to be the natural units of mankind.

- 168.** Read the following extract taken from the textbook and answer the questions that follow :

*"A nation is the culmination of a long past of endeavours, sacrifice and devotion. A heroic past, great men, glory, that is the social*

*capital upon which one bases a national idea. To have common glories in the past, to have a common will in the present, to have performed great deeds together, to wish to perform still more, these are the essential conditions of being a people. A nation is therefore a large-scale solidarity ..... Its existence is a daily plebiscite ..... A province is its inhabitants; if anyone has the right to be consulted, it is the inhabitant. A nation never has any real interest in annexing or holding on to a country against its will. The existence of nations is a good thing, a necessity even. Their existence is a guarantee of liberty, which would be lost if the world had only one law and only one master."*

#### Questions :

1. Explain what Ernst Renan understands should be the attributes of a nation.
2. What do you mean by the concept of 'modern state'? How does it differ from 'nation-state'?

**Ans :**

- (1) According to Ernst Renan, following are the attributes of a nation :
  - (i) A nation is a large-scale solidarity.
  - (ii) A nation does not annex or hold on to a country against its will.
  - (iii) The existence of a nation is a guarantee of liberty.
- (2) (i) By a 'modern state' we mean a state in which a centralised power exercises sovereign control over a clearly defined territory. In other words, the ruler and the citizens have different identities in a modern state.  
(ii) The concept of nation-state differs from modern state in the way that in a nation-state, both the citizens and the rulers had a common identity and shared history. This common identity was established through struggles of the leaders and the common people.

- 169.** Read the following extract taken from the textbook and answer the questions that follow :

*"Nature has created men and women to carry out different functions ..... Man, the stronger, the bolder and freer of the two, has been designated as protector of the family, its provider, meant for public tasks in the domain of law, production, defence. Women, the weaker, dependent and timid, require the protection of man. Her sphere is the home, the care of the children, the nurturing of the family ..... Do we require any further proof that given such differences, equality between the sexes would only endanger harmony and destroy the dignity of the family."*

**Questions :**

1. What are Carl Welcker's views about the liberty and equality for women ?
2. How did women contribute in the liberal movement in Germany in 1848 ?

**Ans :**

1. Following are Carl Welcker's views about liberty and equality for women :
    - (i) He does not consider women to be capable of performing many public tasks. He considers women to be weaker, timid and dependent.
    - (ii) He thinks that women need protection of men. In his view, if women are given liberty and equality, the dignity of the family will be endangered.
  2. Following were the contributions of women in the liberal movement in Germany, in 1848 :
    - (i) A large number of women actively participated in the liberal movement. They formed political associations and published newspapers.
    - (ii) They actively participated in political meetings and demonstrations.
- 170.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Let us look at Romanticism, a cultural movement which sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiment. Romantic artists and poets generally criticised the glorification of reason and science and focused instead on emotions, intuition and mystical*

*feelings. Their effort was to create a sense of a shared collective heritage, a common cultural past, as the basis of a nation.*

*The 1830s were years of great economic hardship in Europe. The first half of the nineteenth century saw an enormous increase in population all over Europe. In most countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment. Population from rural areas migrated to the cities to live in overcrowded slums.*

*In other parts of Europe where independent nation-states did not yet exist – such as Germany, Italy, Poland, the Austro-Hungarian Empire – men and women of the liberal middle classes combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification. They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to push their demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles – a constitution, freedom of the press and freedom of association.*

**Questions :**

1. What are the other aspect of idea of nationalism?
2. What do you meant by economic hardship in Europe?
3. What were the demand of Liberals?

**Ans :**

1. The development of nationalism did not come about only through wars and territorial expansion. Culture played an important role in creating the idea of nationalism. Romanticism is most accepted cultural movement which helped and expressed the nationalist feelings in Europe.
2. The economic hardship in Europe refers to most of the European countries during 1830s faced more seekers of jobs than employment. Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England, where industrialisation was more advanced than on the continent.

3. In the year of 1848, in many European countries liberal middle classes were emerged. They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to push their demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles.
  
171. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow.

*What we know today as Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, Duchies and Cantons whose ruler had their autonomous territories. Eastern and Central Europe were under autocratic monarchies within the territories of which lived diverse peoples. They did not see themselves as sharing a collective identity or a common culture. Often, they even spoke different languages and belonged to different ethnic groups. The Habsburg Empire that ruled over Austria-Hungary, for example, was a patchwork of many different regions and peoples. It included the Alpine regions-the Tyrol, Austria and the Sudetenland as well as Bohemia, where the aristocracy was predominantly German speaking. It also included the Italian speaking provinces of Lombardy and Venetia.*

*In Hungary, half of the population spoke Magyar while the other half spoke a variety of dialects. In Galicia, the aristocracy spoke Polish. Besides these three dominant groups, there also lived within the boundaries of the empire, a mass of subject peasant peoples Bohemians and Slovaks to the North, Slovenes in Carniola, Croasts to the South and Roumans to the East in Transylvania.*

*Such differences did not easily promote a sense of political unity. The only tie binding these diverse groups together was a common allegiance to the emperor.*

#### Questions :

1. What was the reason behind Germany, Italy and Switzerland not being a nation state?
2. Were there any nation - states in Europe till the mid 18th Century. How?
3. Describe the Habsburg Empire.

Ans :

1. The reason behind Germany, Italy and Switzerland not being a nation state is that these countries were divided into Kingdoms, Duchies and Cantons, whose rulers had their autonomous territories.
2. Yes, there were nation states in Europe till the mid 18th century. Eastern and Central Europe were under autocratic monarchies within the territories of diverse peoples. They did not see themselves as sharing a collective identity or a common culture.
3. The Habsburg Empire ruled over Austria-Hungary was a patchwork of many different regions and peoples. It included the Alpine regions, the Tyrol, Austria and the Sudetenland as well as Bohemia. Its also included the provinces of Lombardy and Venetia.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

#### DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 2

## NATIONALISM IN INDIA

### SUMMARY

1. Boycott : The refusal to deal and associate with people or participate in activities or buy and use things; usually a form of protest.
2. Picket : A form of demonstration or protest by which people block the entrance to a shop, factory or office.
3. Begar : A kind of labour get done by forcibly and without any payment.
4. Nationalism : Patriotism, a feeling of collective belonging to one's nation; sharing common feelings of identity.
5. Nation-states : A state having common territory and inhabited by people sharing common language, race, culture etc.
6. Martial Law : Law of military government. When martial laws are imposed, ordinary laws are suspended.
7. Stayagraha : A method of agitation and protest, based on truth and non-violence. This was first introduced by Gandhiji in Indian national movement.
8. Forced Recruitment : In colonies people were often compelled to join the army and fight war on behalf of the colonial rulers.
9. Khadi : Handspun handloom material.
10. Dominion Status : Status enjoyed by other dominions of British Commonwealth such as Australia or Canada.
11. Rowlatt Act : A law or tool of repression passed by the British Government on 18<sup>th</sup> March, 1919.
12. Dandi : A place in the western coast of India in Gujarat where Gandhiji broke the Salt Law in course of the Civil Disobedience Movement.
13. Civil Liberties : Rights and freedom enjoyed by a citizen.

14. Individual Satyagraha : Launched by Gandhiji in 1940. Selected individuals broke the laws of making anti-war speeches in public and offered themselves for arrest.
15. Gopal Krishna Gokhale : A moderate leader of Indian National Congress. Gandhiji considered him as his political Guru.
16. John Morley : Secretary of the State of India at the time of introduction of Morley-Minto Reforms which introduced for separate electorates for Hindus and Muslims, to make success the 'Divide and Rule Policy'.
17. Lord Minto : Governor-General of India in 1909.
18. Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi : Leader of Indian National Movement from 1920-1947 called The Father of the Nation and propounder of Gandhism.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which one of the following pairs regarding Indian nationalism is correctly matched?

Leaders	Contribution
(a) Sardar Patel	: Hindustan Socialist Republican Army
(b) Bhagat Singh	: Swaraj Party
(c) C.R. Das	: Bardoli Satyagraha
(d) Jawahar Lal Nehru	: Oudh Kisan Sabha

Ans :

OD 2024

- (d) Jawahar Lal : Oudh Kisan Sabha

2. Who among the following brought out 'Bengal Gazette; the first weekly newspaper?
- Bipin Chandra Pal
  - Bal Gangadhar Tilak
  - Gangadhar Bhattacharya
  - Raja Rammohan Roy

**Ans :**

OD 2023

(c) Gangadhar Bhattacharya

3. Which of the following was the reason for calling off 'the Non-cooperation Movement' by Gandhiji?
- Pressure from the British Government
  - Second Round Table Conference
  - Gandhiji's arrest
  - Chauri-Chaura incident

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

(d) Chauri-Chaura incident

4. Who among the following wrote the Vande Mataram?
- Rabindranath Tagore
  - Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay
  - Abindranath Tagore
  - Dwarkanath Tagore

**Ans :**

OD 2020

(b) Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay

5. Certain events are given below. Choose the appropriate chronological order :-
- Coming of Simon Commission to India
  - Demand of Purna Swaraj in Lahore Session of INC.
  - Government of India Act, 1919
  - Champaran Satyagraha

Choose the correct option :-

- 3 - 2 - 4 - 1
- 1 - 2 - 4 - 3
- 2 - 3 - 1 - 4
- 4 - 3 - 1 - 2

**Ans :**

OD 2020

(d) 4 - 3 - 1 - 2

6. Who among the following published 'Punjab Kesri'?
- Balgangadhar Tilak
  - Mahatma Gandhi

- Bhagat Singh
- B.R Ambedkar

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

(a) Balgangadhar Tilak

7. Which one of the following option best signifies this picture?



- Indian workers march in south Africa 1913.
- The Boycott of foreign cloths 1922.
- Chauri Chaura Movement.
- Dandi March lead by Mahatma Gandhi.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, 2010

- Indian workers march in south Africa 1913.

8. Arrange the following events in the ascending year of their occurrence :-

- Poona Act
- Mahatma Gandhi got arrested
- Gandhi Irwin Pact
- Bhagat singh and two others were sentenced to death

**Options :**

- 1, 4, 2, 3
- 2, 3, 4, 1
- 4, 2, 3, 1
- 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

(b) 2, 3, 4, 1

9. Which one of the following was published by Raja Ram Mohan Roy?

- Sambad Kaumudi
- Shamsul Akhbar
- Punjab Kesari
- Chandrika

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

(a) Sambad Kaumudi

- 10.** **Assertion :** In 1917, Gandhiji organised a satyagraha to support the peasants of the Kheda district of Gujarat.

**Reason :** The peasants were affected by crop failure and plague epidemic. They could not pay the revenue and were demanding that revenue collection be relaxed.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

OD 2020, SQP 2018

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 11.** Arrange the following events in the correct sequence-

1. Mahatma Gandhi returned to India from South Africa.
2. Congress gave its support to Khilafat Movement.
3. Dandi March
4. Mahatma Gandhi travelled to Champaran in Bihar to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system.

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 4, 2, 3, 1
- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3

- 12.** Study the following picture and choose the correct option :



- (a) Women were neither encouraged nor allowed to join national freedom movement.
- (b) For the first time women joined nationalist processions in masses.
- (c) Britishers were not very much concerned about such movements.
- (d) Women were forced to join the freedom movements.

**Ans :**

SQP 2015

- (b) For the first time women joined nationalist processions in masses.

- 13.** **Assertion :** Rich peasants became enthusiastic supporters of the Civil Disobedience Movement, organising their communities and at times forcing reluctant members to participate in the boycott programmes.

**Reason :** However, they were deeply happy when the movement was called off in 1931 with revenue rates being lowered.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**  
**Every School conduct Pre-Board**  
**From These Sample Papers**

14. Identify the appropriate reason for the formation of the Swaraj Party from the options given below :
- Wanted members of Congress to return to Council Politics.
  - Wanted members of Congress to ask for Purna Swaraj for Indians.
  - Wanted members of Congress to ask Dominion State for India.
  - Wanted members of Congress to oppose Simon Commission.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (a) Wanted members of Congress to return to Council Politics.

15. Match the following items given in Column A with those in Column B. Choose the correct answer from the options given below:

Column A	Column B
A. Supervision of functioning of banks.	1. Japan
B. First Asian country to be Industrialised.	2. Henry Ford
C. Pioneer of the system of mass production.	3. Secularism
D. No official religion, constitution does not give any special status.	4. Reserve Bank of India

**Options**

- A – 4, B – 1, C – 3, D – 2
- A – 4, B – 1, C – 2, D – 3
- A – 2, B – 1, C – 3, D – 4
- A – 2, B – 3, C – 4, D – 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (b) A – 4, B – 1, C – 2, D – 3

16. **Assertion :** Gandhiji entered into Gandhi-Irwin Pact on 5 March 1931.

**Reason :** Ghaffar Khan and Jawaharlal Nehru were both put in jail, the Congress

was declared illegal, and a series of measures had been imposed to prevent meetings, demonstrations and boycotts.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion
- Assertion is true but reason is false
- Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

17. Arrange the following in correct sequence:

- Gandhi-Irwin Pact
- Gandhi sent letter to Viceroy Lord Irwin.
- Violation of Salt Act. by Mahatma Gandhi.

**Options :**

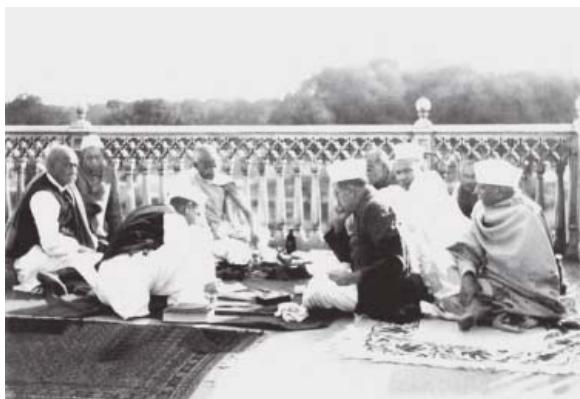
- 1, 2, 3
- 2, 3, 1
- 3, 2, 1
- 2, 1, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (b) 2, 3, 1

18. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Identify the man who is sitting fifth from right?

- Sardar Vallabhbhai Patel
- Jawaharlal Nehru

- (c) Subhas Chandra Bose  
 (d) Mahatma Gandhi

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- (c) Subhas Chandra Bose

**19. Identify the Agitation -**

- Also known as “Pure Soul Force”.
  - It was not a physical force.
  - A person engaged in this agitation shall not seek the destruction of the opponent.
  - Played a vital role in the freedom of India.
- (a) Jallianwala Bagh Movement  
 (b) Satyagraha  
 (c) Dandi Andolan  
 (d) Quit India movement

**Ans :**

OD 2013, Delhi 2017

- (b) Satyagraha

**20. Arrange the following in the correct sequence of occurrence:**

1. Dandi March
2. Kheda Satyagraha
3. Champaran Satyagraha
4. Arrival of Gandhiji

**Options :**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1  
 (b) 2, 3, 4, 1  
 (c) 4, 3, 2, 1  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**21. Complete the following table with the correct information-**

Event	Headed by	Lasted From to	Protest Against
Dandi March	Mahatma Gandhi	A - ?	B - ?

- (a) A - 12th March 1930 to 6th April 1930,  
 B - British salt monopoly  
 (b) A - 12th March 1921 to 6th April 19321,  
 B - Irwin act  
 (c) A - 12th March 1921 to 6th April 1922,  
 B - Jaliyawala Incident  
 (d) A - 12th March 1930 to 6th April 1931,  
 B - Rowlatt Act

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (a) A - 12th March 1930 to 6th April 1930,  
 B - British salt monopoly.

**22. Identify the incident-**

- Happened on April 13, 1919 in the northern state of India
- People were protesting against the government’s new repressive measures
- Some people come to attend the annual baisakhi fair
- The objective of such act was to “produce a moral effect”

**Options :**

- (a) Second Round Table Conference  
 (b) Dandi March  
 (c) Jallianwala Bagh Incident  
 (d) Chauri Chaura Incident

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

- (c) Jallianwala Bagh Incident

**23. Arrange the following events in the correct sequence-**

1. Quit India movement launched
2. Muslim League Established
3. Death of Lala Lajpat Rai
4. Formation of federation of Indian Chamber of commerce and industries

**Options**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3  
 (b) 2, 3, 4, 1  
 (c) 4, 2, 3, 1  
 (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (c) 4, 2, 3, 1

**24. Identify the movement-**

- Started by Mahatma Gandhi supporting to bring the Hindus and Muslims together.
- Was started to support the khalifa of Turkey.
- A decision was taken in Calcutta congress session 1920 to support it.
- Muslim leaders like the brothers Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, discussed about it with Mahatma Gandhi.

**Options**

- (a) Jallianwala Bagh Movement

- (b) Khilafat Movement  
 (c) Dandi Andolan  
 (d) Quit India movement

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (b) Khilafat Movement

**25.** Arrange the following in the sequence in which the events occurred:

1. Chauri-Chaura
2. Khilafat Movement
3. Second Round Table Conference
4. Civil Disobedience Movement

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3  
 (b) 2, 3, 4, 1  
 (c) 4, 2, 3, 1  
 (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

OD 2012, 2010

- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**26.** Complete the following table with the correct information-

Act	Passed by	Date	Implies
A - ?	Imperial legislative council	B - ?	Arrest of a person without warrant

- (b) A - Rowlatt Act, B - February 1921  
 (b) A - Rowlatt Act, B - February 1919  
 (c) A - Irwin Act, B - February 1921  
 (c) A - Irwin Act, B - February 1919

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

- (b) A - Rowlatt Act, B - February 1919

**27.** Identify the place from the details given below:

- The place is known for salt satyagraha
- The place was chosen as the start of Civil Disobedience Movement
- The place is situated in Gujarat.

**Options :**

- (a) Jallianwala Bagh  
 (b) Champaran  
 (c) Chauri-Chaura  
 (d) Dandi

**Ans :**

SOP 2019

- (d) Dandi

**28. Assertion :** The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras.

**Reason :** In many places, merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion

(c) Assertion is true but reason is false

(d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**29.** Arrange the following in correct sequence:

1. Simon Commission
2. Rowlatt Act
3. Adoption of Purna Swaraj by the Congress

**Options**

- (a) 1, 2, 3  
 (b) 2, 3, 1  
 (c) 3, 2, 1  
 (d) 2, 1, 3

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (d) 2, 1, 3

**30.** Following portrait of Bal Gangadhar Tilak is surrounded by symbols of



- (a) Symbols of Freedom
- (b) Symbols of Unity
- (c) Symbols of Equality
- (d) Symbols of Nationalism

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (b) Symbols of Unity

**31. Assertion :** In Awadh, the peasants were led by Alluri Sitaram Raju.

**Reason :** The movement here was against Oudh Kisan Sabha.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**32. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:**

1. Chauri Chaura Incident
2. Khilafat Movement
3. Jallianwala Bagh Incident
4. Mahatma Gandhi returned to India

#### Options

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019, OD 2012

- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1

**33. Assertion :** The Non-Cooperation Movement gradually slowed down for a variety of reasons in the cities.

**Reason :** As the boycott movement spread, and people began discarding imported clothes and wearing only Indian ones, production of Indian textile mills and handlooms went up.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**34. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:**  
**The Rowlatt Act:**

1. Martial law was imposed, and General Dyer took command.
2. Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act.
3. Local leaders were picked up from Amritsar, and Mahatma Gandhi was barred from entering Delhi.
4. It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities.

#### Options

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1

**35. Complete the table with the correct information:**

Round table conference	Held in	Meeting outcome
First round table conference	Nov 1930-Jan 1931	The British government understood the importance and the need for the congress party to make any decision
Second round table conference	A - ?	This conference was deemed a failure because of the many disagreements among the participants.
Third round table conference	Nov- Dec 1932	B - ?

- (a) A - Sep - Dec 1927, B - Government of India Act (1932) was passed
- (b) A - Sep - Dec 1927, B - Government of India Act (1935) was passed
- (c) A - Sep - Dec 1931, B - Government of India Act (1935) was passed
- (d) A - Sep - Dec 1931, B - Government of India Act (1932) was passed

Ans :

Delhi 2015

- (c) A - Sep - Dec 1931, B - Government of India Act (1935) was passed.

**36. Assertion :** Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay wrote 'Vande Mataram' as a hymn to the motherland and it was later included in his novel Anandamath and widely sung during the Swadeshi movement.

**Reason :** Rabindranath Tagore painted his famous image of Bharat Mata, which is portrayed as an ascetic figure, who is calm, composed, divine and spiritual.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

Ans :

SQP 2013, OD 2011

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**37.** This war was the first modern industrial war. It saw the use of machine guns, tanks, aircraft, chemical weapons, etc. on a massive scale. These were all increasingly products of modern large scale industry. To fight the war, millions of soldiers had to be recruited from around the world and moved to the frontlines on large ships and trains.

Analyse the above given information, considering one of the following correct option.

- (a) It is talking about the Industrial War
- (b) It is talking about the First World War
- (c) It is talking about the Cold War
- (d) It is talking about the Second World War

Ans :

Comp 2016

- (b) It is talking about the First World War

**38. Assertion :** When Simon Commission arrived in India, it was greeted with the slogan 'Go back Simon'.

**Reason :** This happened as Mahatma Gandhi was on Dandi March during that time

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

Ans :

SQP 2019

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**39.** Describe the role of Alluri Sitaram Raju in Andhra Pradesh during 1920s.

Ans :

Delhi 2020

Alluri Sitaram Raju claimed that he had a variety of special power and that he could make correct astrological predictions and heal people and he could survive even bullet shots.

- (1) Captivated by Raju, the rebels proclaimed that he was an incarnation of God.
- (2) Raju talked about the greatness of Mahatma Gandhi, and was inspired by the Non-cooperation Movement. He persuaded people to give up drinking and wear khadi.
- (3) However, Raju also asserted that India could be liberated only by the use of force, not non-violence. The Gudem rebels attacked police stations, attempted to kill British officials and carried on guerilla warfare for achieving Swaraj.

**40.** Why did the British Government appoint the Simon Commission ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

Appointment of Simon Commission : Simon Commission was appointed by the British Government to fulfil its constitutional aspirations. Firstly, Commission was to look into the working of the government of India Act of 1919 and to report its success and failure in India. Secondly, Commission was also to submit a list of suggestions which were essential to make political changes in India, but this commission was without any representation from India.

- 41.** Describe in brief the reactions of the people immediately after Jallianwalla Bagh incident.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (1) As the news of Jallianwalla Bagh spread, the crowd took to streets in many North Indian towns.
- (2) There were strikes, clashes with the police and attack on government buildings.
- (3) The government responded with brutal repression, seeking to humiliate and terrorise the people. Satyagrahis resisted with courage.

- 42.** Why did large sections of Muslims could not respond to the call for a united struggle through Civil Disobedience Movement ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

Large sections of Muslims could not respond to the call for a united struggle through Civil Disobedience Movement because:

- (1) They felt themselves alienated from the Congress after the decline of the Non-Cooperation Khilafat Movement.
- (2) They feared that their culture and identity would be submerged under the domination of a Hindu majority.

- 43.** How did the revival of Indian folklore help to develop the ideas of nationalism ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (1) National folk gave a true picture of traditional culture that had been corrupted by outside forces.

- (2) National folk song were helpful in discovering one's national identity.
- (3) They were helpful in restoring a sense of pride in one's past.

- 44.** What do you know about the Civil Disobedience Movement ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

Civil Disobedience Movement :

- (1) It was a movement revealing negligence and defiance towards the British laws. It was launched by Mahatma Gandhi in April, 1930.
- (2) First successful mass movement.
- (3) People from all sections participated role of students; people, young and old joined.

- 45.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement ?

**Ans :**

OD 2010

Causes of Withdrawal of Non-Cooperation Movement: Some activists of the Non-Cooperation Movement put a police station on fire at Chauri-Chaura (Gorakhpur), Uttar Pradesh in which 21 policemen alived burnt. Due to their foolishness a peaceful non-violent movement turned into ugly violent movement. Mahatma Gandhi, the priest of non-violence decided immediately to withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement.

- 46.** Why did the Muslims fail to respond to, the call of unified struggle during Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2009

During Civil Disobedience Movement Muslims did not take part in unified struggle. The main reason was that in the year 1933 Rehmat Ali uttered the word Pakistan in one meeting which grew the narrow and selfish feelings in the hearts of Muslims. It was accepted by Mohammad Ali Jinna the leader of Mohammadans of Bharat. He put this feelings before the Muslims of India. On this basis maximum muslims decided not to take part in Civil Disobedience Movement.

- 47.** "The Congress was reluctant to include the demands of industrial workers in its programme of struggle." Analyse the reasons.

Ans :

Foreign 2015

The industrial working classes did not participate in the Civil Disobedience Movement in large numbers except in Nagpur region. In 1930, thousands of workers in Chhotanagpur tin mines wore Gandhi caps and participated in protest rallies and boycott campaigns. But the Congress was reluctant to include worker's demands as part of its programme of struggle because it felt that this would alienate industrialists. The Congress also hoped that this would divide the anti-imperial forces.

- 48.** Mention any three efforts made by Gandhiji to get Harijans their rights.

Ans :

Foreign 2017

- (1) He called the untouchables, Harijans or the children of God.
- (2) He organised satyagraha to secure them entry into temples and access to public wells, tanks and schools.
- (3) He persuaded upper castes to change their heart and give up the sin of untouchability.

- 49.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi perceive salt as a powerful symbol that unite the nation ?

Ans :

SQP 2014

Gandhiji perceived salt as a powerful symbol that united nation because,

- (a) Salt was something consumed by the rich and the poor alike
- (b) It was the most essential items of food
- (c) The tax on salt and the government monopoly over its production revealed the most oppressive face of the British rule.

- 50.** What led to the spread of Non-Cooperation movement to the countryside ? Explain any three factors.

Ans :

Foreign 2011

- (1) The peasants had to do begar at landlord's farm without any payment.

- (2) The peasants demanded reduction of land revenue and abolition of begar.
- (3) The tenants had no security of tenure and were regularly evicted from land.

- 51.** How did the revival of Indian folklore help to develop the ideas of nationalism ?

Ans :

OD 2007

- (1) National folk gave a true picture of traditional culture that had been corrupted by outside forces.
- (2) National folk song were helpful in discovering one's national identity.
- (3) They were helpful in restoring a sense of pride in one's past.

- 52.** What did the image of Bharat Mata painted by Abanindranath Tagore portray ?

Ans :

Delhi 2014

- (1) Bharat Mata is portrayed as an ascetic figure.
- (2) She is calm, composed, divine and spiritual.
- (3) This mother figure came to be seen as evidence of one's nationalism.
- (4) Mother figure shown as dispensing learning, food and clothing.

- 53.** When and where was Khilafat Committee formed ? What was its objective ?

Ans :

Delhi 2012 2022

It was formed in March, 1919 in Bombay. Its objective were as follows :

- (1) To defend the temporal powers of the Khalifa of Turkey, the spiritual head of Islamic world.
- (2) To avert a harsh peace treaty (as was approached) which was to be imposed on the Ottoman empire.

- 54.** Who designed the Swaraj Flag ? What were the features of this flag ? How was it used as a symbol of defiance ?

Ans :

Delhi 2017 2016 2015 2012

- (1) In 1921, Gandhiji had designed the Swaraj Flag.

- (2) It was given a tricolour (red, green and white) and had a spinning wheel in the centre representing the Gandhian ideal of self-help.
- (3) Carrying the flag, holding it aloft, during marches became a symbol of defiance.
55. Explain the ideas of Gandhiji as he expressed in the famous book 'Hind Swaraj' regarding Non-Cooperation.

**Ans :**

SOP 2015

In his book, Hind Swaraj, Gandhiji gave reasons for the success of the British rule in India and how the Non-Cooperation Movement could make it to collapse.

- (1) In his views, the British rule was established in India with the co-operation of Indians and had survived only because of this co-operation.
- (2) If Indians refused to cooperate, the British rule would collapse within a year.
- (3) The success of Non-Cooperation Movement would bring Swaraj for the Indian people.
56. Evaluate the contribution made by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay towards Swadeshi Movement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

Following contributions were made by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay towards Swadeshi Movement:

- (1) The image of Bharat Mata was first created by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay.
- (2) In the 1870s, he wrote 'Vande Matram' as a hymn to the motherland.
- (3) Later it was included in his novel, 'Anandamath' and widely sung during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal.
57. Why did Mahatma Gandhi choose 'Salt Tax' to launch the Civil Disobedience Movement ? Explain three reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017, Delhi 2009

Mahatma Gandhi chose 'Salt Tax' to launch the Civil Disobedience Movement because :

- (1) Salt was something consumed by the rich and the poor alike, and it was one of the most essential items of food.
- (2) The tax on salt and the government monopoly over its production, as Mahatma Gandhi declared, revealed the most oppressive face of British rule.
- (3) All classes within Indian society could identify with it and everyone could be brought together in a united campaign.

58. Which folk tales were published by Natesa Sastri ? Highlight the main point of his thinking.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016, OD 2015

- (1) Natesa Sastri published a massive four volume collection of Tamil folk tales, 'The Folklore of Southern India'.
- (2) He believed that folklore was national literature. It was the most trustworthy manifestation of people's real thought and characteristics.
- (3) Ideas of nationalism developed through a movement to revive Indian folklore. In late-nineteenth-century India, nationalists began recording folk tales sung by bards.

59. Explain any three features of the peasant movement organised in Awadh in the second decade of the 20th century.

or

What were the main demands of the peasants of Oudh ?

**Ans :**

OD 2016, 2015, 2014

- (1) The peasant movement organised in Awadh in 1920, demanded reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of oppressive landlords.
- (2) In many places local leaders told peasants that the Gandhiji had declared that no taxes were to be paid and land was to be redistributed among the poor.
- (3) The name of the Mahatma was being invoked to sanction all actions and aspirations.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 60.** Who organized the Depressed Classes Association and what were the aims of this association ?

or

Who organised the Depressed Classes Association and with what aims ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016 2015

- (1) Dr. B.R. Ambedkar organized the Depressed Classes Association.
- (2) The main aims of this association were :
  - (a) Reserved seats in educational institutions.
  - (b) Separate electorate that would choose dalit members for legislative councils.

- 61.** Describe the incidence of Jallianwala Bagh Massacre.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

On 13 April the famous Jallianwala Bagh incident took place.

- (1) A large crowd had gathered in the enclosed grounds of Jallianwala Bagh to make a peaceful protest against the repressive measures of the government and also to attend the annual Baisakhi fair.
- (2) Being from outside the city, many villagers were unaware of the martial law that had been imposed.
- (3) General Dyer entered the area, blocked all the exit points and opened fire on the innocent crowd, killing hundreds.

- 62.** Explain the reasons for relaunching the Civil Disobedience Movement by Gandhiji.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

The Civil Disobedience Movement was relaunched in 1932. Reasons for relaunching of movement are as under :

- (1) Failure of talks in the 2nd Round Table Conference.
- (2) Country was passing through unrest. There were strikes by railway workers in 1930 and dock workers in 1932. Peasants were facing high taxation and poverty.
- (3) The Viceroy refused to meet Gandhiji or take any steps to relieve the measures of

the people so Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement.

- 63.** Describe any two suggestive measures taken by the British administration to clamp down on nationalists.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

The British suggested the following three measures to clamp down on nationalists :

- (1) Provision Government of India Act 1935 : In this act provinces and princely states were given autonomy to decide their own government and draft constitution for governance. The Congress Committee rejected this act of 1935. According to this Act the elected members were ineffective and unreal.
- (2) The Cripps Mission was sent to India in March 1942 under the chairmanship of Sir Stafford Cripps to win the co-operation of the Indian people in the World War II. British people had become very precarious due to Hitler's attack.

- 64.** Discuss the role of women in the revolutionary movement.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (1) Women led by Surya Sen raided the port of Chittagong on April 18, 1930 and seized armoury. These were Pritilata Wadedar and Kalpana Dutt, Suniti Chaudhary, Shanti Ghose etc.
- (2) Pritilata attacked upon the European club in Chittagong. She was injured and committed suicide to escape arrest.
- (3) Suniti Chaudhary and Shanti Ghose shot dead District Magistrate of Tripura.
- (4) In Calcutta University, Bina Das made an attempt on the life of Stanley Jackson, the Governor of Bengal.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 65.** What was the impact of the First World War on the economic conditions in India ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

Following were the impacts of the First World War on the economic condition in India :

- (1) The British was at one of the two sides in the war. The war created huge expenditure on arms that forced government to generate more revenue by imposing taxes.
- (2) Custom duty and other taxes were increased.
- (3) It was for the first time that the British government introduced income tax.

- 66.** Discuss the role of South India in the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

The role of South India in Non-Cooperation Movement:

- (1) Opening of national schools in Madras Presidency.
- (2) Boycott of working with the Carnatic Textile Mills.
- (3) Movement conducted by C. Rajagopalachari in Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu.
- (4) Non-Cooperation Movement led by T. Prakasam and P. Sitaramayya.

- 67.** Why did Gandhiji decide to withdraw the 'Non-Cooperation Movement' in February, 1922? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2017

Causes of withdrawal of Non-Cooperation Movement are as follows :

- (1) Some activists of Non-Cooperation Movement set a police station on fire at Chauri-Chaura (Gorakhpur), Uttar Pradesh in which 21 policemen were burnt alive.
- (2) Gandhiji felt that people of India were not ready for a nation-wide movement of mass struggle and felt that he should withdraw the movement.
- (3) Moreover, many members of the Indian National Congress felt that the Non-Cooperation Movement was tiresome and

unnecessary, since they wanted to contest the election.

- 68.** Which social evils were opposed by Gandhiji?  
or

Which social elements according to Gandhiji are against the democratic values?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015, OD 2012

According to Gandhiji following social elements are against the democratic values :

- (1) Communalism.
- (2) Casteism of politics.
- (3) Religious communalism.
- (4) Election on the basis of communalism.
- (5) Favour unjustice laws.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 69.** Describe any three causes that led to the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

The three causes that led to the Non-Cooperation Movement were:

- (1) The Rowlatt Act - After the First World War, the British government passed the Rowlatt Act authorising the arrest and imprisonment of anyone without trial.
- (2) Jallianwala Bagh Tragedy - On April 13, 1919, General Dyer ordered his troops to open fire without warning on the unarmed crowd gathered at Jallianwala Bagh protesting peacefully.
- (3) The Khilafat Movement - The Sultan of Turkey was deprived of all authority after Turkey's defeat in the First World War. To restore his position, the Khilafat Movement began under the leadership of the Ali Brothers - Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali.

- 70.** Describe any three causes of 'Civil Disobedience Movement'.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

Exploring the causes of the Civil Disobedience Movement allows us to comprehend the

discontent brewing amongst the Indian population. Some of the key factors that sparked this movement include:

- (1) Salt Tax: The British salt tax was a severe burden on the Indian population, particularly the poor. The British monopoly over the production and sale of salt was seen as a stark example of their exploitative economic policies.
  - (2) Simon Commission: The commission, sent to India in 1928 to recommend constitutional reforms, was boycotted and widely criticized by Indians for its all-British composition.
  - (3) Demand for Purna Swaraj: The Indian National Congress's declaration of Purna Swaraj, or total self-rule, on 26<sup>th</sup> January 1930, was a critical precursor to the Civil Disobedience Movement.
  - (4) Repression by British Government: The harsh and repressive measures taken by the British government, including the Rowlatt Act, further fuelled the anger and frustration.
71. Workers of Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and the nation of Swaraj'. Explain with examples.

Ans :

OD 2023

For plantation workers in Assam, Swaraj meant the right to move freely in and out of the confined space in which they were enclosed, and it meant retaining a link with the village from which they had come.

- (1) Under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859, plantation workers were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission, and in fact, they were rarely given such permission.
- (2) When they heard of the Non-Cooperation Movement, thousands of workers defied the authorities, left the plantations and headed home.
- (3) They believed that Gandhi Raj was coming, and everyone would be given land in their villages.
- (4) They, however, never reached their destination. Stranded on the way by a

railway and steamer strike, they were caught by the police and brutally beaten up.

72. How did the Non-Cooperation Movement unfold in the cities and towns of India?

Ans :

SQP 2022 Term 2

The Non-Cooperation Movement unfold in the cities and towns of India by the following ways:

- (1) The movement started with middle-class participation in the cities.
- (2) Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and college.
- (3) Many teachers resigned.
- (4) Lawyers gave up their legal practices.
- (5) The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras.
- (6) Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed, and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.

73. Describe the implications of First World War on the economic and political situation of India.

Ans :

OD 2020

The First World War created a new political and economic situation in India.

- (1) It led to huge increase in defence expenditure, Custom duties were raised, income tax was introduced to finance the war.
- (2) Villagers were called upon to supply soldiers, forced recruitment in rural areas caused widespread resentment.
- (3) Prices of essential commodities doubled between 1913 and 1918 leading to extreme hardship to the common people.
- (4) In 1918-19, 1920-21 crops failed in many parts of India resulting in acute food shortage.
- (5) Influenza epidemic spread. According to the census in 1921, 12-13 million people perished due to famines and epidemics.

74. Describe the role of poor peasantry in the 'Civil Disobedience Movement.'

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The roles of poor peasantry in the ‘Civil Disobedience Movement’ are discussed below:

- (1) Mahatma Gandhi found in salt a powerful symbol that could unite the nation. The idea was to make the demands wide-ranging, so that all classes within Indian society could identify with them and everyone could be brought together in a united campaign. The most stirring of all was the demand to abolish the salt tax.
- (2) Salt was something consumed by the rich and the poor alike, and it was one of the most essential items of food. The tax on salt and the government monopoly over its production, Mahatma Gandhi revealed the most oppressive face of British rule.
- (3) The poor peasantry was asked to pay more taxes when they could hardly afford to meet their ends. This infuriated poor peasants and they came in huge numbers to support Gandhiji and his followers. It was because of them that Civil Disobedience Movement could become a mass movement.

- 75.** What do you know about the Lucknow Pact of 1916? Write its importance in history of India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

The pact signed between the Indian National Congress and the Muslim League in Lucknow in 1916 is known as Lucknow Pact. The both political parties agreed to merged their differences and to give a united fight to colonial government.

**The importance of Lucknow Pact :**

- (1) It could re-unite moderate and extremist leaders of the Indian National Congress.
- (2) Controversies between the Congress and the Muslim League were settled in amicable milieu.
- (3) A united scheme of constitutional reforms was agreed between Congress and Muslim League and it was also decided to put before the British government to jointly implements those demands.

- 76.** Explain with examples the role of industrialists in the freedom struggle of India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

After launching Non-cooperation Movement by Gandhiji—causes

- (1) Foreign goods were boycotted, i.e., liquor, shops, packeted item, foreign cloth etc.
- (2) Traders refused to sold foreign good.
- (3) Man acceptance at national level.

During this time, it is Indian industry which support the cause and production of Indian goods responsible for demands went-up. Indian Industrialist like Jamuna Lal Bajaj, J.R.D., Tata and G.D. Birla group supported the movement by fullfinally the national need by keeping national interest. The Indian industry was in primitive stage technically but it was supporting the national cause too large extent at national level. French and London based companies were active to fulfil there vested interest and earn profit margin by creating forceful law and circumstances infront of manufacturers and consumer base.

- 77.** Mention any three shortcomings of the Indian Act of 1919.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014, 2010

**Shortcomings of the Indian Act of 1919:** The Act failed to fulfil the aspirations of the people in India. Rules under it were only a method of further draining India of her wealth and of prolonging her servitude. These provisions are summed up as under :

- (1) Powers to the Provinces was dissolved but Governor General in Council at the Centre was given exclusive power to decide at his will, the stately affairs.
- (2) It was the Governor-General and not the courts which decided whether a particular subject was Central or Provincial.
- (3) Electorates were divided on communal basis.
- (4) Dyarchy or dual system of administration was introduced in the provinces.

- 78.** Which were the two types of demands mentioned by Gandhi ji in his letter to viceroy Irwin on 31 January 1930. Why was

abolitions of salt tax most stirring demand?  
Explain

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

On 31 January 1930 Mahatma Gandhi wrote a letter to viceroy Irwin in which he mentioned the demands of the people which were as follows :

1. Salt tax should be removed.
2. There should be impartial judgement against the police cruel violence on civilians.
3. Non-Cooperation movement should be stopped.

Salt tax movement was most stirring because this tax effected all the civilians. M.K. Gandhi wanted to bring all members of all societies in the movement. The production of salt was the major part of the government depressing activities. So the removal of salt tax was one of the eleven demands put forward by Gandhi ji before viceroy Irwin.

79. Explain any three measures taken by the British administration to uprise the movement started against the Rowlatt Act”

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013, 2011

On 6th April 1919 after the First World War Indians were in the mood that British Govt. will give award to Indians but government announced Rowlatt Act hurriedly without thinking its repercussion. This act was based upon voters right and communalism.

1. In this Act the revolutionists were sent to impression for two years without asking any reasons.
  2. The imprisoned person could not suit file in the court against it.
  3. No one can assemble at the place against the govt. rules nor take part in procession.
80. How could Non-cooperation become a Movement? Give your opinion.

**Ans :**

Foreign, 2015

The Non-cooperation became a Movement in the following way:

(1) According to Gandhiji, there should be two stages during the Non-Cooperation Movement:

- (a) In the first stage, there should be surrender of titles that the government awarded and boycott of civil services, army, police, courts, legislative councils, schools and foreign goods.
- (b) In case of repressive policy by the government, a full civil disobedience campaign would be launched in the second stage.

(2) Through the summer of 1920, Mahatma Gandhi and Shaukat Ali toured extensively, mobilising popular support for the movement. In the months between September and December there was an intense tussle within the Congress i.e., between the supporters and the opponents of the movement.

(3) The differences were resolved at the Congress session at Nagpur in December 1920. After a compromise was worked out, the Non-cooperation programme was adopted and it took the shape of a mass movement.

81. When and why was the Cripps Mission sent to India? Point out any two main defects responsible for its failure.

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

The Cripps Mission was sent to India in March 1942 under the chairmanship of Sir Stafford Cripps to win the co-operation of the Indian people in the Second World War. In fact, the position of the British in 1942 had become very precarious because of Hitler's attacks so they wanted to enlist the co-operation of the Indians.

Cripps Mission talks failed because of the following defects :

- (1) He rejected the Congress proposal for the formation of a national government during the war.
- (2) He was not prepared to give any assurance of granting independence to India even after the war.

As such, his proposals were rejected both by the Congress and the Muslim League.

- 82.** What were the three local issues in which Gandhiji experimented his technique of Satyagrah during the years 1917-18 ? How were these issues resolved ?

or

How did Gandhiji resolve the issue of Champaran, Kheda and Ahmedabad through his unique method 'Satyagrah'?

**Ans :** OD 2017

(1) Champaran Satyagrah : The first experiment started in 1917 with Indigo farmers who were encouraged to raise their voice against oppressive rules of the British planters. Gandhiji got that demands sanctioned by the inquiry commission set-up for that purpose.

(2) Kheda Satyagrah : Second experiment was again made with farmers of Kheda in Gujarat where even after a severe famine befallen and crop failure took place, the British officials were realising land revenue at the highest rates. Finally, recovery was waived-off and issue was resolved.

(3) Ahmedabad Satyagrah : Third experiment was made with mill workers in Ahmedabad (Gujarat). Here, Gandhiji resorted to the fast technique along with workers and thus, the British Government had to increase wages upto 35% including certain reforms in working conditions which were also effected.

- 83.** Explain any three reasons for the slow-down of Non-cooperation movement in cities.

**Ans :** Delhi 2013

Non-Cooperation movement was started by Mahatma Gandhi. Some leaders of congress party were re-elected to participate in the Co-operation. They were feared that it might lead to popular violence. In December 1921 there was a session held in Nagpur in which the discussion was made on this topic. All were agree and all join the same. But this

Non-cooperation Movement slowdown in cities due to the following reasons.

- Though all were agree to boycott wear the machinery clothes but khadi was not in sufficient quantity. Khadi does not give good look in personality to wear. So the rich persons specially in cities did not use Khadi.
- Student specially in cities and the teachers wanted to boycott the British (Government) Schools but the congress could not open sufficient number of schools to satisfying the need. Ultimately teachers and students again began trickling back to government schools. The lawyers wanted to leave court but there was a problem before them that what occupation will they opt then. So the lawyers and judges could go back to join their previous occupation in government court.

- 84.** Which were the two types of demands mentioned by Gandhiji in his letter to viceroy Irwin on 31 January 1930. Why was abolition of salt tax most stirring demand ? Explain.

**Ans :** OD 2013

On 31 January 1930 Mahatma Gandhi wrote a latter to viceroy Irwin in which he mentioned the demands of the people which were as follows:

- Salt tax should be removed.
- There should be impartial judgement against the police cruel violence on civilians.
- Non-cooperation Movement should be stopped.

Salt tax movement was most stirring because this tax effected all the civilians. M.K. Gandhi wanted to bring all members of all societies in the movement. The production of salt was the major part of the government depressing activities. So the removal of salt tax was one of the eleven demands put forward by Gandhiji before viceroy Irwin.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 85.** “The two-nation theory was a total falsification of the entire history of the Indian people.” Explain the statement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014, 2012

- (1) Firstly, during a long stay and intermixing of thousands of years the Hindus and the Muslims had developed a common culture especially during the medieval times. They had almost become one people.
- (2) Secondly, suffering commonly under one foreign power, they had developed many common traits. They fought shoulder to shoulder in the Great uprising of 1857 and when they were hunted, caught and imprisoned and led on trial and hanged on a common platform they became one people.
- (3) Thirdly, when in the 20th century, the nationalist movement became a mass movement all the people were cemented into one nation.

- 86.** How did ‘Salt March’ become an effective tool of resistance against colonialism ? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2015

As the demands not were not fulfilled, Gandhiji started march from his ashram in Sabarmati to the Gujarat coastal town of Dandi. He was accompanied by his 78 trusted followers. The march continued for 24 days about 10 miles a day. During the march Gandhiji explained to the people, the meaning of swaraj and urged them to defy the British laws. On reaching Dandi on 6 April, he ceremonially violated the salt law, manufacturing salt by boiling sea water. This was the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement. People were asked to refuse co-operation as well as to break colonial laws. Thousands of people broke the salt law and demonstrated in front of government salt factories. Thus, Salt March became an effective tool of resistance against colonialism.

- 87.** Why was the participation of Dalits in the Civil Disobedience Movement limited?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

The participation of Dalits in the Civil Disobedience Movement was limited on account of following reasons:

- (1) Congress had ignored Dalits for the fear of offending the Sanatanis, conservative high caste Hindus.
- (2) Mahatma Gandhi was of the opinion that Swaraj would not come for a hundred years if untouchability was not abolished.
- (3) He called them, i.e., the ‘Harijans’, lived with them and himself cleaned toilets to dignify the work of sweepers.
- (4) Many dalit leaders however demanded reserved seats in educational institutions and separate electorate. So dalit participation in Civil Disobedience Movement was limited. They did not whole heartedly took part in it.

- 88.** The response of the Muslim community was lukewarm to the Civil Disobedience. Why?

or

“Some of the Muslim political organisations in India were lukewarm in their response to the Civil Disobedience Movement.” Examine the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016, 2013

It was because,

- (1) After the Non-Cooperation Movement, relations between Hindus and Muslims worsened as each community organised religious processions, provoking Hindu-Muslim communal clashes and riots.
- (2) The Congress members were seen as associates of Hindu religious nationalist groups like Hindu Mahasabha.
- (3) When Civil Disobedience Movement started, there was an atmosphere of suspicion and distrust between communities. Muslims feared that they would be submerged under the domination of a Hindu majority in Independent India.
- (4) The important differences were over the question of representation in the future Assemblies that were to be elected.

**89.** In which session of Congress, Non-Cooperation Movement was adopted ? What were the plans of Gandhi to launch Non-Cooperation Movement ?

**Ans :** OD 2018

In the Nagpur session of Congress, in December 1920, Congress adopted Non-Cooperation Movement that was proposed by Gandhi.

Gandhi proposed that :

- (1) Non-Cooperation Movement should unfold in stages.
- (2) Titles awarded by the government should be surrendered.
- (3) Indians should boycott civil services, army, police, courts, schools and foreign goods.
- (4) In case government uses repression, a full Civil Disobedience Movement should be launched.

**90.** Explain any four factors to show how did the First World War help in the growth of the National Movement in India.

**Ans :** Foreign 2011

The First World War helped in the growth of the national movement in India in the following ways :

- (1) Heavy loss of men and material created new political and economic situations in the country.
- (2) During the war, the villagers were forcibly recruited in army and had to do begar that led to widespread anger among Indians.
- (3) War created huge expenditure on arms that forced government to generate more revenue by imposing taxes.
- (4) Failure of crops at the same time and no support from the government created extra discontentment among the people.

**91.** Explain the idea of Satyagraha.

**Ans :** OD 2011

- (1) The idea of Satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth.

(2) It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight against the oppressor.

- (3) Without being aggressive a satyagrahi could win the battle.
- (4) This could be done by appealing to the conscience of the oppressors instead of forcing them to accept truth through the use of violence.

**92.** What was the Rowlatt Act of 1919 ? Explain the reaction of the people against the Rowlatt Act.

or

How was Rowlatt Act opposed by the people in India? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013 2011

Rowtatt Act was an oppressive Act introduced by the British government in 1919. It gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years. Indians disapproved this Act in the following ways :

- (1) Rallies were organised in various cities, workers went on strike in railways, workshops and offices were closed down.
- (2) A peaceful protest meeting was organised at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar.
- (3) Gandhiji started a hartal against this unjust law on 6th April, 1919.
- (4) Dr. Satyapal and Dr. Saif-ud-din Kitchlew were arrested.
- (5) Jallianwala Bagh massacre occurred against the arrest of these leaders.

**93.** What was the main issue behind the Khilafat Movement? Why did Gandhiji support this ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

- (1) (a) In the First World War, at the end, Turkey was defeated. There were rumours that a harsh treaty is to be imposed on the Khalifa, the spiritual head of the Muslims all over the world.

- (b) The aim of the Khilafat movement was to defend the Khalifa's temporal powers.
- (2) (a) To defend Khalifa's temporal powers, a Khilafat committee was formed. Few Muslim leaders consulted Gandhiji for his support.  
 (b) Gandhiji saw this as an opportunity to bring Muslims under the umbrella of a unified national movement and gave his consent to support this movement at the Calcutta session of the Congress.
- 94.** How did the tribals of the 'Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh interpret Swaraj'? What were the differences between the beliefs and practices of their leader, Alluri Sita Ram Raju ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

For the tribal peasants, Swaraj meant an end to begar, access to forests and non-payment of taxes.

- (1) Alluri Sitaram Raju claimed to be inspired by Gandhiji. He persuaded people to adopt Khadi and non-violence but in practice, he asserted use of violence as a means of struggle.  
 (2) He was of the opinion that India could be liberated only by the use of force.  
 (3) Under his leadership, the rebels attacked police station, attempted to kill British officials and carried on guerilla warfare for achieving Swaraj.
- 95.** What was the impact of Non-Cooperation Movement on economy ?

or

Describe briefly any three economic effects of Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (1) Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed and foreign cloths burnt in huge bonfires.  
 (2) The import of foreign cloths halved during 1921 and 1922, its value dropped from Rs. 102 crore to Rs 57 crore.

- (3) In many places, merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.  
 (4) As more and more people wore Indian cloths, the production of Indian textile mills and handloom went up.

- 96.** Who was Baba Ramchandra ? What were the problems of peasants in Awadh ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019, 2008

Baba Ramchandra was a peasant leader in Awadh. He was a sanyasi, who had earlier been to Fiji as an indentured labourer. He led a movement against the talukdars (landlords) of Awadh.

The peasants of Awadh had the following problems :

- (1) Talukdars and landlords of Awadh demanded high rents and a variety of other cesses from the peasants.  
 (2) Peasants had to do 'begar' and work at landlord's farms without any payment.  
 (3) As tenants, they had no security of tenure. They were regularly evicted so that they could acquire no right over the leased land.

- 97.** Mention three reasons by which the rich peasant communities took active participation in the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

The rich peasant communities—Patidars of Gujarat and Jats of U.P. participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement due to the following reasons :

- (1) These rich peasants used to produce commercial crops. As the prices fell and trade depression occurred, their incomes lowered very much.  
 (2) They could not pay government's revenue demands.  
 (3) Government refused to reduce the revenue demand.  
 (4) This enraged the rich peasants and they became active in the Civil Disobedience Movement as they thought that fight for Swaraj was a struggle against high revenue.

- 98.** Poor peasants kept themselves away from Congress and Civil Disobedience Movement. Why ?

Ans :

OD 2006

The poor peasantry had the following reasons to keep themselves away from Congress and the Civil Disobedience Movement :

- (1) They were badly hit by the Economic Depression. Many of the poor peasants were working on small cultivated rented land of landlords.
- (2) Due to lower incomes, during the Depression, they could not pay their rents, and wished their rent payments to be remitted.
- (3) This led to the rift between poor-peasant and rich landlords who had already supported the Congress and Civil Disobedience Movement.
- (4) Due to this, the poor peasants kept away from Congress and joined variety of radical movements, often led by socialists and communists.

- 99.** Why did the peasants join the Civil Disobedience Movement in India?

or

Evaluate any three features of the peasant movement during Civil Disobedience Movement in India.

Ans :

Delhi 2011

Peasants joined the Civil Disobedience Movement for the following reasons :

- (1) Peasants were hard hit by the economic crises and falling prices of the cash crops. They found it difficult to pay government revenue, hence there was widespread anger and resentment among the peasants.
- (2) The peasants joined the movement due to high rents and variety of other cesses that were demanded by the landlords.
- (3) The peasants demanded reduction in revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of oppressive landlords.
- (4) They wanted the unpaid rent to the landlords to be remitted.

- 100.** What prevented the working class from participating in the Civil Disobedience Movement ?

or

State any two hopes and expectations of the industrial working class from the Civil Disobedience Movement. Explain any two reasons why the Congress was not interested in including their demands.

Ans :

Delhi 2011

- (1) The industrialists and businessmen like Purshottamdas Thakurdas and G.D. Birla had profusely supported the Civil Disobedience Movement. This prevented workers to come close to Congress and movements initiated by the party.
- (2) The working class, except from the Nagpur, did not participate in the Civil Disobedience Movement.
- (3) But inspite of that, some workers adopted Gandhian ideas of boycotting foreign goods as a part of their own movements against low wages and poor working conditions.
- (4) Also, Congress was reluctant to include workers' demands as part of its programme of struggle. As this could have countered industrialist's demands and as a result, it would have alienated them from active participation.

- 101.** When did Mahatma Gandhi return from South Africa? State any two important works or Satyagrahas which Mahatma Gandhi did immediately after his arrival in India.

or

How did Mahatma Gandhi successfully organise Satyagraha movements in various places just after arriving in India? Explain by giving three examples.

Ans :

Foreign 2011

In January 1915, Mahatma Gandhi returned from South Africa. After that he played an active role in India's freedom struggle.

The idea of satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth. It suggested that if the cause was true and

the fight was against injustice then physical force was not necessary to fight against the oppressor. The works or Satyagraha were as under :

- (1) 1916 : He organised Champaran Satyagraha in Bihar. It was against the oppressive plantation system.
- (2) 1917 : He organised Satyagraha to support the peasants of Kheda district of Gujarat.
- (3) 1918 : Mahatma Gandhi went to Ahmedabad to organise a Satyagraha Movement amongst cotton mill workers.

**102.** What was Satyagraha ? Explain the three main Satyagrahas launched by Gandhiji in India.

or

Which three early Satyagrahas were organised by Mahatma Gandhi ?

or

Mention the three movements based on Satyagraha, organised by Mahatma Gandhi on his return to India from South Africa.

**Ans :**

OD 2017, Delhi 2015 2011

The idea of Satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth. It was suggested that if the cause was true, the fight was against injustice then physical force was not necessary to fight against the oppressor.

Following are the three main Satyagrahas launched by Gandhiji in India :

- (1) 1916—Gandhiji travelled to Champaran in Bihar to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system.
- (2) 1917—Organisation of Satyagraha Movement to support the peasants of Kheda district of Gujarat.
- (3) 1918—Organisation of Satyagraha amongst Ahmedabad Cotton Mill workers.

**103.** Discuss the role of the Muslims in the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

The Role of the Muslims in the Non-Cooperation Movement :

- (1) As Congress was agree to run Khilafat and Non-Cooperation Movements together,

the Muslims, therefore; joined Congress through their Khilafat Committee.

- (2) They did not cast their votes in the elections held to the legislature and started teaching institutions like Jamia Millia, Aligarh Muslims High School etc.
- (3) Hakim Ajmal Khan was voted as chairman to Congress and the great Urdu poet Maulana Hasrat Mohani proposed that Swaraj should be defined as complete independence.
- (4) When Turkish revolutionaries led by Mustafa Kamal Pasha abolished Khilafat, Indian Muslims also withdrew their support from Congress as their purpose was achieved.

**104.** ‘Some icons and symbols were used for unifying the people and sparking in them the feeling of nationalism.’ Give two evidences to support above statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 20111

Following are the two evidences :

- (1) The image of Bharat Mata came to be identified with India, the motherland. She was painted by Abanindranath Tagore as an ascetic figure calm, composed, divine and spiritual. Later the image was painted by many other artists and acquired different forms. In one image Bharat Mata is shown with a trishul, standing beside a lion and behind an elephant, both symbols of power.
- (2) The flag became a symbol of nationalism. During the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal a tricolour flag was designed with eight lotus flowers representing eight provinces of the British India and a crescent moon representing Hindus and Muslims. Gandhiji also designed the Swaraj Flag in 1921.

**105.** Compare the images of Bharat Mata in this chapter with the image of Germania in Chapter 1.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (1) The image of Germania was the symbol of German nation. Whereas, the image of

Bharat Mata was the symbol of Indian nation.

- (2) Both the images inspired nationalists who worked very hard to unify their respective countries and to attain a liberal nation.
- (3) But the image of Bharat Mata is different from that of Germania, in the sense that former reflects the religious basis of its making.
- (4) The image of Bharat Mata became a controversial figure and also indirectly played role in spread of communalism in pre-independent India. On the other hand, the image of Germania did not have any such controversy attached to it.

**106.** Write a brief essay on women's participation in the Civil Disobedience Movement of 1930.

Ans :

Delhi 2009

- (1) In 1930, women participated on a large scale in Civil Disobedience Movement.
- (2) During Gandhiji's Salt March, thousands of women came out of their homes to listen to him.
- (3) They participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign cloths and liquor shops. Many went to jail.
- (4) In urban areas, these women were from high-caste families, in rural areas, they came from rich peasant households. They considered service to nation as a sacred duty of women.

**107.** Describe the different factors that shaped the political situation in the late 1920s.

or

Which factors shaped the Indian politics by the late 1920s? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2017

- (1) The widespread movement against the Rowlatt Act was started, but was still confined to cities and towns.,
- (2) Mahatma Gandhi now felt the need to launch a more broad-based movement in India.
- (3) But, he was certain no such movement could be organised without bringing the Hindus and Muslims together.

- (4) One way of doing this, he felt, was to take up the Khilafat issue, and use it as an opportunity to bring Muslims under the umbrella of a unified national movement.
- (5) At the Calcutta Session of the Congress in September 1920, he convinced the leaders over the need to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat as well as for Swaraj.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

**108.** How did the Business class relate itself to the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain with examples.

Ans :

OD 2023

- (1) Indian merchants and industrialists were keen on expanding their businesses and reacted against colonial policies that restricted business activities.
- (2) They wanted protection against imports of foreign goods, and a rupee sterling foreign exchange ratio that would discourage imports.
- (3) To organise business interests, they funded the Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress in 1920 and the Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) in 1927.
- (4) Led by prominent industrialists like Purshottamdas Thakurdas and G.D. Birla, the industrialists attacked colonial control over the Indian economy and supported the Civil Disobedience Movement
- (5) They gave financial assistance and refused to buy or sell imported goods.
- (6) Most businessmen wanted to flourish in trade without constraints.

**109.** Highlight the reasons for the growth of nationalist tensions in the Balkan region before the First World War.

Ans :

SQP 2020, OD 2018

- (1) The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern-

day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro, whose inhabitants were broadly known as the Slays.

- (2) The spread of the ideas of romantic nationalism in the Balkans together with the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire made this region very explosive. All through the nineteenth century the Ottoman Empire had sought to strengthen itself through modernisation and internal reforms but with little success.
- (3) As the different Slavic nationalities struggled to define their identity and independence, the Balkan area became an area of intense conflict.
- (4) Each power—Russia, Germany, England, Austro-Hungary—was keen on countering the hold of other powers over the Balkans, and extending its own control over the area.
- (5) This led to a series of wars in the region and finally the World War I.

**110.** The Civil Disobedience Movement saw the participation of different social classes and groups. Give reasons for the participation of the following:

- (1) rich peasants
- (2) poor peasants
- (3) business classes
- (4) industrial working classes
- (5) women.

**Ans :**

Compt 2019

The reasons for the participation of various social classes and groups in Civil Disobedience Movement are as follows:

- (1) Rich peasants : Rich peasant communities like patidars of Gujarat and the jats of Uttar Pradesh joined the movement because, being producers of commercial crops they were hard hit by the trade depression and falling prices. Due to the refusal of the government to reduce the revenue demand made them fight against high revenues.

- (2) Poor peasants : Joined the movement because they found it difficult to pay rent. They wanted the unpaid rent to the landlord to be remitted.
- (3) Business class : They reacted against colonial policies that restricted activities because they were keen on expanding their business and for this they wanted protection against imports of foreign goods. They thought that Swaraj would cancel colonial restrictions and trade would flourish without restrictions.
- (4) Industrial working class : They did not participate in large numbers except in the Nagpur region. Some workers did participate in, selectively adopting some of the Gandhian programme, like boycott of foreign goods, as a part of their own movements against low wages and poor working conditions.
- (5) Women : There were large scale participation of women in the movement. They participated in protest marches, manufactured salt, and picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops. Many went to jail.

- 111.** The middle classes played an important role in the Non-Cooperation Movement in the cities. Explain. Why do you think that the movement slowed down in the cities?

**Ans :**

OD 2019, 2017

Middle classes played an important role in the Non-cooperation movement in the cities :

- (1) Thousands of students left the government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned, and lawyers gave up their legal practices.
- (2) The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras.
- (3) Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed, and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.

The movement in the cities gradually slowed down for a variety of reasons :

- (1) Khadi cloth was more expensive than mass-produced mill cloth and poor people

could not afford it and therefore, could not boycott mill cloth for very long.

- (2) Similarly, boycotting British institutions also posed a problem as there were no alternative national institutions to fulfil the educational needs.
  - (3) As a result, students and teachers began trickling back to government schools and lawyers joined back work in government courts.
- 112.** How did Non-Cooperation movement start with participation of middle class people in the cities? Explain its impact on the economic front.

Ans :

OD 2018

Non-cooperation movement started with middle class participation in the cities :

- (1) This movement was launched by Gandhiji in 1920. Its aims were to show resentment to actions considered oppressive like Jallianwala Bagh and Rowlatt Act. Thousands of students left government controlled school and colleges.
- (2) Teachers, Headmasters resigned and lawyers gave up their legal practices.
- (3) The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except made as where the justice party, the party of non-Brahmans felt that entering power the council was one way of gaining.

#### Impact on Economic Front

- (1) Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed, and foreign clothes were burnt hugely.
- (2) In many areas, traders and merchants refused to trade in foreign goods and sometimes they even refused to finance foreign trade. The import of foreign trade halved between 1921 and 1922.
- (3) As the boycott movement spread, people used only Indian clothes and began to discard foreign clothes. As a result, production of Indian textile mills and handloom went up largely.

- 113.** Why did Gandhiji start Non-Cooperation Movement? Explain.

Ans :

SQP 2021

Gandhiji started the Non-cooperation movement of 1921 because:

- (1) According to Gandhiji, the British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians and had survived only because of this cooperation. So the time has arrived to withdraw cooperation from the British.
- (2) After returning from Africa in 1915 Gandhiji launched some local satyagraha's but he was looking for an opportunity to launch a national level movement against the Britishers.
- (3) First World War added to the misery of the Indian people. Heavy taxes, high prices, famines, and epidemics made people's life miserable.
- (4) British in India passed the Rowlatt act even after opposition by Indian Leaders. This act curbed political activities and allowed the detention of political prisoners.
- (5) Jallianwala Bagh Massacre and the injustice done to Punjab made Indians angry which needed to be avenged.

- 114.** Why was Congress reluctant to allow women to hold any position of authority within the organisation ? How did women participate in Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2018

Gandhiji was convinced that it was duty of a woman to look after her family and home, they should be good mothers and good wives. And for a long time the Congress was reluctant to allow women to hold any position of authority within the organisation. Women' participation took its way in the following ways :

- (1) During Gandhi Ji's Salt March thousands of women came out of their houses to listen to him.
- (2) They participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops.
- (3) Many women were arrested and were sent to jail. In urban areas these women were

from high caste families. e.g., Sarojini Naidu, Satyavati Devi, Kamla Nehru etc. In rural areas they came from rich peasant household.

- (4) Women broke doors of shops, came on the roads and helped the movement leaders.
  - (5) In Bombay, a large section of women of Gujarati community was influenced by Gandhiji's idealism and participated in National Movement. Bengal being the nervecentre of female education in India, increased the women's participation in nationalism. In 1930 women rallied before Bethune College, Calcutta in support of Gandhiji's Civil Disobedience Movement.
- 115.** Why did Gandhi decide to launch a nationwide 'Satyagraha' against the proposed Rowlatt Act (1919)? How was it opposed? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

Provisions of Rowlatt Act. The Rowlatt Act was passed despite the united opposition of the Indian members of Imperial Legislative Council.

- (1) The Act gave the government enormous powers to oppress political agitations.
- (2) It had allowed the detention of political prisoners without trial for two years. There was no provision for appeal.

The passing of this Act aroused large-scale indignation.

Gandhiji's Reaction. Gandhiji, who had formed a Satyagraha Sabha earlier, called for a country-wide protest against the proposed Rowlatt Act. Throughout the country, 6 April 1919 was observed as a National Humiliation Day. Gandhiji wanted a non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws. Hartals and rallies were organised in various cities. Workers went on strike in railway workshops. Shops were closed down. Communication, railway, telegraph lines were disrupted. The movement was non-violent but proved to be effective.

- 116.** Why was the 'Salt March' considered an effective symbol of resistance against colonialism? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

Mahatma Gandhi found in salt a powerful symbol that could unite the nation.

- (1) On 31st January, 1930 he sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands, one of which was the demand to abolish Salt Tax.
- (2) Salt was one of the most essential food items consumed by the rich and poor alike. The tax on salt and the government monopoly over its production was considered an oppression on the people by the British Government.
- (3) Mahatma Gandhi's letter was an ultimatum and if his demands were not fulfilled by March 11, he had threatened to launch a civil disobedience campaign.
- (4) So, Mahatma Gandhi started his famous Salt March accompanied by 78 of his trusted volunteers. The march was over 240 miles, from Gandhiji's ashram in Sabarmati to the Gujarati coastal town of Dandi.
- (5) The volunteers walked for 24 days, about 10 miles a day. Thousands came to hear Mahatma Gandhi wherever he stopped, and he told them what he meant by Swaraj and urged them to peacefully defy the British.
- (6) On 6th April, he reached Dandi, and ceremonially violated the law, manufacturing salt by boiling sea water. This marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.

- 117.** How did the Non-Cooperation Movement spread to the countryside and drew into its fold the struggles of peasants and tribal communities? Elaborate.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018 , OD 2017

The movement spread to the countryside also. It drew into the struggles of peasants and tribals from different parts of India.

- (1) In Awadh, the peasants' movement led by Baba Ramchandra was against talukdars and landlords who demanded extremely high rents and a variety of other cesses from the peasants. Peasants were forced to work in landlords' farms without

any payment (begar). Peasants had no security of tenure, thus being regularly evicted so that they could acquire no right over the leased land. The demands of the peasants were reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of oppressive landlords. In 1920, Jawahar Lal Nehru began talking to the villagers and formed 'Oudh Kisan Sabha'. Within a month, 300 branches had been set up in the villages.

- (2) In the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh, a militant guerrilla movement spread in the early 1920s against the closure of forest areas by the colonial government, preventing the tribal people from entering the forests to graze their cattle, or to collect fuelwood and fruits. They felt that their traditional rights were being denied. When the government forced them to contribute begar for road building, the hill people revolted. Their leader Alluri Sitaram Raju, inspired by Mahatma Gandhi, persuaded people to wear Khadi and give up drinking. He asserted that India could be liberated by the use of force.
118. How had the 'First World War' created economic problems in India? Explain with examples.

Ans :

OD 2019

The economic effects of the First World War were:

- (1) The First World War led to huge expenditures in defence. These expenditures were to be financed by increasing the taxes and by raising custom duties.
- (2) During the time of the First World War, crop failure resulted in acute shortage of food.
- (3) During the war, the food prices increased, they almost doubled between 1913 and 1918. This increased the hardships of the people of India.
- (4) Villages were called upon to supply soldiers. At some rural places, the colonial

government forced people to join the army. It caused widespread resentment and anger amongst the people. It set the stage for the Great Depression.

- (5) There was spread of influenza epidemic which contributed to the hardships of the people. The war weakened the gold standard.
119. "The Civil Disobedience Movement was different from the Non-co-operation Movement." Support the statement with examples.

Ans :

Delhi 2016

Civil Disobedience Movement : It was a movement revealing negligence and defiance towards the British law. It was launched by Mahatma Gandhi in April 1930.

Following were the four features of Civil Disobedience Movement:

- (1) The Civil Disobedience Movement was a unique movement. Gandhiji found in salt a motivating and powerful symbol that could unite the nation against the government monopoly over its production. In the beginning, the issue of salt looked ordinary, however, it provided the most stirring one.
- (2) The Civil Disobedience Movement was slightly different from the Non-cooperation Movement. During the Civil Disobedience Movement people were asked not only to deny co-operation with the British but also to break colonial laws.
- (3) The Civil Disobedience Movement spread like wild fire. The strong wind of the movement re-energised all the classes of the nation. Salt law was broken, foreign cloth was boycotted and liquor shops were picketed, peasants declined to pay revenue and Chaukidari taxes.
- (4) The resurgence of the Civil Disobedience Movement blended the colonial government. One of the most important features of this movement was the large scale participation of women. Thousands of women came out of their homes

and participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops.

- 120.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi find in ‘salt’ a powerful symbol that could unite the nation? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2016, 2013

Salt March and its importance : Salt being a commodity of every individual’s consumption, and further, being its undepleting stock in the seas and ocean; it was a gross atrocity on part of the British Government to impose tax on it and take it under public sector. It was, therefore, a good opportunity to disclose malafide intention of the foreign government before masses of India. We see that Mahatma Gandhi had launched that Dandi March on 13th March, 1930 C.E. abiding by democratic means as under :

- (1) He had sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands.
- (2) These demands were wide ranging some were general and some specific. These were concerning interests of all sections of Indian society.
- (3) Demand of removal of tax on salt was one among those demands.
- (4) It was specifically mentioned that in case, Government appears unwilling to negotiate on demands by 11 March, Congress would launch a civil disobedience campaign. As the British government gave no response to these demands, Gandhi was all right in launching Dandi March—a 375 km. long march from Sabarmati Ashram to the coastal town of Gujarat (Dandi). On these counts, Dandi March was an effective symbol of resistance against colonialism as it could gather nationwide support of Indian masses. It was an open challenge to the British laws.

- 121.** How did the Civil Disobedience Movement come into force in various parts of the country? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

- (1) In the countryside the rich peasants of Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh were active in the movement. They were badly hit by the trade depression and falling prices. At last they became enthusiastic supporters of the Civil Disobedience Movement.
- (2) Many of the poor peasants were the small tenants. They were cultivating land they had rented from the landlords. As the depression continued, they found it difficult to pay their rent. As a result, they joined a variety of radical movements, which were often led by socialists and communists.
- (3) The business classes reacted against colonial policies during the civil disobedience movement. They wanted protection against imports of foreign goods. Hence, they supported the civil disobedience movement and refused to buy or sell imported goods.
- (4) The civil disobedience movement witnessed the large scale participation of women. They came out of their homes and participated in protest marches. They picked foreign clothe and liquor shops. Many of them went to jail also.
- (5) The plantation workers in Assam defied the authorities. They left the plantations and headed towards home. They thought that Gandhi Raj was near. Everybody would be given land in their own villages.

- 122.** Why was the Non-Cooperation Movement launched in 1920 ? Why did Gandhiji call off the movement in 1922?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

Causes of launching the Non-Co-operation Movement (1920-22) :

- (1) Breach of trust committed by the British Government after World War I, enforcement of Rowlatt Act, unruly killing of peaceful demonstrators busy with making their action-plan at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar (Punjab) and so-called biased reforms effected in Montague-Chelmsford Reforms.

(2) Dyarchy's introduction in the Bengal province under so-called Montague-Chelmsford Reforms.

(3) Dismemberment of the Ottoman Empire in Turkey. Khalifa disowned.

Cause for calling off the Non-Cooperation Movement: The movement came to a sudden halt. Things went out of hand when the police personnel in Chauri-Chaura at Gorakhpur district in Uttar Pradesh fired at the Congress volunteers. In retaliation, the infuriated mob set police station on fire and killed 22 policemen. It led to the immediate suspension of the movement by Gandhiji.

**123.** Describe the Peasant Rebellion in Awadh during the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

(1) The peasants of Awadh during the movement were led by Baba Ramchandra. He was a Sanyasi and had earlier worked in Fiji as indentured labour.

(2) The peasants' movement was started to demand reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of landlords.

(3) During the movement at many places Nai-Dhobi bandhs were organised. It was organised to deprive landlords of the services of even washermen and barbers.

(4) The movement was against taluqdars and landlords who charged high revenue from the peasants.

(5) In 1920, Jawahar Lal Nehru formed 'Oudh Kisan Sabha' to help the peasant to drive out them from the clutches of the landlords. Within a month 300 branches had been set up in the villages.

(6) The movement spread quickly. In 1921, the houses of taluqdars and merchants were attacked, bazaars were looted and grain hoards were taken over.

**124.** How did Gandhiji bring the masses into the National Movement ?

or

How as the freedom struggle for India's independence was converted into a Mass movement by M. K. Gandhi?

**Ans :**

OD 2015

1. Gandhiji's simple saintly life and his style of convincing the masses in local languages made him extremely popular as a leader.
2. His undisputed leadership and magnetic personality helped to coordinate and unite the movement.
3. His policy of non-violent Satyagraha brought millions into the struggle. For example, the Champaran Satyagraha brought the peasants into the struggle.
4. He launched three powerful mass movements—Non-Cooperation Movement, Civil Disobedience and Quit India. They influenced millions of Indians belonging to all sections of the society to show bravery, self-confidence and to take up revolutionary passive resistance against the British rule.
5. His new method of agitation like hartals, boycott, civil disobedience, non-payment of taxes, etc., appealed to the masses.
6. Under his guidance, Indians withheld brutal repression and willingly accepted imprisonment, lathi charges and bullets for the sake of freedom.
7. Through his programmes of social reform, charkha, cottage industries and his fight against untouchability; the Harijans and depressed classes joined the freedom struggle and these efforts provided millions with employment.
8. His deep commitment to Hindu-Muslim unity and his secular ideals persuaded every community to unite for the noble cause of freedom.
9. His support to the Ahmedabad mill workers' strike in 1918 and his Satyagraha against the Rowlatt Act kept him in close touch with the masses. He became Father of the Nation.
10. He was the first Indian nationalist leader who identified his life and his manner of living with that of the common people and earned the title of 'Mahatma'. He was only political thinker whose Gandhism got exclamation all over the world.

- 125.** Assess the role of Mahatma Gandhi in the National Movement with special reference to the methods adopted by him.

Ans :

Delhi 2014, 2009

When India was ruled by the Britishers, the Indians were torched by them directly or indirectly. In such conditions Mahatma Gandhi arrived here from South Africa. He studies the conditions thoroughly. He took the help of non-violence to improve the condition of Indians. He put his views before Indians. He put agitation before Britishers to reform the condition. Among all the movements led by Gandhiji following were important:

- (1) Salt March : On 12 March 1930 Gandhiji started salt march from Sabarmati Ashram (Ahmedabad) to Dandi 240 kms the Costal belt of Gujarat. Thousands of people come to meet Gandhiji. This was the mark of Civil Disobedience Movement against British Government.
- (2) Champaran : Gandhiji launched the Satyagrah to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system.
- (3) Kheda : He launched the Kheda Satyagrah to support the peasants who were not in a position to pay the revenue due to the crop failure.
- (4) Role of women in the Civil Disobedience Movement : Gandhi had made a special appeal to women to present people from going to the shops selling foreign clothes and liquor. Women participated in protest marches. Rural women from rich families reach there and joined the movement.
- (5) Again in 1918 A.D. Gandhiji intervened in the mill worker's strike at Ahmedabad and helped them to get their pay raised for which he had started a fast unto death.

- 126.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act? Explain any three reasons.

Ans :

OD 2017

Indians were outraged by the Rowlatt Act (1919) due to the following reasons :

- (1) They had hoped that after the war their hardships would be over and the government would take steps to improve their condition.
- (2) On the other hand, the government got the Rowlatt Act passed in the Imperial Legislative Council against the united opposition of the Indian members.
- (3) The Act gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities. It allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.
- (4) These provisions meant the suspension of two principles of justice—trial by jury and habeas corpus the rights safeguarding against illegal imprisonment.
- (5) The Rowlatt Act was considered as black law and the Indians under the leadership of Gandhi decided to oppose it.

- 127.** Describe the incident and impact of the Jallianwala Bagh.

Ans :

Foreign 2015

The reasons/events leading to the Jallianwala Bagh massacre were as mentioned below :

- (1) In March 1919, Rowlatt Act was passed despite the united opposition of the Indian members. It gave powers to the government to detain political prisoners without trial for two years.
- (2) Gandhiji decided to start non-violent civil disobedience against Rowlatt Act with a perval on 6 April, 1919.
- (3) On 10 April, 1919, police firing on peaceful procession in Amritsar led to widespread attacks on banks, post offices and railway stations.
- (4) On 12 April, 1919, Martial Law was imposed and General Dyer took command.

**Effects :**

- (1) After the Jallianwala Bagh massacre crowds took to the streets in many North Indian towns. There were strikes, clashes with the police and attacks on government buildings.

(2) The government, on the other hand, followed a policy of repression. They humiliated and terrorised people. Satyagrahis were forced to rub their noses on the ground. They were forced to crawl on the streets and salam all sahibs. People were flogged. Some villages around Gujranwala in Punjab were bombed. As the violence spread, Gandhiji called off the movement.

- 128.** Method of reinterpretation of history was followed to encourage the feeling of nationalism.” Give any three arguments to support this statement.

or

How did the ‘Reinterpretation of history’ created a feeling of nationalism in India ? Give four points.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

Reinterpretations of history created a feeling of nationalism in India in the following ways :

- (1) By the end of nineteenth century, many Indians began feeling that to instill a sense of pride in the nation, Indian history had to be thought about differently.
- (2) The British saw Indians as backward and primitive, incapable of governing themselves. In response, Indians began looking into the past to discover India’s great achievements.
- (3) They wrote about the glorious developments in ancient times when art and architecture, science and mathematics, religion and culture, law and philosophy, crafts and trade had flourished.
- (4) This glorious time, in their view, was followed by a history of decline, when India was colonised.
- (5) These nationalist histories urged the readers to take pride in India’s great achievements in the past and struggle to change the miserable conditions of life under the British rule.

- 129.** How did the people belonging to different communities, regions or languages develop

a sense of collective belonging during the Indian freedom struggle ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011, OD 2017

Through a variety of cultural processes people belonging to different communities, regions or languages developed a sense of collective belonging. Some of them are as follows :

- (1) **Images :** Abanindranath Tagore painted his famous image of Bharat Mata. Bharat Mata was portrayed as an ascetic figure. She is calm, composed, divine and spiritual. Devotion to this mother figure came to be seen as evidence of one’s nationalism.
- (2) **Songs :** In 1870s, Bankim Chandra wrote ‘Vande Mataram’ as a hymn to motherland. Later it was included in his novel ‘Anandmath’. This song was widely sung during the Swadeshi Movement in Bengal.
- (3) **Folklore :** The historians recorded folktales and folksongs giving the true picture of traditional culture that had been corrupted and damaged by the outside forces. In order to restore a sense of pride, their preservation was essential.
- (4) **Flags :** During the Swadeshi movement in Bengal, a tricolour flag (red, green, yellow) was designed. By 1921, Gandhiji designed the Swaraj flag. Carrying the flag holding aloft, during marches, became a symbol of defiance.
- (5) **Reinterpretation of history :** The Indian historians wrote about the glorious development in ancient time when art and architecture, science and mathematics, religion and culture, laws and philosophy, craft and trade had flourished. And now all these declined due to the policies of the colonial government.

- 130.** “Ideas of nationalism also developed through a movement to revive Indian folklore.” Support the statement with four examples.

or

How did the idea of nationalism develop through a movement to revive Indian folklore ? Give three points.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

Nationalism developed through revival of the Indian folklore in the following ways :

- (1) Nationalists gathered Indian folktales sung by bards as well as legends
  - (2) They felt the need to preserve this folk tradition to discover national VOW and restore a sense of pride in one's past.
  - (3) In Bengal, Rabindranath Tagore began collecting ballads, nursery and myths and led the movement for folk revival.
  - (4) In Madras, Natasha Shastri published a massive four volumes of Tamil folk tales, 'The Folklore of Southern India'. He believed that folklore was national literature, it was most trustworthy of people's thoughts and characteristics.
  - (5) The nationalists travelled villages to gather folk songs, folk tales and legends and considered them to give a true picture of tradition and culture that had been corrupted and damaged by the outside forces.
- 131.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi perceive 'salt' as a powerful symbol that can unite the nation ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

Mahatma Gandhi perceived 'salt' as a powerful and effective symbol of resistance against colonialism and to unite the nation because of the following reasons :

- (1) Salt was the thing consumed by the rich and poor alike.
- (2) It was one of the most essential ingredients of food in India.
- (3) According to Gandhiji, the tax on salt and the government's monopoly over its production could reveal the most oppressive face of the British rule.
- (4) By the successful 'Salt March', Gandhiji showed down upon the British colonial government in his own Satyagraha way.
- (5) The Salt March, indeed, was the most significant symbol of resistance against colonialism. The breaking of law had far reaching effect on colonialism. All other British symbols became target of anger.

- 132.** Explain the Khilafat Movement. Why did Gandhiji consider it important to support the Khilafat Movement ?

or

Why did Gandhiji decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act, 1919? Explain.

or

Explain the issue behind the Khilafat Movement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017, 2016, 2015, 2014

- (1) The First World War had ended with the defeat of Ottoman Turkey.
- (2) There were rumours that a harsh peace treaty was going to be imposed on the Ottoman emperor the spiritual head of the Islamic world (the Khalifa).
- (3) To defend the Khalifa's temporal powers, a Khilafat Committee was formed in Bombay in March 1919.
- (4) After the Rowlatt Act, Mahatma Gandhi felt the need to launch a wide-spread movement in India.
- (5) To bring the Hindus and Muslims closer, he felt, to take the Khilafat issue.
- (6) Muslim leaders Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali, began discussing with Gandhiji the possibilities of a united mass action on the issue.
- (7) Later at Calcutta Session in September 1920, Gandhiji convinced the leaders in Congress, to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat.

- 133.** Trace the events that led to Poona Pact between Gandhi and Ambedkar. What was its impact on the Dalits ?

or

Examine the background of the Poona Pact of 1932 in the light of differences between Gandhiji and Dr. B.R. Ambedkar.

or

Explain the background of the Poona Pact of 1932.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, OD 2016, SQP 2015

- (1) The Congress had ignored the inclusion of untouchables or the Dalits till 1930.

- (2) The Congress was feared of offending the conservative high-caste Hindus in her fold.
- (3) Many Dalit leaders were keen on a different political solution to the problems of the community.
- (4) They believed political empowerment would resolve the problem of their social disability.
- (5) Ambedkar organised the Dalits into the 'Depressed Class Association' in 1930 and demanded separate electorate at the Second Round Table Conference.
- (6) The issue between Gandhi and Ambedkar over the separate electorate for Dalits was resolved under the Poona Pact in September 1932.
- (7) Mahatma Gandhi gave the name Harijan to Dalit and advocated for better place in the society.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 134.** What was the response of the Congress leaders to Lord Irwin's proposals in October 1929 ?

- Ans :** Foreign 2017
- (1) The Simon Commission was opposed with a nation-wide protest.
  - (2) The Viceroy, Lord Irwin, in an effort to win over the protestors, announced a vague offer of 'dominion status' for India in an unspecified future and a Round Table Conference to discuss future constitution.
  - (3) The Congress leaders were not satisfied with this announcement.
  - (4) The Radicals within the Congress led by Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose became more assertive.
  - (5) The Lahore Conference of the Congress was held in 1929, presided over by Jawaharlal Nehru.
  - (6) In this conference, the demand of 'Purna Swaraj' for India was formalised.
  - (7) As the celebrations failed to attract much attention, Mahatma Gandhiji had

to find a way to relate this abstract idea of freedom to more concrete issues of everyday life.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 135.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Mahatma Gandhi returned to India in January 1915. As you know, he had come from South Africa where he had successfully fought the racist-regime with a novel method of mass agitation, which he called satyagraha. It suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor. Without seeking vengeance or being aggressive, a satyagrahi could win the battle through non-violence.*

*On 13 April a large crowd gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwala Bagh. Some came to protest against the government's new repressive measures. Other had come to attend the annual Baisakhi fair. Being from outside the city, many villagers were unaware of the martial law that had been imposed. Dyer entered the area, blocked the exit points, and opened fire on the crowd killing hundreds.*

*The movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their legal practices. The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras.*

### Questions :

1. What do you mean by the idea of Satyagraha?
2. By which episode most of the people gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh?
3. Which movement was talking about in the paragraph? What does it mean to the people?

**Ans :**

1. The idea of satyagraha means the power of truth and the need to search for truth. It also suggested that if the cause was true, if the struggle was against injustice, then physical force was not necessary to fight the oppressor.
2. Mahatma Gandhi in 1919 decided to launch a nationwide satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act. It gave the government repressive powers, and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years. Due to this episode most of the people gathered in the Jallianwala Bagh.
3. The paragraph talks about the Non-Cooperation-Khilafat Movement. It was started in January 1921. Various social groups participated in this movement each with its own specific aspiration. All of them responded to the call of Swaraj but the term meant different things to different people.

- 136.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Against this background the new Tory government in Britain constituted a Statutory Commission under Sir John Simon. Set up in response to the nationalist movement, the commission was to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. The problem was that the commission did not have a single Indian member. They were all British.*

*When the Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928, it was greeted with the slogan ‘Go back Simon’. All parties, including the Congress and the Muslim League, participated in the demonstrations. In an effort to win them over, the viceroy, Lord Irwin, announced in October 1929, a vague offer of ‘dominion status’ for India in an unspecified future, and a Round Table Conference to discuss a future constitution. This did not satisfy the Congress leaders. The radicals within the Congress, led by Jawaharlal Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose, became more assertive.*

*The most stirring of all was the demand to abolish the salt tax. Salt was something consumed by the rich and the poor alike, and it was one of the most essential items of food. The tax on salt and the government monopoly over its production, Mahatma Gandhi declared, revealed the most oppressive face of British rule.*

**Questions :**

1. Why did Tory government set up Simon Commission?
2. Why did Lord Irwin announced dominion status?
3. Why did Gandhiji find in salt is a powerful symbol of unity?

**Ans :**

1. The new Tory government set up the Simon Commission in response to examine the state of Indian constitutional affairs and also in response to the nationalist movement.
2. All parties including the Congress and the Muslim League against the Simon Commission arrival to India in 1928 and participated in the demonstrations and greeted commission with slogan ‘Go Back Simon’. In an effort to win them over, the Viceroy, Lord Irwin announced a vague offer of dominion status for India.
3. Mahatma Gandhi found in salt a powerful symbol that could unite the nation because it is consumed by the rich and the poor alike, and it was one of the most essential items of food.

- 137.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Let us look at Romanticism, a cultural movement which sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiment. Romantic artists and poets generally criticised the glorification of reason and science and focused instead on emotions, intuition and mystical feelings. Their effort was to create a sense of a shared collective heritage, a common cultural past, as the basis of a nation.*

*The 1830s were years of great economic*

*hardship in Europe. The first half of the nineteenth century saw an enormous increase in population all over Europe. In most countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment. Population from rural areas migrated to the cities to live in overcrowded slums.*

*In other parts of Europe where independent nation-states did not yet exist – such as Germany, Italy, Poland, the Austro-Hungarian Empire – men and women of the liberal middle classes combined their demands for constitutionalism with national unification. They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to push their demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles – a constitution, freedom of the press and freedom of association.*

**Questions :**

1. What are the other aspect of idea of nationalism?
2. What do you meant by economic hardship in Europe?
3. What were the demand of Liberals?

**Ans :**

1. The development of nationalism did not come about only through wars and territorial expansion. Culture played an important role in creating the idea of nationalism. Romanticism is most accepted cultural movement which helped and expressed the nationalist feelings in Europe.
2. The economic hardship in Europe refers to most of the European countries during 1830s faced more seekers of jobs than employment. Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from imports of cheap machine-made goods from England, where industrialisation was more advanced than on the continent.
3. In the year of 1848, in many European countries liberal middle classes were emerged. They took advantage of the growing popular unrest to push their demands for the creation of a nation-state on parliamentary principles.

**138.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*In his famous book Hind Swaraj (1909) Mahatma Gandhi declared that British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians, and had survived only because of this cooperation. If Indians refused to cooperate, British rule in India would collapse within a year, and swaraj would come. How could non-cooperation become a movement? Gandhiji proposed that the movement should unfold in stages. It should begin with the surrender of titles that the government awarded, and a boycott of civil services, army, police, courts and legislative councils, schools, and foreign goods. Then, in case the government used repression, a full civil disobedience campaign would be launched. Through the summer of 1920 Mahatma Gandhi and Shaukat Ali toured extensively, mobilising popular support for the movement. Many within the Congress were, however, concerned about the proposals. They were reluctant to boycott the council elections scheduled for November 1920, and they feared that the movement might lead to popular violence. In the months between September and December there was an intense tussle within the Congress. For a while there seemed no meeting point between the supporters and the opponents of the movement. Finally, at the Congress session at Nagpur in December 1920, a compromise was worked out and the Non-Cooperation programme was adopted. The Non-Cooperation-Khilafat Movement began in January 1921. Various social groups participated in this movement, each with its own specific aspiration. All of them responded to the call of Swaraj, but the term meant different things to different people. The movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned, and lawyers gave up their legal practices. The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras, where the Justice Party, the party of the non-Brahmans, felt that entering the council was one way of*

*gaining some power-something that usually only Brahmins had access to. The effects of non-cooperation on the economic front were more dramatic. Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires. The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921 and 1922, its value dropping from Rs 102 crore to Rs 57 crore. In many places merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade. As the boycott movement spread, and people began discarding imported clothes and wearing only Indian ones, production of Indian textile mills and handlooms went up.*

**Questions :**

1. What was the declaration of Mahatama Gandhi in his famous book Hind Swaraj (1909 AD)?
2. How was the Non-Cooperation Movement started?

**Ans :**

1. Mahatma Gandhi declared that British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians. It had survived only because of this cooperation.
  2. The Non-Cooperation movement began with the surrender of titles that the government awarded. A boycott of civil services, army, police, courts and legislative councils, schools, and foreign goods.
139. Read the source given below and answer the question that follows.

*The movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their legal practices. The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except Madras, where the Justice Party, the party of the non-Brahmins, felt that entering the council was one way of gaining some power-something that usually only Brahmins had access to. The effects of non-cooperation on the economic front were more dramatic. Foreign goods were boycotted.*

*The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921 and 1922, its value dropping from 102 crore. In many places merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade. As the boycott movement spread, and people began discarding, imported clothes and wearing only Indian ones, production of Indian textile mills and handlooms went up.*

**Questions :**

1. Explain the role of ‘Justice Party’ in boycotting of Council elections’
2. How was the effect of ‘non-cooperation on the economic front dramatic’.
3. Explain the effect of ‘Boycott movement on foreign textile trade’.

**Ans :**

1. The Justice Party members were non-Brahmins and so far had not been able to win elections, as the Brahman candidates always won. They thought it was a golden opportunity for them to enter the councils. So, they decided not to boycott council elections.
2. The effects of Non-Cooperation on the economic front were more dramatic because the movement was started with middle class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government controlled schools and colleges, headmasters and teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their legal practices.
3. The effects of ‘Boycott Movement’ on foreign textile trade were foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonefires.

140. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*‘It is said of “passive resistance” that it is the weapon of the weak, but the power which is the subject of this article can be used only by the strong. This power is not passive resistance; indeed it calls for intense activity. The movement in South Africa was not passive but active... ‘Satyagraha is not physical force. A satyagrahi does not inflict pain on the adversary; he does not seek his*

*destruction... In the use of satyagraha, there is no whatever. Satyagraha is pure soul-force. Truth is the very substance of the soul. That is why this force is called satyagraha. The soul is informed with knowledge. In it burns the flame of love. ...Non-violence is the supreme dharma... ‘It is certain that India cannot rival Britain or Europe in force of arms. The British worship the war-god and they can all of them become, as they are becoming, bearers of arms. The hundreds of millions in India can never carry arms. They have made the religion of non-violence their own...’*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by passive resistance?
2. To what extent do you feel that Truth should be called the force of Satyagraha?
3. What was the difference between the gandhian and British way of dealing the Satyagraha in India?

**Ans :**

1. Passive resistance commonly refers to actions of non-violent protect or resistance to authority. It is widely used by Mahatma Gandhi during the independence struggle in India. Sometime it has been called as ‘the weapon of the weak’.
2. Satyagraha is not physical force. A satyagrahi does not inflict pain on the adversary, he does not seek his destruction in the use of satyagraha there is no whatever. Thus, Satyagraha is pure soul-force. Truth is the very substance of the soul. That is why this force is called satyagraha.
3. It is certain that India cannot rival Britain in force of arms. The British worship the war-god and they can all of them become, as they are becoming, bearers of arms. The hundreds of millions in India can never carry arms. They have made the religion of non-violence their own. By this the satyagraha was bound to ultimately triumph. Mahatma Gandhi believed that this dharma of non-violence could unite all Indians.

- 141.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*On 6 January 1921, the police in United Provinces fired at peasants near Rae Bareli. Jawaharlal Nehru wanted to go to the place of firing, but was stopped by the police. Agitated and angry, Nehru addressed the peasants who gathered around him. This is how he later described the meeting: ‘They behaved as brave men, calm and unruffled in the face of danger. I do not know how they felt but I know what my feelings were. For a moment my blood was up, non-violence was almost forgotten – but for a moment only. The thought of the great leader, who by God’s goodness has been sent to lead us to victory, came to me and I saw the kisans seated and standing near me, less excited, more peaceful than I was and the moment of weakness passed, I spoke to them in all humility on non-violence. I needed the lesson more than they and they heeded me and peacefully dispersed.’*

**Questions :**

1. How did the peasants who gathered around Nehru near Rae Bareli behave when he addressed them?
2. To what extent do you feel that the demands of the peasants of Rae Bareli were correct?
3. Explain what did Nehru mean when he said. I needed the lesson more than they.

**Ans :**

1. The peasants behaved as cool, calm and brave men. They were not excited or angry. They heard Nehru’s speech peacefully.
2. The peasants of Rae Bareli were strongly protested against about corruptions exploitation, etc and held meetings at different places. They protested peacefully. But British Police opened fire to them.
3. JL Nehru needed the lesson of non-violence more than the peasants. Nehru was angry, excited and overcome by violence for a moment. But the peasants

were calm and peaceful. They were not angry or violent.

- 142.** Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow :

*Satyagraha is not physical force. A satyagrahi does not inflict pain on the adversary, he does not seek his destruction. In the use of Satyagraha, there is no whatever. Satyagraha is pure soul-force. Truth is the very substance of the soul. That is why this force is called Satyagraha. The soul is informed with knowledge. In its burns the flame of love... Non-violence is the supreme Dharma.*

**Questions :**

1. Who spoke these words ?
2. Explain the differences between physical force and soul-force, with examples.

**Ans :**

1. Mahatma Gandhi, the Father of the Nation.
2. The soul force or faculty is the blue-print with specifications and direction upon which body has to function. The British had barred souls of India people to live even a common life. Under legislations passed all biased by them. Gandhiji wants to say that it is time to introspect and review the blue-print so as political projects be completed. In brief, physical force is subservient to soul force but just after independence won, we, all Indians have given-up Satyagraha and what we are doing is mere mimesis of western culture nothing else but based on perception.

- 143.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow :

*We believe that it is the inalienable right of the Indian people, as of any other people, to have freedom and to enjoy the fruits of their toil and have the necessities of life, so that they may have full opportunities of growth. We believe also that if any government deprives a people of these rights and oppresses them, the people have a further right to alter it or to abolish it. The British Government in*

*India has not only deprived the Indian people of their freedom but has based itself on the exploitation of the masses and has ruined India economically, politically, culturally and spiritually. We believe, therefore, that India must sever the British connection and attain Purna Swaraj or Complete Independence.*

**Questions :**

1. When was this pledge to be taken ?
2. Explain the rights of the Indian people which they should have got.
3. Who was the President of Congress when the decision was taken to celebrate 26 January, 1930 as Independence Day ?
4. Why must India sever the British connection and attain Purna Swaraj ? Explain briefly : [Delhi 2010 Foreign)

**Ans. :**

1. On 26th January, 1930.
2. Right to equality, Right to freedom, Right to freedom of religion, Cultural and educational rights, Right against exploitation and Right to constitutional remedies viz. Fundamental rights or basic rights for human living.
3. Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru was the President of Congress when decision was taken to celebrate 26th January, 1930 as Independence Day.
4. India had been suffering miserably under the British colonial rule. The basis of foreign Government was imperialism. The government was based on exploitation of the Indian resources and people, therefore, it had ruined India politically, economically, culturally and spiritually. The leaders of freedom struggle of India decided that their country must sever its connection with such a government or country and work for complete independence. A pledge for complete independence or Purna Swaraj was taken in this pledge that was clearly stated that people of India had a right to abolish such government.

- 144.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow :

*On 6 January, 1921, the police in United Provinces fired at peasants near Rae Bareli. Jawahar Lal Nehru wanted to go to the place of firing but was stopped by the police. Agitated and angry, Nehru addressed the peasants who gathered around him. This is how the later described the meeting.*

*"They behaved as brave men, calm and unruffled in the face of danger. I do not know how they felt but I know what my feelings were. For a moment my blood was up, non-violence was almost forgotten but for a moment only. The thought of the great leader, who by God's goodness has been sent to lead us to victory, came to me, and I saw the Kisans seated and standing near me, less excited, more peaceful than I was and the moment of weakness passed.*

*I spoke to them in all humility on non-violence I needed the lesson more than they and they heeded me and peacefully dispersed."*

**Questions :**

1. What is the source of the above passage ?
2. What were Nehru's feelings and how did he change them ?
3. How did the peasants who gathered around Jawaharlal Nehru near Rae Bareli behave when he addressed them ?
4. Explain what did Nehru mean when he said, "I needed the lesson more than they".
5. Why the peasants of Oudh agitating against the Taluqdars and the landlords?
6. Explain the feeling of J. L. Nehru, while addressed the peasants.

**Ans :**

1. Jawaharlal Nehru : A Biography, Vol. I (Quoted by Sarvapalli Gopal).
2. Initially, his feelings were like that of an angry and a man irritated when he heard that some leaders of Kisan Sabha, in course of Non-Co-operation Movement in 1921; had attacked taluqdars and merchants and looted bazaars.

Suddenly, he found himself calm and cool when his consciousness recollected Gandhi's divine leadership that had trained people upon how to make balanced temperament as required for each circumstance. A moment before they were attacking taluqdars and merchants but just then listening to him so patiently as if nothing, they had committed. Instead of scolding them, he therefore, felt himself low than them.

3. The peasants behaved as brave men calm and unruffled in the face of danger.
4. Though the peasants were unruffled in the face of police firing in United Provinces. Jawaharlal Nehru was angry and agitated for a moment, he had forgotten the message of non-violence preached by Gandhiji.
4. (i) The peasants of Oudh agitated against exorbitarily high rent and revenue demand. They had to do begar in landlords' terms, without any payments. They also resisted against eviction from land.  
(ii) The peasants had to do begar, had to work in landlord's farm, without any payment.  
(iii) They also resisted against forced, eviction from land.
5. Explanation of the feeling of J.L. Nehru : In the beginning for a moment Nehru was agitated and angry about the police firing. For a moment his blood boiled and non-violence was almost forgotten but the site of the Kisan (peasants) standing around him (J.L. Nehru) in a calm and peaceful manner made him realise, that he needed a lesson on non-violence more than the Kisan (peasants).

- 145.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow :

*Revolution is the inalienable right of mankind. Freedom is the imprescriptible birth right of all ..... to the altar of this revolution we have brought our youth as incense, for no sacrifice is too great for so magnificent a*

*cause. We are content. We await the advent of revolution. Inquilab Zindabad.*

**Questions :**

1. From whose writing has this extract been taken ?
2. Do you agree with the statement that ‘revolution is the inalienable right of mankind’?
3. Why have the youth been compared to incense ?
4. What slogan did they adopt ? What does it mean ?

**Ans :**

1. During his trial for throwing bomb in the Assembly Hall, Amar Saheed Bhagat Singh had given this statement.
2. Yes, with changing time the needs of the people also change. In fact, change is a natural law. So, when the needs of the society do not suit to the present situation, it has to raise voice. This is not possible for a single man to bring a desired change at a large scale. So, revolution is necessary for basic changes and this cannot be taken off from the people.
3. Bhagat Singh was one of the founders of the Hindustan Socialist Republican Army. This organisation was formed of youths who believed India can win its independence only by using power. In this course they have to sacrifice their lives for this magnificent cause. An incense is something which burns itself but spreads a pleasant smell in the surroundings. So, Bhagat Singh referred to their comrades as incense.
4. They adopted the slogan ‘Inquilab Zindabad’ i.e. up with the revolution. Inquilab is a Urdu word meaning ‘revolution’, ‘Zindabad’ means ‘stay alive’.

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 3

## MAKING OF A GLOBAL WORLD

### SUMMARY

1. Silk Routes : Routes used for silk trading in ancient India.
2. Cowries : The Hindi Cowdi, used as a form of currency in ancient times.
3. Corn Law : Under pressure from landed groups, the government restricted the import of corn. This law was popularly known as the Corn Law.
4. Plebiscite : A direct vote by which all the people of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal, public consensus.
5. Dissenter : One who rejects to accept established beliefs and practices.
6. Indentured Labour : A bonded labourer under contract to work for an employer for a specific period.
7. Trade Surplus : It is a situation under which value of exports is more than imports.
8. Assembly line production : The assembly line is a manufacturing process in which interchangeable parts are added to a product in sequential manner to create a finished product.
9. Tariff : A list of duties imposed on imports on exports. These are levied at the point of entry, i.e., at the border or the airport.
10. G-77 : Formed in 1960's by developing nations of third world countries to raise demand before UNO to create a new international economic order.
11. Exchange Rates : Value contrast and calculation of international currencies mostly US dollar is assumed as standard for exchange.
12. Fixed Exchange Rates : When exchange rates are fixed and government's intervention to prevent sudden fluctuation in them.

13. Flexible or Floating Exchange Rates : Rates determined by demand and supply forces of the open market without any intervention on part of government.
14. Trade : It refers to move or carry a person, goods, baggage etc., for value addition and profit earning motive.
15. Favourable Balance of Trade : Export value – Import value = Favourable Balance of Trade.
16. Unfavourable Balance of Trade : Import value – Export Value = Unfavourable Balance of Trade.
17. Local Trade : It is carried in cities, towns or villages.
18. Composition of Trade : Type of goods exported and imported during a year.
19. Globalization : Merger of economy of individual countries into global economy.
20. Privatisation : Ownership, control and management of private sector on almost all erstwhile public sector (phase-wise).
21. Liberalisation : Removal of trade barriers by relaxation of trade laws, imports etc. For example; creation of SEZs with making labour laws lenient so as to give way to contract/indentured labour system.
22. W.T.O. : World Trade Organization.
23. Multi-lateral agreements : Agreements formulated by group of countries.
24. World Bank : An International financial institution that meets to credit demand of member nations to UN.
25. Bilateral Agreement : Trade agreement between two countries (two way documentation).
26. Import Quotas : Quantity fixation of goods meant for import.
27. Export Quotas : Ceiling on quantity to be exported imposed by the Government.
28. Spaghetti : A type of noodle popular in Italy.

29. El Dorado : Imaginary land of great wealth. Fabled land of gold.
30. The Canal Colonies : The colonies/areas irrigated by new canals, where peasants from different parts of Punjab settled.
31. Rastafaria : A Jamaican sect, the members of which regarded blacks as the chosen people.
32. Hosay : A riotous- carnival in Trinidad when workers of all races and religions join to celebrates.
33. Coolie : Unskilled native labourers. Indentured Indian labourers were often referred to as 'Coolie' in Trinidad.
34. Chutney Music (Popular Music in Trinidad) : Supposed to be the result of cultural fusion.
35. Rinderpest : Cattle plague—a fast spreading disease among cattle.
36. Entrepreneur : One who undertakes commercial enterprise with chance of profit or loss. Starts enterprise by himself I herself at his I her own risk.
37. Plantation : Estate for cultivation of cash crops like tea, coffee, cotton, tobacco, sugarcane etc.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Why did Europeans flee to America in 19<sup>th</sup> century? Identify the correct reason from the following options:

- (a) Poverty and diseases
- (b) Due to gold rush
- (c) To escape from the French Revolution
- (d) As an aftermath of the Vietnam War

Ans :

OD 2023

- (a) Poverty and diseases

2. How much span of time can be referred for globalisation?

- (a) Since the last 25 years
- (b) Since the last 50 years
- (c) Since the last 75 years
- (d) Since the last 100 years

Ans :

Comp 2023

- (b) Since the last 50 years

3. When was the active coastal trade linked the Indus Valley Civilisations with present day West Asia?
  - (a) As early as 500 BCE
  - (b) As early as 1000 BCE
  - (c) As early as 2000 BCE
  - (d) As early as 3000 BCE

Ans :

Delhi 2020

- (d) As early as 3000 BCE

4. **Assertion :** There was a collapse of the system of fixed exchange rates and the introduction of a system of floating exchange rates.  
**Reason :** From the 1960s, the rising costs of its overseas involvements weakened the US's finances and competitive strength. It could not command confidence as the world's principal currency.
  - (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
  - (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
  - (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
  - (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

Foreign 2020

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

5. Identify the personality-

- He was a journalist and explorer.
- He was sent by the New York herald to find Livingston, who had been in Africa for several years.
- He investigated African terrains and mapped different regions.
- His explorations helped the conquest of Africa.

### Options

- (a) Otto von Bismarck
- (b) Andreas Rebmann
- (c) Sir Henry Morton Stanley
- (d) Napoleon

Ans :

Delhi 2018, 2012

- (c) Sir Henry Morton Stanley

6. Which one of the following option best signifies this picture?



- (a) Criminals.
- (b) Lost citizens of Central Africa.
- (c) Photograph of indentured labourers.
- (d) None of these.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (c) Photograph of indentured labourers.

7. What ‘technology’ helped in transporting perishable goods?

- (a) Refrigerated aircrafts
- (b) Refrigerated railways
- (c) Refrigerated ships
- (d) Both (a) and (b)

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (c) Refrigerated ships

8. What was the form of currency used for more than a millennia ago?

- (a) Cowdi or cowries
- (b) Rupaya
- (c) Paisa
- (d) Rupees

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

- (a) Cowdi or cowries

9. Match the words in column A with suitable options in column B.

<b>Column ‘A’</b>		<b>Column ‘B’</b>	
A.	Silk routes	1.	Institution set-up to finance postwar reconstruction.
B.	G-77	2.	Carnival in Trinidad
C.	Canal colonies	3.	Pre-modern trade links
D.	World Bank	4.	Countries demanding a new international economic order
E.	Hosay	5.	Semi-desert wastes in the Punjab transformed by irrigation

- (a) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2, E - 5
- (b) A - 3, B - 4, C - 5, D - 1, E - 2
- (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 5, D - 1, E - 2
- (d) A - 5, B - 3, C - 4, D - 1, E - 2

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 5, D - 1, E - 2

10. Arrange the following happenings in the correct order-

1. Mahatma Gandhi launched the civil disobedience movement
2. First world war
3. Second world war
4. Establishment of G-77

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, OD 2007

- (b) 2, 1, 3, 4

11. **Assertion :** The Portuguese and Spanish conquest and colonisation of Antarctica was decisively under way by the mid-sixteenth century.

**Reason :** The most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors was the germs such as those of Swine flu that they carried on their person.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

- 12.** When was the long-distance spread of disease carrying germs traced?

- (a) 4th century
- (b) 5th century
- (c) 6th century
- (d) 7th century

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (d) 7th century

- 13.** ‘Silk routes’ known to have existed before the ..... and thrived almost till the ..... .

- (a) Christian era, 14 th century
- (b) Christian era, 15 th century
- (c) Christian era, 16 th century
- (d) Christian era, 17 th century

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (b) Christian era, 15 th century

- 14.** Economists identify three types of movement of flows within international economic exchanges which one type does not exist among them?

- (a) Flow of trade
- (b) Flow of labour
- (c) Flow of capital
- (d) Flow of raw materials

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (d) Flow of raw materials

- 15.** Arrange the following events in the correct sequence-

1. The great depression on the Indian economy
2. The death of men of working-age in Europe because of the world war

- 3. The British government’s decision to abolish the corn laws

- 4. The decision of MNCs to relocate production to Asian countries

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 1, 1, 3, 4
- (c) 2, 3, 1, 4
- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, 2017

- (c) 2, 3, 1, 4

- 16.** Who was the pioneer of mass production?

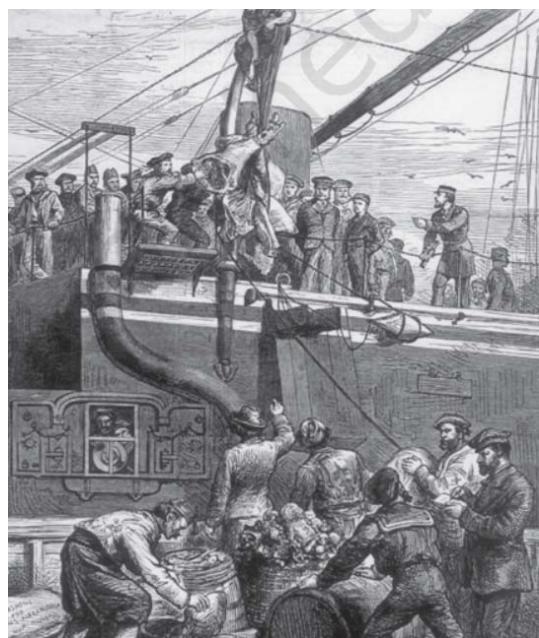
- (a) John Winthrop
- (b) Sir Henry Morton Stanley
- (c) Henry Ford
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2005

- (c) Henry Ford

- 17.** Study the picture and answer the following question :



Transportation of meat from America to Europe was possible only after-

- (a) Reducing the tax of transportation.
- (b) Development of a new technology namely, refrigerated ships.
- (c) After exporting less amount of meat at a time.

- (d) Exporting small animals on the place of bigger ones.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (b) Development of a new technology namely, refrigerated ships.

**18.** Why were Europeans attracted to Africa?

- (a) Resources
- (b) Weather
- (c) Economic development
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (a) Resources

**19.** **Assertion :** Over the nineteenth century, British manufacturers flooded the Indian market.

**Reason :** The value of Indian exports to Britain was much higher than the value of British imports to India.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**20.** In which state, British Government built a network of irrigation, known as canal colonies?

- (a) Punjab
- (b) Rajasthan
- (c) Uttar Pradesh
- (d) Bengal

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2011

- (a) Punjab

**21.** Arrange the following in correct sequence :

1. Formation of G-77
2. Bretton Woods Conference.
3. Discovery of America
4. Great Depression

### Options

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (c) 2, 3, 1, 4
- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1

**22.** Which country introduced ‘Corn Laws’ to restrict the import of corn?

- (a) France
- (b) Germany
- (c) Britain
- (d) Spain

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (c) Britain

**23.** **Assertion :** The First World War involved the world’s leading industrial nations which harnessed the vast powers of modern industry to inflict the greatest possible destruction of enemies.

**Reason :** It was the first modern industrial war, which saw the use of robots and satellites on a massive scale.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2019, 2005

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**24.** When was the Global Agriculture Economy took shape?

- (a) 1790
- (b) 1890
- (c) 1690
- (d) 1710

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (b) 1890

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**25.** Complete the following table with the correct information-

Name of Conference	Year	Held at	Led to the establishment of
United nations monetary and financial conference	A - ?	B - ?	International monetary fund

- (a) A - 1944, B - Time Square, France
- (b) A - 1944, B - Bretton woods, New Hampshire
- (c) A - 1954, B - Bretton woods, New Hampshire
- (d) A - 1954, B - Time Square, France

**Ans :** SQP 2019

- (b) A - 1944, B - Bretton woods, new Hampshire.

**26.** Around the world, lands were cleared and food production expanded to meet the ..... demand.

- (a) American
- (b) French
- (c) German
- (d) British

**Ans :** Foreign 2020

- (d) British

**27.** The First World War (1914-18) was mainly fought in?

- (a) Asia
- (b) America
- (c) Europe
- (d) Russia

**Ans :** OD 2011

- (c) Europe

**28.** Identify the event-

- A major conflict fought between 1914 and 1918.
- Fought between the allied powers and the central powers.
- Some of the major battles during the war included the first battle of the marve, battle of the Somme, battle of Tannenberg, etc.

### Options

- (a) First world war
- (b) Russian Revolution
- (c) Glorious Revolution
- (d) The Revolution of the liberals

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (a) First world war

**29.** How many power blocks were involved in the First World War?

- (a) 4
- (b) 2
- (c) 3
- (d) 5

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (b) 2

**30.** Arrange the following events in the correct sequence-

1. Great Irish potato famine
2. Rinderpest arrived in Africa
3. Rinderpest arrived in cape
4. Corn laws

### Options :

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (d) 1, 4, 2, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3

**31.** Who later joined the Allies during the First World War?

- (a) First World War
- (b) Second World War
- (c) Third World War
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2014, 2012

- (a) First World War

**32.** Which war is known as ‘Modern Industrial War’?

- (a) First World War
- (b) Second World War
- (c) Third World War
- (d) Non of these

**Ans :**

OD 2017

(a) First World War

- 33.** **Assertion :** When the supply of wheat was disrupted during the First World War, wheat production in Canada, America and Australia expanded dramatically.

**Reason :** Before the First World War, Asia was a major supplier of wheat in the world market.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

- 34.** Which country's status transformed from being an international debtor to an international

- (a) Britain
- (b) France
- (c) USA
- (d) Spain

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (c) USA

- 35.** Arrange the following in the chronological order :

1. Kheda Satyagraha
2. Non-cooperation movement
3. Simon commission
4. Rowlatt Act
5. Salt March

**Options :**

- (a) 5, 3, 2, 4, 1
- (b) 5, 3, 4, 2, 1
- (c) 1, 3, 2, 4, 5
- (d) 1, 4, 2, 3, 5

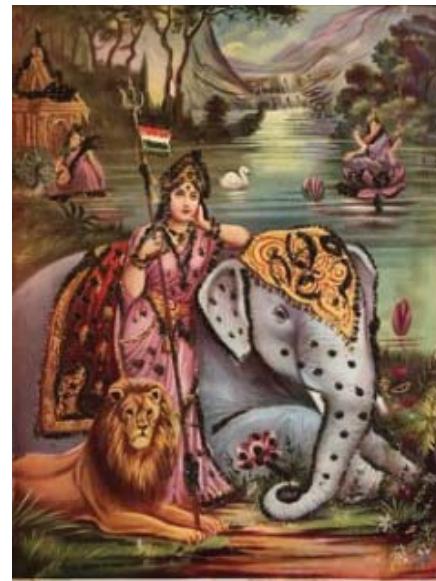
**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (d) 1, 4, 2, 3, 5

- 36.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:

What this picture of Bharat Mata depicts ?



- (a) Power and authority

- (b) Power and prestige

- (c) Authority and dominance

- (d) Ascetic quality

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (a) Power and authority

- 37.** What does the 'Silk Route' refer to?

- (a) Present-day West Asia

- (b) West-bound Chinese silk cargoes

- (c) Introduction of humble potato

- (d) Both (a) and (b)

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

- (b) West-bound Chinese silk cargoes

- 38.** Which was the tabled city of gold?

- (a) Peru

- (b) Mexico

- (c) El Dorado

- (d) Spain

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010, OD 2012

- (c) El Dorado

- 39.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence of occurrence:

1. Formation of World Bank
2. Bretton Woods Conference
3. The Great Depression
4. First World War

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3

- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1

- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1  
 (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

SQP 2008

- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1

- 40.** Which one of the following option best signifies this picture?



- (a) Overseas trade in western Indian ocean.  
 (b) Indian indentured labourers.  
 (c) Diggers at work in the Transvaal gold fields.  
 (d) Emigrants waiting to board the ship.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (a) Overseas trade in western Indian ocean.

- 41.** **Assertion :** ‘Chutney music’, popular in Trinidad and Guyana, is another creative contemporary expression of the post-indenture experience.

**Reason :** Some of the Naipaul’s early novels capture their sense of loss and alienation.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 42.** Trace the growth of different strands of National movement in India according to their sequence of timing.

1. Establishment of Depressed Class-Association

2. Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress

3. “Purna Swaraj”

4. Non-Cooperation and Khilafat movement

**Options :**

- (a) 4, 1, 2, 3  
 (b) 4, 2, 3, 1  
 (c) 2, 3, 1, 4  
 (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1

- 43.** Certain events are given below.

Choose the appropriate chronological order :

1. Coming of Simon Commission to India
2. Demand of Puma Swaraj in Lahore Session of INC
3. Government of India Act 1919
4. Champaran Satyagraha

**Options**

- (a) 3 - 2 - 4 - 2  
 (b) 3 - 3 - 4 - 2  
 (c) 4 - 2 - 1 - 3  
 (d) 4 - 3 - 1 - 2

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010, 2008

- (d) 4 - 3 - 1 - 2

- 44.** **Assertion :** The railways, steamships, the telegraph were important inventions which transformed the nineteenth-century world.

**Reason :** Colonisation stimulated new investments and improvements in transport.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

45. Arrange the following in the chronological order :

1. Adoption of the Non-Cooperation Programme
2. Lahore Congress session
3. Dandi March

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 1
- (c) 2, 1, 3
- (d) 1, 3, 2

Ans :

Foreign 2005

- (a) 1, 2, 3

46. Complete the following table with the correct information-

	Wars	Duration	Fought between
1.	First world war	A - ?	Allies and central powers
2.	Second world war	1934-1945	B - ?

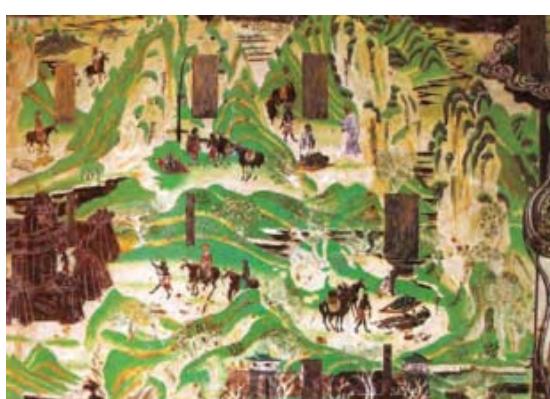
- (a) A - 1914-1918, B - Between axis powers and allies  
 (b) A - 1924-1928, B - Between axis powers and allies  
 (c) A - 1924-1928, B - Allies and central powers  
 (d) A - 1914-1918, B - Allies and central powers

Ans :

Comp 2017

- (a) A - 1914-1918, B - Between axis powers and allies

47. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies in the above image?

- (a) Silk Route
- (b) Industrialisation
- (c) World War
- (d) Irish Potato Famine

Ans :

OD 2012, 2009

- (a) Silk Route

48. **Assertion :** During the Great Depression, agricultural regions and communities were worst affected.

**Reason :** The fall in agricultural prices was greater and more prolonged than that in the prices of industrial goods.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

SQP 2007

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

49. "The Silk route was a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world." Explain the statement with any two examples.

Ans :

OD 2024

- (1) Trade of spices from India and Southeast Asia to Europe and in return trade of precious metals such as gold and silver from Europe to Asia.
- (2) At the same time, Christian missionaries travelled same route to Asia.

50. State the basic and main objectives of New Economic Policy.

Ans :

Comp 2023

Main objectives of the New Economic Policy:

- (i) It was to reduce domestic inflation and improve the balance of payment.
- (ii) To improve efficiency and productivity and put the economy back on the path of growth with social justice.
- 51.** Which factors were responsible for price rise of foodgrains in Britain in late nineteenth century was/were ?

**Ans :** Comp 2021

The factor responsible for the rise of foodgrains were :

- (i) Increasing demand for agricultural products
- (ii) Increasing demand of foodgrains
- (iii) Increasing population

- 52.** List some few food items that travelled from far away places to India.

**Ans :** OD 2020

- (i) Tomato and sweet potatoes
- (ii) Potatoes and groundnuts
- (iii) Maize and chillies

- 53.** Name the three international institutions that work for the implementation of Globalisation.

**Ans :** Delhi 2014, SQP 2010

The three international institutions are :

- (i) International Monetary Fund (IMF)
- (ii) World Bank
- (iii) WTO

- 54.** Define the concept of :

- (a) Market
- (b) Economic barometer

**Ans :** SQP 2018

(a) Market : A market is a place where the exchange of goods takes place. At this place generally several sellers and many customers bargain. They sell and purchase various articles and services also.

(b) Economic barometer : Advancing international trade of a country leads to its economic prosperity and is therefore, considered to be the economic barometer of a country.

- 55.** Why can the First World War be termed as first modern industrial war ? Give three reason.

**Ans :**

Comp 2006

It is called an account of following reasons:

- (a) It saw the use of machine guns, tanks, aircrafts etc., which were all products of modern large scale industries
- (b) The scale of total death and destruction was very large
- (c) To carry millions of soldiers, large warships and railway trains were required which could be manufactured in large scale industries

- 56.** Define liberalisation. Mention two components of liberalisation.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

Liberalisation : It is condition of relaxation of all rules and regulations restricting earlier, the growth of the private sector.

Two components of Liberalisation :

- (i) It allows private sector to run those industrial activities, restricted earlier to public sector.
- (ii) The relaxation of all rules and regulations, which restrict the growth of private sector.

- 57.** What do you mean by the term GPL ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2015

The GPL stands for Globalisation, Privatisation and Liberalisation. We can explain these three words/terms in the following way :

- (i) Globalisation : Merger of economy of individual countries into global economy.
- (ii) Privatisation : Ownership, control and management of private sector on almost all erstwhile public sector (phase-wise).
- (iii) Liberalisation : Removal of trade barriers by relaxation of trade laws, imports etc. For example, creation of SEZs, with making labour laws lenient so as to give way to contract/indentured labour system.

- 58.** What do you know about WTO ? Write about it in brief (short).

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2017

WTO : It stands for World Trade Organisation. It was set-up in 1995 at Geneva, Switzerland. There was an international institution already working as an organisation of the UN. It was called GATT—General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade. GATT was an old organisation set-up in 1947 just after two years of the birth of UNO. In this way WTO replaced GATT in 1995. Since then it is working independently, though attached with UN, upto some extent.

- 59.** Write any three factors (values) which played a crucial role in the decline export of Indian textiles.

or

Which three factors are responsible for the declining Indian textile export ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

Factors (values) which played crucial role in declining export of Indian textile are listed below :

- (i) Industrial Revolution of Europe.
  - (ii) Taxes on Indian textile goods.
  - (iii) Duty free (without levying tax) textile goods were sent to Indian markets at comparable lower rate than Indian cotton made goods.
- 60.** Why did Fixed Exchange Rate system collapse in 1960s ? Give three reasons.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

- (1) From the 1960s, the rising cost of its overseas involvements weakened the US's finances and competitive strength.
- (2) The US dollar now no longer commanded confidence as the world's principal currency.
- (3) It could not maintain its value in relation to gold. This led to the collapse of the fixed exchange rates.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 61.** Examine different factors which led people to migrate to the continents of America and Australia in the nineteenth century.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

The following factors led people to migrate to the continents of America and Australia in the nineteenth century :

- (i) Acquiring agricultural land and having better accommodation in these continents was a powerful factor for the poor and backward people of poor countries.
- (ii) Better trade, commerce and industrial opportunities in America and Australia also inspired the migrants from Asia, Africa and Latin America.

- 62.** Write any three negative aspects of liberalisation and globalisation.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

Negative Aspects of Liberalisation and Globalisation :

- (i) Rate of unemployment increased below expectations
- (ii) Growth rate declined to 4% per annum (2002-2003) from 8% in (1972-73)
- (iii) The laws failed to reduce concentration of economic power in the private sector
- (iv) Public sector enterprises ran in severe losses to the tune of Z 203 crore due to corruption, inefficiency and ineffective management.

### SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 63.** Describe the role of different religious groups in the development of anti-colonial feelings in Vietnam.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

Religion played an important role in the development of anti-colonial feeling :

- (i) Vietnamese religious beliefs were a mixture of Buddhism, Confucianism and local practices. When French introduced Christianity here, the Vietnamese reacted sharply. It angered them.

- (ii) As a result, an early Anti-Christianity movement, Scholar's revolt broke out in 1868. This was led by the officials at the Imperial Court. This was just because they were angered by the spread of Christianity and French power.
- (iii) The French suppressed this revolt but this uprising inspired the other patriots to rise up against them. The role of Hao Hao movement led by Huynh-Phu-So in 1939 in Mekong delta region is also significant in the development of anti-colonial movement in Vietnam.
- 64.** Describe the economic conditions of Britain after the 'First World War'.
- Ans :** Comp 2018
- Britain, world's leading economy in the pre-war period, faced a prolonged crisis after the First World War.
- To finance war expenditure, Britain had borrowed liberally from US. This meant that at the end of the war, Britain was burdened with huge external debts.
  - The war had disturbed Britain's position of dominance in the Indian market. In India, the nationalist movement had gathered strength and anti-British feeling had become stronger among common people. Promotion of Indian industries had become one of the objectives of the nationalist leaders, which adversely affected industries in Britain.
  - There was widespread increase in unemployment coupled with decrease in agricultural and industrial production. Cotton production collapsed and export of cotton from Britain fell dramatically.
  - Unable to modernize, Britain was finding it difficult to compete with U.S., Germany and Japan internationally.
- 65.** Briefly discuss the merits of globalisation and write three steps which have been taken by government to promote it in India.
- Ans :** OD 2017, SQP 2010
- Merits of Globalisation :
- (i) It helps in free flow of goods and services across the world due to reduction in trade barriers.
  - (ii) Free flow of technology and experience.
  - (iii) Free flow of capital among the world nations.
  - (iv) It helps up to some extent in free flow of labour to different countries of the world.
- Steps taken by Government of India to promote Globalisation :
- To promote globalisation and liberalisation, trade barriers have been lifted up by the Government of India since 1991 C.E. It is free trade policy adopted under pressure of Ministerial Conference (law making body) of World Trade Organisation (W.T.O.) viz. an agency of United Nations Organisation (U.N.O.)
  - We are exchanging technology and experience with several countries of the world.
  - Restrictions on imports and exports of goods have been minimised. For example, taxes on imported goods have been reduced.
  - Central as well as state governments are encouraging investors from abroad to invest in India.
- 66.** Explain the causes of the Great Depression.
- Ans :** Foreign 2013
- The main causes of the Great Depression were as follows :
- Agricultural over-production : As the agricultural prices were falling and there was decline in agricultural income, the farmers tried to increase their income by more production. However, this resulted in further fall in prices. Farm products rotted in the market for lack of buyers. This created more hardships for the farmers.
  - Financial dependence of many countries on US and crisis : Many countries of the world were dependent on US. They had taken loans from that country. It was

easy to raise loans in US if everything was fine.

- (iii) By the year 1929 US overseas lenders panicked at the first sign of trouble. They stopped loans to the European countries thus halting all production there.
- (iv) The financial problems such as failure of banks, collapse of currencies (the British pound-sterling), slump in agricultural and raw material prices. The US government doubled import duties to protect its economy and it proved to be another severe blow to world trade.

**67.** What was the contribution of Christopher Columbus?

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

Christopher Columbus discovered the vast continent that later came to be known as the Americas. With the discovery of Americas, started the cultural exchange with the original inhabitants of a vast continent. Foods like potatoes, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes, which were not known to people of other continents, were introduced there and became a part of their daily diet.

From the sixteenth century America's vast lands and abundant crops and minerals began to transform trade and lives everywhere. Precious metals, particularly silver from mines located in present-day Peru and Mexico, also enhanced Europe's wealth and financed its trade with Asia.

**68.** How did Silk Routes link the world ? Explain with three suitable examples.

or

Describe any three features of Silk Routes.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

Role and importance of Silk Routes in linking the world :

- (i) The Silk Routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world.
- (ii) The name 'Silk Routes' points to the importance of west-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route.

(iii) Historians have identified several silk routes, over land and by sea, knitting together vast regions of Asia and linking Asia with Europe and northern Africa. They are known to have existed since before the Christian Era and -thrived almost till the fifteenth century. But Chinese pottery also travelled the same route, as did textiles and spices from India and Southeast Asia. In return, precious metals —gold and silver — flowed from Europe to Asia.

**69.** Describe three types of flows or movements identified by the economists. What were the effects of these flows ?

**Ans :**

OD 2020, Delhi 2017

Three types of flows or movements are :

- (i) Flow of trade (especially trade in goods),
- (ii) Flow of labour,
- (iii) Flow or movement of capital.

#### **Effects of three types of flows :**

All three flows were closely interwoven and affected people lives more deeply than ever before. The interconnections could sometime be broken—for example restriction on more labour migration than goods or capital flows. Yet it helps us understand, the nineteenth-century world economy better to look at the three flows together.

**70.** Write a short note on Indian entrepreneurs settled abroad.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (i) Some Indian bankers were Shikaripuri Shroffs and Nattu Kottai Chettiar. They financed either their own funds or borrowed funds from bankers in European countries. On exports of agricultural product, they also financed corporate offices or organisations in India. They financed in export of agricultural produces from Central and Southeast Asia.
- (ii) Traders and moneylenders of India like Hyderabadi Indian traders opened their emporia or offices for sale in bulk quantity in almost all seaports of colonies all over Europe and Africa. They used to sell

local agricultural produces, handicrafts, curios and antiquity.

71. Enlist the reasons because of which need for new economic policy was felt in India. Also write its objectives.

Ans :

Comp 2014

**Reasons prompted the need of NEP :**

1. Increase in fiscal deficit.
2. Increase in deficit of balance of payment.
3. Gulf crisis.
4. Fall in exchange reserves.
5. Rise in prices.
6. Poor performance of public sector undertakings.

**Main objectives of NEP :**

1. Liberalisation of the economy.
2. Dispensing with too many controls.
3. Expansion of private sector.
4. Encouragement of private foreign investment.
5. Modernisation of agriculture.
6. Controlling fiscal deficit.

72. What were the aspects of New Economic Policy adopted in India ?

Ans :

OD 2010

1. A process of economic reforms was started here in July 1991. The main thrust of the new economic policy was on liberalization, privatization and globalisation of the economy.
2. All except four industries have been unlicensed. The limit of maximum investment of Z 100 crores by a company has been removed. Most of the restrictions put on direct foreign investment have been removed.
3. Limits on users of foreign exchange have been liberalized. As a step towards privatisation, newer and newer areas are being opened for private sector.
4. Now only five industries are reserved for public sector. As a step towards globalisation, the domestic industry is being exposed to competition with multinational companies. Imports of capital goods and technology is allowed.

73. What are the monetary reforms under the New Economic Policy ?

Ans :

Delhi 2008

Under the new economic policy, several steps have been taken. On the recommendations of Narasimham Committee, following reforms have been adopted :

1. Abolition of direct credit programme.
2. Free determination of interest rate.
3. Reconstitution of banking system.
4. More freedom to banks.
5. Improvement in accounting system.
6. Reduction in liquidity ratio.

74. Discuss the positive aspects of globalisation and liberalisation.

Ans :

SQP 2005

Some Positive Aspects of Globalisation and Liberalisation :

- (i) Globalisation and liberalisation have helped in rapid economic development. A large industrial base created and industrial production increased.
- (ii) Reduction in proportion of people living below the poverty line.
- (iii) Self-sufficiency in food achieved.
- (iv) Savings mobilised.
- (v) Resources for development generated.
- (vi) A large pool of scientists and technically skilled persons formed.
- (vii) Export-oriented units established.

75. What were the main sources of attraction for Europeans to come to Africa in the late nineteenth century ? How did they exploit their resources ?

Ans :

SQP 2017

Main sources of attraction for Europeans in Africa were :

- (i) Europeans were attracted to Africa due to its vast resources of land and minerals.
- (ii) Europeans came to Africa hoping to establish plantations and mines to produce crops and minerals for export to Europe.
- (iii) Inheritance laws were changed so that peasants were displaced from land : only one member of a family was allowed to

inherit land, as a result of which the others were pushed into the labour market.

- (iv) Europeans divided different regions of Africa among themselves.

76. Explain the role of technology in shaping the world economy of the 19th century.

Ans :

Foreign 2012

(i) Changes in transport and communication: Technology played a major role in all these developments. Railways, steam shipping, telegraph — were important inventions without which it was not possible to imagine the transformation of nineteenth-century world.

(ii) Link in various markets of the world : New investments and improvements in transport; faster railways, lighter wagons and larger ships helped move food more cheaply and quickly from far away farms to final markets.

(iii) Impact on the meat trade : Till the 1870s, meat from America was shipped to Europe in the form of live animals which were then slaughtered in Europe. But live animals took up a lot of ship space. Many also died in voyage, fell ill, lost weight, or became unfit to eat. So the prices of meat were very high and it was beyond the reach of the European poor. Due to high price, the demand and production was low. But the invention of refrigerated ships made it possible to transport meat from one region to another.

77. Discuss the darker side of expanding international trade and globalisation in late 19th century.

Ans :

Comp 2009, 2005

(i) Loss of Freedom and Livelihood : Trade flourished and markets expanded in the late nineteenth century. But this was not only a period of expanding trade and increased prosperity. It is important to realise the darker side of this process. In many parts of the world, the expansion of trade and a closer relationship with

the world economy also meant a loss of freedoms and livelihoods.

(ii) Division of Africa among imperialist powers : In 1885, the big European powers met in Berlin to complete the carving up of division of Africa between them.

(iii) Rise of colonial powers and sacrificing the interest of the colonial people : Britain and France made vast additions to their overseas territories in the late nineteenth century. Belgium, Germany and US also became a colonial power.

78. What is Group 77 ? Why did Group 77 countries demand a New International Economic Order? Explain.

Ans :

OD 2017

The group of 77 developing countries which organise themselves as a separate group to get benefit from the fast growth of western economies experience by them after Second World War in next twenty to twenty five years.

#### **Causes of demand of NIEO :**

- The Group 77 countries (developing countries) demanded a New International Economic Order to get real control on their own natural resources.
- To get more development assistance from advanced or western countries.
- To procure better or fair price for raw material.
- They also desired to obtain better access for their manufactured goods in developed countries' markets.

79. Explain the impact of the First World War on Britain.

Ans :

Delhi 2012

(i) Post-war economic recovery proved difficult as the heavy expenditure on the World War I weakened the British economy.

(ii) While Britain was preoccupied with war, industries had developed in Japan and India. So now Britain had to face competition from - these countries especially from Japan.

- (iii) To finance war expenditures, Britain had borrowed liberally from the US. This meant that at the end of the war Britain was burdened with huge external debts.
- (iv) The war had led to an economic boom, i.e., to a large increase in demand, production, prices and employment. When the war boom ended production contracted and unemployment increased.
- 80.** Why was there a need for clearing lands in Britain 'during the 19th century ? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

There was a great need felt in Britain to clear land tracts due to various reasons. Out of those reasons only the three important reasons are explained as under :

- (i) Increasing demand of food-grains : Population in Britain grew at a very fast rate in the late phase of 18th century. Due to high population the demands for food-grains went up. To fulfil the need for eatables, food-grains, vegetables, fruits etc., land was cleared to expand the area of farming.
- (ii) Introduction and expansion of Railway : It was not enough merely to clear lands for agriculture. Railways were needed to link the agricultural regions to the ports. So land was cleared to lay new railway lines.
- (iii) Homes and settlements : People had to settle on the lands to bring them under cultivation. This meant building homes and settlements.
- 81.** Describe the effects of the Great Depression of 1929 on the United States of America.

or

'The US was severely affected by the Great Depression of 1929.' Justify the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2006

United States was greatly affected by the Great Depression of 1929.

- (1) With the fall in prices US banks had also slashed domestic lending and called back loans.
- (2) Many houses and businesses collapsed.
- (3) Faced with falling incomes, many households were unable to repay the loans. They had to give up their houses, cars and other consumer durables.
- (4) Unemployment soared, people trudged long distances looking for work.
- (5) Unable to recover investment and loans and repay depositors, thousands of banks went bankrupt and were forced to close. By 1933, over 4000 banks had closed and 110,000 companies had collapsed.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 82.** Describe the explosive conditions prevailed in Balkans after 1871 in Europe.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (i) After 1871, explosive conditions prevailed in Balkans area in Europe. The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variation comprising modern day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro whose inhabitants were broadly known as the Slays.
- (ii) In 19th century, the Ottoman Empire had sought to strengthen itself through modernisation and internal reforms but with very little success.
- (iii) One by one, its European subject nationalities broke away from its control and declared their own independence.
- (iv) The Balkan peoples based their claims for independence or political rights on nationality and used history to prove that they had once been independent but had subsequently been subjugated by foreign powers.
- (v) Hence, the rebellious nationalities in the Balkans thought of their struggle as

their attempts to win back their long lost independence which converted the region into a battle ground.

- 83.** Illustrate with examples that food offers many opportunities of long-distance cultural exchange.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (i) Traders and travellers introduced food crops to the lands they travelled.
- (ii) Many of our common foods, such as potatoes, maize, soya, ground nuts, tomatoes, chillies and sweet potatoes came from America.
- (iii) It is believed that noodles travelled West from China to become ‘Spaghetti’ or perhaps Arab traders took pasta to fifth century Sicily (an island in Italy). Indian ‘Rotis’ have become ‘tortillas’ in Mexico, America and western countries.
- (iv) Similar foods were also known in India and Japan, so the truth about their origins may never be known. Yet such guesswork suggests the possibilities of long-distance cultural contact even in the pre-modern world.
- (v) Europe’s poor people began to eat better and live longer with the introduction of potato. Poor people of Ireland had become so dependent that when disease destroyed the potato crops in 1840s, a large number of people died of starvation.

- 84.** “Even before factories began to dot the landscape in England and Europe, there was large-scale industrial production for an international market in the country side.” Elucidate.

**Ans :**

SOP 2018

The 17th and the 18th century was a time when open fields were disappearing and common ones were being enclosed. Cottagers and poor peasants, who had earlier depended on common land for their survival gathering their firewood, berries, vegetables, hay and straw, had now to look for alternative sources of income. Many had tiny plots of land which could not provide work for all members of the

household. So when merchants arrived and offered advances to produce goods for them, they happily agreed.

- (i) In the 17th and 18th centuries, merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for an international market.
- (ii) With the expansion of world trade and the acquisition of colonies in different parts of the world, the demand for goods began growing. But merchants could not expand production within towns because here urban crafts and trade guilds were powerful.
- (iii) These were associations of producers that trained craftspeople, maintained control over production, regulated competition and prices, and restricted the entry of new people into the trade.
- (iv) Rulers granted different guilds the monopoly right to produce and trade in specific products. It was therefore difficult for new merchants to set up business in towns.
- (v) So they turned to the countryside. In the countryside, poor peasants and artisans who had lost their common lands began working for merchants and produced goods and indirectly served the international market.

- 85.** “The function and the shape of the family were completely transformed by life in the industrial city.” Clarify the statement with regard to urbanization that happened in England in the 18th century.

**Ans :**

SOP 2018

In the 18th century, the family had been a unit of production and consumption as well as of political decision-making. There was a big change in the older pattern.

- (i) Ties between members of households loosened, and among the working class the institution of marriage tended to break down.
- (ii) Women of the upper and middle classes in Britain, on the other hand, faced

- increasingly higher levels of isolation, although their lives were made easier by domestic maids who cooked, cleaned and cared for young children on low wages.
- (iii) Women who worked for wages had some control over their lives, particularly among the lower social classes. However, many social reformers felt that the family as an institution had broken down, and needed to be saved or reconstructed by pushing these women back into their homes.
- (iv) The city encouraged a new spirit of individualism among both men and women, and a freedom from the collective values that were a feature of the smaller rural communities.
- (v) Men and women did not have equal access to this new urban space. As women lost their industrial jobs and conservative people rallied against their presence in public spaces, women were forced to withdraw into their homes.
- 86.** Describe any five factors that led to the end of the Bretton Woods system and the beginning of globalisation.
- Ans :** Comp 2015
- (1) From the 1960s, the rising costs of its overseas involvements weakened the US's finances and competitive strength.
  - (2) The US dollar now no longer commanded confidence as the world's principal currency.
  - (3) US dollar could not maintain its value in relation to gold.
  - (4) This eventually led to the collapse of the system of fixed exchange rates and the introduction of a system of floating exchange rates.
  - (5) International financial system also changed in important ways. Developing countries were forced to borrow from western commercial banks and private lending institutions.
  - (6) Industrial world was hit by unemployment. MNCs turned to China due to its low wages.
- 87.** Explain the statement 'the food travels throughout the world' with examples.
- Ans :** OD 2012
- The statement that 'food travels throughout the world' is a historical fact.
- (i) Trade in goods including foodgrains fetches long-distance cultural exchanges. Traders and travellers introduced new crops to the lands, they travelled. Even rare foodstuff in distant parts of the world might share common origins. Take for example, spaghetti and noodles. It is believed that noddles travelled West from China to become spaghetti. Or, perhaps Arab traders took pasta to fifth century Sicily i.e. an island now in Italy.
  - (ii) Similar food also known in India and Japan are as ancient in India that their origins may never be known. Such guesswork suggests the possibilities of long-distance cultural contact even in the pre-modern world.
  - (iii) Many of our common foods, such as potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes, and so on were not known to our ancestors until about five centuries ago. These foods were only introduced in Europe and Asia after Christopher Columbus incidentally discovered the vast continent that was later known as the Americas including North America, South America and the Caribbean.
- 88.** Why has the indentured labour system in 19th century been described as a new system of slavery ?
- or
- Nineteenth century indenture has been described on a new system of slavery. Explain three reasons.
- Ans :** Delhi 2005
- (i) It was a world of faster economic growth as well as greater misery, higher incomes for some and poverty for others, technological advances in some areas and new forms of exploitation in others.

- (ii) Most of the indentured workers migrated in hope for a bright future but they were exploited by the recruiting agent and by the employer.
- (iii) They had to pay a commission to the recruiting agent.
- (iv) The agents used to provide false information to the workers regarding their final destination, modes of travel, the nature of work and living and working conditions.
- (v) Sometimes agents even forcibly abducted less willing migrants.
89. Write any three factors responsible for indentured labour migration from India.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

The main characteristics of indentured labour (bonded labourer under contract to work for his or her employer for a specific period of time) migration from India are the following :

- (i) Domination and slavery was witnessed in the world order. Europeans became more and more wealthy while natives of Asian and African countries suffered misery, exploitation and poverty all simultaneously.
- (ii) It refers to large scale of labour flow or migration to the West from the East of the world. Contract labour system emerged.
- (iii) It reveals decline in cottage industries in India, increase in rates of land revenue and displacement of peasants by Europeans to instal large scale industries there. Problems likewise created by Europeans in India, pressed Indian peasants to migrate other countries as indentured labourers.
- (iv) It exhibits that labour demand was higher in Trinidad, Guyana and Surinam (Caribbean islands) and Mauritius and Fiji.
- (v) Middlemen emergence can be seen during slave trade and contract labour system adopted by Europeans. Slavery was all apparent from the behaviour made by the British plantation owners and miners

with indentured labourers during contract period.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

90. How was the food problem solved in Britain after the scrapping of the ‘Corn Laws’ ? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

The, food problem was solved in Britain after scrapping of the ‘Corn Laws’ taking the following three steps :

- (i) Foodgrains and eatable items were imported : After scrapping of the ‘Corn Laws’, foodgrains, food items and various types of eatable items were imported. These items were more cheap than these could be produced within Britain. The traders and merchants of Britain started importing cheap food from Australia, USA, Russia and some other eastern European countries.
- (ii) New shape was given to agricultural economy :
- (a) In Britain global agricultural economy was implemented. Large scale imports of foodgrains shaped way for global agricultural economy.
  - (b) Food no longer came from a nearby town or village but from thousands of miles way.
  - (c) Large farms were created in Britain. These farms were cultivated with the help of new agricultural machines and tools. They (farms) were linked by railway, roads and waterways.
- (iii) Network of irrigation in colonies of Britain : The British colonial government in India and other colonies built a network of irrigation canals to transform semi desert wastes into fertile agricultural lands that could grow wheat and cotton for exports to Britain.

91. Discuss the main characteristics related with First World Wartime transformation.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2012

Main characteristics of the First World War time transformations :

- (i) First modern industrial war : (a) The industrial interests of big powers gave it birth. This war saw the use of machine guns, tanks, aircraft, chemical weapons, etc., on a massive scale.
  - (ii) Great shortage of men of working age : Due to the First World War, most of the killed and injured were men of working age. These deaths and injuries reduced the able-bodied work-force in Europe.
  - (iii) Women workers entered in service sector : During the First World War period, industries were restructured to produce war-related goods. Entire societies were also reorganised for war viz. men went to battle and women stepped into undertake jobs (in factories, offices, of several departments including schools, hospitals and so on).
  - (iv) Britain became a debtor and US became an international creditor : The war shattered the markets. Europeans' earlier maintained agricultural production was slumped. Money was borrowed from American Banks and US public.
- 92.** How did the First World War change the economic life of the people in Britain ? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

The changes occurred in Britain in the economic field after the First World War) : The First World War had great impact on the economic life of Britain. We can explain this in the following points :

- (i) Heavy expenditure : Britain had to fight in the First World War on several fronts and areas. He has to bear very heavy expenditure during war years. The post war economic recovery proved very difficult for her. The world War First weakened the British economy.
- (ii) Industrial competition from Japan : While Britain was preoccupied with war, industries had developed in Japan

and India. So now Britain had to face competition from these countries especially from Japan.

- (iii) Heavy loan burden of USA : To finance war expenditures, Britain had borrowed liberally from the United States. This meant that at the end of the war, Britain was burdened with huge external debts.
- (iv) Economic Depression : During war days prices of most of the commodities increase. After the First World War several industrial units were close down. Unemployment increased. Exports of several items decrease. Some banks, insurance companies and financial institutions were force to declare themselves bankrupt due to adverse impact of Economic Depression caused in USA from 1929 to 1933.

- 93.** What do you know about World Trade Organisation? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

World Trade Organisation (WTO)

1. WTO was set-up by United Nations to promote international trade among countries.
2. Headquarter of WTO is located in Geneva.
3. It was established on January 1, 1995. Till January 2002, 144 countries were its members.
4. It replaced General Agreement on Trade and Tariff (GATT) which was established in 1948.
5. India became a member of WTO on January 1, 1995.
6. It significantly influenced the liberalisation process in the world.
7. WTO is based on principle of discrimination-free trade and promotion of fair competition among member nations.
8. Its most of the rules were framed on the basis of persuasion and decisions taken by consensus. Ministerial Conference is its law making body but USA has saddle with hegemony there.

9. WTO wants both import and export quotas to be abolished and countries to follow multinational agreements.
10. All members of WTO have adopted laws and policies in order to comply with WTO rules.
- 94.** Why liberalisation has been adopted in India ? Mention freedoms given to private sector under it. Also enlist main measures undertaken for liberalisation of economy in our country since 1991.

**Ans :**

Comp 2011, 2007

India, has adopted liberalisation to achieve certain objectives. These are :

- (i) To make free the Indian industry from needless and irksome controls.
- (ii) To upgrade technology and
- (iii) To develop international competitiveness.

**Freedoms provided to private sector by liberalisation:**

- (i) Industrial licensing has been abolished except for five priority industries.
- (ii) Number of public sector industries has been reduced from 17 to 3.
- (iii) Freed from regulation like permission for importing raw materials. Measures taken for liberalisation of Indian economy :

Following measures have been taken for the liberalisation of Indian economy :

1. Abolition of Industrial Licensing and Registration.
2. Concession from Monopolies Act.
3. Freedom for expansion and production to industries.
4. Increase in investment limit of the small industries.
5. Freedom to import capital goods.
6. Freedom to import technology.
7. Free determination of interest rates.

- 95.** Describe the main changes that took place due to Liberalisation and Globalisation.

**Ans :**

OD 2011

We can classify the total changes that took place due to Liberalisation and Globalisation into the following two categories visible Changes and invisible changes

**(a) Visible Changes :**

1. Better services in telecommunication sector, colour television sets and other electronic goods at low prices.
2. Market for cold drinks and food products taken Over by Pepsi, Coca-Cola.

**(b) Invisible Changes :**

1. India's share in the trade of goods and services in the world has increased.
2. Investment from foreign countries increased from Z 174 crores in 1991 to Z 9,338 crores in 2000.
3. We need foreign exchange to pay our imports (from 4,822 crores in 1991 to 1,59,924 crores in 2000).
4. New jobs created but not sufficient to meet all the needs, specially in the rural sector.
5. Growth of industry not reached at its expected level.

- 96.** Describe any five measures of liberalisation taken by the Government of India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, OD 2012

Measures of liberalisation taken by the Government of India :

- (i) Exemption of industries from licensing : The private sector has been freed to form all industries except a few from any kind of industrial licensing.
- (ii) Permission to import raw material from abroad : According to new economic policy the companies can import raw materials. In this case, government permission is not required.
- (iii) Extending investment limit of small industries : The restriction on investment by large business have been lifted.
- (iv) Doing away with the concept of MRTP : Now there are no MRTP companies. These companies can take their own investment decision and expansion plans.
- (v) Expansion of industries : Now industries are free to expand themselves according to the needs of market. Ceiling for capital has been abolished.

- (vi) Reduction in the number of industries reserved for public sector : The number of industries reserved for public sector has been reduced from 7 to 3. Now private sector can also enter in core industries like iron and steel, electricity, air transport, ship-building, heavy machinery and some defence goods.
97. What was the main aim of the post-war international economic system? Mention the two Bretton Woods Institutions established in 1944 with their main objectives.

Ans :

Foreign 2017

- (1) (i) The main aim of the post-war international economic system was to preserve economic stability and full employment in the industrial world.
  - (ii) Economists and politicians drew two key lessons from inter-war economic experience. First, an industrial society is based on mass consumption.
  - (iii) But to ensure mass consumption, there was need for high and stable incomes. Incomes could not be stable if employment was unstable. Thus, stable incomes also require steady, full employment.
  - (iv) Since markets alone could not guarantee full employment, therefore, government would have to step in it to minimize fluctuations of price, output and employment. Economic stability could be ensured only through the intervention of the government.
  - (v) The framework of this programme was agreed upon at the United Nations Monetary and Financial Conference held in July 1944 at Bretton Woods in New Hampshire, USA.
  - (vi) The Bretton Woods system inaugurated an era of unprecedented growth of trade and income for the western industrial nations and Japan.
- (2) Bretton Wood established two institutions : (a) International Monetary Fund, (b) The International Bank for

Reconstruction and Development (World Bank).

98. 'G-77 can be seen as a reaction to the activities of Bretton Woods Twins'. Explain the statement with three arguments.

or

Describe the circumstances responsible for the formation of G-77.

Ans :

SQP 2015

It is rightly said that G-77 can be seen as a reaction to the activities of Bretton Woods Twins. This has the following reasons :

- (1) The Bretton Woods Twins — the IMF and the World Bank were dominated by the former colonial powers. As a result, most developing countries did not benefit from the fast growth that the western economies experienced in the 1950s and 1960s. So, they organised themselves as a group—the group of 77 or G-77 to demand a new international economic order.
- (2) Former colonial powers exploited the natural resources of developing nations through the IMF and the World Bank.
- (3) The developing nations organised themselves into G-77 so as to gain real control over their natural resources.
- (4) They wanted to get more developmental assistance and fairer prices for raw materials.
- (5) They also wanted a better opportunity for their manufactured goods in the markets of developed nations.

99. 'The impact of Great Depression of 1929 was different on the Indian rural and industrial society.' Justify the statement.

Ans :

Foreign 2018

- (1) The Great Depression of 1929 had a severe impact on India which was then under the rule of British Raj. The Government of British India adopted a protective trade policy which though beneficial for the United Kingdom, caused great damage to the Indian economy.

- (2) During the period of 1929-1937, exports and imports fell drastically crippling seaborne international trade. The railway and the agricultural sector were the most affected.
- (3) Peasants and farmers suffered more than urban dwellers. Though, agricultural prices fell sharply, the colonial government refused to reduce revenue demands. Peasants producing for the world market were worst hit.
- (4) Across India, peasants' indebtedness increased. They used up their savings, mortgaged lands and sold jewellery and precious metals to meet daily expenses.
- (5) For urban India the depression was less grim because of falling prices. Those with fixed incomes like town dwelling landowners who received rents and middle class salaried employees found themselves better-off. Everything cost less. They benefited by industrial investment which grew because government had extended tariff protection to industries.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 100.** Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

*The exchange of goods among people, states and countries is referred to as trade. The market is the place where such exchanges take place. Trade between two countries is called international trade. It may take place through sea, air or land routes. While local trade is carried in cities, towns and villages, state level trade is carried between two or more states. Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its economic prosperity. It is, therefore, considered the economic barometer for a country.*

*As the resources are space bound, no country can survive without international trade. Export and import are the components of trade. The balance of trade of a country is*

*the difference between its export and import. When the value of export exceeds the value of imports, it is called a favourable balance of trade. On the contrary, if the value of imports exceeds the value of exports, it is termed as unfavourable balance of trade.*

*India has trade relations with all the major trading blocks and all geographical regions of the world. The commodities exported from India to other countries include gems and jewellery, chemicals and related products, agriculture and allied products, etc.*

*The commodities imported to India include petroleum crude and products, gems and jewellery, chemicals and related products, base metals, electronic items, machinery, agriculture and allied products. India has emerged as a software giant at the international level and it is earning large foreign exchange through the export of information technology.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by international trade?
2. What is meant by favourable and unfavourable balance of trade?
3. What are the commodities export and imported by India in international trade?

**Ans :**

1. The exchange of goods among people, states and countries is referred to as trade. Trade between two countries is called international trade.
2. The balance of trade of a country is the difference between its export and import. When the value of export exceeds the value of imports, it is called a favourable balance of trade. If the value of imports exceeds the value of exports, it is termed as unfavourable balance of trade.
3. Among the commodities in export the share of agriculture and allied products has been 8.64 percent, base metals 6.91 percent, gems and jewellery 17.02 percent, chemicals and related products 12.06 percent in 2016-17.  
The commodities imported to India include petroleum crude and products

22.4 percent, gems and jewellery 12.8 percent, chemicals and related products 9.76 percent, base metals 5.95 percent, electronic items 10.94%, machinery 8.9%, agriculture and allied products 5.84% in 2016-17.

- 101.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

*In Africa, in the 1890s, a fast-spreading disease of cattle plague or rinderpest had a terrifying impact on people's livelihoods and the local economy. This is a good example of the widespread European imperial impact on colonised societies. It shows how in this era of conquest even a disease affecting cattle, reshaped the lives and fortunes of thousands of people and their relations with the rest of the world. Historically, Africa had abundant land and a relatively small population. For centuries, land and livestock sustained African livelihoods and people rarely worked for a wage. In late nineteenth-century Africa, there were few consumer goods that wages could buy. If you had been an African possessing land and livestock - and there was plenty of both - you too would have seen little reason to work for a wage.*

**Questions :**

1. What was Rinderpest?
2. What were the two main sources of African economy for past centuries?
3. How cattle plague affected the situation of people in Africa?

**Ans :**

1. Rinderpest was a fast-spreading disease of cattle plague which led to the death of millions of cattle in African continent during the 1890s.
2. From several centuries, the African economy was primarily dependent on land and livestock. The African people were rarely seen working for the wages.
3. The cattle plague proved to be disastrous for the African people as it led to the death of millions of livestock which were the source of livelihood for them. This

resulted in the turning of the African people into labourers by the colonisers who gave meagre wages to the people for large amount of manual work.

- 102.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

*The Portuguese and Spanish conquest and colonisation of America was decisively under way by the mid-sixteenth century. European conquest was not just a result of superior firepower. In fact, the most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors was not a conventional military weapon at all. It was the germs such as those of smallpox that they carried on their person. Because of their long isolation, America's original inhabitants had no immunity against these diseases that came from Europe. Smallpox in particular proved a deadly killer. Once introduced, it spread deep into the continent, ahead even of any Europeans reaching there. It killed and decimated whole communities, paving the way for conquest.*

**Questions :**

1. Which two nations were the earliest colonisers in America?
2. What were some of the reasons due to which the colonisers easily established their control over several parts of America?
3. How smallpox turned into death of native people of America?

**Ans :**

1. Portugal and Spain were the earliest nations that colonised America around mid-sixteenth century.
2. The colonisers had superior firepower, military weapons and many advanced materials. But their most important weapon proved to be smallpox.
3. The Spanish conquerors transmitted the disease of smallpox to a large number of the native people in America which spread rapidly in the continent. The native people did not have immunity towards this disease and due to which there was death of thousands of people because of this disease. It led to the eradication of

number of communities and made the colonisation easier.

- 103.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*The Bretton Woods conference established the International Monetary Fund (IMF) to deal with external surpluses and deficits of its member nations. The International Bank for reconstruction and development (popularly known as the World Bank) was set up to finance post-war reconstruction: The IMF and the World bank are referred to as the Bretton Woods institutions or sometimes the Bretton Woods twins. The post-war international economic system is also often described as the Bretton Woods system. The IMF and the World Bank commenced financial operations in 1947. Decision-making in these institutions is controlled by the Western industrial powers. The US has an effective right of vote over key IMF and World Bank decisions.*

*The International Monetary System is the system linking national currencies and monetary system. The Bretton Woods system was based on fixed exchange rates. In this system, national currencies, for example, the Indian rupees were pegged to the dollar at a fixed exchange rate. The dollar itself was anchored to gold at a fixed price of \$35 per ounce of gold.*

**Questions :**

1. What was the reason behind setting up of International Monetary Fund?
2. Describe the Bretton Woods System.
3. A significant decision was taken at Bretton Woods in New Hampshire. Explain.

**Ans :**

1. The IMF was set up to promote International Monetary Cooperation.
2. The Bretton Woods System was based on fixed exchange rates. In this system, national currencies viz. the Indian rupees were pegged to the dollar at a fixed exchange rate.

The dollar itself was anchored to gold at a fixed price of \$ 35 per ounce of gold.

3. In Bretton Woods Conference New Hampshire USA, decision were taken for establishing World Bank and International Monetary Fund (IMF) to preserve Global economical stability and full employment in the industrial world.

These institutions would also deal with surplus and deficit of member nations and finance post war reconstruction.

- 104.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*The example of indentured labour migration from India also illustrates the two-sided nature of the nineteenth-century world. It was a world of faster economic growth as well as great misery, higher incomes for some and poverty for others, technological advances in some areas and new forms of coercion in others.*

*Indian traders and moneylenders also followed European colonisers into Africa. Hyderabad Sindhi traders, however, ventured beyond European colonies. From the 1860s they established flourishing emporia at busy ports worldwide, selling local and imported curios to tourists whose numbers were beginning to swell, thanks to the development of safe and comfortable passenger vessels.*

*Historically, fine cottons produced in India were exported to Europe. With industrialisation, British cotton manufacture began to expand and industrialists pressurised the government to restrict cotton imports and protect local industries. Tariffs were imposed on cloth imports into Britain. Consequently, the inflow of fine Indian cotton began to decline.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by indentured labour?
2. How did Indian traders flourished?
3. Why did Indian cotton begin to decline?

**Ans :**

1. A bonded labourer under contract to work for an employer for a specific

- amount of time, to pay off his passage to a new country or home.
2. The Indian traders established flourishing emporia of busy ports worldwide, selling local and imported curios to tourists whose numbers were beginning to swell.
  3. With industrialisation, British Cotton manufacture began to expand and industrialists pressurised the government to restrict cotton imports and protect local industries. Tariffs were imposed on cloth imports into Britain. Consequently, the inflow of fine Indian cotton began to decline.
- 105.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*The Second World War broke out a mere two decades after the end of the First World War. It was fought between the Axis Powers (mainly Nazi Germany, Japan and Italy) and the Allies (Britain, France, the Soviet Union and the US). It was a war waged for six years on many fronts, in many places, over land, on sea, in the air. Once again death and destruction was enormous. At least 60 million people, or about 3 per cent of the world's 1939 population, is believed to have been killed, directly or indirectly, as a result of the war. Millions more were injured. Unlike in earlier wars, most of these deaths took place outside the battlefields. Many more civilians than soldiers died from war-related causes. Vast parts of Europe and Asia were devastated, and several cities were destroyed by aerial bombardment or relentless artillery attacks. The war caused an immense amount of economic devastation and social disruption. Reconstruction promised to be long and difficult. Two crucial influences shaped post-war reconstruction. The first was the US's emergence as the dominant economic, political and military power in the Western world. The second was the dominance of the Soviet Union. It had made huge sacrifices to defeat Nazi Germany, and transformed itself from a backward agricultural country into a world power during the very years when the*

*capitalist world was trapped in the Great Depression.*

#### Questions

1. Who were the countries directly involved in the Second World War?
2. Who trapped the world in the Great Depression?
3. What was the duration of the Second World War?

Ans :

1. It was fought between the Axis Powers (mainly Nazi Germany, Japan and Italy) and the Allies (Britain, France, the Soviet Union and the US).
2. The capitalist world trapped the world in the Great Depression.
3. It was for six years on many fronts, in many places, over land, on sea, in the air.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

#### DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 4

## PRINT CULTURE AND THE MODERN WORLD

### SUMMARY

1. Autobiography : Story of one's own life written by the author himself or herself.
2. Anthology : Collection of passages from literature, especially poetry and song.
3. Scribes : Ancient and medieval copyist of manuscripts.  
Manuscript : Book or document written by hand; author's original copy-handwritten or typed, not printed.
4. Perchment : Skin of animals like goat or sheep specially prepared for writing, printing etc.
5. Calligraphy : An art of beautiful and styled writing.
6. Vellum : A parchment made from the skin of animals.
7. Ballad : A historical account or folk tale in verse, usually sung or recited.
8. Compositor : The person who composes the text for printing.
9. Galley : Metal frame in which types are picked and fixed and the text composed.
10. Platen : Wooden or steel base to get impression from type on paper.
11. Taverns : Modern pubs or place where liquor is sipped.
12. Heretical : Apostasy, beliefs other than Christians or teachings of the church.
13. Seditions : Action, speech or writing be presumed as against the Government.
14. Inquisition : A former Roman Catholic court for identifying and punishing heretics.
15. Protestant Reformation : A sixteenth century movement to reform the Catholic Church led by Martin Luther in Rome.
16. Almanac : Ritual calendar, Ephemeris.

17. Despotism : A system of governance in which absolute power is exercised by an individual tyranny.
18. Fatwa : A suo-motu decision by Mufti upon a complicated case.
19. New Testament : Part of Bible concerned with teachings of Christ and his earliest followers.
20. Vernacular Language : Language or dialect of the country, language spoken by a particular clan or group.
21. Biliotheque Blue : These are low priced small books printed in France. These were printed on poor quality paper and bound in cheap blue covers.
22. Chapbook : Pocket books of comics, novels, subject-notes. It was peddler literature for entertainment etc.
23. Society : An association of persons united by common interests.
24. Print Culture : Newspapers, magazines, printed literature including C.D. Roms, Disks etc.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which one of the following was NOT the reason for the popularity of scientific ideas among the common people in eighteenth century Europe ?
  - (a) Printing of idea of Isaac Newton
  - (b) Development of printing press
  - (c) Interest of people in science and reason
  - (d) Traditional aristocratic groups supported it.

Ans :

OD 2020

- (d) Traditional aristocratic groups supported it.

2. Why was reading of manuscript not easy in India? Choose the appropriate reason from the following options :
- Manuscripts were highly cheap.
  - Manuscripts were widely spread out.
  - Manuscripts were written in English and Hindi.
  - Manuscripts were fragile.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

(d) Manuscripts were fragile.

3. Who were called 'Chapmen'?
- Book seller
  - Paper seller
  - Workers of printing press
  - Seller of 'penny chap books.'

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

(a) Book seller

4. Printing was first developed in:
- Japan
  - Portugal
  - China
  - Germany

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

(c) China

5. When was leading libraries came into existence?
- Fifteenth century
  - Seventeenth century
  - Sixteenth century
  - None of above

**Ans :**

OD 2019

(b) None of above

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

6. Who was Martin Luther?
- Painter
  - Poet
  - Religious reformer
  - All of these

**Ans :**

SOP 2020

(c) Religious reformer

7. Identify the picture-



- Tripitaka Korena
- Diamond sutra
- Ukiyo
- Jikji

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

(a) Tripitaka Korena

8. Arrange the following options in the correct sequence-
- Press came to be made out of metal.
  - Offset press was developed.
  - Gutenberg perfected the system by olive press.
  - China first introduced hand- printing technology into Japan.

**Option:**

- 1, 4, 2, 3
- 2, 4, 3, 1
- 4, 2, 3, 1
- 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2018

(d) 4, 3, 2, 1

9. Which scholar expressed a deep anxiety about printing?
- Martin Luther
  - Erasmus
  - Johann Gutenberg
  - None of these

**Ans :**

SOP 2017, 2014

(b) Erasmus

10. **Assertion :** In 15the religious reformer Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five Theses criticising

many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church.

**Reason :** This led to a division within the Church and to the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

11. Complete the following table with the correct information-

Book	Written by	Year	Book is about
Ninety-Five Theses	A - ?	1517	B - ?

#### Option:

- A - Martin Luther, B - He displayed his unhappiness with the declined religious practice
- A - Martin Luther, B - He displayed his unhappiness with the Church's sale of indulgences
- A - Maxim Gorky, B - He displayed his unhappiness with the declined religious practice
- A - Maxim Gorky, B - He displayed his unhappiness with the Church's sale of indulgences

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

(b) A - Martin Luther, B - He displayed his unhappiness with the Church's sale of indulgences.

12. Which of the following cities became the hub of the Western style-school culture printing?

- Berlin
- Shanghai
- Paris
- Britain

**Ans :**

SQP 2011

- (b) Shanghai

13. In which of the following years, Buddhist missionaries from China introduced hand-printing technology?

- 758-760 AD
- 772-774 AD
- 768-770 AD
- 776-778 AD

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

- (c) 768-770 AD

14. Identity the picture-



- (a) A page from the diamond sutra.

- (b) A page taken from the Gutenberg bible.

- (c) A page taken from the Jikji.

- (d) A page taken from the Ramcharit manas.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (b) A page taken from the Gutenberg bible.

15. **Assertion :** The first book that Gutenberg printed was the Bible.

**Reason :** About 500 copies were printed and it took two years to produce them.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** Foreign 2008

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

- 16.** Which of the following authors from New York had perfected the power-driven cylindrical press?

- (a) Richard M. Hoe  
 (b) George Eliot  
 (c) Jane Austen  
 (d) Martin Luthor

**Ans :** Comp 2021

- (a) Richard M. Hoe

- 17.** Arrange the following books in the ascending order of the dates of their publication-

1. 'Kesari' written by Balgangadhar Tilak.
2. 'Gulamgiri' written by Jyotiba Phule.
3. 1<sup>st</sup> printed edition of 'The Ramcharitmanas of Tulsidas'.
4. 'The Sambad Kaumudi' published by Ram Mohan Roy.

**Option:**

- (a) 3, 1, 2, 4  
 (b) 3, 4, 2, 1  
 (c) 4, 1, 3, 2  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :** OD 2012, 2010

- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1

- 18.** At which of the following places in India, first printing press was established?

- (a) Bombay  
 (b) Mardras  
 (c) Calcutta  
 (d) Goa

**Ans :** Delhi 2005

- (d) Goa

- 19.** Identify the personality-

- Was a German goldsmith and inventor
- Invented the first known printing press
- Was the son of a merchant
- perfected the system by olive press in 1448

**Option:**

- (a) Johann Gutenberg  
 (b) Maxim Gorky  
 (c) Menocchio  
 (d) Jane Austen

**Ans :** OD 2009, 2007

- (a) Johann Gutenberg

- 20.** **Assertion :** The production of handwritten manuscripts could not satisfy the ever-increasing demand for books.

**Reason :** Chinese paper reached Europe via the silk route.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** OD 2006

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 21.** Which of the following countries had the earliest kind of print technology?

- (a) China  
 (b) Korea  
 (c) Japan  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :** Foreign 2017

- (d) All of these

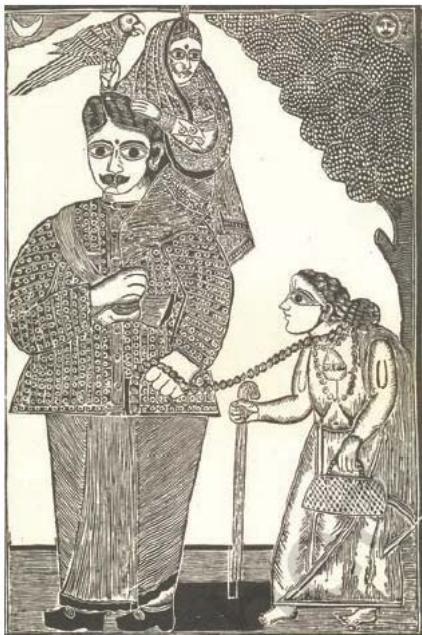
- 22.** What is calligraphy?

- (a) Stylised writing  
 (b) Poetry  
 (c) Textbooks  
 (d) Flower arrangement

**Ans :** SQP 2014

- (a) Stylised writing

- 23.** Which one of the following option best signifies this picture?



- (a) Traditional family roles.  
 (b) Cultural impact of the west which has turned the family upside down.  
 (c) Destruction of proper family relations.  
 (d) Teaching women how to be obedient wives.

**Ans :** OD 2017  
 (c) Destruction of proper family relations.

24. Which of the following classes emerged as a new reading class?  
 (a) Elite class  
 (b) Working class  
 (c) Common people  
 (d) Peasantry class

**Ans :** Comp 2010  
 (a) Elite class

25. Match the following items given in column A with those in column B. Choose the correct answer from the options given below :

Column A	Column B
A. Rashsundari Debi	1. Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal
B. Sudarshan Chakra	2. Kesari
C. Kashibaba	3. Amar Jiban
D. Bal Gangadhar Tilak	4. Sacchi Kavitaayen

### Options

- (a) A – 4, B – 1, C – 3, D – 2  
 (b) A – 4, B – 1, C – 2, D – 3  
 (c) A – 2, B – 1, C – 3, D – 4  
 (d) A – 3, B – 4, C – 1, D – 2

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (d) A – 3, B – 4, C – 1, D – 2

26. Arrange the following countries on the basis of “Print technology” started in these countries-

1. Japan
2. China
3. Korea
4. India

### Option:

- (a) 2, 1, 3, 4  
 (b) 3, 4, 2, 1  
 (c) 4, 1, 3, 2  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (a) 2, 1, 3, 4

27. At which place, Catholic priests printed the first Tamil book in 1579?

- (a) Cuttack  
 (b) Cochin  
 (c) Calcutta  
 (d) Madras

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2015

- (b) Cochin

28. **Assertion :** The new reading culture was accompanied by a new technology.

**Reason :** From hand printing there was a gradual shift to mechanical printing.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

29. Which of the following countries possessed a huge bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through Civil Service Examination?
- China
  - Korea
  - Japan
  - Britain

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

(a) China

30. Which of the following books is the oldest Japanese book, printed in AD containing six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations?
- Diamond Sutra
  - Harshcharita
  - Brihatstutra
  - Mrichkatika

**Ans :**

OD 2010

(a) Diamond Sutra

31. Who introduced the printing press in India?
- French
  - Italian
  - Portuguese
  - None of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

(c) Portuguese

32. **Assertion :** Print and popular religious literature stimulated many distinctive individual interpretations of faith even among little-educated working people.

**Reason :** Through the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, literacy rates went up in most parts of Europe.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SOP 2016

- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

33. Which book of Jyotiba Phule was based on the caste system?
- Amar Jiban
  - Istri Dharam Vichar
  - Sacchi Kavityen
  - Gulamgiri

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

(d) Gulamgiri

34. Complete the following table with the correct information-

Invented the first known printing press	First book he printed	In year	Number of copies still exist
A - ?	B - ?	1455	49 copies of this book still exist

**Option:**

- A - Maxim Gorky, B - Ninety-Fire Theses,
- A - Maxim Gorky, B - Bible,
- A - Johann Gutenberg, B - Bible,
- A - Johann Gutenberg, B - Ninety-Fire Theses,

**Ans :**

OD 2020

(c) A - Johann Gutenberg, B - Bible,

35. At which of the following places, the Grimm Brothers spent years compiling traditional folk tales gathered from peasants?

- France
- England
- Germany
- Spain

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

(c) Germany

36. Which of the following is/are some of the best-known women novelist during 19th century?

- Jane Austen
- George Eliot
- Bronte Sisters
- All of these

**Ans :**

SOP 2012, OD 2009

(d) All of these

**37. Assertion :** As literacy and schools spread in African countries, there was a virtual reading mania.

**Reason :** Churches of different denominations set up schools in villages, carrying literacy to tribals.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** Foreign 2017

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**38. What did Menocchio, the miller, do?**

- (a) Commissioned artists
- (b) Enraged the Roman Catholic Church
- (c) Wrote the Adages
- (d) None of these

**Ans :** Comp 2011

- (b) Enraged the Roman Catholic Church

**39. Which class of people normally live in the world of oral culture attain knowledge?**

- (a) Elite class
- (b) Common people
- (c) Working class
- (d) Peasantry class

**Ans :** OD 2014

- (b) Common people

**40. In which of the following countries, the rates of literacy was very low till the 20th century?**

- (a) European countries
- (b) Asian countries
- (c) American countries
- (d) Australian countries

**Ans :** Comp 2021

- (a) European countries

**41. Which one of the following, created the possibility of wide circulation of ideas, and introduced a new world of debate and discussion?**

- (a) Print

- (b) Oral
- (c) Text
- (d) Ballad

**Ans :**

SOP 2019

- (a) Print

**42. Who wrote My Childhood and My University?**

- (a) Thomas Wood
- (b) Maxim Gorky
- (c) George Eliot
- (d) Jane Austen

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (b) Maxim Gorky

**43. Who was James Lackington?**

- (a) Publisher
- (b) Painter
- (c) Scholar
- (d) Reformer

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (a) Publisher

**44. What was Gutenberg's first printed book?**

- (a) Ballads
- (b) Dictionary
- (c) Bible
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (c) Bible

**45. In which of the two languages, 50 books were published in 1674?**

- (a) Konkani and Kanada
- (b) Malayalam and Manipuri
- (c) Telugu and Tamil
- (d) Oriya and Bhojpuri

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (a) Konkani and Kanada

**46. What were Penny Chapbooks?**

- (a) Ritual calendars
- (b) Journals
- (c) Newspapers
- (d) Pocket-sized books

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (d) Pocket-sized books

47. Arrange the following in the correct sequence of old tradition of handwritten manuscripts:

1. Vernacular languages
2. Persian
3. Arabic
4. Sanskrit

**Option:**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (c) 4, 1, 3, 2
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

Ans :

SQP 2005

- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

48. **Assertion :** There was intense controversy between social and religious reformers and the Hindu orthodoxy over matters like-widow immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical priesthood and idolatory.

**Reason :** The Deoband Seminary founded in 1867, published thousands upon thousands off at was telling Muslim readers how to conduct themselves in everyday lives, and explaining the meaning of Islamic doctrines.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

OD 2010, 2017

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

49. Who among the following religious reformers wrote Ninety Five These criticising many of the religious practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic church?

- (a) Confucious
- (b) Kitagawa Utamaro
- (c) Martin Luther
- (d) Hi-sang

Ans :

Delhi 2012

- (c) Martin Luther

50. Which one of the following began to edit the ‘Bengal Gazette’ a weeklya magazine?

- (a) James Augustus Hickey
- (b) George Eliot
- (c) Jane Austen
- (d) William Bolts

Ans :

Foreign 2006

- (a) James Augustus Hickey

51. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Jikji of Korea
- (b) A Portrait of Johann Gutenberg, 1584
- (c) Gutenberg Printing Press
- (d) Pages of Gutenberg's Bible

Ans :

Comp 2018

- (a) Jikji of Korea

52. Identify the personality-

- Was a miller of sixteenth century in Italy.
- He reinterpreted the message of the Bible.
- He formulated a view of God and creation that enraged the Roman catholic church.
- He was railed up twice when the Roman church began its inquisition to repress heretical ideas.

**Option:**

- (a) Johann Gutenberg
- (b) Maxim Gorky
- (c) Menocchio
- (d) Jane Austen

Ans :

OD 2012, Comp 2017

- (c) Menocchio

53. Complete the following table with correct information-

	Name of Book	Written By	Language
1.	Ramcharitmanas	A - ?	Awadhi
2.	B - ?	Gulamgiri	Marathi

**Option:**

- (a) A - Tulsidas, B - Jyotiba Phule
- (b) A - Tulsidas, B - Vinoba Bhave
- (c) A - Kalidas, B - Vinoba Bhave
- (d) A - Kaliidas, B - Jyotiba Phule

Ans : OD 2013

- (a) A - Tulsidas, B - Jyotiba Phule

54. **Assertion :** Children became an important category of readers.

**Reason :** Primary education became compulsory from the late nineteenth century.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans : SQP 2018

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

55. Who began to publish the weekly Bengal Gazette?

- (a) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
- (b) Gangadhar Bhattacharya
- (c) Raja Rammohun Roy
- (d) Madan Mohan Malviya

Ans : Delhi 2020

- (b) Gangadhar Bhattacharya

56. At which of the following places, a children's press was set up in 1857?

- (a) England
- (b) Spain
- (c) France
- (d) China

Ans : Foreign 2009, OD 2011

- (c) France

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

57. How had novels been easily available to the masses in Europe during nineteenth century? Explain with examples.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

Novels have been easily available to the masses in Europe because of the following reasons :

- (1) Invention of the printing press and other technological advancements were mainly responsible for the growing popularity of novels in Europe.
- (2) Development in means of transportation and communication made it possible to send the copies of novels all over Europe.
- (3) Setting up of public libraries or lending libraries also made novels easily accessible.

58. Interpret any one fear in the minds of religious authorities and monarchs about the printed texts during 16th century in Europe.

Ans :

SQP 2019

Fear in the minds of religious authorities and monarchs:

- (1) They were apprehensive of the effects that the easier access to printed word would have on people's minds.
- (2) It was feared that there was no control over what was printed.
- (3) Rebellious and irreligious thoughts and ideas could spread.

(Any one)

59. "Not everyone welcomed the printed book, and those who did also had fears about it." Justify the statement by giving three arguments.

Ans :

SQP 2018

Arguments:

- (1) Many were apprehensive of the effects that the easier access to the printed word and the wider circulation of books, could have on people's minds.
- (2) It was feared that if there was no control over what was printed and read then

*From 1780, James Augustus Hickey began to edit the Bengal Gazette, a weekly magazine that described itself as ‘a commercial paper open to all, but influenced by none’. So it was private English enterprise, proud of its independence from colonial influence, that began English printing in India. Hickey published a lot of advertisements, including those that related to the import and sale of slaves. But he also published a lot of gossip about the Company’s senior officials in India. Enraged by this, Governor-General Warren Hastings persecuted Hickey, and encouraged the publication of officially sanctioned newspapers that could counter the flow of information that damaged the image of the colonial government. By the close of the eighteenth century, a number of newspapers and journals appeared in print. There were Indians, too, who began to publish Indian newspapers. The first to appear was the weekly Bengal Gazette, brought out by Gangadhar Bhattacharya, who was close to Rammohun Roy.*

#### **Questions:**

1. Which weekly magazine described itself as ‘a commercial paper open to all, but influenced by none’.
2. Why Governor-General warren Hastings persecuted James Hickey? What did he encourage regarding publication?
3. What did happen by the eighteenth century regard printing?

**Ans :**

1. From 1780, James Augustus Hickey began to edit the Bengal Gazette, weekly magazine that described it self as ‘a commercial paper open to all’ but influenced by none’.
2. James Augustus Hickey published a lot of advertisements including those that related to the import and sale of slaves. But he also published a lot of gossip about the company’s senior officials in India. That is why Governor-General warren Hastings persecuted Hickey. Governor-General Warren Hastings encouraged the publication of officially sanctioned

newspapers that could counter the flow of information that damaged the image of the colonial government.

3. By the close of 18th century, a number of newspapers and journals appeared in print. There were Indians too, who began to publish Indian newspapers. The first to appear was the weekly Bengal Gazette, brought out by Gangadhar Bhattacharya, who was close to Rammohan Roy.

127. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*From the late nineteenth century, issues of caste discrimination began to be written about in many printed tracts and essays. Jyotiba Phule, the Maratha pioneer of low caste’ protest movements, wrote about the injustices of the caste system in his Gulamgiri (1871). In the twentieth century, B.R. Ambedkar in Maharashtra and E.V. Ramaswamy Naicker in Madras, better known as Periyar, wrote powerfully on caste and their writings were read by people all over India.*

*Workers in factories were too overworked and lacked the education to write much about their experiences. But Kashibaba, a Kanpur millworker, wrote and published Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal in 1938 to show the links between caste and class exploitation. The poems of another Kanpur millworker, who wrote under the name of Sudarshan Chakr between 1935 and 1955, were brought together and published in a collection called Sacchi Kavitayan. By the 1930s, Bangalore cotton millworkers set up libraries to educate themselves, following the example of Bombay workers. These were sponsored by social reformers who tried to restrict excessive drinking among them, to bring literacy and, sometimes, to propagate the message of nationalism.*

*After the revolt of 1857, the attitude to freedom of the press changed. Enraged Englishmen demanded a clamp down on the ‘native’ press. As vernacular newspapers became assertively nationalist, the colonial government began debating measures of stringent control. In*

**65.** How did a new reading public emerged with the printed press ? Explain.

or

How did Printing Press create a new reading public? Explain.

Ans :

Comp 2023

The advent of printed press influenced the culture of reading in the following ways :

- (1) It reduced the book making cost and increased the number of books produced. Thus, readership increased manifold.
- (2) It created a new culture of reading. If earlier there was a hearing public, now a reading public came into being.
- (3) For those who could not read, printers began publishing popular ballads and folk tales and books with picture illustration. This give rise to a new group of readers.

**66.** Why mass literacy of workers in Europe was started in 19th century ?

Ans :

OD 2012, Delhi 2017

From 17th century onwards lending libraries existed in Europe. But in 19th century, these lending libraries became responsible in educating people of lower middle class, white collar workers, artisans etc. That's why mass literacy of workers was started in Europe.

**67.** Why literacy rate among women was increased in Europe in 19th century ?

Ans :

SQP 2020

Literacy rate among women was increased in Europe in 19th century because women writers started to write and women started to re-read those writings. Penny magazines were introduced for women which were manual teachings of proper behaviour and housekeeping. When novels were introduced in 19th century then women became very important readers of those novels.

**68.** Give three arguments in support of the 'print culture'.

Ans :

Foreign 2009

(1) It made the ideas of enlightened thinkers popular and their writing provided

critical commentary on tradition and superstition.

- (2) Print culture created a new world of debate and dialogue.
- (3) The public became aware of the power of reason and began to question all norms, values and institutions.

**69.** A series of developments took place in the beginning of the twentieth century in print culture. What were they ?

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (1) Methods of feeding paper improved.
- (2) The quality of printing plates became better.
- (3) Automatic paper reels and photoelectric controls of the colour register were introduced.
- (4) The accumulation of several individual mechanical improvements transformed the appearance of printed texts.

**70.** When did the first printing press come to India and write a brief story of its growth ?

Ans :

OD 2012

These were written on palm leaves or on handmade paper. Wooden covers were sewn with such books. Portuguese missionaries came first in the 16th century. They learnt Konkani language and printed their teachings. Tamil Book was printed in 1579 at Cochin by Catholics.

**71.** Describe the role of nationalist newspapers in spreading national feelings among the people in the early 20th century.

Ans :

Delhi 2017, 2015

- (1) Nationalist newspapers grew in numbers. They reported on colonial misrule and encouraged nationalist activities.
- (2) The papers attempted to throttle nationalist criticism and provoked militant protest.
- (3) When Punjab revolutionaries were deported in 1907, Balgangadhar Tilak wrote with great sympathy about them in his 'Kesari'. This led to his imprisonment in 1908.

rebellious and irreligious thoughts might spread.

- (3) If that happened the authority of ‘valuable’ literature would be destroyed.
60. (1) Why was the traditional Chinese ‘accordion book’ folded and stitched at the side ?  
 (2) What do you know about the Buddhist Diamond Sutra ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (1) As both sides of the thin, porous sheet could not be printed, the traditional Chinese ‘accordion book’ was folded and stitched at the side.  
 (2) The Buddhist Diamond Sutra is the oldest Japanese book. It was printed in 868 C.E. It contains six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations.

61. “The ‘Print Revolution’ had transformed the lives of people changing their relationship to information and knowledge.” Analyse the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

The ‘Print Revolution’ transformed the lives of people changing their relationship to information and knowledge and with institution and authorities. It influenced popular perception and opened up new ways of looking at things :

- (1) Printing reduced the cost of books. The time and labour to produce each book came down and multiple copies were being produced with greater ease.  
 (2) Due to easy access to books, illiterate persons could listen to the sacred texts of religious books, folk tales and ballads being recited.  
 (3) Before print revolution, books were not only expensive but they could not be produced in sufficient numbers. Now books can reach out to wider sections of people.

62. Who was Marco Polo ? What did the Italians learn from him regarding printing ?

**Ans :**

OD 2015, 2011

Marco Polo was a great Italian explorer who visited China in the 13th century. When he returned to Italy, he brought back the technology of woodblock printing which he had learnt in China.

63. Who took hand printing from China to Japan ? Give two demerits of copying of manuscripts.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2021

Around 770 C.E., hand printing was taken to Japan from China by the Buddhist missionaries.

- (a) Copying of manuscripts was very expensive and time consuming work because it needs a lot of time to copy anything.  
 (b) Copying of manuscripts needs a lot of labour by the person who is copying the manuscript.

64. How did printing in Europe shift from hand printing to mechanical printing ? Did it prove a revolution in printing.? Explain.

or

How did print culture develop in Europe ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (1) In Europe, initially handwritten books were produced. In the late thirteenth century, Marco Polo brought woodblock printing to Europe, still books were not produced in required number.  
 (2) In the early phase of fifteenth century, Gutenberg developed printing press which brought a revolutionary change in book printing.  
 (3) Between CE 1450—CE 1550 printing presses were set-up in most of the European countries and thus the production of books boomed. In the second half of 15th century about 200 lakhs copies of books were printed. This number went up to 2000 lakhs in the 16th century.

Thus, we can say that shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution.

nor write. It has been estimated that during the first half of 15th century, there were only about 1,00,000 manuscripts in Europe.

- 79.** Which Asian country was the major producer of printed material in the 16th century and why ? Give two reasons.

Ans :

Foreign 2015

In the 16th century, the major producer of printed material was China that had the following reasons :

- (1) From AD 594 onwards, book in China were printed by rubbing. They had made innovations in ink, block printing and movable clay type.
- (2) The Chinese were the first to invent the art of printing. They made wooden, blocks to print letters.
- (3) By seventeenth century the uses of print diversified. New reading culture developed. It accompanied a new technology. Shanghai became the main centre of the new print culture. It catered to the west with its mechanical expertise in printing.

- 80.** Name the hub of the new print culture in China and describe it.

Ans :

Comp 2007

- (1) Shanghai became the hub of new print culture in China.
- (2) In the late 19th century, the western powers established mechanical printing press in Shanghai.
- (3) Then, the mechanical printing had started there. Shanghai had started catering to the western style schools. From hand printing there was a gradual shift to mechanical printing.

- 81.** Who was Erasmus ? What were his ideas on the published books that were coming out ?

Ans :

OD 2013, SQP 2010

Erasmus was a Latin scholar and a Catholic reformer.

- (1) He criticised the printing book.

- (2) He thought that most of the books were stupid, ignorant, slanderous, scandalous, raving, irreligious and seditious.

- (3) According to him, such books devalue the valuable books.

- 82.** "With the printing press, a new public emerged in Europe." Justify the statement.

or

How did access to books create a new culture of reading ? Examine.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

- (1) Access to books created a new culture of reading.
- (2) Earlier, reading was restricted to the elites while common people relied only on oral culture i.e., knowledge was transferred orally but now books were available easily.
- (3) It transformed the lives of people changing their relationship to information and knowledge and with institution and authorities. It influenced popular perception and opened up new ways of looking at things.

- 83.** Why did the Roman Catholic Church begin to keep an Index of Prohibited Books from the mid 16th century ?

or

Why did the Roman Church begin to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books from 1558 ?

Ans :

Foreign 2020

- (1) Menocchio, a miller in Italy reinterpreted the message of Bible and formulated a view of God and Creation and enraged the Roman Catholic Church.
- (2) When the Roman Church began its inquisition to repress heretical ideas, Menocchio was hauled up twice and ultimately executed.
- (3) The Roman Church troubled by such effects of popular readings and questioning of faith, imposed severe controls over publishers and booksellers and began to maintain an Index of Prohibited Books from 1558.

- 72.** Examine the role of missionaries in the growth of press in India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

The missionaries played a very significant role in the growth of press in India, in the following ways :

- (1) The printing press first came to Goa with Portuguese missionaries in the mid-16th century.
  - (2) Jesuit priests learnt Konkani and printed several tracts. By 1674, about 50 books had been printed in the Konkani and in Kanara languages.
  - (3) Catholic priests printed the first Tamil book in 1579 at Cochin and the first Malayalam book in 1713.
- 73.** “It is difficult to imagine a world without printed matter”. Justify the statement with suitable arguments.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

Yes, it is really very difficult to imagine a world without printed matter because :

- (1) Everywhere in our surroundings, we find evidence of print, i.e., in books, journals, newspapers, prints of famous paintings, etc.
- (2) We see printed materials in everyday things like theatre programmes, official circulars, calendars, diaries, advertisements, cinema posters, government notifications, etc.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 74.** Which values of print culture are responsible for the growth of nationalism in India ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

Values attached with the print culture that were responsible for the growth of nationalism in India are under :

- (1) Print culture criticized the British policies of exploitation.
- (2) It awares the people about the disadvantages of colonial rule.
- (3) It spreads the democratic ideas like equality, fraternity and liberty among people.

- 75.** Which values of French philosophers’ writings inspired the people of France to throw Monarchy ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

The writings of the French Philosophers like Rousseau and Voltaire inspired democratic idea all the world. They represented the following values which inspire the people of France to throw monarchy :

- (1) They lay stressed on the value of equality for all.
- (2) They also advocated the importance of liberty and fraternity.

- 76.** Write any three values due to which printed books became more accessible to common people.

**Ans :**

OD 2005

Values due to which printed books became more accessible to common people are:

- (1) Less cost of production of books.
- (2) Open up of public libraries.
- (3) Spread of education.

- 77.** Why were manuscripts not used widely ? Give three possible reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2016

Manuscripts were not widely used. It is due to the following reasons :

- (1) They were not easy to handle.
- (2) They were limited in numbers.
- (3) The style of writing of every individual is very different. The writing of some people is very untidy.

- 78.** Explain the main features of the first printed Bible.

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

First Printed book in Europe : The first printed book, the Gutenberg Bible, was brought out in 1456. Until the invention of printing, books were in manuscript form viz. handwritten. Calligraphers copied them and were mostly available in the libraries of monasteries. Even people who could read, had thus, very little access to books. The people most that time, could neither read

- (1) The new novels like 'Indirabai' had descriptions of domestic life. They showed how people dressed, their religious beliefs and practices. Some of these books were translated into English by British administrators or Christian missionaries.
- (2) As outsiders, the British knew little about life inside Indian households. The new novels in Indian languages often had descriptions of domestic life.
- (3) They showed how people dressed, their forms of religious worship, their beliefs and practices, etc.
- 88.** Discuss in brief the development of printing culture in China.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

- (1) In the beginning, China had a system of hand printing in which paper was rubbed against the inked surface of woodblocks.
- (2) In the sixteenth century, the volume of print increased due to increase in the number of textbooks required by the civil services aspirants.
- (3) With the bloom in urban culture in the seventeenth century, once again the use of printed material increased.
- (4) Later on, China gradually moved from hand printing to mechanical printing.

- 89.** What is a manuscript ? Why were they not used widely ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

**Manuscript :** Book or document written by hand, author's original copy handwritten or typed, not printed is called manuscript. In ancient India most of the books were in manuscript form.

**Causes of not widely use of manuscripts :**

- (1) They were limited in numbers hence not accessible to all literate people.
- (2) Manuscripts were not easy to handled. It was very difficult to take big volume of a big book or volume or epic from one place to another.
- (3) Style of writing of every individual differs. The hand writing of some people is very untidy.

- 90.** How were the books prepared in India in different languages before used of modern printing press ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

The books preparation in various languages in India before the use of modern printing technology :

- (1) Palm leaves or handmade paper was used for writing manuscript of books.
- (2) Wooden covers were tied or sewn with the pages of manuscript in Bhojpatra and bark.
- (3) Calligraphy was revived to get other copies of the manuscript.
- (4) Pages were duly illustrated as we could see a page from Diwan of Hafiz, 1824.
- (5) This book making and writing process ran unbanned and exclusive till introduction of print to the late nineteenth century.

- 91.** How did press play an important role in spreading modern Indian nationalism in the second half of the 19th century ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2012

- (a) Press was the sole means of awakening dormant people of India.
- (b) Large numbers of nationalist newspapers made their appearance during the second half of the 19th century.
- (c) In their columns, the official policies were constantly criticised, the Indian point of view was put forward; the people were asked to unite and work for national welfare and ideas of self-government, democracy, industrialisation etc., were popularised among the people.
- (d) The press also enabled nationalist workers living in different parts of the country to exchange views with one another.

- 92.** Explain the attitude of the British Government towards the Indian Press in the 19th century. Explain the main reasons for such an attitude.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

The attitude of the British Government towards the Indian Press :

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 84.** Examine any three effects of Print culture on the French Revolution.

**Ans :** OD 2023

The impact of the print culture on the French Revolution are:

- (1) Print created the possibility of the wide circulation of ideas. Those people who disagreed with established authorities could now print and circulate their ideas. Through the printed message, they could persuade people to think differently.
- (2) Print led to the faster mobilization of the masses towards the political ideas of freedom, liberty, justice and other ideals for which French revolutionaries were fighting.
- (3) Print also helped in highlighting the draconian decisions of the established political institutions like monarchs and people belonging to higher estates. This led to the awakening of the people, and they became a part of the revolution.

- 85.** How had the printing press created a new culture of reading in Europe? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** OD 2019

With the introduction of the printing press, a new wave of print culture began in Europe.

- (1) Low cost of production : With the printing press, a new reading public emerged. Printing reduced the cost of books. The time and labour required to produce each book came down, and multiple copies could be produced with greater ease. Books flooded the market, reaching out to an ever-growing readership.
- (2) Accessibility of books : Access to books created a new culture of reading. Earlier, reading was restricted to the elites. Common people lived in a world of oral culture. They heard sacred texts read out, ballads recited, and folk tales narrated. Knowledge was transferred orally. People collectively heard a story,

or saw a performance. Before the age of print, books were not only expensive but they could not be produced in sufficient numbers. Now books could reach out to wider sections of people.

- (3)** Increase in literacy rate : Through the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries literacy rates went up in most parts of Europe. Churches of different denominations set up schools in Villages, carrying literacy to peasants and artisans. As literacy and schools spread in European countries, there was a virtual reading mania.

- 86.** “Print culture created the conditions within which French Revolution occurred.” Support the statement with suitable arguments.

**Ans :** SQP 2019

Print culture created the conditions within which French Revolution occurred.

- (1) Print popularized the ideas of the Enlightenment thinkers.
- (2) They attacked the sacred authority of the Church and the despotic powers of the state; thus, eroding the legitimacy of a social order based on tradition. Voltaire and Rousseau were widely read.
- (3) All values, norms and institutions were re-evaluated and discussed by a public that was inquisitive, critical and rational. Hence, new ideas of social revolution came into being.
- (4) By the 1780s, Literature mocked the royalty and criticized their morality. This led to the growth of hostile sentiments against the monarch.

- 87.** “Colonial administrators found ‘vernacular’ novels a valuable source of information on native life and customs.” Prove the statement by giving three evidences.

**Ans :** SQP 2018

“Colonial administration found ‘vernacular’ novels a source of information on native life and customs.” This was useful information to govern Indian society which had a large variety of communities and castes.

or

How did a new reading culture bloom in China ? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2019, SQP 2016

- (1) By the 17th century, an urban culture bloomed in China, the use of print diversified.
- (2) Print was no longer used only by scholars and officials.
- (3) Merchants used print in their everyday life, as they collected trade information. Reading became a leisure habit.
- (4) Rich women also began to read and many of them began publishing their poetry and plays.
- (5) Wives of scholar-officials published their works and courtesans wrote about their lives.

97. How had the earliest printing technology developed in the world ? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2012

- (1) The earliest kind of print technology was developed in China, Japan, and Korea.
- (2) Up to 6th century, the print was used only by scholar-officials.
- (3) Then the Buddhist monasteries introduced hand printing technology.
- (4) Marco Polo brought woodblock printing from China to Italy.
- (5) The invention of the printing press proved great miracle in spreading knowledge.

98. Give three methods by which printed books became more accessible to common people.

Ans :

Comp 2013, SQP 2011

The following three methods made printed books more accessible to common people :

- (1) Less cost of production of the books.
- (2) Printing of books in very large number.
- (4) Opening of public libraries, books stall and shops lending or selling books on very less profit.
- (5) Spread of education, availability of more spare time to women at home and desire to spend leisure through reading books. Habit of taking books on loan from book

banks also made more accessible books to the common people.

99. Why were the printed books popular even among illiterate people ?

Ans :

Foreign 2020

The printed books were popular even among the illiterate people due to following reasons :

- (1) The common people lived in the world of oral culture. They had sacred texts readout, ballads recited and folk tales narrated. Knowledge was transferred orally generally to illiterate people.
- (2) Illiterate people collectively heard a story, saw a performance, some illiterate people were attracted by beautiful pictures printed on the books.
- (3) Even those who did not read could certainly enjoy listening to books being readout. So printers began publishing popular. 'allads and folk tales, and such books would be profusely illustrated with pictures. These were then sung and recited at gatherings in villages and in taverns in towns.

100. What do you understand by Print Revolution? How did the idea of the scientists and philosophers become more accessible to common man after beginning of this revolution in Europe ?

Ans :

OD 2017, 2013

- (1) Modern printing technology comprises not only printing but also sizing and cutting of paper for the printed pages, binding the pages under stiff or soft cover, thus producing a whole books, magazines and newspapers with or without illustrations.
- (2) When there was no printing or even in the early stages of woodblock printing, books could not be produced as fast as in modern rotary renting machines that produced the newspapers or even more modern automatic electronic printers. Modern printed materials can now be ready for sale or distribution almost as soon as printing is complete.

*accuracy, the beauty of calligraphy. The imperial state in China was, for a very long time, the major producer of printed material. China possessed a huge bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through civil service examinations. Textbooks for this examination were printed in vast numbers under the sponsorship of the imperial state. From the sixteenth century, the number of examination candidates went up and that increased the volume of print.*

**Questions:**

1. Name the nations where the earliest print technology was developed.
2. How the books were printed in China from 594 AD?
3. Discuss the relationship between the bureaucratic system of China and the production of printed materials.

**Ans :**

1. The earliest print technology was developed in China, Japan and Korea.
2. The books in China were printed by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks.
3. China had a large bureaucratic system in which the recruitment was made through the medium of civil service examinations. For this examination, textbooks were printed in large numbers. From the 16th century, the number of examination candidates increased and that raised the demand of printed textbooks.

**123.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows :

*There were intense controversies between social and religious reformers and the Hindu orthodoxy over matters like widow immolation, monotheism, brahmanical priesthood, and idolatry. In Bengal, as the debate developed, tracts and newspapers proliferated, circulating a variety of argument.*

*New literary forms also entered the world of reading lyrics, short stories, essays about social and political matters. In different ways, they reinforced the new emphasis on human*

*lives and intimate feelings, about the political and social rules that shaped such things.*

*Since social reforms and novels had already created a great interest in women's lives and emotions, there was also an interest in what women would have to say about their own lives.*

**Questions:**

1. Evaluate how did the print shape the nature of the debate in the early nineteenth century in India.
2. To What extent do you agree that print opened up new worlds of experience and gave a vivid sense of diversity of human lives ?
3. To What extent do you agree that print opened up new worlds of experience and gave a vivid sense of diversity of human lives ?

**Ans :**

Board 2020

1. From the early nineteenth century there were intensive debates around religious issues. Different religious groups confronted the changes happening within colonial society in different ways and offered a variety of new interpretations of the beliefs of different religions.
2. The print opened up new worlds of experience and a vivid sense of diversity because of following reasons:
  - (a) It created a new culture of reading because earlier there was a hearing public, now a reading public came into being.
  - (b) It created the possibility of wide circulation of ideas, and introduced a new world of debate and discussion.
3. The print culture reflects a great interest in women's lives and emotions by following ways :
  - (a) Women became important as readers as well as writers. Penny magazines were especially meant for women, as these were the manuals teaching proper behaviour and housekeeping.
  - (b) When novels began to be written in the nineteenth century, women were

- 104.** Distinguish between the themes of ‘Pride and Prejudice’ and ‘Jane Eyre’ novels written by Jane Austen and Charlotte Bronte respectively.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018 , 2011

- (1) For both, the novelists, Jane Austen and Charlotte Bronte, the main idea of novels centered around women but both of them had different ideas and opinions.
- (2) The first line of Jane Austen’s ‘Pride and prejudice’ states that “It is a universally acknowledged truth, that a single man in possession of good fortune, must be in want of a wife”. This observation of Austen can be simplified that women were always preoccupied with perception of marriage and money.
- (3) In Charlotte Bronte’s ‘Jane Eyre’, young Jane is shown as independent and assertive, while girls of her time were expected to be quite and well behaved. Jane at the age of ten, protests against the hypocrisy of her elders with startling bluntness.

The novels of Jane Austen give us a glimpse of the world of women in genteel rural society in early-nineteenth-century Britain. They make us think about a society which encouraged women to look for ‘good’ marriages and find wealthy or propertied husbands.

This allows us to see the behaviour of the main characters, who are preoccupied with marriage and money, as typifying Austen’s society.

On the other hand, Charlotte Bronte’s Jane Eyre, published in 1874, dealt with women who broke established norms of society before adjusting to them. Such stories allowed women readers to sympathise with rebellious actions.

- 105.** Explain the impact of print culture on the religious reforms in India during nineteenth century.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (1) Print led to intense controversies between social and religious reformers and Hindu orthodoxy over matters like widow

immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical system, priesthood and idolatry.

- (2) With the coming of print, mamas feared that colonial rulers, would encourage conversion. To counter this they used cheap lithography presses. They published Persian and Urdu translation of holy scriptures and printed religious newspapers and tracts.
- (3) Rammohun Roy published the ‘Sambad Kaumudi’ from 1821 and Hindu orthodoxy commissioned the ‘Samachar Chandrika’ to oppose his opinions.
- (4) In Bengal, as the debate developed, tracts and newspapers proliferated, circulating a variety of arguments.
- (5) A number of Muslim sects and seminaries appeared each with a different interpretation of faith, each keen on enlarging its following and countering the influence of its opponents.

- 106.** “Oral culture and print culture were complimentary to each other.” Justify the statement with any three suitable arguments.

or

How did print bring the reading public and hearing public closer ? Explain.

or

Highlight any three circumstances that led to the intermingling of the hearing culture and the reading culture.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (1) Earlier, reading was restricted to the elites.
- (2) With the printing press, books could reach out to wider sections of society. If earlier, there was a hearing public, now a reading public came into being.
- (3) Publishers had to keep in mind the wider reach of the printed books. Even those who did not read, could enjoy listening to the books being read out.
- (4) So, printers began publishing popular ballads and folk tales and such books would be profusely illustrated with pictures.

- (1) Restrictions were imposed on the Indian Press upto 1835 by Charles Metcalfe.
- (2) The Vernacular Press Act of 1878 curbed the freedom of Indian Press particularly of the Indian language newspapers.
- (3) The Act was repealed in 1882.
- (4) The press enjoyed considerable freedom for 25 years.
- (5) After Swadeshi and Boycott movement of 1905—in 1908 and 1910 repressive press laws were introduced.

The main reason-to check the rising tide of Indian nationalism and anti-British feelings among the Indians.

- 93.** How did Martin Luther's writings bring reforms in religious field? Explain.

Ans :

OD 2016

1. Martin Luther (1483-1546) was a German monk, priest and professor of theology. He wrote 'Ninety Five Theses criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church.
2. Luther taught that salvation is not earned by good deeds but received only as a free gift of God's grace through faith in Jesus Christ as redeemer from sin.
3. He believed in the infallibility of the Bible but challenged the authority of the Pope of the Roman Catholic Church.
4. Luther's theses were printed and distributed widely in Germany. His translation of the New Testament sold 5000 copies within a few weeks.
5. A National Church was established in Germany and prayers began to be held in German language. It led to the beginning of the Reformation Movement in, Europe.

- 94.** How did print culture affect women in the nineteenth century India ?

Ans :

Foreign 2009

- (1) Lives and feelings of women began to written in particularly vivid and intense ways. Women's reading, therefore increased enormously in middle-class homes. Liberal husbands and fathers

began educating their women folk at home and sent them to schools.

- (2) In East Bengal, in the early nineteenth century, Rashsundari Debi, a young married girl in a very orthodox household, learnt to read in the secrecy of her kitten. Later, she wrote her autobiography Amar Jiban, which was published in 1876. It was the first full length autobiography published in the Bengali language. Soon, a large segment of it was devoted to the education of women. In the early twentieth century, journals, written for and sometimes edited by women, became extremely popular.

- 95.** What were the chief characteristics of the earliest print culture in Japan ? Explain any five.

or

Explain any three important characteristics of the print culture in Japan.

Ans :

SQP 2018

- (1) Buddhist monasteries from China introduced hand-printing technology into Japan.
- (2) The oldest Japanese book printed in AD 868 is the Buddhist Diamond Sutra.
- (3) In medieval Japan, poets and prose writers were regularly published and books were cheap and abundant.
- (4) Printing of visual materials led to increasing publishing practices. In the late 18th century, in the flourishing urban circles city at Edo (Tokyo), illustrated collections of paintings depicted urban culture involving artists, courtesans and tea-house gathering.
- (5) Books on women, musical instruments, tea ceremony, flower arrangements, proper etiquettes were published.

- 96.** How did the uses of print diversify in China by the 17th century ? Explain.

or

'By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the use of print diversified.' Give any three facts to support the statement.

**110.** Describe the progress of print in Japan.

**Ans :**

OD 2012, 2010

Brief description of print in Japan :

- (1) Buddhist missionaries from China introduced hand-printing technology into Japan around 768-770 C.E. The oldest Japanese book, printed in 868 C.E. is the Buddhist Diamond Sutra, containing six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations. Pictures were printed on textiles, playing cards and paper money.
- (2) In medieval Japan, poets and prose writers were regularly published, and books were cheap and abundant.
- (3) Printing of visual material led to interesting publishing practices. In the late eighteenth century, in the flourishing urban circles at Edo (later to be known as Tokyo), illustrated collections of paintings depicted an elegant urban culture, involving artists, courtesans and teahouse gatherings.
- (4) Libraries and bookstores were packed with hand-printed material of various types-books on women, musical instruments, calculations, tea ceremony, flower arrangements, proper etiquette, cooking and famous places.

**111.** Discuss the position of printing technology in 17th century China. How was it affected by western technology in 19th century ?

or

How did the uses of print technology develop in China by the 17th century ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

Development of Printing technology in 17th century China :

- (1) By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the uses of print diversified. Print was no longer used just by scholars and officials. Merchants also used print in their everyday life, as they collected trade information.
- (2) Reading increasingly became-a leisure activity. The new readership preferred fictional narratives, poetry,

autobiographies, anthologies of literary masterpieces, and romantic plays.

- (3) Rich women began to read, and many women began publishing their poetry and plays.

Wives of scholar-officials published their works and courtesans wrote about their lives. Effect of western technology in 19th century China :

- (1) Since handprinted started in China, books began reaching to public comprising children (boys and girls), youths, adults and senior people. All enjoyed interaction, intercourse, dissension with thoughts of scientific, theological, prudential and conative. Bureaucrats began coming through examinations like that of civil service examinations held there.
- (2) School textbooks on western education system came in glut to pollute Chinese culture and well accommodated socialisation when Western powers established their roots in China.

**112.** How did the print material of Europe affected the rise of nationalism in India ?

or

How did print culture contribute to growth of nationalism in India ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

- (1) The western education had been widening the horizon of understanding a number of things among Indians.
- (2) It gave the educated Indians, a rational, secular, democratic and national outlook. Western thinkers like Rousseau, Paine, John Stuart Mill etc., greatly influenced the Indian intelligentsia.
- (3) The Italian nationalists like Garibaldi, Mazzini and Cavour also greatly influenced them.
- (4) When the educated Indians came in contact with the western education—, it opened their eyes.
- (5) Translation of western literature in Indian languages also proved highly useful in bringing about new awakening both in the cities and the villages.

People would read scientists like Sir Issac Newton, Einstein, Galilio etc., and philosophers like Thomas Paine, Voltaire and Jean Jacques Rousseau on books easily. Thus, common people beyond their near-ones, were also benefited from their ideas, laws, rules etc., all fairly explained therein.

- 101.** Invention of printing press by Johann Gutenberg led to revolution in the realm of ideas. Justify.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

Gutenberg Press : A break through in print technology occurred at Strasbourg, Germany where Johann Gutenberg developed the first known printing press in 1430s. Gutenberg developed metal types for each of the 26 characters of the Roman alphabet and desired a way of moving them around as so to compose different words of the text. This came to be known as the moveable type printing machine, and it remained the basic print technology over the next 300 years. Books could now be produced much faster than was possible when each print block was prepared by carving a piece of wood by hand. The Gutenberg press could print 250 sheets an one side per hour. The first printed by Gutenberg was the Bible and it took three years to print 180 copies.

- 102.** Why was there a strong criticism from some scholars against indiscriminate publication of all types of books ?

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (1) Major cause of fear among them was that if there was no control over what was printed and read, rebellious and irreligious thoughts might spread in that circumstances.
- (2) People of priest, monk and Bishop categories and monarch took writers and artists dangerous to their authority and influence among people—as their value—would have gone down—when things they knew would be known to all.
- (3) An example from Europe : Manocchio, a miller in Italy had acquired ability to

re-interpret message of the Bible for which he was warned twice and finally, the inquisition (Trial Court) pronounced sentence to death against him.

**Example from India :** Many conservative Hindu and Muslims put restriction upon reading books by women and vulnerable section of society. Only upper and middle classes and castes people were allowed reading books.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 103.** “Pariksha Guru is considered landmark in the history of Hindi novel.” Justify the statement with suitable arguments.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

Pariksha Guru : The novel tells a story of the extravagance of Hindu bankers and traders. Its theme is not to adopt western culture. It propagated the following issues which no other novel did before :

- (1) It cautioned young men of well to do families about the ill effects of bad company.
- (2) It then shows how to live a practical life that preserves traditional values in honour and dignity.
- (3) Children are advised to read the newspaper.
- (4) The author emphasised that modernity should be embraced without giving up middle class values.
- (5) The novel tries to teach the reader the ‘right way’ to live and expects all ‘sensible men’ to be worldly-wise and practical, to remain rooted in the values of their own tradition and culture, and to live with dignity and honour.
- (6) In the novel we see the characters attempting to bridge two different worlds through their actions: they take to new agricultural technology, modernise trading practices, change the use of Indian languages, making them capable of transmitting both Western sciences and Indian wisdom.

inspiration while their feet were living in Indian land.

- 115.** Describe main aims and suggestions of the Press Commission of 1C.E.

**Ans :** Comp 2020

Press Commission, 1952 C.E. : The Government of India appointed a Press Commission in 1952. It consisted of 11 members and its Chairman was Justice G.S. Rajadhyaksha. It submitted its report in 1954.

**Aims :**

- (1) To safeguard the freedom of Press.
- (2) To censure objectionable type of journalistic conduct.
- (3) To encourage a sense of responsibility and public service among the journalists.
- (4) To keep under review developments likely to restrict the supply and discrimination of news of public interest and importance.
- (5) To improve methods of recruitment and training for journalistic profession.
- (6) To study developments in the Press and suggest measures to check concentration of Press in a few hands.

**Suggestions :** The Commission suggested the banning of cross-word puzzle competitions in the newspapers and periodicals. It also suggested that not more than 40% of the total space should be covered by the advertisements.

Thus, it put teeth on the income aspects of the printers in order to keep them submissive. Conclusion : Most of the suggestions of this Commission were accepted by the Government of India and incorporated in law.

- 116.** The books are considered an effective means of spreading progress and enlightenment. Justify the statement how ?

**Ans :** SQP 2017

- (1) All revolutions like Protestant Reformation, Union of England and Scotland, 1707, Declaration of American Independence (USA formed) etc., events took place when the print culture spread

in Europe and Americas. It made people able to understand importance of freedom.

- (2) Playwrights, poets and authors like Shakespeare, Mathew Arnold, Abul Fazal, Ayodhya Singh Upadhyay, Mulkraj Anand, William Blake, Bharthari, Bankim Chandra Chatterjee etc., were products of that period.
- (3) Cartoons, caricatures, several types of painting etc., indicate sensitivity of human minds to bring out even the most concealed and crypt human emotions.
- (4) As far as enlightenment is concerned, it remained confine to philosophers, anthropologists and philanthropists because viruses of domination, imperialism, ego—to understand European (West)

- 117.** Discuss briefly the growth of modern press in 19th century in India.

**Ans :** OD 2010, 2008

The growth of modern press in 19th century India :

- (1) Growth of press started with arrival of print culture in India and that happened in later years of nineteenth century.
- (2) Prior to arrival of print culture in India, palm leaves or handmade paper were used for writing and copying manuscripts. So prepared books were bound with wooden sheets.
- (3) The first print in India was the Bengal Gazette, a weekly magazine, edited by James Augustus Hickey. Thereafter, its Bangla edition was also published by some Bengali scholars under guidance of Raja Ram Mohan Roy.
- (4) Some other newspapers followed this trend and came into existence were—Amrit Bazar Patrika, Yugantar (Bengali) and Kesari (Marathi). Watchwords like Vande Mataram, became jewel to each mouth during freedom struggle of India under Father of the Nation.
- (5) Sambad Kaumudi (1821) by Raja Ram Mohan Roy, Samachar Chandrika magazines, Jan-i-Jahan Nama, Samsul Akhbar—Persian newspapers, Bombay

- (5) These were then sung and recited at gatherings in villages and in taverns in towns. The line that separated the oral and reading cultures became blurred.
- (6) Now the hearing public and reading became intermingled.
- 107.** Describe any five strategies developed by the printers and publishers in the 19th century to sell their products.

**Ans :**

SOP 2012, 2009

In the 19th century, printers and publishers continuously developed new strategies to sell their products. They were :

- (1) 19th century periodicals serialised famous novels, which gave birth to a particular way of writing novels. In 1863, Charles Dickens' 'Pickwick papers' was serialised in a magazine. Magazines were attractive to readers as these were illustrated and cheap. Readers bought these magazines eagerly.
- (2) In the 1920s England, popular works were sold in cheap series, called the Shilling Series.
- (3) The dust cover or book jacket was introduced to make the book more attractive to the readers.
- (4) Books were printed in the offset press which could print books in six colours at a time.
- (5) To sustain buying during the Great Depression in the 1930s, publishers brought out cheap paper back edition which soon became a big hit.

- 108.** How did the invention of Printing Press help the emergence of Renaissance ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

Printing press increased the number of books, newspapers, magazines, pamphlet and other reading material things. With the increasing number of these things more people had easy access to knowledge. The new knowledge increase rational thinking and helped a lot in reduction of superstitions and orthodoxy in the field of religion as well as society. Very soon the new atmosphere began to emerged

in political life in several country of Europe and other parts of the world also.

It was Renaissance in terms of material progress but premature in terms of enlightenment. Its consequences were all apparent in misuse of cognition, conception and conation devices/skills, expertise, efficiency, authority whatever, these are named. Creative and destructive powers equally found support of technological change in print culture. Human minds as per temperament, genteel, aggressive or dull took help from the print technology. Renaissance was seen in the technological changes, mechanical developments, industrial age and its blind eyes that can see society divided in two classes i.e. capitalists and proletariats.

- 109.** How did print culture affect women in the nineteenth century India ? Explain

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

Number of women readers swelled enormously in middle class homes. This was because of the following reasons :

- (1) Many magazines and books were mainly written for women and published.
- (2) The print culture gave the women some amount of freedom to read and develop their own views on various issues especially those concerning women.
- (3) Issues such as women's education, widowhood, widow re-marriage, etc., came to be liberally debated in print.
- (4) Women novelist such as Jane Austen and Bronte Sisters in Europe and Kailashbasini Debi and Pandita Ramabai in India represented the new type of women—a women with the power to think and with the ability to act with determination.
- (5) As such, girls especially from the middle classes, began to enrol in school in large numbers. In a words, the print culture heralded the arrival of a new woman.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

*metal types for the letters of the alphabet. By 1448, Gutenberg perfected the system. The first book he printed was the Bible. About 180 copies were printed and it took three years to produce them. By the standards of the time this was fast production.*

**Questions:**

1. Who was Gutenberg?
2. What were some of the professional skills acquired by Gutenberg?
3. What contribution was made by Gutenberg in the field of press?

**Ans :**

1. Gutenberg was a German inventor, printer and goldsmith who invented the first-known printing press in the 1430s.
2. Gutenberg acquired the skills of polishing stones, and also attained expertise in the creation of lead moulds used for making trinkets. He became a master goldsmith and designed several jewels.
3. Gutenberg led to the invention of the printing press. In his design, he made the use of the casting metal types for the letters of the alphabet. The first book which was printed by the use of this technology was the Bible. There were more than 180 copies that got printed by this technique.

- 121.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow.

*New forms of popular literature appeared in print, targeting new audiences. Booksellers employed peddlars who roamed around villages, carrying little books for sale. There were almanacs or ritual calendars, along with ballads and folktales. But other forms of reading matters, largely for entertainment, began to reach ordinary readers as well.*

*In England, penny chapbooks were carried by petty peddlars known as chapmen, and sold for a penny, so that even the poor could buy them. In France, were the 'Biliotheque Bleue', which were low-priced small books printed on poor quality paper, and bound in cheap blue covers.*

*Then there were the romances, printed on four to six pages, and the more substantial 'histories' printed on four to six pages and the more substantial 'histories' which were stories about the past. Books were of various sizes, serving many different purposes and interests.*

**Questions:**

1. Evaluate briefly the term 'Chapbook'.
2. Write a key difference between Biliotheque Bleue and Chapbook.
3. Comment on the new forms of literature that were introduced in Europe to attract new readers.

**Ans :**

1. Chapbooks were the pocket size books that were sold by travelling peddlars called chapmen.
2. 'Biliotheque Bleue' are low priced small books printed in France. There were printed on poor quality paper and bound in cheap blue covers.  
On the other hand, chapbooks were pocket size book, published in England. These became popular from the time of the 16th century print revolution.
3. The new forms of literature introduced in Europe to attract the new readers were
  - There were almanacs along with ballads and Folktales.
  - In England, chapbooks were carried by petty peddlers and sold for penny.
  - Biliotheque Bleue were low priced books sold in France.

- 122.** Read the source given below and answer the question that follows:

*The earliest kind of print technology was developed in China, Japan and Korea. This was a system of hand printing. From AD 594 onwards, books in China were printed by rubbing paper - also invented there - against the inked surface of woodblocks. As both sides of the thin, porous sheet could not be printed, the traditional Chinese 'accordion book' was folded and stitched at the side. Superbly skilled craftsmen could duplicate, with remarkable*

- (6) Revolutions like the American War of Independence, the French Revolution etc., gave the thoughts of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity to the whole world.
- (7) The spirit of nationalism and patriotism made them to forget their differences and inspired them to smash the wheels of oppression and exploitation that had been crushing their very existence for several centuries.
- 113.** What were the important features of European literature ? How did it help in spreading new or progressive ideas in the continent ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006, 2005

The Important Features of the European Literature :

- (1) The new literary works of different European authors, poets and languages help a lot in promoting new and progressive ideas. For example this literature was concerned for social injustice and nationalism.
- (2) The writers of modern Europe tried their best to promote realism and they tried to avoid meagre idealism. Realism was reflected very well in the works of Charles Dickens, Thomas Hardy in England, Leo Tolstoy, Ivan Turgenev and Dostovsky in Russia and Baizac Flaubert, Emile Zola, Anatole Frank in France.
- (3) Human sufferings during World War-I were enormously increased. Events of pathos sproating, thrilled hearts of sensitive people in society and they compelled to put their feelings on paper (Palm leaves or handmade). These sensitive people of society according to their works were known as play-wrights, dramatists, poets, philosophers, scientists, researchers etc.
- (4) Renowned authors like James Joyce (Ireland), Maicel Proust (France), Virginia Woolf (England) and Scott Fitzgerald (USA) made their fortunes and glory with the help of advanced printing technology.
- (5) Exuberance and overhead flow of books like Chapbooks, Biliotheque Bleue caused

pain to some scholars like Erasmas because of deception to human eye grossly depicted in them that pumped ignorance of educated type-into minds of adolescents all over Europe.

- (6) European literature was consisting of the es on countryside (folk-tales, songs, stories, fables), schooling, training, course books, books on entertainment, movies etc., and books on science, theology (Bible of Gutenberg).

- 114.** How did the printing and writing of Indian History during the late 19th and early 20th centuries prove a mixed blessing for the Indian society ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (a) Indians lost their confidence in their own capacity for self-government. Many British officials and writers of the time constantly advanced the thesis that Indians had never been able to rule themselves in the past, that the Hindus and Muslims had always fought each other, that the Indians were destined to be ruled by the foreigners, that their religion and social life were degraded and uncivilised, making them unfit for democracy or even self-government.
- (b) Many of the nationalist leaders pointed to the cultural heritage of India with pride and referred the critics to the political achievements of rulers like Ashoka, Chandragupta Vikramaditya and Alban. Some of the nationalists went to their extreme and began to glorify India's past uncritically, ignoring its weaknesses and backwardness.
- (c) Great harm was done, in particular, by the tendency to look up only to the heritage of ancient India while ignoring the equally great achievements of the medieval period.
- (d) This encouraged the growth of communal sentiments among the Muslims. They began looking to the history of the Arabs and the Turks for cultural and historical

seen as important readers. Some of the best known novelists were women : Jane Austen, the Bronte sisters, George Eliot.

- 124.** Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

*This is how Mercier describes the impact of the printed word, and the power of reading in one of his books.*

*"Anyone who had seen me reading would have compared me to man dying of thirst who was gulping down some fresh, pure water .... Lighting my lamp with extraordinary caution, I threw myself hungrily into the reading. An easy eloquence, effortless and animated, carried me from one page to the next without my noticing it. A clock struck off the hours in the silence of the shadows, and I heard nothing. My lamp began to run out of oil and produced only a pale light, still I read on. I could not even take out time to raise the wick for fear of interrupting my pleasure. How those new ideas rushed into my brain! How my intelligence adopted them!"*

**Questions:**

1. From whose writing is this extract taken ?
2. With whom does the author compare the reader of books ?
3. How does the author describe the state of a voracious reader engrossed in reading ?
4. In the passage what attributes or values of a reader are highlighted ?

**Ans :**

1. Mercier.
2. The author compare the reader of the books to a man dying of thirst who was keeping down some fresh pure water.
3. The author describes the state of a voracious reader that he has forgotten himself while he was busy in reading the book. He did not like to disturb him at all. He did not like hear anything. He was enjoying the new ideas which were rushing into his brain while he was busy in reading

4. From this passage the value highlighted is that the reader put his brain, heart and soul in reading the book or a reader reads the books with his keen interest, he or she forgets himself or herself.

- 125.** Read the following passage and answer the questions given below it :

*"Anyone who had seen me reading would have compared use to a man dying of thirst who was gulping down some fresh, pure water... Lighting my lamp with extraordinary caution,*

*I threw myself hungrily into the reading. As easy eloquence, effortless and animated, carried me from one page to the next without any noticing it. A clock struck off the hours in the silence of the shadows, and I heard nothing. My lamp began to run out of oil and produced only a pale light, but still I read on. I could not even take out time to raise the wick for fear of interrupting my pleasure. How those new ideas rushed into my brain ! How my intelligence adopted them.*

**Questions:**

1. Name the writer of this paragraph.
2. How one finds the writer when he is reading ?
3. Analyse the message given by the writer to the readers.

**Ans :**

1. Louise-Sebastien Mercier, a novelist in 18th century, France.
2. As the most passionate for reading, he is forgotten everything except reading.
3. Keep yourself engross with the book while reading because a slight attachment to outer world defeats the purpose of reading. Imagine as if you are an inseparable part to that all what you read.

- 126.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*The English language press did not grow in India till quite late even though the English East India Company began to import presses from the late seventeenth century.*

Samachar, Gujarat Newspaper were some other forms of the print culture and print technology.

- 118.** What were the effects of the spread of print culture for poor people in nineteenth century India ?

or

What was the impact of print culture on the poor people of India during the 19th century?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

The effects of the spread of print culture for poor people in nineteenth century India :

- (1) Large scale printing maintained reasonable prices for books and poor too enjoyed reading.
- (2) Many of them got employment in printing presses and print shops.
- (3) The spread of print culture helped to restrict excessive drinking among the poor, to bring literacy, to give way to the shackles of caste system and to propagate the message of nationalism.
- (4) They got aware of national, international and local news through cheap printed material.
- (5) With the Vernacular Press, the nationalist ideas made home in the minds of poor people.
- (6) Caste discriminations brought up through print culture, associated poor people with nationalist freedom struggle.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 119.** Read the following source carefully and answer the questions that follow :

*This is how Mercier describes the impact of the printed word, and the power of reading in one of his books:*

*'Anyone who had seen me reading would have compared me to a man dying of thirst who was gulping down some fresh, pure water.... Lighting my lamp with extraordinary caution, I threw myself hungrily into the reading.'*

*An easy eloquence, effortless and animated, carried me from one page to the next without my noticing it. A clock struck off the hours in the silence of the shadows, and I heard nothing. My lamp began to run out of oil and produced only a pale light, but still I read on. I could not even take out time to raise the wick for fear of interrupting my pleasure. How those new ideas rushed into my brain! How my intelligence adopted them!'*

### Questions:

1. How does the passage reflect the immersive nature of reading of Mercier?
2. Why did Mercier describe himself as a virtual writer?
3. How did reading influence Mercier's intellectual capacity and his engagement with new concepts? Explain in any two points.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

1. The thirst, hunger and focus of Mercier reflect the immersive nature of reading.
2. He gave voice to the people of the ideas and belief which he learnt from the spread of print material.
3. Reading influenced Mercier's intellectual capacity and his engagement with new concept in the following manner
  - (a) His heroes are transformed by the act of reading.
  - (b) It has influenced in bringing enlightenment and destroying the basis of despotism.

- 120.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Gutenberg was the son of a merchant and grew up on a large agricultural estate. From his childhood, he had seen wine and olive presses. Subsequently, he learnt the art of polishing stones, became a master goldsmith, and also acquired the expertise to create lead moulds used for making trinkets. Drawing on this knowledge, Gutenberg adapted existing technology to design his innovation. The olive press provided the model for the printing press, and moulds were used for casting the*

1878, the Vernacular Press Act was passed, modelled on the Irish Press Laws. It provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the vernacular press.

**Questions:**

1. Who was Jyotiba Phule?
2. How did the message of nationalism propagate?
3. What do you mean by the Vernacular Press Act?

**Ans :**

1. Jyotiba Phule was the maratha pioneer of low caste protest movement and a social reformer. He wrote about the injustices of the caste system in his Gulamgire.
2. The social reformers sponsored to set up libraries to educate mill workers or factories workers. They also tried to restrict excessive drinking among them, to bring literacy and sometimes, to propagate the message of nationalism.
3. The Vernacular Press Act was enacted to curtail the freedom of the Indian press and prevent the expression of criticism toward British policies in British India. It was passed in 1878.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

128. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*There were intense controversies between social and religious reformers and the Hindu orthodoxy over matters like widow immolation, monotheism, brahmanical priesthood, and idolatry. In Bengal, as the debate developed, tracts and newspapers proliferated, circulating a variety of argument.*

*New literary forms also entered the world of reading lyrics, short stories, essays about social and political matters. In different ways, they reinforced the new emphasis on human lives and intimate feelings, about the political and social rules that shaped such things.*

*Since social reforms and novels had already created a great interest in women's lives and emotions, there was also an interest in what women would have to say about their own lives.*

**Questions:**

1. Evaluate how did the print shape the nature of the debate in the early nineteenth century in India.
2. To what extent do you agree that print opened up a new worlds of experience and gave a vivid sense of diversity of human lives?
3. To what extent did the print culture reflect a great interest in women's lives and emotions? Explain.

**Ans :**

1. From the early nineteenth century there were intensive debates around religious issues. Different religious groups confronted the changes happening within colonial society in different ways and offered a variety of new interpretations of the beliefs of different religions.
2. The print opened up a new world of experience and a vivid sense of diversity because of following reasons:
  - (i) It created a new culture of reading because earlier there was a hearing public, now a reading public came into being.
  - (ii) It created the possibility of wide circulation of ideas and introduced a new world of debate and discussion.
3. The print culture reflects a great interest in women's lives and emotions in the following ways:
  - (i) Women became important as readers as well as writers. Penny magazines were especially meant for women, as these were the manuals for teaching proper behaviour and housekeeping.
  - (ii) When novels began to be written in the nineteenth century, women were seen as important readers. Some of the best known women novelists were: Jane Austen, the Bronte sisters, George Eliot.

- 129.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*The earliest kind of print technology was developed in China, Japan and Korea. This was a system of hand printing. From AD 594 onwards, books in China were printed by rubbing paper – also invented there – against the inked surface of woodblocks. As both sides of the thin, porous sheet could not be printed, the traditional Chinese ‘accordion book’ was folded and stitched at the side. Superbly skilled craftsmen could duplicate, with remarkable accuracy, the beauty of calligraphy (art of beautiful and stylised writing). The imperial state in China was, for a very long time, the major producer of printed material. China possessed a huge bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through civil service examinations. Textbooks for this examination were printed in vast numbers under the sponsorship of the imperial state. From the sixteenth century, the number of examination candidates went up and that increased the volume of print. By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the uses of print diversified. Print was no longer used just by scholar officials. Merchants used print in their everyday life, as they collected trade information. Reading increasingly became a leisure activity.*

**Questions:**

- What do you mean by calligraphy? Which state in China was the major producer of printed material?
- Who developed the earliest kind of print technology?
- Which country in the world started recruitment of bureaucratic system through civil service examinations? By how many people print was used?

**Ans :**

- Calligraphy is an art of beautiful and stylised writing. The imperial state in China was the major producer of printed material for a very long time.
- China, Japan and Korea developed the earliest kind of print technology.

- China possessed a huge bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through civil service examinations.

Print was used by scholar and merchants in their every day life.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 5

## RESOURCES AND DEVELOPMENT

### SUMMARY

1. Resources : A means of attaining satisfaction of individual and attainment of social objectives.
2. Natural Resources : Land, soil, water, vegetation, wildlife, minerals and power resources.
3. Human Resources : Structures and institutions, quantity and quality. They transform material available in environment into resources and use them.
4. Afforestation : It means planting trees.
5. Shelter belt : Rows of trees which are planted in between the crops are known as shelter belt.
6. Contour Ploughing : When ploughing is done at right angle to hill slopes.  
Strip Cropping : When large fields are divided into strips for cultivation.
7. Technology : Scientific techniques to use resources.
8. Flow Resources : Resources which are renewable.
9. Fossil Fuels : The energy resources obtained from fossils buried in rocks.
10. Stock : Materials in the environment which have the potential to satisfy human needs.
11. Humus : The amount of organic matter in soil.
12. Desertification : Degradation of land in dry areas that can ultimately lead to desert like conditions.
13. Ground Water : Water held in pores and crevices of soil and in underlying bed rocks.
14. Bangar : Areas of older alluvium. Less fertile.
15. Khadar : The newer alluvium deposits during flood. They are the areas of the most fertile soil.
16. Regur Soil : Local name given to the black soil (or cotton soil) on Deccan lava plateau of peninsular India.
17. Laterite Soil : The land crusted layer of soil coming into existence due to leaching.
18. Desert Soil : Desert soil is the soil formed from the sand deposits by the action of wind.
19. Net Sown Area : Land actually put to cultivation.
20. Gross Sown Area : It includes net sown area and area cultivated more than once.
21. Stock Resources : Available but technical know-how, so far not invented, e.g., hydrogen and oxygen in water.
22. Reserve Resource : Bulk availability but limited use, e.g., hydro-electric power.
23. Resource Planning : A method that leads an individual towards achievement of sustainable development.
24. Conservation of Resources : Judicious and planned use of natural resources.
25. Environment : The conditions that affect the behaviour and development of living and non-living things.
26. Arable Land : Land currently ploughed and cultivated with crops.
27. Fallow Land : Arable land lying uncultivated for one season or more.
28. Land Utilization : Land use for forest, non-agricultural use, pasture, grazing, tree crops, current fallow, other than current fallow and gross crop area.
29. Soil : The uppermost layer of the earth's crust useful for growing crops.
30. Soil Erosion : Removal of soil by the forces of nature, particularly wind and water.
31. Soil Formation : Disintegration and decomposition of rock due to process of weathering and erosion.

32. Ravines : Areas severely affected by gullies (an acute soil-erosion).
33. Sheet Erosion : Erosion of the top soil along gentle slopes caused by rain water.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Identify the soil with the help of following information.

- (1) It develops in areas with high temperature.
- (2) It is the result of intense leaching due to heavy rain.
- (3) Humus content is low.

**Options**

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| (a) Arid soil     | (b) Yellow soil |
| (c) Laterite soil | (d) Black soil  |

Ans :

OD 2024

(c) Laterite soil

2. Which of the following statement defines Sustainable Development ?

- (a) Sustainable use of natural resources without considering the need of the future generation.
- (b) Present generation fulfils its needs while considering the needs of the future generation as well.
- (c) It means utilisation of natural resources by the past, present and forthcoming future generation.
- (d) To meet the needs of the future generation even if the needs of the present generation go unmet.

Ans :

SQP 2020

- (b) Present generation fulfils its needs while considering the needs of the future generation as well.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

3. Choose the incorrect option from column A and column B.

	<b>Column A (Developmental goals/Aspirations)</b>	<b>Column B (Category of Person)</b>
(a)	Landless rural labourers	More days of work and better wages
(b)	Prosperous farmers from Punjab	Availability of other sources of irrigation
(c)	Farmers who depend only on rain for growing crops	Assured a higher support prices for their crops
(d)	A rural woman from a land owning family	Regular job and high wages to increase her income

Ans :

Delhi 2020

- (c) Farmers who depend only on rain for growing crops

4. In which of the following states is black soil found?

- (a) Jammu and Kashmir
- (b) Gujarat
- (c) Rajasthan
- (d) Jharkhand

Ans :

OD 2014, 2011

- (b) Gujarat

5. **Assertion** - Alluvial soil is ideal for growth of paddy, wheat, cereal and pulse crops.

**Reason** : Alluvial soil is well-known for its capacity to hold moisture.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

SQP 2017

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

6. Which among the following is a type of resources classified on the basis of exhaustibility?
- Biotic and abiotic.
  - Renewable and non-renewable.
  - National and individual.
  - Potential and reserves.

Ans :

Delhi 2020

(b) Renewable and non-renewable

7. Which one of the following options best signifies this cartoon?



- Shows the reality of current Indian Bureaucracy System.
- The co-ordination among such organization is generally rare.
- People's management is essential for energy project.
- Derail of development projects that were meant for community.

Ans :

Foreign 2018

(c) People's management is essential for every project.

8. **Assertion -** Resources are free gifts of nature.

**Reason :** Resources like soil, air, water are easily available in nature.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

OD 2010

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

9. Select the intensively leached soil of the monsoon climate.

- Alluvial
- Black
- Laterite
- Arid

Ans :

SQP 2012, 2009

(c) Laterite

10. What is plantation of trees on a large scale to check soil erosion termed as?

- Afforestation
- Deforestation
- Reforestation
- soil erosion

Ans :

Comp 2023

(a) Afforestation

11. Complete the following table with the correct information-

Types of Resources	Example of Resources
Individual resources	A - ?
B - ?	Burial grounds, public parks

- A-Own plots, houses, own plantation. B -Potential resources.
- A-Own plots, houses, own plantation. B -Community owned resources.
- A-Own plots, houses, own plantation. B -Developed resources.
- A-Minerals and fossil fuels . B-Community owned resources.

Ans :

Delhi 2016

- A-Own plots, houses, own plantation. B -Community owned resources.

12. What is the name of the report Brundtland Commission published?

- Our common future
- Our common past
- Our common present
- Small is Beautiful

Ans :

OD 2006

- Our common future

13. Which of the following is a root cause for resource depletion at the global level according to Mahatma Gandhi?
- Conservation of resources
  - Use of resources
  - Greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology
  - Backward technology

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (c) Greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology

14. **Assertion** - The availability of resources is not the only necessary condition for the development of any region.

**Reason :** Not only availability of resources but also corresponding change in technology is necessary for development of any region.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

15. Which is the right sequence of the soil profile?

- Topsoil , Substratum weathered parent rock material,subsoil, Unweathered parent bed rock
- Substratum weathered parent rock material, Unweathered parent bed rock,subsoil , topsoil
- Topsoil, Unweathered parent bed rock, Substratum weathered parent rock material,subsoil
- Topsoil, subsoil, Substratum weathered parent rock material, Unweathered parent bed rock

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (d) Topsoil, subsoil, Substratum weathered parent rock material, Unweathered parent bed rock

16. Match the following and choose correct option.

Column-I	Column-II
A. Terrace farming	1. Different crops grown parallelly
B. Strip cropping	2. Hill slopes are used as cultivable land in the form of flat cut regions of slope
C. Contour ploughing	3. Along the slope of mountain
D. Crop rotation	4. Different crops grown in systematic succession

**Option :**

- A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4
- A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2
- A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2
- A - 2, B - 4, C - 1, D - 3

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (a) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 4

17. What is not true about Agenda 21?

- It aims for achieving Global Sustainable Development.
- It is an agenda to fight environmental damage, poverty, disease etc.
- Agenda 21, has legal powers to acquire even private property for public good.
- One of its major objectives is that every local govt. should draw its own agenda 21.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (c) Agenda 21, has legal powers to acquire even private property for public good

18. **Assertion** - Land is a natural resource of utmost importance.

**Reason :** Land can be used for various purposes.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

19. Which type of the erosion can be seen in the given picture?



- (a) Sheet erosion.  
 (b) Wind erosion.  
 (c) Gully erosion.  
 (d) Stream bank erosion.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014, 2010

- (c) Gully erosion.

20. Which of the following is a root cause for resource depletion at the global level according to Mahatma Gandhi?

- (a) Conservation of resources  
 (b) Use of resources  
 (c) Greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology  
 (d) Backward technology

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (c) Greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology

21. Who was against mass production and wanted to replace it with the production by the masses ?

- (a) Nehru ji  
 (b) Gandhiji  
 (c) Vallabhbhai Patel

- (d) Shastri ji

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

- (b) Gandhiji

22. Match the following items given in column-I with those in column-II. Choose the correct answer from the codes given below :

<b>Column-I</b>		<b>Column-II</b>	
A.	Contour ploughing	1.	Planting lines of trees.
B.	Strip cropping	2.	Western and Eastern Himalaya.
C.	Shelter belts	3.	Grass are left to grow between crops.
D.	Terrace cultivation	4.	Decelerate the flow of water

**Option :**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2  
 (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2  
 (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 2, D - 1  
 (d) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2

23. **Assertion** - Resource planning is an easy process in India.

**Reason** : Resource planning involves planning structure, identification and inventory of resource across the regions.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

24. Which of the following is a root cause for resource depletion at the global level according to Mahatma Gandhi?  
 (a) Conservation of resources

- (b) Use of resources  
 (c) Greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology  
 (d) Backward technology

**Ans :** Foreign 2019

- (c) Greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology

**25. Identify the land-**

- Includes rocky, arid and desert areas.
- This land put to other non-agricultural uses includes settlements, roads, railways industry etc.
- Continuous use of this land over a long period of time without taking appropriate measures to conserve and manage it, has resulted in land degradation.

**Select the appropriate option from the following.**

- (a) Waste land  
 (b) Forest land  
 (c) Fallow land  
 (d) Grazing land

**Ans :** OD 2020

- (a) Waste land

**26. At the international level Club of Rome advocated resource conservation for the first time in \_\_\_\_.**

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| (a) 1974 | (b) 1968 |
| (c) 1987 | (d) 1992 |

**Ans :** Comp 2018

- (b) 1968

**27. Assertion -** Processes of soil formation and erosion goes simultaneously and creates a balance between the two.

**Reason :** The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is soil erosion  
 (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011, 2010

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**28. Fill the table with correct information-**

Name of soil	Crop can be sown	Peculiar quality
Black soil	A - ?	High water holding capacity
B - ?	Sugarcane, Paddy, wheat	Very fertile, contain potash, phosphoric acid and lime

- (a) A - Tea, Coffee.B -Alluvial soil  
 (b) A -Cotton.,B -Black soil  
 (c) A -Tea, Coffee.,B -Red soil  
 (d) A -Cotton.B -Alluvial soil

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (d) A -Cotton. B -Alluvial soil.

**29. Who presented Gandhian philosophy in his book Small is Beautiful?**

- (a) Brundtland Commission Report  
 (b) Club of Rome  
 (c) Gandhiji  
 (d) Schumacher

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (d) Schumacher

**30. Identify the personality-**

- He was very active in voicing his concern about resource conservation.
- His words were: “There is enough for everybody’s need and not for any body’s greed”.
- He placed the greedy and selfish individuals and exploitative nature of modern technology as the root cause for resource depletion at the global level.
- He was against mass production and wanted to replace it with the production by the masses.

**Select the appropriate option from the following.**

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| (a) Schumacher | (b) Gandhiji      |
| (c) Brundtland | (d) None of these |

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (b) Gandhiji



- (c) Due to presence of excessive fine clay.  
 (d) All of the above.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (d) All of the above.

**39.** What is the gross cropped area ?

- (a) Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net sown area  
 (b) Area sown more than once in an agricultural year minus net sown area  
 (c) Area sown with crops but is counted only once.  
 (d) Double of the area sown more than once in an agricultural year

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (a) Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net sown area

**40.** **Assertion -** Arid soil is unsuitable for cultivation.

**Reason :** Arid soil is generally sandy in texture and saline in nature. It restricts the filtration of water.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**41.** What is the net sown area ?

- (a) Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net sown area  
 (b) Area sown more than once in an agricultural year minus net sown area  
 (c) Area sown with crops but is counted only once.  
 (d) Double of the area sown more than once in an agricultural year

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (c) Net area sown more than once in an agricultural

**42.** What is the percentage of the culturable waste land in India?

- (a) 8% (b) 7.7%  
 (c) 4.41% (d) 3%

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (c) 4.41%

**43.** Fallow land is a kind of agricultural land. It is \_\_\_\_\_ fertile.

- (a) not (b) less  
 (c) more (d) most

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- (b) less

**44.** Match the following columns :

<b>Column-I</b> (Type of Soil)		<b>Column-II</b> (Crops Grown)	
A.	Arid soil	1.	Cotton and groundnut
B.	Black soil	2.	Jowar and Bajra
C.	Laterite soil	3.	Tea and coffee
D.	Mountain/ Forest soil	4.	Cashew and spices

**Option :**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2  
 (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2  
 (c) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3  
 (d) A - 2, B - 4, C - 1, D - 3

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (c) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3

**45.** Arrange the following types of soil found as the major soil types in India from north to south-

1. Forest and mountainous soil.
2. Black soil.
3. Alluvial soil.
4. Red and Yellow soil.

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4  
 (b) 1, 3, 2, 4  
 (c) 1, 4, 3, 2  
 (d) 2, 3, 4, 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (b) 1, 3, 2, 4

46. What name is given to the land which is left free for 1 to 5 years uncultivated?

- (a) culturable wasteland
- (b) Barren land
- (c) waste land
- (d) grazing land

**Ans :**

SQP 2011

- (a) culturable wasteland

47. Identify the process-

- Is a gradual process.
- It is the displacement of the upper layer of soil.
- Is a natural process.
- Caused by the dynamic activity of water, ice, snow, air, plants, animals and humans.

**Option :**

- (a) Soil Erosion
- (b) Soil Conservation
- (c) Soil Mixture
- (d) Bad Soil

**Ans :**

OD 2005

- (a) Soil Erosion

48. **Assertion -** Controlling on mining activities doesn't control land degradation.

**Reason :** In states like Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, deforestation has occurred due to overgrazing, not minings

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2014, 2009

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

49. Which of the following is not a physical factor to determine land use?

- (a) climate condition
- (b) soil type
- (c) topography
- (d) population density

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

- (d) population density

50. Complete the table with correct information-

Summit	Year	Held at	Aim
Rio de Janeiro earth summit	A - ?	Brazil	B - ?

- (a) A -June 1992 B -For addressing urgent problems of environmental protection.
- (b) A -May 1992 B -For addressing urgent problems of environmental protection
- (c) A -July 1992 B -For addressing urgent problems of environmental protection
- (d) A -June 1992 B -For addressing urgent problems of economy.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2006

- (a) A -June 1992 B -For addressing urgent problems of environmental protection.

51. The total geographical area of India is \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a) 328 million square kilometer
- (b) 3.28 million square kilometer
- (c) 32.8 million square kilometer
- (d) 0.328 million square kilometer

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (b) 3.28 million square kilometer

52. Arrange the following in the correct sequence (land degradation by percentage:

1. Forest degraded area
2. Water eroded area
3. Wind eroded area
4. Saline and alkaline deposits

**Option :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 2, 1, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 2, 1, 3 |
| (c) 2, 4, 1, 3 | (d) 4, 1, 2, 3 |

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) 2, 1, 3, 4

53. What is the percentage of net sown area out of the total reporting area in India?

- (a) 54 per cent
- (b) 28 per cent
- (c) 70 per cent
- (d) 81 per cent

- (2) Sheet erosion : Sometimes water flow as a sheet over large areas down a slope. In this case top layer of the soil is washed away.
- (3) Wind erosion : Wind blows off loose and dry soil from flat and sloping land causing erosion.

**100.** Give the distribution of alluvial soils in brief.

**Ans :** Foreign 2017

The entire northern plains are made up of alluvial soils.

- (1) These have been deposited by three important Himalyan river systems—the Indus, Ganga and Brahmaputra.
- (2) These soils also extend into Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor.
- (3) These are also found in the eastern coastal plains in the deltas of the Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri rivers.

**101.** The pattern of the net sown area varies greatly from one state to another. It is over 80 per cent of the total area in Punjab and Haryana and less than 10 percent in Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, Manipur and Andaman Nicobar Islands.

Find out reasons for the low proportion of net sown area in these states.

**Ans :** OD 2013

Reasons for the low proportion of net sown area are as follows :

- (1) Mostly tribal groups live in this region. Even today they practice shifting cultivation.
- (2) These states are covered by dense tropical forests.
- (3) These states receive very heavy rainfall.
- (4) The terrain of these regions is rocky.
- (5) There is lack of fertile alluvial soil.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers

### SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

**102.** How is the issue of sustainability important for development? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

(1) Sustainable use of natural resources is the process by which economic, industrial and social needs are met but the resources are to be managed and exploited in such a way that the biodiversity, balance in the ecosystem, and the biological cycle like carbon, nitrogen and water cycle are not destroyed.

(2) Coal, oil and natural gas are chiefly used to provide electricity and to power vehicles. We should take advantage of the abundance of solar, wind, wave, tidal and thermal energy that is free, renewable and sustainable. These resources will provide more than enough green electricity which can then power all the industries, homes and transport that we need.

(3) Sustainability lays emphasis on environmental protection and check environmental degradation, moreover, to stop over exploitation and over use of resources.

**103.** Describe the importance of judicious use of resources.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The importance of judicious use of resources are given below :

(1) Resource planning : The planning is an important step in country like India where resources are enormously diverse for judicious use of resources. It provides economically viable and sustainable solution to the issues related to resources and serves efficiently and effectively.

(2) Management resources : The proper management is vital for the efficient and sustainable use of resources. The proper management of resources successfully links the human and resources resulting in its judicious use.

- (b) Renewable and non-renewable.  
 (c) National and individual.  
 (d) Potential and reserves.

**Ans :**

SOP 2016

- (b) Renewable and non-renewable

- 61.** Match the following items given in column-I with those in column-II. Choose the correct answer from the codes given below :

	<b>Column-I</b>		<b>Column-II</b>
A.	Gully erosion	1.	Develop under tropical and subtropical climate
B.	Bad land	2.	Old Alluvial soil
C.	Laterite soil	3.	Chambal Basin
D.	Bhangar	4.	Land unfit for cultivation

**Option :**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 2, D - 1  
 (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2  
 (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2  
 (d) A - 3, B - 4, C - 2, D - 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

- (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2

- 62.** Which of the following is correct for laterite soil ?

- (i) It develops under tropical and subtropical climate with alternative wet and dry season.  
 (ii) These soils are sticky when wet.  
 (a) Only (i)  
 (b) Only (ii)  
 (c) Both (i) and (ii)  
 (d) Neither (i) or (ii)

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (a) Only (i)

- 63.** Read the information given below and select the correct answer:

Ravi was trying to compare the development of India with her neighbouring countries. He found that Sri Lanka is more developed than India but lacks behind in terms of the size of economy.

What was the indicator used by Ravi to compare the development?

- (a) Average Income  
 (b) Human Development Index  
 (c) Gross Domestic Product  
 (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (b) Human Development Index

- 64.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Biotic  
 (b) Abiotic  
 (c) Renewable Resource  
 (d) Non-Renewable Resource

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (d) Non-Renewable Resource

- 65.** Identify the resources which with the help of following clues -

- They belong to the nation.
- The country has legal powers to acquire even private property for public good.
- example-All the minerals, water resources, forests, wildlife, land within the political boundaries and oceanic area upto 12 nautical miles (22.2 km) from the coast.

**Select the appropriate option from the following.**

- (a) International Resources  
 (b) National Resources  
 (c) Community Owned Resources  
 (d) Individual Resources

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (b) National Resources



- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** SQP 2010

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

72. Describe any three main features of 'Alluvial soil' found in India.

**Ans :** OD 2019

Major characteristics of Alluvial Soil are :

- (1) Alluvial soil is considered as one of the most fertile soils amongst all soil types.
- (2) Alluvial soil contains sand, silt and clay mainly due to silt deposited by the Indo-Gangetic-Brahmaputra rivers. .
- (3) Alluvial soil contains an ample amount of potash, phosphoric acid and lime.

73. Describe any three main features of 'Black soil' found in India.

**Ans :** OD 2019

Major characteristics of Black soil are:

- (1) Black soil is fine textured and clayey in nature. It is suitable for growing cotton.
- (2) Black soil has high amount of lime, iron, magnesium and generally low quantities of Phosphorus, Nitrogen and organic matter.
- (3) It is formed from weathered lava rocks, thus is black in colour.
- (4) It has a high clay content and therefore is highly retentive of water. It is extremely fertile in most of the places where it is found.

74. Describe the different steps of 'resource planning.'

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

Resource planning is consisting of complex processes which are given below :

- (1) Identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country. This involves surveying mapping, qualitative and quantitative estimation and measurement of the resources.
- (2) Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and institutional set up for implementing resource development plans.
- (3) Matching the resource development plans with overall national development plans.

75. Suggest any three ways to improve health and nutritional status of people in India.

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

The three ways to improve health and nutritional status of people in India are given below :

- (1) Eat healthy food daily, keep your body healthy.
- (2) When we eat fruits check whether it is clean or not. If you eat unclear fruits you will suffer from disease.
- (3) Eat daily some Vitamin C rich fruits like grapes, apples, orange etc.

76. Classify resources on the basis of origin.

**Ans :** OD 2018, 2016

Resources classification on the basis of origin:

- (1) Biotic resources : All living organisms in our environment are known as biotic resources. Example : Tree, animal, insects etc.
- (2) Abiotic resources : All non-living things present in our environment are known as abiotic resources. Example : earth, air, water, metals, rocks etc.

77. State any two goals of development other than income.

**Ans :** SQP 2018

Income is definitely one of the most important aspect of our lives, but there are other important goals of development, such as:

**66.** Match the following columns :

Column-I (Type of Soil)	Column-II (States)
A. Laterite soil	1. Western Madhya Pradesh
B. Alluvial soil	2. Western Rajasthan
C. Black soil	3. Karnataka
D. Arid soil	4. Uttar Pradesh

**Option :**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2
- (b) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2
- (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2
- (d) A - 3, B - 1, C - 2, D - 1

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (c) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2

**67.** In the Summit-

- More than 100 heads of states met in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil
- The Summit was convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection
- The Rio Convention endorsed the global Forest Principles and adopted Agenda 21
- The Rio Convention endorsed the global Forest Principles and adopted Agenda 21

**Identify the event :**

- (a) First International Earth
- (b) Second International Earth
- (c) Third International Earth
- (d) Fifth International Earth

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (a) first International Earth

**68.** Identify the event-

- Held in June 1992.
  - Covered for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level.
  - Adopted agenda 21.
  - More than 100 heads of states met in this event.
- (a) The Citizens' Fifth Report, 1999
  - (b) Club of Rome
  - (c) Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit, 1992.
  - (d) Our Common Future

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012, 2009

- (c) Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit, 1992.

**69.** Arrange the following soil types found in India as per area covered by them-(From higher to lower)

- 1. Red soil.
- 2. Black soil.
- 3. Arid soil.
- 4. Alluvial soil.

**Option :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 2, 1, 3 |
| (c) 2, 4, 1, 3 | (d) 4, 1, 2, 3 |

**Ans :**

OD 2005

- (d) 4, 1, 2, 3

**70.** Study the table and answer the question given below :

Some comparative data on Haryana, Kerala and Bihar

State	Infant Mortality Rate per 1000 live births (2016)	Literacy Rate % 2011	Net Attendance Ratio (per 100 persons) secondary stage (age 14 and 15 years 2013-14)
Haryana	33	82	61
Kerala	10	94	83
Bihar	38	62	43

Source : Economic Survey, 2017-18 Vol. 2 Government of India : National Sample Survey Organisation (Report No.575).

In comparison to Kerala which state has the highest infant mortality rate.

- (a) Bihar
- (b) Kerala
- (c) Haryana
- (d) All

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (a) Bihar

**71.** **Assertion** - alluvial soil is ideal for the growth of sugarcane, paddy, wheat etc.

**Reason** : It is rich in potash, phosphoric, acid and lime.

- (1) Judicious and careful utilisation of resources.
  - (2) Preventing wastage of resources and misuse of resources.
  - (3) Use of alternatives or substitutes in the case of non-renewable resources.
- 84.** 'Resources are a function of human activities'. Explain.

**Ans :**

Natural endowments of environment are nature's free gift. But these become resources only when man utilises them. These resources are a function of human activities. Human beings transform material available in our environment into resources. For example, Wood is transformed into furniture by a carpenter. So human beings are essential components of resources.

- 85.** How is climate the most important factor in soil formation ? Explain two reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2018

Climate is an important factor that contributes to the formation of soil.

- (a) Climate determines the rate of weathering and the type of vegetation.
- (b) As the rocks are exposed to the sunlight during day time, they expand and in the evening when the sun goes down, they contract. The expansion and contraction causes cracks in the rocks.
- (c) During night when it rains, the rain water enters through the cracks. As the temperature goes down, the rain water in the cracks freezes that further expands the cracks and, thus, easily eroded by the running water.

- 86.** Explain the major factors which are responsible for the formation of soil.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (1) Relief, parent rock or bed rock, climate, vegetation and other forms of life and time are important factors in the formation of soil.

- (2) Various forces of nature such as change in temperature, actions of running water, wind and glaciers, activities of decomposers, etc. contribute to the formation of soil.
- (3) Chemical and organic changes which take place in the soil are equally important.
- (4) Soil also consists of organic (humans) and inorganic materials.

- 87.** What steps can be taken to promote soil conservation?

or

Suggest any three measures of soil conservation.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

By ploughing along the contour lines, water will not run down the slopes. This is called contour ploughing. Steps can be cut out on the slopes making terraces. Terrace cultivation restricts erosion. Large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of the wind, and this method is known as strip-cropping. Planting rows of trees to create shelter also works in the similar way. The rows of such trees are called shelter belts.

- 88.** What do you know about Earth Summit ? What were its aims ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2013, 2011

In June 1992, more than 100 heads of states met in Rio-de-Janeiro in Brazil, for the first International Earth Summit.

Aims : The summit was convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level.

Declaration of the Summit : The assembled leaders signed the declaration on Global Climate Change and the Biological Diversity. The Rio Convention endorsed the Global Forest Principles and adopted Agenda 21 for achieving Sustainable Development in the 21st century.

- (1) Equal treatment, security and dignity for all citizens.
- (2) Safe and secured environment for women to make progress in every walk of their life.
78. How can two persons have different developmental goals?

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

Different persons have different notions of development because life situations of persons are different. Development for one may not be development for other. It may even be destructive for the other. For example, an industrialist may want more dams for electricity but this may submerge the land and disrupt the lives of people who are displaced.

79. What are resources ? State the important characteristics of resources.

or

What are resource ? Describe their two feature.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

All the useful elements of environment which satisfy human needs are called resources.

Characteristics :

- (1) These are free gifts of nature and useful elements of environment.
- (2) These are technologically accessible.
- (3) These are economically feasible.
- (4) These satisfy basic needs of man.
- (5) These are culturally acceptable.
- (6) These are limited in quantity.

80. What are renewable resources ? Which processes are used to renew them ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

Renewable resources are those resources which can be reused. These can be reproduced like crops, trees, etc. Three processes are used for their renewable :

- (a) Physical Process
- (b) Chemical Process
- (c) Mechanical Process

These are also called continuous flow resources. Solar energy, wind energy, water power, forests and wildlife are its examples.

81. What can be the harmful result of indiscriminate use of resources ?

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2011

The indiscriminate use of resources is self-suicide and very disastrous for us in a number of ways :

- (1) To meet the greed of few individuals, the resources will be depleted at a rapid speed.
- (2) The accumulation of resources in few hands would divide the society into have and have nots or the rich and the poor, which would be quite unjust and dangerous for the harmonious development of the society.
- (3) Indiscriminate use of resources would lead to global crisis such as depletion of ozone layer, pollution of the environment, land degradation and global warming.

82. Distinguish between human made resources and natural resources. Give two distinctions.

**Ans :**

Comp 2016,

	<b>Natural Resources</b>	<b>Human made Resources</b>
1.	Resources which are gifts of nature.	Resources which are created by man.
2.	It is of two types- biotic and abiotic, e.g., biotic-plants and animals, abiotic- rocks and metals.	These are developed by man using his skill and knowledge by utilising natural resources e.e., machines, technology.

83. Mention any three measures of conservation of resources.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2018

Three measures of conservation of resources are :

growth of tea and coffee. Red laterite soils of Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Kerala are more suitable for crops like cashewnuts.

- 95.** "All biotic resources are not renewable". Discuss the statement.

**Ans :** Delhi 2010

Biosphere is the source of all biotic resources. The biotic resources include forests, agricultural crops and wildlife. Coal and petroleum also come under biotic resources because they have originated from organic matter which was buried in the earth's interior millions of years ago. Forests, fish, crops, etc. are renewable resources. But coal and petroleum are not renewable resources. They are exhaustible on the large scale. It takes a long time for the renewal.

- 96.** What do you understand by conservation of resources for sustainable benefit of the present as well as future generations ?

or

Define the concept conservation of resources. Why is it necessary ?

**Ans :** Comp 2011

Conservation is judicious and planned use of natural resources for sustainable benefit to the present generation. It also maintains a potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations.

Conservation is necessary because :

- (1) Our resources are limited in nature, therefore they have to be used judiciously.
- (2) Many of the resources are non-renewable in nature therefore extra care has to be taken.
- (3) Their conservation is necessary for our own sustenance and for the ongoing economic developmental processes.

- 97.** Mention the steps which are involved in resource planning.

or

Explain three steps involved in the resource planning in India.

**Ans :**

OD 2016

Resource planning is a complex process which involves the following steps :

- (1) Identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country. This involves surveying, mapping and qualitative and quantitative estimation and measurement of the resources.
- (2) Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and institutional set up for implementing resource development plans.
- (3) Matching the resource development plans with overall national development plans.

- 98.** What is soil erosion ? Mention two main causes of it.

or

What is soil erosion ? Write two human activities that lead to soil erosion.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

Removal of top soil at a large scale from one place to another by some natural agents, such as wind, water and air or human activities is known as soil erosion.

Causes of Soil Erosion :

- (1) The running water cuts through the clayey soil and makes deep channels as gullies. The soil becomes unfit for cultivation.
- (2) Deforestation in particular, leads to the frequency of floods which cause extensive damage to our soils.
- (3) In dry and sandy areas, wind is the main cause of soil erosion. Exposed, loose sandy soil (top soil) is easily blown away by wind and deposited in other areas.
- (4) Reckless felling of trees and overgrazing destroy the vegetation cover which provides protective cover to the soil. It does not protect the soil now.

- 99.** Explain three types of soil erosion.

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2011

- (1) Gully erosion : The running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels, called gullies. They make the land unfit for cultivation. Such lands are called 'Badlands'.

- ozone layer depletion, environmental pollution and land degradation.
- (2) Resources should not be allowed to accumulate in a few hands. It divides the society into two segments, i.e., haves and have nots or rich and poor.
  - (3) Resource planning should be done for sustainable development. It means development should take place without damaging the environment, and development in the present should not be compromised with the needs of the future generations.
  - (4) Conservation of resources should be given priority because they are vital for developmental activity.
  - (5) Optimum utilization of resources need to be practised since resources are available in fixed quantity and cannot be reproduced or renewed.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 127.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Planning is the widely accepted strategy for judicious use of resources. It has importance in a country like India, which has enormous diversity in the availability of resources. There are regions which are rich in certain types of resources, but are deficient in some other resources. There are some regions which can be considered self-sufficient in terms of the availability of resources and there are some regions which have acute shortage of some vital resources. For example, the states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and coal deposits. Arunachal Pradesh has abundance of water resources, but lacks in infrastructural development.*

### Questions :

1. State how the optimum utilisation of resources can be done by planning.
2. Evaluate the necessity of planning in India.

3. Give two examples of resource availability in India.

**Ans :**

1. As planning involves identification and quantification of resources, so the optimum utilisation of resources can be done by planning through knowing the exact quantities of resources available and ways can be developed to use them properly.
2. Planning is necessary in India due to two reasons. They are
  - (a) There are regions which are rich in certain types of resources, but are deficient in some other resources.
  - (b) There are some regions which can be considered self-sufficient in terms of the availability of resources, and there are some regions which have acute shortage of some vital resources.
3. India has resource availability which can be seen by following examples
  - (a) The states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh are rich in minerals and coal deposits.
  - (b) Arunachal Pradesh has abundance of water resources.

- 128.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is described as soil erosion. The processes of soil formation and erosion go on simultaneously and generally there is a balance between the two. Sometimes, this balance is disturbed due to human activities like deforestation, over-grazing, construction and mining etc., while natural forces like wind, glacier and water lead to soil erosion. The running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels as gullies. The land becomes unfit for cultivation and is known as bad land. In the Chambal basin such lands are called ravines. Sometimes water flows as a sheet over large areas down a slope. In such cases the top soil is washed away. This is known as sheet erosion. Wind blows*

(3) Awareness : The awareness plays an important role in planning, management and use of resources. It is an responsibility of an individual to affectionately plan and manage their local resources and should manage and harness them in the sustainable and best possible way like a vacant piece of community land that can be brought under use by building parks, garden, etc.

**104.** Why is sustainability important for development ? Explain.

Ans : OD 2020  
The issue of sustainability is important for development because :  
(1) With the passage of times the generation changes and with this change society wants more and more benefits from the resources which are present in our nature.

(2) The increasing needs of people decaying things day by day and excessive use is making things worse. If the speed of using resources remains same then the available resources will be exhausted soon and our coming generation will stay deprived from all kind of needs.  
(3) The growth and development should be done by keeping in mind the future usage.  
(4) If resources will not be sustained for future then our natural resources will be exhausted after some time and upcoming generations will not be able to take the advantage of these natural resources.  
(5) This concept stresses the role of the environment as capital.

**105.** How is the criterion used by the UNDP different from the World Bank for measuring the development of a country ? Explain.

Ans : OD 2020  
World Bank uses per capita income to measure the development whereas UNDP (United Development Programme) measure the development on the basis of Human Development Index.

Human development index is prepared on the basis of :

- (1) It is also one of the most important criteria for the development of a country.
- (2) It measures the average age of a person in a country. It help us to know the health facilities of the country.
- (3) It measures the education gained at three levels at the primary, secondary and higher education level.
- (4) It measures the average income earned income by its total population. It is per person in a given area (city, region, national income divided by population country, etc.) in a specified year. It is calculated by dividing the area's total income by its total population. It is national income divided by population size.

**106.** What are the main advantages of India's land under a variety of relief features ?

Ans : SQP 2017  
Lands on the basis of relief features can be broadly categorized as mountains with very high to high altitudes plateaus with moderate altitudes and plains with lower altitude. In India 30 per cent area are mountainous 27 per cent are plateaus and 43 per cent are plains, all of these have specific advantages to be utilised.

- (1) Mountains are source to many streams and rivers, some of them are perennial. These regions have very high potential for hydro electricity productions, etc., and also sites for eco-tourism.
- (2) Plateaus are mostly laden with minerals, fossil fuels and forest, etc., so are economically most productive.
- (3) Plains are most important land resource for human beings. These are fertile and most of the food crops, etc., are grown here and also for economic use it is exploited for development of factories, roads, etc.

But all these advantages should be exploited sustainably.

- 89.** Distinguish between stock and reserve giving one example of each.

Ans :

SQP 2009

Stock	Reserve
Stocks are those materials which have potential to satisfy human needs but cannot be utilized due to lack of technical know-how.	Reserves are those stocks for which we have technical know-how but are not in use.
Example : Minerals found in the sea bed or under oceans.	Examples : forests, reservoirs.

- 90.** Distinguish between natural resources and cultural resources.

Ans :

OD 2007

Natural Resources	Cultural Resources
Resources which are provided to us by nature are called natural resources. Some such resources are those of land, water, minerals and forests etc.	Resources created by humans are called cultural resources. Science and technology, engineering, machines, buildings, monuments, paintings as well as social institutions like associations, families etc. are all cultural resources.

- 91.** 'Land is a prime resource'. Explain the statement.

or

What are the main advantages of India's land under a variety of relief features ?

Ans :

Foreign 2007

Land is a prime resource :

- (1) All types of organisms including man are born, flourish, mature and at last meet their end on land.

- (2) Land provides us all necessities of life— food, clothing and shelter.

- (3) Without land no organism can survive even their existence cannot be dreamt without land.

Hence, land is very useful to us. Nature has provided land to us. It is a prime resource.

- 92.** Since the land under pasture has reduced, what impact it had on cattle-rearing ? Explain two points.

Ans :

Comp 2022

Impact of Reduction of Pastures on Cattle rearing : Only 4% of the land in India is under permanent pastures which has a bad impact on cattle-rearing.

- Because of the lack of pastures, there is tremendous pressure of livestock population on agricultural land.
- Cattle have to be reared on farm wastes, grain-chaff and few fodder crops.

- 93.** What do you know about Agenda-21 ? What were its aims ?

Ans :

Delhi 2014

Agenda-21 : It is the declaration signed by world leaders in 1992 at the United Nation's Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED), which took place at Rio-de-Janeiro, Brazil.

Aims : It aims at achieving Global Sustainable Development. It is an agenda to combat the environment damage, poverty and diseases through global co-operation on common interests, mutual needs and shared responsibilities. One major objective of the Agenda-21 is that every local government should draw its own local Agenda-21.

- 94.** In which parts of India laterite soils are found? State the crops supported by this soil.

Ans :

SQP 2007

Laterite soils are found mainly in the states of Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh and the hilly regions of Orissa and Assam. In the hilly areas of Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu this soil is suitable for the

	<b>Renewable Resources</b>	<b>Non-Renewable Resources</b>
3.	Forests, crops, fish are the examples.	Minerals, iron, coal, oil are non-renewable resources.
4.	They are renewable. They can be reproduced.	Once these are used, they cannot be reproduced.

111. "Alluvial soils provide food for more than half of the total population of India." Give reasons in favour of this statement.

Ans : OD 2014

- (1) Alluvial soil is the most widely spread and important soil in India. These soils extend in the northern plains. These are also extend in Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor.
- (2) It is also found-in the southern part of India in the eastern coastal plains, particularly in the deltas of the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri rivers.
- (3) Since these soils contain potash, phosphorus and lime in adequate quantity, these are ideal for the cultivation of crops like sugarcane, paddy, wheat, pulses, etc.
- (4) Since these are highly fertile, the regions of these soils are intensively cultivated and densely populated.

So, it is true to say that alluvial soils provide food for more than half of the total population of India.

112. How are resources classified into various types on the basis of their status of development ? Give one example of each type.

Ans : Comp 2018

On the basis of the status of development resources can be classified into four types.

- (1) Potential resources : These include resources which are found in a region, but have not been utilised. For example, solar and wind energy in Rajasthan and Gujarat respectively.

(2) Developed resources : These include resources which are surveyed and their quality and quantity have been determined for utilization. For example, coal, iron, manganese, etc.

(3) Stock : Materials in the environment which have the potential to satisfy human needs but human beings do not have the appropriate technology to access them are called stock. For example, geothermal energy.

(4) Reserves : Resources which can be put into use with the help of existing technical 'know-how' but their use has not been started. These can be used for meeting future requirements. For example, water in dams, forests, etc.

113. Distinguish between moun-tainous soil and desert soil.

Ans : Foreign 2010

	<b>Mountainous Soil</b>	<b>Desert Soil</b>
1.	It is formed due to mechanical weathering caused by snow, rain and temperature variation etc.	It is formed due to mechanical weathering of rocks sand.
2.	Due to steep slopes, it is less fertile.	It is loose and porous in textures so, it is unfertile.
3.	It is deficient in potash, phosphorus and lime.	It is deficient in organic matter.
4.	Wheat, maize, rice can be grown.	Millets can be grown.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 107.** Explain the classification of resources on the basis of origin.

or

Distinguish between biotic and abiotic resources.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2019

On the basis of origin resources are of two types:  
 (a) Biotic resources and (b) Abiotic resources.  
 Distinguish between Biotic and Abiotic resources :

	<b>Biotic Resources</b>	<b>Abiotic Resources</b>
1.	They consist of living things.	They consist of non-living things.
2.	They can continue to reproduce and regenerate their population in favourable environment.	They do not have capacity to reproduce and regenerate their population.
3.	They are renewable.	They are non-renewable.
4.	They are affected by the external environment.	They are free from environmental effects.
5.	Examples : Crops, animals, birds, reptiles and fishes, etc.	Examples : Coal, petroleum, natural gas, iron-ore and aluminium, etc.

- 108.** How are potential resources different from stock resources ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

**Potential Resources :** Resources which are found in a region, but have not been utilised due to lack of capital or other reasons. For example, the western parts of India, particularly Rajasthan and Gujarat have enormous potential for the development of wind and solar energy, but so far, these have not been developed properly.

**Stock Resources :** These are the materials in the environment which have the potential to satisfy the human needs but could not be used as the human being do not have the appropriate technology to convert them into

usable form. For example, water ( $H_2O$ ) is a compound by two inflammable gases, i.e., hydrogen and oxygen, but human beings do not have the required technology to use them as a source of energy.

- 109.** Explain any four human activities which are mainly responsible for land degradation in India.

or

What are the reasons for land degradation ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2005

Reasons : Some human activities such as deforestation, overgrazing, mining and quarrying have contributed significantly in land degradation.

- (1) Deforestation due to mining have caused severe land degradation.
- (2) Over irrigation is also responsible for land degradation due to water logging.
- (3) Industrial effluent as wastes have become a major source of land degradation.
- (4) The mineral processing like grinding of limestone for ceramic industry generates huge quantity of dust that settles down on the land and degrades it.

- 110.** Distinguish between the renewable and non-renewable resources.

or

Classify resources on the basis of exhaustibility in two groups. Mention three characteristics of each.

or

Explain the types of resources on the basis of exhaustibility with the help of examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

	<b>Renewable Resources</b>	<b>Non-Renewable Resources</b>
1.	These resources can be renewed or obtained even after they are used.	These resources cannot be reproduced after their use.
2.	These are not exhaustible due to constant use.	These are exhaustible due to constant use.

- (2) Community owned resources : The resources which are accessible to all the members of the community are called community owned resources. For example, grazing grounds, burial grounds, picnic spots, play grounds, etc.
- (3) National resources : All the minerals, water resources, forests, wildlife, land within the political boundaries and oceanic area upto 12 nautical miles from the coast belong to the nation.
- (4) International resources : The oceanic resources beyond 200 km of the Exclusive Economic Zone belong to international institutions.

**118.** Why is it important to have a planned strategy for the development of resources in India ?

Ans :

OD 2009

Need of a planned strategy for the development of resources in India due to following reasons:

- (1) In some resources India is very rich while in some resources India is very poor. The proper planning will create a balance in the two and the total period of consumption and utilisation will be more scientific, rational and authentic.
  - (2) The distribution of various resources in India is not same regional or statewise. The regions or areas which are having more resources can supply some of the resources to that area where there are resources in scarce or less quantity.
  - (3) The proper planning before the use is very helpful in checking the misuse or destruction of the valuable resources.
  - (4) India can save its foreign currency due to proper planning. For example, less import of those resources on which India totally depend on import. Petroleum products are in very less quantity in India while their demand is increasing day-by-day.
- 119.** For the development of any region, availability of resource is not enough, technology for proper exploitation of resource is also necessary. Justify.

Ans :

SQP 2017

- (1) More availability of resources in the absence of corresponding changes in technology hinders development.
- (2) In our country certain regions are rich in resources but economically backward due to the absence of technological development. For example, Chhattisgarh region.
- (3) Certain regions are poor in resources but economically developed because of developed technological know how, for example Punjab.
- (4) Various countries of Asia and Africa were dominated by European powers primarily due to higher level of technological development.

Therefore, resources can contribute to development only when they are accompanied by appropriate technological development.

**120.** Give any four points of difference between red and black soils.

Ans :

OD 2013

Difference between red and black soils :

	Red soil	Black soil
1.	These soils have developed due to prolonged weathering of the old crystalline rocks.	These soils develop by the weathering and decomposition of the basaltic rocks of lava plateau or Deccan trap.
2.	It looks reddish in colour.	It appears blackish in colour.
3.	It is found in the eastern and southern parts of Deccan plateau.	It is found in North-West Deccan plateau.
4.	These soils are generally less fertile. But under irrigation, they become quite productive.	These soils are fairly fertile.
5.	It is ideal for growing cotton, groundnut, sugarcane, etc.	It is ideal for growing rice, millets, etc.

**114.** Distinguish between Bangar and Khadar soil.

Ans :

OD 2014, 2012

	Bangar Soil	Khadar Soil
1.	Bangar is the old alluvium. In other words, Bangar is older than Khadar.	Khadar is the new alluvium. In other words, Khadar is younger in age.
2.	Bangar often contains kankar nodules with calcium carbonates in sub-soil.	Khadar is finer, more sandy and free from kankar nodules.
3.	Bangar is not renewed frequently. Hence, it is less fertile.	Khadar is renewed frequently and is more fertile.
4.	Bangar is found away from the river and higher than ground level.	Khadar is found near river channels in deltas and in flood plains.

**115.** Why resource management should be conceived as new conservation ?

Ans :

Delhi 2009

(1) The term ‘resource management’ is now used in place of ‘resource conservation’. Resource management emphasizes the wise use of the resources aimed at meeting the current human needs without destroying the ecological balance and jeopardizing the needs of the future generations. It, thus, involves policies or practices regarding how resources are allocated under given conditions for development.

(2) Resource management should be conceived as the new dimension of conservation. The emphasis is upon flexibility and the minimisation of long-term environmental fatal strobes, while maximising net social welfare over time. Resource management, thus involves strategies of action in evolving computation of tactics and methods and a variety of objectives.

(3) It is becoming increasingly concerned with the protection and enhancement of environmental quality and the establishment of new guidelines for the public use of common property as air, water and landscape. Therefore, resource management should be conceived as new conservation.

**116.** Describe the efforts made at the international level for the conservation of resources.

Ans :

Foreign 2007

The efforts made for the conservation of resources at the international level are as follows :

- (1) The Club of Rome advocated resource conservation for the first time in 1968.
- (2) In 1974, Gandhian philosophy was presented by Schumacher in his book ‘Small is Beautiful’.
- (3) In 1987, Brundtland Commission Report made seminar contribution with respect to resource conservation. This report introduced the concept of ‘Sustainable Development’ and advocated it as a means for resource conservation. It was later on published in a book, ‘Our Common Future’.
- (4) In 1992, more than 100 heads of states met in Rio-de-Janeiro in Brazil for the first International Earth Summit to discuss the problem of environmental protection and socio-economic development. It adopted Agenda-21 for achieving sustainable development in the 21st century.

**117.** Classify resources on the basis of ownership into four categories. Mention the main feature of each.

or

Distinguish between individual resources and community owned resources. Give any two differences.

Ans :

Delhi 2006, 2005

On the basis of ownership resources can be classified into four types.

- (1) Individual resources : These are owned privately by individuals. For example, plots, houses, plantation, pasture lands, ponds, are owned by individuals.

- (3) In semi-arid areas land degradation can be curbed by cultivation technique. It is based on moisture conservation.
- (4) The industrial effluents and wastes are a major cause of land degradation. Therefore, effective measures must be taken for the proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes.
- (5) Overgrazing of land by animals is to be controlled.
- (6) It is also necessary to stabilize the shifting of sand dunes in the desert areas. It can be done by planting thorny bushes.
- 124.** Imagine yourself as one of the heads of the states attending the International Earth Summit at Rio-de Janeiro, Brazil and suggest some methods for environment protection.

Ans :

OD 2014

I am a student but for the sake of answering the question, I am imagining myself one of the heads of the states. I am attending the international earth summit at Rio-de Janeiro-Brazil as the head of India. The following methods were suggested by me from the side of my country to combat environmental damage, poverty and disease :

- (1) Environment should be protected at all cost throughout the world with the mutual understanding by all countries. Land, air, soil should be conserved and protected from pollution. Forest, wildlife, water animals, etc. should be protected.
- (2) Poverty should be removed by creation of new jobs. Globalisation, liberalisation should be adopted by all countries. Liberal financial help should be extended by Super Powers to poor and needy countries. Sincerely latest developed technology should be provided to all developing countries.
- (3) Diseases of all type, specially of serious and very harmful and challenges nature should be faced with the mutual medical help and exchange of doctors, surgeons, experts, knowledge, medical equipments etc.

For achievement of our goal sustainable economic development should be promoted in all countries without damaging the environment. In the present time we should not compromise with the needs of future generation during developmental process.

- 125.** What do you mean by 'land use pattern' ? Name the factors that determine the use of land.

Ans :

Delhi 2008

Land use pattern means utilization of land for various purposes such as cultivation, grazing of animals, mining, construction of buildings, roads, railways, etc.

Factors that determine the use of land :

- (1) Topography : Steeply sloping land is not suitable for cultivation. Marshy lands cannot be put to use unless they are properly drained. Rocky lands with soil cover are also unfit for cultivation. They may provide some grazing areas. It is mainly the well-drained fertile lowlands which are put to diverse economic uses.
- (2) Climate : India is a tropical country with a year-round growing season, except in the mountains. This has made our land more important or valuable for high agricultural productivity and the growth of natural vegetation. It accounts for the growing of a large variety of crops throughout the year.
- (3) Accessibility : It also determines land utilization. Lands accessible by roads and railways are more suitable for human habitation and economic activities.
- (4) Population density, technological capability, culture and traditions are some other factors which determine the use of land.

- 126.** Explain the role of human in resource development.

Ans :

OD 2006

- (1) Human beings should not use the resources indiscriminately. It has led to global ecological crisis such as global warming,

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 121.** What is Human Development ? Explain its indicators.

Ans :

OD 2020

Human development is about expanding the richness of human life, rather than simply the richness of the economy in which human beings live. It is an approach that is focused on people and their opportunities and choices.

Indicators :

- (1) Life expectancy at birth : Number of years a newborn infant could expect to live if prevailing patterns of age-specific mortality rates at the time of birth remain the same throughout the infant's life
- (2) Mean years of schooling : Average number of years of education received by people ages 25 and older, converted from education attainment levels using official durations of each level
- (3) Expected years of schooling : Number of years of schooling that a child of school entrance age can expect to receive if prevailing patterns of age-specific enrolment rates persist throughout the child's life
- (4) Gross National Income (GNI) per capital : Aggregate income of an economy generated by its production and its ownership of factors of production, less the incomes paid for the use of factors of production owned by the rest of the world, converted to international dollars using purchasing power parity (PPP) rates, divided by mid-year population
- (5) Non-income Human Development Index : Value of the HDI computed from the life expectancy and education indicators only.

- 122.** What is meant by 'Land degradation'. Which are the factors responsible for land degradation ?

or

Explain any four human activities which are mainly responsible for land degradation in India.

Ans :

Foreign 2018

Land degradation means deteriorating the quality of land which makes it unfit for any use due to various human activities.

Factors responsible for land degradation

- (1) Deforestation leaves the land bare. Various natural forces act upon it. Thus the quality of land- diminishes.
- (2) Overgrazing by animals also contributes significantly in land degradation.
- (3) Mines are abandoned after the excavation or extraction work (of minerals) is over. The land in the mining areas is highly degraded. It is full of heaps and pits. Such land becomes unfit for agriculture and other economic activities.
- (4) Over irrigation is also responsible for land degradation due to water logging leading to increase in salinity and alkalinity in the soil.
- (5) Grinding of limestone for cement industry and calcite and soapstone for ceramic industry produces heavy amount of dust in the atmosphere. It later falls down in the surrounding areas which spoils the land and badly affects crop cultivation.

- 123.** How can the problems of land degradation be solved? Give any four measures.

or

What are the reasons for land degradation? Describe briefly any four measures to conserve land from degradation.

Ans :

SQP 2019, 2017

Land degradation means deteriorating the quality of land which makes it unfit for any use due to various human activities.

Measures to solve the problem of land degradation :

- (1) The vegetation provides the protective cover to the land. Vegetation cover does not allow the rainwater to fall straight on the land, thus helps to maintain the soil fertility. Afforestation helps to solve the problem of land degradation.
- (2) Shelter belts can be created on the margins of the desert areas.

*loose soil off flat or sloping land known as wind erosion. Soil erosion is also caused due to defective methods of farming. Ploughing in a wrong way i.e. up and down the slope form channels for the quick flow of water leading to soil erosion.*

*Ploughing along the contour lines can decelerate the flow of water down the slopes. This is called contour ploughing. Steps can be cut out on the slopes making terraces. Terrace cultivation restricts erosion. Western and central Himalayas have well developed terrace farming. Large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of the wind. This method is known as strip cropping. Planting lines of trees to create shelter also works in a similar way. Rows of such trees are called shelter belts. These shelter belts have contributed significantly to the stabilisation of sand dunes and in stabilising the desert in western India.*

#### **Questions:**

1. The balance of soil formation and erosion is disturbed due to human activities. Give one example to prove the statement.
2. What is soil conservation?
3. Differentiate between gully erosion and sheet erosion.

**Ans :**

1. This balance is disturbed due to overgrazing in states like Gujarat, Rajasthan and Maharashtra.
2. Soil conservation refers to the efforts made to prevent soil from getting eroded.
3. Gully erosion occurs when the running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels as gullies. Sheet erosion occurs when the top soil gets eroded from very large areas due to the running water.

- 129.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is described as soil erosion. The processes of soil formation and*

*erosion, go on simultaneously, and generally there is balance between the two.*

*Sometimes, this balance is disturbed due to human activities like deforestation, overgrazing, construction and mining, etc. While natural forces like wind, glacier and water lead to soil erosion, the running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels as gullies.*

*The land becomes unfit for cultivation and is known as bad land. In the Chambal basin, such lands are called ravines. Sometimes, water flows as sheet over large areas down a slope. In such cases the top soil is washed away. This is known as sheet erosion.*

*Wind blows loose soil off flat or sloping land known as wind erosion. Soil erosion is also caused due to defective methods of farming. Ploughing in a wrong way i.e. up and down the slope from channels for the quick flow of water leading to soil erosion.*

*Ploughing along the contour lines can decelerate the flow of water down the slopes. This is called contour ploughing. Steps can be cut out on the slopes making terraces. Terrace cultivation restricts erosion. Western and Central Himalayas have well developed terrace farming. Large field can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops.*

*This breaks up the force of the wind. This method is known as strip cropping. Planting line of trees to create shelter also works in similar way. Rows of such trees are called shelter belts. These shelter belts have contributed significantly to the stabilisation of sand dunes and in stabilising the desert in Western India.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Are humans responsible for soil erosion? If yes, How?
2. What are the negative consequences of deforestation over soil erosion?
3. State any two positive and negative impacts of soil erosion on biodiversity.

**Ans :**

1. Yes, Humans are responsible for soil erosion. The reasons are
    - (a) Due to cutting down trees the roots of trees that hold the soil together are destroyed.
    - (b) Due to mining processes the soil becomes loose and is easily eroded.
    - (c) Due to construction of dams the soil around that area is eroded
  2. Deforestation means cutting of trees. When trees are cut, the soil becomes loose. When there is heavy rainfall or flood, the soil being loose is washed away and this leads to soil erosion.
  3. Two positive impacts of soil erosion on biodiversity are
    - Natural amounts of soil erosion helped feed water sources with essential nutrients, helping the local aquatic ecosystem.
    - The erosion also helps in cleaning the soil of any useless materials, such as rotting tree matter or nutrient-less dirt from the area.
 Two negative impacts of soil erosion on biodiversity are
    - It has led to increased pollution and sedimentation in streams and rivers, clogging these waterways and causing declines in fish and other species.
    - Degraded lands caused by soil erosion are also often less able to hold onto water, which can worsen flooding.
- 130.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Alluvial soil is the most widely spread and important soil. In fact, the entire Northern plains are made of alluvial soil. These have been deposited by three important Himalayan river systems—the Indus, the Ganga and the Brahmaputra. These soils also extend Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor. Alluvial soil is also found in the Eastern coastal plains particularly in the deltas of the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna and the Kaveri rivers.*

*The alluvial soil consists of various proportions of sand, silt and clay. As we move inlands*

*towards the river valleys, soil particles appear somewhat bigger in size. In the upper reaches of the river valley i.e. near the place of the break of slope, the soils are coarse. Such soils are more common in piedmont plains such as Duars, Chos and Terai. Apart from the size of their grains or components, soils are also described on the basis of their age. According to their age alluvial soils can be classified as old alluvial (Bangar) and new alluvial (Khadar). The Bangar soil has higher concentration of kanker nodules than the Khadar soil. It has more fine particles and is more fertile than the Bangar.*

**Questions :**

1. Why alluvial soil requires least water?
2. What is the reason behind high fertility of alluvial soil?
3. In India, where can one find alluvial soil? Which Indian state has largest deposits of alluvial soil?

**Ans :**

1. Alluvial soil is one of the best soil, requiring the least water due to its high porosity.
2. Alluvial soil is extremely fertile because it is formed by the sediments transported by rivers and is a mixture of sand, clay and silt.  
It has a loamy texture and it is rich in humus. It has good water retention and water absorbing capacity.
3. Alluvial soil is found in the regions of Indo-Gangetic plains, Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal, Assam as well as in the Northern parts of Gujarat. Uttar Pradesh has the highest deposit of alluvial soil in India.

- 131.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

*"At present, there are about 130 million hectares of degraded land in India. Approximately, 28 per cent of it belongs to the category of forest degraded area, 56 per cent of it is water eroded area and the rest is affected by saline and alkaline deposits. Some human activities such as deforestation, over grazing,*

*mining and quarrying too have contributed significantly in land degradation."*

**Questions :**

1. What are different ways to solve the problems of land degradation ?
2. What is the value of soil as a resource ?

**Ans :**

1. There are following ways to solve the problems of land degradation :
  - (a) Afforestation
  - (b) Proper management of grazing.
  - (c) Planting of shelter belts of plants
  - (d) Control on overgrazing
  - (e) Control of mining activities.
2. The soil is of great value as a resource. It is the most important renewable natural resource. It is the medium of plant growth and support different types of living organisms on earth.

- 132.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*The denudation of the soil cover and subsequent washing down is described as soil erosion. The processes of soil formation and erosion, go on simultaneously and generally there is a balance between the two. Sometimes, this balance is disturbed due to human activities like deforestation, over-grazing, construction and mining etc., while natural forces like wind, glacier and water lead to soil erosion. The running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels as gullies. The land becomes unfit for cultivation and is known as bad land. In the Chambal basin such lands are called ravines. Sometimes water flows as a sheet over large areas down a slope. In such cases the top soil is washed away. This is known as sheet erosion. Wind blows loose soil off flat or sloping land known as wind erosion. Soil erosion is also caused due to defective methods of farming. Ploughing in a wrong way i.e. up and down the slope form channels for the quick flow of water leading to soil erosion. Ploughing along the contour lines can decelerate the flow of water down the slopes. This is called contour ploughing. Steps*

*can be cut out on the slopes making terraces. Terrace cultivation restricts erosion. Western and central Himalayas have well developed terrace farming. Large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of the wind. This method is known as strip cropping. Planting lines of trees to create shelter also works in a similar way. Rows of such trees are called shelter belts. These shelter belts have contributed significantly to the stabilisation of sand dunes and in stabilising the desert in western India.*

**Questions :**

1. Which land is known as bad land? In what basin such lands is known as ravines?
2. What do you understand by sheet erosion?
3. How does ploughing leads to the erosion? For what reasons balance between soil erosion and soil formation is disturbed?

**Ans :**

1. The land becomes unfit for cultivation is known as bad land. In Chambal basin such lands is known as ravines.
2. When top soil is washed away by the flows of water then this type of erosion is called sheet erosion.
3. Ploughing in a wrong way i.e. up and down the slope form channels for the quick flow of water leading to soil erosion. Activities of humans like deforestation, over-grazing, construction and mining etc. cause disturbance between soil formation and erosion.

- 133.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Suppose for the present that a particular country is quite developed. We would certainly like this level of development to go up further or at least be maintained for future generations. This is obviously desirable. However, since the second half of the twentieth century a number of scientists have been warning that the present type and levels of development are not sustainable. Groundwater is an example*

*of renewable resources. These resources are replenished by nature as in the case of crops and plants. However, even these resources may be overused. For example, in the case of groundwater, if we use more even what is being replenished by rain then we would be overusing this resource. Non-renewable resources are those which will get exhausted after years of use. We have a fixed stock on earth which cannot be replenished. We do discover new resources that we did not know of earlier. New sources in this way add to the stock. However, over time, even this will get exhausted. Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries; this issue is no longer region or nation specific. Our future is linked together. Sustainability of development is comparatively a new area of knowledge in which scientists, economists, philosophers and other social scientists are working together. In general, the question of development or progress is perennial. At all times as a member of society and as individuals we need to ask where we want to go, what we wish to become and what our goals are. So, the debate on development continues.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Why Scientists are warning that the present type of development is not sustainable?
2. What links our future together?
3. What is our duty as member of the society?

#### **Ans :**

1. Resources are being overused to the extent that it will not sustain for future generations.
2. The fact that impact of overuse of resources will affect every individual on the earth.
3. To assess the sustainability of present model of development and take necessary actions.

#### **DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 6

## FOREST AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES

### SUMMARY

1. Vegetation : The assemblage of plant species living in association with each other in a given environmental framework is known as vegetation.
2. Sacred Groves : Nature worship is an age-old tribal belief based on the premise that all creations of nature have to be protected. Such beliefs have preserved several virgin forests in pristine form called sacred groves.
3. Joint Forest Management : JFM is a programme launched by Orissa government during 1990's for the management and restoration of degraded forests involving local communities.  
Rare Species : Species with small population may move into the endangered or vulnerable category if the negative factors affecting them continue to operate.
4. Biodiversity : The existence of a large number of different kinds of animals and plants which make a balanced environment.
5. Biosphere : It is the narrow belt of living organisms.
6. Ecosystem : The inter-linking and interdependence of all plants and animals in a given area.
7. Poaching : An illegal activity of hunting the animals for their skin or horns for economic benefit. International smugglers are involved in these illegal activities.
8. Extinct Species : Species which are not found after searches of known or likely areas where they may occur.
9. Reserved Forests : Forests permanently earmarked either for production of timber or other forest products.

10. Himalayan Vegetation : Vegetation in the Himalayan region that varies from tropical in the foothills to tundra in higher reaches.
11. Natural Vegetation : The naturally grown trees, plants and shrubs in an area.
12. Normal Species : Whose population levels normal for their survival, such as cattle, sal, pine, rodents. etc.
13. Endangered Species : The species which are in danger of extinction.
14. Vulnerable Species : There are some species whose population has declined to levels from where it is likely to move into the endangered category in the near future if the negative factors continue to operate.
15. Mangrove Forests : These are tidal forests found in the Ganga-Brahmaputra delta called Sundarbans of West Bengal.
16. Biosphere Reserves : The forest areas where all types of flora and fauna are preserved in their natural environment.
17. National Parks : Reserved forests where natural vegetation and wildlife are preserved in their natural environment.
18. Flora : The original natural cover of vegetation consisting of forests, grasslands and shrubs.
19. Fauna : All forms of animals found on earth in their natural habitat.
20. Forest : An extensive area covered with spontaneously grown trees.
21. Wildlife Sanctuary : An area where wild animals and birds are kept in their natural environment.
22. Ecology : The science which deals with inter-relationship between various organisms and physical environment.
23. Protected Forest : Forest land protected from any further depletion.

24. Chipko Movement : The movement started in the Himalayas to resist deforestation in several parts of the country.
25. Beej Bachao Andolan : A movement launched by farmers in Tehri against use of chemical fertilizers in foodgrain production.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which of the following animals of India are critical on the threatened list?
- Mountain quail
  - Pink-headed duck
  - Cheetah
  - All of the above

Ans :

Comp 2023

(d) All of the above

2. An endemic cattle mithun is only found in
- Andaman
  - Arunachal Pradesh
  - Assam
  - Kerala

Ans :

OD 2020

(b) Arunachal Pradesh

3. The diverse flora and fauna of the planet are under great threat mainly due to:
- Global Warming
  - Lack of water availability
  - Insensitivity to our environment
  - Increasing pollution

Ans :

Delhi 2020

(c) Insensitivity to our environment

### DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- ***Word File of Material for Teachers***

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

4. Look at the picture below and identify the extinct species of bird-



- The passenger pigeon.
- The great auk.
- The dodo bird.
- Nicobar megapode.

Ans :

SQP 2020

(d) Nicobar megapode.

5. Arrange the following events in order of their occurrence-
1. Indian Wildlife Protection Act.
  2. Project Tiger Launched.
  3. Odisha passed 1st resolution for JFM.
  4. For the first time plants were added in the list of protected species.

#### Options :

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 2, 1, 4, 3 |
| (c) 2, 1, 3, 2 | (d) 1, 4, 2, 3 |

Ans :

Foreign 2020

(a) 1, 2, 3, 4

6. **Assertion :** Forests play a key role in the ecological system.

**Reason :** Forests are the primary producers on which all other living beings depend.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

Comp 2015

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.



- (b) River pollution and loss of riverine habitat.
- (c) Natural calamities like floods.
- (d) Change in the pattern of food change.

**Ans :** Delhi 2019

- (b) River pollution and loss of riverine habitat.

15. Which is the following National Park is the site dedicated to preservation of one-horned rhinoceros?

- (a) Bandhavgarh National Park
- (b) Buxa Wildlife Reserve
- (c) Kaziranga National Park
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :** Foreign 2015

- (c) Kaziranga National Park

16. **Assertion :** Neglect of our environment has led to the destruction and extinction of many species of animals and plant life.

**Reason :** Decreasing Forest cover area is a major reason of destruction of species.  
 (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** SQP 2009

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

17. Complete the following table with correct information-

Act	Year	Aim	Passed by
Wildlife Protection Act	A - ?	B - ?	Indian Parliament

**Options :**

- (a) A - 1972, B - To protect the remaining endangered species and their habitat.
- (b) A - 1977, B - To protect the remaining endangered species and their habitat

- (c) A - 1972, B - To protect the Tiger
- (d) A - 1977, B - To protect the Tiger

**Ans :** Comp 2019, 2007

- (a) A - 1972, B - To protect the remaining endangered species and their habitat.

18. Which one of the following is an endangered species of Manipur?

- (a) Blue Sheep
- (b) Asiatic Buffalo
- (c) Sangai (brow anter deer)
- (d) Cattle

**Ans :** OD 2005

- (c) Sangai (brow anter deer)

19. Arrange the following options in correct sequence-

1. Vulnerable species.
2. Rare species.
3. Normal species.
4. Endangered species.

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 3, 2, 1, 4 |
| (c) 3, 1, 4, 2 | (d) 1, 4, 2, 3 |

**Ans :** SQP 2009

- (b) 3, 2, 1, 4

20. “The species that are not found after searches of known or likely areas where they may occur” are known as:

- (a) Normal species
- (b) Vulnerable species
- (c) Extinct species
- (d) Rare species

**Ans :** Foreign 2018

- (c) Extinct species

21. **Assertion :** Himalayan Yew is a medicinal plant

**Reason :** It has healing qualities.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**22.** Which one of the following is a medicinal plant used to treat some types of cancer?

- (a) Himalayan Yew
- (b) Himalayan Oak
- (c) Madhuca insignis
- (d) Hubbardia heptaneuron

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (a) Himalayan Yew

**23.** Identify the type of species-

- (a) These species are found in isolated areas.
- (b) Isolation area can be geographical barrier or Natural.
- (c) It is native to where it is found.
- (d) The Tasmanian tiger is one example of these kind of species.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

Endemic species

**24.** Arrange the following states in the decreasing order of total forest cover-

1. Arunachal Pradesh
2. Chhatishgarh
3. Odisha
4. Madhya Pradesh

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 2, 1, 4, 3 |
| (c) 4, 1, 2, 3 | (d) 1, 4, 2, 3 |

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

- (c) 4, 1, 2, 3

**25.** In which year, the Indian Wildlife (Protection) Act was implemented?

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| (a) 1970 | (b) 1971 |
| (c) 1972 | (d) 1974 |

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (a) 1970

**26.** **Assertion :** Large-scale development projects have also contributed significantly to the loss of forests.

**Reason :** Large scale development projects doesn't inundate hectares of forest.

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**27.** Which one of the following was launched in 1973?

- (a) Project Tiger
- (b) Indian Wildlife Act
- (c) Wildlife Act
- (d) Indian Wildlife Protection Act

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (a) Project Tiger

**28.** Look at the picture below and answer the question



Choose the option which signifies best this process causing vanishing of forests-

- (a) Afforestation.
- (b) Reforestation.
- (c) Deforestation.
- (d) Re-establishment of a forest.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (c) Deforestation.

**29.** Which one of the following is located in West Bengal?

- (a) Renewable
- (b) Biotic

- (c) Flow  
 (d) Non-renewable

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007

- (b) Biotic

**30.** **Assertion :** Depletion of forests causes a lot of danger.

**Reason :** Forests are vital for the quality of life and environment.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2011

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**31.** In which one of the following states is Periyar Tiger Reserves located?

- (a) Rajasthan                    (b) Assam  
 (c) Uttaranchal                (d) Kerala

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (d) Kerala

**32.** Read the following data given in the table and answer the question-

	No. of Ghariyals in India	Year
1.	5000	1970
2.	Only 70	2011

In which category Ghariyal may be included according to IUCN red list?

- (a) Normal species  
 (b) Extinct species.  
 (c) Endangered species.  
 (d) Vulnerable species.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015, 2011

- (c) Endangered species.

**33.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence of the classification of the forest

- (i) Unclassed Forests  
 (ii) Protected Forests

- (iii) Reserved Forests  
 (iv) Normal Forest

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 2, 1, 4                    (b) 2, 1, 4, 3  
 (c) 2, 1, 3, 2                (d) 3, 4, 1, 2

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (a) 3, 2, 1, 4

**34.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Fauna  
 (b) Flora  
 (c) Forest  
 (d) Vulnerable Species

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (b) Flora

**35.** Which one of the following states has the largest area under permanent forest?

- (a) Uttar Pradesh  
 (b) Jammu & Kashmir  
 (c) Punjab  
 (d) Madhya Pradesh

**Ans :**

Comp 2021, 2018

- (d) Madhya Pradesh

**36.** **Assertion :** Destruction of forests and wildlife resulted into the loss of cultural diversity.

**Reason :** The conservation of forests and wildlife is essential to provide a better quality of life.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** OD 2011

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

37. Which one of the following is a great achievement of the Chipko Movement?

- (a) Punjab  
 (b) Plains of Uttar Pradesh  
 (c) Haryana  
 (d) Uttarakhand

**Ans :** Delhi 2019  
 (c) Haryana

38. Identify the below mentioned extinct species-

1. World's fastest land animal.
2. Can move at the speed of 112 km/hr.
3. Declared extinct in 1952 India.
4. Prior to 20th century was in abundance in Africa and Asia.

**Option :**

- (a) Blackbuck  
 (b) Asiatic cheetah  
 (c) Red panda  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :** SQP 2012  
 (b) Asiatic cheetah

39. Arrange the following in the correct sequence of the different categories of existing plants and animal species according to the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN):

- (i) Rare Species
- (ii) Vulnerable Species
- (iii) Endangered Species
- (iv) Normal Species

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 4, 2, 3, 1 | (b) 2, 1, 4, 3 |
| (c) 2, 1, 3, 2 | (d) 4, 3, 2, 1 |

**Ans :** Foreign 2009  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

40. **Assertion :** We need to conserve our forests and wildlife.

**Reason :** Rapid decline in wildlife population and forestry has been observed.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** Comp 2010

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

41. Complete the following table with the correct information-

	National Park	Situated at
1.	Corbett National Park	A - ?
2.	Bhandhavgarh National Park	Madhya Pradesh
3.	B - ?	West Bengal

**Option :**

- (a) A - Bihar, B - Sariska National Park.  
 (b) A - Uttarakhand, B - Sundarbans National Park.  
 (c) A - Bihar, B - Sundarbans National Park.  
 (d) A - Uttarakhand, B - Sariska National Park.

**Ans :** Delhi 2012

- (b) A - Uttarakhand, B - Sundarbans National Park.

42. **Assertion :** Tiger population is not on the verge of extinction.

**Reason :** Tiger population in forests is increasing rapidly day by day.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

- needs for food, drink, medicine, culture, spirituality, etc.
2. The main goal of the Wildlife Protection Act is to safeguard the remaining individuals of endangered species by prohibiting hunting, protecting their habitats through the legal system, and limiting the trade in wild animals.
  3. (a) In Sariska Tiger Reserve, Rajasthan, villagers have fought against mining by citing the Wildlife Protection Act.  
 (b) The inhabitants of five villages in the Alwar district of Rajasthan have declared 1,200 hectares of forest as the Bhairodev Dakav ‘Sonchuri’ to protect the wildlife against any outside encroachments.

*Habitat destruction, hunting, poaching, over-exploitation, environmental pollution, poisoning and forest fires are factors, which have led to the decline in India’s biodiversity. Other important causes of environmental destruction are unequal access, inequitable consumption of resources and differential sharing of responsibility for environmental well-being. Over-population in third world countries is often cited as the cause of environmental degradation.”*

#### Questions:

1. How has destruction of forests and wildlife affected the indigenous and other forest dependent communities?
2. Why the conservation of forests and wildlife is valuable for human beings ?

Ans :

1. The destruction of forests and wildlife has affected the indigenous and other forest dependent communities because they depend on various components of the forest and wildlife for food, drink, medicine, culture and spirituality. Women are also affected badly. They have to walk for more than 10 km to collect fuel, fodder and water for subsistence. Poverty is also a direct outcome of environmental destruction.

2. The conservation of forests and wildlife is valuable for human beings because they preserve the ecological diversity and our support systems — water, air and soil. It also preserves the genetic diversity of plants and animals for better growth of species and breeding.

103. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Reserved and protected forests are also referred to as permanent forest estates maintained for the purpose of producing timber and other forest produce, and for protective reasons. Madhya Pradesh has the largest area under permanent forests, constituting 75 percent of its total forest area. Jammu and Kashmir, Andhra Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal, and Maharashtra have large percentages of reserved forests of its total forest area whereas Bihar, Haryana, Punjab, Himachal Pradesh, Odisha and Rajasthan have a bulk of it under protected forests.*

*Some estimates suggest that at least 10 percent of India’s recorded wild flora and 20 percent of its mammals are on the threatened list. Many of these would now be categorised as ‘critical’, that is on the verge of extinction like the cheetah, pink-headed duck, mountain quail, forest spotted owllet, and plants like madhuca insignis (a wild variety of mahua) and hubbardia heptaneuron, (a species of grass). In fact, no one can say how many species may have already been lost.*

*The world’s fastest land mammal, the cheetah (*Acinonyx jubatus*), is a unique and specialised member of the cat family and can move at the speed of 112 km./hr. The cheetah is often mistaken for a leopard. Its distinguishing marks are the long teardrop shaped lines on each side of the nose from the corner of its eyes to its mouth. Prior to the 20th century, cheetahs were widely distributed throughout Africa and Asia. Today, the Asian cheetah is nearly extinct due to a decline of available habitat and prey. The species was declared extinct in India long back in 1952.*

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (1) Protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting.
- (2) Give legal protection to the habitats of various species.
- (3) To restrict trade in wildlife.

**50.** What is a biosphere reserve ? Where and when was the first biosphere reserve of India developed ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (1) Biosphere reserve is a large area of land which is used to protect the natural vegetation and the species of wildlife.
- (2) The first biosphere reserve was set-up in 1986. It is called the Nilgiri Biosphere Reserve. It covers 5500 sq. kms. of area which is spread over three states, i.e. Kerala, Karnataka and Tamil Nadu.

**51.** Why is it necessary to increase the area under forest in India ?

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (1) It is because so far forest area in India is below the recommended ratio of 33% to total geographical area of a country. It is presently 22.47% in India.
- (2) Forests play a major role in enhancing the quality of environment. They modify local climate, control soil erosion and regulate stream flow. They also offer panoramic or scenic view for recreation.
- (3) A number of animal and plant species are so far endangered and extinct. These are to be protected to maintain ecological balance.

**52.** How are human beings dependent on the ecological system ? Discuss.

or

Humans are dependent on the ecological system for their existence. Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006, 2005

- (1) As a part of the ecological system human beings are dependent on it for their existence.

(2) (i) For example, we breathe in air, we drink water, we grow crops in soil, etc. These are the non-living components of the ecological system.

(ii) On the other hand, plants, animals and other micro organisms recreate the quality of these non-living components.

**53.** In- what ways the forests were harmed by the colonial government ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (1) For expansion of railways.
- (2) For expansion of agricultural field.
- (3) For expansion of commercial and scientific forestry.
- (4) For expansion of mining activities.

**54.** Discuss how the large scale development projects have been responsible for the loss of forests.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (1) The development projects have been run in the forest covered areas, which largely damaged the forests.
- (2) Since 1951, over 5000 sq. km of forests were cleared for river valley projects.
- (3) The clearing of forests is still continue. It is estimated that about 40,000 hectares of forest will be cleared for the completion of Narmada Sagar Project in Madhya Pradesh.

**55.** Give three reasons why we need to save the biodiversity of our planet.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (1) Humans along with all living organisms form a complex web of ecological system.
- (2) We are only a part and very much dependent on this system for our own existence, e.g., the plants, animals and micro-organisms re-create the quality of the air we breathe, the water we drink and the soil that produces our food without which we cannot survive.
- (3) Forests play a key role in the ecological system as there are also the primary

- Ans :** SQP 2006  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

- 43.** Suggest any two measures for the conservation of forest.

- Ans :** OD 2024

Following are the two measures for conservation of forest :

- (1) Afforestation – More trees should be planted to increase the forest cover. Trees should be selected according to the geographical conditions of a particular region and proper care should be taken during the growth of trees.
- (2) Community and conservation – Chipko Movement has been one of the successful model of conservation by community.

- 44.** Suggest any two measures for the conservation of wildlife.

- Ans :** OD 2024

Following are the two measures for conservation of wildlife -

- (1) Continuously developing and maintaining areas such as National Parks, wildlife sanctuaries etc.
- (2) Prevent deforestation and encroachment into protected areas.

- 45.** What is a biome ? How they are classified ? Write in short.

or

What is a biome ? State the number of biomes into which the land ecosystem is divided and also the basis for the grouping.

- Ans :** Foreign 2012

A very large ecosystem on land having distinct types of vegetation and animal life is called a biome.

They are classified as per availability of soil, water and heat are—forests, savana, grasslands, desert and tundra. Within a

biome, much variation may be found in the assemblage of plant and animal species.

- 46.** What are endangered species ?

- Ans :** Comp 2021

These are species of plants and animals which are in danger of extinction. The survival of such species is difficult if the negative factors that have led to a decline in their population continue to operate. Black buck, crocodile, Indian wild ass, Indian rhino, Lion tailed macaque, etc., are examples of endangered species.

- 47.** Explain any two famous movements for the protection of forests.

- Ans :** OD 2014, 2017

The famous Chipko Movement in the Himalayas has not only successfully resisted deforestation in several areas but has also shown that community afforestation with indigenous species can be made enormously successful. Attempts to revive the traditional conservation methods or developing new methods of ecological farming are now widespread. Farmers and citizens' groups like the Beej Bachao Andolan in Tehri and Navdanya have shown that adequate levels of diversified crop production without the use of synthetic chemicals are possible and economically viable.

- 48.** Explain two factors that cause depletion of the flora and fauna.

- Ans :** Delhi 2019

(1) Large scale development projects : Cleaning of forests for river valley projects have contributed significantly to the loss of forest.

(2) Mining : Mining is another important factor behind deforestation. Such activities need big machines, labour, roads, railways, etc. All these lead to deforestation.

- 49.** Which was the thrust area of the Indian Wildlife Protection Act ?

- activities, mostly on degraded forest land managed by the forest department.
- (3) In return, the members of these village communities are entitled to intermediary benefits like non-timber forest produces and share in the timber harvested by 'successful protection'.
62. Explain any two famous movements for the protection of forests.
- Ans : OD 2010
- (1) The Chipko Movement in the Himalayas has successfully resisted deforestation in several areas. It has also shown that community afforestation with indigenous species can be enormously successful.
  - (2) The Beej Bachao Andolan in Tehri and Navdanya have shown that adequate levels of diversified crop production without the use of synthetic chemicals are possible and economically viable.
63. Which values of biodiversity are important for human lives ?
- Ans : Delhi 2017
- (1) It is living wealth of human beings. It has ecological, economic and scientific importance.
  - (2) Species of many kinds develop human life support system.
  - (3) It is an integral part of human culture.
  - (4) It forms a complex web of ecological system in which we are only a part. We are much dependent on this system.
64. For what values communities have taken measures for the conservation of forests in India?
- Ans : SQP 2006, 2013
- Communities have taken measures for the conservation of forests in India due to following values :
- (1) To secure their livelihood.
  - (2) Communities are well aware about the local region hence more capable for protecting forests and habitats.
- (3) In Sariska tiger reserve, Rajasthan villagers have sought against mining by citing against Wildlife Protection Act.
65. What measures would you suggest to conserve eco-system ?
- Ans : Foreign 2016
- We would like to suggest following measures to conserve our eco-system :
- (1) Avoid indiscriminating cutting of trees.
  - (2) By controlling on environmental pollution.
  - (3) By reducing use of chemical fertilizers, pesticides and germicides.
  - (4) By creating public awareness about sustainable development.
66. Distinguish between deforestation and afforestation.
- Ans : Comp 2013
- | Deforestation  | Afforestation                                     |
|--|---|
| It is practised in areas where forests have been destroyed.            | The new trees are planted in the new areas.       |
| Two saplings are planted to replace every felled tree.                 | One sapling is planted to get one tree.           |
| It is practised to avoid the evils of Jhuming or shifting agriculture. | It is practised to bring more area under forests. |
67. How are forests classified by the forest department in India ?
- Ans : OD 2012
- (1) Reserved forests : These forests are permanently earmarked either for production or other forest produce. More than 50% of the total forest land has been declared reserved forests.
  - (2) Protected forests : These forests are protected from any further depletion. Almost one-third of the total forest land is protected forest.
  - (3) Unclassified forests : These are other forests and wastelands belonging to both

producers on which all other living beings depend.

- 56.** Explain any three reasons why forest resources are depleting after independence in India.

**Ans :** OD 2013

- (1) Agricultural expansion continues to be one of the major causes of depletion of forest resources. Substantial parts of tribal belts, especially in the north-eastern and central India, have been deforested by shifting cultivation.
- (2) Large-scale development projects have also contributed significantly to the loss of forests. Since 1951, over 5,000 sq km of forest was cleared for river valley projects.
- (3) Mining is also an important factor behind deforestation. The Buxa Tiger Reserve in West Bengal is seriously threatened by the ongoing dolomite mining. It has disturbed the natural habitat of many species.

- 57.** Explain any three factors responsible for the decline of India's biodiversity.

**Ans :** Delhi 2009

- (1) Obtaining wood, barks, leaves, rubber, medicines, dyes, food, fuel, fodder, etc. directly or indirectly from the forests.
- (2) Expansion of railways, commercial and scientific mining activities. It disturbs the natural habitat of many species.
- (3) Large scale development projects — highways, dams, housing colonies, etc. Clearing of forests is still continuing with projects like the Narmada Sagar Project in Madhya Pradesh which would inundate 40,000 hectares of forest.
- (4) Shifting cultivation.

- 58.** What initiatives have been taken by the government of India in the recently introduced conservation projects ?

**Ans :** Delhi 2007

- (1) The conservation projects are now focussing on biodiversity rather than on few of its components.

- (2) There is now a more intense search for different conservation measures.

- (3) Even insects are beginning to have a place in conservation planning. In 1991, for the first time, six species of plants were also added to the list of protected species.

- 59.** How many types of forest are classified in India ? Explain it.

or

Explain the three different categories of forests classified by the forest department.

**Ans :** SQP 2015

- (1) Reserved Forests : They are regarded as most valuable as far as the conservation of forest and wildlife resources are concerned.
- (2) Protected Forests : Almost one-third of total forest area is protected forest. This forest land is protected from any further depletion.
- (3) Unclassified Forests : These are other forests and wastelands belonging to both government and private individuals and communities.

- 60.** Write a short note on sacred groves.

**Ans :** Foreign 2009

- (1) The nature worship has been an age old belief of the tribal communities. This belief finds its basis in the fact that the nature in its every form should be protected.
- (2) Virgin forests in original form are called sacred groves. These are the forests of gods and goddesses.
- (3) These patches of forests have been left untouched by the local people and any interference with them is banned.

- 61.** Write a short note on Joint Forest Management (JFM) programme in India.

**Ans :** Comp 2012

- (1) This programme involves local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests.
- (2) JFM depends on the formation of local institutions that undertake protection

reptiles, mammals, protozoa, insects and even worms.

- (3) When each individual is convinced of existence of these resources and their importance for human life; he can form organisation, voluntary groups and thus, judicious use of these resources is—all possible. It is high time to understand the significance of these resources and protect them from extinction.
74. How have human activities affected the depletion of flora and fauna ? Explain any three reasons.

or

Which three human activities are responsible for the depletion of flora and fauna? Explain.

Ans :

Foreign 2008

- (1) Over population : Population is increasing day by day. For the fulfilment of their demands, we are exploiting forests directly or indirectly.
- (2) Colonial demand : In the colonial times, the greatest damage inflicted on Indian forests was during the colonial period due to the expansion of the railway, agriculture, commercial and scientific forestry and mining activities.
- (3) After independence, agricultural expansion continues to be one of the major causes of depletion of forest resources.
- (4) Shifting cultivation is also one of the major causes of depletion of forests.

75. Distinguish between endangered and extinct species.

Ans :

Comp 2015

	<b>Endangered species</b>	<b>Extinct species</b>
(1)	These are species which are in danger of extinction.	These are species which are not found after searches in known or likely areas where they may occur.

(2)	The survival of such species is difficult if the negative factors that have led to a decline in their population continue to operate.	They are already missing and their survival is suspicious.
(3)	Examples : Blackbuck, wild ass, Indian rhino, crocodile, lion-tailed macaque, etc.	Examples : Asiatic cheetah, pink-headed duck, etc.

76. Differentiate Zoo and National Park.

Ans :

OD 2011

	<b>Zoo</b>	<b>National Park</b>
(1)	Meaning : Zoo is a man-made area where wild birds and animals are kept behind the cages.	Meaning : In National Park, birds and animals live in their natural habitat, natural setting and environment, in a larger area than the zoo.
(2)	Freedom of Movement : The wild animals in it have no freedom.	Freedom of movement : All animals and birds are free to move around.
(3)	Diet and water etc : Food and water as well as medical treatment for animals and birds is managed by man.	Diet and water etc. : Animals and birds manage their own food and water. Generally no body cares for their medical treatment on regular or casual basis.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

government and private individuals and communities.

- 68.** What has been the contribution of the Indian wildlife protection act for protecting habitats?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

Under wildlife protection act :

- (1) National parks and biospheres has been set up in different parts of the country.
- (2) Hunting has been legally banned.
- (3) Legal protection has been given to the habitat of endangered species.

- 69.** What is a National Park ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, 2015

A National Park is relatively a large area where several ecosystems exist freely and are not disturbed materially by human exploitation and occupation and where plant and animal species, aesthetic sites and habitats are of special scientific, educational and recreational interest.

All areas of a national park are provided the highest degree of protection with virtually no human activity barring passage, management work and very restricted tourism.

- 70.** Write any three factors which are responsible for large scale deforestation in India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

Factors responsible for large scale deforestation in India are :

- (1) Large scale expansion of mining activities.
- (2) Clearing of forest for settled agriculture.
- (3) Growing urbanisation and industrialisation also responsible for forests depletion.
- (4) During colonial period, large scale forests were cleared for laying railway tracks.
- (5) Forests are also clear to feed ship building industries and fulfil war time needs.

- 71.** Explain three reasons why we need to save the biodiversity of our planet ?

**Ans :**

OD 2012

We need to conserve or save the biodiversity of our planet on account of given below reasons :

- (1) Human and all living organisms form a complex web of ecological system.
- (2) For their survival human beings depend upon this system i.e., ecological system.
- (3) Plants, animals and micro organisms re-create the quality of air, water and soil.
- (4) Natural vegetation plays a vital role in maintaining ecological balance of the environment.

- 72.** How have human activities affected the depletion of flora and fauna ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

Some of the given below human activities affected the depletion of flora and fauna in following ways :

- (1) Overgrazing is mainly responsible for depletion of flora and fauna.
- (2) Human being's collection of wood for fuel and other forms products from forests is a major cause of the depletion of flora and fauna.
- (3) Illegal hunting and trade of forest products is also responsible for depletion of flora and fauna.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 73.** Discuss community and conservation of wildlife.

**Ans :**

OD 2017

Community and conservation of wildlife :

- (1) It is the community that can save our forest and wildlife resources in more efficient way than the plans and programmes, conducted by government or institutional schemes.
- (2) It demands inculcating a sense within each individual to understand these resources as supplement to his existence on the earth. Both of these resources broadly are in the form of numerous varieties/species of plants, undergrowth, herbs, creepers and trees including flowering plants and birds of several thousand species, the

(2)	More than half of the total forest land has been declared reserved forests.	Almost one-third of the total forest area is declared protected forest.
(3)	These forests are majorly found in Jammu and Kashmir, Andhra Pradesh, Uttaranchal, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal and Maharashtra.	These forests are majorly found in Bihar, Haryana, Punjab, Himachal Pradesh, Rajasthan and Orissa.

81. What is a wildlife sanctuary ? How is it different from a national park ?

Ans :

OD 2018

A wildlife sanctuary is like a national park but it is, different from the national park due to several points of view.

It is different from a national park in fallowing ways :

- (1) In a wildlife sanctuary certain types of activities might be permitted. Livestock grazing and collection of forest produce for instance, may be allowed.
- (2) In a national park, conservation of species are mostly left to nature, with the least human activity, but in a sanctuary conservation of species are affected by manipulative management.
- (3) A wildlife sanctuary enjoys a less degree of protection than a national park.

82. What is biodiversity ? Why is it important for human life ?

or

Explain the importance of biodiversity for human beings.

Ans :

Delhi 2007

Biodiversity is immensely rich in wildlife and cultivated species, diverse in form and function, but closely integrated in a system through multiple network of interdependencies.

(1) Human beings share this planet with millions of other living beings. We humans, with all other living organisms, form a complex web of ecological system in which we are only a part and very much dependent on this system for our existence.

- (2) For example, the plants, animals and micro organisms recreate the quality of air we breathe, the water we drink and the soil that produces our food.
- (3) Forests play a key role in the ecological system.

83. Explain any three methods of forest conservation adopted by the government after independence.

or

Write any three effective practices towards conserving forests and wildlife.

Ans :

SQP 2014

- (1) National wildlife protection programmes : The Indian Wildlife Act was implemented in 1972 with various provisions for protecting habitats.
- (2) Ban hunting : Protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting.
- (3) Biosphere Reserves : The government has set up National Parks and Wildlife Sanctuaries to preserve the genetic diversity.
- (4) Projects : Several projects have been launched for protecting specific animals like Project Tiger, Project Rhino etc.

84. Why is conservation of forests and wildlife necessary? In what way has conservation projects changed in the recent years ?

Ans :

Foreign 2017

- (1) Conservation preserves the ecological diversity and our life support systems--water, air and soil.
- (2) It also preserves the genetic diversity of plants and animals for better growth of species and breeding.
- (3) The conservation projects are now focussing on biodiversity rather than on a few of its components. Even insects are

Reserve in West Bengal. This ongoing mining has disturbed the natural habitat and blocked the migration route of great Indian elephant.

- (3) Large-scale development projects : Since 1951, over 5,000 sq.km of forest was cleared for river valley projects. Narmada Sagar Projects in Madhya Pradesh has inundated 40,000 hectare of forest.
  - (4) Rapidly expanding industrial-urban economy : Increasing consumption of forest based product such as rubber, medicines, dyes, fuel wood has increased the depletion of forest resources.
  - (5) Over population : In the third world countries it is often cited as the cause of environmental degradations. However an average American Consumed 40 times more resources than an average Somalian. Similarly 5 per cent richest Indians cause more ecological damage than poorest 25 per cent.
- 98.** What is biodiversity ? Why is biodiversity important for human lives? Give three points.

Ans :

SQP 2011

Biodiversity denotes variety of living beings, including all types of organisms, plants and wildlife, diverse in form and functions but closely integrated in a system through multiple network of interdependencies.

Its importance : We humans along with all living organisms form a complex web of ecological systems in which we are only a part and are dependent on this system for our own existence. For example, the plants, animals and micro-organisms recreate (i) the quality of the air we breathe, (ii) the water we drink and (iii) the soil that produces our food without which we cannot survive. Forests play a key role in the ecological system as these are also the primary producers on which all other living beings depend not only for food but indirectly for many other forest products which are used for varied purposes. So this biodiversity maintains an ecological balance and our life support systems (air, water and soil).

99. Why is the tiger population dwindling in India ? What measures have so far been taken to control it ? Why is it necessary to conserve the tiger population?

Ans :

Foreign 2010

- (1) The tiger population dwindling in India because they are killed and some greedy traders take it for commercial purposes. They earn a lot of money.
- (2) The habitats of tigers are shrinking day-by-day. We are fail to provide them natural environment for their survival.
- (3) Depletion of prey base species for tiger is very important factor responsible for dwindling tigers population.
- (4) Growing human population is also responsible for encroachment of natural habitats of tiger etc.
- (5) The trade of skins and the use of their bones in traditional medicine, specially in the Asian countries left the tiger population on the verge of extinction.

Following measures have been to control the decreasing population of tigers :

In 1973 'Project Tiger' was launched on the entire world. Initially this project got success by increasing tiger population in the world. There are 27 tiger reserves in India covering an area of 37,761 sq. km. Tiger conservation has been viewed not only as an effort to save an endangered species, but with equal importance as a means of preserving biotypes of sizeable magnitude. Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand , Sunderbans National Park in West Bengal, Bandhvagarh National Park in Madhya Pradesh, Sariska Wildlife Sanctuary in Rajasthan, Manas Tiger Reserve in Assam and Periyar Tiger 'Reserve in Kerala are some of the tiger reserves of India.

It is necessary conserve the tiger population because tiger is considered very useful as a part and parcell of wildlife. Tiger is National Animal of India. Their skins and bones can be used in preparation of traditional medicines throughout the world. If we will not protect tiger one day may came in the life of future generation that their children will see only tiger in the films or photographs.

creation of nature have to be protected. Such beliefs have preserved several virgin forests in pristine form called sacred groves (the forests of Gods and Goddesses). These patches of forest or parts of large forests have been left untouched by the local people and any interference with them is banned.

For example : The Mundas and the Santhals of Chhotanagpur region worship Mahua and Kadamba trees and the tribals of Orissa and Bihar worship the Tamarind and mango trees during weddings.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

90. What has been the contribution of the Indian Wildlife Protection Act in protecting habitats in India ? Explain.

or

Explain any three measures taken by the Indian Government to protect wild life.

Ans :

Delhi 2018

- (1) The Indian Wildlife (Protection) Act was implemented in 1972, with various provisions for protecting habitats.
- (2) The thrust of the programme was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting, giving legal protection to their habitats and restricting trade in wildlife.
- (3) Government established National Parks and Wildlife Sanctuaries.
- (4) The central government announced several projects for protecting specific animals which were gravely threatened.
- (5) Most recently, the Indian elephant, blackbuck, the great Indian bustard and the snow leopard, etc. have been given full or partial legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India.

91. Differentiate flora and fauna.

or

Write any four differences between flora and fauna.

Ans :

SQP 2016

	<b>Flora</b>	<b>Fauna</b>
1.	Meaning : Naturally grown vegetation of a region or an area is termed as flora. Plant kingdom in its entirety.	All kinds of organisms ranging from tiny bacteria to the giant elephant constitute fauna. Animal kingdom in its entirety.
2.	Number : Nearly 4,500 species of flora are found in India.	India has nearly 7,500 species of animals. Besides these, there are about 1,200 species of birds and 2,500 species of fish in our country.
3.	Area of expansion : Flora consists of grass, plants, creepers and trees. At present forests, bushes, shrubs and grassland make the flora cover on the globe.	Fauna includes all types of mammals, reptiles, amphibians and birds.
4.	Position in India : All types of natural vegetation from tropical rain forests to alpine vegetation are found in India in the form of flora.	All species of fauna from bacteria to giant elephants are found in India.

92. Write six measures to conserve ecosystem.

or

Write any three measures to conserve ecosystem ?

Ans :

Delhi 2012, 2009

Eco-system can be conserved by :

- (1) Avoiding indiscriminate cutting of trees.
- (2) Population control.
- (3) To create public awareness about sustainable development through media,

- 77.** Write any three points to distinguish between reafforestation and afforestation.

Ans :

Delhi 2005, 2007

	<b>Reafforestation</b>	<b>Afforestation</b>
(1)	Meaning : It is practised in regions (or areas) from where forests have been cleared.	Meaning : New plants are planted in new regions.
(2)	Plantation : Two saplings are planted to replace every tree out.	Plantation : One sapling is planted to get one tree.
(3)	Objective: It is practised to avoid the ill-effects of thinning.	Objective: It is practised to bring more land under forests.

- 78.** Distinguish between endangered and vulnerable species.

Ans :

SQP 2017

	<b>Endangered species</b>	<b>Vulnerable species</b>
(1)	These are species which are in danger of extinction.	These are the species whose population has declined to the levels from where it is likely to move into the endangered category.
(2)	The survival of such species is difficult if the negative factors that have led to a decline in their population continue to operate.	They presently survive, but their survival is in danger and population is continuously decreasing.

(3)	Examples : Blackbuck, wild ass, Indian rhino, crocodile, lion-tailed macaque, etc.	Examples : Blue sheep, Asiatic elephant, Gangetic dolphin, etc.
-----	--	---

- 79.** Distinguish between endemic and extinct species.

Ans :

Foreign 2011

	<b>Endemic species</b>	<b>Extinct species</b>
(1)	These are species which are found in some particular areas, usually isolated by natural or geographical barriers.	These are species which are not found after searches of known or likely areas where they may occur.
(2)	They survive and are not in danger but their survival is limited to specific areas.	They are already missing and their survival is suspicious.
(3)	Examples : Andaman teal, Nicobar pigeon, Andaman wild pig, etc.	Examples : Asiatic cheetah, pink-headed duck, etc.

- 80.** Distinguish between reserved and protected forests.

Ans :

Comp 2009

	<b>Reserved forests</b>	<b>Protected forests</b>
(1)	The reserved forests are regarded as the most valuable as far as the conservation of 'forest and wildlife resources' are concerned.	These forest lands are protected from any further depletion.

In the above circumstances, it has become needful to conserve and protect the forest vegetation and wildlife resources.

- 95.** How many types of forest are classified in India ? Explain it.

**Ans :**

Comp 2007

Types of Forests :

- (1) Reserved Forests : These fall in the first row of conservation plans implemented by the government. Public is not allowed entering in these forests. Area under this category is just half of the total area under forest.
- (2) Protected Forests : Almost one-third of the total forest area is declared in this category by the forest department. These forest lands are protected from any further depletion.
- (3) Un-classed Forests : These are other forests and wastelands belonging to both government and private individuals and communities.

Distribution : Reserved and protected forests are also referred to as the permanent forest estates maintained for the purpose of producing timber and other forest produce and for protective reasons. Madhya Pradesh has the largest area under permanent forests, constituting 75 per cent of its total forest area. Jammu and Kashmir, Andhra Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal and Maharashtra have large percentages of reserved forests of its total forest area whereas Bihar, Haryana, Punjab, Himachal Pradesh, Orissa and Rajasthan have a bulk of it under protected forests.

All north-eastern states and parts of Gujarat have a very high percentage of their forests as un-classed forests managed by the local communities.

- 96.** Discuss joint forest management and participation of local community for protection of forests.

**Ans :**

OD 2012, 2008

- (1) Joint Forest Management : In India joint forest management (JFM) programme

furnishes a good example for involvement of local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests.

- (2) Period of the Programme : The programme has been in formal existence since 1988 when the state of Orissa passed the first resolution for joint forest management.
- (3) Role of Local Community : JFM depends on the formation of local (village) institutions that undertake protection activities mostly on degraded forest land managed by forest department. In return, the members of these communities are entitled to intermediary benefits like non-timber forest produces and share in the timber harvested by 'successful protection'.
- (4) Natural Resources Management : The clear lesson from the dynamics of both environmental destruction and reconstruction in India is that local communities everywhere —have to be involved in any kind of natural resource management. But there is still a long way to go before local communities are at the centre-stage in decision-making. Only people centric, environment-friendly and economically rewarding activities can find the cure for this problem of environmental degradation.

- 97.** Explain any five reasons responsible for depletion of flora and fauna in India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

There are five major reasons which are responsible for depletion of flora and fauna in India :

- (1) Agricultural expansion : After Independence agricultural expansion becomes the major causes of depletion of forest resources. Between 1951 and 1980, according to the Forest Survey of India over 26,200 sq. km of forest area was converted into agricultural Land all over the India.
- (2) Mining : It is another major factor behind deforestation. e.g., dolomite mining has seriously threatened the Buxa Tiger

beginning to find a place in conservation planning. Several hundred butterflies, moths, beetles, and one dragonfly have been added to the list of protected species. In 1991 for the first time plants were also added to the list of protected species.

**85.** Write a brief note on 'Project Tiger'.

or

What is 'Project Tiger'? Evaluate its success.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

Tiger is one of the key wildlife species in the faunal web. In 1973, the authorities felt that the tiger population had dwindled to 1827 from an estimated 55,000 at the turn of the century. Major threats to tigers are poaching for trade, shrinking habitat, depletion of prey base species, growing human population, etc.

'Project Tiger', one of the well publicised wildlife campaigns in the world, was launched in 1973. In 1993 the population of tiger had dropped to 3600. There are 27 tiger reserves in India. Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand, Sunderbans National Park in Madhya Pradesh, are some of the tiger reserves in India.

**86.** Explain any three adverse effects of the destruction of forests and wildlife?

**Ans :**

OD 2010, 2012

- (1) The biological loss is strongly correlated with the loss of cultural diversity.
- (2) It has marginalised and impoverished many indigenous and other forest-dependent communities.
- (3) The drudgery of women increases. This causes serious health problems for women and negligence of home and children.
- (4) Impact of drought and deforestation induced floods.

**87.** With the help of three examples show how communities have carried out conservation of flora and fauna in India.

or

How are the cultural values helpful in the conservation of nature and its creations? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (1) In Sariska Tiger Reserve, villagers have fought against mining.
- (2) In Alwar, Rajasthan, 1200 hectares of forest is declared as Bhairodev Dakav 'Sonchuri' by villagers with their own set of rules and --atataliAan-s-that do not allow hunting and are protecting the wildlife against any outSifiencroactittients.
- (3) Chipko movement in Himalayas has not only successfully resisted deforestation in several areas but has also shown that community afforestation with indigenous species can be enormously successful.
- (4) Beej Bachao Andolan in Tehri and Navdanya show crop production without the use of synthetic chemicals are possible and economically viable.

**88.** 'Conservation of Biodiversity'-What are the different projects undertaken? Discuss their objectives and their functioning.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

The following projects for conservation of biodiversity have been undertaken during the period from 1960-1970 and afterwards :

- (1) An All India list of protected species was published.
- (2) Hunting was banned to protect the endangered species of wildlife. Legal protection was given to wildlife habitats and trade in wildlife was restricted.
- (3) Several National Parks and wildlife sanctuaries were established by central and state governments.
- (4) Most recently the Indian elephant, black buck, the great Indian bustard and snow leopard etc., have been given for legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India.

**89.** Prove with examples how sacred groves help in conservation of forests.

**Ans :**

OD 2011

The Indian people are religious minded. Some communities worship some plants or sacred groves. Nature worship is an age old tribal belief based on the premise that all

- 100.** Write a brief essay on any practices which you may have observe and practised in your daily life to conserve and protect environment around you.

**Ans :**

Comp 2014, 2011

I am a responsible citizen of my country. It is my duty to protect and conserve environment around us. I have taken following practices to conserve and protect the environment :

- (1) I have planted flowering plants in garden near our house. These plants will have beautiful flowers of different colours and given an useful fragrance.
- (2) I have planted certain types of trees alongwith some members of my family, friends and local leaders of our colony in park of our locality. Mainly we have planted mango tree, banana tree, guava tree, pomegranate tree.
- (3) We have done a lot of efforts to maintain the park of our colony. We have put in notice board through RWA (Residential Welfare Association} that no body will pluck flowers or cut trees or uproot plants of the park. We have participated in planting trees, grass and flowering plants. I have also adopted two trees to water regularly or casually per their need.

I have also motivated some of my friends to participate in protecting and conserving greenery of our colonies.

- 101.** Explain the main characteristics of Chipko Movement.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

The famous Chipko Movement launched by the women of Chamoli district in Uttarakhand. They save more than 12,000 sq. km. area of forests just by hugging the trees when the lumberjacks attempted to cut them.

The Chipko Movement was a movement which was launched in Himalayas against deforestation. Its objects was to protect trees and plants to protect biodiversity. This famous Chipko Movement got great success. It draw the attention of people as well as government to protect forests, to

maintain ecological balance and environment protection.

The famous Chipko Movement in the Himalayas has out only successfully resisted deforestation in several areas but has also shown that community afforestation with indigenous species can be enormously successful. Attempts to revive the traditional conservation methods or developing new methods of ecological farming are now widespread.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 102.** Read the given source and answer the questions that follow:

*Conservation strategies are not new in our country. We often ignore that in India, forests are also home to some of the traditional communities. In some areas of India, local communities are struggling to conserve these habitats along with government officials, recognising that only this will secure their own long-term livelihood. In Sariska Tiger Reserve, Rajasthan, villagers have fought against mining by citing the Wildlife Protection Act. In many areas, villagers themselves are protecting habitats and explicitly rejecting government involvement. The inhabitants of five villages in the Alwar district of Rajasthan have declared 1,200 hectares of forest as the Bhairodev Dakav ‘Sonchuri’, declaring their own set of rules and regulations which do not allow hunting, and are protecting the wildlife against any outside encroachments.*

### Questions :

1. How are forests related with Communities?
2. Explain the aim of ‘Wildlife Protection Act.
3. How are communities working for the conservation of Wildlife ? Explain with example.

**Ans :**

1. Various elements of the forest and wildlife directly support these local communities’

text books, cultural programmes, movies, street shows and circulation of ancient holy scriptures that suggest judicious life-style.

- (4) To reduce use of chemical fertilizers, pesticides and germicides as it has posed certain dangers to aquatic animals and vegetation cover.
- (5) To encourage recycling, reclamation and treatmental efforts so as burden on forest and wildlife resources be reduced to minimum.
- (6) To practise pollution-free and environment-friendly activities time to time.

- 93.** Highlight any three differences between endangered species and extinct species.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

	Extinct Animals (species)	Endangered Animals (species)
1.	Meaning : These are animals or species which are not found after searches of known or likely areas where they may occur.	Meaning : They are animals or species which are in danger of extinction.
2.	Position : They are already missing and their survival is suspicious.	Position : The survival of such species is difficult if the negative factors that have led to a decline in their total population continue to operate
3.	Examples : Asiatic cheetah, pink-headed duck etc.	Examples : Blackbuck, wild ass, Indian rhino, crocodile, lion-tailed, Macaque etc.
4.	Cause of extinct : A large number of rare birds and animals have to become extinct due to reckless destruction of forests, use of guns of the hunters.	Causes of endangered : Due to destruction of forests and guns of hunters some beautiful species like Cheetah, Rhinoceros, Musk Deer etc. are in danger of total extinct.

- 94.** Why do we need to conserve our forests and wildlife resources ? Explain reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (1) To prevent extinction of wildlife : A number of plant and animal species including avians, reptiles, mammals, scavengers, aquatic animals and organisms and amphibians are on the brink of extinction.
- (2) To change colonial policies : Colonial forest policies were based on the promotion of a few favoured species in which a single commercially valuable species were extensively planted and other species eliminated e.g. teak monoculture, chir pine. The former has damaged natural forest in South India and the later has replaced the Himalayan oak and Rhododendron forests in North India.
- (3) For protection of plants and animals : It has been reported recently that India's one third of wet lands have drained out, 70% of surface water polluted, 40% of mangroves wiped out and with continuous hunting and trade of wild animals and commercially valuable plants; thousands of plant and animal species are leading towards extinction.
- (4) To maintain balance in ecosystem : As per reports from International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) there are cattle, sal, pine, rodent in normal species, black buck, crocodile, Indian, wild ass, Indian rhino, lion-tailed macaque sangai (brow anter) are endangered species, blue sheep, Asiatic elephants, Gangetic dolphin are vulnerable species, Himalayan brown bear, wild Asiatic buffalo, desert fox and hornbill are rare species, Andaman teal, Nicobar's pigeon, Andaman's wild pig and mithun (Arunachal Pradesh) are endemic species and Asiatic cheetah and pink head duck are extinct species. These all except the last one category are to be saved in order to maintain balance in ecosystem.

**Questions:**

1. Which Indian state cover 75% total forest area in India?
2. How many percent of mammals are on the threatened list in India?
3. How can we distinguish Cheetah from leopard?

**Ans :**

1. Madhya Pradesh has the largest area under permanent forests, constituting 75 per cent of its total forest area.
2. Some estimates suggest that at least 10 per cent of India's recorded wild flora and 20 per cent of its mammals are on the threatened list.
3. The cheetah is often mistaken for a leopard. Its distinguishing marks are the long teardrop shaped lines on each side of the nose from the corner of its eyes to its mouth.

**104.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Large-scale development projects have also contributed significantly to the loss of forests. Since 1951, over 5,000 sq. km of forest was cleared for river valley projects. Clearing of forests is still continuing with projects like the Narmada Sagar Project in Madhya Pradesh, which would inundate 40,000 hectares of forest. Mining is another important factor behind deforestation. The Buxa Tiger Reserve in West Bengal is seriously threatened by the ongoing dolomite mining. It has disturbed the natural habitat of many species and blocked the migration route of several others, including the great Indian elephant.*

*The Himalayan Yew (*Taxus wallachiana*) is a medicinal plant found in various parts of Himachal Pradesh and Arunachal Pradesh. A chemical compound called 'taxol' is extracted from the bark, needles, twigs and roots of this tree, and it has been successfully used to treat some cancers – the drug is now the biggest selling anti-cancer drug in the world. The species is under great threat due to over-exploitation. In the last one decade, thousands*

*of yew trees have dried up in various parts of Himachal Pradesh and Arunachal Pradesh.*

*"Project Tiger", one of the well-publicised wildlife campaigns in the world, was launched in 1973. Tiger conservation has been viewed not only as an effort to save an endangered species, but with equal importance as a means of preserving biotypes of sizeable magnitude. Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand, Sunderbans National Park in West Bengal, Bandhavgarh National Park in Madhya Pradesh, Sariska Wildlife Sanctuary in Rajasthan, Manas Tiger Reserve in Assam and Periyar Tiger Reserve in Kerala are some of the tiger reserves of India.*

**Questions**

1. Why is the Buxa Tiger Reserve in West Bengal seriously threatened?
2. From which plant that biggest selling anti-cancer drug in the world is made up of ?
3. Why was tiger conservation launched?

**Ans :**

1. The Buxa Tiger Reserve in West Bengal is seriously threatened because of ongoing dolomite mining.
2. The biggest selling anti-cancer drug in the world is made up of the Himalayan Yew.
3. Tiger conservation has been viewed not only as an effort to save an endangered species, but with equal importance as a means of preserving biotypes of sizeable magnitude.



# CHAPTER 7

## WATER RESOURCES

### SUMMARY

1. River Basin : Catchment area of a river.
2. Wet Land : A tract of marshy land.
3. Guls or Kuls : Diversion channels in Himalayas.
4. Tankas : Underground tanks to store water.
5. Palar Pani : Purest form of rain water.
6. Rain Water Harvesting : Technique of storing rain water in pits, on roofs of houses etc.
7. Watershed : The boundary between two river systems.
8. Ground Water : The water held in the pores and crevices of soil in its underlying bedrock.
9. Scarcity of Water : A condition formed by non-availability of fresh drinking water for biotic and human resources due to pollution, over-use and careless management of water bodies.
10. Blue Planet : Our earth is called the blue planet due to presence of water bodies and further, it is the only planet where living organisms including human beings are found.
11. Ravine : A small, deep narrow valley with deep sides, larger than a gully and smaller than a canyon.
12. Check Dam : It is a structure built across a river or estuary in order to restrain or use water.
13. Perennial Canals : Canals dug for diversion of water from perennial rivers like Ganges, Yamuna, etc., to distant areas under farming.
14. Inundation Canals : Canals dug for diversion of flood water during monsoon season so as to use it for irrigation.
15. Multi-Purpose Projects : Projects that ensure use of water for irrigation, control floods, suitable for fisheries, generation of hydro-electricity and tourism simultaneously.

16. Hydro-electricity : The power generated with the help of running water.
17. Surface Water : Water found accumulated on the surface of the earth in depression floating through rivers, streams or frozen in the form of ice caps and snow fields.
18. Conservation : Measures that ensure environmental protection and efficient use of natural resources such as water/forest/minerals etc.
19. Hydraulic Structure : Dams, lakes, tanks and baolis.
20. Dam : A dam is a barrier across the flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow of water.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Match Column - A with Column - B and choose the correct option:

Column-A (River)	Column-B (Dam)
A. Mahanadi	1. Sardar Sarovar
B. Narmada	2. Hirakud
C. Chambal	3. Salal
D. Chenab	4. Rana Pratap Sagar

**Options:**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 2, D - 1  
(b) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2  
(c) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3  
(d) A - 1, B - 2, C - 3, D - 4

Ans :

OD 2023

- (c) A - 2, B - 1, C - 4, D - 3

2. How much of the Earth's surface is covered with water?  
 (a) Two-Third  
 (b) Three-Fourth  
 (c) One-Fourth  
 (d) Two-Fourth

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

(b) Three-Fourth

3. We need more and more ..... for growing food.  
 (a) land (b) water  
 (c) minerals (d) none of these

**Ans :**

OD 2020

(b) water

4. Identify the name of the "Reservoir"-  
 • It is often referred to as "Reservoir" rather than a structure.  
 • Acts as barrier across flowing water.  
 • Referred as the modern temple of India by Jawahar Lal Nehru.  
 • Criticized by environmentalists and tribals

**Option :**

- (a) Dam  
 (b) Reservoir  
 (c) Rainwater harvesting  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

(a) Dam

5. The water covered surface of the earth is:  
 (a) one-fourth  
 (b) three-fourth  
 (c) half of the earth  
 (d) none of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2014

(b) three-fourth

6. Arrange the following rivers from north to south in the correct sequence-  
 1. Kavari  
 2. Godavari  
 3. Ganga  
 4. Narmada

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 4, 2, 1 (b) 2, 1, 3, 4  
 (c) 1, 3, 4, 2 (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

(a) 3, 4, 2, 1

7. How much per cent of the total volume of world's water is estimated to exist in oceans?  
 (a) 95.5% (b) 96%  
 (c) 95% (d) 96.5%

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

(d) 96.5%

8. **Assertion :** Water is a renewable resource.  
**Reason :** Freshwater is mainly obtained from surface run off and ground water that is continually being renewed.  
 (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

9. What is India's rank in the global precipitation in terms of water availability per person per annum?

- (a) 132 (b) 133  
 (c) 143 (d) 142

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

(b) 133

10. What is the share of hydroelectric power in total production of electricity in India?  
 (a) 19% (b) 22%  
 (c) 30% (d) 36%

**Ans :**

OD 2010, 2012

(b) 22%

11. Choose the most appropriate reason for water scarcity as depicted in below mentioned picture-



- Over exploitation of natural resources in name of development.
- Natural disasters occur regularly all over the world.
- Mismanagement of public infrastructure
- Erroneous government policies

Ans :

Delhi 2014

- Over exploitation of natural resources in name of development.

12. Complete the following table with correct information-

S.No.	Dams	On the river	State
1.	Bhakra-Nangal	Satluj river	A - ?
2.	Hirakud	B - ?	Odisha

**Option :**

- A - Punjab, B - Mahanadi
- A - Haryana, B - Satluz
- A - Haryana, B - Mahanadi
- A - Punjab, B - Satluz

Ans :

SQP 2011

- A - Punjab, B - Mahanadi

13. Which among the following regions of India experience low rainfall and is drought prone?
- Rajasthan
  - Gujarat
  - Bihar
  - Telangana

Ans :

Foreign 2008

- Rajasthan

14. **Assertion :** The availability of water resources varies over space and time.

**Reason :** Availability of water resources helps in storing water.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

Comp 2006

- Assertion is true but reason is false.

15. Apart from flood control and irrigation what are the other uses of multipurpose projects?

- Recreation
- Fish breeding
- Internal Navigation
- All of these

Ans :

OD 2009

- Recreation

16. Identify the below mentioned water conservation method-

- It is a diversion channels that carry water from a glacier to village.
- Its structure is of a circular tank.
- It is a century old water conservation method.
- They are the lifeline of people of spiti valley of Himachal Pradesh and in Jammu

**Option :**

- Dam
- Reservoir
- Rainwater harvesting
- KUL

Ans :

Delhi 2010

- KUL

17. Which place in India has an artificial lake to conserve water that dates back to 11th century?

- Delhi
- Bhopal
- Bennur
- Kolhapur

Ans :

SQP 2017

- Bhopal

18. Arrange the following steps of “rooftop rainwater harvesting in a correct sequence-

1. Rooftop rainwater is collected using a PVC pipe.
2. Filtered using sand and bricks.
3. Underground pipe takes water to sump for immediate usage.
4. Excess water from the sump is taken to the well which recharges the underground water.

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 4, 2, 3 | (b) 2, 1, 3, 4 |
| (c) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (c) 1, 2, 3, 4

19. Water is being used both for hydel power production and irrigation of which of the following?

- (a) Bhakra-Nangal Dam
- (b) Sutlej-Beas River Basin
- (c) Hirakud Dam
- (d) All of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

- (a) Bhakra-Nangal Dam

20. The Hirakud dam is built on which of the following river?

- |             |             |
|-------------|-------------|
| (a) Sutlej  | (b) Beas    |
| (c) Mahandi | (d) Krishna |

**Ans :**

OD 2017, 2015

- (c) Mahandi

21. What is the contribution of India's hydroelectric power to the total electricity produced in the country?

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| (a) 22% | (b) 30% |
| (c) 40% | (d) 50% |

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (a) 22%

22. Who among the following proclaimed the dam as the Temple of Modern India?

- (a) Mahatma Gandhi
- (b) Jawaharlal Nehru
- (c) Moti Lal Nehru
- (d) Lal Bahadur Shashtri

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (b) Lal Bahadur Shashtri

23. **Assertion :** Ground water a highly overused resource.

**Reason :** Ground water is used for domestic and drinking purpose.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

24. During whose reign were the dams, lakes and irrigation systems built extensively?

- (a) Ashoka
- (b) Chandragupta Maurya
- (c) Akbar
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

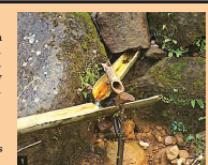
Comp 2005

- (b) Chandragupta Maurya

25. Following method of water conservation is known as and is used in the state of-

#### BAMBOO DRIP IRRIGATION SYSTEM

In Meghalaya, a 200-year-old system of tapping stream and spring water by using bamboo pipes, is prevalent. About 1820 litres of water enters the bamboo pipe system, gets transported over hundreds of metres, and finally reduces to 20-80 drops per minute at the site of the plant.



Picture 1: Bamboo pipes are used to divert perennial springs on the hilltops to the lower reaches by gravity.



Picture 2 and 3: The channel sections, made of bamboo, divert water to the plant site where it is distributed into branches again, made and laid out with different forms of bamboo pipes. The flow of water into the pipes is controlled by manipulating the pipe positions.



Picture 4: If the pipes pass a road, they are taken high, above the land.



Picture 5 and 6: Reduced channel sections and reduced joints are used at the last stage of water application. The last channel section enables water to be dropped near the roots of the plant.

- (a) Johads, Rajasthan
- (b) Bamboo drip Irrigation, Meghalaya
- (c) Zabo, Nagaland
- (d) Surangam, Kerala

**Ans :** OD 2006

- (b) Bamboo drip Irrigation, Meghalaya

**26.** Complete the following table with the correct information-

Dam	On river	Covering states	Located in
Sardar Sarovar Dam	A - ?	B - ?	Kevadia village of Gujarat

**Option :**

- (a) A - Brhamputra, B - Assam, Punjab, Haryana and Bihar
- (b) A - Narmada, B - Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Rajasthan
- (c) A - Brhamputra, B - Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Rajasthan
- (d) A - Narmada, B - Assam, Punjab, Haryana and Bihar

**Ans :** Delhi 2012

- (b) A - Narmada, B - Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Rajasthan.

**27.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence of Bamboo Drip irrigation system:

1. About 18-20 litres of water enters the bamboo pipe system.
2. It spring water by using bamboo pipes.
3. It is 200-year-old system of tapping stream.
4. Spring water by using bamboo pipes.

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 4, 2, 3 | (b) 4, 3, 2, 1 |
| (c) 1, 3, 4, 2 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

**Ans :** SQP 2014, 2013

- (b) 4, 3, 2, 1

**28.** The earth is occupied mostly with water yet fresh water resources are only:

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| (a) 3.5% | (b) 5.5% |
| (c) 2.5% | (d) 0.5% |

**Ans :** Foreign 2018

- (c) 2.5%

**29. Assertion :** Dams are referred to as multi-purpose projects.

**Reason :** Dams are built for irrigation, electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial use, flood control, recreation and fish breeding.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** Comp 2006

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**30.** Which of the following place gets the highest rainfall in the world?

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| (a) Mawsynram | (b) Aizawl      |
| (c) Shillong  | (d) Cherrapunji |

**Ans :** OD 2019

- (a) Mawsynram

**31.** A tank for storing water that was 6.1 metres deep, 4.27 metres long and 2.44 metres wide is found in .....

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| (a) Jaisalmer | (b) Phalodi     |
| (c) Alwar     | (d) Chittorgarh |

**Ans :** Delhi 2016

- (b) Phalodi

**32.** The primary source of water is:

- (a) evaporation
- (b) precipitation
- (c) rain
- (d) none of these

**Ans :** Comp 2015

- (c) rain

**33. What were 'Guls'?**

- (a) Reservoirs
- (b) Artificial lakes
- (c) Diversion channels
- (d) None of these

**Ans :** OD 2010, 2008

- (c) Diversion channels

that rely on a stable supply of water and electricity.

(b) Disaster management: Multi-purpose projects can help prevent natural disasters such as floods and droughts by regulating water flows and providing early warning systems. They can also provide emergency relief and rehabilitation in the event of a disaster.

- 122.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Given the abundance and renewability of water, it is difficult to imagine that we may suffer from water scarcity. The moment we speak of water shortages; we immediately associate it with regions having low rainfall or those that are drought prone. We instantaneously visualise the deserts of Rajasthan and women balancing many ‘matkas’ (earthen pots) used for collecting and storing water and travelling long distances to get water. True, the availability of water resources varies over space and time, mainly due to the variations in seasonal and annual precipitation, but water scarcity in most cases is caused by over-exploitation, excessive use and unequal access to water among different social groups.*

**Questions :**

1. How do women collect water in Rajasthan?
2. Why is water scarcity in most areas caused?
3. Do you think rainwater harvesting can help ?Give reasons to justify your answer.

**Ans :**

2024

1. Women collected and stored water by balancing many ‘matkas’ (earthen pots) and travelling long distances to get water.
2. Water scarcity is caused due to the variations in seasonal and annual precipitation, but water scarcity in most cases is caused by over-exploitation, excessive use and unequal access to water among different social groups.
3. Yes, rain water harvesting can help as agricultural fields were converted into

rain fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil like the ‘khadins’ in Jaisalmer and ‘Johads’ in other parts of Rajasthan. ‘Rooftop rainwater harvesting’ was commonly practised to store drinking water, particularly in Rajasthan.

- 123.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Maharashtra is a state located in western India, with a population of over 110 million people. The state is home to several large cities, including Mumbai, and has a significant agricultural sector. However, the state is facing a severe water crisis, with its water resources coming under increasing pressure due to climate change, industrialization, and urbanization. The main challenges faced by water resource management in Maharashtra are:*

- I. Overexploitation of groundwater: Maharashtra is one of the most groundwaterstressed states in India, with the demand for water exceeding the supply. Overexploitation of groundwater for agriculture and urban use has led to a decline in water levels, which has severe implications for the sustainability of water resources.
- II. Pollution of surface water: Industrialization and urbanization have led to the pollution of surface water bodies such as rivers and lakes. The pollution has led to water quality degradation, which poses risks to human health and the environment.
- III. Inefficient irrigation practices: The agricultural sector is the largest user of water in Maharashtra, accounting for around 80% of total water use. However, traditional irrigation practices such as flood irrigation are inefficient and lead to the wastage of water.

**Questions :**

1. Mention any two reasons for the water crisis faced by the state of Maharashtra.
2. Propose any one solution to mitigate the water crisis faced by Maharashtra state.

- (b) Eastern Kerala  
 (c) Eastern Rajasthan  
 (d) Western Tamil Nadu

**Ans :**

SOP 2017

- (a) Western Rajasthan

**42.** Complete the following table with correct information-

Inter-state water dispute	States involved	Reason of dispute	Dam made of Krishna river
Krishna Godavari dispute	A - ?	Diversion of more water at Koyna river by the Maharashtra government to a multi-purpose project	B - ?

**Option :**

- (a) A - Kerala, Maharastra, B - Hirakud Dam  
 (b) A - Kerala, Maharastra, B - Nagarjuna Sagar Dam  
 (c) A - Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, B - Nagarjuna Sagar Dam  
 (d) A - Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, B - Hirakud Dam

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (c) A - Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, B - Nagarjuna Sagar Dam

**43.** Which one of the following statements is not an argument in favour of multipurpose river projects?

- (a) Multipurpose projects bring water to those areas which suffer from water scarcity.  
 (b) Multipurpose projects by regulating water flow help to control floods.  
 (c) Multipurpose projects lead to large scale displacements and loss of livelihood.  
 (d) Multipurpose projects generate electricity for our industries and our homes.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020, 2018

- (c) Multipurpose projects lead to large scale displacements and loss of livelihood.

**44.** Identify the disaster-

- It is the overflow of water in huge amount covering a large area which causes destruction.
- It not only destroys a big area, but also takes many lives and damages properties.
- The worst affected people are the farmers as it destroys their crops as well as fertility of their land.
- Sometimes it also occurs as an after effect of terrible cyclone in a region which creates double damage.

**Option :**

- (a) Dam  
 (b) Reservoir  
 (c) Rainwater harvesting  
 (d) Flood

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (d) Flood

**45.** **Assertion :** Dams are only used for generating electricity, not for irrigation.

**Reason :** Water stored in dam does not produce electricity.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
 From These Sample Papers**

**34. Assertion :** Irrigation has also changed the cropping pattern.

**Reason :** Crops are now sown according to the amount and availability of water.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**35. Which options are true for dams?**

- (a) They check the sediment flow in rivers.
- (b) Dams have helped provide ample water for agriculture.
- (c) Dams have solved problems of drought in Central India.
- (d) Dams have helped in power generation.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (b) Dams have helped provide ample water for agriculture.

**36. Which of the following remote backward village in Mysore, Karnataka installed household rooftop rainwater harvesting system?**

- (a) Gendathur
- (b) Vanasthalipuram
- (c) Chilkunda
- (d) Kallahalli

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (a) Gendathur

**37. Name the state where almost all the houses traditionally had tankas.**

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| (a) Rajasthan  | (b) Odisha      |
| (c) Tamil Nadu | (d) Maharashtra |

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (a) Rajasthan

**38. In 21<sup>st</sup> century water conservation is the collective responsibility of-**



- (a) Government
- (b) Civil society
- (c) All the citizens of India
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2011

- (d) All of the above

**39. How many households have installed this rainwater harvesting system in that village?**

- (a) 150 households
- (b) 175 households
- (c) 200 households
- (d) 225 households

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (c) 200 households

**40. Assertion :** Irrigation is considered to be the major source of agriculture.

**Reason :** Dams are well-known for their capacity to hold water for agriculture.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**41. In which part of India, rooftop rainwater harvesting is chiefly practiced?**

- (a) Western Rajasthan

Name	River	States Benefitted
Hirakund	A - ?	Odisha and B - ?
C - ?	Bhagirathi	Uttarakhand

**Option :**

- (a) A – Mahanadi, B – Chhattishgarh, C – Tehri
- (b) A – Mahanadi, B – Chhattishgarh, C – Tehri
- (c) A – Mahanadi, B – Chhattishgarh, C – Tehri
- (d) A – Mahanadi, B – Chhattishgarh, C – Tehri

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (d) A – Mahanadi, B – Chhattishgarh, C – Tehri

- 52. Assertion :** Multi-purpose projects help to control floods by regulating water flow.

**Reason :** Dafrisyere constructed to conserve water.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

- 53.** Explain any three reasons for which the multi-purpose projects and large dams have come under great scrutiny and opposition in the recent years.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (1) Regulating and damming of rivers affect their natural flow causing poor sediment flow and excessive sedimentation at the

bottom of the reservoir, resulting in rockier stream beds and poorer habitats for the rivers' aquatic life.

- (2) Dams also fragment rivers making it difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate, especially for spawning.
- (3) The reservoirs that are created on the floodplains also submerge the existing vegetation and soil leading to its decomposition over a period of time.

- 54.** “India is heading towards water scarcity.” Trace the possible solutions to tackle this problem.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

Possible solutions to tackle water scarcity :

- (1) Rain water harvesting.
- (2) Bamboo drip irrigation system.
- (3) Avoiding wastage of water in day to day life activities.

- 55.** State four major uses of water.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

The four major uses of water are :

- (1) Drinking and domestic purposes
- (2) Industrial use
- (3) Use for irrigation
- (4) Use for disposal of ever-growing municipal sewage and dirt of all sorts.

- 56.** Why are the people of some cities facing the problem of water shortage ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (1) Due to large and growing population of the cities.
- (2) Over exploitation by industrial units and markets.
- (3) Unequal distribution of water.

- 57.** Find out and write in details the various water conservation measures adopted in your area. Do you think any new changes are required ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2014

Following measures have been adopted for conservation of water in our areas :

- 46.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Dam
- (b) Reservoir
- (c) Rainwater harvesting
- (d) Rooftop Rainwater harvesting

Ans :

SQP 2018

- (a) Dam

- 47.** Various factors contaminated the rivers. Arrange the below mentioned reasons from low to high contributing in it.

1. Population growth
2. Urbanisation
3. Agricultural modernisation
4. Industrialization

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 4, 2, 3 | (b) 2, 1, 3, 4 |
| (c) 1, 3, 4, 2 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

Ans :

Foreign 2013

- (c) 1, 3, 4, 2

- 48.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Evaporation from Oceans, Lakes and Streams
2. Condensation
3. Precipitation
4. Surface Runoff or Ground water

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3

- (b) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (c) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

Ans :

Comp 2005

- (c) 1, 2, 3, 4

- 49.** **Assertion :** Growing Population is the main reason for water scarcity.

**Reason :** Irrigation from tube wells and canals is responsible for water scarcity.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

OD 2008, 2007

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

- 50.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Dam
- (b) Reservoir
- (c) Rainwater harvesting
- (d) None of the above

Ans :

Delhi 2010

- (c) Rainwater harvesting

- 51.** Complete the following table with correct information with regard to major multi-purpose projects of India:

Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri deltas. Wells and tubewells are popular in the alluvial plains. The tanks are common in southern states.

- 65.** Ground water resources are abundant only in northern and coastal plains. Explain two main reasons responsible for it.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

Two main reasons are as follow :

- (1) In northern and coastal plains, the land is soft and the rains are abundant so much rain water is absorbed in the soil.
- (2) Both northern and coastal plains, there are many rivers and their tributaries. Some streams and lakes also supply water to soil or they keep water continuously. Different types of soils absorb water, rambling in abundant groundwater resources.

- 66.** Name any two sophisticated hydraulic structures constructed in ancient India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (1) A sophisticated water harvesting system channelling the flood water of the river Ganga was built in the first century B.C., near Allahabad.
- (2) To supply water to Siri Fort area, Iltutmish constructed a tank named 'Ilauz Khas' in Delhi, in the 14th century.

- 67.** Name two multi-purpose projects (dams). Also name the rivers on which they are built.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013, 2011

	<b>Dams</b>	<b>Rivers</b>	<b>Purposes</b>
(1)	Bhakra-Nangal project	Satluj	(i) Hydel power production, (ii) Irrigation
(2)	Hirakud project	Mahanadi	(i) Water conservation, (ii) Flood control

- 68.** How does damming of rivers affect their natural flow? Write any one effect.

or

Mention any one effect of damming of rivers on their natural flow.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

- (1) Damming leads to poor sediment flow and excessive sedimentation which make the stream bed rocky. Rocky stream bed is not suitable for aquatic life.
- (2) Damming leads to fragmentation of rivers that prevents aquatic animals from migrating, especially for spawning.

- 69.** Mention any two disadvantages of multi-purpose projects.

or

What objections have been raised against multipurpose river valley projects ? Explain any three.

**Ans :**

Comp 2006

- (1) Due to sedimentation in the reservoir, it triggered flood, soil erosion and land degradation.
- (2) It has induced earthquakes.
- (3) It has caused water-borne diseases, pests and pollution.

- 70.** What are dams ? Why do we call them now multi-purpose projects ? How do they help in conserving and managing water ?

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (1) A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, often creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment.
- (2) Dams are built for various purposes like irrigation, electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial uses, flood control, recreation, fish breeding. Therefore, dams are called multi-purpose projects where many uses of the impounded water are integrated with one another.

- 71.** Explain how water becomes a renewable resource?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

Water is continually being renewed and recharged through the hydrological cycle.

- (1) Dams have been constructed. The technique of water harvesting have been adopted.
  - (2) Wells and tubewells have been constructed.
  - (3) Tanks, artificial lakes and some reservoirs have been constructed.
58. Why do some areas with ample water available suffer from scarcity ? Point out the reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

Such unbelievable condition arises if :

- (1) Available water is polluted.
- (2) The area suffers from bad water management.
- (3) People of an area are illiterate and orthodox.
- (4) Excessive use of chemical fertilizers has caused eutrophication or oxygen existed in water bodies is sucked by vegetation or weed grown there.

59. Describe any three disadvantages of big dams.

**Ans :**

Comp 2011

Following are the Disadvantages of big Dams:

- (1) The big dams have mostly been unsuccessful in controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall.
- (2) The floods have not only devastated life and property but have also caused extremely soil erosion.
- (3) Sedimentation also meant that the flood plains were deprived of silt, a natural fertiliser, further adding on to the problem of land degradation.

60. Write the main causes of water pollution.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

Water gets polluted by :

- (1) Domestic wastes, especially urban sewers.
- (2) Industrial wastes are disposed off in the water without proper treatment.
- (3) Chemical effluents from industries and from agricultural sector.
- (4) Pesticides and fertilisers used in agriculture may get washed into rivers by

rain-water and may pollute the water by enriching it with minerals.

61. Why do we need to conserve water resources?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

1. To safeguard ourselves from health hazards.
2. To ensure food security.
3. For continuation of our livelihoods.
4. For productive activities of the nation.
5. To prevent degradation of our natural ecosystem.

62. What is watershed development?

**Ans :**

SQP 2005

The watershed is the basin of a tributary. Watershed is a physiographic unit. The watershed development is a holistic approach. It includes programmes for soil and moisture conservation, water harvesting, afforestation, horticulture, pasture development and upgrading community land resources.

63. Why are Himalayan rivers perennial while the peninsular rivers seasonal ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

The Himalayan rivers are perennial because most of the rivers have their sources in glaciers and snow fields. The Ganga originates from Gangotri Glacier and the Yamuna originates from Yamunotri Glacier.

The peninsular rivers are rainfed. They depend entirely on monsoon rains for water. The monsoon rains come during summer months only, i.e. from June to September and therefore, they dry up during the non-monsoon months. Hence, they are called seasonal.

64. Which are the main sources of irrigation in India and where they are popular ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

There are three sources of irrigation in India, namely : (a) canals, (b) wells and tubewells and (c) tanks.

Canal irrigation has its maximum development in the great plains and in the

**76.** What problems are being faced by the people of Rajasthan due to shortage of water ? Mention those problems very briefly.

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2011

- (1) The people of Rajasthan especially women use 'matkas' (earthen pots) to bring water for domestic use from very long distances.
- (2) They have to draw water from wells, ponds.
- (3) Non-availability of water for irrigation.
- (4) Drought conditions prevail and take a toll of pet animals/cattle in a large number annually.
- (5) On account of water scarcity, people are compelled to live their lives like nomads.

**77.** When does water stress occur ? From your everyday experience write in short about how you can conserve water.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

Water stress occurs when water availability reduces to less than 1000 cubic metre per person.

Methods to be used for conservation of water:

- (1) Keeping the tap closed after use.
- (2) Using the water spared from vegetable cleaning, clothes washing and from other domestic chores for sewage purpose viz. it can be used in toilet.
- (3) Roof-top rainwater harvesting is to be practised.
- (4) Drinking water is not to be used for irrigation purposes.
- (5) Water from ponds, lakes is to be treated and recycled so as to reuse for drinking purpose.

**78.** What is a dam ? Describe the classification of dams on the basis of their structure and materials used and height.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards that flow, often creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment. It has a section called a spillway or weir over

which or through which water flows either intermittently or continuously.

#### **Classification :**

- (1) Based on structure and the materials used, dams are classified as timber dam, embankment dams or masonry dams.
- (2) According to height, dams can be categorised as large dams and major dams or alternatively as low dams, medium height dams and high dams.

**79.** What do you know about the Bamboo-Drip Irrigation System ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (1) The Bamboo-Drip Irrigation System is very popular in Meghalaya. It is a 200 year old system of tapping stream and spring water by using bamboo pipes.
- (2) Bamboo pipes are used to divert perennial springs on the hill tops to the lower reaches by gravity.
- (3) The channel section made 'of bamboo, divert water to the plant site, where it is distributed into several branches.
- (4) If the pipes pass roads, they are taken high above the land on the tree branches.
- (5) Reduced channel section and diversion units are used at the last stage of water application.

**80.** Identify any three hydraulic structures as part of water management programmes initiated in ancient India along with the period when they were built.

**Ans :**

Comp 2011

Here are some examples of hydraulic structures in ancient India :

- (1) In the 1st century B.C, Sringeripura near Allahabad had sophisticated water harvesting system channelling the flood water of the river Ganga.
- (2) Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works have also been found in Kalinga (Odisha), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur (Maharashtra), etc.

The never-ending inter-change of the different states of water between the oceans, land and air is known as the hydrological cycle.

- (1) Water evaporates due to heat of the sun.  
Vapours condense to form clouds. Clouds give rain.
- (2) Rain water from the land, makes its way back to the sea, and the cycle begins again.  
Thus, water is a renewable resource.

72. Mention and discuss two instances where rooftop rainwater harvesting is carried out effectively.

Ans :

SQP 2019

- (1) Shillong, the state capital of Meghalaya faces acute shortage of water. To solve this problem, almost every household in the city have installed rooftop rainwater harvesting system. Nearly 15-25 per cent of the total water requirement of the household comes from rooftop water harvesting.
- (2) In Gendathur, a remote backward village in Mysore, Karnataka, villagers face shortage of water. To meet their water requirements villagers have installed in their household rooftop rainwater harvesting system. About 200 households have installed this system and enriched themselves in rainwater.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

73. "Multi-purpose projects and large dams have come under great scrutiny." Identify the problems caused by the setting up of these projects and dams.

Ans :

SQP 2019

Problems caused by setting up of Multi-purpose projects and large dams :

- (1) Regulating and damming of rivers affect their natural flow causing poor sediment flow.
- (2) Dams fragment rivers.

- (3) Difficulty for aquatic fauna to migrate.
- (4) Submergence of existing vegetation.
- (5) Decomposition of soil.
- (6) Large scale displacement of local communities.

74. What is the meaning of rain-water harvesting ? State any four points that should be kept in mind for efficient management of water.

Ans :

Foreign 2013

Water harvesting is a technique of increasing the reaching of ground water by capturing and storing rain water.

We should keep some points in mind for efficient management of water :

- (1) There should be no wastage of drinking water.
- (2) Common people should take active part in water conservation and proper management of water.
- (3) Any chemical or other source which pollute the water should be checked.
- (4) Government should register all water extraction points.

75. Scarcity of which resource is shown in the picture and how is it shown ? Suggest methods to reduce the scarcity of this resource.



Ans :

Comp 2022

Resource : Water.

Water scarcity is shown by a very long queue of empty water pots.

Methods to reduce scarcity of water: Avoiding its excessive use, pollution and wastage and adopting rainwater harvesting methods.

**86.** An area or region may have ample water resources but it may still face water scarcity. Give four reasons for such situation.

or

Three-fourths of the earth's surface is covered with water but there is still scarcity of water across the globe.' Explain giving three reasons.

or

Explain any four reasons responsible for water scarcity in India.

**Ans :** OD 2012

- (1) Large and growing population leads to greater demand of water for domestic purposes.
- (2) Huge population requires more food. To produce more foodgrain, water resources are over exploited to expand irrigated areas and dry-season agriculture.
- (3) Most farmers have their own wells and tube-wells at their farms for irrigation to increase their produce. It leads to falling groundwater levels, adversely affecting water availability.
- (4) The ever-increasing number of industries exerts pressure on existing freshwater resources. Industries apart from being heavy users of water also require power to run them, which comes from hydroelectric power.

**87.** It is said that by 2025, about two billion people will face severe water scarcity. Do you agree ? Discuss.

**Ans :** Delhi 2014

Yes, by 2025 about two billion people will face severe water scarcity.

- (1) Due to expansion of irrigated areas water resources are being over-exploited. Farmers install tube-wells at the farms to increase their produce. It leads to falling groundwater levels adversely affecting water availability.
- (2) Rapid industrialisation exerts pressure on water resources. Industries not only demand heavy amount of water, they

also require power to run them. Energy is generated from hydroelectric power.

- (3) Huge amount of polluted water and chemicals are discharged into rivers. Pesticides and fertilisers used in agriculture also pollute the fresh water resources. It makes the water hazardous for human use.
- (4) Multiplying urban centres with dense populations and urban lifestyle have not only added to water and energy requirements but have further aggravated the problem.

**88.** Mention the major reasons of water scarcity in urban areas.

or

Discuss how water scarcity is felt both quantitatively and qualitatively in urban areas.

**Ans :** Delhi 2018, 2015

Major reasons for water scarcity in urban areas are as follows :

- (1) Multiplying urban centres with large populations has added to water and energy requirements.
- (2) The housing societies or colonies in the cities have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their water needs. Thus, the water resources are being over exploited.
- (3) Bad quality of water also leads to water scarcity. Water gets polluted due to domestic and industrial wastes, chemicals, pesticides and fertilizers used in agriculture.

**89.** How have industrialisation and urbanisation aggravated water scarcity in India ?

or

What is meant by water scarcity and give any two causes of water scarcity?

**Ans :** SQP 2010

Shortage of water as compared to its demand is known as water scarcity.

**Causes :**

- (1) Industrialisation : Industries are heavy users of water. They also require energy

**109.** What is multipurpose project ?

or

How does multipurpose project excel over traditional irrigation projects ? Give example.

or

What are the main purposes of launching of multipurpose projects in India after independence ?

or

How far have the multipurpose projects been able to achieve their purpose for which they were made ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

Multipurpose project is such a scheme which serve several purposes at one and the same time. For example : irrigation, generation of power, flood control, etc.

More importance than the traditional irrigational projects.

Modern multipurpose projects excel over traditional projects by facilitating irrigation, checking floods, developing hydro-electricity and providing fishing grounds. The traditional irrigation projects only served one purpose of irrigation as such the utility was limited. The multipurpose projects have proved for more useful as it clear from the following account : River valley projects which serve a number of purposes simultaneously are known as multipurpose projects. Because of their so many uses they are rightly called the temples of modern India.

(1) Irrigation : They greatly help in storing water which can be utilized for irrigation. For example, the Rajasthan Canal utilizes the water of Satluj river and irrigates the parched land of Rajasthan.

(2) Flood Control : They also help in checking floods. For example, the Damodar river was known as the river of sorrow in West Bengal. After constructing the Damodar Dam, the floods have been checked and the river has proved a great boon.

(3) Facility for Afforestation : Multi-purpose projects provide facility for afforestation. Afforestation is undertaken on a large scale in the catchment area of the

reservoirs. This is the conservation of both water and soil.

- (4) Hydro-electricity : Over and above, multipurpose projects are helpful in the development of hydro-electricity in a number of ways : Firstly, they store water in the rainy season in the hilly areas and as such hydro-electricity can be produced throughout the year by falling water from the high head. Secondly, water is a renewable resource so it can be used again and again in producing electricity and that too without pollution.
- (5) Navigation : Besides irrigation, under favourable conditions canals are used also for navigation.
- (6) Fishing : The multipurpose projects also provide facilities for the development of fishing. Their reservoirs are used as good fishing grounds.

**110.** Explain two techniques of water conservation.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

(a) Rainwater Harvesting :

1. Rainwater harvesting is a technique of capturing and storing rainwater by constructing reservoirs, ponds, tanks, dug-wells, dams. It would help in recharge of ground water.
2. Rain-water harvesting will result in the following:
  - (i) to meet the increasing demand of water.
  - (ii) to reduce run-off water.
  - (iii) to avoid flooding of roads and lanes.
  - (iv) to increase water-table and recharge ground water.
  - (v) to reduce water pollution and improve quality of ground water.
  - (vi) to supplement domestic water requirement during summer and long dry spells.

- (b) Techniques of roof-top rainwater harvesting : Simple and cheap techniques of rooftop water recharges are as under :
  - (a) Construction of percolation pits.
  - (b) Digging of dugwells and trenches.
  - (c) Refilling of dugwells.

- Ganga have been found at Sringeripatna near Allahabad. It is estimated to be built in the first century B.C.
- (2) Various dams, lakes and irrigation systems were built during the time of Chandragupta Maurya.
  - (3) Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works have also been found in Kalinga (Orissa), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur (Maharashtra).
  - (4) One of the largest artificial lakes known as Bhopal Lake, was built in the 11th century.
- 94.** Name two multi-purpose river projects. Why have they been under great scrutiny and opposition in recent years ? Give three reasons.
- or
- Why are multipurpose projects facing resistance ? Explain with three reasons.
- Ans :** SQP 2011, 2010
- Name two multi-purpose river projects are The Bhakra-Nangal Project and The Hirakud Project.
- (1) Due to the construction of dams the natural flow of rivers gets affected. Excessive amount of sediments accumulates at the bottom of the reservoir. As a result, the stream beds become shallow, rocky and poor habitats for the river's aquatic life.
  - (2) Dams also split rivers into narrow streams. It becomes difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate and spawning.
  - (3) The reservoirs that are made on the floodplains submerge the vegetation and soil leading to its decomposition over a period of time.
  - (4) Construction of dams also leads to large-scale displacement of local communities. Local people often have to give up their land and livelihood for the greater good of the nation.
- 95.** Do you agree that multi-purpose projects failed to achieve the purpose for which they were built ? Discuss.

or

How far have the multipurpose projects been able to achieve their purpose for which they were made ? Explain.

**Ans :** SQP 2015

Yes, multi-purpose projects failed to achieve their purpose.

- (1) The dams were built to control floods. But, they became the cause of floods due to sedimentation in the reservoirs.
- (2) At the time of heavy rainfall the water is released from the dams. It leads to floods in the adjacent areas and creates great havoc.
- (3) Flood also causes extensive soil erosion.
- (4) Due to sedimentation the flood plains are deprived of silt (a natural fertilizer). It further adds on the problem of land degradation.
- (5) Huge dams also increases the possibility of earthquakes.

- 96.** What is a multipurpose river valley project ? Give any four objectives of the multipurpose river valley project.

**Ans :** Foreign 2010

Dams are referred to as multi-purpose projects where many uses of the impounded water are integrated with one another. It is built not just for irrigation but for electricity generation, water supply, flood control, recreation, etc. When a dam is used to serve various other objectives, it is called multipurpose projects.

#### Main objectives :

- (1) Hydro-electric power generation
- (2) Irrigation
- (3) Domestic/Industrial supply of water
- (4) Navigation
- (5) Flood control
- (6) Fishing, etc.

- 97.** What do you mean by rainwater harvesting? Discuss the process of rooftop rainwater harvesting.

**Ans :** Comp 2013

Rainwater harvesting is a way to capture the rainwater when it rains, store that water

- (3) During the reign of Chandragupta Maurya, dams, lakes and irrigation systems were extensively built.
- 81.** ‘Construction of dams on rivers has caused environment degradation.’ Give reasons to support this statement.

**Ans :**

OD 2011

- (1) Damming of rivers affects their natural flow causing poor sediment flow.
  - (2) Excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the reservoir.
  - (3) Lack of sediments results in (a) rockier stream bed and (b) poorer habitat for the river’s aquatic life.
  - (4) Dams also fragment rivers, making it difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate, especially for spawning.
- 82.** Explain three reasons for multi-purpose projects and large dams coming under great scrutiny and opposition.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012, 2010

The reasons for multi-purpose projects and large dams coming under great scrutiny and opposition are :

- (1) Local communities have been displaced from their original settlement areas, with consequent loss of livelihood and income.
  - (2) These projects create conflicts between people wanting to avail benefits from the same water resources. This leads to unsettled disputes.
  - (3) Objections have been raised about sedimentation of the reservoirs leading to floods in nearby areas, causing land degradation by deprivation of silt (a natural fertiliser) to the land, and other consequent problems associated with such projects.
- 83.** Write an short essay on Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement.

**Ans :**

SOP 2013

Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement is a Non-Government Organisation (NGO) that mobilised tribal people, farmers,

environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water. Recently it has re-focused the aim to enable the poor citizens, especially the oustees (displaced people) to get the full rehabilitation facilities from the government.

- 84.** Write an essay on Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement is a Non-Government Organisation (NGO) that mobilised tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water. Recently it has re-focused the aim to enable the poor citizens, especially the oustees (displaced people) to get the full rehabilitation facilities from the government.

- 85.** How is hydro-electricity better than thermal power ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (1) Thermal Power : Electricity which is generated by burning coal, petroleum or natural gas is known as power obtained from fossil fuels. It is also called thermal power. Its production is costly. It is developed from non-replenishable resources. It creates pollution. As coal and petroleum reserves are diminishing fast day by day, emphasis on thermal power is decreasing.
- (2) Hydro Power : Hydel power is produced by the motive power of the falling water. The production of this electricity is comparatively cheap. Water is a replenishable resource, and there is no fear of its exhaustion. Hydro-electricity is free from pollution.

- (2) During Chandragupta Maurya's time, dams, lakes and irrigation system were extensively built.
- (3) Reservoirs or lakes like the Bhopal lake of the 11th century which was one of the largest artificial lakes of its time.
- (4) Embankment and canal for irrigation, sophisticated irrigation works have been found in Kalinga (Orissa), Kolhapur (Maharashtra), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh) etc.
- (5) Several tanks were constructed to store rainwater i.e., the tank in Hauz Khas in Delhi was built in 14th century to supply water to Siri Fort area.
- 101.** What are the factors which are responsible for the scarcity of water in India ?

or

Why is the scarcity of water increasing day-by-day in India ? Explain any three reasons.

Ans :

Delhi 2017

Factors responsible for the scarcity of water in India : Following factors (reasons) are responsible for the scarcity of water in our country :

- (1) Growing population : Growing population is one of the basic factors which is responsible for the scarcity of water.
- (2) Commercialisation of agriculture : After the success of Green Revolution our farmers are producing commercial crops. The commercial crops need more water and other inputs.
- (3) Urbanisation : Urbanisation is another factor which is responsible for the scarcity of water.
- (4) Over exploitation and mis-utilization of water : There are many states in India which have overutilized its water resources like Punjab and Haryana. Due to this the watertable in these states has lowered.
- (5) Pollution : Pollution of water resources is another factor which is responsible for scarcity. Domestic and industrial wastes are the main factors responsible for pollution of water.

- 102.** Multi-purpose projects and large dams have been the cause of many new social movements. Give two examples of such movements. What are the reasons and purposes of these movements ?

Ans :

SQP 2019

- (1) (i) Narmada Bachao Andolan,  
(ii) Tehri Dam Andolan.
- (2) Reasons for these movements :
  - (i) Large-scale displacement of local communities. Local people had to give up their agricultural land. They become devoid of their houses.
  - (ii) Labourers become jobless.
  - (iii) Since more land is required for dams, forests are damaged enormously.
  - (iv) During heavy rainfall the water is released from dams which leads to floods in adjacent areas or forests get submerged.
  - (v) The construction of huge reservoir increases the possibility of earthquakes.
- (3) Purpose of these movements :
  - (i) Rehabilitation and relocation to the displaced people.
  - (ii) Providing residential plots and agricultural land to the families.
  - (iii) Providing employment to the jobless workers.
  - (iv) Afforestation must be done on a large-scale to maintain ecological balance.

- 103.** Elucidate the need for irrigation in India with reference to the climate of India and the evergrowing population.

Ans :

Foreign 2020, 2018

- (1) For agriculture : India is primarily an agricultural country. About 75% of its population lives on agriculture as dependent. Good rains are essential for sound cultivation.
- (2) Uncertainty of Rain : Rains in India are uncertain, untimely and unevenly distributed. The monsoons give us rains. Sometimes they are too early and

- to run machines. Much of this energy comes from hydroelectric power.
- (2) Urbanisation : Multiplying urban centres with large and dense populations and urban lifestyles have not only added to water and energy requirements but have further aggravated the problem.
- (3) Most housing societies have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their water needs. This leads to depletion of underground water.
90. Why is the conservation and management of water resources important ? Give any three reasons.
- Ans :** Foreign 2020
- (1) Although water is available in plenty, due to its over-exploitation, overuse and uneven distribution among the various classes of the society, we need to conserve and manage water.
  - (2) The Indian rivers are badly affected due to increasing population, modernisation of agriculture, urbanisation and industrialisation. This problem is deepening day-by-day. All the life forms are in danger.
  - (3) Our natural ecosystem . is continuously degrading. These resources can decline due to over-exploitation and mismanagement and there may arise the problem of ecological crisis which might have serious impacts on our lives.
  - (4) Our population is continuously increasing. Therefore, to secure the availability of drinking and irrigation water in future, we need to conserve and manage water.
91. Discuss how rainwater harvesting in semi-arid regions of Rajasthan is carried out.

**Ans :** Comp 2011

- (1) In semi-arid and arid regions of Rajasthan, particularly in Bikaner, Phalodi and Barmer, almost all the houses traditionally had underground tank or tankas for storing drinking water.
- (2) The tanks could be as large as a big room; one household in Phalodi had a tank that

was 6.1 metres deep, 4.27 metres long and 2.44 metres wide.

- (3) The tankas were part of the well developed rooftop rainwater harvesting system and were built inside the main house or the courtyard.
- (4) They are connected to the sloping roofs through a pipe and store rainwater in these underground 'tankas'.

92. Why are different water harvesting systems considered a viable alternative both socio-economically and environmentally in a country like India ?

**Ans :**

OD 2018

- (1) Keeping into view the disadvantages and rising resistance against the multipurpose projects, water harvesting system is considered a viable alternative both socio-economically and environmentally.
- (2) In ancient India also, along with the sophisticated hydraulic structures, there existed an extraordinary tradition of various water harvesting systems.
- (3) People adopted different techniques in different areas. In hilly regions people built diversion channels like the 'guls' or 'luls' for agriculture.
- (4) Rooftop rainwater harvesting, commonly practised to store drinking water, particularly in Rajasthan.
- (5) In the flood plains of Bengal, people developed inundation channels to irrigate their fields. Khadins, Johads and Tankas are the forms of rainwater harvesting practised in Rajasthan.

93. In our ancient past we had technology to construct sophisticated hydraulic structures. Discuss. Give four examples of such structures.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

Since our ancient past we have been constructing dams, reservoirs or lakes, embankments and canals. It proves that we had technology to construct sophisticated hydraulic structures.

- (1) A sophisticated water harvesting system channelling the flood water of the river

harvesting should be adopted and made popular.

- 106.** Construction of dams on rivers has caused environmental degradation'. Give reasons in support of this statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

Several facts prove that construction of dams, specially big dams on rivers has caused environmental degradation. We can give the following points in support of this statement :

- (1) Flood plains are deprived of silt and Khadar, affecting the fertility levels of the soil.
- (2) Damming of rivers affects their natural flow causing poor sediment flow.
- (3) Excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the reservoir. Shortage or lack of sediments results in (a) rockier stream bed and (b) poorer habitat for the river's aquatic life.
- (4) Dams also fragment rivers, making it difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate, especially for spawning.
- (5) The reservoir submerge the existing vegetation and soil; leading to its decomposition over time.

- 107.** Why do you think areas with high annual rainfall and high population density will face water scarcity ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2018

I think the areas with high annual rainfall and high population density will face water scarcity due to following reasons :

- (1) Increasing population will increase the demand for fresh drinking water as well as common quality water required to fulfil the various types of needs of population.
- (2) The areas having very heavy rain should also have capacity to store safely the water till the rain comes up to next season.
- (3) Over population will increase the construction work of buildings, dams, bridges, roads, hospitals, schools, training institutions. For all things water demand is increased.

- (4) With the increasing use of fresh water-wells, tubewells and use of handpumps will decrease underground water level.
- (5) Over population and industrialisation increase the chances of water pollution also. If water is polluted it will also create another form of problem of scarcity of water.
- (6) Our over population creates circumstances of generating electricity as well as demand of power energy resources than there is a problem of flood control. Due to heavy rain, fish breeding is created for employment, providing fish to fish traders and non-vegetarian.
- (7) We are having over or dense population in some parts of U.P., Bihar, West Bengal and Orissa. Even western coastal areas densely populated. India is having more rain but we can not say that there are no scarcity of water. In fact our population and very heavy rain also create problem of scarcity of water if it is not used in a planned way and there is not a proper coordination between the both.

- 108.** What is the importance of water as a natural resource? Describe any four methods of conserving water.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- I. Water is a natural resource of prime importance :
  1. We need water for irrigation.
  2. It is required for industries.
  3. People and other animals drink water.
  4. Life is impossible without water.
  5. It is required in everyday life.
- II. The following methods are used for the protection of water :
  - (i) Construction of reservoirs alongside rivers.
  - (ii) Watershed management in the catchment areas.
  - (iii) Water harvesting system in varied ways.
  - (iv) Construction of check-dams in the rivers and nearby river-banks.

above ground or charge the underground and use it later.

Process of rooftop rainwater harvesting —

- (1) The rainwater is brought down from the rooftops by using closed PVC pipes.
- (2) For the filtration of water, a simple three-part filtration unit is installed.
- (3) The PVC pipe is connected to a sump. It takes water to the sump for the immediate use of water. Another pipe is connected from the sump to the well to collect excess of water from the sump.
- (4) Water from the well recharges the underground water.
- (5) From the wells water can be used during summers.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 98.** Analyse the importance of ‘rainwater harvesting.’

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (1) It is a technique of increasing the recharge of groundwater by collecting and storing rainwater by constructing structures, such as dug wells, percolation pits and check dams.
- (2) In most cases, the harvested water is usually redirected to storage tanks, cistern or reservoirs. First and foremost, the collection offers a better and efficient utilization of energy resource. It is important because potable water is usually not renewable.
- (3) The overall expenses used in setting up harvesting methods are much cheaper compared to other purifying or pumping method. Its maintenance is feasible on the economic front as it does not require deep pockets.
- (4) Harvesting allows the collection of large amounts of rainwater. Rainwater is usually free from harmful chemicals, which makes it ideal for irrigation purposes.

- (5) Another important advantage is that it reduces demand for potable water. It is important especially in areas with low water levels.

- 99.** Why is there a need to develop rainwater harvesting system in India? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

Need for development of rainwater harvesting system has arisen due to:

- (1) Large growing population - means more water required for domestic use and also to produce more food.
- (2) In the agricultural sector, water resources are being over-exploited to expand irrigated areas and dry-season agriculture.
- (3) There is uneven distribution of rainfall. More water required for irrigation purposes to facilitate higher food production; i.e., for doing multiple cropping and for I-WV seeds.
- (4) There is greater demand for water with growing urbanisation and industrialisation. The quality of water is deteriorating, i.e., getting polluted by domestic and industrial wastes, chemical fertilizers and pesticides used in agriculture.
- (5) An unequal access to water among different social groups.
- (6) Over exploitation of water in the urban areas. Housing societies and colonies have their own ground-water pumping devices. This causes depletion of fragile water resources in the cities.

- 100.** What were the various types of hydraulic structures constructed in ancient India ? Give examples.

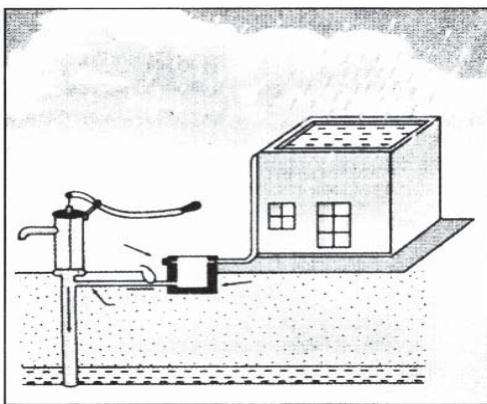
**Ans :**

OD 2013, 2011

Different types of hydraulic structures :

- (1) History tells us that hydraulic structures were constructed since early days in ancient India. A big tank or the Great Bath was constructed in Mohen-Jo-daro, during the days of Indus Valley Civilisation.

- (d) Buildings of check-dams on small rivers and streams.
- (e) Roof water to be collected on rooftops in reservoirs.
- (f) Roof water can also be stored in tanks or below the ground.



- 111.** What are the points which are to be kept in mind for the efficient water management ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2013

For efficient water management the following points are to be kept in mind :

- (1) For water conservation and its efficient management, awareness among the communities should be created.
- (2) People should be involved in all the activities of water management.
- (3) Treated water should not be used in gardening, washing vehicles, toilets and wash basins.
- (4) All the tubewells and borewells through which ground water is obtained should be registered to ascertain the amount of water extraction.
- (5) Drying up the underground aquifers should be prevented.
- (6) Waterbodies should be kept pollution-free.
- (7) Water supply pipelines should be repaired immediately to avoid waste of water.

- 112.** It is said by enlightened people or experts that by 2025 C.E., nearly two billions people will face severe water scarcity. Do you agree with this statement ? Discuss in about 100 to 120 words.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

Scarcity of water is a burning problem before several countries of the world. I fully agree with the statement that by 2025 C.E. about two billions people will face severe water scarcity due to the following reasons :

- (1) Expansion of Irrigation : Agriculture is expanding all over the world. The expansion of agriculture results in expansion of irrigated areas, water resources are being over-exploited. Farmers install tubewells in the field increase their agricultural production. It leads to decrease in groundwater level.
- (2) Industrialisation : Rapid industrialisation is taking place in developed as well as developing countries. It exerts pressure on water resources. Industries not only demand heavy amount of water, but also require power to run themselves. Energy is generated from hydro-electric power.
- (3) Water Pollution : Due to various factors huge amount of water is being polluted. Chemicals discharge from industry are polluted river water. Rivers are one of the sources of pure water supply. Pesticides and fertilisers use in agriculture also pollute the fresh water resources. It makes the water hazardous for human use.
- (4) Changes in urban lives : Multiplying urban centre with dense population and urban life style have not only added to water and energy requirement but have further aggravated the problem related with water supply.

- 113.** What are the various reasons for diminishing level of groundwater in the states of India ? Could you suggest some measures to improve the situation ? Also assign the various problems associated with decreasing level of ground water.

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- I. The following reasons are responsible for diminishing level of ground water in the state of India :
  - (i) Intensive industrialisation.
  - (ii) Urbanisation.

- sometimes too late, sometimes the rainfall is very heavy and sometimes very scanty.
- (3) During dry months : Moreover, we receive this rainfall in the months of June to September. The rest of the year remains almost dry. That is why it becomes imperative to use artificial means of irrigation to water our agricultural crops.
- (4) Features of monsoons : The irregular, uncertain and inadequate monsoons result in the serious problem of irrigation. It becomes all the more acute when there is scanty rainfall.
- (5) Excessive rain : Excessive rains cause floods and bulk of the water flows uselessly into the sea. By constructing dams, we can use this water to irrigate the thirsty lands and generate electricity for rural as well as urban areas.
- 104.** What values do you think are responsible for water scarcity in areas receiving high annual rainfall and high population density ?
- Ans :** Comp 2014
- I think the areas having high annual rainfall and high population density faces water scarcity due to following attached values :
- (1) Increasing population will increase the demand for fresh drinking water as well as common quality water required to fulfil the various types of needs of population.
  - (2) The areas having very heavy rain should also have capacity to store safely tea water till the rain comes upto next season.
  - (3) Overpopulation will increase the construction work of buildings, dams, bridges, roads, hospitals, schools, training institutions. For all things water demand is increased.
  - (4) With their increasing use of fresh water-wells, tubewells and use of handpumps will decrease underground water level.
  - (5) Overpopulation and industrialization increase the chances of water pollution also. If water is polluted it will also create another form of problem of scarcity of water.
- (6) Our overpopulation creates circumstances of generating electricity as well as demand of power energy resources than there is a problem of flood control. Due to heavy rain, fish breeding is created for employment, providing fish to fish traders and non-vegetarian.
- (7) We are having over or dense population in some parts of U.P., Bihar, West Bengal and Orrisa. Even western coastal areas are densely populated. India is having more rain but we can not say that there are no scarcity of water. In fact our population and very heavy rain also create problem of scarcity of water if it is not used in a planned way and there is not a proper coordination between the both.
- 105.** What is the need for conservation of water resources? Suggest any three measures to conserve water resources.
- Ans :** OD 2016
- The following are the reasons for conserving our water resources :
- (1) The water resources are limited. Our requirements of water are increasing day-by-day.
  - (2) The water resources are unevenly distributed.
  - (3) Most of our water resources especially in cities and urban centres are polluted and unsuitable for drinking and other purposes.
- Measures :**
- (1) Creation of more water storage reservoirs.
  - (2) Inter-basin transfer of water-linking of rivers with one another.
  - (3) Rain water harvesting through storage of rain water in ponds, tanks, rooftop, underground tank in houses and reservoirs.
  - (4) Sufficient water percolation facilities to be increased/provided—it would result in raising of water table.
  - (5) Interstate water disputes must be resolved.
  - (6) Various water conservation techniques like watershed development and rainwater

5.	Chambal Valley Project	Chambal	Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan
6.	Tungabhadra Project	Tungabhadra	Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh
7.	Nagarjuna Sagar Project	Krishna	Andhra Pradesh
8.	Narmada Valley Project	Narmada	Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat, Rajasthan

116. How modern adaptations of traditional water harvesting are being carried out to conserve water ?

Ans :

Foreign 2014

The following traditional water harvesting methods are adopted :

- (1) Tanks : Tanks are constructed to store rainwater storing purposes. These are used till the next rainfall occurring. Tanks are used extremely reliable source of drinking water when all other sources are dry up, particularly in the summer. Tamil Nadu is a state where tanks are constructed in large numbers.
- (2) Palar Pani : Rain water, or palar pani as commonly referred in some parts of India is considered the purest form of natural water. Under this method many houses constructed underground rooms at joining the tanks to beat the summer heat as it would keep the room cool.
- (3) Roof top water harvesting : Roof top rain water harvesting is the most common practice in Shillong, Meghalaya. It is interesting because Cherapunjee and Mawsynram situated at a distance of 55 km. from Shillong receive the highest rainfall in the world, yet the state capital Shillong faces acute shortage of water. Nearly every household in the city has roof top rain water harvesting structure. Nearly 15-25 percent of the total water requirement of the household comes from rooftop water harvesting.

(4) Kul : It is a circular village tank from which water is released as and when required.

117. Discuss the various ways of coping with water shortage problem in Rajasthan.

Ans :

OD 2011

The following ways are adopted for coping with water shortage problems in Rajasthan :

- (1) Rajasthan Nahar or Indira Gandhi Canal have been constructed in western Rajasthan. In some areas of Rajasthan water is supplied by this canal.
- (2) Rooftop rainwater harvesting is commonly practised to store drinking water in this state. In arid and semi-arid regions, agricultural fields were converted into rain fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil like the Ithadins' in Jaisalmer and 'Johadas' in other parts of Rajasthan.
- (3) In the semi-arid and arid regions of Rajasthan, particularly in Bikaner, Phalodi and Barmer, almost all the houses traditionally had underground tanks or tankas for storing drinking water. The tanks could be as large as a big room; one household in Phalodi had a tank that was 6.1 metres deep, 4.27 \_metres long and 2.44 metre wide. The tanks were part of the well-developed rooftop rainwater harvesting system and were built inside the main house or the courtyard.

118. Justify the statement "Industries are exerting pressure on existing fresh water resources".

Ans :

SQP 2007, 2005

The statement that industries are exerting pressure on existing fresh water resources is greatly justify. We can justify by giving the following points :

- (1) India is a developing country. Since last more than 65 years, she has witnessed intensive industrialisation. Due to industrialisation large industrial houses are common in the form of industrial units of several MNCs (Multinational Corporations).

(iii) Creating vast opportunity for use of groundwater through wells and tubewells.

II. Yes, I can suggest the following measures to improve the situation :

- Decentralisation of industrialisation can be a major step in this direction.
- Back to rural life and decreasing urbanisation.
- Less use of hand-pumps, wells and tubewells for supplying water for increasing population and irrigation.

III. Following problems are associated with decreasing level of ground water :

- Shortage of fresh water in the cities and for use of industrial units.
- More power is consumed to bring out fresh water from the deeper level of ground.
- Water can be supplied to colonies having housing societies by canals or water pipes from water reserves artificial created near rivers, lakes or streams.

**114.** Discuss about those river projects where waters are being shared beyond political boundaries. Show the advantages of the same. If there are disputes, discuss why ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

Krishna — Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh  
Godavari — Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh  
Kaveri — Karnataka and Tamil Nadu  
Koyna — Between Maharashtra and Karnataka

Satluj — Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, Himachal Pradesh

Yamuna — Delhi and Haryana

Ganga — Uttar Pradesh, Uttarakhand and Delhi

(1) The advantages of sharing water is that in the circumstances of excess of rain, flood the water (surplus water) is distributed and share in the territories of different states.

(2) Some states can get water and the situation of drought can be avoided such as Indira Gandhi Nahar (Rajasthan

Canal) avoid water scarcity in western Rajasthan.

(3) Distribution of water is helpful in covering more irrigated land area and increasing food grains. It is also helpful in fishing, water supply in various urban and industrial areas of many states.

Lastly it is good for national unity and integrity to share natural resources including water for the development of our country.

Greed and intolerance and selfish motive and situation created by narrow-minded leaders and politicians can be a big cause of dispute.

The most important cause in distribution is uncertainty of Indian monsoon. Sometimes we get more rain and sometimes there is less rain or even drought.

**115.** Examine the importance of river valley projects in the development of hydel power and irrigation facilities in India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

After independence, India initiated planned development of economic activities to achieve self-reliance and improve the standard of living of its people. Among others a number of river valley projects were developed. Many of them are multi-purpose river valley projects. They control floods, check soil erosion, generate electricity and provide water for irrigation and drinking purposes. The selected multipurpose projects of India are as under :

	Names of the Projects	Rivers	Beneficiaries
1.	Damodar Valley Project	Damodar	Jharkhand, West Bengal
2.	Bhakhra Nangal	Satluj	Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan
3.	Hirakund Project	Mahanadi	Orissa
4.	Kosi Project	Kosi	Bihar and Nepal

alternative, both socio-economically and environmentally. In ancient India, along with the sophisticated hydraulic structures, there existed an extraordinary tradition of water harvesting system. People had in-depth knowledge of rainfall regimes and soil types and developed wide ranging techniques to harvest rainwater, groundwater, river water and flood water in keeping with the local ecological conditions and their water needs.

In hill and mountainous regions, people built diversion channels like the 'guls' or 'kuls' of the Western Himalayas for agriculture. 'Rooftop rainwater harvesting' was commonly practised to store drinking water, particularly in Rajasthan. In the flood plains of Bengal, people developed inundation channels to irrigate their fields. In arid and semi-arid regions, agricultural fields were converted into rain fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil like the 'khadins' in Jaisalmer and 'Johads' in other parts of Rajasthan.

#### **Questions :**

1. Why is water harvesting system a viable alternative ?
2. Describe the process of 'rooftop rainwater harvesting.'
3. Mention any two methods adopted by ancient India for water conservation.

#### **Ans :**

1. Due to the disadvantages and rising resistance against the multi-purpose projects, rainwater harvesting system is a viable alternative.
2. Rainwater from sloping roofs of houses is collected by rooftop rainwater harvesting systems and piped into an underground storage tank for later use.
3. Two methods adopted by ancient India for rainwater harvesting are as:
  - (a) Diversion channels like guls or kuls were built in the mountainous regions.
  - (b) Khadins and Johads were also used in arid and semi-arid regions of Rajasthan.

- 121.** Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

*Most of the objections to the projects arose due to their failure to achieve the purposes for which they were built. Ironically, the dams that were constructed to control the floods have triggered floods due to sedimentation in the reservoir. Moreover, the big dams have mostly been unsuccessful in controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall. You may have seen or read how the release of water from the dams during heavy rains aggravated the flood situation in Maharashtra and Gujarat in 2006. The floods have not only devastated life and property but also caused extensive soil erosion. Sedimentation also meant that the flood plains were deprived of silt, a natural fertiliser, further adding on to the problem of land degradation. It was also observed that the multi-purpose projects induced earthquakes, caused water-borne diseases and pests and pollution resulting from excessive use of water.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Name the movement against the river project in Gujarat.
2. How have the big dams mostly been unsuccessful in controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall ?
3. Analyse any two merits of multi-purpose river projects.

#### **Ans :**

1. Narmada Bachao Andolan is a movement against a number of large dam projects across the Narmada River
2. Over time, big dams can become filled with sediment and silt. This reduces their capacity to hold water, and can also affect their ability to release water in a controlled manner during periods of heavy rainfall.
3. (a) Economic benefits: Multi-purpose projects provide significant economic benefits by generating electricity, increasing agricultural productivity, and creating jobs. They also promote the growth of industries and businesses

- (2) The ever increasing number of industries has made matter worse by exerting pressure in the already prevailing fresh water resources.
- (3) Industries apart from being major user of water, also require power to run them. Much of the energy (power energy) comes from the hydro-electricity power i.e., totally depending on supply of water.
- (4) Industrialisation promotes urbanisation. In fact they are interlinked and in this way we can say industrialisation indirectly aggravated the problem of water scarcity. Due to intensive urbanisation most of the cities are populated due to labourers busy in various industries. Different professionals and service class-fellow are working in the form of engineers, clerks, accountants, doctors, chemists, teachers and other professionals. Increasing number of people led to increasing demand of fresh water supply.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 119.** Read the given extract and answer the questions that follow :

*In ancient India, along with the sophisticated hydraulic structures, there existed an extraordinary tradition of water-harvesting system. People had an in-depth knowledge of rainfall regimes and soil types and developed wide ranging techniques to harvest groundwater, rainwater, river water and flood water in keeping with the local ecological conditions and their water needs. In hilly and mountainous regions, people built diversion channels like the kuls and guls of Western Himalayas for agriculture. Rooftop rainwater harvesting was very commonly practised to store drinking water, particularly in Rajasthan.*

**Questions :**

1. Mention any two methods of traditional water-harvesting used in India.

2. How do people of Rajasthan utilise rainwater ?
3. Explain any two benefits of rainwater harvesting.

**Ans :**

1. Two methods of water harvesting in India:
  - (i) The excess water collected through rainfall can be carried to the wells, which further helps to recharge the wells and underground water.
  - (ii) Collection of rainwater on top of the roof and directing dry tanks.
2. The tanks are constructed inside the main house or the courtyard, and are connected to the sloping roofs of the houses through a pipe. The rain falling on the rooftop travels down and is stored in the tanks.
3. Advantages of rainwater harvesting:
  - (a) Rainwater harvesting is a sustainable process that helps in preserving water for future needs. It also ensures water conservation and all round availability of water for various purposes.
  - (b) It reduces soil erosion, stormwater runoff, flooding, and pollution of surface water with fertilizers, pesticides, metals and other sediments.
  - (c) It is an excellent source of water for landscape irrigation with no chemicals, dissolved salts and free from all minerals.
  - (d) When rainwater is harvested, it is stored in tanks or directed to percolate into the ground through various methods like recharge wells, recharge pits, or recharge trenches. This recharges the groundwater reservoirs directly, which can help increase the water table over time.

- 120.** Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

*Many thought that given the disadvantages and rising resistance against the multi purpose projects, water harvesting system was a viable*

3. Despite being the second highest rainfall-receiving state of the country, Maharashtra still faces water crisis. Substantiate this statement in 40 words.

**Ans :** 2024

1. Two reasons for Maharashtra facing a water crisis are overexploitation of groundwater and pollution of surface water bodies due to industrialization and urbanization.
2. Despite receiving the second-highest rainfall in the country, traditional irrigation practices like flood irrigation leading to water shortages in Maharashtra. This is because flood irrigation involves excessive water use, and the water gets lost due to runoff, leading to less water available for other uses.
3. To mitigate the water crisis in Maharashtra, one solution could be to promote the adoption of more efficient irrigation practices, such as drip irrigation and sprinkler systems, that use less water and are more targeted in their delivery. The state can also use rain water harvesting system to improve ground water levels along the western side of western Ghats which receive maximum rain fall. This will increase the efficiency of water use in the state of Maharashtra

- 124.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Narmada Bachao Andolan or Save Narmada Movement is a Non-Governmental Organisation (NGO) that mobilized tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water. Recently it has re-focused the aim to enable poor citizens, especially the oustees (displaced people) to get full rehabilitation facilities from the government.*

*People felt that their suffering would not be in vain... accepted the trauma of displacement*

*believing in the promise of irrigated fields and plentiful harvests. So, often the survivors of Rihand told us that they accepted their sufferings as sacrifice for the sake of their nation. But now, after thirty bitter years of being adrift, their livelihood having even being more precarious, they keep asking: "Are we the only ones chosen to make sacrifices for the nation?"*

*Source: S. Sharma, quoted in In the Belly of the River. Tribal conflicts over development in Narmada valley. A. Baviskar. 1995.*

**Questions :**

1. With what objective 'Sardar Sarovar Dam' was built?
2. Analyse the reason of protest by the tribal people.
3. Highlight the issues on which 'Save Narmada Movement' worked on.

**Ans :** 2023

1. The dam was constructed to provide water and electricity to the Indian states of Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Rajasthan
2. Construction of Dams caused the displacement of local people in large numbers. Constructing Dams caused the loss of their livelihood as they were dependent on agriculture.
3. Save Narmada Movement worked on the following issues:
  - (a) It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water.
  - (b) To enable poor and displaced people to get full rehabilitation facilities from the government.
  - (c) Against the loss of livelihood by tribal people.

- 125.** Read the case given below carefully and answer the questions that follow :

*NTPC is a major power providing corporation in India. It has ISO certification for EMS (Environment Management System) 14001. The corporation has a proactive approach*

*for preserving the natural environment and resources like water, oil, gas and fuels in places where it is setting up power plants. This has been possible through :*

- (a) Optimum utilisation of equipment adopting latest techniques and upgrading existing equipment.
- (b) Minimising waste generation by maximising ash utilisation.
- (c) Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balance and addressing the question of special purpose vehicles for afforestation.
- (d) Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.
- (e) Ecological monitoring, reviews and online database management for all its power stations.

**Questions :**

1. Define the term ‘sustainable development’.
2. What is the idea behind ISO certification?
3. Examine the proactive approach of National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC).

**Ans :**

1. Sustainable development refers to the practice of meeting the needs of the present generation without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs. It involves achieving economic growth and development while ensuring the protection of the environment and the conservation of natural resources for the benefit of both current and future generations.
2. The idea behind ISO certification is to establish and maintain internationally recognized standards for various aspects of business operations, such as quality management, environmental management, information security, and occupational health and safety. ISO certification ensures that organizations adhere to specific standards and guidelines set by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO), demonstrating

their commitment to quality, efficiency, and compliance with relevant regulations.

3. NTPC has a proactive approach for preserving the natural environment and resources like water, oil, gas and fuels in places where it is setting up power plants. This is achieved through the following methods.
  - (a) Optimum utilization of equipment adopting latest techniques and upgrading existing equipment.
  - (b) Minimizing waste generation by maximizing ash utilization.
  - (c) Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balances and encouraging afforestation.
  - (d) Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.

126. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*Read the given extract and answer the following questions.*

*Irrigation has also changed the cropping pattern of many regions with farmers shifting to water intensive and commercial crops. This has great ecological consequences like salinisation of the soil. At the same time, it has transformed the social landscape i.e., increasing the social gap between the richer landowners and the landless poor. As we can see, the dams did create conflicts between people wanting different uses and benefits from the same water resources.*

*In Gujarat, the Sabarmati-basin farmers were agitated and almost caused a riot over the higher priority given to water supply in urban areas, particularly during droughts. Interstate water disputes are also becoming common with regard to sharing the costs and benefits of the multi-purpose project.*

*Do you know that the Krishna-Godavari dispute is due to the objections raised by Karnataka, and Andhra Pradesh governments?*

*It is regarding the diversion of more water at Koyna by the Maharashtra government for a multi-purpose project. This would reduce downstream flow in their states with adverse consequences for agriculture and industry.*

*Most of the objections to the projects arose due to their failure to achieve the purposes for which they were built. Ironically, the dams that were constructed to control floods have triggered floods due to sedimentation in the reservoir.*

*Moreover, the big dams have mostly been unsuccessful in controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall.*

*You may have seen or read how the release of water from dams during heavy rains aggravated the flood situation in Maharashtra and Gujarat in 2006. The floods have not only devastated life and property but also caused extensive soil erosion. Sedimentation also meant that the flood plains were deprived of silt, a natural fertiliser, further adding on to the problem of land degradation. It was also observed that the multi-purpose projects induced earthquakes, caused water-borne diseases and pests and pollution resulting from excessive use of water.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Do you agree that farmers are responsible for the salinisation of soil? If yes, why?
2. Is it true that dams create conflict between people? State any one real life example.
3. Is it true that multi-purpose projects are not able to achieve their major objectives? If yes, how?

**Ans :**

1. Yes, I agree that farmers are also responsible for salinisation of soil. It is because, they switched to water intensive commercial crops which need more irrigation and cause salinisation of soil.
2. It is true that dams create conflicts between people. As from the same water resources, different people want different uses and benefits. For example, the Krishna-

Godavari dispute is due to the objections raised by Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh governments. It is regarding the diversion of more water of Koyna by the Maharashtra government for a multi-purpose project. This reduces downstream flow in their states with adverse consequences for agriculture and industry.

3. It is true that multi-purpose projects fail to achieve their aim for which they were built. The dams were constructed to control floods but have triggered floods due to sedimentation in the reservoir. Moreover, the big dams have mostly been unsuccessful in controlling floods at the time of excessive rainfall.

127. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Dam, structure built across a stream, a river, or an estuary to retain water. Dams are built to provide water for human consumption, for irrigating arid and semiarid lands, or for use in industrial processes. They are used to increase the amount of water available for generating hydroelectric power, to reduce peak discharge of floodwater created by large storms or heavy snowmelt, or to increase the depth of water in a river in order to improve navigation and allow barges and ships to travel more easily. Dams can also provide a lake for recreational activities such as swimming, boating, and fishing. Many dams are built for more than one purpose; for example, water in a single reservoir can be used for fishing, to generate hydroelectric power, and to support an irrigation system. Water-control structures of this type are often designated multipurpose dams.*

#### **Questions**

1. What is a dam ?
2. Why do we call them multi-purpose projects ?
3. What is the value and importance of Multi-purpose projects ? Explain with examples.
4. Who proclaimed dams as the temple of Modern India and why

**Ans :**

1. A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, often creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment. It refers to the reservoir rather than the structure.
  2. Dams are built for various purposes like irrigation, electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial uses, flood control, recreation, fish breeding. Therefore, dams are called multi-purpose projects where many uses of the impounded water are integrated with one another.
  3. The Multi-purpose projects are very valuable in the development of the country. These projects are useful for irrigation as well as for electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial uses, flood control, recreation, inland navigation and fish-breeding. For example, the Bhakra-Nangal Project water is being used both for hydel power production and irrigation. Similarly, the Hirakud project integrates conservation of water with flood control.
  4. Jawaharlal Nehru proudly proclaimed the dams as the ‘temples of modern India’ as it was felt that, the construction of large dams would solve many problems of India. It would result in the generation of electricity, would provide water for irrigation to the farmers, supply water to household and industries. Main purpose of launching multipurpose river projects in India was to combine development of agriculture and village economy with rapid industrialisation and urbanisation.
- 128.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*In the first century B.C., Sringeripura near Allahabad had sophisticated water harvesting system channelling the flood water of the river Ganga. During the time of Chandragupta Maurya, dams, lakes and irrigation systems were extensively built. Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works*

*have also been found in Kalinga (Odisha), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur (Maharashtra), etc. In the 11th Century, Bhopal Lake, one of the largest artificial lakes of its time was built. In the 14th Century, the tank in Hauz Khas, Delhi was constructed by Iltutmish for supplying water to Siri Fort area.*

*Sardar Sarovar Dam has been built over the Narmada River in Gujarat. This is one of the largest water resource projects of India covering four states—Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Gujarat and Rajasthan. The Sardar Sarovar project would meet the requirement of water in drought-prone and desert areas of Gujarat (9,490 villages and 173 towns) and Rajasthan (124 villages).*

*Multi-purpose projects and large dams have also been the cause of many new environmental movements like the ‘Narmada Bachao Andolan’ and the ‘Tehri Dam Andolan’ etc. Resistance to these projects has primarily been due to the large-scale displacement of local communities. Local people often had to give up their land, livelihood and their meagre access and control over resources for the greater good of the nation.*

#### **Questions**

1. During earlier time how did the irrigation done?
2. Why did J L Nehru proclaim the dams as the temples of modern India?
3. How do multi-purpose projects face resistance?

**Ans :**

1. During earlier days irrigation had been done through the proper channels, lakes, dams, etc. during Chandragupta Maurya, dams, channels, lakes were extensively built.
2. Dams would integrate development of agriculture and the village economy. It meets the requirement of water in drought-prone and desert areas. It also integrate economy with rapid industrialisation and growth of urban economy.

Therefore, Jawaharlal Nehru proudly proclaimed the dams as the ‘temples of modern India’.

3. The multi-purpose projects face many resistance because these projects have primarily been opposed due to the large-scale displacement of local communities. Local people often had to give up their land, livelihood and their meagre access and control over resources.
  
129. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*In the first century B.C., Sringaverapura near Allahabad had sophisticated water harvesting system channelling the flood water of the river Ganga. During the time of Chandragupta Maurya, dams, lakes and irrigation systems were extensively built. Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works have also been found in Kalinga, (Odisha), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur (Maharashtra), etc.*

*The ever-increasing number of industries has made matters worse by exerting pressure on existing freshwater resources. Industries, apart from being heavy users of water, also require power to run them. Much of this energy comes from hydroelectric power. Today, in India hydroelectric power contributes approximately 22 percent of the total electricity produced. Moreover, multiplying urban centres with large and dense populations and urban lifestyles have not only added to water and energy requirements but have further aggravated the problem.*

#### **Questions:**

1. Name the place where the evidence of sophisticated irrigation works.
2. How many percent of contribution made by the hydroelectric power in India?

**Ans :**

1. Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works have also been found in Kalinga, (Odisha), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur (Maharashtra), etc.

2. Today, in India hydroelectric power contributes approximately 22 percent of the total electricity produced.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

#### **DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

**Search by NODIA on Play Store to Download App**



# CHAPTER 8

## AGRICULTURE

### SUMMARY

1. Agriculture : The science and art of cultivation of the soil, raising crops and rearing livestock.
2. Agriculture Resources : Gifts of nature that include fertile soils, water for irrigation and favourable climatic conditions for the growth of plants.
3. Arable Land : Land currently ploughed and cultivated with crops. It is also called cultivable land and includes both cultivated and temporary fallow land.
4. Primitive Subsistence Farming : Farming on small patch of land with the help of primitive tools.
5. Intensive Subsistence Farming : A labour-intensive farming where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production.
6. Commercial Farming : Farming that uses higher doses of modern technology.
7. Dairy Farming : A kind of agriculture in which mainly emphasis is given on breeding and rearing cattle for milk.
8. Net Sown Area : The total land cultivated in a year is called net sown area.
9. Jhum Farming : A ‘slash and burn’ or nomadic farming.
10. Non-Food Crops : Rubber, fibre crops like cotton and jute.
11. Zaid Crops : Zaid crops are those crops which are sown after Rabi season and before Kharif season in a very short period. Watermelon, muskmelon and cucumber are Zaid crops.
12. Bio-Manures : Manures which come into being as a result of decay of biotic substances like dung and vegetation such as leaves, flowers and husks.
13. Chakbandi : Bringing of various fragmented holdings of land into bigger one at one place is called Chakbandi.
14. Holdings : Holdings are the fields on which agricultural crops are raised.
15. Intercropping : Raising of crops in association with each other or one another on the same field at the same time is called intercropping.
16. Cooperative Movement : The movement under which people come together and pool their resources such as land, labour and capital to produce more is known as cooperative movement.
17. Biotechnology : Use of biological agents and processes for beneficial purposes is known as biotechnology.
18. Dairy Animals : These are those animals which are reared mainly for getting milk from them.
19. Draught Animals : These are those animals which are used on the farms in ploughing, sowing, threshing and transporting farm products.
20. Chemical Fertilizers : Substances of natural or artificial origin containing chemical elements such as phosphorus, potassium and nitrogen that are necessary to plant life.
21. Extensive Agriculture : Seasonal pattern of land-use over large areas.
22. Green Revolution : Integrated institutional effort for increase of foodgrain production in selected regions like states of Punjab and Haryana.
23. Kharif : Crops that are sown after the onset of the south-west monsoon (June and July) and harvested in autumn.
24. Mixed Farming : A type of farming in which cultivation of crops and raising of livestock go hand in hand. Both these activities play an important part in the economy.

25. Plantation : Farming of plant crops like sugar, coffee, tea, cocoa, banana, spices, rubber and palm oil.
26. Rabi Crops : Crops sown in winter and harvested in early summer.
27. Support Prices : Support prices are the minimum and reasonable prices fixed by the government of which the farmer can sell his produce either in the open market or to the government agencies.
28. Beverage Crops : Tea and coffee are good examples of beverage crops used for drinking.
29. Cereals : Crops used as food.
30. Rotation of Crops : A systematic succession of different crops on a given piece of land carried out in order to avoid exhaustion of the soil.
31. Subsistence Agriculture : Farming confined to family consumption.
32. Tubewell : Electricity driven device for extraction of ground water.
33. Gross Cultivated Area : The net sown area and the land cultivated more than once in a year.
34. Wet Land Farming : Farming in areas of high rainfall and irrigated areas. Crops grown are rice, sugarcane and vegetable.
35. Fallow Land : Not cultivating a tract of land to maintain soil fertility.
36. Golden Fibre : Jute is called as golden fibre.
37. Horticulture : Specialised cultivation of fruits and vegetables.
38. Sericulture : Rearing of silk worms to produce raw silk.
39. White Revolution : A package programme meant for increasing the production of milk.
40. Yield Per Hectare : The production of a crop measured in kg. or tonne obtained from a hectare of agricultural land.
41. Interculture : An agricultural practice in which two crops are raised simultaneously in order to maintain the fertility and productivity of the fields.
42. Farming Eco-system : It consists of farms, farm animals and farmers together.
43. Operation Flood : A programme under which milk production is augmented in order to

raise the poor people above from the Below Poverty Line (BPL).

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Read the given statements and choose the correct option with regard to Rabi cropping season from the following :

- I. Rabi crops are sown in winter.
- II. Sown from October to December and harvested from April to June.
- III. Important crops are Maize, Cotton, Jute.
- IV. Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh are important for the production of wheat.

**Options :**

- (a) I, III and IV
- (b) II, III and IV
- (c) I, II and IV
- (d) I, II and III

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (c) I, II and IV

2. Identify the Crop with the help of the following information and chose the correct option.

- This is the staple food crop.
- This is a Kharif crop.
- It requires high temperature and high humidity.
- It requires above 100 cm of annual rainfall.

**Options:**

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| (a) Wheat | (b) Maize |
| (c) Rice  | (d) Jwar  |

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (c) Rice

3. Which one of the following is an example of Cultivable Wasteland ?

- (a) Gross cropped area
- (b) Uncultivable land
- (c) Barren wasteland
- (d) Current fallow land

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (b) Uncultivable land

4. Assertion : The promise of Green Revolution to produce large amounts has brought it under major controversies

Reason : It has caused land degradation due to overuse of chemicals, drying aquifers and vanishing biodiversity.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :** OD 2020

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

5. Which one of the following is a rabi crop?

- (a) Rice (b) Millets
- (c) Gram (d) Cotton

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

- (c) Gram

6. Study the following image and read following statement.



1. It is a Kharif crop and requires hot and humid climate for cultivation.
2. Major regions of rice production are the Ganga-Brahmaputra and Coastal areas and deltaic regions with alluvial soil.
3. Temperature above 25°C, and high humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm are favourable for cultivation of this crop.

Which of the above statements are correct

- (a) 1 and 2
- (b) 1 and 3
- (c) 2 and 3
- (d) All 1, 2 and 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (d) All 1, 2 and 3

7. Identify the crop-

- It is a Kharif crop which requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C
- It grows well in alluvial soil.
- In some states it is grown as Rabi crop.

**Option :**

- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| (a) Millets   | (b) Wheat |
| (c) Sugarcane | (d) Maize |

**Ans :**

Comp 2011

- (d) Maize

8. Arrange the following steps of sericulture in the correct sequence-

1. The extraction of silk filaments from the silkworm cocoons.
2. Silk filaments are woven together to form a thread.
3. The cultivation of mulberry leaves.
4. Rearing of silkworm on mulberry leaves.

**Option :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 3, 2, 1 |
| (c) 3, 4, 2, 1 | (d) 3, 4, 1, 2 |

**Ans :**

OD 2015, 2013

- (d) 3, 4, 1, 2

9. Complete the following table with the correct information-

Movement	Started in year	Started in state	Started because
Champaran Movement	1917	A - ?	B - ?

- (a) A-Punjab, B-Farmers of that region were forced to grow cotton on their land.
- (b) A-Bihar, B-Farmers of that region were forced to grow indigo on their land.
- (c) A-Punjab, B-Farmers of that region were forced to grow tea on their land.
- (d) A-Bihar, B-Farmers of that region were forced to grow nothing on their land.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (b) A -Bihar B -Farmers of that region were forced to grow indigo on their land.

- 10.** Assertion: Pulses except Tur dal are grown in rotation with other crops.

Reason: They are leguminous and help in restoring the fertility of soil by fixing nitrogen from air in the roots.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion

- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect

- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

- 11.** Which of the following soils is suitable for cultivation of tea?

- (a) Red soil  
 (b) Black soil  
 (c) Alluvial soil  
 (d) Laterite soil

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (d) Laterite soil

- 12.** Milpa and Ladang are different names for \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a) shifting cultivation.  
 (b) mixed farming  
 (c) truck farming  
 (d) plantation agriculture

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- (a) shifting cultivation

- 13.** It is a type of agriculture where farmers clear a patch of land and produce food crops to sustain their family. Choose correct option.

- (a) Regular farming  
 (b) Clear farming  
 (c) Slash and burn farming  
 (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (c) Slash and burn farming

- 14.** Identify the crop-

- Second most important cereal crop of India.
- Is main food crop in north and north-western part of country.
- is a rabi crop.
- Requires 50-70 cm of annual rainfall evenly distributed over the growing season.

**Option :**

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| (a) Wheat | (b) Maize |
| (c) Jowar | (d) Bajra |

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (a) Wheat

- 15.** In which of the countries, the 'slash and burn' agriculture is known as 'Roca'?

- (a) Brazil  
 (b) Indonesia  
 (c) Central Africa  
 (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

- (a) Brazil

- 16.** Look at the picture below and identify the type of cultivation-



- (a) Commercial farming  
 (b) J Humming  
 (c) Intersire Farming  
 (d) Terrace cultivator

**Ans :**

OD 2017, 2015

- (b) J Humming

17. Look at the table below carefully and answer the question-

Sector in (%)	2013-14	2014-15	2015-16
Agriculture	4.2	-0.2	1.1
Industry	5.0	5.9	7.3
Services	7.8	10.3	9.2
GDP	6.6	7.2	7.6

Though the GDP growth rate is increasing over the years still the growth rate in agriculture has been decelerating which of the following is the most significant reason of the situation-

- (a) Increase in import duties on agricultural products.
- (b) Reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.
- (c) Increase in subsidy on fertilisers.
- (d) Alternative employment opportunities are decreasing.

Ans :

OD 2017

- (b) Reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.

18. In which country, slash and burn agriculture is known as "Milpa"?

- (a) Venezuela
- (b) Brazil
- (c) Central America
- (d) Mexico and Central America

Ans :

Delhi 2008

- (d) Mexico and Central America

19. Assertion: Mostly women are employed to harvest tea leaves

Reason: Women are better pickers and can be employed at relatively cheaper rates.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

Ans :

SQP 2019

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

20. Which plantation crop and its cultivation is confined in the Nilgiri in Kerala, Karnataka and Tamilnadu?

- (a) tea
- (b) coffee
- (c) rubber
- (d) all of these

Ans :

Foreign 2009

- (b) coffee

21. Arrange the following state (from higher to lower) as rice production states-

1. Assam
2. Bihar
4. Uttar Pradesh
5. West Bengal

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (b) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (d) 3, 2, 4, 1

Ans :

Comp 2011

- (b) 4, 3, 2, 1

22. Why were the farmer forced to grow indigo on their land ?

- (a) it was necessary for the textile industries which were located in Kolkata.
- (b) it was necessary for the paper industries which were located in Kolkata.
- (c) it was necessary for the textile industries which were located in Britain.
- (d) it was necessary for the paper industries which were located in Britain

Ans :

SQP 2015

- (d) it was necessary for the textile industries which were located in Britain.

23. Assertion : India's primary activity is Agriculture. Reason : Two-thirds of its population is engaged in agricultural activities.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion

- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect  
 (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

(a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

- 24.** For the production of wheat there should be .....  
 ....

- (a) Cool and wet climate during its growing period but hot climate during the ripening period.  
 (b) Sufficient heat but very little rainfall.  
 (c) Sufficient heat and heavy rainfall.  
 (d) Hot climate during the growing period but cool climate during the ripening period.

**Ans :**

SQP 2005

- (a) Cool and wet climate during its growing period but hot climate during the ripening period.

- 25.** Complete the following table with correct information with regard to cultivation of Rice:

Rubber	Producing states	Temperature	Rainfall
	Kerala, Tamilnadu	A - ?	B - ?

- (a) A - 21°-27° C, B - Around 140 cm.  
 (b) A - 21°-27° C, B - Around 250 cm.  
 (c) A - 20°-34° C, B - Around 250 cm.  
 (d) A - 20°-34° C, B - Around 140 cm.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (c) A - 20°-34° C, B - Around 250 cm.

- 26.** Consider the following statements and select the correct answer using the code given below:

1. West Bengal is the leading producer of tea in India.
2. A tea plantation needs more than 200 cm of rainfall.

**Option :**

- (a) Only 1 is correct  
 (b) Only 2 is correct

- (c) Both 1 and 2 are correct  
 (d) Neither 1 nor 2 are correct

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (d) Neither 1 nor 2 are correct

- 27.** Look at the picture below and choose one of the major problem associated with the practice shown in the picture-



- (a) Contamination of soil, water and other vegetation.  
 (b) Pesticides are harmful for insects.  
 (c) Affect the crop yield.  
 (d) This method is less effective.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010, 2007

- (a) Contamination of soil, water and other vegetation.

- 28.** Which one of following is correct for organic farming.

- It is practised without factory made chemicals
- It does not affect environment in a negative manner.

**Option :**

- (a) Only (i)  
 (b) Only (ii)  
 (c) Both (i) and (ii)  
 (d) Neither (i) nor (ii)

**Ans :**

SQP 2006

- (c) Both (i) and (ii)

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
**Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers**

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
 From These Sample Papers**

29. Complete the following table with correct information-

Cropping seasons	Sowing period	Harvesting period	Crops grown
Kharif	Onset of monsoon	September-October	B - ?
Rabi	A - ?	April-June	Wheat, barley, gram

- (a) A-the summer months B-Paddy, maize, bajra, arhar
- (b) A-October- December, onset of winter. B-watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber
- (c) A-October- December, onset of winter. B-Paddy, maize, bajra, arhar
- (d) A-the summer months. B-watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber

Ans :

Foreign 2014

- (c) A -October- December, onset of winter. B -Paddy, maize, bajra, arhar.

30. Assertion : Agriculture is not an old economic activity.  
Reason : Farming varies from subsistence to commercial type.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

Ans :

Comp 2022

- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

31. Choose the correctly matched pair about the Primitive Cultivation in India from the following options:

- (a) Dahiya - Madhya Pradesh
- (b) Kumari - Jharkhand
- (c) Khil - Andhra Pradesh
- (d) Koman - Karnataka

Ans :

OD 2017

- (a) Dahiya - Madhya Pradesh

32. Over the years, cultivation methods have changed significantly depending upon the characteristics of .....

- (a) Type of crop
- (b) technological know-how
- (c) Type of season
- (d) Government intervention

Ans :

Delhi 2015, 2013

- (b) technological know-how

33. What has been the main dependency of primitive farming?

- (a) monsoon
- (b) labour
- (c) suitability of other environment
- (d) technical

Ans :

SQP 2012

- (a) monsoon

34. What are the features of primitive subsistence agriculture?

- (a) Large amount of labour
- (b) When the soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land
- (c) Use of canals
- (d) Use of fertilisers

Ans :

Foreign 2010

- (b) When the soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land

35. Match the given crops with their major producing areas shown on the map of India.

- A. Wheat
- B. Coffee
- C. Rice
- D. Tea

Table (Different Name of Slash and Burn Agriculture)	
I.	Bringa
II.	Waltre
III.	Dahiya
IV.	Kuruwa

- (a) A-II, B-I, C-IV, D-III

- (b) A-I, B-II, C-III, D-IV

**49.** Identify the agro based industry-

- Also called as silk farming.
- It is the process of making silk fibres.
- It includes the raising of silk worms and then processing of fibres they produce.
- Silkworms are feeded upon mulberry leaves.

**Option :**

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| (a) Agriculture | (b) Sericulture |
| (c) Apiculture  | (d) Lac culture |

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, 2014

- (b) Sericulture

**50.** Assertion: Crops are grown depending upon the variations in soil, climate and cultivation practices.

Reason : Crops are also grown according to availability of water.

(a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

(b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion

(c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect

(d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :** OD 2017

(b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion

**51.** In which of the following states of India is intensive subsistence farming largely practiced?

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| (a) West Bengal | (b) Punjab    |
| (c) Gujarat     | (d) Rajasthan |

**Ans :**

- (a) West Bengal

**52.** In which system of agriculture are high doses of fertilizers and pesticides used?

- |                           |
|---------------------------|
| (a) Intensive agriculture |
| (b) Extensive agriculture |
| (c) Jhooming              |
| (d) plantations           |

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (a) Intensive agriculture

**53.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- |                      |
|----------------------|
| (a) Terrace farming  |
| (b) Jhumming farming |
| (c) Fish farming     |
| (d) Dairy farming    |

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (a) Terrace farming

**54.** Match the following:

<b>List-I (Crops)</b>		<b>List-II (Geographical conditions)</b>	
A.	Barley	1.	Hot and dry climate with poor soil
B.	Rice	2.	Cool climate with poorer soil
C.	Millets	3.	Warm and moist climate with high altitude
D.	Tea	4.	Hot and moist climate with rich soil

**Option :**

- |                        |
|------------------------|
| (a) A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3 |
| (b) A-3, B-4, C-1,D-2  |
| (c) A-2, B-1, C-4, D-3 |
| (d) A-3, B-2, C-4, D-1 |

**Ans :**

OD 2018

- (a) A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3

**55.** Assertion : apple food crop in India is rice and requires less rain.

Reason: Our country is the fourth largest producer of rice in the world.

42. \_\_\_\_\_ farming practice depends on monsoon, natural fertility of the soil and sustainability of other environmental conditions.

- (a) Shifting
- (b) Primitive Subsistence
- (c) Intensive Subsistence
- (d) Commercial

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (b) Primitive Subsistence

43. Identify the crop being harvested in the given picture-



- (a) Cauliflower
- (b) Spinach
- (c) Tea
- (d) Cotton

Ans :

OD 2010

- (c) Tea

44. Assertion: Biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production.

Reason: Doses of biochemical input are used to grow crops rapidly.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

Ans :

Delhi 2016

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

45. It is a type of agriculture where farmers clear a patch of land and produce food crops to sustain their family. Choose correct option.

- (a) Regular farming
- (b) Clear farming
- (c) Slash and burn farming
- (d) None of these

Ans :

SQP 2013

- (d) Slash and burn farming

46. Another name for shifting agriculture in north-eastern states like Assam is \_\_\_\_.

- (a) Kuruwa
- (b) Kumari
- (c) Bewar
- (d) Jhumming

Ans :

Foreign 2019

- (d) Jhumming

47. Complete the following table with correct information with regard to cultivation of rice

Rice	Annual rainfall required	Cropping season	Temperature required for its growth (in degrees)
	Above 100 cm	(A)—?	(B)—?

- (a) A - Kharif cropping season, B - 16°C to 27°C

- (b) A - Kharif cropping season, B - 22°C to 37°C

- (c) A - Rabi cropping season, B - 22°C to 37°C

- (d) A - Rabi cropping season, B - 16°C to 27°C

Ans :

SQP 2020

- (a) A - Kharif cropping season, B - 16°C to 27°C

48. Which type of farming is practised in areas with high population pressure on land?

- (a) Shifting Farming
- (b) Primitive Subsistence Farming
- (c) Intensive Subsistence Farming
- (d) Commercial Farming

Ans :

Comp 2022

- (d) Intensive subsistence farming

- (c) A-II, B-I, C-III, D-IV  
 (d) A-I, B-II, C-IV, D-III

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (b) A-I, B-II, C-III, D-IV

**36.** Why is there enormous pressure on agricultural land?

- (a) Overpopulation  
 (b) Small scale farmers are not able to earn livelihood  
 (c) Due to the law of inheritance and division of land.  
 (d) Farmers of less land holdings are not able to afford the right techniques

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (d) Due to the law of inheritance and division of land.

**37.** Look at the table below carefully and answer the question-

Sector in (%)	2013-14	2014-15	2015-16
Agriculture	4.2	-0.2	1.1
Industry	5.0	5.9	7.3
Services	7.8	10.3	9.2
GDP	6.6	7.2	7.6

Though the GDP growth rate is increasing over the years still the growth rate in agriculture has been decelerating. which of the following is the most significant reason of the situation-

- (a) Increase in import duties on agricultural products.  
 (b) Reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.  
 (c) Increase in subsidy on fertilisers.  
 (d) Alternative employment opportunities are decreasing.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (b) Reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.

**38.** In which state of India slash and burn is called Jhumming?

- (a) Assam  
 (b) Manipur  
 (c) Madhya Pradesh  
 (d) Andhra Pradesh

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

- (a) Assam

**39.** \_\_\_\_\_ is a primary activity, which produces most of the food that we consume.

- (a) Agriculture  
 (b) sericulture  
 (c) apiculture  
 (d) lac culture

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (a) Agriculture

**40.** Assertion : Plantation has an interface of agriculture and industry.

Reason : Plantation is a type of commercial farming, a single crop is grown on a large area.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion  
 (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion  
 (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect  
 (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

**41.** The Agriculture that is practiced on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks is \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a) Shifting Agriculture  
 (b) Primitive Subsistence Farming  
 (c) Intensive Subsistence Farming  
 (d) Commercial Farming

**Ans :**

OD 2017, 2013

- (b) Primitive Subsistence Farming

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion  
 (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion  
 (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect  
 (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :** Delhi 2010

- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect

56. The \_\_\_\_\_ has led to division of land among successive generations and rendered the size of land holding uneconomical.

- (a) right of extractive  
 (b) right of acquired  
 (c) right of earned  
 (d) right of inheritance

**Ans :** Comp 2009

- (d) right of inheritance

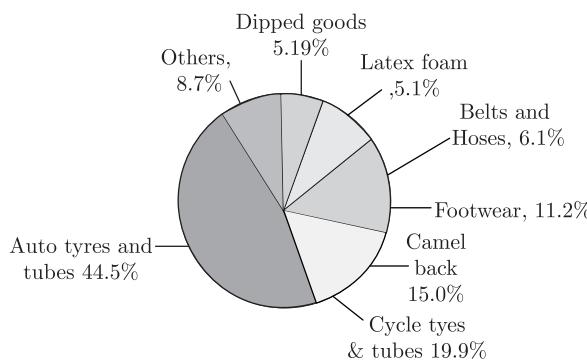
57. High yielding variety of seeds and use of chemical fertilisers are widely found in \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a) shifting cultivation  
 (b) sedentary intensive farming  
 (c) Commercial farming  
 (d) mixed farming

**Ans :** OD 2017, 2010

- (d) Commercial farming

58. Study the given diagram and answer the question given diagram below:



Which crop is used for making the goods listed in the diagram?

- (a) Cauliflower      (b) Rubber  
 (c) Tea                (d) Cotton

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015,

- (b) Rubber

59. Rice is a \_\_\_\_\_ crop in Haryana and Punjab, but in Odisha, it is a \_\_\_\_\_ crop.

- (a) commercial, subsistence  
 (b) subsistence, commercial  
 (c) domestic, commercial  
 (d) subsistence,domestic

**Ans :**

Foreign 2006

- (a) commercial, subsistence

60. What type of climate is required for sugarcane?

- (a) Dry and hot      (b) Hot and wet  
 (c) Cold and dry      (d) Cold and wet

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (b) Hot and wet

61. Complete the following table using correct information with regards to cultivation of Jowar:

Jowar	Annual rain fall required	Cropping season	Temperature required for its growth (in °C)
(A) - ?	Both seasons	(B) - ?	

- (a) A - Below 100 cm, B - 21°-27°C  
 (b) A - Below 100 cm, B - 26°-33°C  
 (c) A - Below 50 cm, B - 21°-27°C  
 (d) A - Below 50 cm, B - 26°-33°C

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (b) A - Below 100 cm, B - 26°-33°C.

62. Which one of the following oilseed in India is grown in both Rabi and Kharif seasons?

- (a) Groundnut      (b) Coconut  
 (c) Castor seed      (d) Mustard

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

- (c) Castor seed

63. \_\_\_\_\_ is also a type of commercial farming. In this type of farming, a single crop is grown on a large area.

- (a) Bewar
- (b) Khil
- (c) Jhumming
- (d) Plantation

Ans :

SQP 2011

- (d) Plantation

64. Assertion : Pulses are not considered as a major source of protein in a vegetarian diet.  
Reason: Rice is a rabi crop and requires lot of rain to grow.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

Ans :

Foreign 2009

- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

65. The plantation has an interface of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a) Industry, human
- (b) Agriculture, Farmer
- (c) Agriculture, Industry
- (d) Industry, Farmer

Ans :

OD 2020

- (c) Agriculture, Industry

66. Which one of the following is not a plantation crop?

- (a) Tea
- (b) Rubber
- (c) Sugarcane
- (d) wheat

Ans :

Comp 2012

- (d) wheat

67. Look at the table below carefully and answer the question-

Sector in (%)	2013-14	2014-15	2015-16
Agriculture	4.2	-0.2	1.1
Industry	5.0	5.9	7.3
Services	7.8	10.3	9.2
GDP	6.6	7.2	7.6

Though the GDP growth rate is increasing over the years still the growth rate in agriculture has been decelerating. which of the following is the most significant reason of the situation-

- (a) Increase in import duties on agricultural products.
- (b) Reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.
- (c) Increase in subsidy on fertilisers.
- (d) Alternative employment opportunities are decreasing.

Ans :

OD 2016

- (b) Reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector.

68. Which of the following state is the largest producer of tea in India?

- (a) Karnataka
- (b) Assam
- (c) West Bengal
- (d) Tamil Nadu

Ans :

Delhi 2011, 2007

- (b) Assam

69. \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest producer of coffee in India.

- (a) Assam
- (b) West Bengal
- (c) Karnataka
- (d) All of these

Ans :

SQP 2013

- (c) Karnataka

70. A well developed network of \_\_\_\_\_ connecting the plantation areas, processing industries and markets plays an important role in the development of plantations.

- (a) transport and communication
- (b) Climate
- (c) production
- (d) Irrigation

Ans :

Comp 2012

- (a) transport and communication



78. Slash and Burn Agriculture is known by specific name in different states of India.



<b>Table (Different Name of Slash and Burn Agriculture)</b>	
I.	Bringa
II.	Waltre
III.	Dahiya
IV.	Kuruwa

Match the shaded states marked in the given map with codes given in the Table (Different names of Slash and Burn Agriculture)

- (a) A-II, B-I, C-IV, D-III
- (b) A-I, B-II, C-III, D-IV
- (c) A-II, B-I, C-III, D-IV
- (d) A-I, B-II, C-IV, D-III

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (d) A-I, B-II; C-IV; D-III

79. Identify the movement-

- Also called as blood less revolution.
- Was a voluntary land reform movement.
- Initiated by Vinoba Bhave.
- This movements attempted to persuade wealthy land owners to voluntarily give a percentage of their land to landless people.

**Option :**

- (a) Salt Satyagraha
- (b) Dandi March
- (c) Bhoojan Movement
- (d) Champaran Movement

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (c) Bhoojan Movement

80. Arrange the following steps of ‘Jhumming cultivation’ in correct sequence.

1. Burning the felled trees.
2. clear a patch of land.
3. Fallowing.
4. Planting and harvesting.

**Option :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 3, 2, 1, 4 |
| (c) 2, 1, 3, 4 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (d) 2, 1, 4, 3

81. Match the following from List I and List II:

	<b>List I</b>	<b>List II</b>
A.	Rice	1. Temperature- 25° C, Rainfall- 100 cm-200 cm
B.	Wheat	2. Temperature- 20-25° C, Rainfall- 50 cm-75 cm
C.	Maize	3. Temperature- 21-25° C, Rainfall- 50 cm-75 cm
D.	Pulses	4. Temperature- 20-25° C, Rainfall- 50 cm-75 cm

**Option :**

- (a) A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3
- (b) A-3, B-4, C-2,D-1
- (c) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4
- (d) A-2, B-4, C-1, D-3

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012. 2009

- (c) A-1, B-2, C-3, D-4

82. Assertion : Organic farming is much in vogue.

Reason : In organic forming, crops are grown using high doses to increase production.

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

83. Write the temperature requirement of Maize crop.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

21-27 degree Celsius

84. Write the amount of annual rainfall required for the cultivation of Wheat.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

50-75 cm

**85.** What are the various activities that come under agriculture ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

- (i) Farming,
- (ii) Fishing,
- (iii) Cattle-rearing,
- (iv) Forestry.

**86.** Which country is the second largest producer of rice after China ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

India.

**87.** Which crop is used both as food and fodder ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

Maize.

**88.** Which type or variety of coffee is grown in India ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

Arabica.

**89.** Which conditions is useful for tea crop ?

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (1) Frequent showers evenly distributed over the year.
- (2) Frost free climate
- (3) Deep fertile well drained soil

**90.** Which state is the largest producer of groundnut ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

Andhra Pradesh.

**91.** Which crop is sown in winter from October to December and harvested in summer from April to June ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

Rabi.

**92.** Who initiated the Bhoodan Movement ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2006

Vinoba Bhave.

**93.** Which is the main food crop of the eastern and southern parts of the country?

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

Rice.

**94.** Which crop is grown with the onset of monsoon and are harvested in September-October ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

Kharif crops.

**95.** Which is the main food crop, in north and north-western parts of the country ?

**Ans :**

OD 2014

Wheat.

**96.** What is Horticulture ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

Intensive cultivation of vegetables, fruits, flowers and decorative plants is called Horticulture

**97.** Which is known as golden fibre ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

Jute.

**98.** In which type of farming farmers clear a patch of land for cultivation ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

In slash and burn agriculture or Shifting agriculture or Jhum.

**99.** What is called slash and burn agriculture in north eastern states ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2021, 2019

Slash and burn agriculture is called Jhum in north eastern states.

**100.** Which is the largest jowar producing state in India ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

Maharashtra.

**101.** What is Primitive subsistence agriculture ?

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Primitive subsistence agriculture is practised on small patches of land with the help of

- primitive tools like hoi, dao and digging sticks and family/community labour.
- 102.** What is known as Sericulture ?
- Ans :** Delhi 2014  
Rearing of silk worms for the production of silk fibre is known as Sericulture.
- 103.** What is India's position with respect to production of sugarcane ?
- Ans :** SQP 2009  
It is the second largest producer after Brazil.
- 104.** India is the leading producer and exporter of which crop in the world ?
- Ans :** Foreign 2011  
Tea.
- 105.** Name the two fibre crops of India.
- Ans :** Comp 2014  
Cotton and Jute.
- 106.** Which crops are grown by the Indian farmers as cash crops ?
- Ans :** OD 2017  
(i) Sugarcane,  
(ii) rubber,  
(iii) tobacco,  
(iv) spices,  
(v) fruits.
- 107.** Which is the main characteristic of the commercial farming ?
- Ans :** Foreign 2020  
Use of higher doses of modern inputs.
- 108.** Where is jute grown in India ?
- Ans :** Comp 2017  
West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Orissa (Odisha) and Meghalaya.
- 109.** What is the main reason for the high production of rubber in Kerala (India)?
- Ans :** OD 2010  
Due to the tropical and sub-tropical location of Kerala.
- 110.** Name three tobacco producing states of India.
- Ans :** Delhi 2005  
Tobacco producing states are Gujarat, Uttar Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka.
- 111.** Which factors make India favourable for agriculture ?
- Ans :** SQP 2007  
The vast expanse of level lands, rich soils, good climatic conditions for various types of crops, ample sunshine and a long growing season.
- 112.** What was the 'Gramdan' ?
- Ans :** Comp 2013  
Distribution of villages.
- 113.** Which are the intensively cultivated areas in India ?
- Ans :** OD 2018  
The alluvial tracts of northern India extending from Punjab to West Bengal and Assam and the coastal plain from Gujarat in the west to Orissa in the east.
- 114.** What is plantation agriculture ?
- Ans :** Delhi 2015  
Plantation farming is bush or tree farming. It was introduced in India by the British in the 19th century.
- 115.** Which crop was firstly introduced in the Baba Budan hills ?
- Ans :** SQP 2007  
Coffee.
- 116.** What is associated with PDS (Public Distribution System) ?
- Ans :** Foreign 2013  
A programme that provides foodgrains at subsidised price in rural and urban areas.
- 117.** Bhoojan-Gramdan movement is also known as by what name ?
- Ans :** Comp 2017  
Bloodless Revolution.

**118.** Which climatic condition are suitable for the growth of rubber ?

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (1) It requires moist and humid climate.
- (2) It requires rainfall less than 50 cm.
- (3) It can be grown in all types of soil.

**119.** Name the important sugarcane producing states of India.

**Ans :**

SQP 208

Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh.

**120.** What is the gross cultivated area ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2005

The net sown area and the land cultivated more than once each year together make the gross cultivated area.

**121.** Why is India called an agricultural country ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

About two-third of Indian population depends directly upon agriculture.

**122.** With which Operation Flood is operated ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

White Revolution.

**123.** Name three Kharif crops and three Rabi crops.

**Ans :**

OD 2015, 2011

Kharif Crops : Rice, jute, maize. Rabi Crops: Wheat, gram, mustard.

**124.** Explain any two efforts taken by the Government of India to modernise agriculture.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

Two efforts taken by the government to modernize agriculture in India are:

- (1) Introduction of High Yielding varieties of seeds for better production of crops and incentivizing the farmers by providing Minimum Support Prices to the crops.
- (2) The government has launched several schemes like Kisan Credit Card and

many others to protect the interests of the farmers.

**125.** Mohan owns a farm in Uttar Pradesh. He wishes to cultivate either Jute or Sugarcane. Which crop out of these two should he cultivate keeping in mind the conditions required for their growth? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

He should cultivate Sugarcane as the geographical conditions it requires are available in Uttar Pradesh.

Geographical conditions:

- (1) Sugarcane grows well in hot and humid climate.
- (2) It requires a temperature of 21° C to 27° C.
- (3) Needs annual rainfall between 75 cm and 100 cm.
- (4) Irrigation is required in the regions of low rainfall.
- (5) It can be grown on a variety of soils and needs manual labour from sowing to harvesting.

All these conditions are available in Uttar Pradesh. The favourable conditions for cultivation of Jute are prevalent in West Bengal and surrounding areas.

**126.** Describe any three main features of 'Kharif crop season.'

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

Features of Kharif crop season :

- (1) It begins with the onset of monsoon in May.
- (2) Crops are harvested in September — October.
- (3) Requires more rainfall between 100-110 cm
- (4) It requires loamy or alluvial soil.

**127.** Analyse the merits of Multipurpose projects.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Merits of multi-purpose projects are given below :

- (1) Dams are built for generating hydroelectricity.

- (2) Canals are made for irrigation purpose.  
 (3) Canals can also be used for inland navigation.  
 (4) Water supply can be used for domestic and industrial purpose.
- 128.** Which are the two most important food crops of India? Name the major producing states of any one major crop.  
 or  
 Name three important wheat producing states of India.
- Ans :** Delhi 2017  
 The two main or the most important food crops are wheat and rice. Wheat is produced in : (i) Punjab, (ii) Haryana, (iii) Uttar Pradesh, (iv) Madhya Pradesh and (v) Bihar. Rice producing states are : Assam, Tamil Nadu, West Bengal etc.
- 129.** Name four major fibre crops grown in India. What is 'sericulture' ?
- Ans :** SQP 2009  
 Cotton, jute, hemp and natural silk are the four major fibre crops grown in India. The first three are derived directly from the crops grown in the soil, but silk is obtained from the cocoons of silk worms fed on mulberry leaves. Sericulture : Rearing of silk worms for the production of silk fibre is known as sericulture.
- 130.** Why is India called an agricultural country ?
- Ans :** OD 2011  
 Due to following reasons our country (India) is called an agricultural country :  
 (1) Two-third of its population is engaged in agricultural activities (farming, rearing of animal, fisheries etc.).  
 (2) Agriculture is a primary activity which produces most of the food, consumed.  
 (3) It also produces raw-material for various industries based on agricultural production.  
 (4) Some agricultural products like tea, coffee, spices, etc., are also exported to earn foreign exchange.
- 131.** Which are two major fibre crops? Name the major producing states of each crop.

**Ans :** Comp 2015

Two major fibre crops are cotton and jute. Major producing states of cotton are : Maharashtra, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu and Haryana. Jute is produced in West Bengal, Orissa (Odisha), Assam and Tripura.

- 132.** Can you name some industries based on agricultural raw material ?

**Ans :** OD 2017

Yes, I can name some industries based on agricultural raw material. Agro-industries comprising jute mills, cotton mills, silk mills, textile industry, processing industry, cottage industries, animal husbandry, poultry, sericulture etc.

- 133.** Mention names of four important revolutions related with agricultural products.

**Ans :** Delhi 2008

- (1) The Green Revolution.
- (2) White Revolution.
- (3) Yellow Revolution.
- (4) Blue Revolution.

- 134.** Explain the three steps taken by the central and state governments to improve Indian agriculture after independence.

**Ans :** SQP 2010

- (i) Abolition of zamindari system. (ii) Consolidation of landholdings. (iii) Apply various irrigation schemes. (iv) Developing high yielding varieties of seeds. (v) Control over pests and diseases. (vi) Encouragement to the use of various modern inputs.

- 135.** In which regions mainly jhum farming (slash and burn agriculture) is a popular form of agriculture ?

**Ans :** Foreign 2016

Jhum farming (or slash and burn agriculture) is practised mainly in : (i) Assam, (ii) Meghalaya, (iii) Mizoram and (iv) Nagaland.

It is also practised in some areas of Manipur (such as Pamlou), Chhattisgarh (Baster) and Andaman and Nicobar Islands. It is also popular

in some areas of Madhya Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Orissa and South-eastern Rajasthan.

- 136.** Describe the geographical conditions required for production of Maize.

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

**Maize :**

- (1) Geographical requirement: Maize is a Kharif crop. It requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C and grow well in old alluvial soil.
- (2) States : Major maize producing states are : (i) Karnataka, (ii) U.P., (iii) Bihar, (iv) Andhra Pradesh and (v) M.P.

- 137.** Why is breakthrough in dry land farming most essential in Indian agriculture ?

**Ans :**

OD 2005

Causes of breakthrough in dry land farming :

- (1) Dry land farming means raising drought enduring crops in certain regions which receive inadequate rainfall and are devoid of irrigation facilities.
- (2) Dry land farming is very essential in Indian agriculture. It is necessary in areas which lack all these facilities.
- (3) Bunding and contour ploughing are highly beneficial to retain maximum amount of moisture and avoid soil erosion.

- 138.** State four main features of intensive farming.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007, 2005

- (1) Suitable for small landholdings,
- (2) Two or three crops are grown each year,
- (3) Production per acre is higher and (iv) more labour and capital investment is required.

- 139.** Differentiate between settled agriculture and shifting agriculture.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- I. Settled agriculture : When any form of agriculture (primitive or modern) is practised permanently on a big or small piece of land or farm, it is known as settled agriculture.
- II. Shifting agriculture : That form of agriculture in which a continuous change or shifting of land is made for carrying on

agricultural activities is known as shifting agriculture. In shifting agriculture, a patch of land is cleared either by burning or cutting of trees and shrubs, and they cultivated for a short period. Then such a part of land is left when it is either overrun by weeds or exhausted by leaching.

- 140.** Write the main characteristics of intensive subsistence farming.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

1. It is practised in areas of high population pressure on land.
2. It is labour intensive farming.
3. Yield per hectare is high because high doses biochemical inputs and irrigation are used.
4. The size of the land-holdings is small and uneconomical.
5. Farmers take maximum output from the limited land by raising 2-3 crops in a year from the same land, i.e., multiple cropping is practised.

- 141.** Describe any three changes in Indian agriculture after the Green Revolution.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (1) HYV seeds are used for better or higher output of some major crops like rice and wheat.
- (2) For irrigation, canals are laid to provide water to all water thirsty states (or areas) having shortage of water supply.
- (3) Use of fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides has enhanced the production of various crops.

- 142.** What are the main features of Green Revolution ?

**Ans :**

OD 2015

Main features of Green Revolution :

- (1) Large scale use of high yielding varieties of seeds,
- (2) Development of surface and ground water irrigation,
- (3) Use of fertilizers, insecticides and pesticides,

- (4) Land reforms,  
 (5) Rural electrification and  
 (6) Use of machines.
- 143.** Which are the two most important food crops of India ? Name the major producing states of each crop.
- Ans :** Delhi 2010  
 Two major food crops of India are rice and wheat.
- Producing States :**
- (a) Rice : Rice is cultivated in : West Bengal, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Punjab and Haryana.
  - (b) Wheat : Wheat is cultivated in : Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana and Bihar.
- 144.** Can a crop be commercial in one region and subsistence in another ? Give two examples.
- Ans :** SQP 2014, 2012  
 Yes, a crop can be commercial in one region and subsistence in another.  
 For example :  
 (1) Rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab but in Orissa, it is a subsistence crop.  
 (2) Wheat is a subsistence crop in Bihar, whereas it is a commercial in Punjab.
- 145.** State the conditions suitable for growing millets with reference to the temperature, rainfall and seasons.
- Ans :** Foreign 2019  
 Millets : Jowar, bajra and ragi are some of the important millets grown in India.
- (1) Jowar grows in areas with a mean monthly temperature of 18 to 32°C. It requires about 30 to 60 cm. of rain. Moderate fertile soil is best for jowar.
  - (2) Bajra is also a crop of dry and warm climate. Climatic conditions are almost similar to that required to jowar.
  - (3) Ragi is a rainfed kharif crop, grows on well-drained alluvial loamy and red or black sandy loams. It requires climatic conditions like bajra.
- 146.** Name any two pulses one grown in kharif and other in rabi seasons. Why are pulses mostly grown in rotation with other crops ?
- Ans :** OD 2013  
 Pulses grown in Kharif season are : Tur (arhar), Moong, and Urd.  
 Pulses grown in Rabi season are : Peas and Gram.  
 Major pulses producing states of India:  
 (1) Madhya Pradesh, (ii) Uttar Pradesh, (iii) Rajasthan, (iv) Maharashtra, (v) Karnataka.  
 Pulses are leguminous crops which help in restoring soil fertility by fixing nitrogen from the air. Thus pulses are mostly grown in rotation with other crops.
- 147.** What measures are being taken to revive the production of jute in India ?
- Ans :** Comp 2019  
 The following measures are being taken to revive the production of jute in India :  
 (1) High yielding varieties of seeds such as JRO-7835 have been developed by the Jute Research Institute.  
 (2) Better plant production measures have been introduced.  
 (3) Use of chemical fertilizers and scientific methods of cultivation have been encouraged.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 148.** Describe any three main features of 'Rabi crop season.'
- Ans :** Delhi 2019  
 Features of Rabi crop season :  
 (1) It begins with the withdrawal of monsoon in October. They are sown in winters from October to December.  
 (2) At the time of ripening, it requires bright sunshine and is harvested in Summer from April to June.  
 (3) Crops depend on sub-soil moisture.

- (4) Requires less rainfall between 50-75 cm. Availability of precipitation during winter months due to western temperate cyclones help in success of these crops.
- 149.** Describe any five features of primitive subsistence farming.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The features of primitive subsistence farming are given below :

- (1) It is practiced on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks with the help of family members.
  - (2) It depends upon monsoons, natural fertility of soil and environmental suitability.
  - (3) It is also called ‘slash and burn’ agriculture.
  - (4) Farmers clear a patch of land and produce crops for their sustenance.
  - (5) When the soil fertility decreases, farmers shift to new area, clear forest by burning and again sow crops.
- 150.** “The Government of India has introduced various institutional and technological reforms to improve agriculture in the 1980s and 1990s.” Support this statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

The Government of India has introduced various institutional and technological reforms under comprehensive Land Development Programme to improve agriculture in the 1980s and 1990s.

#### Land Development Programme :

- (1) Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, fire and disease.
- (2) Establishment of Grameen (regional rural) banks, cooperative societies and banks for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest.

#### Other Reforms :

Apart from land development programme, government has initiated many other benefit schemes for the farmers.

- (1) Kisan Credit Card (KCC) : Scheme for giving easy and cheap loans to small farmers. Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) for Kisan Credit Card (KCC) holders.
- (2) Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced through radio and television channels.
- (3) Government also announced Minimum Support Price (MSP) for various agricultural products like cereals, pulses and others (to check the exploitation of farmers by middlemen).

- 151.** Establish the difference between Commercial farming and Subsistence farming with the help of a suitable example.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2017

#### Commercial Farming :

- (1) Use of higher doses of modern inputs like HYV seeds, fertilizers, etc.
- (2) Commercialization of agriculture varies from region to another.
- (3) Plantation is also a type of commercial farming.
- (4) Use of well-developed network of transport and communication.
- (5) High productivity for commercial purpose.

#### Subsistence Farming :

- (1) Is practiced on small patches of land.
- (2) Labour intensive farming.
- (3) Use of primitive tools.
- (4) Dependent on Monsoons.
- (5) Called as ‘Slash and burn’ agriculture.
- (6) Low productivity.

#### Example :

Rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab but in Odisha it is a subsistence crop.

- 152.** Why is India not the world’s largest producer of rice, though it has the largest area under this crop ? Give two reasons in support of your answer.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

- (1) In India traditional methods are used to transplantation of paddy. It is mostly done by hand.

- (2) We do not used machines in rice cultivation due to small land holdings. On the contrary mechanised farming of paddy is practised in China. Hence per hectare production of rice is higher in China than in India.
- (3) Labour-intensive and time-consuming process of paddy cultivation results in low yield per hectare in India.
- (4) Use of fertilisers and manures has not yet been popular so far in India.
- 153.** What improvement should be made in Indian agriculture to provide sufficient food to fast growing population ? Your answer should be in four points.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (1) Green revolution should be extended to other crops and cereals.
- (2) Wide use of HYV of seeds for other crops. Research and development of HYV of seeds for cereals and other crops.
- (3) Sufficient irrigation facilities. The plan of linking all the rivers of India is bound to be beneficial for agriculture. Dependence on rains will reduce.
- (4) Use of bio-fertilizers and bio-pesticides will help the crop as well as the soil in ovecoming its infertility as well as reduction in the harmful affects of overuse of fertilizers and pesticides.

- 154.** What is slash and burn agriculture ? Mention its local names by mentioning the states or regions.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

Under the, ‘slash and burn’ agriculture, farmers clear a patch of land, grow crop for some years on the patch of land and then move to a new patch.

Local names of slash and burn agriculture are given below :

- (1) Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland—Jhumming.
- (2) Manipur—Pam/ou.
- (3) Bastar, Andaman and Nicobar Islands—Dipa.
- (4) Madhya Pradesh—Bewar or Dahiya.

- (5) Andhra Pradesh—Podu or Penda.
- (6) Orissa—Pama Dabi or Koman or Bringa.
- (7) Western Ghats—Kumari.
- (8) South-eastern Rajasthan—Valre or Waltre.
- (9) Himalayan belt—Khil.
- (10) Jharkhand—Kuruwa.

- 155.** “Animal husbandry is an auxiliary activity of Indian agriculture.” Explain it by giving four examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (1) Farms, farm animals and farmers together make a farming eco-system in India.
- (2) Ox, he-buffaloes and camels are used as plough animals on the farm.
- (3) They help in ploughing, sowing, threshing and transporting farm products.
- (4) Animal wastes are used as farm manures. Animals and dairy development play key role in rural development.

- 156.** Describe any three geographical conditions required for tea cultivation. Name any two producing states of tea.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

- (1) Climatic conditions required for the cultivation of tea are as follows :
  - (i) Tea grows well in tropical and subtropical climates endowed with deep and fertile well-drained soil rich in humus and organic matter.
  - (ii) Warm and moist frost-free climate is required throughout the year.
  - (iii) Frequent showers throughout the year. High humidity ensures continuous rapid growth of tender leaves.
  - (iv) It also needs plentiful supply of cheap and skilled labour as it is a labour intensive crop.
- (2) Major tea producing states of India are :
  - (i) Assam.
  - (ii) Hills of Darjeeling and Jalpaiguri districts in West Bengal.
  - (iii) Tamil Nadu.
  - (iv) Kerala.
  - (v) Himachal Pradesh.

**157.** How is biotechnology beneficial to the farmers ? How is it able to maintain safe and sustainable environment?

**Ans :**

SOP 2020

Biotechnology is beneficial to the farmers in the following ways :

- (1) It can be used to modify different crops genetically to increase the yield per hectare.
- (2) This technology will make the crops resistant to insects, pests and diseases.
- (3) This will reduce the consumption of insecticides, pesticides, etc.
- (4) Genetically modified seeds require less water.
- (5) It will reduce cost of production.
- (6) It will benefit the rich and poor farmers and is environmentally safe and sustainable.

**158.** Describe any three geographical conditions required for tea cultivation. Name any two producing states of tea.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (1) Climatic conditions required for the cultivation of tea are as follows :
  - (i) Tea grows well in tropical and subtropical climates endowed with deep and fertile well-drained soil rich in humus and organic matter.
  - (ii) Warm and moist frost-free climate is required throughout the year.
  - (iii) Frequent showers throughout the year. High humidity ensures continuous rapid growth of tender leaves.
  - (iv) It also needs plentiful supply of cheap and skilled labour as it is a labour intensive crop.
- (2) Major tea producing states of India are :
  - (i) Assam.
  - (ii) Hills of Darjeeling and Jalpaiguri districts in West Bengal.
  - (iii) Tamil Nadu.
  - (iv) Kerala.
  - (v) Himachal Pradesh.

**159.** How is biotechnology beneficial to the farmers ? How is it able to maintain safe and sustainable environment?

**Ans :**

OD 2009, 2006

Biotechnology is beneficial to the farmers in the following ways :

- (1) It can be used to modify different crops genetically to increase the yield per hectare.
- (2) This technology will make the crops resistant to insects, pests and diseases.
- (3) This will reduce the consumption of insecticides, pesticides, etc.
- (4) Genetically modified seeds require less water.
- (5) It will reduce cost of production.
- (6) It will benefit the rich and poor farmers and is environmentally safe and sustainable.

**160.** Find out why an Indian farmer does not want his son to become a farmer.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (1) With the pace of increase in population, land holding has shrunk in hardly two or three fields per person.
- (2) Owing to use of primitive means of farming and over-use of chemical fertilizers, pesticides, germicides etc., has affected productivity or yield per hectare.
- (3) It is a labour intensive yet non-profitable industry.
- (4) It demands manual labour while new generations are under influence of western culture. They shirk from labour.
- (5) Water logging, salinity, eutrophication, desertification, air and water pollution have destroyed fertility of soil in India.

**161.** What are the challenges being faced by Indian farmers? What has this resulted in ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

#### Challenges faced by Indian farmers :

1. Reduction in public investment by government in the agricultural sector particularly in areas of irrigation, power, rural roads, market and mechanisation.
2. Subsidy on fertilizers has decreased leading to increases in the cost of production.

3. Reduction in import duties on agricultural products has proved detrimental to agriculture in the country.

All these factors have led to stiff international competition. Farmers are thus withdrawing their investment from agriculture causing a downfall in agricultural employment.

- 162.** Distinguish between commercial agriculture and subsistence farming.

Ans :

SQP 2016

	<b>Commercial Farming</b>	<b>Subsistence Farming</b>
1.	In this type of farming agricultural produce is consumed by the farmer's family. Therefore, only food crops are grown such as wheat, rice, etc.	In this type of farming crops are grown mainly for the purpose of sale or trade. Thus, only cash crops are grown such as sugarcane, etc.
2.	Size of land holdings are small and scattered	Size of farms are large and extensive
3.	It is a labour intensive farming	Modern techniques or scientific methods of cultivation are practised

- 163.** Distinguish between rabi and kharif crops.

Ans :

Foreign 2018, 2010

	<b>Kharif Crop</b>	<b>Rabi Crop</b>
1.	It begins with the onset of monsoons in May	It begins with the withdrawal of monsoons in October.
2.	Sowing of seeds is done in June or early July.	Sowing of seeds is done in October—November.
3.	Crops are harvested in September—October.	Crops are harvested in April-May

	<b>Kharif Crop</b>	<b>Rabi Crop</b>
4.	Crops are depend on the monsoons	Crops are depend on the sub-soil moisture
5.	Rice, millets, maize, groundnuts, jute, cotton and various pulses are grown during this season.	Wheat, gram and oil-seeds like mustard and rapeseeds are generally grown in this season.

- 164.** Distinguish between tea and coffee.

or

On the basis of temperature, rainfall and soil how tea plantation is different from coffee plantation.

Ans :

Comp 2013

	<b>Tea</b>	<b>Coffee</b>
1.	Temperature : Ideal temperature for the growth of plant is 20° C to 30°C.	Temperature : Ideal temperature for the growth of plant is 15°C to 28°C
2.	Rainfall : It requires an annual rainfall of about 150-300 cm.	Rainfall : It requires an annual rainfall of about 150-200 cm.
3.	Soil : The plant requires a light loamy soil.	Soil : The plant requires red and laterite soils.
4.	Producers : Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala.	Producers : Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Karnataka.

- 165.** What do you mean by Shoodan' and 'Gramdan'? Why is Vinoba Bhave's movement known as the bloodless revolution?

Ans :

OD 2011

Thoodan and 'Gramdan' were land donation movements run by Vinoba Bhave.

In 'Thoodan', landlords donated a piece of land (or some area of his own agricultural land) which were distributed among the landless poor people.

In 'Gramdan' some zamindars (landlords) and owners of several villages offered to distribute some villages among the landless people.

**Bloodless Revolution :** For 'Thoodan' and 'Gramdan' movement, there was no use of physical or political or legal pressure. There was no scope for violence in any form or at any level. Rich people donated their land or villages willfully. This is why the movement is known as the bloodless revolution.

- 166.** 'Agriculturally, India is an important country.' Justify giving four reasons.

**Ans :** SQP 2020

- (1) Nearly two-thirds of our total population is engaged in agricultural activities. It is the main source of employment in India. It provides livelihood to about 64% of the total labour force.
- (2) Agricultural sector produces various crops such as wheat, rice, millets, pulses. Thus, it ensures food security for the country.
- (3) Various cash crops like cotton, sugarcane, coffee, jute are grown. In this way, agriculture provides raw material to agro-based industries.
- (4) Various agricultural products like tea, spices, coffee are exported. This helps to earn foreign exchange. Agriculture has the largest share in India's national income.

- 167.** Explain the reasons that hinder the pace of agricultural development of India.

**Ans :** Delhi 2013

- (1) Most of the farmers in large part of country still depend upon monsoon and natural fertility in order to carry on their agriculture.
- (2) The traditional subsistence agriculture still continues in certain parts of India. The farmer produces just enough for his

family with little or no surplus left for sale.

- (3) Animals continue to play a significant role in various kinds of agricultural operations or activities.
- (4) The agricultural holdings are mostly small in size.
- (5) In some parts of the country, villages still lack in required means of transport, metalled roads, storage facilities, etc.

- 168.** Explain any four institutional reform programmes introduced by the government in the interest of farmers.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016, 2015

- (1) Collectivisation, consolidation of holdings, cooperation and abolition of zamindari, etc. were given priority to bring about institutional reforms in the country after independence.
- (2) Land reform was the main focus of the First Five Year Plan.
- (3) Provision of crop, i.e., insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, etc.
- (4) Establishment of Gramin Banks — cooperative societies and banks for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest.

- 169.** Describe any four technological reforms introduced by the government in the interest of farmers after independence.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (1) The government provides HYV seeds and fertilisers.
- (2) Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on the radio and television.
- (3) Government provides technical assistance and training for farmers.
- (4) Soil, testing facilities, cold storage and transportation facilities are provided by government for farmers.

- 170.** "Agriculture had been the backbone of the Indian economy. But the declining share of agriculture in the GDP now is a matter of

serious concern.” Explain the meaning of this statement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

**Agriculture is the backbone of the Indian economy because :**

- (1) In India, about 63% people were engaged in agriculture sector in 2001.
  - (2) Share in GDP was more than 40% in 1973.
  - (3) Raw materials for secondary sectors are mostly supplied by the agriculture. But now share of agriculture is declining in the G.D.P. year by year. So, it is a matter of serious concern for all.
    - (i) Share of agriculture in the G.D.P. has declined from 44% to 24% during 1973 to 2003.
    - (ii) The primary sector continues to be the largest employer even in 2000, but the production has not increased by this rate.
171. Why has Indian agriculture started a declining trend in food production ? Explain any four reasons.

**Ans :**

Comp 2007

- (1) Farmers are facing a big challenge from international competition. Despite being an important producer of rice, cotton, rubber, tea, coffee, jute and spices, our agricultural products are not able to compete with the developed countries because of highly subsidised agriculture in those countries.
  - (2) Government's reduction in the public investment in agriculture sector particularly in irrigation, power, rural roads, market and mechanisation.
  - (3) Subsidy on fertilisers is decreased leading to increase in the cost of production.
  - (4) Reduction in import duties on agricultural products have proved detrimental to agriculture in the country.
172. Mention any two major steps taken by the government under comprehensive land development programme. State any two

steps taken by the government which proved detrimental to agriculture in the country.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (1) (i) Provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, fire and diseases.
- (ii) Establishment of Grameen banks, Cooperative societies and bank to provide loans at lower interest rates to the farmers.
- (2) (i) Government has reduced its investment in irrigation, power, rural roads, market and mechanisation.
- (ii) Government has decreased subsidy on fertilisers.
- (iii) Government has reduced import duties on agricultural products.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
**Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**  
**Every School conduct Pre-Board**  
**From These Sample Papers**

173. Write the geographical conditions required for the cultivation of rice and tea.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

Geographical conditions for rice and tea :

	Rice	Tea
1.	It requires high temperature, (above 25°C) and high humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm.	Tea requires deep and fertile well-drained soil rich in humus and organic matter. It needs warm and moist free climate all the year.
2.	In the areas of less rainfall it grows with the help of irrigation.	Tea bushes require frequent showers evenly distributed throughout the year.
3.	Major areas where they are grown - West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Orissa, Andhra Pradesh.	Major areas where they are grown - Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu, Kerala, Meghalaya, Andhra Pradesh.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 174.** Name the two most important cereal crops grown in India. Describe the conditions required to grow these two crops.

**Ans :**

OD 2019, 2017

Rice and wheat are the two most important cereal crops grown in India.

### Rice

Rice is the staple food crop of most people in India especially in coastal regions. The geographical condition required for growth of rice are as follow :

- (1) It is a kharif crop and requires hot and humid climate for cultivation. Temperature above 25°C and high humidity with annual rainfall above 100 cm is favourable for growth of rice.
- (2) Rich alluvial soils of the flood plains, river basins and deltaic areas which are renewed every year are ideal for rice cultivation.
- (3) Rice requires abundant rainfall or good water supply through irrigation and flooded fields during the earlier part of its growing season in June-July. Ankle deep water in the field helps the crops grow.
- (4) Plenty of cheap labour is required as most of the farming involves manual labour. Wheat is the main food crop for the people residing in the North and Northwestern part of the country.

### Wheat

The geographical conditions favourable for growth of wheat are as follows :

- (1) Wheat is a rabi crop and requires a cool growing season. Average temperature should be between 10°C to 5°C at the time of sowing, but higher temperatures and bright sunshine is required at the time of harvesting for proper ripening of arrains.
- (2) Wheat requires moderate rainfall of 50 cm to 75 cm annually, evenly distributed over the growing season. A little winter rain before ripening helps in increasing the yield.

- (3) Deep alluvial clayey soils of Northern Plains and black soil of Deccan are suitable for growing wheat.

There are two important wheat-growing zones in the country : the Ganga-Satluj plains in the North-west and the black soil region of the Deccan. Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan and parts of Madhya Pradesh are the major wheat-growing states.

- 175.** Give reasons for increasing use of fertilisers in farming.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

Reasons for increasing use of fertilisers in farming :

1. Increasing Population : Due to increasing population of our country, a pressure has been felt on agriculture. Agriculture sector has disguised uneni I oyment so, the people have tried to establish coordination by increasing per hectare production. For this, they used fertilisers heavily.
2. Commercialisation : Sometimes ago, the purpose of agriculture was meant for sustained livelihood but with the changing time, it has become purely commercial. This is the reason to raise per hectare productivity people began using fertilisers.
3. Mechanisation of Agriculture : Due to modern agricultural machines and equipments, people's dependency on livestock has declined. Therefore, a decrease in their number has been observed. Farmers are mostly using tractors, thrashers, etc. This way the amount of natural manure that farmers obtained in form of dung has decreased and the use of fertilisers has increased.
4. HYV seeds : Many high yielding varieties of seeds are being used which need fertiliser for their proper growth.

- 176.** “The declining share of agriculture in the Gross Domestic product (GDP) is a matter of serious concern in India.” Support the statement.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- Contribution of agriculture is showing a declining trend:
- (1) The share of agriculture in GDP has shown a declining trend since 1951.
  - (2) In 2010-11 about 52% of the total work force was employed by the farm sector which makes more than half of the Indian population dependent on agriculture for sustenance.
  - (3) The declining share of agriculture in the GDP is a matter of serious concern because any decline and stagnation in agriculture will lead to a decline in other spheres of the economy having wider implications for society.
  - (4) Although GDP growth rate of the country is increasing, it is not generating sufficient employment opportunities in the country, especially in the field of agriculture.
  - (5) Farmers are dragging away their investment from agriculture because they have to face big challenges from international competition. This has resulted in further downfall in employment in agriculture.
  - (6) The growth rate in agriculture is decelerating which is an alarming situation.

- 177.** How did the partition of the country in 1947 affect the jute industry ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (1) Partition of India left the country without the means to feed itself, and without some of the essential raw materials for industry.
- (2) India inherited the bulk of the jute mills but jute-producing areas were left in East Pakistan.
- (3) India was unable to take full advantage of jute industries until it had increased its own production of jute to supply to the mills.
- (4) India became dependent on East Pakistan for raw materials. Now India had to import raw jute for its jute industries.

- (5) The partition virtually destroyed the potential of regenerating traditional trade linkages that had been so vital to the prosperity of the eastern half of India.

- 178.** Compare ‘intensive subsistence farming’ with that of ‘commercial farming’ practiced in India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

	<b>Intensive Subsistence Farming</b>	<b>Commercial Farming</b>
1.	In this type of farming, crops produced by the farmers are mainly consumed by their families. Surplus production is sold in the nearby local markets.	The farming practice, in which the farmers grow crops for the purpose of trade, it is called commercial farming.
2.	In this kind of farming, more than one crop is cultivated in the agricultural field.	In this type of farming generally, one crop is cultivated.
3.	It is labour intensive farming.	Farming is mechanised and is prevalent in areas where farms are large and market economy is well developed.
4.	It depends on monsoon.	It uses modern irrigation methods.
5.	It is practiced in small area. Major crops are : Food grains, fruits and vegetables.	It is practiced in large area. Major crops are : cash crops and cereals.

- 179.** Describe the impact of globalisation on Indian agriculture.

**Ans :**

Comp 2008, 2005

- (1) Major transformation took place with the introduction of high- yielding varieties of crops.

- (2) This innovation, coupled with investments in infrastructure, expansion of credit, marketing and processing facilities led to a significant increase in the use of modern inputs.
- (3) The “green revolution” has been followed by the “white revolution”, “yellow revolution”, and then the “blue revolution”, leading to an increase in the output of rice and wheat, milk, oilseeds and fish and fish products respectively.
- (4) Export of major agricultural commodities have been liberalized.
- (5) The latest development, the “gene revolution”, will also benefit the farmers by raising agricultural productivity.
- 180.** Why has Indian agriculture started a declining trend in food production ? How can we overcome this problem?

Ans :

OD 2009

I. Reasons : The Indian agriculture has started declining trend in food productivity due to the following reasons :

- (1) The farmers have started to produce cash crops in place of food crops.
- (2) There is a gradual shift from cultivation of food crops to cultivation of fruits, vegetables, oil-seeds, etc., which act as industrial raw material.
- (3) The farmers have started due attention to animal husbandry which pays immediate income.
- (4) To supplement their income farmers are also adopting pisciculture and horticulture.

II. Solutions : This problems can be solved as under :

- (1) Farmers should be subsidised for their food crops.
- (2) Subsidy also should be given on the fertilizers for the production of food crops.
- (3) The prices of food crops in advance should be declared, so that the farmers may know what they are going to get for their products.

- 181.** Describe any five features of Indian agriculture.

Ans :

Delhi 2014

Five features of Indian Agriculture are as under :

1. Age-old and vast activity : Agriculture is an age-old economic activity in India. Nearly two-third of its population is engaged in agricultural activities.
2. Monsoon based : Even after having an extensive irrigation network, Indian agriculture is more or less monsoon based.
3. Primitive tools and subsistence agriculture. In many parts of India, primitive subsistence agriculture is practised on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks and community labour.
4. Commercial Farming : Commercial farming is practised using modern inputs like high yielding varieties of seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides, pesticides, etc., in order to obtain higher productivity. Various plantation crops like tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane, banana etc., are also grown.
5. Labour intensive and subsistence farming : In India intensive subsistence farming is also practised in areas of high population pressure on land. It is labour intensive farming, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for receiving higher production.

- 182.** Write two conditions each required for growing cotton and jute crops. Name two regions each where these crops are grown. Write two uses of each crop. Why is jute losing market to nylon ?

Ans :

SQP 2012

- (1) Two conditions required for growing cotton :
  - (i) It requires high temperature and light rainfall.
  - (ii) 210 frost free days and bright sunshine are essential to maintain lustre of the cotton.

*Some of the most important rice-growing regions are Assam, West Bengal, coastal regions of Odisha, Andhra Pradesh, Telangana, Tamil Nadu, Kerala and Maharashtra, particularly the (Konkan coast) along with Uttar Pradesh and Bihar. Recently, paddy has also become an important crop of Punjab and Haryana. In states like Assam, West Bengal and Odisha, three crops of paddy are grown in a year. These are Aus, Aman and Boro.*

*In between the rabi and the kharif seasons, there is a short season during the summer months known as the Zaid season. Some of the crops produced during 'zaid' are watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber, vegetables and fodder crops. Sugarcane takes almost a year to grow.*

**Questions:**

1. Name some important zaid crops.
2. Analyse the reason of precipitation during winter months.
3. State any two characteristics of kharif cropping season.

**Ans :**

1. These are: watermelon, muskmelon, cucumber, vegetables and fodder crops.
2. It occurs due to western temperate cyclones and helps in the success of rabi crops.
3. (a) In this season, crops are grown with the onset of monsoon and harvested in September-October.  
 (b) Some of the important kharif crops are paddy, maize, jowar, bajra, groundnut, etc.

- 206.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*Intensive subsistence farming is practised in areas of high population pressure on land. It is labour intensive farming, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production. Though the 'right of inheritance' leading to the division of land among successive generations has rendered land holding size uneconomical, the farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternative source of livelihood. Thus, there is*

*enormous pressure on agricultural land. The main characteristics of commercial farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs, e.g. high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity. The degree of commercialisation of agriculture varies from one region to another. For example, rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab, but in Odisha, it is a subsistence crop.*

**Questions :**

1. What leads to the division of land among successive generations has rendered land holding size uneconomical?
2. How does commercial farming maximise it productivity?

**Ans :**

1. The 'Right of inheritance' leads to the division of land among successive generations has rendered land-holding size uneconomical.
2. (i) The main characteristics of commercial farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs.  
 (ii) Some of the examples are high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity.

- 207.** Study the given data carefully and answer the following questions:

Table: INDIA : Growth of GDP and major sectors in (%).

Sector	2002-2007 (10th plan project)	2007-2012 (11th plan project)
Agriculture	1.7	4.1
Industries	8.3	10.5
Services	9.0	9.9
GDP	7.2	9.0

**Questions :**

1. What was the growth rate of India's GDP in 11th Five Year Plan?
2. What was the growth rate in agriculture in the 11th Plan, i.e., 2007-12?

of rice, wheat, sugarcane, millets, spices, tea, cotton, jute, etc., has witnessed a tremendous increase. Now, India not only can meet her needs but export many of these commodities to other countries to earn foreign exchange.

All this has been made possible by transforming the subsistence agriculture to commercial agriculture.

- 185.** Which factors, do you think, are responsible for the low yield of crops per hectare in India?

**Ans :** Comp 2018, 2013

As compared to different Asian countries, India has low per hectare yields of cereals. It may be mentioned here that when Japan, China, Malaysia, Bangladesh and Pakistan has 5,848, 3,821, 2,781, 2,098 and 1,570 kg. yields of cereals respectively, India has only 1560 kg. yields of cereals. Now a question generally arises as to why there is low per hectare yield of cereals in India ? This is because Indian agriculture suffers from so many drawbacks, which are as follows :

- (1) Impoverished Soils : A major part of the Indian soil is under the plough for the last 4-5 thousand of years, as such it has been impoverished or fully exhausted.
- (2) Soil Erosion : Soil erosion is also one of the major drawbacks of the Indian agriculture. Various factors such as deforestation, overgrazing and occasional heavy rainfalls have led to the soil-erosion.
- (3) Primitive Tools and Implements : When different kinds of new tools and implements have been developed for agriculture purposes in different parts of the world, still primitive types of tools are being used in many parts of India.
- (4) Outdated Methods of Farming : Not only primitive tools and implements are being used in India but also the methods adopted for farming are also outdated, still little use of fertilizers is made.
- (5) Inadequate Credit and Marketing Facilities : Indian agriculture also suffers from lack of credit and marketing facilities.

(6) Lack of Irrigational Facilities : The vagaries of the monsoon are a great headache for the farmers. Their excess or absence both prove very disastrous for them.

- 186.** Explain any four 19th institutional reforms carried out by the government to improve agricultural production in India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (1) The right of inheritance has led to fragmentation of land holdings. Therefore, collectivisation, consolidation of land holdings, cooperation and abolition of zamindari, etc. were given priority to bring about institutional reforms.
- (2) The Green Revolution based on the use of package technology and White Revolution (Operation Flood) were initiated to improve the lot of Indian agriculture.
- (3) Land development programme was initiated, which included provision for crop insurance against drought, flood, cyclone, fire and disease, establishment of grameen banks, cooperative societies, etc.
- (4) Kisan Credit Card (KCC), Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS), etc. were introduced for the benefit of farmers.
- (5) Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on the radio and television. To check the exploitation of farmers by speculators and middlemen, the government announces minimum support price, remunerative and procurement prices for important crops.

- 187.** Name the factors affecting cultivation methods in India. What are the major farming systems practised in different parts of India ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (1) Factors affecting cultivation methods in India are:
  - (i) Physical environment — Different physical features such as mountains, plains are found in India. Thus, different agricultural methods are

- Two conditions required for growing jute:
- It requires high temperature during the time of growth.
  - Well-drained fertile soil of the flood plains and deltas is ideal for jute growing. It gets renewed every year with river silt.
- (2) Two cotton growing regions — Maharashtra and Gujarat.  
Two jute growing regions — West Bengal and Bihar.
- (3) Two uses of cotton :
- It is one of the main raw materials for cotton textile industry.
  - Cotton is also useful for medical purposes such as bandages, etc.
- (4) Two uses of jute :
- It is used to make gunny bags, mats, ropes, yarn, and carpets.
  - Various decorative pieces are made up of jute.
- Jute is losing market to nylon due to its high cost.
- 183.** Describe the contribution of agriculture to the national economy. What efforts has the government made to modernise agriculture.
- Ans :** OD 2006, 2005
- Agriculture is backbone or the mainstay of the Indian economy. It contributes significantly in the Gross Domestic Product (GDP). From 1951 onwards the share of agriculture sector in GDP has registered a declining trend. Even then its share in providing employment and livelihood to the population continues to be as high as 63 per cent in 2001.
  - Besides providing livelihood and employment it also provides raw material to agro-based industries and fodder to country's vast livestock.
  - Considering the importance of agriculture in Indian economy, the Government of India made serious efforts to modernise agriculture in the following ways —
    - Indian Council of Agriculture was established.
    - Agricultural universities, veterinary services and animal breeding centres, horticulture development, research and development in the field of meteorology and weather forecast, etc. were given priority.
    - Steps were also taken for the improvement of rural infrastructure.
- 184.** 'Indian agriculture has been transforming from subsistence to commercial farming'. Explain. (Imp.)
- Ans :** Foreign 2019
- Farming in which the main production is consumed by the farmer's own household is called the subsistence type of agriculture. On the other hand, the commercial farming or agriculture is one where things are produced with the sole aim of selling the production in the market.
  - Before independence, the dominant feature of the Indian agriculture had been its subsistence character. The main production was consumed by the farmer's own household because the production was very low. He used old techniques and methods and outdated implements. He did not use high yielding varieties of seeds and latest tools. The result was that the farmer could hardly meet the needs of his family with the low production.
  - But after independence, the farmers transformed subsistence agriculture into commercial agriculture. They tripled the production by adopting various measures. The fragmentation of land was stopped through Chakbandi. The land-holdings became large and were ploughed on co-operative basis. The farmers now began to use new techniques and scientific methods and improved the high yielding varieties of seeds.
  - Insecticides and scientific warehouse facilities were used to avoid wastage of foodgrains. The result was that India was successful in tripling its food production in the last forty years and in bringing the Green Revolution. The production

- (1) Impoverished Soils : A major part of the Indian soil is under the plough for the last 4-5 thousand of years, as such it has been impoverished or fully exhausted.
- (2) Soil Erosion : Soil erosion is also one of the major drawbacks of the Indian agriculture. Various factors such as deforestation, overgrazing and occasional heavy rainfalls have led to the soil-erosion.
- (3) Primitive Tools and Implements : When different kinds of new tools and implements have been developed for agriculture purposes in different parts of the world, still primitive types of tools are being used in many parts of India.
- (4) Outdated Methods of Farming : Not only primitive tools and implements are being used in India but also the methods adopted for farming are also outdated, still little use of fertilizers is made.
- (5) Inadequate Credit and Marketing Facilities : Indian agriculture also suffers from lack of credit and marketing facilities.
- (6) Lack of Irrigational Facilities : The vagaries of the monsoon are a great headache for the farmers. Their excess or absence both prove very disastrous for them.

**190.** Why is Green Revolution mainly confined to north-western parts of India ?

Ans :

Comp 2012

Green Revolution is mainly confined to north-western parts of India due to the following reasons :

- (1) fertile loamy soils.
- (2) vast plains of northern India.
- (3) network of canals joint with perennial rivers.
- (4) irrigation facilities by wells and tubewells.
- (5) ideal and suitable climatic conditions.
- (6) long growing season.
- (7) hardworking and rich farmers.
- (8) first breakthrough by Green Revolution in Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh.

**191.** Discuss the importance of agriculture in Indian economy.

Ans :

OD 2016, 2013

- (1) India is an agricultural country. Two-third of its population is engaged in agricultural activities.
- (2) Agriculture provides employment to crores of people of India directly and indirectly.
- (3) Most of the food that we consumed is produced by millions of farmers of our country.
- (4) Our animal wealth also depends, for its food, on agriculture.
- (5) Agriculture also produce raw material for various industries such as cotton textiles, woollen textiles, jute textiles, sugar mills, paper industry, etc.
- (6) We export so many agricultural products like tea, coffee, spices, fruits, vegetables, eggs, fish, mutton, leather, etc. By exporting these articles and goods, we earn huge foreign exchange.

**192.** Discuss the production of fruits and vegetables in India. Keep the following points in your mind while answering the question :

- (a) Types of fruits
- (b) Distribution of Fruits in India—their types, names and region-wise distribution.
- (c) Production of fruits and vegetables.

Ans :

Delhi 2010

- (a) Types of fruits : India produces a variety of fruits. They include tropical fruits and temperate fruit.
- (b) Distribution of Fruits in India

	Type of Fruits	Name of Fruits	Distribution
1.	Tropical fruit	coconut, jackfruit, cashewnut, pineapples, bananas, oranges.	Peninsular India and North India.
2.	Temperate fruits	apples, plums, peaches, almonds, apricots, grapes.	Jammu-Kashmir and Himachal Pradesh.

practised in different regions. In fertile alluvial plains and coastal plains intensive cultivation is practised while in mountainous region terrace cultivation is done. In backward (tribal) regions shifting cultivation is practised. In hilly regions associated with tropical climate plantation agriculture is prevalent.

- (ii) Technological know-how — Due to technological development agriculture has become more mechanised. Tractors are used to plough the field. Threshers are used to collect the yield. Fertilizers are used to increase the production.
  - (iii) Socio-cultural practises — Socio-cultural practises have greatly affected the farming methods. Now farmers are adopting commercial or plantation farming in order to earn more profits.
- (2) Major farming systems practised in different parts of India are :
- (i) Primitive subsistence farming is mainly practised by tribal groups.
  - (ii) Intensive subsistence farming is practised in the areas of high population pressure on land.
  - (iii) Commercial farming is highly mechanised.
  - (iv) Plantation agriculture.

**188.** ‘Indian agriculture has been trans-forming from subsistence to commercial farming’. Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2013, 2010

- (1) Farming in which the main production is consumed by the farmer’s own household is called the subsistence type of agriculture. On the other hand, the commercial farming or agriculture is one where things are produced with the sole aim of selling the production in the market.
- (2) Before independence, the dominant feature of the Indian agriculture had been its subsistence character. The main production was consumed by the farmer’s

own household because the production was very low. He used old techniques and methods and outdated implements. He did not use high yielding varieties of seeds and latest tools. The result was that the farmer could hardly meet the needs of his family with the low production.

- (3) But after independence, the farmers transformed subsistence agriculture into commercial agriculture. They tripled the production by adopting various measures. The fragmentation of land was stopped through Chakbandi. The land-holdings became large and were ploughed on co-operative basis. The farmers now began to use new techniques and scientific methods and improved the high yielding varieties of seeds.
- (4) Insecticides and scientific warehouse facilities were used to avoid wastage of foodgrains. The result was that India was successful in tripling its food production in the last forty years and in bringing the Green Revolution. The production of rice, wheat, sugarcane, millets, spices, tea, cotton, jute, etc., has witnessed a tremendous increase. Now, India not only can meet her needs but export many of these commodities to other countries to earn foreign exchange.

All this has been made possible by transforming the subsistence agriculture to commercial agriculture.

**189.** Which factors, do you think, are responsible for the low yield of crops per hectare in India?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

As compared to different Asian countries, India has low per hectare yields of cereals. It may be mentioned here that when Japan, China, Malaysia, Bangladesh and Pakistan has 5,848, 3,821, 2,781, 2,098 and 1,570 kg. yields of cereals respectively, India has only 1560 kg. yields of cereals. Now a question generally arises as to why there is low per hectare yield of cereals in India ? This is because Indian agriculture suffers from so many drawbacks, which are as follows :

The production also rose from 25 million tonnes in 1950-51 to 82.3 million tonnes in 1997-98 (31/2 times increase). The yield per hectare also rose from 668 kg. per hectare to 1895 kg. per hectare.



- 196.** What are the geographical conditions required for the cultivation of wheat ? Use an outline map of India to show the growing areas/states of the wheat.

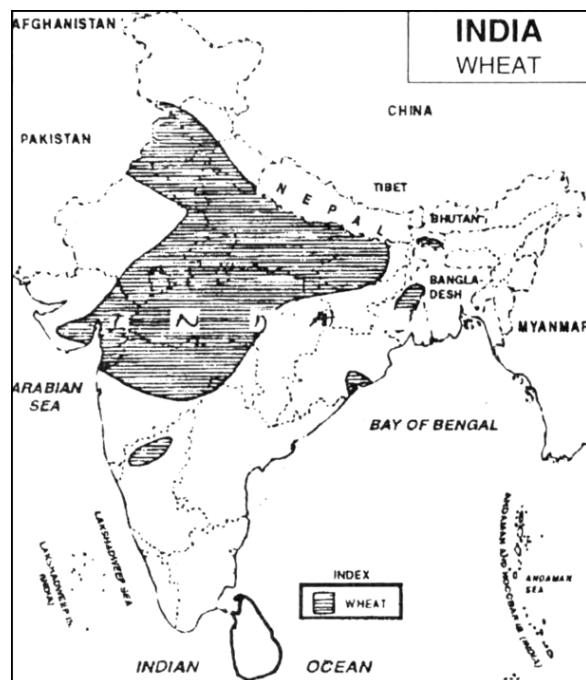
**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

#### **Wheat :**

- (1) Wheat is the second important food crop of India. It requires a cool and moist climate during the growing season and a dry climate at the time of ripening. Annual rainfall of 60 to 75 cm. and fertile sandy soil is very suitable.
- (2) The chief wheat growing areas are Punjab, Haryana, U.P., Bihar, M.P., Rajasthan, Maharashtra, etc., because all the conditions for wheat production are found here.
- (3) The use of high yielding varieties of seeds, fertilizers and irrigation facilities helped raise the average yield per acre

and increased the production of wheat to 65.9 million tonnes mark in 1997-98.



The breakthrough in the production of wheat is called the Green Revolution.

- 197.** Discuss the geographical conditions required for the cultivation of sugarcane ? Show the main growing areas or regions (states) of this crop in India.

or

What geographical conditions are required for the cultivation of sugarcane ? Name two largest producing states of sugarcane.

**Ans :**

OD 2013, 2011

**Sugarcane :** Sugarcane requires well drained fertile soils, heavy dose of manure and fertilizer, hot and moist climate and a rainfall of about 100 cm. It is mostly grown in U.P., Bihar, Punjab, A.P., Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Maharashtra. It is the important cash crop of India.

India has the largest area under its cultivation and its production is also the highest in the world. By 1997-98, the area under cultivation rose to 4 million hectares and its production to 275 million tonnes respectively. During the same period, its productivity almost doubled from 33 tonnes to 70 tonnes per hectare.

- (c) Production of fruits and vegetables :  
(in lakh tonnes)

	<b>1997-98</b>	<b>1998-99</b>	<b>2000-2001</b>
Fruits	433	440	498
Vegetables	727	875	985

- (1) India is the chief exporter of cashewnuts. During 1997-98, it earned 3720 lakh U.S. dollars as foreign exchange as a result of its exports.
- (2) Production of apples in the country has increased to 13.8 lakh tonnes in 1998-99. Now high yielding cashewnut plants have been developed which give 8 to 5 kg. cashew kernels against the current average of 2.5 kg. per tree per year. India produced cashewnuts weighing 5 lakh tonnes in 1990-2000.

- 193.** What is food security ? Describe the key issue related with it.

**Ans :** OD 2009

**Food Security :** Food security refers to the food requirements of a country. In the past 50 years, the food production increased more than four times. In the same period population has also increased from 361 million to 1027 million in 2001. Still we are able to have a food stock of 44.7 million tons in 2001.

**Issue related with food security in India :** The problems related to food security in India are:

- (1) The population in India by 2020 is likely to be around 1300 million. This would require a huge amount of food grains along with pulses, vegetables, oilseeds and fruits.
- (2) Inspite of surplus foodgrains stock, a vast number of people do not have enough money to feed themselves twice a day.
- (3) About 26% of the population is below the poverty line till date.
- (4) Another problem is the shift from cultivation of food crops to cultivation of fruits, vegetables, oilseeds, which are used as industrial raw materials.
- (5) The growing population of India puts a big question mark over the country's food security.

- 194.** Define each of the following:

- (a) Green Revolution
- (b) White Revolution
- (c) Yellow Revolution
- (d) Blue Revolution
- (e) Gene Revolution

**Ans :**

SQP 2005

- (a) **Green Revolution** : Agricultural Revolution which resulted in increased production of foodgrains because of the use of HYV (High Yielding Varieties) seeds, fertilizer proper irrigation and other modern inputs.
- (b) **White Revolution** : Revolutionary increase in the production of milk which was spearheaded by Operation Flood.
- (c) **Yellow Revolution** : Increase in the output of oilseeds is termed as Yellow Revolution.
- (d) **Blue Revolution** refers to increased output of fish and fish products.
- (e) **Gene Revolution** refers to the development of genetically modified seeds for increasing the yield per hectare. These seeds are environmentally sustainable.

- 195.** Discuss the required geo-graphical conditions for the cultivation of rice in India. Use an outline map to show rice growing areas of the country.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

**Rice :**

- (1) Rice is the staple food crop of India. It thrives well in hot and humid climate. It requires temperature of 25°C, rainfall of 100 cm and above and loamy fertile soil.
- (2) The chief rice producing areas in India are the coastal strips, the Ganga plains, the Brahmaputra Valley, the deltas of Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri. High yielding varieties of seeds, improved planting techniques, irrigation facilities and use of fertilizers have enabled India to increase the production of rice.
- (3) In 1950-51 the total area under rice cultivation was 30 million hectares which rose to 43.4 million hectares in 1997-98.

- 200.** Describe the geographical conditions required for production Rubber.

Ans :

OD 2016, 2014

Uses of Rubber : Rubber is an industrial raw material. Rubber is the latex obtained from heavy type of wild trees of equatorial forests. It has long been used for erasing pencil marks. Now-a-days it is used for a number of purposes like water-proof clothes, soles, toys, printing, electrical goods, tyres and tubes, footwear, sports goods, foam rubber and mattresses.

Geographical conditions of growth : Rubber needs a hot wet climate, about 300 cm. rainfall and 21°C temperature with deep loamy soils. Cheap labour is required.

Areas of production : Rubber plantations were introduced in 1902 in Kerala. Rubber is mainly grown in southern states of Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Andaman and Nicobar Islands, Maharashtra, Assam, Nagaland, Tripura, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Manipur. About six lakh small farmers are engaged in its production. Automobile industry depends upon it. 97% of country's demand of natural rubber is met from domestic production.

Area and Production of Rubber		
Year	Area (lakh hectare) (tapped area)	Production (‘000 tonnes)
1950-51	30	14
1990-1991	365	330
1999-2000	396	622
2000-2001	400	630

- 201.** Describe any two technological reforms introduced by the government in the interest of farmers after independence.

Ans :

Comp 2011

I. Technological Reforms : The various technological and institutional reforms consists of various measures taken by the central and state governments from time to time. Flooding of fields with water is now

being replaced by drip irrigation and the use of sprinklers. Chemical fertilizers are being used on large scale to increase the farm yields. They are now being supplemented by bio-fertilizers.

High yielding and early maturing quality seeds have been developed. Most of these technology inputs gave birth to Green Revolution in sixties and seventies of twentieth century. The Green Revolution was followed by White Revolution.

II. Institutional Reforms : The institutional reforms which were taken by the Central Government are as under :

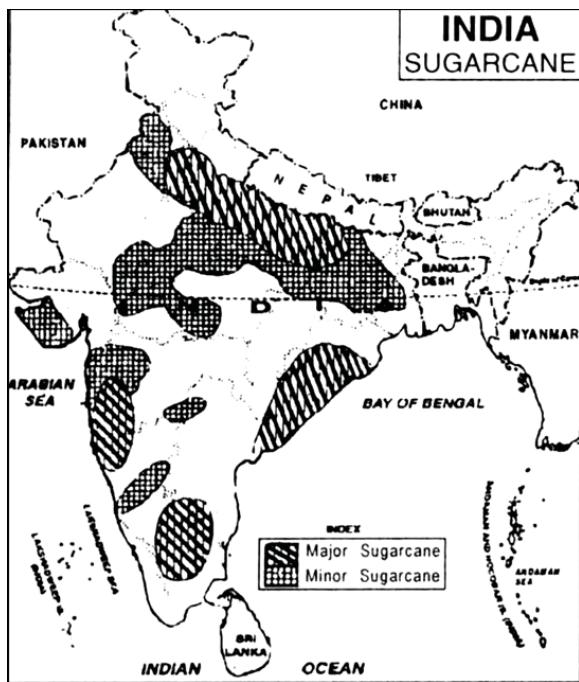
- (1) The Government of India abolished Zamindari System.
- (2) Consolidated small holdings to make them economically viable.
- (3) Development of irrigational facilities—In order to modernise the agriculture it is necessary to develop irrigation.
- (4) Improved seeds and the chemical fertilizers form the basis of modernization of agriculture. Insecticides and pesticides are also used.
- (5) Widespread use of radio and television for acquainting farmers of new techniques of cultivation.
- (6) Crop insurance was another step to protect the farmers against any loss.
- (7) Government has established multi-purpose societies and co-operative banks in rural areas.

All these institutional reforms led the Green Revolution and White Revolution.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 202.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow.

*Today, Indian agriculture finds itself at a crossroads. To make agriculture successful and profitable, proper thrust should be given to the improvement of the condition of marginal and small farmers. The green revolution promised*



198. List important steps that the central as well as the state governments have taken to improve Indian agriculture.

or

How is the government helping Indian farmers in increasing their agricultural production ? Explain any four points.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

Since India gained her independence, our Union government as well as State governments have taken the following steps to increase agricultural production:

- (1) Abolition of Zamindari System : The first step taken by our national government was the abolition of zamindari system under which big landlords and zamindars were exploiting their tenants.
- (2) Consolidation of Land-holdings : The government has consolidated the small, fragmented and scattered pieces of lands of the farmers to make them economically viable.
- (3) Encouragement to the use of Various Inputs: To increase the fertility and productivity of soil the government has encouraged the use of improved varieties of seeds, chemical fertilizers, pesticides, etc.

- (4) Irrigation Facilities : Government has undertaken various major and minor irrigation schemes to provide irrigation facilities to the farmers.
- (5) Development of High-Yielding Varieties of Seeds : To encourage high production, government has developed high yielding varieties of seeds.
- (6) Control over pests, locusts and diseases : Government has started various schemes to protect and save the plants from pests, locusts and diseases.
- (7) Modernisation of Agriculture : Modern farm machinery and scientific method of cultivation have led to the increase in production.

199. Discuss the reason for which our agricultural sector is dominated by Intensive subsistence farming.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

Agriculture in India depends not only on geo-climatic conditions but also on socio-cultural practices. Through law of inheritance, the limited arable land is fragmented through successive generations and now average individual land holding reduced to an uneconomic position. Land holdings are not only reduced but also became fragmented. So, technological application is not viable for the farmers.

Huge population along with high amount of domestic animals depends on this limited agricultural land. So, farmers use intensive irrigation and put bio-chemical inputs to draw more production and the ceaseless exploitation of land without adequate measure for replenishment gradually reduces productivity. Less awareness about modern technology institutional limitations and bureaucratic apathy in implementation of reform measures compel the agriculture still depend on intensive subsistence farming. Land is only exploited regularly to sustenance of life not for commercialisation or well-being. The pattern should be changed as it held occupation of more than 60 per cent of population in India.

3. Punjab and Haryana produce rice commercially.
- 204.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*This type of farming is practised in areas of high population pressure on land. It is labour-intensive farming, where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production. Though the 'right of inheritance' leading to the division of land among successive generations has rendered land-holding size uneconomical, the farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternative source of livelihood. Thus, there is enormous pressure on agricultural land.*

*The main characteristic of this type of farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs, e.g. high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity. The degree of commercialisation of agriculture varies from one region to another. For example, rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab, but in Odisha, it is a subsistence crop. Plantation is also a type of commercial farming. In this type of farming, a single crop is grown on a large area. The plantation has an interface of agriculture and industry. Plantations cover large tracts of land, using capital intensive inputs, with the help of migrant labourers. All the produce is used as raw material in respective industries.*

#### Questions:

- With what objective 'Intensive Subsistence Farming' is practised?
- Mention any one feature of commercial farming.
- What is plantation farming? Name some important plantation crops which are grown in India.

**Ans :**

- To obtain higher production with the help of high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation.

- (a) Crops are grown specifically for sale in the market.
- (b) Higher doses of modern inputs are used in order to obtain higher productivity.
- In this type of farming, a single crop is grown on a large area. Tea, coffee, rubber, banana, sugarcane, etc. are important plantation crops in India.

- 205.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*You have studied the physical diversities and plurality of cultures in India. These are also reflected in agricultural practices and cropping patterns in the country. Various types of food and fibre crops, vegetables and fruits, spices and condiments, etc. constitute some of the important crops grown in the country. India has three cropping seasons - rabi, kharif and zaid.*

*Rabi crops are sown in winter from October to December and harvested in summer from April to June. Some of the important rabi crops are wheat, barley, peas, gram and mustard.*

*Though, these crops are grown in large parts of India, states from the north and north-western parts such as Punjab, Haryana, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir, Uttarakhand and Uttar Pradesh are important for the production of wheat and other rabi crops. Availability of precipitation during winter months due to the western temperate cyclones helps in the success of these crops. However, the success of the green revolution in Punjab, Haryana, western Uttar Pradesh and parts of Rajasthan has also been an important factor in the growth of the above-mentioned rabi crops.*

*Kharif crops are grown with the onset of monsoon in different parts of the country and these are harvested in September-October. Important crops grown during this season are paddy, maize, jowar, bajra, tur (arhar), moong, urad, cotton, jute, groundnut and soyabean.*

*much. But today it's under controversy. The keyword today is "gene revolution", which includes genetic engineering. Organic farming is [also] much in vogue today because it is practised without factory-made chemicals such as fertilisers and pesticides. A few economists think that Indian farmers have a bleak future if they continue growing food grains on the holdings that grow smaller and smaller as the population rises. India's rural population is about 600 million which depends upon 250 million (approximate) hectares of agricultural land, an average of less than half a hectare per person. Indian farmers should diversify their cropping pattern from cereals to high-value crops. This will increase incomes and reduce environmental degradation simultaneously. Because fruits, medicinal herbs, flowers, vegetables, and bio-diesel crops like jatropha and jojoba need much less irrigation than rice or sugarcane. India's diverse climate can be harnessed to grow a wide range of high-value crops.*

**Questions :**

1. Give two reasons why the Green Revolution is under controversy.
2. ....holdings that grow smaller and smaller as the population rises.' Evaluate why this is a concern.
3. Bio-diesel crops like jatropha and jojoba have been referred to as high-value crops. Why?

Ans :

2023

1. Green Revolution is under controversy because:
  - (a) The excessive use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides decreases soil fertility.
  - (b) The overutilization of irrigation systems adversely affected underground water.
  - (c) Agricultural practices like tillage, drainage, intercropping, rotation, and the heavy use of pesticides and fertilizers make flora and fauna vulnerable. Thus, it negatively affected biodiversity.

2. The sentence means that the yield per land holding will not be enough to feed the rising population hence a shift in agricultural practices is required.
3. Bio-diesel crops are high value as they act as alternatives to fuels from nonrenewable sources. Another reason is that these crops do not require much water or farmers' attention to grow.

203. Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Through the 'right of inheritance' leading to the division of land among successive generations has rendered land-holding size uneconomical, the farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternative source of livelihood. Thus, there is enormous pressure on agricultural land.*

*The main characteristic of commercial farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs. e.g. High Yielding Variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides in order to obtain higher productivity.*

*The degree of commercialisation of agriculture varies from one region to another. For example, rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab, but in Odisha, it is a subsistence crop.*

**Questions :**

1. State the ways through which farmers continue to make maximum output from limited land.
2. What is the reason behind rice being a subsistence crop in Odisha?
3. Mention the name of Indian states which produce rice commercially.

Ans :

1. Farmers buy agricultural inputs like fertilisers, pesticides, HYV seeds and provide irrigation facilities in their limited land to take maximum output from it.
2. Rice is considered a subsistence crop in Odisha because it is grown on small patches of land with very little agricultural inputs. Productivity is also less.

3. Mention any factor responsible for the low growth rate of the agricultural sector.

**Ans :**

1. Growth rate in 2007-12 = 9.
2. About four per cent.
3. (a) The government has reduced the public investment in the agriculture sector, particularly in irrigation, power, rural roads, market and mechanisation.
- (b) Subsidy on fertilisers and the inputs has been decreased leading to an increase in the cost of production.

- 208.** Read the extracts/sources carefully and answer the following questions :

*India is the largest producer as well as the consumer of pulses in the world. These are the major source of protein in a vegetarian diet. Major pulses that are grown in India are tur (arhar), urad, moong, masur, peas and gram.*

*Agriculture is an age-old economic activity in our country. Over these years, cultivation methods have changed significantly depending upon the characteristics of physical environment, technological know-how and socio-cultural practices. Farming varies from subsistence to commercial type.*

**Questions :**

1. Why should we grow/more pulses? Give three reasons.
2. Why have farmers shifted from subsistence to commercial farming ? Explain by giving three reasons.

**Ans :**

1. (i) India is the largest consumer of pulses in the world. As production is less as compared to consumption we need to import.
- (ii) These are major source of protein in the diet.
- (iii) Being leguminous crops these help in restoring soil fertility by fixing nitrogen from the air.

2. (i) Various modern inputs like HYV seeds have helped the farmers to increase the production.
- (ii) Increasing demand for rubber, jute, sugarcane etc. as raw material in many industries lured the farmers to shift to plantation agriculture.
- (iii) The small size of holdings due to law of inheritance has forced the farmers to adopt commercial farming.

- 209.** Study the given sources and answer the questions that follow:

*This type of farming is still practised in few pockets of India. Primitive subsistence agriculture is practised on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks, and family/community labour. This type of farming depends upon monsoon, natural fertility of the soil and suitability of other environmental conditions to the crops grown.*

*The main characteristic of this type of farming is the use of higher doses of modern inputs, e.g., high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides, in order to obtain higher productivity. The degree of commercialisation of agriculture varies from one region to another. For example, rice is a commercial crop in Haryana and Punjab, but in Orissa, it is a subsistence crop.*

*India's food security policy has a primary objective to ensure availability of food grains to the common people at an affordable price. It has enabled the poor to have access to food. The focus of the policy is on growth in agriculture production and on fixing the support price for procurement of wheat and rice, to maintain their stocks. Food Corporation of India (FCI) is responsible for procuring and stocking food grains, whereas distribution is ensured by public distribution system (PDS).*

**Questions :**

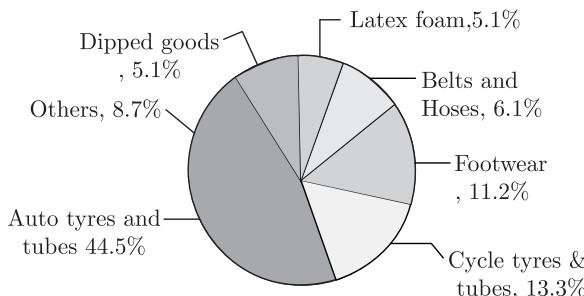
1. Which type of agriculture is practised on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools?

2. What does commercial farming use in order to obtain higher productivity?
3. What is the primary objective of India's food security policy?

**Ans :**

1. Primitive subsistence farming.
2. Higher doses of modern inputs, e.g., high yielding variety (HYV) seeds, chemical fertilisers, insecticides and pesticides.
3. To ensure availability of foodgrains.

- 210.** Study the given diagram and answer the questions given below :



**Questions :**

- (1) Which crop is used for making the goods listed in the diagram?
- (2) Which types of goods occupy the highest percentage?
- (3) Mention any one climatic condition required for the growth of this crop.
- (4) Name any two major producing states of this crop.

**Ans :**

- (1) Rubber.
- (2) Auto tyres and tubes 44.5%.
- (3) (i) It is grown in tropical and sub-tropical areas.  
(ii) It requires moist and humid climate with rainfall of more than 200 cm.  
(iii) Temperature above 25°C.
- (4) Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka and Andaman Nicobar Islands.

- 211.** Study the given sources and answer the questions that follow:

*"Agriculture has been the backbone of the Indian economy though its share in the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) has registered a*

*declining trend from 1951 onwards; yet its share in providing employment and livelihood to the population continues to be as high as 63 per cent in 2001.*

*The declining share of agriculture in the GDP is a matter of serious concern because any decline and stagnation in agriculture will lead to a decline in other spheres of the economy having wider "implications for society."*

**Questions :**

1. Describe the factors which have hindered the pace of agricultural development ?
2. What is the importance of agriculture in the Indian economy and how can it be improved ?

**Ans :**

- (1) Sustained use of land without compatible techno-institutional changes have hindered the pace of agricultural development. Secondly, most of the farmers in large parts of the country still depend upon monsoon and natural fertility in order to carry on their agriculture.
- (2) The importance of agriculture in India is great. It provides livelihood for more than 60 per cent of its population. It produces food-grains for the growing population as well as raw materials for various industries.

The government has made efforts to modernise agriculture as mentioned below :

- (a) Establishment of Indian Council of Agricultural Research.
- (b) Agricultural universities.
- (c) Provision for veterinary services and animal breeding centres.
- (d) Horticulture development,
- (e) Weather forecast.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

# CHAPTER 9

## MINERAL AND ENERGY RESOURCES

### SUMMARY

1. Mineral : A natural inorganic substance having particular physical properties of hardness, colour and form.
2. Off-shore Drilling : Digging deep bores into the bed of shallow seas near the coast for extracting mineral oil.
3. Shaft Mine : An underground excavation made deep into the earth for digging minerals and mineral ores like coal, precious stones and iron.
4. Mineral Ore : Minerals from which metals are extracted in a raw state from the earth.
5. Placer Deposits : Minerals which occur as alluvial deposits brought down by the rivers such as gold, silver, tin etc.
6. Fossil Fuels : Fuels dug out from beneath the earth or rocks, e.g. coal, petrol, etc.
7. Mining : An economic method of extracting minerals from the earth.
8. Metallic Minerals : Minerals comprising metal contents. Example : iron ore, bauxite.
9. Non-Metallic Minerals : Minerals which do not have metal contents. Example Limestone, potash, etc.
10. Rocks : Combination of homogeneous substances.
11. Veins and lodes : Minerals in igneous and metamorphic rocks. Smaller content is veins and larger is lodes.
12. Energy : The capacity of a physical system needed for doing work.
13. Hydro-electricity : Electricity produced by the application of the force of falling or running water.
14. Natural Gas : Free hydrocarbons in a gaseous state usually associated with crude mineral oil and found in the earth's crust in a natural state.

15. Geologists : Experts who study about rocks, their age, formation of minerals and physical and chemical compositions.
16. Open Cast-Mining : A method of mining by removing the overlying materials to extract the minerals from shallow depth.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Choose the correctly matched pair.

(a) Ferrous	—	Natural Gas
(b) Non-Ferrous	—	Nickel
(c) Non-Metallic Minerals	—	Limestone
(d) Energy Minerals	—	Cobalt

Ans : OD 2024

(c) Non-Metallic Minerals	—	Limestone
---------------------------	---	-----------
2. Which one of the following minerals is formed by decomposition of rocks, leaving a residual mass of weathered material ?

(a) Coal
(b) Bauxite
(c) Gold
(d) Zinc

Ans : Comp 2023

(b) Bauxite.
--------------
3. What quantity of India's petroleum production is obtained from Mumbai High?

(a) 63%
(b) 36%
(c) 69%
(d) 65%

Ans : OD 2019

(a) 63%
---------

**4.** **Assertion :** Uses of iron brought a radical change in human life.

**Reason :** Different kinds of tools were invented by using minerals.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**5.** Koderma, in Jharkhand is the leading producer of which one of the following minerals ?

- Bauxite
- Mica
- Iron-ore
- Copper

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- Mica.

**6.** Identify the natural gas pipeline which is spread from North to South-

- It starts from Hazira (Surat) passes through Madhya Pradesh to reach industrial areas of Uttar Pradesh.
- Links various power and industrial complexes in western and Northern India.
- Total approx. length is 1700 km and India's first cross state gas pipeline.
- Recognized as an artery for boosting the India's Gas production.

**Option :**

- Salaya - Mathura Gaspipeline
- Hazira- Vijaipur- Jagdishpur Gaspipeline
- Paradip-Haldia-Barauni Gaspipeline
- Mundra-Panipat Gaspipeline

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, 2015

- Hazira- Vijaipur- Jagdishpur Gaspipeline

**7.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- Transportation System
- Mineral Belts
- Farming Area
- Mining Area

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- Mining Area

**8.** **Assertion :** Increased use of fossil fuels creates a healthy environment.

**Reason :** Fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas are easily obtained from natural resource.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- Both assertion and reason are false.

**9.** Arrange the following states in order (Less to more) of production of Limestone-

1. Rajasthan
2. Andhra Pradesh
3. Chhattisgarh
4. Gujarat

**Options :**

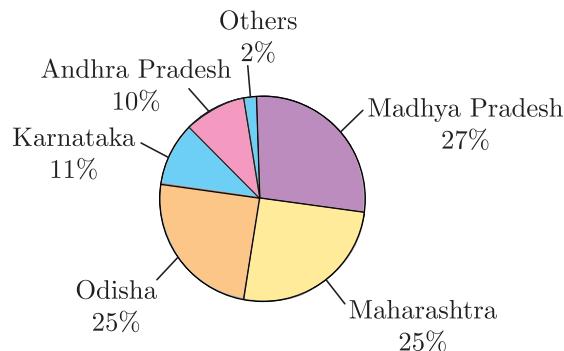
- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 4, 2, 3 | (b) 2, 1, 3, 4 |
| (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018, 2016

- 4, 3, 2, 1

10. Observe the following picture carefully and choose the correct answer-



- (a) It shows the state wise production of manganese in year 2016-17.
- (b) It shows the state wise production of iron ore in year 2016-17.
- (c) It shows the state wise production of stainless steel in year 2016-17.
- (d) It shows the state wise production of electricity year in the 2016-17.

Ans :

Foreign 2014

- (a) It shows the state wise production of manganese in year 2016-17.

11. Complete the following table with the correct information-

Ways of generating electricity	Type of source	Generated by
Hydroelectricity	Renewable	B - ?
Thermal electricity	A - ?	by using coal, Petroleum and natural gas

Ans :

OD 2017,

A - Non renewable.

B - By fast flowing water which drives turbines.

12. Which type of sand in Kerala is rich in thorium?

- (a) Monazite sands
- (b) Gypsum snads
- (c) Silica sands
- (d) Black sands

Ans :

Delhi 2010

- (a) Monazite sands

13. Minerals are deposited and accumulated in the stratas of which of the following rocks ?

- (a) Sedimentary rocks
- (b) Metamorphic rocks
- (c) Igneous rocks
- (d) None of the above

Ans :

SQP 2019

- (a) Sedimentary rocks.

14. **Assertion :** Iron ore is the basic mineral and the backbone of India.

**Reason :** India is rich in good quality Iron ore.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

Foreign 2012

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

15. Which one of the following minerals is contained in the monazite sand ?

- (a) Oil
- (b) Uranium
- (c) Thorium
- (d) Coal

Ans :

OD 2007

- (c) Thorium.

16. Following picture of solar operated milk testing equipment of an Indian village depicts that-



**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (1) Iron ore is the basic mineral and the backbone of industrial development. Magnetite iron ore has excellent magnetic qualities, especially valuable in the electrical industry.
- (2) Manganese is mainly used in the manufacturing of steel and ferromanganese alloy. It is also used in manufacturing of bleaching powder, insecticides and paints.
- (3) Mica is one of the most indispensable minerals used in electric and electronic industries. It has excellent di-electric strength, low power loss factor, insulating properties and resistance to high voltage.
- (4) From bauxite aluminium is obtained. It combines the strength of metals such as iron, with extreme lightness and also with good conductivity and great malleability.
- (5) Copper is malleable, ductile and a good conductor to heat and electricity. It is mainly used in electrical cables, electronics and chemical industries.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 117.** Read the given case and answer the questions that follow :

*Energy is a basic requirement for economic development. Every sector of the national economy — agriculture, industry, transport, commercial and domestic — needs inputs of energy. The economic development plans implemented since independence necessarily required increasing amounts of energy to remain operational. As a result, consumption of energy in all forms has been steadily rising all over the country. In this background, there is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development. Promotion of energy conservation and increased use of renewable energy sources are the twin planks of sustainable energy. India is presently one of the least energy efficient countries*

*in the world. We have to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of our limited energy resources. For example, as concerned citizens we can do our bit by using public transport systems instead of individual vehicles; switching off electricity when not in use, using power-saving devices and using non-conventional sources of energy. At last “Energy Saved is energy produced”*

**Questions :**

1. Why is sustainable energy a key to sustainable development ?
2. Why is consumption of energy rising in all over India?
3. Explain ‘Energy saved is energy produced’.

**Ans :**

1. Sustainable energy is crucial to sustainable development because it can meet current energy needs without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own. It's derived from resources that can be replenished within a human lifetime and cause no long-term damage to the environment.
2. Energy is a basic requirement for economic development. The strategy of economic development that India adopted since independence necessarily required increasing amount of energy consumption. As a result, consumption of energy in all forms has been rising.
3. The statement means that reducing energy consumption can help produce energy that would otherwise be needed to meet energy demands. This can help conserve natural resources and reduce greenhouse gas emissions associated with energy production.

- 118.** Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Energy can be generated from fuel minerals like coal, petroleum, natural gas, uranium and from electricity. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and nonconventional sources. Conventional sources include: firewood, cattle*

- Can be used under various International treaties.

**Option :**

- Nuclear Energy
- Tide Energy
- Solar Energy
- Electric Energy

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- Nuclear Energy

**24. Assertion :** Mica is a metallic mineral.**Reason :** Mica mineral is the basic raw material for cement industry

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- Both assertion and reason are false.

**25. Which of the following is a mineral?**

- Diamond
- Talc
- Mica
- All of these

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- All of these

**26. Assertion :** Conservation of Energy Resources is essential.**Reason :** Energy is a basic requirement for economic development.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013, 2011

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**27. Which of the following mineral is used to reduce cavities in teeth?**

- Limestone
- Aluminium oxide
- Fluoride
- Silica

**Ans :**

OD 2018

- Fluoride

**28. Arrange the following states in sequence according to their share per cent in iron ore production in year 2016-2017:**

- Chattisgarh
- Karnatak
- Odisha
- Jharkhand

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 3, 4, 2, 1 | (b) 3, 2, 1, 4 |
| (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- 3, 2, 1, 4

**29. Which of the following is the basic mineral and the backbone of industrial development?**

- Zinc ore
- Iron ore
- Manganese ore
- Silver ore

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007

- Silver ore

**30. The white colour in tooth paste comes from which of the following?**

- Titanium oxide
- Fluoride
- Silica
- Limestone

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- Titanium oxide

**31. Where is the largest wind farm cluster located in India?**

- Andhra Pradesh
- Kerala
- Karnataka
- Tamil Nadu

- (a) Large section of population can be benefited by using non-conventional source of energy.
- (b) Non-conventional energy sources are more economical.
- (c) Non-conventional energy sources provide more possibility of self-reliant in energy requirement.
- (d) All of the above.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013, 2011

- (d) All of the above.

- 17.** Arrange the following types of iron ore in descending order of their iron content-

1. Haematite
2. Magnetite
3. Limonite
4. Siderite

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (c) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (d) 3, 1, 4, 2

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (b) 2, 1, 3, 4

- 18.** The Badamphar mine in Mayurbhanj and Kendujhar district is situated in which of the following Indian state?

- (a) Karnataka
- (b) Odisha
- (c) Chattisgarh
- (d) Jharkhand

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

- (b) Odisha

- 19.** Complete the following table with correct information-

Types of Coal	Also called as	Property
Lignite	Brown coal	Low heat content
Bituminous	Soft coal	B - ?
Anthracite	A - ?	Highest quality coal

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (a)

A - Hard coal

B - Most popular coal in commercial use, has a special value for smelting iron in blast furnaces.

- 20.** **Assertion :** Mining activity is often called a “Killer Industry”.

**Reason :** Mining helps in agriculture.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

- 21.** In India, the Gulf of Khambhat, The Gulf of Kuchch and Gangetic delta provide ideal condition for utilising which energy?

- (a) Tidal energy
- (b) Wind energy
- (c) Solar energy
- (d) Non-conventional energy

**Ans :**

OD 2011

- (a) Tidal energy

- 22.** Ferrous minerals account for about ..... of the total value of production of metallic minerals.

- (a) One-fourth
- (b) Two-fourth
- (c) Three-fourth
- (d) Two-third

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (c) Three-fourth

- 23.** Identify the type of energy-

- Obtained by altering the structure of an Atom.
- During the process of e-alternation lot of heat is generated.
- It is present in the mines of Jharkhand and Aravali range of Rajasthan.

39. Look at the picture below and choose the correction option which depicts best the impact of mining and generation of dust in mining area-



- (a) River pollution
- (b) Air pollution
- (c) Soil pollution
- (d) Noise pollution

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (b) Air pollution

40. Identify the type of coal-

- It is a low-grade brown coal.
- Used in the generation of electricity at thermal stations.
- It has very low heat content.
- Its case reserve is in Neyveli, Tamil Nadu.

**Options :**

- (a) Subbituminous
- (b) Bauxite
- (c) Bituminous
- (d) Lignite

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (d) Lignite

41. **Assertion :** Minerals are an indispensable part of our lives.

**Reason :** Minerals have a universal use, they are used to manufacture everything we use in our day to day lives.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

42. Complete the following table with correct information-

Type of minerals	Occurs in which rock	Examples
Metallic minerals	A - ?	Iron ore bauxite
Non-metallic minerals	Sedimentary rock	B - ?

**Option :**

- (a) A - Igneous and metamorphic rocks, B - Mica, salt, limestone, granite.
- (b) A - Igneous and metamorphic rocks, B - Mica, salt, limestone, granite.
- (c) A - Igneous and metamorphic rocks, B - Mica, salt, limestone, granite.
- (d) A - Igneous and metamorphic rocks, B - Mica, salt, limestone, granite.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (a) A - Igneous and metamorphic rocks, B - Mica, salt, limestone, granite.

43. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Biogas Plant
- (b) Wind Mills
- (c) Coal Mine
- (d) Bauxite Mine

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (a) Biogas Plant

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

(d) Tamil Nadu

**32.** Identify the natural gas pipeline which is spread from North to South-

- It starts from Hazira (Surat) passes through Madhya Pradesh to reach industrial areas of Uttar Pradesh.
- Links various power and industrial complexes in western and Northern India.
- Total approx. length is 1700 km and India's first cross state gas pipeline.
- Recognized as an artery for boosting the India's Gas production.

**Option :**

- (a) Salaya - Mathura Gaspipeline
- (b) Hazira- Vijaipur- Jagdishpur Gaspipeline
- (c) Paradip-Haldia-Barauni Gaspipeline
- (d) Mundra-Panipat Gaspipeline

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

(b) Hazira- Vijaipur- Jagdishpur Gaspipeline

**33.** **Assertion :** Geological processes of mineral formation is slow

**Reason :** Minerals resources are consumed way quickly than they are formed.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**34.** Large reserves of natural gas have been discovered in which place in India?

- (a) Arabian Sea
- (b) Andaman Nicobar Islands
- (c) Krishna Godavari Basin
- (d) Gulf of Mannar

**Ans :**

OD 20105

(c) Krishna Godavari Basin

**35.** The toothbrush and tube containing paste are made up of plastic obtained from

- (a) Mica
- (b) Petroleum
- (c) Fibre
- (d) Paper

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

(b) Petroleum

**36.** **Assertion :** Thermal power stations are located on or near the coalfields.

**Reason :** Coal is a bulky material, which loses weight on use as it is reduced to ash. Hence, heavy industries and thermal power stations are located on or near the coalfields.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2006, 2010

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. The reason justifies the assertion.

**37.** Which is the finest iron ore with a very high content of iron?

- (a) Magnetite
- (b) Haematite
- (c) Limonite
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

OD 2020

(a) Magnetite

**38.** Iron ore is exported Japan and South Korea via which port?

- (a) Chennai
- (b) Vishakhapatnam
- (c) Haldia
- (d) Mangaluru

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

(b) Vishakhapatnam

(2)	It has very high content of iron upto 70%.	It has upto 50-60 per cent iron content.
(3)	Magnetite is black in colour.	Hematite has variety of colour.

50. "India has fairly rich and varied mineral resources across different regions." Support the statement with examples.

Ans :

SQP 2020

India has fairly rich and varied mineral resources but these are unevenly distributed.

- (1) Peninsular rocks contain most of the reserves of coal, metallic minerals, mica and many other non-metallic minerals.
- (2) Sedimentary rocks on the western and eastern flanks of the peninsula, in Gujarat and Assam have most of the petroleum deposits.
- (3) Rajasthan with the rock-system of peninsula, has reserves of many non-ferrous minerals. The vast alluvial plains of north India are almost devoid of economic minerals. These variations exist largely because of the differences in geological structure, processes and time involved in the formation of minerals.

51. Describe any three characteristics of Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur Iron-ore belt in India.

Ans :

OD 2017

The characteristics of Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur Iron-ore belt in India are as follows :

- (1) The Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt of high grade haematite iron-ore. This high quality iron ore is suitable for steel-making.
- (2) The steel made from this ore is used to produce automobiles, railway equipments and in defence
- (3) Half of the iron ore is exported to Japan and South Korea from the Vishakhapatnam port as building new steel plant is a very costly affair.

52. What are the two types of minerals according to occurrence in igneous and metamorphic rocks ?

Ans :

Delhi 2016

In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins and the larger are called lodes. In most cases, they are formed when minerals in liquid/molten and gaseous forms are forced upward through cavities towards the earth's surface. They cool and solidify as they rise. Major metallic minerals like tin, copper, zinc and lead are obtained from veins and lodes i.e., smaller and larger occurrences.

53. What is the position of India as far as iron-ore reserves are concerned ?

Ans :

SQP 2010, 2009

Position of India in Iron-ore reserves : India has about 20 percent of the world's (iron-ore) reserves. Most of the mines are located in Chhattisgarh (Durg and Dantewada), Jharkhand (East-Singhbhum), Odisha (Sundergarh, Keonjhar and Mayurbhanj), Goa (north region of the state) and Karnataka (Chikmaglur and Bellary).

Magnetite-ore (containing nearly 72 percent iron) and hematite ore (containing nearly 60-70 percent iron) are found in Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Andhra Pradesh, Goa, Odisha, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Maharashtra and Rajasthan.

54. Why is about half of the iron-ore is exported from India ?

Ans :

OD 2006

Causes of export of nearly half of Iron-ore from India: Nearly half of the ore has to be exported as we do not have enough refining technological capacity. Steel plants require heavy capital investment and have a long gestation period which India cannot afford.

55. Why is coal often called 'black gold' ? Give two reasons.

Ans :

Delhi 2017

Coal is often called 'black gold' that has the following reasons :

**44.** Arrange the following Iron ore belts in ascending order of their is on production-

1. Odisha- Jharkhand belt.
2. Durg- Bastar- chandrapar belt.
3. Ballasi- Chitradurga- Chikkamagaluru- Tumakuru belt.
4. Maharashtra- Goa belt.

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 3, 4, 2, 1 | (b) 3, 1, 2, 4 |
| (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 | (d) 2, 1, 4, 3 |

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1

**45. Assertion :** Natural gas is referred as an environment friendly fuel.

**Reason :** Natural gas contains low carbon dioxide emissions.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2008

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. Natural gas is considered an environment friendly fuel because of low carbon dioxide Emissions.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**46.** Natural gas is considered an environmental friendly fuel. Suggest and explain an three ways to make it popular.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

Natural gas is considered as an environmental friendly fuel because of following reasons :

- (1) Natural gas is the cleanest fossil fuel.
- (2) When burned, natural gas produces about 45 per cent less carbon dioxide than coal, and 30 per cent less than oil and 15 per cent less than wood.

(3) Natural gas is extremely efficient when it combust.

**47.** “A concerted effort has to be made in order to use mineral resources in a planned and sustainable manner.” Suggest and explain any three measures.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

We must make use of minerals in a planned and sustainable manner.

- (1) Improved technologies need to be constantly evolved to allow the use of low grade ores at low cost.
- (2) Recycling of metals, using scrap metals and other substitutes are steps in conserving ore mineral resources for the future.
- (3) Try to reuse the waste to reduce the production cost.

**48.** Which state is the largest producer of Manganese in India ? Mention any four uses of Manganese.

**Ans :**

Comp 2009, 2007

Orissa is the largest producer of Mangapese in India.

**Uses of Manganese :**

1. It is used to make iron and steel and prepare various alloys.
2. It is used to manufactured bleaching powder.
3. It is used to make insecticides.
4. It is used to make paints and batteries.

**49.** Explain any two differences between Magnetite iron-ore and Hematite iron-ore.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

	<b>Magnetite iron-ore</b>	<b>Hematite iron-ore</b>
(1)	Magnetite is the finest iron ore with a very high content of iron. It is valuable in the electrical industry.	Hematite ore is the most important industrial iron ore in terms of quantity used.

- (2) Secondly, this energy helps us cook food within little cost. Solar cookers cook almost without any cost. Solar energy has a great future. It will be used in the future when coal and oil would have been exhausted.
- (3) Thirdly, solar energy is pollution-free. The largest solar plant of India is also located in western India at Madhopur near Bhuj.
- 62.** How can we contribute in conserving energy resources in our daily life ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

We can contribute in conserving energy resources in our daily life :

- (1) By using public transport instead of private transport.
- (2) By switching off electricity when not in use.
- (3) By encouraging the use of renewable sources of energy.

- 63.** Write any three values for the conservation of mineral resources.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (1) Minerals are limited in supply or in stock.
- (2) Geological process of mineral formation is very slow and take millions of years.
- (3) These are vital need for human lives and developmental activities.
- (4) As per geologists, stocks of minerals are depleting with faster speed.

- 64.** Which three values enhance the importance of minerals ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

Three values enhance the importance of minerals are given below :

- (1) We the human being are using minerals for survival of life and luxury livelihoods.
- (2) They make our life more comfortable.
- (3) They are in limited in supply.
- (4) Mineral also enhance economic development (Any three)

- 65.** Write an essential value of conservation of minerals.

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (1) Anything that we use or consume contains minerals.
- (2) They are limit in supply and their over use can create shortage for future generation.

- 66.** Elaborate in your own words any three techniques used for conservation of minerals.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (1) Efficiency of mining
- (2) Synthetic substitutes
- (3) Recycling

- 67.** How can we contribute in the conservation of energy resource ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

We can contribute in the conservation of energy resources by adopting following measures :

- (1) By using public transport
- (2) By switching off electric appliances whenever, not in use and by using power saving devices.
- (3) By checking the power equipment regularly.
- (4) By encouraging the use of non-conventional sources of energy.

- 68.** "Energy saved is energy produced." Support the statement with suitable examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

India is one of the least energy efficient countries in the world. In this background, there is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development.

- (1) Promotion of energy conservation and increased use of renewable energy resources are the twin planks of sustainable energy.
- (2) One needs to adopt a cautious approach for the judicious use of limited energy resources.
- (3) Citizens need to be sensitised about the use of public transport system instead of individual vehicles, switching off electricity when not in use, using power-saving devices and using non-conventional sources of energy.

- (1) Coal is the main source of power generation in India. About 67 percent of the country's requirement of power is met by coal. It is the prime source of energy in the manufacturing of iron and steel.
- (2) It is also used as a raw material mainly for chemical industry.
56. Describe any three characteristics of Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur Iron-ore belt in India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

The characteristics of Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur Iron-ore belt in India are as follows :

- (1) The Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt of high grade haematite iron-ore. This high quality iron ore is suitable for steel-making.
- (2) The steel made from this ore is used to produce automobiles, railway equipments and in defence
- (3) Half of the iron ore is exported to Japan and South Korea from the Vishakhapatnam port as building new steel plant is a very costly affair.

57. State the facts about iron-ore found in India with reference to following :

- (1) Two types of iron-ore
- (2) Two exporting ports
- (3) Two major destinations of the exports.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

- (1) Two types of iron-ore : (a) Magnetite, (b) Hametite.
- (2) Two exporting ports : (a) Vishakhapatnam. (b) Marmagao port.
- (3) Two major destinations of the exports : (a) Japan, (b) South Korea.

58. Name a clay like substance from which alumina and later aluminium is obtained. Give its formation, uses and distribution.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

Alumina and later aluminium is obtained from bauxite

- (1) Formation : Bauxite deposits are formed by the decomposition of a wide variety of rocks rich in aluminium silicates.

- (2) Uses : It combines the strength of metals such as iron, with extreme lightness and also with good conductivity and great malleability.
- (3) Distribution : Bauxite deposits are found in the Amarkantak plateau, Maikal hills and the plateau region of Bilaspur-Katni.

59. What are two types of metallic minerals ? Give examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2014

Following are the two types of metallic minerals :

1. Ferrous metals.
2. Non-ferrous metals.

Ferrous metals possess iron contents, for example iron-ore, manganese, etc. Non-ferrous possess iron contents, for examples copper, bauxite.

60. Why are coal, mineral oil and gas called the fossil-fuels ?

**Ans :**

Coal, mineral oil and gas are called the fossils fuels, because it obtained from the sedimentary rocks. These rocks are formed by the sediments or deposits laid down on the floor of the river-beds, lakes or shallow seas. A distinguishing feature of the sedimentary rocks is that they contain fossils, which are embedded remains of animals and plant organisms. Coal, oil and gas are sources of mineral origin and produces thermal electricity.

61. Solar energy can solve the crisis of increasing shortage of electricity in India. Explain, with the help of two examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

**The solar energy has many merits :**

- (1) Firstly, the sun is a universal, abundant and inexhaustible source of energy. Our government is planning and implementing to use the solar energy by setting up small and medium size solar power stations in rural areas. Solar energy can be used for cooking, heating, crop-drying etc.

- (2) In most cases, they are formed when minerals in liquid/molten and gaseous forms are forced upward through cavities towards the earth's surface. They cool and solidify as they rise.
- (3) Major metallic minerals like tin, copper, zinc and lead, etc. are obtained from veins and lodes.
- 76.** What type of mineral is limestone ? Describe its uses and distribution.
- Ans :** Comp 2012
- (1) Limestone is a non-metallic mineral. It is found in association with rocks composed of calcium carbonates or calcium and magnesium carbonates
- (2) Uses of limestone :
- (i) It is the basic raw material for cement industry.
  - (ii) It is essential for smelting iron ore in the blast furnace.
- (3) Distribution : It is produced in Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Tamil Nadu, etc.
- 77.** What do you know about Mumbai High ? Explain.

**Ans :** OD 2017, 2016

Mumbai High : Rich oil fields have been discovered in off-shore region in Gulf of Trambay, along the coast of Mumbai. Oil struck below the sea beds at a distance of 115 kms from the shore on 19th February, 1974. The drilling was done with the help of Sagar Samrat (a mobile drilling platform) bought from Japan. This has become the richest oil field in India and is known as Mumbai High'. It has been connected with the coast by a sub-marine pipeline.

- 78.** Describe any three features of ferrous minerals found in India.

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

Features of ferrous minerals are as mentioned below:

- (1) Ferrous minerals contain iron e.g., iron ore, manganese, nickel, cobalt etc.

- (2) Ferrous minerals account for about three-fourths of the total value of the production of metallic minerals.
- (3) These minerals provide a strong base for the development of metallurgical industries.
- (4) India exports substantial quantities of ferrous minerals after meeting her internal demands.

- 79.** Why is mineral conservation very essential for sustainable development ?

**Ans :** SQP 2019

Sustainable economic development means development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of the future generations.

Mineral conservation is very essential because the present generation use minerals without care for future. It will be very dangerous for development in coming time.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 80.** Differentiate between anthracite and bituminous coal on the basis of quality.

**Ans :** Comp 2020

	Anthracite Coal	Bituminous Coal
1.	Contains more than 80% carbon.	Contains 60% to 80% carbon.
2.	Anthracite is a metamorphic rock.	Bituminous coal is a sedimentary rock,
3.	It is of the best quality.	It is of medium quality and lower grade than anthracite.
4.	It is found in J & K.	It is found in Jharkhand, Orissa, West Bengal, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh.

- 69.** What is the next major source of energy after coal in India ? Describe any three advantages of it.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018, 2016

The substitute source of energy after coal in India is petroleum. Main advantages of Petroleum are :

- (1) Petroleum can be used as a fuel for heat and lighting.
  - (2) Petroleum can be also used as lubricants for machinery equipment.
  - (3) Petroleum can be used as raw materials for a number of manufacturing sector like textile, fertiliser and in petrochemical industries.
- 70.** State any two factors which influence the formation of a mineral.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (1) The formation of minerals depends upon the physical and chemical conditions under which the material forms.
  - (2) Coal and some forms of iron ore have been concentrated as a result of long period under great heat and pressure.
  - (3) In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. In most cases they are formed when minerals in liquid/molten and gaseous forms are forced upward through cavities toward the earth's surface.
- 71.** How do geologists define minerals ? Give one example each of the hardest and the softest minerals.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

- (1) Geologists define minerals as a "homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure".
  - (2) Minerals are found in varied forms in nature.
  - (3) The hardest form of mineral is diamond and softest is talc.
- 72.** What is the use of manganese-ore ? Where in our country do we have its deposits ?

**Ans :**

OD 2011

**Uses :**

- (1) Manganese is used for making steel. It gives strength to iron.
- (2) It is also used in manufacturing of bleaching powder, insecticides and paints. Deposits of ores in India : Manganese ore reserves exist in Karnataka, Odisha, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Goa.

India consumes nearly four-fifth (4/5) of the total production of manganese ore. The rest is exported mostly to Japan.

- 73.** Name the rock mineral which is the basic raw material for a cement industry. State its composition and use.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

- (1) Limestone is the basic raw material for the cement industry.
- (2) It is found in association with rocks composed of calcium carbonates or calcium and magnesium carbonates.
- (3) It is used for smelting iron ore in the blast furnace.

- 74.** Where are minerals usually Found ? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2005

- (1) Minerals are found in varied forms in nature, ranging from the hardest diamond to the softest talc.
- (2) Minerals are usually found in ores. The term ore is used to describe an accumulation of any mineral mixed with other elements.
- (3) In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. In sedimentary rocks a number of minerals occur in beds or layers.

- 75.** Explain veins and lodes. Which minerals are found in them ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (1) In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins and the larger are called lodes.

- 85.** “Crude oil reserves are limited all over the world. If people continue to extract it at the present rate, the reserves would last only 35 - 40 years more” Explain any three ways to solve this problem.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Crude oil is a non-renewable resource of energy. It takes millions of years for the formation of this fuel, hence it must be used judiciously. This type of fuel is being used at a faster rate than they are being produced. This causes depletion and scarcity of crude oil.

Steps which can be undertaken to conserve this non-renewable source of energy are:

- (i) Use of public transport like buses and trains instead of self-owned vehicles will help to conserve petroleum. Carpooling will reduce the consumption of fuel, thus scarcity will be better dealt with.
- (ii) Use of cycles wherever possible instead of using motorbikes or cars.
- (iii) Waxing floors with beeswax instead of petroleum based commercial wax can also be beneficial.

- 86.** What steps can be taken for saving energy ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

The following steps can be taken for conservation of energy resources :

- (1) Use more and more of public transport system and less of individual vehicles.
  - (2) Use of bicycles for short distances.
  - (3) Switch off electricity whenever not required.
  - (4) Use power-saving devices.
  - (5) Check the power equipment regularly.
  - (6) Regular cleaning of gas burners and switching off the gas regulator when not in use.
  - (7) Creating awareness in neighbourhood with catchy slogans.
  - (8) Greater use of non-conventional sources of energy as India has abundance of sunlight, water, wind and biomass.
- These steps are necessary because energy saved is energy produced”.

- 87.** “Minerals are indispensable part of our lives.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013, 2010

- (1) Minerals are an indispensable part of human life. Almost all things we use are made of minerals.
- (2) Human beings use minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial rites.
- (3) Buildings, ships, railway lines, aeroplanes various implements etc. are manufactured from minerals and run on power resources derived from the earth.
- (4) Our food too contains minerals. Life processes cannot occur without minerals.
- (5) They are very important part of total food intake.
- (6) It is only 0.3% of the total intake of nutrients but they are so potent and important that without them we would not be able to utilise the other 99.7% of the foodstuffs.

- 88.** Which is the most abundantly-available fossil fuel in India ? Assess the Importance of its different forms.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

Coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India. It is the main source of power generation in India. Major places where coal is found in India as given below :

- (a) Lignite coal : The principal lignite reserves are in Neyveli in Tamil Nadu. It is used generation of electricity.
- (b) Bituminous coal : It is the most popular coal in commercial use. The major resources of metallurgical coal or Gondwana coal as it is called, are located in Damodar valley (West Bengal, Jharkhand), Jharia, Raniganj and Bokaro.
- (c) Anthracite: It is found only in Jammu and Kashmir. It is highest quality hard coal.
- (d) Tertiary coal occur in the north-eastern states of Meghalaya, Assam, Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland.

- 81.** Why are we not able to perform to our full potential in the production of iron and steel in India? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

Today with 32.8 million tonnes of steel production, India ranks 9th among the world crude steel producers. It is the largest producer of sponge iron. Inspite of large production of steel, per capita consumption per annum is only 32 Kg. India's export of steel is 2.25% of the global steel trade. Though India has many advantages for the development of this industry, which includes low cost of iron ore, high grade raw material in proximity, cheap labour and vast growth potential in home market. Yet we are not able to perform to our full potential largely due to :

- (1) High cost and limited availability of cooking coal.
- (2) Lower productivity of labour.
- (3) Irregular supply of energy.
- (4) Poor infrastructure.

- 82.** Why is it necessary to conserve mineral resources? Explain any four ways to conserve mineral resources.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

Minerals require millions of year to form. These are non-renewable resources and their stock is limited. Continuous extraction of minerals raises the cost of extraction as they have to be dug from greater depths. Minerals may also be low in quality.

- (1) A concerned effort has to be made in order to use our mineral resources in a planned and sustainable manner.
- (2) Use of substitutes in order to save minerals should be encouraged.
- (3) Improved technologies need to be constantly evolved to allow the use of low grade ores at low costs.
- (4) Recycling of minerals using scrap metals and other substitutes are some steps in conserving our mineral resources for the future.

- 83.** How could iron make a revolutionary change in the life of man ? Explain it with three examples.

**Ans :**

SOP 2016

The discovery of iron made revolutionary changes in the life of man. This can be seen from the following examples :

1. The discovery of iron led to the development of various crafts. The metal workers and blacksmith produced tools and implements of various kinds which further led to the development of carpentry, tannery, weaving and other different crafts.
2. The discovery of iron started a revolution in the field of agriculture as sickles, hoes and ploughshares began to be made of iron instruments, tools, implements and even weapons are made of iron.
3. The discovery of iron also encouraged ship-building and thus added to the seafaring activities in the period of Guptas, Cholas etc. in India.

- 84.** Why is energy required for all activities? How can energy be generated? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

Energy is required in almost all the activities of the life like food preparation, running of machines and vehicles, in all the agricultural works like running of threshing machine, tubewell, flour mills etc. Now in modern times almost all the small activities are done by utilizing the energy. Sources of energy are of two types, i.e.,

- (1) Non-renewable sources of energy like coal, petroleum, LPG and CNG etc.,
- (2) Renewable sources of energy like solar, air, water, geothermal energy, chemical energy tidal energy etc.

All the types of renewable sources are manmade which shows that non-renewable sources are fixed in quantity so renewable energy is required to fulfil the needs and now we are trying to prepare the energy.

- 94.** "Aluminium is an important metal". Support the statement with examples.

Ans :

Foreign 2009

**Aluminium is an important metal because :**

- (1) It is light in weight.
- (2) It is resistant to corrosion.
- (3) It is good conductor of heat.
- (4) It has great malleability.
- (5) It is used to manufacture aircraft, utensils and wires.
- (6) It is used as substitute of copper, steel, zinc etc.

- 95.** "Minerals found in the ocean waters mostly are not of economic significance." Give one reason. Name any two minerals derived from ocean water.

Ans :

OD 2013

- (1) Minerals found in the ocean waters mostly are not of economic significance because :
  - (i) These are too widely diffused.
  - (ii) The higher cost and environmental constraints of marine mining.
  - (iii) Mining is hampered by technological constraints (depth of ocean).
- (2) Two minerals derived from ocean water :
  - (i) Common salt
  - (ii) Magnesium
  - (iii) Bromine
  - (iv) Manganese nodules.

- 96.** Differentiate between metallic and non-metallic minerals with examples.

Ans :

Comp 2021

	Metallic minerals	Non-metallic minerals
(1)	Metallic minerals are those from which metals are obtained.	These minerals do not contain metals.
(2)	These minerals are, malleable and ductile.	Non-metallic minerals are non-malleable and non-ductile.
(3)	These minerals occur in igneous and metamorphic rocks.	These minerals occur in sedimentary rocks.

(4)	Metallic minerals show lustre.	Non-metallic minerals do not show lustre.
(5)	For example, iron ore, manganese, copper, tin, etc.	(5) For example, gypsum, potash, salt, etc.

- 97.** Distinguish between Biogas and Natural gas.

Ans :

SQP 2012, 2010

	Biogas	Natural Gas
(1)	Biogas is the man-made energy resource.	Natural gas is a natural resource.
(2)	It is prepared by using shrubs, farm waste, animal and human wastes.	It is found beneath the earth usually above the oil (petroleum).
(3)	It is produced for domestic consumption in rural areas.	It is used as an industrial raw material in the petrochemical industry
(4)	It can be prepared anywhere in the rural areas.	(4) Natural gas reserves are found in specific areas.
(5)	Biogas is the efficient use of cattle dung. It improves the quality of manure and also prevents the loss of trees.	(5) Use of compressed natural gas for vehicles to replace liquid fuels is gaining wide popularity in the country.

- 98.** Why do you think that nuclear energy is bound to play an increasingly important role in India?

Ans :

OD 2008

Nuclear energy is bound to play an increasingly important role in India because of the following reasons :

- (1) Coal and mineral oil are non-renewable sources of energy, so we cannot fully depend on them.

**89.** What is conservation of minerals essential? Explain any four measures to conserve minerals.

**Ans :** OD 2010

- (i) In India sustainable economic development means development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of the future generations.
- (2) Minerals are the good source of earning foreign currency.
- (3) Many Indian factories depend upon minerals for their raw materials.
- (4) Minerals are helpful in generating jobs and employment in mining.

**90.** Describe any three points of importance of minerals in our daily life.

**Ans :** Delhi 2020, 2017

Minerals are an indispensable part of our lives. For example;

- (1) The railway lines and the tarmac of the roads, our implements and machinery are made from minerals.
- (2) Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes are manufactured from minerals.
- (3) From a tiny pin to a towering building or a ship, all are made from minerals.
- (4) In all stages of development, human beings have used minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial rites, etc.

**91.** Distinguish between rocks and minerals. Give one example of each.

**Ans :** SQP 2016

	Rocks	Minerals
(1)	Rocks are combinations of homogeneous substances called minerals.	Minerals are homogeneous naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.

(2)	Majority of rocks consist of several minerals ranging in varying proportions.	Minerals are found in varied forms in nature, ranging from the hardest diamond to the softest talc.
(3)	For example, granite, sandstone.	For example, iron, manganese.

**92.** Classify minerals into the three groups. Give one example of each.

**Ans :** Delhi 2011

#### Classification of minerals :

- (1) Metallic minerals : These can be classified into :
  - (i) Ferrous (containing iron) : For example, iron ore, manganese, nickel, cobalt, etc.
  - (ii) Non-ferrous minerals : For example, copper, lead, tin, bauxite, etc.
  - (iii) Precious : For example, gold, silver, platinum, etc.
- (2) Non-metallic minerals : For example, mica, salt, potash, granite, limestone, etc.
- (3) Energy minerals : For example, coal, petroleum, natural gas, etc.

**93.** Explain the various hazards of mining.

**Ans :** SQP 2013

Various hazards of mining are as under :

- (1) The dust and noxious fumes inhaled by miners make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.
- (2) The risk of collapsing mines roofs, inundation and fires in coalmines are a constant threat to miners.
- (3) Dumping of waste and slurry leads to degradation of land and soil.
- (4) During rainfall the water falls directly on the dumped waste. The water becomes dirty and ultimately contaminate the surrounding water bodies (streams or rivers) or underground water through percolation.
- (5) Mining industry is often called a 'Killer Industry' due to high risks involved.

**102.** What are the major uses of copper ?

or

Why is copper mainly used in electrical cables and electronic industries ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

Copper is a non-ferrous metal. It has been used by man since pre-historic times but use of copper was limited to utensils, coins and implements. With the development of electricity, its significance has increased as a good conductor of electricity. It is used in automobiles, aircraft, radios, telephones, telegraphs, televisions, refrigerators, wires, power lines and electrical goods industries. Copper is used to form alloys by mixing it with other metals. Bronze, brass and German silver are some of these alloys.

**103.** What is a mineral ? Distinguish between ferrous and non-ferrous minerals.

or

Distinguish between ferrous minerals and non-ferrous minerals. Give two examples of each.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

(1) Mineral is a homogeneous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.

(2) Difference between ferrous and non-ferrous minerals:

	Ferrous Minerals	Non-Ferrous Minerals
(i)	The minerals containing iron-content are known as ferrous minerals.	The minerals which do not contain iron-content are known as non-ferrous minerals.
(ii)	They are used in iron and steel industry. They also provide strong base for metallurgical industries.	They have their own utility and are used in electrical, electronic, chemical, engineering industries.

(iii)	Ferrous minerals account for about three-fourths of the total value of the production of metallic minerals.	India's reserves and production of non-ferrous minerals are not very satisfactory.
(iv)	Iron, manganese, cobalt are the examples.	Copper, bauxite, lead, zinc, gold are the examples.

**104.** Describe the hazards of mining or describe the impact of mining on the health of the miners and on the environment. What is the position of miners in India ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2013, 2011

The hazards of mining or the impacts of mining on the health of the miners and the environment can be discussed in following points :

- (1) The dust and noxious fumes inhaled by miners make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.
- (2) The risk of collapsing mine roofs, inundation and fires in coal mines are a constant threat to miners.
- (3) The water in the area is polluted as it gets contaminated due to mining.
- (4) It leads to degradation of soil and land due to dumping of waste and slurry.
- (5) It increases in stream and river pollution too.

The condition of coal miners in India is sometimes found not to be satisfactory due to following reason :

- (1) Underground fires start mostly from burning trash close to coal-pits.
- (2) Over 50% of coal-belt mines are not safe in India. The companies which own mines do not meet the basic safety standards.
- (3) The safety status of mines has been graded second and third degrees in the past.
- (4) There is lack of security measures in the coal mines which leads to disasters.

It has once in practice become a 'killer industry' because many miners were killed every year due to explosions or other incidents in the mines.

- (2) Hydro-electricity is not sufficient and where, there are no ever flowing or perennial rivers. So we cannot depend upon hydro-electricity only.
- (3) Whether alternative sources of energy are in short supply. The nuclear power is proving very useful and economical.
- (4) Nuclear power plants can be set up and will be alternative source of energy requirement.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

99. "Nuclear energy is the hope of future." Discuss this statement by giving five points.

**Ans :** Comp 2022

1. Atomic energy is generated by splitting nuclear substances such as the atoms of uranium, thorium, cheralite, ziroconium under controlled conditions. Splitting of these atoms gives out a lot of energy which can be used for a variety of purposes such as generating electricity.
2. In modern times, more and more countries are using nuclear energy to meet their energy demand. There are such atomic power stations in U.S.A., France, Russia, England etc.
3. India has also set up atomic power stations at Tarapur, Kota, Kalpakkam and at Narora. In India uranium is found in Jharkhand, Bihar and thorium in Kerala.
4. Nuclear energy is bound to play an increasingly important role in fulltime India. Coal and mineral oil are non-renewable sources of energy. So we cannot depend on them forever.
5. Hydro-electricity is not sufficient where, there are not ever flowing perennial rivers. So we cannot depend upon hydro-electricity. The nuclear power is being proved very useful and economical. Nuclear power plant can be set up at any place.

100. Why is conservation of mineral resources essential ? Explain any three methods to conserve them.

**Ans :**

SOP 2019

- (A) We need to conserve mineral resources due to the reasons as mentioned below:
  - (1) It took millions of years for the creation and concentration of mineral resources.
  - (2) The mineral resources are finite and non-renewable.
  - (3) Even rich mineral deposits in a country like India are valuable but short-lived possessions.
- (B) Minerals should be conserved in the ways as mentioned below :
  - (1) Minerals should be used in a planned and sustainable manner.
  - (2) Recycling of metal using scrap metals should be done.
  - (3) Wastage in the mining and processing should be minimized.

These steps are necessary because "energy saved is energy produced".

101. Solar energy can solve the crisis of increasing shortage of electricity in India. Explain with the help of two examples.

or

Why is solar energy called the energy of future ? Give reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

India lies in the tropical and sub-tropical zones. Therefore, there is an abundance and inexhaustible supply of solar energy. The solar energy is also called the energy of future because :

- (1) It is a renewable source of energy.
- (2) It is pollution-free and leaves no residue.
- (3) It is a universal source of energy and has huge potential.
- (4) It is comparatively easy and cheaper to be installed.
- (5) It is being successfully used in cooking, water-heating, space heating, water desalination, crop-drying, etc..
- (6) It is mainly used in agricultural as well as domestic sectors.

- (2) During the past 30-35 years, the consumption as well as demand of petroleum has increased beyond expectation. It is used both as source of energy and raw material. It is now being feared that if its consumption goes on increasing at an alarming rate, the existing oil-well will soon get dry.
- (3) Because of its great demand, the oil producing countries like Saudi Arabia, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, etc. in the seventies increased the oil prices on day to basis. It resulted in world-wide inflation and shattered the economies of many countries, especially of the developing countries like India. However, the developed countries like the USA have control on the oil producing countries. Besides amassing million of petrodollars, the oil-producing countries are using oil as a war weapon. The industrialised countries have raised the prices of their industrial goods. As a result, only the developing countries are made to bear the brunt of the increasing price of crude oil for both the oil-rich countries and industrialised countries.
- (4) The magnitude of this problem can be well understood by the fact that the bill of oil import of India was 204 crore in 1972-73. It rose to 45,421 crore in 1999-2000. It was threat our economy and forced us to consider our social and welfare programmes, project and schemes. India can cope with this situation by tapping non-conventional sources of energy and using oil very economically.

**109.** Why is it necessary to develop non-conventional sources of energy ?

or

Why is there is pressing need to use renewable resources in India ? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2015, 2012

The growing consumption of energy has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas. Rising prices of oil and gas and their potential shortages in future has raised

uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future. It has serious repercussion on the growth of the national economy. Moreover, increasing use of fossil fuels also causes serious environmental problems. Hence, there is a pressing need to use renewable energy sources like the solar energy, wind, tide, biomass and energy from waste material. These are called non-conventional energy sources.

India is blessed with an abundance of sunlight, water, wind and biomass. It has the largest programmes for the development of these renewable energy resources.

**110.** Give three differences between hydro and thermal electricity. Which one of the two is better and why ?

or

Differentiate between hydro electricity and thermal electricity.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

(1) Difference between hydro and thermal electricity :

	<b>Hydro-electricity</b>	<b>Thermal electricity</b>
(1)	Hydro electricity is generated by fast flowing water.	(1) Thermal electricity is generated using coal, petroleum and natural gas.
(2)	Hydro power station uses water to generate electricity which is a renewable resource.	The thermal power stations use non-renewable fossil fuels for generating electricity.
(3)	It is pollution free.	It pollutes the atmosphere.
(4)	Dams are helpful not only in generating electricity but also serve various other purposes like irrigation, etc.	In thermal power plants only electricity is generated.

**105.** How can biogas solve the energy problem mainly in rural India ? Give your suggestions.

**Ans :** OD 2015

Shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste are used to produce biogas for domestic consumption in rural areas. Decomposition of organic matter yields gas, which has higher thermal efficiency in comparison to kerosene, dung cake and charcoal.

Uses of biogas :

- (1) Biogas plants are set up at municipal, cooperative and individual levels.
- (2) The plants using cattle dung are known as 'Gobar gas plants' which are used in rural India.
- (3) Gobar gas plants are very beneficial for the farmers because they provide energy to the farmers as well as improve quality of manure.
- (4) It prevents the loss of trees and manure due to burning of fuel wood and cow dung cakes.

It is a renewable source of energy which is eco-friendly.

**106.** Highlight the importance of famous minerals for India.

**Ans :** Delhi 2017

India has an important place in the world for Iron minerals. There are the following four states in India which are famous for Iron mineral production. These states are Chhattisgarh, Jharkhand, Odisha Karnataka.

In the modern time Iron has an important role in human life. It has given critical change in human's life. There have been several important changes in human life by the use of Iron. For example all the agricultural implements like spade, khurpi, Axi, plough parts, Sieve, Pails of Rahat etc., are made by Iron. Thus, the agricultural activities have improved a lot.

Industrial revolution has also taken place due to the use of Iron. All types of machines are manufactured with iron. It is also used in the manufacture of ships and planes. Now India has become eminent exporters

of several items. Iron minerals also include Mangenese. Its production in India is too much. Mangenese is used in the preparation of Bleaching powder, paints, insecticides and electrical appliances and Battery.

**107.** How is energy a basic requirement for the economic development of the country ? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** Foreign 2010, 2008

India is a developing country. There is ample amount of minerals and other natural resources. These minerals and resources are very important for the welfare of human beings. Several types of industries are setup these on these minerals. To run these industries, energy is required. Human energy is one which is used in industries but other forms of energy are also required to move heavy machines. Such energy forms are conventional energy like coal, petrol, diesel and natural gases. These are limited in quantity. If we use them levishly a day comes when these stores will be empty. So we should use them economically without energy resources it is impossible to run industries. Industries give us not only essential usable items but also employment to, unemployed persons. The products enrich our country. We require less imports. Thus we save our money power. We export several goods to other countries and earn foreign currency. It improves our economic condition and status of the citizens too.

The above mentioned description proves that energy is the first and foremost important items for the development of our country. It acts as the backbone of the country.

**108.** With special reference to mineral oil, write an essay on the present day energy crisis.

**Ans :** OD 2013

- (1) Coal, mineral oil and hydro-electricity are the three major conventional sources of energy. But with the invention of internal combustion engine, petroleum has gained much importance and commercial value.

## (6) Geo-thermal Energy :

- (i) Geo-thermal energy refers to the heat and electricity produced by using the heat from the interior of the Earth.
- (ii) Geo-thermal energy exists because, the Earth grows progressively hotter with increasing depth.

**113.** Explain any five advantages of non-conventional sources of energy over conventional sources of energy.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (1) Non-conventional sources of energy are less expensive and renewable as compared to conventional sources of energy.
- (2) Non-conventional sources of energy are considered as clean sources of energy as compared to conventional sources of energy.
- (3) Optimal use of resources of energy minimize environmental impact and non-conventional sources produce minimum secondary waste whereas increasing use of fuels have caused serious environmental problems.
- (4) India is blessed with an abundance of sunlight, water, wind and biomass while rising prices of oil and gas and their potential shortages have raised uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future.
- (5) The sources of energy like Coal, Petroleum are finite and non-renewable. Once they are used up, they cannot be reproduced by human efforts while non-conventional sources of energy are renewable.

**114.** Differentiate between conventional and non-conventional sources of energy.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

	Conventional Sources of Energy	Non-Conventional Sources of Energy
(1)	Conventional sources of energy are the traditional sources of energy.	Non-conventional sources of energy are the recently developed sources.

(2)	These are non-renewable.	These are renewable.
(3)	These resources cause lots of pollution.	These resources are eco-friendly.
(4)	Generation of electricity is expensive.	Initial cost of electricity generation is costly but cheaper in the long-run.
(5)	For example — coal, petroleum, natural gas etc.	(5) For example — solar energy, wind, biogas, tidal energy etc.

**115.** Highlight any three factors which play an important role in turning a mineral resource into a mine.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

The factors which play an important role in turning a mineral reserve into a mine are :

- (1) Concentration of mineral in the ore : If concentration of minerals is more, then only it is economical to extract them.
- (2) The ease of extraction : Some mineral resources occur on the earth's surface while others may occur deep under the earth's surface. It is difficult to mine beyond a depth of about 2,000 m.
- (3) Closeness to the market : If the mine is close to the market then, transportation cost also reduces. If the market is far off then, cost of mineral increases. It also leads to wastage in loading and unloading of mineral resources.
- (4) The place where it occurs : The minerals available in regions of harsh climate or rugged topography are difficult to extract.
- (5) The cost of processing it : The cost of processing the minerals also determines its total cost. Thus, it plays an important role in determining whether reserve should be converted into a mine or not.

**116.** Explain the importance of iron, manganese, mica, bauxite, copper.

- (2) Hydro-electricity is better because it is generated by fast flowing water which is a renewable resource. The multi-purpose projects which are constructed to generate electricity are also useful for various other purposes like irrigation, controlling floods, fisheries, etc.
111. Define mineral. How are minerals formed in igneous and metamorphic rocks ?
- or
- Explain any three forms in which minerals generally occur.
- Ans :** SQP 2005
- (1) Mineral is a homogeneous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.
- (2) Minerals occur in different types of formations :
- (i) In igneous and metamorphic rocks, minerals may occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins and larger are called lodes. Tin, copper, zinc, lead are obtained from veins and lodes. In most cases, they are formed when minerals in liquid/molten and gaseous forms are forced upward through cavities towards the earth's surface. They cool and solidify as they rise.
  - (ii) In sedimentary rocks, a number of minerals occur in beds or layers. Coal and some forms of iron ore have been concentrated as a result of long periods under great heat and pressure. Another group of sedimentary minerals include gypsum, potash salt and sodium salt.
  - (iii) Another mode of formation involves the decomposition of surface rocks, and the removal of soluble constituents, leaving a residual mass of weathered material containing ores.
  - (iv) Certain minerals may occur as alluvial deposits in sands of valley floors and the base of hills. Gold, silver, tin and platinum are most important among such minerals.
- (v) The ocean waters contain vast quantities of minerals. Common salt, magnesium and bromine are derived from ocean waters. The ocean beds are also rich in manganese nodules.
112. Mention any six non-conventional sources of energy.
- Ans :** Comp 2012, 2009
- Non-conventional sources of energy are as follows :
- (1) Nuclear or Atomic Energy :
    - (i) It is obtained by altering the structure of atoms.
    - (ii) When such an alteration is made, much energy is released in the form of heat and this is used to generate electric power.
  - (2) Solar Energy :
    - (i) Photovoltaic technology converts sunlight directly into electricity.
    - (ii) Solar energy is fast becoming popular in rural and remote areas.
  - (3) Wind Power :
    - (i) India has great potential of wind power.
    - (ii) The largest wind farm cluster is located in Tamil Nadu from Nagarcoil to Madurai.
  - (4) Biogas :
    - (i) Shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste are used to produce biogas for domestic consumption in rural areas.
    - (ii) Biogas plants provide twin benefits to the farmers in the form of energy and improved quality of manure.
  - (5) Tidal Energy :
    - (i) Oceanic tides are used to generate electricity.
    - (ii) In India the Gulf of Khambhat, the Gulf of Kuchchh in Gujarat and Gangetic delta in Sunderban regions of West Bengal provide ideal conditions for utilising tidal energy

dung cake, coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity (both hydel and thermal). Non-conventional sources include solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas and atomic energy.

*Energy is a basic requirement for economic development. Every sector of the national economy – agriculture, industry, transport, commercial and domestic – needs inputs of energy.*

*Geologists define mineral as a “homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.” Minerals are found in varied forms in nature, ranging from the hardest diamond to the softest talc.*

#### **Questions :**

1. How is energy classified?
2. What is the basic requirement for economic development?
3. How do geologists define minerals as?

#### **Ans :**

1. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and non-conventional sources.
2. Energy
3. Geologists define mineral as a “homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.”

- 119.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Decaying plants in swamps produce peat which has a low carbon and high moisture content and low heating capacity. Lignite is low grade brown coal, which is soft with high moisture content. The principal lignite reserves are in Neyveli in Tamil Nadu and are used for generation of electricity. Coal that has been buried deep and subjected to increased temperatures is bituminous coal. It is the most popular coal in commercial use. Metallurgical coal is high grade bituminous coal which has a special value for smelting iron in blast furnaces. Anthracite is the highest quality hard coal.*

*In India coal occurs in rock series of two main geological ages, namely Gondwana, a little*

*over 200 million years in age and in tertiary deposits which are only about 55 million years old. The major resources of Gondwana coal, which are metallurgical coal, are located in Damodar valley (West Bengal, Jharkhand). Jharia, Raniganj, Bokaro are important coalfields. The Godavari, Mahanadi, Son and Wardha valleys also contain coal deposits. Tertiary coals occur in the North-Eastern States of Meghalaya, Assam, Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Which reserves in Tamil Nadu is an important source of lignite in India?
2. What is bituminous coal? Also evaluate its any one property.
3. State the reason due to which coal is associated with geological ages.

#### **Ans :**

1. Neyveli reserves in Tamil Nadu are important lignite reserves in India.
2. Bituminous coal is a high grade coal and thus, is a metallurgical coal. This type of coal has a special value for smelting iron in blast furnaces.  
*Important Property of Bituminous Coal.* Bituminous coal is buried deep under the Earth's surface and is subjected to increased temperature.
3. Coal is associated with geological ages because coal is formed due to compression of plant material and takes million of years to come into existence.

- 120.** Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Minerals are usually found in “ores”. The term ore is used to describe an accumulation of any mineral mixed with other elements. The mineral content of the ore must be in sufficient concentration to make its extraction commercially viable.*

*In India, coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel. It provides a substantial part of the nation's energy needs. It is used for power generation, to supply energy to industry as well as for domestic needs. India is highly*

*dependent on coal for meeting its commercial energy requirements*

*The growing consumption of energy has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels such as coal, oil and gas.*

**Questions :**

1. Where are minerals usually found?
2. What is the most abundantly available fossil fuel in India?
3. What has resulted in the country becoming increasingly dependent on fossil fuels?

**Ans :**

1. Ores
2. Coal
3. Growing energy consumption

- 121.** Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Energy can be generated from fuel minerals like coal, petroleum, natural gas, uranium and from electricity. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and nonconventional sources. Conventional sources include: firewood, cattle dung cake, coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity (both hydel and thermal). Non-conventional sources include solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas and atomic energy.*

*Energy is a basic requirement for economic development. Every sector of the national economy – agriculture, industry, transport, commercial and domestic – needs inputs of energy.*

*Geologists define mineral as a “homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.” Minerals are found in varied forms in nature, ranging from the hardest diamond to the softest talc.*

**Questions :**

1. How is energy classified?
2. What is the basic requirement for economic development?
3. How do geologists define minerals as?

**Ans :**

1. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and non-conventional sources.
2. Energy
3. Geologists define mineral as a “homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.”

- 122.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Oceanic tides can be used to generate electricity. Floodgate dams are built across inlets. During high tide water flows into the inlet and gets trapped when the gate is closed. After the tide falls outside the flood gate, the water retained by the floodgate flows back to the sea via a pipe that carries it through a power-generating turbine.*

*Shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste are used to produce biogas for domestic consumption in rural areas. Decomposition of organic matter yields gas, which has higher thermal efficiency in comparison to kerosene, dung cake and charcoal. Biogas plants are set up at municipal, cooperative and individual levels. The plants using cattle dung are known as ‘Gobar gas plants’ in rural India.*

*Nuclear or Atomic Energy is obtained by altering the structure of atoms. When such an alteration is made, much energy is released in the form of heat and this is used to generate electric power. Uranium and Thorium, which are available in Jharkhand and the Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan are used for generating atomic or nuclear power. The Monazite sands of Kerala is also rich in Thorium.*

**Questions :**

1. What will generate by the oceanic tides?
2. What do Gobar Gas plants operated?
3. How atomic energy is obtained?

**Ans :**

1. Oceanic tides can be used to generate electricity. Floodgate dams are built across inlets.

2. The plants using cattle dung are known as 'Gobar gas plants' in rural India.
  3. Nuclear or Atomic Energy is obtained by altering the structure of atoms.
- 123.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*Electricity has such a wide range of applications in today's world that, it's per capita consumption is considered as an index of development. Electricity is generated mainly in two ways: by running water which drives hydro turbines to generate hydroelectricity; and by burning other fuels such as coal, petroleum and natural gas to drive turbines to produce thermal power. Once generated the electricity is exactly the same. Hydro electricity is generated by fast flowing water, which is a renewable resource. India has a number of multi-purpose projects like the BhakraNangal, Damodar Valley Corporation, the Kopili Hydel Project etc. producing hydroelectric power. Thermal electricity is generated by using coal, petroleum and natural gas. The thermal power stations use non-renewable fossil fuels for generating electricity.*

**Questions :**

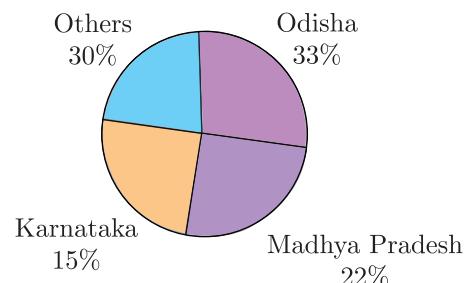
1. How does thermal power stations generate electricity?
2. Why is hydroelectric called renewable resource?
3. What are the two ways to generate electricity?
4. What is considered as an index of development?

**Ans :**

1. The thermal power stations use non-renewable fossil fuels for generating electricity.
2. Hydroelectricity is generated by fast flowing water which is a renewable resource.
3. Electricity is generated mainly in two ways:
  - (i) By running water which drives hydro turbines to generate hydroelectricity;

- (ii) By burning other fuels such as coal, petroleum and natural gas to drive turbines to produce thermal power.
4. Per capita consumption of electricity is considered as an index of development.

- 124.** Study the given pie-chart and answer the following questions :



Production of Manganese showing state-wise share

**Questions :**

1. Which state is the largest producer of manganese in India ?
2. What is the use of manganese ?
3. What is the share of Karnataka in the production of manganese ore ?

**Ans :**

1. Odisha is the largest producer of manganese ore in India.
2. Manganese is mainly used in the manufacture of steel.
3. About 15%.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

**Search by NODIA on Play Store to Download App**



# CHAPTER 10

## MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

### SUMMARY

1. Manufacturing : Production of goods in large quantities often processing from raw materials to more valuable production.
2. Industry : Production of goods from raw materials in factories and activities involved in producing a particular service to the society.
3. Agro-based Industry : An industry that converts the agricultural products into industrial products.
4. Basic Industry or Key Industry : A heavy industry of national economic importance and fundamental to other industries, e.g. iron and steel.
5. Consumer Goods Industry : The industry that manufactures goods for the consumption of people.
6. Co-operative Industry : An industry owned or organised by a group of people producing raw material and help in running the industry in an orderly and cooperative manner.
7. Heavy Industry : Industries characterised by the heavy and bulky nature of raw materials and finished products that incur heavy transit costs.
8. Joint Sector Industry : An industry owned both by the state and some private industrialists/firms/individuals.
9. Labour Intensive Industry : Industry that employs large number of persons directly or indirectly for production of goods or services.
10. Large-scale Industry : An industry that employs a very huge number of labour and manufactures goods in large scale.
11. Light Industry : Industries consuming light-weight raw materials and producing also the light weight goods, e.g. electronic toy making etc.

12. Manufacturing Industry : An industry engaged in production of goods through systematic management of labour and extensive use of machinery.
13. Mineral-based Industry : An industry engaged in processing of goods obtained from mining processes as raw material to convert into finished goods.
14. Small-scale Industries : Industries employing small number of persons in each unit, especially cottage industries.
15. Public Sector : Segment of industries owned and controlled by the state or its agencies.
16. Infrastructure : It is underlying structure of services and amenities needed to facilitate smooth running of economic activities in a country.
17. Industrial Pollution : Pollution caused to air, water, soil etc. by emission of poisonous gases, chemicals from industries or by dumping them untreated in the open space.
18. Environmental Degradation : Loss of quality of environment due to human excesses on the nature that result in danger to existence of numerous species of plant and animal kingdoms.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. In which of the following States is Kalpakkam Nuclear Power Plant located?
  - (a) Gujarat
  - (b) Odisha
  - (c) Kerala
  - (d) Tamil Nadu

Ans :

Delhi 2020

- (d) Tamil Nadu

2. A type of millet rich in iron, calcium, other micro nutrients and roughage is

- (a) Bajra
- (b) Rajma
- (c) Jowar
- (d) Ragi

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (d) Ragi

3. Which one of the following factors does not affect industrial location ?

- (a) Raw material
- (b) Labour
- (c) Capital
- (d) Rainfall

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (c) Capital

4. Which one of the following industries uses bauxite as a raw material ?

- (a) Cement
- (b) Aluminium smelting
- (c) Iron and Steel
- (d) Chemical

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (b) Aluminium smelting

5. In which of the following States is Kalpakkam Nuclear Power Plant located?

- (a) Gujarat
- (b) Odisha
- (c) Kerala
- (d) Tamil Nadu

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (d) Tamil Nadu

6. In which one of the following States is Kaigas Nuclear Energy plant located?

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| (a) Gujarat | (b) Karnataka |
| (c) Punjab  | (d) Kerala    |

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (b) Karnataka

7. Look at the following picture and answer the following question-



- (a) Cable manufacturing

- (b) Automobile manufacturing
- (c) Fertilizer manufacturing
- (d) Cement industry

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (a) Cable manufacturing

8. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Sale in the Mexico market
2. Importing the motor parts from Japan
3. Assembling in China
4. Production of motor parts from Japan

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 4, 1, 2, 3 | (b) 2, 1, 4, 3 |
| (c) 2, 1, 3, 4 | (d) 4, 2, 3, 1 |

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (d) 4, 2, 3, 1

9. Choose the correct option from columns A and B.

<b>Column A</b>	<b>Column B</b>	
A. Chandrapur Thermal power plant	1	Odisha
B. Mayurbhanj iron ore mines	2.	Amarkantak
C. Kalol oil fields	3.	Gujarat
D. Bauxite mines	4.	Jharkhand

**Option :**

- (a) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2
- (b) A - 4, B - 2, C - 3, D - 1
- (c) A - 3, B - 2, C - 4, D - 1
- (d) A - 3, B - 1, C - 4, D - 2

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (a) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2



**119.** Highlight any three challenges faced by sugar industry.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015, Delhi 2014

Three major challenges faced by sugar industry in India are :

- (1) The seasonal nature of the industry.
- (2) Old and inefficient method of production.
- (3) Transport delay in reaching cane to the factories.
- (4) Most of the sugar mills in India are of small size with a capacity of 1000 to 1500 tonnes per day. This makes large scale production uneconomic. Many of the mills are economically not viable.
- (5) Most of the machinery used in Indian sugar mills is old and obsolete.

**120.** What are the challenges faced by the Jute textile industry ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

Following problems faced by jute industry in India :

- (1) High production cast.
- (2) Stiff competition in international market.
- (3) Several substitutes have been threat due to latest technology in the form of plastic bags, covers or sheets to be used cover for tents or in store houses.
- (4) Transportation cost is very high because main buyers of Indian jutes are European countries—USA, Canada, Russia and United Arab Republic, while a number of countries are in a position to defeat India in the international market. For example Bangladesh.

**121.** Why is there a tendency for the sugar mills to shift and concentrate in the southern and western states in India ? Explain any three reasons.

or

“In recent years, there has been a tendency to establish sugar industry in Southern states instead of Northern states.” Give any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

- (1) The sugarcane produced in the southern and western states has a higher sucrose content.

(2) The cooler climate ensures a longer crushing season.

- (3) Most of the sugar mills of the area are under the cooperative sector. Regular supply of raw material is available here. Moreover, cooperatives are more successful in these areas.
- (4) More government attention for sugarcane production.
- (5) There is better port facility in southern and western states.

**122.** Name the rock mineral which is the basic raw material for a cement industry. State its composition and use.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (1) Limestone is the basic raw material for a cement industry.
- (2) It is found in association with rocks composed of calcium carbonates or calcium and magnesium carbonates.
- (3) It is found in sedimentary rocks of most geological formation.
- (4) Use :
  - (i) It is basic raw material for cement industry.
  - (ii) It is essential for smelting iron ore in the blast furnace.

**123.** ‘Development of iron and steel industry is very important for India’s development.’ Support this statement with three arguments.

or

“Production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country’s development.” Examine the statement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (1) Development of various industries depend on iron and steel industry.
- (2) If the production and consumption of steel is more in the country, it becomes clear that our industrial development is taking place.
- (3) Since, it is a basic industry, all other industries depend on it.
- (4) Steel is needed to manufacture a variety of engineering goods.

Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Factor of production
- (b) Raw materials
- (c) Component parts
- (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (a) Factor of production

**24. Assertion :** Industries gives boost to the agricultural sector.

**Reason :** Competitiveness of manufacturing industry has helped in increasing their production and also made production process efficient.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**25. Which sector is considered as the backbone in the overall economic development of a country?**

- (a) Manufacturing sector
- (b) Service sector
- (c) Agriculture sector
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

- (b) Service sector

**26. Assertion :** Textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy.

**Reason :** it contributes significantly to industrial production employment generation directly.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**27. Match the following:**

	<b>List I</b>	<b>List II</b>
A.	Cotton Textile	1. Nitric acid
B.	Chemical Industries	2. Potash
C.	Cement Industry	3. Yarn
D.	Fertiliser Industry	4. Gypsum

**Option :**

- (a) C - 1, A - 2, D - 3, B - 4
- (b) C - 1, A - 2, D - 4, B - 3
- (c) C - 3, A - 2, D - 4, B - 1
- (d) C - 3, A - 1, D - 2, B - 4

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006, 2009

- (a) C - 1, A - 2, D - 3, B - 4

**28. Which out of the following is a mineral based industry?**

- (a) Sugar
- (b) Tea
- (c) Coffee
- (d) Petrochemicals

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (d) Petrochemicals

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**29. Arrange the following phases of treatment of industrial effluents in the correct sequence-**

1. Treatment by biological process.
2. Treatment by biological, chemical and physical process i.e. recycling of water.
3. Treatment by mechanical means involving screening, grinding, flocculation and sedimentation.
4. Releasing industrial effluents in rivers.

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (c) 3, 1, 2, 4
- (d) 1, 4, 2, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (c) 3, 1, 2, 4

- (1) **Private sector :** Owned and operated by individuals; Bajaj Auto Ltd., Dabur Industries and TISCO.
- (2) **Public sector :** Owned and operated by government. Bharat Heavy Electrical Ltd. and SAIL.
- (3) **Joint sector :** Jointly run by the government and individuals—Oil India Ltd.
- (4) **Co-operative sector :** Owned and operated by the producers or suppliers of raw materials, workers or both. For example, sugar industry in Maharashtra, the coir industry in Kerala.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

153. ‘Environmental degradation has been seen everywhere.’ Explain any three values that can help to prevent environment degradation.

**Ans :** Delhi 2014

All the countries are divided into two groups: (i) developing countries and (ii) developed countries.

In all countries industries are developing day by day which require place for establishment, energy for their working and labour and transport. Place is obtained by cutting the forests which is the greatest cause of air pollution. All types of energy pollute the environment.

Means of transport also pollute the air. To prevent such environmental pollution we should opt the following methods or values:

1. Cut only those trees which have become very old and are not giving fruits. We should grow one new plant in place of that. Most of the factories should be established in deserted land.
2. We should use L.P.G., C.N.G. and other renewable sources of energy which do not pollute the environment. We should use C.N.G. in vehicles which is smokeless.
3. The factories should be established in small clusters at distant places so that the smoke and hot gases may subside easily in the atmosphere.

154. The textile industry occupies unique position in the Indian economy. Justify.

or

“The textile industry is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain.” Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016, 2014

The textile industry occupies unique position in the Indian economy because :

- (1) It contributes significantly to industrial production (14 percent).
- (2) It is labour intensive industry. It employs about 35 million persons directly. Thus it stands next only to agriculture in providing employment opportunities.
- (3) It accounts for about 4 percent of India’s gross domestic product. It earns about 24.6 percent of foreign exchange.
- (4) Textile industry is the only major industry that runs as large-scale, small-scale and village and cottage level industries at the same time.
- (5) It is the only industry in India which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain i.e., from raw material to the highest value-added products.

155. What is a major drawback of cotton industry ? Which problems does this industry face ?

**Ans :**

OD 2010

**Major drawback :** Our weaving, knitting and processing units are incapable of using the high quality yarn that is produced in the country. There are some large and modern factories in these segments, but most of the production is in fragmented small units which fulfil the requirement of the local market. This mismatch is a major drawback for the cotton industry.

**Problems of textile industry :**

- (1) The cotton mills are quite old and sick. They have obsolete machinery and outdated technology. Machinery needs to be upgraded in the weaving and processing sections.
- (2) Erratic power supply hampers production.
- (3) Labour productivity is low.

Year	Production (in metric tonner/annum)
2013-14	87.67
2014-15	92.16
2015-16	91.00
2016-17	101.3
2017-18	86.69

Why is the per capita consumption of steel so low in India?

- (a) because of high cost of steel which makes it difficult to buy and massive population of country.
- (b) Low availability of coal to produce steel.
- (c) Low productivity of labour and disrupted supply of electricity.
- (d) All of the above.

Ans :

SQP 2008

- (d) All of the above.

38. Processing of jute and rubber falls under which of the following industries?

- (a) Agro based
- (b) Mineral based
- (c) Business based
- (d) None of these

Ans :

Foreign 2021

- (a) Agro based

39. Which of the following is a mineral based product?

- (a) Woollen
- (b) Tea
- (c) Cotton
- (d) Cement

Ans :

Comp 2006

- (d) Cement

40. **Assertion :** Chemical industries are lagging behind in India.

**Reason :** Only small scale industries are present and growth of this industry is very less comparatively.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

OD 2018, 2015

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

41. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Aluminium Refinery
2. Aluminium Smelter
3. Bauxite Quarry
4. Pitch from a colliery

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 2
- (d) 3, 1, 4, 2

Ans :

OD 2010

- (d) 3, 1, 4, 2

42. Iron and steel industry is an example of which industry?

- (a) Basic industry
- (b) Mineral based industry
- (c) Both of the above
- (d) None of these

Ans :

Delhi 2009

- (c) Both of the above

43. Which of the following is produced for direct use of consumers?

- (a) Copper
- (b) Petrochemicals
- (c) Aluminium
- (d) Sugar

Ans :

SQP 2005

- (d) Sugar

44. **Assertion :** Most of the Jute mills of India located in West Bengal.

**Reason :** Bus facility is available to export the manufactured goods.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

16. Which one of the following agencies markets steel for the public sector plants ?

- (a) HAIL
- (b) SAIL
- (c) TATA Steel
- (d) MNCC

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (b) SAIL.

17. Identify the element-

- Used for manufacturing aircraft.
- Used for making utensils and packing material.
- Used for making wires.
- It is a substitute of steel, copper, zinc and lead in a number of industries.

**Options :**

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| (a) Aluminium | (b) Zinc   |
| (c) Steel     | (d) Copper |

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (a) Aluminium

18. **Assertion :** Industrial development cannot minimize environmental degradation.

**Reason :** Environmental degradation depends on the raw material used.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

19. Which one of the following industries uses bauxite as a raw material ?

- (a) Aluminium
- (b) Cement
- (c) Jute
- (d) Steel

**Ans :**

OD 2015, 2010

- (a) Aluminium.

20. Arrange the following process of textile industry.

1. Weaving
2. Spinning
3. Dyeing
4. Garment manufacture

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (d) 3, 4, 1, 2

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2015

- (c) 2, 1, 3, 4

21. Which one of the following industries manufactures telephones, computer, etc. ?

- (a) Steel
- (b) Aluminium
- (c) Electronic
- (d) Information Technology.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (c) Electronic.

22. Which of the following activities employees people in the manufacturing of primary materials into finished goods?

- (a) Secondary activities
- (b) Primary activities
- (c) Tertiary activities
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

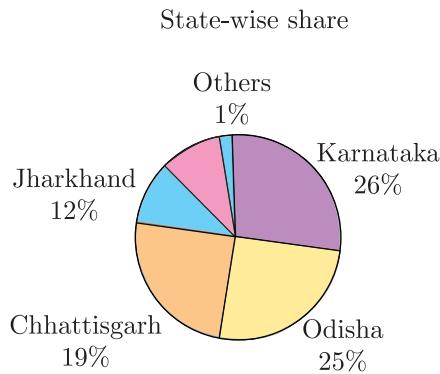
OD 2010

- (a) Secondary activities

23. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



52. Study the given pie chart carefully and answer the following question:



Which state is the leading producer of iron ore? What is its share?

**Ans :** OD 2012, 2010

Karnataka - 26%

53. Which of the following adversely affects human health, animals, plants, building and the atmosphere as whole?

- (a) Noise pollution
- (b) Thermal pollution
- (c) Air pollution
- (d) Water pollution

**Ans :** Delhi 2019

(c) Air pollution

54. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Sewing
2. Tailoring
3. Packaging
4. Designing

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :** SOP 2020

(d) 4, 3, 2, 1

55. Which of the following is caused by the discharge of organic and inorganic industrial waste and affluents?

- (a) Air pollution
- (b) Water pollution

- (c) Noise pollution
- (d) Thermal pollution

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (b) Water pollution

56. Which is the only industry in India which is self-reliant?

- (a) Textile industry
- (b) Iron and steel
- (c) Electrical
- (d) Sugar

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

- (a) Textile industry

57. Paper, pulp, chemical, textile and dyeing, petroleum refineries and tanneries are agents of causing which type of pollution?

- (a) Air pollution
- (b) Water pollution
- (c) Noise pollution
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (b) Water pollution

58. **Assertion :** Aluminum is a universally accepted metal for a large number of industries

**Reason :** Aluminum is flexible and a good conductor of heat and electricity.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

59. Tools, implements, fertilisers, tractors, etc. are supplied by:

- (a) government
- (b) industry
- (c) people
- (d) none of these

**Ans :**

SOP 2019

- (b) industry

30. Which of the following is transformed into a wide variety of furnished goods of higher value?
- Manufactured goods
  - Raw material
  - Industrial goods
  - All of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2014, 2012

- (b) Raw material

31. **Assertion :** Air pollution is caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases.

**Reason :** Air pollution does not affect human health, animals, plants, buildings and the atmosphere as a whole.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

32. What is the contribution of industry to GDP?

- 17%
- 19% in total of 29%
- 21% in total of 31%
- 23% in total of 33%

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

- (a) 17%

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

33. Molasses are used to make:

- rum
- rubber
- ethanol
- none of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (a) rum

34. The Ramagundam plant shown in the following figure is famous for?



- Electrical power production
- Geothermal power production
- Thermal power production
- Hydroelectric power production

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (c) Thermal power production

35. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

- Cotton from Farmer
- Cloth market
- Garment Factory
- In Market

**Options :**

- 1, 2, 3, 4
- 2, 1, 4, 3
- 2, 1, 3, 2
- 1, 4, 2, 3

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4

36. Which of following occurs after the increase in industrial activities?

- Urbanisation
- Rural expansion
- Development (Loss of labour)
- All of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2009

- (a) Urbanisation

37. Study the table given below and answer the question-

Total production of finished steel in India

**67.** **Assertion :** Consumer industries produces goods for direct use by consumers.

**Reason :** Consumer industries are Agro based.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**68.** How is cement industry responsible for land degradation?

**Ans :**

OD 2020

Mineral processing like grinding of limestone for cement industry generates heavy amount of dust which is released in the atmosphere. Later, it settles down in the surrounding areas which slows the process of infiltration of water into the soil. This is how land gets degraded due to cement industries.

**69.** Define the term ‘Carding.’

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

Carding is a mechanical process that disentangles, cleans and intermixes fibres such as cotton or wool to produce a continuous web suitable for subsequent processing like spinning.

**70.** Where were manufacturing units located in pre-independence period ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

In the pre-independence period most manufacturing units were located in places from the point of view of overseas trade such as presently Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai etc.

**71.** Which industries are defined as small scale industries?

**Ans :**

OD 2017

A small scale industry is defined with reference to the maximum investment allowed on the assets of a unit. At present, the maximum investment allowed is rupees one crore. This limit has changed over a period of time.

**72.** Give one difference between Public and Private Industrial sectors.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

Public sector industries are owned and operated by Government while Private sector industries are owned and operated by individuals or a group of individuals.

**73.** Classify industries on the basis of ownership.

**Ans :**

Comp. 2017, OD 2016

- (1) Public sector,
- (2) Private sector,
- (3) Joint sector; and
- (4) Cooperative sector.

**74.** Describe in very brief the classification of industries on the basis of ownership of industries.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (1) Public Sector Industries.
- (2) Joint Sector Industries.
- (3) Co-operative Sector Industries.

**75.** Which are two chief ingredient of the modern industry?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

- (1) Capital
- (2) Qualified skilled labour
- (3) Availability of raw material

**76.** What are co-operative sector industries ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

An industry owned or organised by a group of people producing raw material and help in running the industry and co-operative manner are called co-operative sector industries.

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 45.** Which of the following country is the largest producer of jute in the world?

- (a) India  
 (b) Pakistan  
 (c) Bangladesh  
 (d) Nepal

**Ans :**

OD 2013, 2008

- (c) Bangladesh

- 46.** Look at the following picture and answer the question-



Under which action plan does this sewage treatment plant (at Faridabad) comes?

- (a) Ganga action plan  
 (b) Yamuna action plan  
 (c) Narmada action plan  
 (d) Kaveri action plan

**Ans :**

Foreign 2005

- (b) Yamuna action plan

- 47.** Arrange the following steps of “process of manufacture of steel” in correct sequence-

1. Rolling and pressing, casting and forging.
2. Molten materials poured into moulds called pigs.
3. Oxidising the impurities.
4. Iron ore is melted.

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 4, 2, 1  
 (b) 4, 2, 3, 1  
 (c) 2, 1, 3, 4  
 (d) 3, 4, 1, 2

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1

- 48.** Which one of the following is manufactured at Salem?

- (a) Steel  
 (b) Cotton  
 (c) Aluminium  
 (d) Copper

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (a) Steel

- 49.** .... is caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases, such as sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide.

- (a) Air pollution  
 (b) Water pollution  
 (c) Noise pollution  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (a) Air pollution

- 50.** **Assertion :** Harvesting of rainwater reduces Industrial pollution of fresh water.

**Reason :** Rainwater helps industry to meet water requirements.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 51.** Which of the following is emitted by chemical and paper factories, brick kilns, refineries and smelting plants?

- (a) Fog  
 (b) Smoke  
 (c) Water vapour  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

- (b) All of these

- 85.** Explain any three objectives of the National Jute Policy 2005.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

The three main objectives of the National Jute Policy, 2005 are as follows :

1. Mandatory use of jute packaging has shown rise in the internal demand.
2. Stress is laid on diversification of jute products.
3. In 2005 National Jute Policy was formulated with the objective of increasing productivity, improving quality, ensuring good prices to the jute farmers and enhancing the yield per hectare.

- 86.** ‘Give reasons as to why the ideal location of sugar mills is near sugarcane producing areas.’ Support the statement with reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

- (1) The raw material used in sugar industry i.e., sugarcane is bulky, weight losing and perishable.
- (2) If there is a delay in transportation, its sucrose content reduces.
- (3) This is viable to minimise the transportation cost.

- 87.** Classify industries on the basis of source of raw material. How are they different from each other ?

or

Classify industries on the basis of raw material. Give one example of each.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

- (1) Agro Based Industries : Cotton, jute, silk, woollen textiles, sugar and edible oil, etc. industries are based on agricultural raw materials.
- (2) Mineral Based Industries : Industries that use minerals and metals as raw materials are called mineral based industries. Iron and steel, cement, aluminium, machine tools and petrochemicals are the examples of mineral-based industries.

- 88.** Explain the importance of textile industry in India in three points.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

Textile industry is the second largest after agriculture due to the following reasons :

- (1) Textile industry contributes significantly to industrial production i.e., about 14 per cent.
- (2) It generates more employment (35 million persons directly). Its foreign exchange earnings are about 24.6 per cent.
- (3) It contributes 4 per cent to our GDP. It is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant.

- 89.** Classify industries into two categories on the basis of capital investment. Give two examples of each category.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

On the basis of capital investment, the industries are classified into two categories :

- (1) Small scale industries : If the investment is upto one crore rupees. Examples : Manufacturing of electric bulbs, watches, etc.
- (2) Large scale industries : If the capital investment is more than one crore rupees. Examples : Cotton textiles, iron and steel industries, etc.

- 90.** Why are we not able to perform to our full potential in the iron and steel industry ? Explain any four reasons ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

India is one of the largest producers of iron and steel, still it could not perform to its full potential because of the following reasons :

- (1) High costs and limited availability of coking coal.
- (2) Lower productivity of labour.
- (3) Irregular supply of energy
- (4) Poor infrastructure.

- 91.** Iron and steel industry is called ‘basic and heavy industry’. Explain the reasons with arguments.

**Ans :**

OD 2016, 2015

- (1) The iron and steel industry is the basic industry since all other industries depend on it for their machinery.

**60.** Which country has the largest installed capacity of spindles in the world?

- (a) Japan
- (b) Philippines
- (c) China
- (d) India

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (c) China

**61.** Which one of the following organizations is responsible for the marketing of steel of the Public Sector Undertaking?

- (a) TISCO
- (b) IISCO
- (c) BHEL
- (d) SAIL

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (d) SAIL

**62.** Identify the type of industry-

- Industries related to textiles, sugar, paper and vegetable oil.
- Industries that use agricultural products as their raw materials.
- These industries are important for the economic growth of India.
- Example- Cotton textile industry, sugar industry

**Options :**

- (a) Mineral-based Industries
- (b) Iron and Steel Industries
- (c) Information Technology and Electronics Industry
- (d) Agro-based Industries

**Ans :**

SQP 2020, 2014

- (d) Agro-based Industries

**63.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following best signifies the above image?

- (a) Mineral-based Industries
- (b) Iron and Steel Industries

- (c) Information Technology and Electronics Industry
- (d) Agro-based Industries

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- (d) Agro-based Industries

**64.** What is the sequence of manufacturing steel?

1. Pig iron
2. Shaping metal
3. Blast furnace
4. Steel manufacturing

**Options :**

- (a) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2
- (d) 1, 4, 2, 3

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2

**65.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Dyeing
2. Weaving
3. Spinning
4. Ginning

**Options :**

- (a) 4, 2, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 2
- (d) 4, 1, 2, 3

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (a) 4, 2, 3, 1

**66.** Complete the following table with the correct information-

	Type of Industry	Established in Year	Place in India
1.	First textile mill	1854	A - ?
2.	First cement plant	B - ?	Chennai

**Option :**

- (a) A - Mumbai, B - 1904
- (b) A - Delhi, B - 1904
- (c) A - Mumbai, B - 1914
- (d) A - Delhi, B - 1914

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (a) A - Mumbai, B - 1904

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

The hazards of mining or the impacts of mining on the health or the miners and the environment are given below:

- (1) The dust and noxious fumes inhaled by miners make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.
- (2) The risk of collapsing mine roofs, inundation and fires in coal-mines are a constant threat to miners.
- (3) The water sources in the area get contaminated due to mining.
- (4) It leads to degradation of soil and land due to dumping of waste and slurry.
- (5) It increases pollution in streams and rivers.

**98.** Why is it important for our country to keep the mill sector loomage lower than powerloom and handloom ?

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2008

- (1) It will lead to the development of cottage industries.
- (2) More and more rural people will get employment.
- (3) Migration of rural people to urban areas in search of jobs will reduce
- (4) It will raise the standard of living of the rural people.
- (5) It will also help to earn foreign exchange which will ultimately make our country economically strong.

**99.** ‘Sugar industry is ideally suited to the cooperative sector.’ Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (1) Sugarcane is a seasonal crop harvested in different parts of India in different seasons. For example, in southern India it starts in October and lasts till June, while in northern India it is usually from November to April.
- (2) During the transportation of sugarcane for long distances the sugar content (sucrose) decreases. Thus, it does not remain profitable.

- (3) To prepare the sugarcane crop for transportation, takes time. It also leads to reduction of sugar content.

**100.** Why are sugar mills concentrated in sugarcane producing areas ? Explain any three problems faced by sugar industry in India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

Sugarcane is bulky and in havelage, its sucrose content reduces. It is weight losing and perishable. Besides, this industry is seasonal in nature and, therefore, it is ideally suited to the co-operative sector because it needs large manual labour in various processes of cultivation and the production of sugar can be provided by the co-operatives. There are about 460 sugar mills in India. Out of which sixty percent mills are located in Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.

The major challenges faced by the sugar mills include followings :

- (1) The sugar mills are seasonal in nature.
- (2) The use of old and inefficient method of production.
- (3) Transport delay in reaching came to factories and
- (4) The need to maximise the use of baggage.

**101.** “The economic strength of a country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries.” Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

**Arguments in favour of above statement :**

- (1) Manufacturing industries help in modernising agriculture. They reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural sector. At present more than half of the workers in India are still engaged in this primary sector.
- (2) They provide jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors also.
- (3) They are necessary for the removal of unemployment and poverty in the country like India.
- (4) They bring down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.

**77.** What is difference between Joint sector and labour intensive industries ?

Ans :

OD 2009

An industry owned both by the state and some private industries, firms, individuals are called joint sector industries while industry that employs large number of persons directly or indirectly for production of goods or services are called labour intensive industries.

**78.** Name any two varieties of silk ?

Ans :

SQP 2011

Two varieties of silk are :

- (1) Mulberry,
- (2) Tussar,
- (3) Muga.

**79.** Which two factors led to the concentration of cotton textile industries at Mumbai ?

Ans :

Delhi 2010

- (1) Huge amount of capital investment.
- (2) Humid climatic condition.

**80.** Where would it be economically viable to set up the cement manufacturing units ?

Ans :

OD 2016

As bulky and heavy raw materials like limestone, silica, alumina, gypsum and coal are used for manufacture of cement, locations with abundant availability of these minerals suit to set-up these units. Gujarat is the prime location for setting up cement industry.

**81.** Why is it important for us to improve our weaving sector instead of exporting yarn in large quantities

Ans :

Delhi 2017, OD 2012

- (1) Improvement in the weaving sector will generate more employment opportunities. With improvement in weaving sector better quality of fabric and cotton products can be produced.
- (2) Value is added at every stage from fibre to yarn and fabric to garment.
- (3) It will help us to earn more foreign exchange.

**82.** Why did Mahatma Gandhi lay emphasis on spinning yarn and weaving khadi ?

Ans :

SQP 2012

- (1) So that more and more people could get employment.
- (2) To raise the feeling of nationalism.
- (3) To promote cottage industry. To lessen the dependence on foreign-made cloth and to boycott foreign-made cloth as a means of protest.

**83.** Why do our industries need to be more efficient and competitive in the present day of globalization ?

Ans :

Delhi 2017

Our industries need to be more efficient and competitive in the present day globalisation because :

- (1) Our manufactured goods must be at par in quality with those in the international market.
- (2) Only then we will be able to compete in the international market.
- (3) India will have to develop its industries if it wants to be internationally developed.

**84.** Differentiate between agro based industry and mineral based industry.

or

Explain with examples any two differences between agro-based and mineral-based industries.

Ans :

Foreign 2017, 2014

	Agro based industries	Mineral based industries
1.	Industries which are dependent on agriculture to obtain their raw materials are called agro based industries.	Industries which are dependent on mineral resources to obtain their raw materials are called mineral based industries.
2.	For example, cotton textiles, jute textiles, sugar industry, etc.	For example, iron and steel industry, cement industry, aluminium industry, etc.

- (2) Nitric acid, alkalies, soda ash is used in the manufacture of glass, paper, soap and detergents.
- (3) Production of pesticides has contributed much to agriculture by controlling harmful insects and weeds.
- (4) The organic chemical industries are located near oil refineries and petrochemical plants.

**106.** Suggest some measures to prevent pollution caused by industries ?

- Ans :** OD 2011
- (1) Modern equipments which can control aerosol should be installed.
  - (2) The fuel which causes minimum pollution should be used as a power source, e.g., instead of coal, mineral oil should be preferred.
  - (3) Waste products and chemicals should be treated before discharging them into the water.
  - (4) The working of the machines should be checked regularly.

**107.** Explain the problems of jute industry in India.

- Ans :** Comp. 2012, OD 2013
- Jute industry faces many problems which are as under:
- (1) There is shortage of raw jute of good quality.
  - (2) There is strong competition from other countries (mainly Bangladesh) in international markets.
  - (3) The use of substitutes like paper, cloth and synthetic material is increasing. It has led ,to decline in jute goods demand.
  - (4) The machinery is old and obsolete. So the cost of production is high.
  - (5) Sales promotion of jute carpets, packing material has not been done properly.

**108.** Why is India not able to perform to her full potential of iron and steel production ? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

Iron and steel industry is a basic or key industry to supply their products as raw materials to other industries to manufacture their goods.

It can be said that India is not able to perform to her full potential in iron and steel because of lack in engineering education, proper technology and less per capita use of steel. Thus the education regarding totally independent in the use of iron and steel is lacking behind.

**109.** “Agriculture and Industry move hand in hand”. Analyse the statement with three examples.

- Ans :** SQP 2013
- Agriculture and Industry in India are interdependent on each other. For example:
- (1) Agrobased industries in India have boosted agriculture by raising its productivity.
  - (2) Industries depend on agriculture for their raw material. For example cotton textile industry depends on the cotton growing agriculture.
  - (3) Industries provide many agricultural inputs like irrigation pumps, fertilizers, insecticides PVC and pipes, machineries and tools etc. to the farmers.
  - (4) Manufacturing industries have assisted agriculturists to increase their production and also made the production processes very efficient.

**110.** Which values made manufacturing sector backbone of the economic development of the country ?

- Ans :** OD 2008, Delhi 2016
- Following values make manufacturing sector backbone of economic development of a country :

- (1) It modernizes agriculture with advance tools and equipments and reduces excess burden on agriculture because it provides people with job in secondary and tertiary sector.

- (2) Steel is needed to manufacture a variety of engineering goods.
- (3) Construction material, defence, medical, telephone, scientific equipment and a variety of consumer goods also depend upon iron and steel industry.
92. Why is it important for us to improve our weaving sector instead of exporting yarn in large quantities ?

Ans : SQP 2011

- (1) The weaving, knitting and processing units cannot use much of the high quality yarn that is produced in the country.
- (2) There are some large and modern factories in these segments, but most of the production is in fragmented small units, which cater to the local market.
- (3) This mismatch is a major drawback for the industry. As a result, many of our spinners export cotton yarn while garment manufacturers have to import fabric.
93. In what ways are some manufacturing industries dependent on mineral resources ? Explain.

Ans : OD 2010, Delhi 2012

- (1) Mineral-based industries use minerals and metals as raw materials.
- (2) Iron and steel industry uses iron ore, coking coal, limestone, and manganese.
- (3) Bauxite is used in the aluminium smelting industry.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

94. Explain three major challenges faced by sugar industry in India.

Ans : Delhi 2013

- (1) The seasonal nature of the industry
- (2) Old and inefficient method of production
- (3) Transport delay in reaching cane to the factories
- (4) Need to maximise the use of bagasse

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

95. Explain with examples, how do industries give boost to the agriculture sector.

Ans :

Delhi 2015

Industries give boost to the agriculture sector in the ways as mentioned below :

- (1) There are agro based industries such as cotton, woollen, jute, edible oil that get their raw materials from agriculture,
- (2) In return, these industries sell their products such as irrigation pumps, fertilisers, insecticides, PVC pipes and many other things to the farmers,
- (3) The agro industries has given boost to agriculture by raising its productivity and has made the production processes very efficient as well.

96. “Sugar industry in India is facing challenges.” Analyse the statement with suitable arguments.

Ans :

Comp. 2019

Sugar industry in India is facing lot of challenges which are

- (1) This industry is seasonal as it is dependent on sugarcane which is an annual crop. Workers get employed only for a short period.
- (2) The machines and ways of producing sugar from sugarcane are old and inefficient.
- (3) The raw material i.e. sugarcane is bulky which increases the transportation cost and difficulty of transporting.
- (4) The sucrose content in sugarcane keeps on decreasing with time so transport delay in reaching sugarcane to factories results in losses.
- (5) There is also the challenge of using the byproducts of sugarcane properly like bagasse

97. How is the of mining activity injurious to the health of the miners and environment ? Explain.

- (2) In comparison to India's 17 per cent share in the GDP, the East-Asian countries have contributed to 25 to 35 per cent of GDP.
- (3) (a) The desired growth rate over the next decade is 12 per cent.  
 (b) At present, growth rate is about 9 to 10 per cent and it is expected that we can achieve the growth rate of 12 per cent by some efforts like setting up of the National Manufacturing Competitiveness Council (NMCC).
- 115.** Distinguish between joint and co-operative industries with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

	<b>Joint Industries</b>	<b>Cooperative Industries</b>
1.	Joint industries are jointly run by the state and individuals or a group of individuals.	Cooperative sector industries owned and operated by the producers or suppliers of raw materials, workers or both.
2.	Raw material providers do not get any share in the profit made by the industry.	They pool in the resources and share the profits or losses proportionately.
3.	For example, Oil India Ltd. (OIL).	For example, sugar industry in Maharashtra, the coir industry in Kerala.

- 116.** "Many of our spinners export cotton yarn while apparel manufactures have to import fabric." Explain this statement with appropriate reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

Many of our spinners export cotton yarn while apparel manufactures have to import fabric due to the following reasons :

- (1) In India only spinning sector has received a lot of attention.

- (2) The weaving, knitting and processing units have not been able to use high quality yarn that is produced in the country  
 (3) Our modern factories have to be upgraded to use this high quality yarn.  
 (4) We have to improve our weaving sector for manufacturing high quality fabrics.

- 117.** Describe any five problems faced by cotton textile industries in India.

**Ans :**

OD 2016, Delhi 2015

- (1) A major loophole is its huge fragmentation in industry structure, which is led by small-scale companies.  
 (2) The industry veterans portray the present productivity of factories at half to as low as one-third of levels, which might be attained.  
 (3) Machinery is obsolete. It needs to be upgraded in the weaving and processing sectors in particular.  
 (4) There is stiff competition with the synthetic fibre industry which are available comparatively in a cheaper rate.  
 (5) Power supply is erratic.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 118.** Describe any three problems which are being faced by the jute industry in India.

or

Highlight any three challenges faced by jute industry.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

The three major challenges before jute industry of India are as follows :

- (1) Stiff competition with Bangladesh, Brazil, Philippines, Egypt and Thailand in the International market.  
 (2) There is competition with synthetic fibre that is cheaper.  
 (3) To stimulate demand, the products of jute has to be diversified.  
 (4) There is also a concern about increasing productivity and improving the quality of jute products.

- (5) The export of manufactured goods brings foreign exchange and helps in maintaining the balance of payments.
- (6) Obviously, they make a country rich and prosperous because they transform raw material into a wide variety of finished goods of higher value which increases the income of country.
- 102.** How do industries pollute environment ? Explain with six examples.
- Ans :** Foreign 2013
- Industries have increased pollution and degraded environment. Industries create several types of pollution as explained below:
- (1) **Water Pollution :** Industrial effluents both organic and inorganic are discharged into rivers. They pollute the water. Coal, dyes, soaps, pesticides, fertilizers are some common pollutants of water.
  - (2) **Air Pollution :** The smoke emitted by the industries pollute air and water badly. The smoke is emitted by chemical and paper factories, brick kilns, refineries and smelting plants. The burning of fossil fuels in big and small factories is a great cause of air pollution.
  - (3) **Noise Pollution :** Industrial and construction activities, machinery, factory equipments, generators etc. make a lot of noise which have bad affects on human beings.
  - (4) **Thermal Pollution :** This pollution is caused by thermal plants. Wastes from nuclear and thermal power plants cause cancer, birth defects and miscarriages. Dumping of thermal wastes makes soil useless.
- 103.** Why is iron and steel industry concentrated around Chhota Nagpur plateau region ?
- Ans :** Delhi 2010

Most of the iron and steel industry concentrated around the Chhota Nagpur plateau :

- (1) This plateau is famous for iron ores reserves. Odisha, Bengal and Jharkhand provide raw material for the industry.

- (2) Coal which is used as a fuel is another important input and is available in this region in plenty.
- (3) Because of more population in this region, cheap labour is also available.
- (4) Damodar Valley Corporation provides power to these plants.
- (5) Export and Import facility is provided by Kolkata port.
- (6) Transportation facility are also available.
- (7) Government has played a major role. Steel plants such as Durgapur, Bokaro, Rourkela have been set up in the region with foreign collaboration in early sixties.

- 104.** Why are jute mills concentrated along the Hugli river? Explain with reasons.

or

Explain any three factors which are responsible for localisation of jute textile mills mainly along the banks of the Hugli river.

**Ans :** Delhi 2010, 2009

Reasons for concentration of jute mills along Hugli river are as under :

- (1) Proximity to jute growing areas.
- (2) River provides cheapest inland water transport.
- (3) Good network of transport.
- (4) Cheap labour.
- (5) Plenty of water for processing of jute.
- (6) Kolkata being a metropolitan city provides huge market, banking and insurance facilities.
- (7) Kolkata being a major port helps in import of raw jute and export of jute goods.

- 105.** Explain any four reasons for the rapid growth of chemical industry in India.

**Ans :** OD 2012

The reasons for the rapid growth of chemical industry in India are :

- (1) Heavy inorganic chemicals include sulphuric acid which is used for manufacturing of fertilisers, synthetic fibres, plastics, paints and dyestuffs.

(5) The goods needed for construction industry, medical, telephone etc. are also made from steel.

**124.** How has the great importance of the cotton textile industry for the Indian economy ? Explain with examples.

or

How does the cotton textile industry occupy a unique position in the Indian economy ? Explain with any three examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (1) Cotton textile industry has close links with agriculture and provides a living to farmers and cotton boll pluckers.
- (2) It also supports workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, designing, packaging, tailoring and sewing.
- (3) The industry by creating demands support many other industries, such as chemicals and dyes, mill stores, packing materials and engineering works.

**125.** Mention any two challenges faced by the jute industry in India. State any one step taken by the government to stimulate its demand.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011, OD 2010

- (1) (a) There is stiff competition in the international market from synthetic substitutes.  
 (b) Competition from other competitors like Bangladesh, Brazil, Philippines, Egypt and Thailand.
- (2) Steps taken by the government to stimulate the demand of jute :  
 (a) The government policy of mandatory use of jute in packaging increased the internal demand.  
 (b) National Jute Policy 2005, was formulated with the objective of increasing productivity, improving quality, ensuring good prices to the jute farmers and enhancing yield per hectare.

**126.** Mention any six factors responsible for the location of jute mills in the Hugli basin.

or

Why is jute textile industry mainly concentrated in Hugli-basin ? Explain three reasons for the same.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

- (1) Jute producing areas are nearer to Hugli-basin because there is good network of rivers which provide inexpensive water transport and abundant water supply for jute processing.
- (2) Good network of railways, roadways facilitate the supply of raw materials to the mills and finished goods to the market.
- (3) Cheap labour is available from West Bengal and adjoining states of Bihar, Orissa and Uttar Pradesh.
- (4) Kolkata as a large urban centre which provides banking, insurance and port facilities for the export of jute goods.

**127.** Sugar industry is ideally suited to the cooperative sector. Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2018

- (1) Sugarcane is a seasonal crop harvested in different parts of India in different seasons. For example, in southern India it starts in October and lasts till June, while in northern India it is usually from November to April.
- (2) During the transportation of sugarcane for long distances the sugar content (sucrose) decreases. Thus, it does not remain profitable.
- (3) To prepare the sugarcane crop for transportation, takes time. It also leads to reduction of sugar content.
- (4) The size of landholdings are small in our country. Therefore, the yield per hectare is also low. To run a sugar mill huge quantity of raw material (sugarcane) is required which needs collective efforts of the cultivators.

Considering all these factors, it can be said that sugarcane industry is ideally suited to the cooperative sectors.

- (2) Public sector and joint sector industries bring down regional disparity by setting up industrial units in remote and backward areas of the country.
- (3) Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce thereby bring in much needed foreign exchange.
- (4) Countries, capable to procure raw materiel and transform them in value added goods through manufacturing always become prosperous.
- 111.** Which location values are responsible for concentrating iron and steel industries in the Chhotanagpur plateau region ?

Ans :

OD 2011

Given below values are responsible for concentrating of iron and steel industries in Chhotanagpur plateau region :

- (1) Available of high grade iron ore from Noamundi mines of West Singhbhum district of Jharkhand.
- (2) Availability of power from DVC and coalmines are in close proximity at Jharia and Raniganj.
- (3) Manganese is obtained from Keonjhar district in Odisha.
- (4) Easy availability of limestone and dolomite from Sundergarh (Odisha).
- (5) Well developed network of transportation.
- (6) Plenty of water for cooling purpose is available from river Damodar and its tributaries.

- 112.** “Agriculture’ and ‘industry’ are complimentary to each other.” Explain with five examples.

or

“Agriculture and industry are not exclusive of each other.” Support your answer by giving any three arguments.

or

Explain with examples the interdependence of agriculture and industries.

Ans :

OD 2017

Agriculture and industry are not exclusive of each other. They move hand in hand.

- (1) The agro-based industries have given a major boost to agriculture by raising its productivity.
- (2) The agro-based industries depend on agriculture for raw materials. Manufacturing industries sell their products such as fertilizers, insecticides, irrigation pumps, PVC pipes, machines and tools, etc. to the farmers.
- (3) Thus, development and competitiveness of manufacturing industry has not only assisted agriculturists in increasing their production but also made production process very efficient.

- 113.** What is manufacturing ? How does manufacturing lead to value addition of the raw material ? Explain with the help of examples.

or

What is manufacturing industry ?

Ans :

Delhi 2016

Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing.

People employed in the secondary activities manufacture the primary materials into finished goods. For example, paper is manufactured from wood, sugar from sugarcane, iron and steel from iron ore, aluminium from bauxite, etc. Thus, raw materials are transformed into a wide variety of finished goods of higher value.

- 114.** What is the contribution of industry to national economy of India ? Compare it with the East-Asian countries. What is the desired growth and present position of industry in GDP ?

Ans :

Foreign 2011

- (1) The contribution of manufacturing sector to national economy has not been satisfactory for the last two decades. It has stagnated at 17 per cent of GDP out of a total of 27 per cent for the industry which includes 10 per cent of mining, quarrying, electricity and gas.

providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.

- (3) Industrial development is a pre-condition for the eradication of unemployment and poverty in our country.
- (4) Manufacturing activities expand trade and commerce.
- (5) Exports bring in much-needed foreign exchange.
- (6) Manufacturing is the process of value addition.
- (7) It also brings down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.
- (8) It increases the GDP/ national income of the country.

**132.** How can the industrial pollution of fresh water be reduced? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2019, OD 2023

Main causes of water pollution is due to the wastes discharged from factories, refineries into water bodies. These wastes contains harmful chemicals such as alkalis, acids etc. and toxic metals like mercury, lead, arsenic etc. which kill aquatic life.

The following steps can be taken to reduce the industrial pollution :

- (1) Restructuring the manufacturing processes to reduce or eliminate pollutants, like, lead, zinc, arsenic through a process called Pollution Prevention. Chimneys for treating of gaseous waste are also important.
- (2) It is necessary to encourage industries to promote 'green' methods of product production and. It includes environment-friendly operating processes.
- (3) It is advisable to create cooling ponds which are man-made and designed to cool the heated waters of industries by evaporation, condensation and radiation.
- (4) It is very important to attach water treatment plant in industries for filtration of sewage before it enters the water bodies. Sewage treatment plants are important for treatment of polluted water.

**133.** "Sexual division of labour is not based on biology but on social expectations and stereotypes." Support the statement.

**Ans :**

Comp. 2019

Gender division is not based on biology but on social expectations and stereotype:

- (1) Boys and girls are brought up to believe that the main responsibility of women is house work and bringing up children. There is sexual division of labour in most families where women stay at home and men work outside to play the role of breadwinners.
- (2) Literacy rate among women is only 54% in comparison to 76% among men. In studies, girls mostly perform better than boys, but they drop out simply because their parents prefer to spend their resources on their sons education. A smaller proportion of girls go for higher studies.
- (3) On an average, a woman works more than an average man everyday. Since much of her work is not paid for, therefore often not valued. The Equal Wages Act provides for equal wages for equal work, but in almost all areas of work from sports to cinema, from factories of fields, women are comparatively paid less because of the male chauvinistic bent of mind of society.
- (4) Child sex-ratio is very low. In India, the national average is 914. In some places it is even lower because parents prefer to have sons so they get girl child aborted.
- (5) In urban areas too, women are not respected and are unsafe even in their homes being subjected to beating, harassment and other forms of domestic violence.
- (6) The role of women in politics in most societies is minimal.

**134.** Analyse the role of the manufacturing sector in the economic development of India.

**Ans :**

OD 2017

Contribution of Manufacturing sector to national economy:

- 128.** Why is there a tendency for the sugar mills to shift and concentrate in the southern and western states in India ? Explain any three reasons.

or

Why is sugar industry in recent years expanding in the southern and western states ? Explain any three reasons.

or

What are the three main reasons for shifting of the sugar mills to Maharashtra in recent year ?

**Ans :** OD 2015

- (1) The sugarcane produced in the southern and western states has a higher sucrose content.
- (2) The cooler climate ensures a longer crushing season.
- (3) Most of the sugar mills of the area are under the cooperative sector. Regular supply of raw material is available here. Moreover, cooperatives are more successful in these areas.
- (4) More government attention for sugarcane production.
- (5) Better port facility.

- 129.** “Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries.” Justify the statement.

**Ans :** Delhi 2019

Environment is degraded through the depletion of resources like air, water and soil. It leads to destruction of ecosystem and extinction of wildlife. It is a global issue and has been debated over a decade.

- (1) Pollution in one country may effect the other in form of acid rain, climate change etc.
- (2) Deforestation in some countries may disturb the rainfall pattern in the surrounding countries.
- (3) Land degradation and dam burst can bring massive siltation and flood like situation.

Thus, consequences of the actions of one state or country may affect others, this proves that

environmental degradation does not respect land boundaries.

- 130.** Suggest and explain any three ways to reduce the use of petrol.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

The three ways to reduce the use of petrol are given below:

- (1) Switching to alternative sources such as solar energy in the forms of solar heater, solar cookers, use of natural gas and wind energy are some ways to reduce their usage. We can also reduce the use of these natural resources by using public transport and carpool.
- (2) Preference of alternative resources should be given for using renewable natural resources such as the sun and the wind. Windmills use wind energy to produce electricity. The solar energy is used to heat water, cook food and to generate electricity.
- (3) Environmental education plays an important role in creating awareness. Through environmental education, people come to know about their rights and duties towards nature.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 131.** “The economic strength of a country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries.” Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

The economic development of a country is measured by the development of manufacturing industries in the following ways:

- (1) Manufacturing industries help in modernising agriculture which forms the backbone of our economy.
- (2) They reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by

- (2) **High grade raw materials in proximity:**  
Other bulky raw materials like, coking coal, limestone are also available in proximity.
- (3) **Availability of cheap labour :** From the adjoining areas of Bihar, Jharkhand, Orissa cheap labour is available in abundance.
- (4) **Dense transport network :** Being an industrial region, there is a dense network of roads and railways.
- (5) **Port facility :** Kolkata port provides facilities for export of jute goods.
- (6) Vast growth potential in the home market.

138. The iron and steel industry is the basic industry. Justify.

or

Why is iron and steel industry called as the basic and heavy industry?

Ans :

SQP 2011

Iron and steel industry is the basic industry because :

- (1) It provides vital base for all other industries — heavy, medium and light. It is used as a basic raw material to make machines for other industries.
- (2) Iron and steel is used to make machineries which are used in tractors, harvesters, threshers, etc. to enhance production.
- (3) Steel is used to manufacture a variety of engineering goods, construction material, defence, medical, telephonic, scientific equipments and a variety of consumer goods.
- (4) Steel production is taken as an index of a country's level of modernisation and industrialisation.
- (5) Steel is used to make buses and railways which are important modes of transport.

139. Explain the factors which are responsible for location of industries.

Ans :

Delhi 2020

The factors which are responsible for location of industries are given below :

**(1) Nearness to the source of raw material:**

Large quantities of raw materials are needed for industries. Therefore industries are located near the source of raw materials. It saves the cost of transportation. Steel centres are developed where coal and iron are easily available. Jute mills in West Bengal and the cotton textile mills in Maharashtra are located due to the availability of raw materials.

- (2) **Power resources :** Coal, oil and water are the main sources of power. Most of the industries are located near coal fields. Aluminium industries and paper industries are located near hydroelectric stations.

- (3) **Means of Transportation :** Modern Industries need cheap, developed and quick means of transportation. Cheap means of transportation are required for the movement of workers, raw materials and machinery to the factories.

- (4) **Climate :** Stimulating climate increase the efficiency of the labourers. The cotton textile industry required humid climate. The film industry needs good weather with clear blue skies. Similarly the aircraft industry also needs clear weather.

- (5) **Skilled Labour :** cheap and skilled labour is essential for the location of industries. Glass industry at Firozabad and the sports goods industry in Jalandhar are located due to the availability of skilled labour.

140. 'The challenge of sustainable development requires control over industrial pollution.' Substantiate the statement with examples.

Ans :

SQP 2020

While industries contribute significantly to India's economic growth and development, the increase in pollution of land, water, air and noise resulting degradation of environment that they have caused is significant and cannot be ignored.

- (1) **Creation of alternative employment :** Manufacturing reduces dependence on agriculture by providing alternative employment opportunities in factory.
- (2) **Better standard of living :** The industrial labourers and other employees get higher wages and enjoy higher standard of living compared to landless agricultural labourers.
- (3) **Support to agricultural production :** Increase in use of fertilizers, pesticides, plastics, electricity and diesel in agriculture has been possible due to the growth and competitiveness of the manufacturing industries.
- (4) In the present day world of territorial specialization, our industry needs to be more efficient and competitive. Our goods must be at par with those of other countries in the international market. This will fetch foreign exchange and increase national wealth.

**135.** How are industries responsible for environmental degradation in India? Explain with examples.

- Ans :** Delhi 2019
- Industries are responsible for environmental degradation in India in following ways :
- (1) The presence of high proportion of undesirable gases such as sulphur dioxide, and carbon monoxide are a product of these industries. They affect the environment majorly.
  - (2) and construction activities, Industrial machinery and factory equipments, generators, saws and pneumatic and electric drills also make a lot of noise in environment.
  - (3) The main culprits in this regard are paper, pulp, chemical and textile industries that let out dyes, detergents, acids, salts and heavy metals etc., with carbon, plastic and rubber into the water bodies.
  - (4) Air-borne waste particle contains both solid and liquid particles like dust, sprays, mist and smoke which pollutes the environment.

**136.** Describe the significance of Textile Industry in India with specific reference to Cotton industry.

**Ans :** SQP 2018

- (1) The Textile Industry occupies unique position in the Indian economy, because it contributes significantly to industrial production (14 percent), employment generation (35 million persons directly the second largest after agriculture) and foreign exchange earnings (about 24.6 percent).
- (2) It contributes 4 per cent towards GDP. It is the only industry in the country, which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain, i.e., from raw material to the highest value added products.
- (3) In the early years, the Cotton Textile Industry was concentrated in the cotton growing belt of Maharashtra and Gujarat. Availability of raw cotton, market, transport including accessible port facilities, labour, moist climate, etc. contributed towards its localisation.
- (4) This industry has close links with agriculture and provides a living to farmers, cotton boll pluckers and workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, designing, packaging, tailoring and sewing.
- (5) The industry by creating demand, supports many other industries, such as, chemicals and dyes, mill stores, packaging materials and engineering works.

**137.** Explain any five factors responsible for the concentration of iron and steel industries in the Chhotanagpur region.

or

Explain any four factors responsible for the development of iron and steel industries in the Chhotanagpur plateau region of the country.

**Ans :** OD 2011

Iron and steel plants are concentrated in the Chhotanagpur plateau region because :

- (1) **Low cost of iron ore :** Iron mines are located in the nearby areas. It helps to reduce the transportation cost of iron ore to the industries.

petroleum refineries, electroplating industries and metallic pesticides etc. solid wastes like fly ash, phospo-gypsum and slags produced by iron and steel industries. Water pollution leads to loss of rich aquatic life and flora-fauna. This causes water scarcity as well. This also causes diseases like typhoid and cholera.

- (3) All the pollutants that cause water pollution, along with wastes from nuclear power plants are responsible for land pollution. Water and land pollution are closely related. All the liquid and solid affluents, if not being disposed off into the rivers, goes directly into the soil and degrade the land areas.
  - (4) All the unwanted sounds caused due to industrial and construction activities, machinery, generators and drilling activities create irritants and are a source of stress.
- 143.** Why is the economic strength of a country measured by the development of manufacturing industries ? Explain with examples.

Ans :

OD 2018, 2015

Economic strength of a country is measured by manufacturing industries :

- (1) Manufacturing industries not only help in modernising agriculture which forms the backbone of the economy, they also reduce the dependency of people on agriculture.
- (2) Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from a country.
- (3) Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce and brings much needed foreign exchange on international level.
- (4) Countries that transform their raw materials into a wide variety of furnished goods of higher value are prosperous and developed.
- (5) India's prosperity lies in increasing and diversifying its manufacturing industries as quickly as possible.

- 144.** Explain any five factors that are responsible for concentration of 'iron and steel' industries mainly in 'Chhotanagpur Plateau Region'.

Ans :

Comp. 2018

Reasons for concentration of 'iron and steel' industries in 'Chhotanagpur Plateau Region':

- (1) Low cost of iron-ore which is mined here.
- (2) High grade raw materials in close proximity.
- (3) Availability of cheap labour.
- (4) Vast growth potential in the home market.
- (5) Efficient transport network for their distribution to the markets and consumers.
- (6) Availability of power because this region has many thermal and hydel power plants.
- (7) Liberalisation and FDI have also given boost to the industry with the efforts of private entrepreneurs.

- 145.** Analyse the role of chemical industries in the Indian economy.

Ans :

OD 2017

The chemical industry in India is diversifying and growing fast. It contributes approximately percent 3% of GDP. It is the third largest in Asia and occupies twelfth place in the world in terms of its size. It comprises both large and small scale manufacturing units. Rapid growth has been recorded in both inorganic and organic sectors. Inorganic chemicals includes sulphuric acid, nitric acid, alkalies, soda ash and caustic soda. These industries are widely spread over the country.

Organic chemicals includes petrochemicals, which are used for manufacturing of synthetic fibres, synthetic rubber, plastics, dye-stuffs, drugs and pharmaceuticals. Organic chemical plants are located near oil refineries and petrochemical plants.

The chemical industry has its own largest consumers. Basic chemicals undergo processing for the further production of other chemicals that are used for industrial

- (1) Industries are responsible for air, water, land and noise pollution. The polluting industries also include thermal power plants. Air pollution adversely affects human health, animals, plants, buildings and the atmosphere as a whole. Water pollution is caused by organic and inorganic industrial wastes and affluents discharged into rivers.
- (2) Wastes from nuclear power plants, nuclear and weapon production facilities cause cancers, birth defects and miscarriages. It causes soil pollution. Noise pollution leads not only anger and irritation but cause hearing impairment, increased heart rate and blood pressure among other physiological effects.
- (3) Industries need to minimise the use of water by reusing and recycling water. Industrial wastes need to be treated in effluent plants before dumping them in rivers.
- (4) Electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators should be used to particulate matter being released in the air. Smoke can be reduced by using oil or gas instead of coal in factories. Generators should be avoided to reduce diesel pollution, should be fitted with silencers. All machineries can be redesigned to increase energy efficiency.
- (5) Thermal plants should be avoided. Wastes should be recycled. All industries and factories should have license. Central Pollution Control Board should keep regular check on the industries.
- 141.** Explain with examples any five factors that are responsible for industrial location.
- Ans :** Factors responsible for industrial location are as follows:
- (1) Availability of raw material is one major basic factor for the location of any industry, e.g. : Jute mills in West Bengal are concentrated close to the source of raw material.
  - (2) Climate also plays a major role in the concentration of industries at a certain place. Favourable weather conditions required for the growth and harvesting of the crop causes its industries to be located in certain places. For e.g. Cotton textile industry are generally found in Maharashtra and Gujarat because of favourable climatic conditions.
  - (3) Availability of capital and other infrastructural facilities is also one reason. It is due to the availability of capital that Mumbai, Kolkata, and Chennai became big industrial centres. These places have banking facilities and well developed infrastructure.
  - (4) Availability of both skilled and unskilled labour also governs the location of an industry. Cheap and abundant labour is one necessary condition which affects location of an industry.
  - (5) The entire process of manufacturing is futile until the finished products reach the market and the consumers. Thus, availability of a good market nearby also benefits the owners.
  - (6) Government policies, peace, protection of environment play a vital role in the location of industries.
- 142.** Explain five types of 'industrial pollution.'
- Ans :** Delhi 2019
- Industrial pollution creates environmental degradation in the following ways :
- (1) Due to the release of undesirable gases like sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide, air borne particulate matter containing smoke, dust and spray mist, toxic gases by burning fossil fuels in the industries, air pollution is caused. Release of these pollutants also causes acid rain. Thus, chemicals pollute the atmosphere and cause life threatening diseases. This also affects monuments, buildings and animals.
  - (2) Water pollution is caused by organic and inorganic industrial wastes discharged into the rivers, liquid wastes produced by chemical and textile industry, tanneries,

- (2) Major water pollutants are dyes, detergents, acids and salts.
- (3) Heavy metals like lead and mercury, pesticides, fertilizers also cause pollution and synthetic chemicals with carbon, plastics and rubber discharged in the water bodies without treatment.
- (4) Solid wastes, e.g. flyash, phosphogypsum and iron and steel slags.
- (5) Wastes from nuclear power plants.
- (6) Dumping of harmful chemicals and industrial effluents, etc. on them through which rain-water percolates and causes these pollutants contaminate ground water.
- 150.** Describe the ways by which the NTPC has preserved the natural environment and other resources like water.

**Ans :**

SOP 2014

NTPC is a major power providing corporation in India. It has ISO certification for EMS (Environment Management System) 14001. The corporation has taken following steps for preserving the natural environment and resources like water :

- (1) Optimum utilisation of equipment adopting latest techniques and upgrading existing equipment.
- (2) Minimising waste generation by maximising ash utilization.
- (3) Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balance and addressing the question of special purpose vehicles for afforestation.
- (4) Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.
- (5) Ecological monitoring, reviews and online database management for all its power stations.

Thus, by taking above steps, the NTPC has shown the way to the people for preserving the natural environment.

- 151.** Discuss the contribution of industries to national economy.

**Ans :**

Comp. 2010

Contribution of Industry to National Economy :

- (1) **Creation of alternative employment :** Manufacturing reduces dependence on agriculture by providing alternative employment opportunities in factory.
- (2) **Better standard of living :** The industrial labourers and other employees get higher wages and enjoy higher standard of living than the landless agricultural labourers.
- (3) **Declining trend after 1995-96 :** From 12.9% growth in 1995-96, only 5.3% industrial growth has been recorded in 2000-2001. This decline is attributed to poor performance shown by mining and manufacturing sectors. In 2001-2002, the industrial growth rate was further declined to 2.4%.

It is, however, worth noting that since 2003, manufacturing is once again growing at the rate of 9 to 10 percent per annum. It is hoped that manufacturing industries in India will achieve the target of 12% growth per annum in the next decade.

- (4) **Support to agricultural production :** Increase in use of fertilizers, pesticides, plastics, electricity and diesel in agriculture has been possible due to the growth and competitiveness of the industry.

In the present day world of territorial specialization, our industry needs to be more efficient and competitive. Our goods must be at par with those of other countries in the international market. Only then we will be able to fetch foreign exchange and increase our national wealth.

- 152.** What is manufacturing sector ? Describe the four types of manufacturing sector on the basis of ownership.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

Production of goods in large quantities from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing. These are private, public, joint and co-operative. Examples are as given below :

application, agriculture or directly for consumer markets.

- 146.** Describe negative aspects of the strategy of India's industrial development.

**Ans :** SQP 2017

- (1) Industrialisation in India did not take place as expected.
- (2) During 1965-1980 when Indian economy was highly controlled, the growth rate of industrial production declined to 4 per cent per annum as compared to 8 per cent in 1950-1965.
- (3) Laws that were formulated to regulate the private sector, were said to be responsible for slow growth of industrial sector.
- (4) These laws have also failed to reduce the concentration of economic power in the private sector.
- (5) Corruption, lack of efficiency in work and ineffective management became common features in the public sector enterprises.

- 147.** Explain how agriculture and industry go hand in hand. Analyse the statement with three reason

or

"Agriculture and industry are complementary to each other". Justify the statement.

**Ans :** Delhi 2010

Interlink between agriculture and industry :

- (1) Primary goods are produced by agriculture while these are processed by industry.
- (2) Agriculture acts as root to supply food for all branches (industries) of a tree.
- (3) Industries are in existence because raw material is supplied by agriculture.
- (4) People engage in industries require food, clothes and shelter and that all is provided by agriculture.
- (5) Agriculture stands as grower while industries are buyer and processors.
- (6) Industries provide goods like chemical fertilizers, implements and machinery (tractors, threshers, combined harvesters, pumping sets) to agriculture.

(7) These also provide agriculture with reliable means of transport to collect goods, seeds and to facilitate distribution of agricultural products.

(8) Numerous research and experiments beneficial to agriculture are possible due to industrial development.

- 148.** Explain four favourable factors for the location of steel plant at Jamshedpur.

or

Why is the iron and steel industry concentrated around the Chhotanagpur plateau ?

**Ans :** Foreign 2010

**Raw Materials :** Main raw materials used in iron and steel industry are iron-ore, limestone and coking coal.

**Location :** Iron and steel industry is located at Jamshedpur (Jharkhand) or around the Chhotanagpur plateau (bordering West Bengal, Bihar, Orissa and Jharkhand) because of the following reasons :

- (1) High grade hematite (iron-ore) is obtained from Noamandi mines of Singhbhum (Jharkhand) and Mayurbhanj (Orissa).
- (2) Power from DVC and coal mines are in close proximity at Jharia and Raniganj.
- (3) Manganese is obtained from Keonjhar district in Orissa.
- (4) Limestone and dolomite are obtained from Sundergarh (Orissa).
- (5) Well-developed network of transport both railways and roadways.
- (6) Kolkata provides not only port facilities, but both domestic and international market.
- (7) Plenty of water for cooling purposes is available from the river Damodar and its tributaries.
- (8) Cheap and skilled labour is drawn from Bihar, Orissa and West Bengal.

- 149.** How are water bodies polluted by industries?

**Ans :** OD 2016, Delhi 2015

- (1) Water pollution is caused by organic and inorganic industrial wastes and affluents discharge into rivers.

- (4) There is stiff competition from synthetic fibre industry.

**156.** Cotton textile industry was concentrated in certain areas. Name the factors responsible for its localisation. How is this industry beneficial for the local people ?

or

Which factors are responsible for factory cotton and textile industry in Maharashtra and Gujarat ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

Cotton textile industry was largely concentrated in Maharashtra and Gujarat due to the following reasons:

- (1) **Availability of raw cotton :** These areas are covered with black soils which are the most suitable for growing cotton.
- (2) **Moist climate :** Climatic conditions are also favourable for cotton.
- (3) **Market :** These are based on more urbanised city of India. There exists a big market exist for textile orient products.
- (4) **Transport :** Developed means of transport helped in the movement of raw materials and finished products from one place to another.
- (5) **Labourers :** Skilled and unskilled labourers were available in abundance.
- (6) **Port :** Port facilities in Mumbai and Kandla also favoured the establishment of cotton textile industry.

This industry is associated with agriculture and provides living to farmers, cotton bale pluckers and workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, designing, packaging, tailoring and sewing. In this way, textile industry is beneficial for the local people.

**157.** A factory produces aluminium sauce pans with plastic handles. It obtains aluminium from a smelter and a plastic component from another factory. All the manufactured sauce pans are sent to a warehouse

1. Which raw material is likely to be most expensive one to transport and why ?

2. Which raw material is likely to be the cheapest one to transport and why?
3. Do you think the cost of transporting the finished products after packaging is likely to be cheaper or more expensive than the cost of transporting aluminium and plastic ? Why ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, Delhi 2015

1. It is bauxite because it is absorbed in the rock and therefore, very bulky.
2. It is aluminium because it passes through refineries during its extraction from the bauxite. Alumina is dissolved out and then sent to aluminium smelter. Only one ton of aluminium is obtained from 4 to 6 tons of bauxite.
3. Yes, the cost of transporting finished product of aluminium is likely to be more expensive than the aluminium and plastic because it requires special packing material otherwise, goods sent from one place to another are damaged, dented or scratches developed there upon. It happens because aluminium is the most volatile metal.

**158.** “The textile industry occupies a unique position in the Indian economy.” Elaborate statement with suitable arguments in support of it.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (1) Textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy because it contributes significantly to industrial production (14 percent).
- (2) It generates employment for more than 35 million persons in the country.
- (3) It draws foreign exchange about 24.4 percent of the total foreign currency drawn or earn in the country.
- (4) Textile industry contributes 4 percent towards GDP.
- (5) It is the only industry in the country, which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain i.e., from raw material to the highest value added products.

**159.** Name the electronic capital of India. Write any four characteristics of IT and electronic industry of India.

or

What are software technology parks ? State any two points of significance of Information Technology industry in India ?

or

How is IT industry contributing in the field of employment and foreign exchange in India ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016, 2015

Bengaluru is the electronic capital of India. Software technology parks provide single window service and high data communication facility to software experts.

**Characteristics of IT and electronics industry:**

- (1) A major impact of this industry has been on employment generation. It is encouraging to know that 30 per cent of the people employed in this sector are women.
- (2) This industry has been a major foreign exchange earner in the last two or three years because of its fast growing Business Processes Outsourcing (BPO) sector.
- (3) The continuing growth in the hardware and software manufacturing is the key to the success of IT industry in India.
- (4) The electronic industry covers a wide range of products from transistor sets to television, telephones, cellular telecom, radars, computers, etc. and many other equipments required by the telecommunication industry.
- (5) Mumbai, Delhi, Hyderabad, Pune, Chennai, Kolkata, Lucknow and Coimbatore are important centres for electronic goods.

**160.** Write any five characteristics of sugar industry of India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (1) India stands second in the world as producer of sugar but occupies the first place in the production of gur and khandsari.

(2) In 2010-11, there were over 662 sugar mills in the country.

(3) These mills were located in the states of Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Gujarat along with Punjab, Haryana and Madhya Pradesh.

(4) This industry is seasonal in nature.

(5) In recent years, there is a tendency for the mills to shift to southern and western states.

(6) The sucrose content is higher in the sugarcane of south India.

(7) The cooler climate of southern India also ensures a longer crushing season.

(8) Most of the mills of south India are in cooperative sector.

**161.** Describe five human factors responsible for the location of industries.

or

Name the factor which plays the most dominant role in the ideal location of an industry. Explain any four reasons in support of this factor.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

(1) **Availability of raw material :** The factory needs to be close to the location of raw materials if they are heavy and bulky to transport. For example, iron and steel and cement industries are located near the source of raw materials. It cuts down the cost of transportation.

(2) **Labour :** A large and cheap labour force is required for labour-intensive manufacturing industries. High-tech industries have to locate where suitable skilled workers are available.

(3) **Power :** Power supply is needed for working of the machines in a factory. Earlier industries were near to coalfields. Today, electricity allows more freedom.

(4) **Capital :** This is the money that is invested to start the business. The amount of capital will determine the size and location of the factory.

(5) **Transport :** A good transport network helps to reduce costs and made the

movement of raw materials and finished goods easier.

- (6) **Market :** An accessible place to sell the products is essential.
- (7) **Government policies :** Industrial development is encouraged in some areas and restricted in others. Industries that are located in deprived areas may receive financial incentives and assistance from the government in the form of low rent and tax rebates.

**162.** What is manufacturing ? Describe the importance of manufacturing.

or

Describe the importance of manufacturing industries in five points.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016, OD 2015, 2014

Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing.

#### **Importance of manufacturing :**

- (1) Manufacturing industries help in modernising agriculture.
- (2) It reduces the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
- (3) It eradicates unemployment and poverty from our country.
- (4) It also brings down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.
- (5) Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce, and brings in much needed foreign exchange.
- (6) In manufacturing, raw materials are transformed into a wide variety of finished goods which are of higher value.

**163.** Why is textile industry second largest after agriculture in India ? Explain the reasons

or

“Textile industry occupies a unique position in Indian economy.” Support the statement with appropriate arguments.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

Textile industry is the second largest after agriculture due to the following reasons :

- (1) Textile industry contributes significantly to industrial production (about 14 per cent).
- (2) It generates more employment (35 million persons directly).
- (3) Its foreign exchange earnings are about 24.6 per cent.
- (4) It contributes 4 per cent to our Gross Domestic Products (GDP).
- (5) It is the only industry in the country which is self-reliant.

**164.** Why is jute textile industry mainly concentrated in Hugh basin ? Explain three reasons for the same.

or

Why is jute industry concentrated in West Bengal ? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2016

Jute textile industry is mainly concentrated in Hugh basin because :

- (1) Jute producing areas are nearer to Hugli basin.
- (2) There is good network of rivers which provide inexpensive water transport and abundant water supply for jute processing.
- (3) Good network of railways and roadways facilitate the supply of raw materials to the mills and finished goods to the market.
- (4) Cheap labour is available from West Bengal and adjoining states of Bihar, Odisha and Uttar Pradesh.
- (5) Kolkata is a large urban centre which provides banking, insurance and port facilities for the export of jute goods.

**165.** Why is cotton textile industry concentrated in Maharashtra and Gujarat ? Give any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (1) **Availability of raw materials :** Due to the favourable soil type and other climatic conditions, cotton is grown in a vast area in these states. So, raw materials are available in plenty.

- (2) **Transport** : These states are well-connected to the rest part of the country by rail and road. Also, they have many large ports from where the textile products can be easily exported.
- (3) **Market** : Though, they have locally available big markets, they also enjoy good transport facilities that enable their reach to the national and international markets.
- (4) **Labour** : Although, they have locally available cheap labour force, they are supported by migrant labourers from the northern states.
- (5) **Moist climate** : For cotton textile, moist climate is a must. These states have favourable climatic conditions.
- 166.** Explain any three types of pollution caused by industries.

or

Explain any three main causes of environmental pollution created by industries.

Ans :

Delhi 2012, 2011

Various types of pollution caused by industries are :

- (1) **Air pollution** : It is caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases, such as sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide. Air-borne particulate materials contain both solid and liquid particles like dust, sprays, mist and smoke.
- (2) **Water pollution** : It is caused by organic and inorganic industrial wastes and effluents discharged into rivers. The main culprits in this regard are paper, pulp, chemical, textile and dyeing, petroleum refineries, tanneries and electroplating industries that let out dyes, detergents, salts, acids, into the water bodies.
- (3) **Thermal pollution** : Thermal pollution of water occurs when hot water from factories and thermal plants is drained out into rivers and ponds before cooling.
- (4) **Nuclear pollution** : Wastes from nuclear power plants, nuclear and weapon production factories cause cancers, birth defects and miscarriages. It also renders

soil useless, pollutes and contaminates water bodies.

- (5) **Noise pollution** : It is created by industrial and construction activities, machinery, factory equipments, generators, saws and pneumatic and electric drills.

It causes hearing impairment, increased heart beat, blood pressure, etc.

- 167.** Explain any three factors affecting the localisation of industries with suitable examples.

or

Explain any three factors that influence the location of an industry.

Ans :

Foreign 2011

- (1) **Availability of raw material** : The factory needs to be close to the location of raw materials if they are heavy and bulky to transport. e.g., iron and steel and cement industries are located near the source of raw material. It cuts down the cost of transportation.
- (2) **Labour** : A large cheap labour force is required for labour-intensive manufacturing industries. High-tech industries have to locate where suitable skilled workers are available.
- (3) **Power** : Power supply is needed to work the machines in a factory. Early industries were near to coalfields. Today electricity allows more freedom.
- (4) **Capital** : This is the money that is invested to start the business. The amount of capital will determine the size and location of the factory.
- (5) **Transport** : A good transport network helps to reduce costs and made the movement of materials easier.
- (6) **Market** : An accessible place to sell the products is essential.
- (7) **Government policies** : Industrial development is encouraged in some areas and restricted in others. Industries that are located in depressed areas may receive financial incentives and assistance from the government in the form of low rent and rates.

**168.** Classify industries on various bases.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (1) On the basis of raw material used :
  - (a) Agro-based – cotton, woollen
  - (b) Mineral-based – iron and steel, cement.
- (2) According to their main role :
  - (a) Basic or key industries supply their products or raw materials to manufacture other goods. For example, iron and steel and copper smelting.
  - (b) Consumer industries produce goods for direct use by consumers – sugar, toothpaste.
- (3) On the basis of capital investment :
  - (a) If investment is less than one crore, it is a small-scale industry.
  - (b) If investment is more than one crore, then it is a large-scale industry.
- (4) On the basis of ownership :
  - (a) Public sector industries are owned and operated by government agencies – BHEL, SAIL etc.
  - (b) Private sector industries are owned and operated by individuals or a group of individuals e.g., TISCO.
  - (c) Joint sector industries are jointly run by the state and individuals or a group of individuals e.g., Oil India Limited.
  - (d) Cooperative sector e.g., cooperative sugar mills in Maharashtra.
- (5) On the basis of the bulk and weight of raw material and finished goods :
  - (a) Heavy industries such as iron and steel.
  - (b) Light industries such as electrical industries.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

**169.** Suggest some ways to control environmental degradation.

or

Explain any three ways to control environmental degradation caused by industries.

**Ans :** OD 2011, Foreign 2014

- (1) Water pollution can be controlled by properly treating the waste prior to its discharge into the rivers and ponds.
- (2) The requirement of water can be met by harvesting rainwater.
- (3) Overdrawing of groundwater reserves by industry needs to be regulated legally.
- (4) Smoke from the industries can be minimised by using oil or gas in place of coal.
- (5) Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators.
- (6) Machinery must be redesigned to increase energy efficiency and reduce noise. Generators should be fitted with silencers.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

**170.** Read the given case and answer the questions that follow :

*Challenges faced by the Jute industry include stiff competition in the international market from synthetic substitutes and from other competitors like Bangladesh, Brazil, Philippines, Egypt and Thailand. However, the internal demand has been on the increase due to the Government policy of mandatory use of jute packaging. To stimulate demand, the products need to be diversified. In 2005, National Jute Policy was formulated with the objective of increasing productivity, improving quality, ensuring good prices to the jute farmers and enhancing the yield per hectare. The main markets are U.S.A., Canada, Russia, United Arab Republic, U.K. and Australia.*

*The growing global concern for environment friendly, biodegradable materials, has once again opened the opportunity for jute products.*

**Questions :**

1. Mention any two challenges faced by 'jute industry' in India.
2. What was the main objective of National Jute Policy formulated in 2005 ?
3. How has jute industry once again opened the new opportunities for its products ?

**Ans :**

1. The 'Jute Industry' in India is facing two challenges:
  - (a) Stiff competition in the International Market from synthetic substitute and
  - (b) From other competitors like Bangladesh, Brazil, Phillipines, Egypt and Thailand.
2. In 2005, National Jute Policy was formulated with the objective of increasing productivity, improving quality, ensuring good prices to the jute farmers and enhancing the yield per hectare.
3. The modern and efficient ways of jute cultivation are introduced in the agricultural sectors. The industrial infrastructure also became more modern and efficient in terms of productivity. The current awareness against plastic bags increased the demand of jute bags in the market.

171. Read the source given below and answer the following questions.

*Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from our country. This was the main philosophy behind public sector industries and joint sector ventures in India. It was also aimed at bringing down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.*

**Questions :**

1. Distinguish between Joint sector and Public sector industries.
2. Analyse the importance of public sector and Joint sector ventures for the Indian economy.

**Ans :**

1. **Joint Sector Industries :** These industries are owned by both the state and some private industrialists or firms.

**Public Sector Industries :** These industries are owned and operated by the central or the state government. e.g. BHEL and SAIL.

2. (i) Public sector and Joint sector has played an important role in eradication of poverty and unemployment.
- (ii) It has played a very important role in regional equality.
- (iii) India is a major producer of iron and steel due to public sector units.

172. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*In most industrial regions workers came from the districts around. Peasants and artisans who found no work in the village went to the industrial centres in search of work. Over 50 per cent workers in the Bombay cotton industries in 1911 came from the neighbouring district of Ratnagiri, while the mills of Kanpur got most of their textile hands from the villages within the district of Kanpur. Most often mill workers moved between the village and the city, returning to their village homes during harvests and festivals.*

*European Managing Agencies, which dominated industrial production in India, were interested in certain kinds of products. They established tea and coffee plantations, acquiring land at cheap rates from the colonial government; and they invested in mining, indigo and jute. Most of these were products required primarily for export trade and not for sale in India.*

*From 1906, moreover, the export of Indian jam to China declined since produce from Chinese and Japanese mills flooded the Chinese market. So industrialists in India began shifting from jam to cloth production. Cotton piece-goods production in India doubled between 1900 and 1912.*

**Questions :**

1. Where did the workers come in cotton mills in India during 1900s?
2. What helped the European Managing Agencies to dominate the Indian markets?
3. Why did industrialists shift from yarm to cloth production ?

**Ans :**

1. The workers came from the districts around. Over 50% workers in Bombay cotton industries in 1911, came from the neighbouring district of Ratnagiri, while the mills of Kanpur got most of their textile hands from the villages of Kanpur district.
  2. The European Managing Agencies established tea and coffee plantations, acquiring land at cheap rates from the colonial government and they invested in mining, indigo and Jute. Through this activities they dominated the Indian markets.
  3. From 1906, the export of Indian yarm to China declined since produce from Chinese and Japanese mills flooded the Chinese market. So industrialists in India began shifting from yam to cloth productions.
- 173.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*In ancient India, cotton textiles were produced with hand spinning and handloom weaving techniques. After the 18th century, power-looms came into use. Our traditional industries suffered a setback during the colonial period because they could not compete with the mill-made cloth from England.*

*India is the largest producer of raw jute and jute goods and stands at second place as an exporter after Bangladesh. Most of the mills are located in West Bengal, mainly along the banks of the Hugli river, in a narrow belt. Factors responsible for their location in the Hugli basin are: proximity of the jute producing areas, inexpensive water transport, supported by a good network of railways, roadways and*

*waterways to facilitate movement of raw material to the mills, abundant water for processing raw jute, cheap labour from West Bengal and adjoining states of Bihar, Odisha and Uttar Pradesh.*

*Production and consumption of steel is often regarded as the index of a country's development. Iron and steel is a heavy industry because all the raw materials as well as finished goods are heavy and bulky entailing heavy transportation costs. Iron ore, coking coal and lime stone are required in the ratio of approximately 4 : 2 : 1. Some quantities of manganese, are also required to harden the steel. Where should the steel plants be ideally located? Remember that the finished products also need an efficient transport network for their distribution to the markets and consumers.*

**Questions :**

1. Why does Indian traditional industries suffered a setback during the colonial period ?
2. What is the rank of India in jute production ?
3. What is the ratio of Iron ore, coking coal and lime stone required to harden the steel ?

**Ans :**

1. Indian traditional industries suffered a setback during the colonial period because they could not compete with the mill-made cloth from England.
2. India is the largest producer of raw jute and jute goods and stands at second place as an exporter after Bangladesh.
3. The ratio of approximately 4 : 2 : 1 of Iron ore, coking coal and lime stone required to harden the steel.

- 174.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows :

*Cotton, jute, silk, woollen textiles, sugar and edible oil, etc. industries are based on agricultural raw materials. Textile Industry: The textile industry occupies unique position in the Indian economy, because it contributes*

*significantly to industrial production, employment generation and foreign exchange earnings. It is the only industry in the country, which is self-reliant and complete in the value chain i.e., from raw material to the highest value added products.*

*Cotton Textiles:* In ancient India, cotton textiles were produced with hand spinning and handloom weaving techniques. After the 18th century, power looms came into use. Our traditional industries suffered a setback during the colonial period because they could not compete with the mill-made cloth from England. The first successful textile mill was established in Mumbai in 1854. The two world wars were fought in Europe, India was a British colony. There was a demand for cloth in U.K. hence, they gave a boost to the development of the cotton textile industry. In the early years, the cotton textile industry was concentrated in the cotton growing belt of Maharashtra and Gujarat. Availability of raw cotton, market, transport including accessible port facilities, labour, moist climate, etc. contributed towards its localisation. This industry has close links with agriculture and provides a living to farmers, cotton boll pluckers and workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, designing, packaging, tailoring and sewing. The industry by creating demands supports many other industries, such as, chemicals and dyes, packaging materials and engineering works.

#### Questions :

1. When was the first successful textile mill established in India ?
2. What is the process of making cotton in textile industry ?
3. In which places the earlier stages of cotton textile industry was concentrated?

#### Ans :

1. The first successful textile mill was established in Mumbai in 1854.
2. (i) Textile industry has close links with agriculture and provides a living to farmers.

(ii) Cotton boll pluckers and workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, designing, packaging, tailoring and sewing.

3. In the early years, the cotton textile industry was concentrated in the cotton growing belt of:
  - (i) Maharashtra
  - (ii) Gujarat

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

#### DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 11

## POWER-SHARING

### SUMMARY

1. Ethnic : Identity of groups of people and their attachment based on physical complexion, gait, features, beliefs, faith, obsessions, tendency etc.
2. Majoritarianism : A belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants, disregarding the wishes and needs of the minority community.
3. Civil War : An internal unrest period in which subversive country, violent, turmoil and clamorous situation is formed. Eg. civil war in Sri Lanka.
4. Accommodation in Belgium : Power sharing even at the level of community, decentralisation of powers at the grass-root i.e., group of persons. In the long run, so large administration turns into tyranny.
5. Types of the Government of Belgium and Sri Lanka : Democracy with mechanism of power sharing at different levels of governance and democracy intoxicated in majoritarianism respectively.
6. Prudential Decisions : Decisions based on careful calculation of gains and losses.
7. Judiciary : Third organ of democratic government that cause operations/surgery of cases filed either institutional or individual to bring out from usage with providence. It is monitoring organ of the government.
8. Executive : Trunk portion of government comprising the Central Ministry, the State Ministries, the Central Secretariat, the State Secretariats, etc.
9. Legislature : Network of parliamentarians time being and that of permanent that frames laws through democratic procedure enshrined in the constitution. It's skull portion of the government.
10. Law : Compilation of canons, ethics, conventions, precedents, rules, statutes, regulations, disciplines that everyone in a country or society must obey or abide by.
11. Panchayati Raj : Progeny of Balwant Rai Mehta Committee upon Power Sharing issues in local self-government to which now we see in three tiers—Village Panchayat, Panchayat Samiti and Zila Parishad or District Council.
12. Alliance : This is formed when two or more political parties come under a common banner and make a bid for capturing power.
13. Residual Powers : Powers additional to Union, State and Concurrent lists that are conferred to or vest with Central Government.
14. Regional Autonomy : Demanding independence of any particular area or demanding equal power with rest of the country.
15. Community Government : The government which is elected by the people belonging to one language community and which has power related to educational, cultural and linguistic issues.
16. Power Sharing : Sharing power by different levels of governmental units or power groups for the smooth functioning of any system.
17. Moral : It is also a set of reasons which emphasise the intrinsic work of power sharing. It is based on moral consideration.
18. Horizontal Distribution of Power : A type of distribution in which power is shared among different organs of government (legislature, executive, judiciary etc.). They are placed at the same level.
19. Vertical Division of Power : It is a type of distribution of power which involves the higher and lower levels of government such as central, provincial or regional and local levels.

20. Checks and Balances : A system in which each organ of the government checks the others which results in a balance of power among various institutions. It ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power.
21. Federal Government : It is a kind of government in which powers are shared among the different levels like union level and provincial level. In this the general government for the whole country at the union level is called "Federal Government".
22. Coalition Government : When the alliance of two or more parties gets elected and forms a government it is known as the 'Coalition Government. (For example in India NDA or UPA government at Centre level). This is another form of power sharing.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which of the following was the primary objective of Belgium to form the separate government in Brussels?
- Promoting cultural events
  - Managing international relations
  - Enforcing local laws
  - Ensuring linguistic accommodation

**Ans :** OD 2024

(d) Ensuring linguistic accommodation

2. Consider the following statements on Power sharing and choose the correct option.
- Imposing the will of majority community over others.
  - It helps in reducing the possibility of conflict between the social groups.
  - Power sharing is a good way to ensure the stability of political order.
  - It brings socio-political opposition among parties.

**Options:**

- I and III
- II and III
- I and IV
- I and II

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (b) II and III
3. Population of Sri Lankan Tamils is concentrated in region of Sri Lanka.
- North and South
  - North and East
  - East and West
  - South and East

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (b) North and East
4. Which one of the following is a major caste group of Sri Lanka :
- Christian and Tamil
  - Buddhist and Hindu
  - Sinhali and Tamil
  - Sinhali and Christian

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (c) Sinhali and Tamil

5. In the city of Brussels-
- 80% people speak French while 20% speak Dutch
  - 80% people speak Dutch while 20% speak French
  - 80% people speak German while 20% speak French
  - 80% people speak German while 20% speak Dutch

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (a) 80% people speak French while 20% speak Dutch

6. Identify the Country-
- Is a small country in Europe.
  - Shares borders with France, Netherlands, Germany and Luxembourg.
  - The government divided the powers equally between Dutch and French speaking populations.
  - Power sharing is also seen in political parties.

**Option :**

- Germany
- Belgium
- Srilanka
- India

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

(b) Belgium

7. Arrange the following Ethnic communities of Sri Lanka in the descending order-

1. Indian Tamil
2. Sihalese
3. Muslim
4. Sril Lanka Tamil

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 1, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 2, 1, 4, 3
- (d) 2, 4, 3, 1

**Ans :**

SOP 2020

- (a) 2, 4, 1, 3

8. Which of the following is a major ethnic group of Sri Lanka?

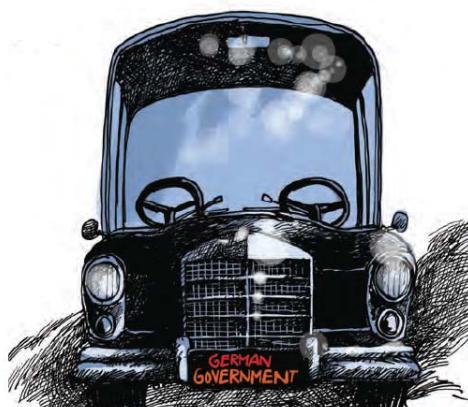
- (a) Christian and Tamil
- (b) Buddhist and Hindu
- (c) Sinhala and Tamil
- (d) Sinhala and Christian

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (c) Sinhala and Tamil

9. Which of the options best signifies this cartoon-



- (a) Showing the fine German engineering.
- (b) Problems of running the Germany's grand coalition Government that includes the two major parties of the country.
- (c) The two parties of the country are historically partners to each other.
- (d) How smoothly the German Government is running.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (b) Problems of running the Germany's grand coalition Government that includes the two major parties of the country.

10. Assertion : Tyranny of majority is highly desirable.

Reason : It helps in making the political order more stable.

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2018, 2016

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

11. Give one moral reason as why power sharing is good? Select correct option from below.

(a) It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups

(b) It does not lead to confusion in managing the state

(c) People have a right to be consulted on how they are to be governed.

(d) power sharing is a good way to ensure the stability of political order

**Ans :**

OD 2019

(c) People have a right to be consulted on how they are to be governed.

12. Match List I (forms of power-sharing) with List II (forms of government) and select the correct answer using codes given below the lists:

	<b>List I</b>		<b>List II</b>
I.	Power sharing among different organs of government	A.	Communist government
II.	Power shared among government at different levels	B.	Separation of powers

shall be equal in the central government. No single community can make decision unilaterally.

- (2) Decentralisation of power : Some of the powers of the central government have been given to the state governments of the two conflicting regions of the country.
- (3) Autonomous state government : The state governments are not subordinate to the central government.
- (4) Community government : Apart from central and state governments, a provision for the community government elected by the people of one language has been made. This government was given the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.
- (5) Equal political representation : The French-speaking people were given equal opportunity in Brussels, whereas the Dutch speaking community was given equal opportunity in the central government.

**98.** Do you agree that sharing of power is desirable? Give examples in support of your answer.

or

Why is power sharing desirable ? Give any three prudential reasons.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (1) The power sharing is desirable because of the following prudential reasons which emphasizes on its better outcomes :
  - (i) Power sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups. Since social conflict often leads to violence and political instability, it is a good way to ensure the stability of political order.
  - (ii) Its absence results into imposition of will by majority community. In the short run, it appears attractive. But in the long run, it undermines the unity of a nation.
  - (iii) The domination of majority is not only oppressive for minority but also ruins majority.

(2) Following examples reflects the desirability of power sharing :

- (i) In Belgium, power was centralised around minority French speaking people. Here power was not shared by the majority Dutch speaking community. It was undemocratic and resulted in conflict in the society.
- (ii) In Sri Lanka, the majority Sinhalese had powers and minority Tamils were deprived of it. Thus, Tamils started revolting against Sinhalese which resulted into the 'Civil War' in the country.

Thus, power sharing is fundamental feature of democracy and hence it is essential for the growth and well-being of the society.

**99.** What were the reasons for the alienation of Sri Lankan Tamils ? What was the effect of this on the country ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013, 2018

Majoritarianism is a belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants, by disregarding the wishes and needs of the minority.

Majoritarianism in Sri Lanka :

- (1) The leaders of the Sinhala community of Sri Lanka sought to secure dominance over government by virtue of their majority (or more members).
- (2) In 1956 an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamils.
- (3) The government followed preferential policies that favour Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- (4) In Sri Lanka, maximum people believe in Buddhism. A new constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.

Due to above mentioned steps taken in favour of majority group of Sri Lanka, the Sri Lankan Tamils felt that the Constitution and government policies had denied them equal political rights. This was and is the reason of conflicts between these two large communities.

- (a) Horizontal system  
 (b) System of checks and balances  
 (c) System of shared duties  
 (d) System of limited power

**Ans :**

SQP 2005

- (b) System of checks and balances

**19. Identify the Country-**

- Emerged as an independent country in 1948.
- Neighbouring country of India.
- 74% of population speaks Sinhala while 18% of population are Tamil speakers.
- In 1956, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language of this country.

**Option :**

- (a) Germany  
 (b) Belgium  
 (c) Srilanka  
 (d) India

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (b) Sri Lanka

**20. Consider the following statements about power sharing arrangements in Belgium and Sri Lanka.**

- A. In Belgium, the Dutch-speaking majority people tried to impose their domination on the minority French-speaking community.
- B. In Sri Lanka, the policies of the government sought to ensure the dominance of the Sinhala-speaking majority.
- C. The Tamils in Sri Lanka demanded a federal arrangement of power sharing to protect their culture, language and equality of opportunity in education and jobs.
- D. The transformation of Belgium from unitary government to a federal one prevented a possible division of the country on linguistic lines

Which of the statements are correct?

- (a) All of the above  
 (b) A,B and D  
 (c) C and D  
 (d) B, C and D

**Ans :**

Comp 2021, 2016

- (d) B,C and D

**21. Assertion : French speaking community in Belgium was rich and powerful.**

Reason : Belgian Government favoured French speaking community.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**22. Select correct prudential reason for power sharing?**

- (a) Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy.
- (b) People have a right to be consulted on how they are to be governed.
- (c) Citizens, through participation, acquire a stake in the system
- (d) Power sharing is good because it helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (d) Power sharing is good because it helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups

**23. Complete the following table with correct information:**

<b>Country</b>	<b>Adopted the Policy of</b>	<b>Gave Powers to</b>
Belgium	Power sharing	B - ?
Sri Lanka	A - ?	Majority Sinhala group alone

- (a) A-Majoritarianism , B -All communities, minor or major doesn't matter
- (b) A-Minorism , B -All communities, minor or major doesn't matter

	<b>List I</b>		<b>List II</b>
III.	Power shared by different social groups	C.	Coalition of government
IV.	Power shared by two or more political parties	D.	Federal government

**Option :**

- (a) I - D, II - A, III - B, IV - C
- (b) II - B, II - C, III - D, IV - A
- (c) III - B, II - D, III - A, IV - C
- (d) IV - C, II - D, III - A, IV - B

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, OD 2009

- (d) IV - C, II - D, III - A, IV - B

**13.** Select an example of horizontal distribution of power?

- (a) governments at the provincial or regional level.
- (b) legislature, executive and judiciary
- (c) among different social groups
- (d) political parties, pressure groups and movements

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (b) legislature, executive and judiciary

**14.** Which of the following is a federal division of power?

- (a) governments at the provincial or regional level.
- (b) legislature, executive and judiciary
- (c) among different social groups
- (d) political parties, pressure groups and movements

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (a) governments at the provincial or regional level.

**15.** Arrange the following statements in a logical sequence and select the right answers by using the code given below:

1. Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil.
2. Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country.

3. Adoption of a series of MAJORITARIAN measures to establish Sinhala supremacy.
4. Several political organisations were formed demanding an independent Tamil Eelam (state) in northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka.

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 1, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 1, 4
- (c) 4, 1, 2, 3
- (d) 4, 2, 3, 1

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (b) 2, 3, 1, 4

**16.** Modern democracies maintain check and balance system. Identify the correct option based on the horizontal power sharing arrangement.

- (a) Central government, state government, local bodies.
- (b) Legislature, executive, judiciary.
- (c) Among different social groups.
- (d) Among different pressure groups.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (b) Legislature, executive, judiciary.

**17.** Assertion : In Belgium, the leaders realized that the unity of the country is possible by respecting the feelings and interest of different countries.

Reason : Belgium favoured Dutch speaking community.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013, 2008

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**18.** Where power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary, what is the functioning of this system called?

- (b) Power sharing is suitable only for big countries that have regional divisions.  
 (c) Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions.  
 (d) Power-sharing is not necessary at all.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (c) Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions

30. Assertion : Belgium and Sri Lanka both faced ethical tension among different communities.

Reason : Both the countries resolved the conflict by power sharing arrangement which gave equal representation to all the communities.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

31. What does the cartoon represent?



- (a) Concentration of powers which are controlling the democratic regimes of their respective country.  
 (b) The main leaders of two countries are going somewhere.  
 (c) More powers were given to the democracy.  
 (d) Putin is advising Bush to control the horse tightly.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (a) Concentration of powers which are controlling the democratic regimes of their respective country.

32. Which of these does not represent power sharing?

- (a) Horizontal distribution of powers  
 (b) Vertical distribution of powers  
 (c) Community government in Belgium  
 (d) One party system in China

**Ans :**

SQP 2010, 2008

- (d) One party system in China

33. Complete the following table with correct information-

Act	Passed in Year	Passed by the Govt. of	Was about
Sinhala only Act	A - ?	Sri Lanka	B - ?

**Option :**

- (a) A-1948 , B - It was for making Tamil, the official language of the country  
 (b) A-1956 , B - It was for making Sinhala, the official language of the country  
 (c) A-1956 , B - It was for making Tamil, the official language of the country  
 (d) A-1948 , B - It was for making Sinhala, the official language of the country

**Ans :**

Delhi 2005, 2009

- (b) A -1956 , B - It was for making Sinhala, the official language of the country

34. Identify the form of power sharing -

- The power sharing arrangement between different levels of the government.
- It is found in India.

**Option :**

- (a) Vertical form of power sharing  
 (b) Horizontal form of power sharing  
 (c) Federal form of power sharing  
 (d) Both (a) and (c)

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

- (d) Both (a) and (c)

- 35.** Which of the following was the main reason for the killing of thousand people in Sri Lanka?
- Cold war between Sinhala and Tamil speakers
  - Civil war between Sinhala and Tamil speakers
  - Atomic war between Sinhala and Tamil speakers
  - None of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (b) Civil war between Sinhala and Tamil speakers

- 36.** Assertion: Community government in Belgium is elected by one language community.  
Reason : Community government helped in resolving conflict between different linguistic groups.
- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
  - Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
  - Assertion is true but reason is false.
  - Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 37.** Which of the following government in Belgium has the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues?
- The communist government
  - The community government
  - The central government
  - The province government

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (b) The community government

- 38.** Prudential reasons of power sharing stress on the facts that:
- It ensures the stability of political order.
  - It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups.
  - It gives a fair share to minority.

- D. It is the very spirit of democracy.

Which of the above statements are correct?

- A, B
- A, C and D
- All are correct
- A, B and C

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (d) A, B and C

- 39.** Which one of the following statements about power-sharing arrangements is correct?
- Power sharing is necessary only in societies which have religious, linguistic or ethnic divisions.
  - Power sharing is suitable only for big countries that have regional divisions.
  - Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions.
  - Power-sharing is not necessary at all.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (c) Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions.

- 40.** Assertion : There was a feeling of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils.  
Reason : The Sri Lankan government denied them equal political rights and discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities.
- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
  - Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
  - Assertion is true but reason is false.
  - Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2012, 2009

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 41.** Sri Lankan Tamils launched a struggle for
- Language recognition, autonomy and equal opportunities
  - Language based division of country and major jobs

- (c) Equal distribution of resources and separate land
- (d) Government jobs and equal representation in government

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (a) Language recognition, autonomy and equal opportunities

42. Which form of power sharing is also termed as vertical division of power?

- (a) Power shared among different organs of government.
- (b) Power shared among different social groups.
- (c) Power shared among different political parties, pressure groups and movements.
- (d) Power shared among government at different levels.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (d) Power shared among government at different levels.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

43. How leaders of Sri Lanka dealt with the question of power sharing?

- (a) The government adopted series of Majoritarian measures to establish Tamil Supremacy in Sri Lanka.
- (b) The government adopted series of Majoritarian measures to establish Sinhala Supremacy in Sri Lanka.
- (c) The government adopted equality in power sharing.
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

- (b) The government adopted series of Majoritarian measures to establish Sinhala Supremacy in Sri Lanka.

44. Which of the following option best signifies this picture :



- (a) Place names and directions are written in two languages- French and Dutch.

- (b) Constitution of Belgium prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the central government.

- (c) No single community can make decisions unilaterally.

- (d) All of the above.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (d) All of the above.

45. Assertion : Sinhala was recognized as only official language of Sri Lanka.

Reason : The government of Sri Lanka wanted to establish the supremacy of Sinhala community.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

46. Complete the following table with the correct information-

Country	Independence (Year)	Act passed in 1956 to make	
		Official Language	Disregarded language
Sri Lanka	A - ?	Sinhala	B - ?

- (c) A-Majoritarianism , B -All communities, minor or major matter
- (d) A-Minorism , B -All communities, minor or major matter

**Ans :**

OD 2020

- (a) A -Majoritarianism , B -All communities, minor or major doesn't matter

- 24.** Assertion : In a democracy, everyone has voice in the shaping of public policies.

Reason : India has federal system.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 25.** Assertion : Power should reside with one person and group located at one place in a democracy.

Reason : If the power is dispersed, it will not be possible to take decision quickly and enforce it.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

- 26.** In dealing with power sharing, which one of the following statements is NOT correct about democracy?

- (a) People are the source of all political power.
- (b) In a democracy, people rule themselves through institutions of self-governance.

- (c) In a democracy, due respect is given to diverse groups and views that exist in a society.

- (d) In a democracy, if the power to decide is dispersed, it is not possible to take quick decisions and enforce them.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2009

- (d) In a democracy, if the power to decide is dispersed, it is not possible to take quick decisions and enforce them.

- 27.** Arrange the following Ethnic communities of Sri Lanka in the descending order-

1. Indian Tamil
2. Sihalese
3. Muslim
4. Sril Lanka Tamil

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 1, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 1, 4
- (c) 4, 1, 2, 3
- (d) 4, 2, 3, 1

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (a) 2, 4, 1, 3

- 28.** A system of 'checks and balances' is another name for which one of the following power-sharing arrangements:

- (a) Power sharing among different social groups.
- (b) Vertical division of power or power shared among different levels of government.
- (c) Horizontal division of power or power shared among different organs of the government.
- (d) Power sharing in the form of political parties, pressure groups and governments.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018, OD 2011

- (c) Horizontal division of power or power shared among different organs of the government.

- 29.** Which one of the following statements about power-sharing arrangements is correct?

- (a) Power sharing is necessary only in societies which have religious, linguistic or ethnic divisions.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012, 2016

(b) Federal division of power

**53.** In dealing with power sharing, which one of the following statements is NOT correct about democracy?

- (a) People are the source of all political power.
- (b) In a democracy, people rule themselves through institutions of self-governance.
- (c) In a democracy, due respect is given to diverse groups and views that exist in a society.
- (d) In a democracy, if the power to decide is dispersed, it is not possible to take quick decisions and enforce them.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

(d) In a democracy, if the power to decide is dispersed, it is not possible to take quick decisions and enforce them.

**54.** Which one of the following statements about coalition Government is true?

- (a) Power is shared among the different organs of the government
- (b) Power is shared among governments at different levels
- (c) Power is shared by different social groups
- (d) Power is shared by two or more political parties

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

(d) Power is shared by two or more political parties

**55.** Match the following keywords from column A with their explanation in column B :

Column A	Column B
A. Ethnic	I A belief that let majority community to rule a country.
B. Civil war	II Calculation of gains and losses.
C. Prudential	III Conflicts between opposing groups.
D. Majoritarian	IV Based on shared culture.

- (a) A - II, B - III, C - I, D - IV
- (b) A - IV, B - III, C - II, D - I
- (c) A - III, B - I, C - II, D - IV
- (d) A - II, B - III, C - IV, D - I

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010, 2005

(b) A - IV, B - III, C - II, D - I

**56.** Assertion (A): Social conflicts often leads to violence and political instability.

Reason (R): It brings disharmony among the social groups and destroys the peace of the society.

**Codes:**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) A is false but R is true.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

(a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**57.** Different arguments are usually put forth in favour of and against power sharing. Identify those which are in favour of power sharing and select the answer using the codes given below.

- A. Power sharing reduces conflict among different communities
  - B. Power sharing decreases the possibility of arbitrariness
  - C. Power sharing delays decision making process
  - D. Power sharing accommodates diversities
  - E. Power sharing increases instability and divisiveness
  - F. Power sharing promotes people's participation in government
  - G. Power sharing undermines the unity of a country
- (a) A, B, D, F
  - (b) A, C, E, F
  - (c) A, B, D, G
  - (d) B, C, D, G

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

(a) A, B, D, F

**Option :**

- (a) A - 1948, B - Kannad
- (b) A - 1948, B - Tamil
- (c) A - 1938, B - Kannad
- (d) A - 1938, B - Tamil

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (b) A - 1948, B - Tamil

**47.** With respect to the concept of power sharing, which of the following statements is not correct about democracy?

- (a) People rule themselves through representatives and institutions of self governance in a democracy.
- (b) People are the source of all political power and this power must be shared among them.
- (c) Democratic countries believe in giving respect to ethnically diverse groups and views.
- (d) Democracy does not allow the citizens to participate in the political process because power is only shared among representatives.

**Ans :**

OD 2012, SQP 2007

- (d) Democracy does not allow the citizens to participate in the political process because power is only shared among representatives.

**48.** Consider the following statements and select the correct code.

- (1) Power-sharing is good for democracy.
- (2) Power-sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflicts among social groups.
- (a) Statement (i) is true and statement (ii) is false
- (b) Statement (i) is false but statement (ii) is true
- (c) Both statement are true
- (d) Both statement are false

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (c) Both statement are true

**49.** Which one of the following statements about power-sharing arrangements is correct?

- (a) Power sharing is necessary only in societies which have religious, linguistic or ethnic divisions.

- (b) Power sharing is suitable only for big countries that have regional divisions.
- (c) Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions.
- (d) Power-sharing is not necessary at all.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (c) Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions.

**50.** Modern democracies maintain a check and balance system. Identify the correct option based on the horizontal power sharing arrangement.

- (a) Central government, state government and local bodies.
- (b) Legislature, executive and Judiciary
- (c) Among different social groups
- (d) Among different pressure groups

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (b) Legislature, executive and Judiciary

**51.** Assertion : Power Sharing is good.

Reason : It leads to ethical tension.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

Power Sharing is good because it helps in reducing the chances of conflict between different social groups and ensures stability of the political system.

**52.** There are countries in which the constitution clearly lays down the powers of different levels of government. This is called:

- (a) Unitary division of power
- (b) Federal division of power
- (c) Legal division of power
- (d) Authoritarian division of power

indicates the quality of life people lead in a country.

- (4) Power sharing also help to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.
- 64.** What two policies of the Sri Lankan government had increased the feeling of alienation among Sri Lankan Tamils ?

**Ans :** Delhi 2009

- (1) The approval of the Act of 1956 that recognised Sinhala as the only official language.
- (2) Preference to Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- (3) The provision of protecting and fostering Buddhism in new constitution.

- 65.** Describe three functions of government.

**Ans :** Foreign 2012

Every government has to perform the following functions :

1. The formation of laws.
2. The implementation of laws.
3. Awarding punishment to those who do not obey the laws.

- 66.** What were the demands of the Tamils in Sri Lanka ?

**Ans :** Comp 2019, 2013

- (1) Recognition of Tamil as official language.
- (2) Regional autonomy.
- (3) Equal opportunity for education and Government jobs.

- 67.** Write any two features of Belgium Constitution.

**Ans :** OD 2009, 2005

- (1) It prescribes equal number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers in the Central Government.
- (2) The State Governments are not subordinate to the Central Government.
- (3) The community government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.

- 68.** Which two steps were taken by the Belgium government to accommodate social difference?

**Ans :** Foreign 2019

- (1) Equal representation was given to Dutch and French-speaking ministers in the Central Government.
- (2) Many powers of the central government were given to state government.
- (3) Community government was formed.

- 69.** Mention any three provisions of the Act passed in 1956 in Sri Lanka as part of the majoritarian measures.

**Ans :** Delhi 2010

Three provisions of the Act passed in 1956 in Sri Lanka as part of the majoritarian measures are as under :

- (1) Sinhala was recognised as the only official language discarding Tamils.
- (2) The governments followed preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university position and government jobs.
- (3) The constitution stipulated that the state self protect and foster Buddhism.

- 70.** What were the demands of Sri Lankan Tamils?

**Ans :** Comp 2019

The main demands of Sri Lankan Tamils were :

- (1) Tamil should be recognise as an official language.
- (2) Regional autonomy should be given to Sri Lankan Tamils.
- (3) Equality of opportunity in getting education and jobs should be provided.

- 71.** Mention the factors on which power sharing arrangements work.

**Ans :** Delhi 2010

The following factors are to be consider on which power sharing arrangement works in democracy : (i) One basic principle of democracy is that people are the source of all political power. (ii) In a democracy, people rule themselves through institutions

- of self-governance. (iii) In a good democratic government, due respect is given to diverse groups and views that exist in a society. (iv) Everyone has a voice in the shaping of public policies.
- 72.** What values does Community Government promotes? Where is this type of government established ?
- Ans :** Foreign 2018  
Community Government is established in Belgium. It promotes the following values :  
(1) Cultural interest.  
(2) Safeguarding the interest of different linguistic groups.  
(3) Safeguarding the interest of social groups.
- 73.** State any two measures adopted by Sri Lanka in 1956 as part of their Majoritarian, policy ?
- Ans :** Comp 2019  
In 1956, an Act was passed by the Sri Lanka Government. It recognises :  
(1) Sinhala, is the only official language.  
(2) Government follows preferential policies that favoured Sinhala applicants for university and government jobs.
- 74.** Which factors are responsible for increasing the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils ?
- Ans :** OD 2011  
Sri Lankan Tamils felt that the Constitution and government policies denied them equal political rights, discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities and ignored their interests. All these are responsible for increasing the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils.
- 75.** What is a coalition government ?
- Ans :** SQP 2006  
Coalition Government: A coalition government is a cabinet of parliamentary government in which several parties cooperate. It generally happens when no party gets a majority in the parliament and several parties join together to prove their majority.
- 76.** What do you know about the ethnic composition of Belgium ?  
or  
Describe the ethnic composition of Belgium.
- Ans :** SQP 2009, Delhi 2007  
The ethnic composition of this small country of Europe is very complex. Of the country's total population, 59 per cent lives in the Flemish region and speak Dutch language. Another 40 per cent people live in the Wallonia region and speak French. Remaining 1 per cent of the Belgium people speaks German. In the capital city. Brussels, 80 per cent people speak French while 20 per cent are Dutch-speaking.
- 77.** What is democracy ? Enumerate the important democratic principles.
- Ans :** Delhi 2013  
Democracy is the government of the people, by the people and for the people.  
Importance of democratic principles :  
(1) Administration has to be run in accordance with the principle of rule of law.  
(2) Those who hold power shall be accountable for their actions to voters or to their representatives.  
(3) Even the government or the rulers have to take actions under certain rules.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 78.** "In modern democracies, power sharing arrangements can take many forms." Explain the statement.

**Ans :** OD 2023  
In modern democracies, the power-sharing arrangement can take several forms. It can be horizontal power sharing or vertical power sharing. One of the most common setups of power-sharing in democracy is the distribution of powers among the three sections of the government Legislature, Executive and Judiciary.

- (1) Legislature: The legislature is concerned with passing the laws, controlling the finances of the state and delivering on matters of public importance.
- (2) Executive: The executive machinery implements the policies of the government and executes the rules made by the legislative bodies.
- (3) Judiciary: The judiciary is concerned with the interpretation of the laws and has the power to punish those who commit crimes or break the laws. The judiciary can also check the functioning of the executives.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

79. How did the Belgium government accommodate the social differences ? Explain with examples.

Ans :

Comp 2021

Belgium accommodated its social differences by working out an arrangement which suited to the needs of various communities. It was done in the following ways:

- (1) Though the Dutch were in majority in the country, the French and Dutch speaking population was given equal representation in the Central government.
- (2) Belgium was declared as a Federal state, and thus State governments were given important powers. The State governments did not act a subordinate to the Central government.
- (3) The capital city of Brussels had a separate government. Though the French speaking population was in majority in the city, they accepted equal representation in Brussels. This was because the Dutch speaking people had accepted equal representation in the Central government in spite of being in majority.
- (4) Community government also existed in Belgium which was elected by major linguistic groups namely, Dutch, French and German speaking people. This government looked after educational, language and educational issues.

80. How is the idea of power sharing emerged? Explain different forms that have common arrangements of power sharing.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

Power sharing has emerged as a strong substitute to the idea of undivided political power, which believed in giving power to one person or a group of people located in one place. The core principle of power sharing is that people are the source of all political powers. Common forms of power sharing are:

- (1) Vertical division of power : The sharing of power can be done at different levels of the government — a central government for the entire country and governments at provincial or regional level. This type is usually called federal government.
- (2) Horizontal division of power : In this form, the power is divided among different organs of the government. such as legislature, the executive and the judiciary. It places different organs of the government at the same level.
- (3) Power is also shared among different social groups such as religious and linguistic groups eg : community government.
- (4) Various power sharing arrangement can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power.

81. Explain the Belgium model of power sharing.

Ans :

Foreign 2012

Belgium model of power sharing :

- (1) Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government. No single community can take decisions unilaterally.
- (2) The State Governments are not subordinate to the Central Government.
- (3) Brussels, the capital, has a separate government where both the communities have equal representation.
- (4) A third kind of government, 'Community Government' is elected by people belonging to one language community Dutch, French and German speaking—no

**58.** Consider the following statements about the ethnic composition of Sri Lanka:

- Major social groups are the Sinhala-speaking (74%) and Tamil-speaking (18%)?
- Among the Tamils, there are two sub-groups, Sri Lankan Tamils and Indian Tamils.
- There are about 7% Christians, who are both Tamil and Sinhala.
- Most of the Sinhala-speaking are Hindus or Muslims and most of the Tamil-speaking are Buddhists.

Which of the above statements are correct?

- A, B, C
- A, B, D
- B, C, D
- A, B, C, D

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- A, B, C

**59.** Identify the Act-

- Passed in 1956.
- Passed by the government of Ceylon (Sri Lanka).
- It was for making Sinhala, the official language of the country.
- The act replaced English with Sinhala as the sole official language.

**Option :**

- The official language Act No. 39 of 1965
- The official language Act No. 33 of 1956
- The official language Act No. 39 of 1956
- The official language Act No. 33 of 1965

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- The official language Act No. 33 of 1956

**60.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

- Political instability
- Violence
- Social conflict
- Social Groups

**Option :**

- 3, 4, 1, 2
- 3, 2, 1, 4
- 4, 3, 2, 1
- 4, 2, 3, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- 4, 3, 2, 1

**61.** Assertion (A): Belgium managed to accommodate its diversities.

Reason (R): It took care of the interest of both French and Dutch speaking community.

- Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**62.** Why is horizontal distribution of power sharing important? Explain

**Ans :**

OD 2024

The horizontal distribution of power sharing is important as -

- Distribution of power keeps different organs at the same level specifying their functions.
- It creates a system of checks and balance between different organs of the government.

**63.** Why do we think of power sharing?

or

Why power sharing in democracy is essential?

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Power is shared in democracy because of following reasons :

- Power provides social and economic justice to the people.
- Power sharing helps in division of power at various levels of government.
- Power sharing helps in raising the level of HDI (Human Development Index) which

3. Judiciary is kept aloof from all influences probable from the Executive.

**86.** How do political parties, pressure groups and movements help in power sharing in democracy? Explain in any three points.

Ans :

Delhi 2017, 2010

- (1) Various special groups and movements also participate through Governmental Committees or influence the decision making process of the government.
- (2) A coalition Government constituted of many political parties leads to power sharing.
- (3) Political competition between political parties ensures that power does not remain in one hand and is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups.

**87.** What is the difference between Horizontal Division of Power and Vertical Division of Powers ?

Ans :

Foreign 2020

	<b>Horizontal Division of Powers</b>	<b>Vertical Division of Powers</b>
1.	In this type power sharing arrangement, power is shared among different organs of government	In this type of power sharing shared among governments at different levels.
2.	In it the organs of government exercise different powers, i.e. there is a concept of separation of powers.	In it constitution clearly lays down the powers of different levels of government.
3.	It specifies the concept of 'checks and balances' in order to check the exercise of unlimited powers of the organs.	There is no such concept of checks and balance. Powers are given clearly to the constitution.

**88.** What were the two main causes of resentment in Belgium in 1960 ? How was the conflict solved ?

Ans :

Comp 2012, SOP 2007

The two main causes of resentment in Belgium in 1960 are as follows :

- (1) The minority French-speaking community was relatively rich and powerful. This was resented by majority Dutch-speaking community, who got economic and educational benefit much later.
- (2) In the capital Brussels, the Dutch-speaking people constituted minority and was dominated by French-speaking community.

The conflict was solved by recognizing the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. Thus, the Belgian leaders took the path of equal opportunity and representation for every community in government. There was vertical division of power and community government formed regarding educational, linguistic and cultural issues.

**89.** How many times was the Belgian Constitution amended between 1970 and 1993 ? Mention any two positive effects of power sharing arrangements in Belgium.

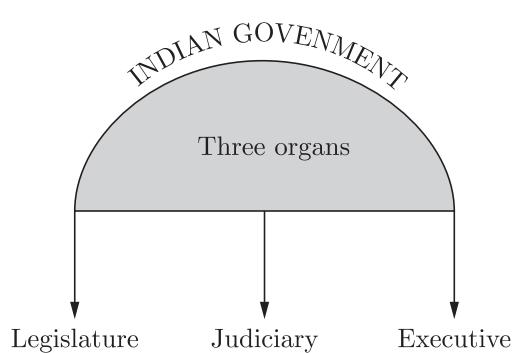
Ans :

OD 2009

The Constitution of Belgium was amended four times between 1970 and 1993.

- (1) They helped to avoid civic strife between the two major communities namely Dutch-speaking community and French-speaking community. This was done by ensuring equal participation and representation of both the communities in central government and autonomous state governments.
- (2) They saved the country from possible divisions on linguistic lines. This was done by formation of 'Community government' regarding cultural, educational and language related issues. It is elected by people belonging to one language — Dutch, French and German-speaking, no matter where they live.

- matter where they live. This government can decide on cultural, educational and language related issues.
- 82.** Examine any four reasons for strained relationship between the Sinhala and Tamil communities.
- or
- Describe any three demands of the Sri Lankan Tamils. How did they struggle for their demands ?
- Ans :** OD 2007, 2005
- (1) There were various demands of the Sri Lankan Tamils. They included political, religious, linguistic, social and economic demands. Their demands are related to legislature.
  - (2) In Sri Lanka, Sinhala language is encouraged. Tamils demanded that 'Tamil' must be recognised as official language.
  - (3) Annoyed by facing various political biasness for years, Tamils have demanded the establishment of regional autonomy.
  - (4) Even today, Tamils are struggling for the equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs.
- 83.** Describe any three provisions of the Act which was passed in Sri Lanka in 1956 to establish Sinhala supremacy.
- Ans :** SQP 2020
- Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948. The democratically elected government adopted a series of measures to establish Sinhala supremacy.
- (1) In 1956, an Act was passed to make Sinhala as the official language.
  - (2) The government followed preferential policies favouring Sinhala applicants for University positions and government jobs.
  - (3) The Constitution provided for State protection for Buddhism.
- The Sri Lankan Tamils felt that none of the major political parties led by Buddhist Sinhala leaders were sensitive to their language and culture and denied them equal political rights which led to increased feeling of alienation among them.
- 84.** Highlight any three measures adopted by the Belgian Government to accommodate regional and cultural diversities.
- Ans :** Foreign 2013
- The Ethnic composition of Belgium is very complex. Of the country's total population, 59 per cent lives in the Flemish region and speak Dutch language. Another 40 per cent people live in the Wallonia region and speak French. 1 per cent of the Belgians speak German. To rule this regionally and culturally, diverse country is not very easy. Thus, the government has taken some measures:
- (1) Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government.
  - (2) Many powers of the Central Government have been given to State Governments of the two regions of the country.
  - (3) Brussels, the capital of Belgium, has a separate government in which both the communities have equal representations.
- 85.** Discuss the power sharing in a democracy among different organs of the government.
- Ans :** Comp 2014
1. Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary. This is called horizontal distribution of power because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. Such a separation ensures proper check and balance in their respective roles.



2. A hierarchy of responsibility and accountability is formed in a rational manner.

- (2) Power can be shared among governments at different levels – a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial or regional level. Example – India (Union Government & State Government)
- (3) Community government – Power may also be shared among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups. Example – Belgium
- (4) Power-sharing between political parties, pressure groups and movements – Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand.
- (5) In the long run, power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups.
95. Explain any four forms of power sharing in government.

or

Explain any three forms of power sharing in modern democracies.

Ans :

Delhi 2016

Four forms of power sharing in the government are as follows :

- (1) Power is shared among different organs of government : The different organs of government like legislative, executive and judiciary have power and they mutually exercise control over each other. It is called horizontal division of power.
- (2) Power is shared among government at different levels : Power is divided between Union and State governments and further between the local bodies: It is called federal or vertical division of power.
- (3) Power is shared among different social groups : Different religious, linguistic, tribal and minority groups share powers in different degrees. This form of power sharing may be democratic like in Belgium or constitutional as in India.
- (4) Power is shared by political parties, polities partial pressure groups and social movements : In the coaliaion government, small political parties are more important and powerful. Secondly, in the form of

pressure group, the traders, farmers, industrialists and worker's association exercise power on government. Different social movement also influence government.

96. What do you mean by Majoritarianism ? How did it cause 'Civil War' in Sri Lanka ?

Ans :

Foreign 2019

Majoritarianism : It is a type of belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants. The majority generally disregards the wishes and needs of minority.

Following are the majoritarian policies of Sri Lanka which led to 'Civil War' :

- (1) The Sri Lankan government has adopted a series of measures to establish Sinhala supremacy in social, economic and political fields.
- (2) In 1956, an act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil language.
- (3) In the field of education, Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs were favoured.
- (4) In the field of religion, Constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism. This was a depriving step for Tamil Hindus.

97. Explain any four initiatives taken by the Belgium government to resolve ethnic conflict in the country.

or

How did the process of accommodation operate in Belgium ? Give four points.

or

What are some of the basic elements of the Belgian model of power sharing ? Write any three.

or

Explain any three main features of the new Constitution of Belgium.

Ans :

OD 2014, 2011

- (1) Equality of opportunity : In Belgium Constitution prescribed that the number of Dutch and French speaking Ministers

- 102.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Power sharing arrangements can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power. In a democracy, the citizens must have freedom to choose among various contenders for power. In contemporary democracies, this takes the form of competition among different parties. Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand. In the long run, power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups. Sometimes this kind of sharing can be direct, when two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections. If their alliance is elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power. In a democracy, we find interest groups such as those of traders, businessmen, industrialists, farmers and industrial workers. They also will have share in governmental power, either through participation in governmental committees or bringing influence on the decision-making process.*

**Questions:**

1. ‘Power sharing is an essential component of democracy.’ Give one example to prove the statement.
2. How is alliance building an example of power sharing?
3. How Political parties, pressure groups and movements help in controlling or influencing those who are in power?

**Ans :**

2023

1. (a) It helps in reducing the possibility of conflict between the social groups.  
(b) power sharing is a good way to ensure the stability of political order
2. (a) When two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections or to form a government is called as sharing of power.  
(b) Alliance could be between regional and national parties which is again an example of power sharing

3. (a) Freedom of choice entails competition among the different parties.  
(b) Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand, but is shared among different political parties representing different ideologies and social groups.

- 103.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Belgium and Sri Lanka both are democracies. Yet, they dealt with the question of power sharing differently. In Belgium, the leaders have realised that the unity of the country is possible only by respecting the feelings and interests of different communities and regions. Such a realisation resulted in mutually acceptable arrangements for sharing power. Sri Lanka shows us a contrasting example. It shows us that if a majority community wants to force its dominance over others and refuses to share power, it can undermine the unity of the country.*

**Questions:**

1. How was the power sharing arrangement in Belgium different from that of in Sri Lanka?
2. Explain why power sharing is desirable.
3. List any two steps taken by the leaders of Belgium to accommodate all the communities.

**Ans :**

1. In Belgium, the leaders amended the constitution four times in order to enable everyone to live together within the same country, whereas in Sri Lanka, the Sinhala community adopted majoritarian measures to establish its supremacy over the Sri Lankan Tamils.
2. Prudential Reason: Power sharing ensures stability of political order.  
Moral Reason: A democratic rule involves sharing power with those affected by its exercise, and who have to live with its effects.
3. (a) The Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 100.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948. The leaders of the Sinhala community sought to secure dominance over government by virtue of their majority. As a result, the democratically elected government adopted a series of MAJORITARIAN measures to establish Sinhala supremacy. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognise Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil.*

*The Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs. But their demand for more autonomy to provinces populated by the Tamils was repeatedly denied. By 1980's several political organisations were formed demanding an independent Tamil Eelam (state) in northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka.*

*The Belgian leaders took a different path. They recognised the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities. Between 1970 and 1993, they amended their constitution four times so as to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country. The arrangement they worked out is different from any other country and is very innovative.*

**Questions:**

- Which act recognises the Sinhala as the only official language?
- Who launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language?
- How many time Belgium amended their constitution?

**Ans :**

- The act of 1956 AD in Sri Lanka recognises the Sinhala as the only official language.
- The Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional

autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs.

- Belgium amended their constitution four times.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 101.** Read the given extract and answer the questions that follow :

*Belgium is a small country in Europe, smaller in area than the state of Haryana. It has borders with France, the Netherlands, Germany and Luxembourg. It has a population of a little over one crore, about half the population of Haryana. The ethnic composition of this small country is 59% per cent lives in the Flemish region and speaks Dutch language. Another 40 per cent people live in the Wallonia region and speak French. Remaining one per cent of the Belgians speak German. In the capital city Brussels, 80 per cent of the people speak French while 20 per cent are Dutch-speaking.*

**Questions:**

- Explain the ethnic composition of Belgium.
- How did the Belgian Government solve their ethnic problem ? Explain.

**Ans :**

- The Ethnic Composition of Belgium is 59% Dutch living in the Flemish region, 40% French living in the Wallonia region, and the rest 1% Germans.
- They gave equal representation to both communities. The leaders of Belgium came up with a solution for the problem between the French speaking and Dutch speaking communities in Brussels. They gave equal representation to both communities in the central cabinet of ministers. By doing this, the Belgian leaders felt that they respected the feelings and the interests of the people from both communities. They also gave more powers to the State governments.

- 90.** What is the difference between the policies adopted by Belgium and Sri Lanka regarding power sharing arrangement ?

Ans :

Delhi 2016

The differences between the policies adopted by Belgium and Sri Lanka regarding power sharing arrangement are as follows :

- (1) In Belgium, the leaders have realized that the unity of the country is possible only by respecting the feelings and interests of different communities and regions of French, Dutch and German-speaking people. Such a realization resulted in mutually acceptable arrangements for sharing power.
- (2) In Sri Lanka, the majority community of Sinhalas wanted to force its domination over minority community of Tamils and refused to share power. This was majoritarianism. This undermined the unity of the country and resulted into civil war.
- 91.** Describe the way in which power can be shared among governments at different levels.

Ans :

SQP 2018, 2015

Power can be shared among governments at different level by division of power involving higher and lower levels of government. It is also called as vertical division of power.

- (1) This can be done by a general government for the entire country, which is usually called as Federal Government and governments at the provincial or regional levels.
- (2) In India, Federal Government is called as Union or Central Government and governments at provincial level are called as State Governments.
- (3) This division of power can be extended to levels of government lower than State Governments, such as Municipality, Panchayati Raj, etc.

- 92.** What is meant by vertical distribution of power ? Explain it with reference to India.

Ans :

Foreign 2011

- (1) When power is shared among governments at different levels by division of power

involving higher and lower levels of government, it is called as vertical division of power.

- (2) In India, this is done by a general government for the entire country, which is called as Union or Central Government and governments at provincial or regional level, which are called as State Governments.
- (3) The Indian Constitution has clearly laid down the provisions for distribution of power. This division of power is further extended to levels of government lower than state governments, such as Municipality and Panchayat.

- 93.** What is meant by horizontal distribution of power ? Explain giving examples from India.

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (1) When power is shared among different organs of government, such as legislature, executive and judiciary, placed at same level and exercise different powers, it is called as horizontal distribution of power.
- (2) In India, President and the council of ministers act as executive, Parliament as legislature and Supreme Court as a part of judiciary. There is a separation of power among them so that no one can exercise unlimited powers.
- (3) Each organ can check other like, Indian judiciary can check the functioning of legislative and executive and vice-versa. In this way, they maintain a balance of power.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 94.** ‘Power sharing is the essence of a democratic government.’ Examine the statement.

Ans :

SQP 2021

- (1) Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary also called as Horizontal power sharing. Example – India

ministers shall be equal in the central government.

- (b) Some special laws require the support of majority of members from each linguistic group. Thus, no single community can make decisions unilaterally.

- 104.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*The two different sets of reasons can be given in favour of power sharing. Firstly, power sharing is good because it helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups. Since social conflict often leads to violence and political instability, power sharing is a good way to ensure the stability of political order. Imposing the will of majority community over others may look like an attractive option in the short run, but in the long run it undermines the unity of the nation. Tyranny of the majority is not just oppressive for the minority; it often brings ruin to the majority as well. There is a second, deeper reason why power sharing is good for democracies. Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy. A democratic rule involves sharing power with those affected by its exercise, and who have to live with its effects. People have a right to be consulted on how they are to be governed. A legitimate government is one where citizens, through participation, acquire a stake in the system. The idea of power-sharing has emerged in opposition to the notions of undivided political power. For a long time it was believed that all power of a government must reside in one person or group of persons located at one place. It was felt that if the power to decide is dispersed, it would not be possible to take quick decisions and to enforce them. But these notions have changed with the emergence of democracy. One basic principle of democracy is that people are the source of all political power. In a democracy, people rule themselves through institutions of self-government. In a good democratic government, due respect is given to diverse groups and views that exist in a society.*

**Questions:**

- How does people rule themselves in a democracy? Why power sharing is good?
- Write one of the basic principle of democracy?

**Ans :**

- In a democracy, people rule themselves through institutions of self-government. Power sharing is good because it reduces the conflicts between the social groups.
- One basic principle of democracy is that people are the source of all political power. People rule themselves through institutions of self government.

- 105.** Read the extracts/sources carefully and answer the following questions:

*Power may also be shared among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups. ‘Community government’ in Belgium is a good example of this arrangement. In some countries there are constitutional and legal arrangements whereby socially weaker sections and women are represented in the legislatures and administration.*

**Questions:**

- What is Community Government?
- Why is important to give representation to socially weaker sections and women in the legislatures and administration?

**Ans :**

- A community government is one in which different social groups are given the power to handle the affairs related to their communities. They are expected to work jointly for the benefit of the common masses without undermining any one community.
- This type of arrangement is meant to give space in the government and administration to diverse social groups who otherwise would feel alienated from the government. This method is used to give minority communities a fair share in power.

- 106.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*The idea of power-sharing has emerged in opposition to the notions of undivided political power. For a long time it was believed that all power of a government must reside in one person or group of persons located at one place. It was felt that if the power to decide is dispersed, it would not be possible to take quick decisions and to enforce them. But these notions have changed with the emergence of democracy. One basic principle of democracy is that people are the source of all political power.*

**Questions:**

1. Identify one feature of democratic and one of non-democratic government from the given extract.
2. Write a notion that was against the idea of power sharing.

**Ans :**

1. (a) **Democratic** : People are source of all political Power.  
 (b) **Non-democratic** : Undivided political power.
- 2 It was believed that if the power is divided it would not be possible to take quick decisions and to enforce them.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 12

## FEDERALISM

### SUMMARY

1. Federalism : A system of governance in which different governments administer at different levels and an organic link is established between them.
2. Unitary System : Territory administered by one level of government or the most sensitive in energy to gather its federal units. Eg. Indian Government.
3. Federal form of Government : Union or federal form of government is meant by a government adapted to decentralisation of power or Power sharing in its levels, tiers, organs and organelle that make easy access to each other. Eg. A garland with beads.
4. Jurisdiction : The scope of administrative power of any authority especially with Judiciary in terms of demarcation of area, region, taluk, mohalla, district, block, state and union etc.
5. Coalition Government : A government of two or several parties join together to prove their majority.
6. Constitution : The system of laws and basic principles that a nation or a state or an organisation is governed by.
7. Federal System : A system of government in which the individual states of a country have control over their own affairs but are controlled by a central government for national and diplomatic decisions.
8. Residuary Subjects : Those subjects which are not in Union, State and Concurrent lists and union government has the power to make laws on these subjects.
9. Decentralisation : To transfer power, authority, etc., from central government to

local government or division of powers from higher level to lower level.

10. Tier System : Tier system is the system which signifies levels of government. It may be two levels or two tier and three levels or three tier.
11. Union List : It is the list given under the jurisdiction of Union government. It includes the subjects or matters of national importance like defence, finance, external affairs, currency, etc. Union government alone can make laws on the Union List subjects.
12. State List : 'State List' is given under the jurisdiction of State government. It includes the subjects or matters of state and local importance. State government alone can make laws on the State List subjects.
13. List System : 'List System' states the distribution of powers or subjects through the lists—the union list for central/union level, state list for state level, etc. It is the specific feature of Indian federalism.
14. Concurrent List : Concurrent list stands for the subjects of common interest to both the Union government as well as the State government. For the Concurrent list subjects both the Union as well as the State governments can make laws.
15. Language Policy : Language policy is the safeguard, to the languages. It is one of the important aspects of our constitution. Under this policy besides, Hindi, 21 other languages are recognised as scheduled languages by the constitution.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Match the Column I with Column II and choose the correct option :

Column I (List)		Column II (Jurisdiction Sphere)	
I.	Union list subjects	A.	State Governments alone make laws on it.
II.	State list subjects	B.	For uniformity Central Government Legislates on it.
III.	Concurrent subjects	C.	Subjects under Jurisdiction of Centre and State Governments.
IV.	Residuary subjects	D.	Central Government legislates on new subjects.

- |     | I | II | III | IV |
|-----|---|----|-----|----|
| (a) | A | B  | C   | D  |
| (b) | C | D  | A   | B  |
| (c) | D | C  | B   | A  |
| (d) | B | A  | C   | D  |

Ans :

OD 2024

2. Match Column - A with Column - B and choose the correct option:

Column - A (Subjects)		Column - B (List)	
A.	E-Programming	1.	Concurrent List
B.	Police	2.	Union List
C.	Education	3.	State List
D.	Defence	4.	Residuary List

**Options:**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2
- (b) A - 3, B - 4, C - 1, D - 2
- (c) A - 4, B - 1, C - 3, D - 2
- (d) A - 4, B - 2, C - 1, D - 3

Ans :

OD 2023

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 1, D - 2

3. Which of the following is a subject of the Union List ?

- (a) Defence
- (b) Agriculture
- (c) Trade
- (d) Education

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (a) Defence

4. Which of the following is a subject of the State List ?

- (a) Currency
- (b) Foreign Affairs
- (c) Banking
- (d) Commerce

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (d) Commerce

5. What was the key change made in the Constitution of Belgium?

- (a) to reduce the power of the regional Government
- (b) to reduce the power of the Central Government
- (c) to reduce the power of the Constitution
- (d) to reduce the power of public

Ans :

SQP 2020

- (b) to reduce the power of the Central Government

6. Belgium was shifted from unitary form of government to federal form of government in 1993. What does it mean?

- (a) The regional governments were given constitutional powers and were not dependent on the central government.
- (b) The regional governments were under the control of the central government
- (c) constitution prescribes that the dutch and french ministers shall be equal in the central government
- (d) community government will undertake the powers of the central government

Ans :

Delhi 2019

- (a) The regional governments were given constitutional powers and were not dependent on the central government.

7. Which country changed from unitary to federal form of government in 1993?

- (a) Belgium
- (b) Sri Lanka
- (c) India
- (d) US

**Ans :**

OD 2020

- (a) Belgium

8. Identify the kind of administrative system :

- It is prevailing only in 25 countries and consists of two-level Government.
- USA is known for the oldest country running this system successfully.
- One level of govt under this system is for the entire country and another for states that runs day to day administrative work.
- Both of this level of govt enjoys their power independent of each other.

- (a) Unitary
- (b) Federalism
- (c) Both
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2017

- (b) Federalism

9. Assertion (A): Federations that are formed by 'holding together' do not give equal power to its constituent units.

Reason (R): Some states are granted special powers.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) A is false but R is true.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

10. The Constitution of India

- (a) divided powers between centre and states in three lists.
- (b) divided powers between centre and states in two lists.
- (c) listed the powers of the states and left the undefined powers to the state.

(d) Specified the powers of the states and left the residuary powers with the centre.

**Ans :**

OD 2014, SQP 2011

- (a) divided powers between centre and states in three lists.

11. The picture portrays about the :



- (a) Uneven Dispersal of power between the Centre and State.
- (b) Lack of harmonization between Centre and State.
- (c) The states plead for more power.
- (d) Demand for power by the states can never be met.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (c) The states plead for more power.

12. Find the odd one out -

	<b>Column A</b>	<b>Column B</b>
(a)	Union of India	Prime minister
(b)	State	Governor
(c)	Municipal corporation	Mayor
(d)	Gram panchayat	Sarpanch

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- (b) State- Governor

13. A system of government in which power is divided between a central authority and various constituent unit of the country is called \_\_\_\_\_

- (a) Federalism
- (b) Communalism
- (c) Socialism
- (d) Democracy

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

(a) Federalism

- 14.** Arrange the following in order of “Coming together Federations” formation system.

1. Various Independent states come together.
  2. A bigger unit or federation is formed by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity.
  3. Negotiation among states begins
  4. Examples of Such Federations are : USA and Australia.
- (a) 1, 3, 2, 4  
 (b) 1, 2, 3, 4  
 (c) 2, 3, 4, 1  
 (d) 4, 3, 1, 2

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

(a) 1, 3, 2, 4

- 15.** Assertion : The Indian Union is not based on the principles of federalism.

Reason : The Constitution of India declared India as a Union of States.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) A is false but R is true.

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

(d) A is false but R is true.

- 16.** Which of the following is not the key feature of federalism?

- (a) There are two or more levels of government.
- (b) The jurisdictions of the respective levels or tiers of government are specified in the constitution.
- (c) The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by one level of government such changes require the consent of both levels of government.
- (d) The central government can pass on orders to the provincial or the local government.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2014

- (d) The central government can pass on orders to the provincial or the local government.

- 17.** Complete the following table with the correct information-

Linguistic State	Reason of Resistance by the Center	Basis of creation	Example of linguistic states
The first and a major test for democratic politics of India	Fear of Disintegration	A - ?	B - ?

- (a) A -Language, B -Tamil Nadu  
 (b) A -Color, B -Tamil Nadu  
 (c) A -Cast, B -Tamil Nadu  
 (d) A -Language, B -Rajasthan

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- (a) A -Language, B -Tamil Nadu

- 18.** What ensures financial autonomy to all levels of government?

- (a) Sources of jobs for each level
- (b) Sources of food for each level
- (c) Sources of happiness for each level
- (d) Sources of revenue for each level

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

- (d) Sources of revenue for each level

- 19.** Assertion : Third-tier of government is local government.

Reason : It made democracy weak.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

- 20.** Which government enjoy their power independent of the other?

- (a) government for the entire country
- (b) governments at the level of provinces or states

- (c) Both these levels of governments  
 (d) none of these

**Ans :**

OD 2015, Delhi 2013

- (c) Both these levels of governments

**21.** In a 'Holding together federation'

- A. A large country divides its power between constituent states and the national government
  - B. The central government tends to be more powerful vis-a-vis the states
  - C. All the constituent states usually have equal powers
  - D. Constituent states have unequal powers
- Which of the above statements are correct?
- (1) A, B, C and D
  - (2) A and D
  - (3) B and C
  - (4) A, B and D

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (d) A, B and D

**22.** Consider the following statements on the practice of federalism in India. Identify those which hold true for decentralisation after 1992.

- (1) Local governments did not have any power or resources of their own.
  - (2) It became constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
  - (3) The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.
  - (4) No seats are reserved in the elected bodies for scheduled castes, scheduled tribes and other backward classes.
- (a) 1 , 2 and 3
  - (b) 1 and 3
  - (c) 2 and 3
  - (d) 2 and 4

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (c) 2 and 3

**23.** Assertion : Coalition government is formed during dearth of coal in the country.

Reason : It helps in overcoming coal crisis.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.

- (c) A is true but R is false.

- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**24.** Identify the kind of legislative power distribution list by the Constitution of India :

- It includes the subject of national interest.
  - Provides uniformity throughout the country.
  - The Union govt alone has the power to make laws related to the subjects of this list.
  - Banking, Defence and Communication are some of the subjects under this list.
- (a) State List
  - (b) Union List
  - (c) Residuary List
  - (d) All of these

**Ans :**

OD 2017, SQP 2013

- (b) Union List

**25.** The below cartoon clearly state that :



- (a) Perils of running a coalition Govt.

- (b) A coalition govt have more work to do.

- (c) The best way to run a democratic country like India is Coalition govt.

- (d) Coalition govt increases the overall efficiency of the Govt and hence shall be welcomed.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (a) Perils of running a coalition Govt.

- 26.** If it is desired in India to switch over to unitary system of government from the present federal structure such a change can be brought about by
- A simple majority of the members of the parliament
  - A two third majority of members present and voting, provided it is not less than majority of the total members
  - A two third majority of the membership of the parliament
  - A special procedure in Parliament and ratification by a majority of States in the Indian Union

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (d) A special procedure in Parliament and ratification by a majority of States in the Indian Union

- 27.** Consider the following statements on the practice of federalism in India. Identify those which hold true for decentralisation after 1992.

- Local governments did not have any power or resources of their own.
  - It became constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
  - The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.
  - No seats are reserved in the elected bodies for scheduled castes, scheduled tribes and other backward classes.
- B and C
  - A and C
  - A and D
  - B and D

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

- (a) B and C

- 28.** Assertion : India is a federation.

Reason : Power resides with the central authority.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the

correct explanation of A.

- Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- A is true but R is false.
- Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 29.** Arrange the following stages or condition for the formation of an Coalition Govt.

- No single party get majority to form the Govt in centre or in State.
  - All Major and some regional parties enter into alliance.
  - After 1990, there was a rise in the regional parties.
  - Regional Parties alliance with the national party led to power sharing and respect for the Autonomy of state Govt.
- 1, 3, 2, 4
  - 1, 2, 3, 4
  - 3, 1, 2, 4
  - 4, 3, 1, 2

**Ans :**

OD 2011

- (c) 3, 1, 2, 4

- 30.** Complete the following table with correct information:

Act	Full Form	Date Implementation	About
SRC	A - ?	B - ?	Reorganisation of state boundaries

- A -State reorganisation commission B -Nov 1 1956
- A -Solid reorganisation commission B -Nov 1 1956
- A -State reorganisation commission B -Nov 1 1940
- A -State reorganisation company B -Nov 1 1967

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- A -State reorganisation commission B -Nov 1 1956

31. Some states in India has special powers or status as compared to other states and this is evident from which article of the constitution which deals with the special status of north eastern states?

- (a) A - 356
- (b) A - 370
- (c) A - 368
- (d) A - 371

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (d) A - 371

32. Identify which one is the basic idea behind decentralisation.

- (1) Local problem can be better settled at local level.
- (2) Local people have better idea where to spend money.
- (3) People directly can participate in decision making.
- (a) (1) and (2)
- (b) (2) and (3)
- (c) Only 2
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, Delhi 2017

- (d) All of the above

33. Assertion : It is very simple to make the changes in the basic structure of the constitution.

Reason : Both the houses have power to amend the constitution independently.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

34. The first and major test for democratic politics in our country was

- (a) caste problem
- (b) language problem
- (c) problems related to union territories
- (d) creation of linguistic state

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (d) creation of linguistic state

35. What was the name of independent India between August 15 1947 to January 26 1950 before it became the republic of India this question is required ?

- (a) The Dominion of India
- (b) The constitution of India
- (c) The government of India
- (d) The prime minister of India

**Ans :**

SQP 2006, 2010

- (a) The Dominion of India

36. In 1947, the boundaries of several old States of India were changed in order to create new States. This was done \_\_\_\_\_.

- (a) to ensure that people who speaks the same language lived in the same State.
- (b) to please the political parties
- (c) so that people of same religion can live in the same state
- (d) to avoid communal clashes

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (a) to ensure that people who speaks the same language lived in the same State.

37. Identify the unit of the Indian Union :

- These units are generally very small in size.
- These cannot be merged with states due to some reasons.
- These units have very small powers.
- Examples are Chandigarh, Dadar and nagar havelli.
- (a) States
- (b) Villages
- (c) Union Territories
- (d) Central Government

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (c) Union Territories

38. Assertion : The subjects which are not included in Union List, State List and Concurrent List are considered as residuary subjects.

Reason : The subjects included that came after constitution was made and thus could not be classified.

- 118.** Read the extracts/sources carefully and answer the following questions:

*Regional governments existed in Belgium even earlier. They had their roles and powers. But all these powers were given to these governments and could be withdrawn by the Central Government. The change that took place in 1993 was that the regional governments were given constitutional powers that were no longer dependent on the central government. Thus, Belgium shifted from a unitary to a federal form of government. Sri Lanka continues to be, for all practical purposes, a unitary system where the national government has all the powers. Tamil leaders want Sri Lanka to become a federal system.*

*The exact balance of power between the Central and the State government varies from one federation to another. This balance depends mainly on the historical context in which the federation was formed. There are two kinds of routes through which federations have been formed.*

**Questions :**

- What form of government has been adopted by Belgium and Sri Lanka? Also state one difference between the two.
- Name the two routes through which most of the federations have been formed.

**Ans :**

- Belgium - Federal

Under this, the power is divided between a central authority and its various constituent units.

Sri Lanka - Unitary

Under this, there is only a single government controlling all the powers.

- (a) Coming together federation.  
(b) Holding together federation.

- 119.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the*

*official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 per cent of Indians. Therefore, there were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages.*

*States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State.*

*Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi. According to the constitution, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965. However, many non-Hindi speaking states demanded that the use of English continue. In Tamil Nadu, this movement took a violent form. The central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes. Many critics think that this solution favoured the English-speaking elite. Promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of the Government of India. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in.*

**Questions :**

- How many official languages recognised as scheduled Languages by the constitution?
- How does Constitution of India safeguard the other languages?
- How does India avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in?

**Ans :**

- There are 22 Languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the constitution.
- The constitution of India did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. States too have their own official languages. Much of

**45.** Where is the original Indian Constitution?

- (a) In Rajasthan Library
- (b) In State Library of the Parliament
- (c) In Central Library of the Jammu
- (d) In Central Library of the Parliament

Ans :

SQP 2017

- (d) Central Library of the Parliament

**46.** Which of the following is incorrect regarding a federal government?

- (a) Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.
- (b) Federation has only one level of government.
- (c) One is the government for the entire country that is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest.
- (d) The others are governments at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the day-to-day administering of their state.

Ans :

OD 2019

- (b) Federation has only one level of government

**47.** Assertion : Hindi is identified as the only official language of India.

Reason : It helped in creating supremacy of Hindi speaking people over others.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

Ans :

Delhi 2016

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**48.** In India's federal system, the state governments have the power to legislate on all those subjects which are included in the:

- (a) Union list
- (b) State list
- (c) Concurrent list
- (d) Residuary subjects

Ans :

SQP 2012, 2009

- (b) State list

**49.** Identify the following

- Units of the Indian Union which enjoy very little power.
  - These territories do not have the powers of a State.
  - The Central Government has special powers in running these areas.
- (a) Union Territories
  - (b) Small States
  - (c) Central Institute
  - (d) Both B and C

Ans :

Foreign 2014

- (a) Union Territories

**50.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Federalism
- (b) Coalition Government
- (c) States pled for more power
- (d) power sharing

Ans :

Comp 2019

- (c) States pled for more power

**51.** Assertion : India has a federal system.

Reason : Under a unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the subunits are subordinate to central government.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 39.** Which of the following Indian states were formed to recognise differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography rather than on linguistic basis?

- A. Nagaland
- B. Uttarakhand
- C. Jharkhand

Select the correct answer using the code given below:

- (a) A and B only
- (b) B and C only
- (c) A and C only
- (d) A, B and C

**Ans :**

SQP 2020, 2017

- (d) A, B and C

- 40.** According to the Indian Constitution in which year English was to be ended as the language for official purpose?

- (a) 1950
- (b) 1947
- (c) 1965
- (d) 1999

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (c) 1965

- 41.** After grouping of languages, the Census found \_\_\_ major languages. Of these \_\_\_ languages are now included in the Eighth Schedule of the Indian Constitution and are therefore called ‘Scheduled Languages’.

- (a) 121, 22
- (b) 22, 167
- (c) 148, 21
- (d) 126, 11

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (a) 121, 22

- 42.** Federal power-sharing is more effective today than in the past mainly because

- (a) It is the age of coalition governments at the centre
- (b) states today are more conscious of their rights
- (c) centre today depends more on states
- (d) There are more powerful leaders at the state level

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (a) It is the age of coalition governments at the centre

- 43.** Complete the following table with correct information-

Name of countries	Known as	Power is divided between	Power sharing
India, spain, belgium	A - ?	B - ?	More of centralization of power than decentralization

- (a) A -Coming together federation, B -Centre and state

- (b) A -Holding together federation, B -Centre and state

- (c) A -Holding together federation, B -Village and state

- (d) A-Coming together federation, B -Centre and village

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

- (d) A -Holding together federation, B -Centre and state

- 44.** Assertion : Belgium and Spain has ‘holding together’ federation.

Reason : A big country divides power between constituent states and national government.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) A is true but R is false.  
 (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2005

(b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**58. In a 'Holding together federation':**

1. A large country divides its power between constituent states and the national government.
  2. The Central government tends to be more powerful vis-a-vis the States.
  3. Constituent states have unequal powers.
- Which of the above statements are correct?
- (a) A, B, and C  
 (b) A and B  
 (c) B and C  
 (d) A and C

**Ans :**

OD 2018

- (a) A, B, and C

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**59. Consider the following four statements.**

- (i) In a federation the powers of the federal and provincial governments are clearly demarcated.
- (ii) India is a federation because the powers of the Union and State Governments are specified in the Constitution and they have exclusive jurisdiction on their respective subjects.
- (iii) Sri Lanka is a federation because the country is divided into provinces.
- (iv) India is no longer a federation because some powers of the States have been devolved to the local government bodies.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) (i), (ii) and (iii)  
 (b) (i), (iii) and (iv)  
 (c) (i) and (ii) only  
 (d) (ii) and (iii) only

**Ans :**

SQP 2020, Foreign 2016

- (c) (i) and (ii) only

- 60. Assertion : A major step towards decentralization was taken in 1992 by amending the constitution.**

**Reason :** Constitution was amended to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective.

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
 (c) A is true but R is false.  
 (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2007

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**61. What are the dual objectives of federalism:**

1. Safeguard and promote unity of the country
  2. Responsible for the rise of regionalism
  3. Division of horizontal power
  4. Accommodate regional diversity
- (a) A and B  
 (b) A and D  
 (c) B and C  
 (d) A, B and D

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (b) A and D

**62. Identify the institution -**

- It resolves disputes between the states and state and centre.
  - It interprets the constitution.
  - It acts like an empire and decides neutrally.
- (a) Media  
 (b) Executive  
 (c) Umpire  
 (d) Judiciary

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (d) Judiciary

**63. Arrange the following Scheduled language of India in ascending order of the proportion of their speakers.**

1. Bengali
2. Marathi

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**52. The Constitution of India**

- (a) divided powers between centre and states in three lists.
- (b) divided powers between centre and states in two lists.
- (c) listed the powers of the states and left the undefined powers to the state.
- (d) Specified the powers of the states and left the residuary powers with the centre.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (a) divided powers between centre and states in three lists

**53. Match the following and choose correct option.**

<b>Column A</b>		<b>Column B</b>	
A.	Gram sabha	I.	Gram panchayat group together to form this unit.
B.	Gram panchayat	II.	It reviews the performance of the gram panchayat.
C.	Zila parishad	III.	Decision making body for the entire village.
D.	Mandals	IV.	Mandals in a district together constitute zilla . parishad

- (a) A-II, B-III, C-IV, D-I
- (b) A-III, B-IV, C-II, D-I
- (c) A-III, B-I, C-IV, D-II
- (d) A-IV, B-III, C-II, D-I

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (a) A-II, B-III, C-IV, D-I

**54. The state which violently demanded that the use of English for official purpose should be continued, is**

- (a) Kerala
- (b) Karnataka
- (c) Tamil Nadu
- (d) Andhra Pradesh

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009, 2005

- (c) Tamil Nadu

**55. What is true regarding sources of revenue in a federal system?**

- (a) States have no financial powers or independent sources of revenue.
- (b) States are dependent on revenue or funds on the central government.
- (c) Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.
- (d) States have no financial autonomy.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

- (c) Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.

**56. Which one of the following is not an important feature of federalism?**

- (a) Each level of government has its own area of Jurisdiction.
- (b) The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be changed unilaterally by any one level of government.
- (c) Government has two or more than two levels.
- (d) Courts have the power to change the constitution.

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (d) Courts have the power to change the constitution.

**57. Assertion : Zilla Parishad Chairperson is the political head of the zilla parishad.****Reason : Mayor is the head of municipalities.**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

each other, or a dead lock is created, then the law made by the Union government will prevail.

- 69.** How many tier system of government are there in Federal of India?

**Ans :** Foreign 2014

Two tier system of government was adopted in our country. These two tier were central government and state government. Later on a third tier of system was included in it in the form of Municipalities and Panchayats. Thus the division of power at three levels is called three tier system which is adopted in India.

- 70.** “Federal system consists of two or more sets of government.” How?

**Ans :** OD 2016, 2011

Federal system power is divided between union and its constituent units. Union government governs the entire nation while other units such as states governs different states. That's why federal system consists of two or more sets of government.

- 71.** Write any three features of Holding together federation.

**Ans :** Delhi 2019

- (1) A large country divides its power between constituent states and the national government
- (2) The Central government tends to be more powerful vis-a-vis the states.
- (3) Constituent states have unequal powers.

- 72.** What is a federation ? Give two examples.

**Ans :** Foreign 2010

A country consisting of a group of individual states that have control over their own affairs but are controlled by a Central Government or organisation for national decision.

Examples : India and the United States of America are two examples of a federation.

- 73.** Define federalism. How are the powers divided between the centre and state governments in India ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2012, OD 2006

Federation is a system of government in which the governmental power is divided between a central authority and its various constituent units.

**Provision of division of powers :** In India the Constitution divides all subjects under three types of constitutional lists. These are called : [(i) Union List, (ii) State List and (iii) Concurrent list]. Rest of the subjects are suppose to be called residuary powers.

- 74.** How did Belgium shift from a unitary to a federal form of government ? What major change was done in the Constitution of Belgium before 1993 as far as the power sharing was concern ?

**Ans :** SQP 2020

Belgium adopted power sharing at grass route level while it was trying to shift from a unitary to a federal type of government.

As far as power sharing is concern one key or important change was made in the Constitution of Belgium to reduce the powers of the central government before 1993.

- 75.** Describe any two federal characteristics of the Indian Constitution.

**Ans :** Comp 2013

Two federal characteristics of the Indian Constitution are as follows :

- (1) **Division of powers :** According to Indian Constitution, the powers have been divided between the Union and the states. According to this division, the powers have been mentioned into three lists. These are :
  - (i) The Union List,
  - (ii) The State List and
  - (iii)The Concurrent List.
- (2) **Separate Government at the Union and in the States :** In India the separate government have been established at the Union as well as in the states. In the Central Government, the President is at the top and then there is a Council of Ministers, the Parliament and the Supreme Court. In the states, the

3. Hindi
4. Tamil
- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (c) 3, 1, 2, 4
- (d) 4, 2, 1, 3

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011, OD 2008

- (d) 4, 2, 1, 3

- 64.** Assertion : Power is taken away from Central and State Governments and given to local government and it is known as decentralization  
 Reason : Large number of problems and issues are best settled at the local level and it is the basic idea behind decentralisation.  
 (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
 (c) A is true but R is false.  
 (d) Both A and R are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

- 65.** Mention any three features of ‘secularism’ described in the Indian Constitution.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The three features of ‘secularism’ described in the Indian Constitution are as follows;

- (1) The Constitution of India does not give special recognition to any religion and there is no state religion in India, unlike, Christianity in America, Buddhism in Sri Lanka, etc.
- (2) All individuals and communities have been given freedom to practice, profess and propagate any religion.
- (3) The Constitution of India puts ban on the discrimination on grounds of religion.

- 66.** Mention the problem of ‘Casteism’ in Indian politics.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The problems of ‘Casteism’ in Indian politics are discussed below :

- (1) When parties choose candidates in elections, they keep in mind the caste composition of the electorate and nominate candidates from different castes so as to get necessary support to win elections.
- (2) Political parties and candidates in elections make appeal to caste sentiment to muster support. Some political parties are known to favour some castes and are seen as their representatives.
- (3) Universal adult franchise and the principle of one vote compelled political leaders to gear up to the task of mobilising and securing political support.

- 67.** Describe any three features of Indian federalism.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (1) Different tiers of government govern the same citizens, but each tier has its own jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.
- (2) Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.
- (3) Courts have the power to interpret the constitution and the powers of different levels of government. The highest court acts as an umpire if disputes arise between different levels of government in the exercise of their respective powers.

- 68.** Name any two subjects that are included in Concurrent List. How are laws made on these subjects? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Concurrent List includes subjects of common interest to both the Union and State government. These subjects are education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption, and succession etc.

Both the State and the Union governments can make laws on these subjects. But if the laws made by both the government contradict

- (1) Constitution mandate to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
- (2) Reservation of seats in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and other Backward Classes.
- (3) Reservation of at least one third of all positions for women.
- (4) Creation of an independent institution called the State Election Commission in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
- (5) The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies. The nature of sharing varies from state to state.
- 82.** What is the difference between the Federal and the Unitary form of Government ?
- Ans :** OD 2011
- (1) In the unitary form of government there is only one central government for the whole country. While, in the federal form there is one central government and separate governments in the provinces.
- (2) In the federal form of government, the whole country is divided into some political units but in the unitary form the whole country is a single unit.
- (3) In the unitary form, all the powers are vested in one central government. While there is a division of powers between the federal and the state government in the federal form.
- (4) In the federal form of government mostly the constitution is written and as well as rigid while it is not so in case of a unitary state.
- 83.** Explain two achievements and two difficulties of local self governments in India.

**Ans :** Comp 2023

#### Achievements :

- (1) Local self governments make it possible for the people at the local level to directly participate in decision making. This helps to inculcate a habit of democratic

representation. Thus constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen democracy in our country.

- (2) Local self-governments also have helped to increase women's voice and representation in our democracy.

#### Difficulties :

- (1) While elections are held regularly and enthusiastically, Gram Sabhas are not held regularly.
- (2) Most State Governments have not transferred significant powers to the Local Governments nor have they given them adequate resources.

- 84.** Write a short note on "Centralised Federation in India."

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

A federation is a union of a number of independent political units got together to become a strong and big nation. India and United States of America are the significant examples of this type. In federation the powers are divided between political units, i.e. the centre and the states.

**Features :** The main features of the Indian federation are given below :

- (1) Indian federation consists of two types of units :
- (a) Full-fledged states.
  - (b) Union territories administrated by the centre.
- (2) Indian federation is inclined towards the unitary features.
- (3) In the event of the proclamation of an emergency, India becomes a unitary government.

- 85.** What do you know about language policy of India ? Describe in short.

**Ans :**

OD 2015, 2009

- (1) Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 per cent of the Indians. Therefore, there were many safeguards to protect other languages.

- (3) It is necessary in order to maintain sovereignty i.e., an essential component of the state.
111. Write a detailed note on the centre-state relations in Indian federation.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, 2007

Centre-State relations in India :

- (1) Restructuring the Centre-State relations is one more way in which federalism has been strengthened in practice.
- (2) The constitutional arrangements for sharing power work in reality depend to a large extent, on how the ruling parties and leaders follow these arrangements.
- (3) For a long time, the same party ruled both the centre and in most of the states. This meant that the state governments did not exercise their rights as autonomous federal units. As and when the ruling party at the state level was different, the parties that ruled at the centre tried to undermine the power of the states. In those days, the Central Government would often misuse the Constitution to dismiss the state governments that were controlled by rival parties. This undermined the spirit of federalism.
- (4) All this changed significantly after 1990. This period saw the rise of regional parties in many states of the country. This was also the beginning of the era of coalition governments at the centre. Since no single party got a clear majority in Lok Sabha, the major national parties had to enter into an alliance with many parties including several regional parties to form a government at the centre. This led to a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of the state governments. This trend was supported by a majority.

112. Write the composition of rural local government in India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

A brief description of the rural local government is given below

**Panchayati Raj :** The rural local government is popularly known as Panchayati Raj. It consists of Gram Panchayats, Panchayat Samiti and Zila Parishad.

- (a) **Panchayat :**

- (i) There is a panchayat in each village or group of villages.
- (ii) It is a council which has several ward members (panch) and a president (sarpanch).
- (iii) They are directly elected by all the adult population living in that ward or village.
- (iv) Panchayat is a decision-making body for the entire village.
- (v) It works under the overall supervision of Gram Sabha.
- (vi) Gram Sabha consists of all the voters and meets twice or thrice in a year to approve the annual budget of the Gram Panchayat and to review its performance.

- (b) **Panchayat Samiti or block or mandal :** A few Gram Panchayats are grouped together to form a Panchayat Samiti. The members of this body are elected by all the members of the panchayats in that area.

- (c) **Zila Parishad :** All the panchayat samities in a district constitute Zila Parishad, whose members are elected. Members of the Lok Sabha and MLAs of that district and some other officials of other district level bodies are also its members. Zila Parishad chairperson is the political head of the Zila Parishad.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

113. Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

### DECENTRALISATION IN INDIA

*This new system of local government is the largest experiment in democracy conducted anywhere in the world. There are now about 36*

**89.** Distinguish between ‘coming together’ and ‘holding together’ type of federations.

Ans :

Delhi 2018

	Coming Together Federations	Holding Together Federations
(1)	This federation involves independent states coming together on their own to form a bigger unit, so that by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity they can increase their security. This type of federation includes countries like USA, Switzerland and Australia.	When a large country decides to divide its power between the constituent states and the national government, it is called as holding together federation. India, Spain and Belgium are its examples.
(2)	All the constituent states usually have equal power and are strong vis-a-vis the federal government.	The central government tends to be more powerful vis-a-vis the states. Very often different constituent units of the federation have unequal powers. Some units are granted special powers.

**90.** What is unitary form of government ? Mention its three features.

Ans :

SQP 2019

- (1) (i) In the unitary form of government either there is only level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government.
- (ii) The central government can pass an order to the provincial government.
- (2) Following are the principal features of the unitary form of government :

- (i) In the unitary form of government power is mainly concentrated in the hands of central or union government.
- (ii) In this system, the fundamental provisions of the Constitution can be unilaterally changed by the union government.
- (iii) In the unitary system, the state is not autonomous and cannot exercise independent powers. There is no separate jurisdiction for the state. Union is powerful in the state administration.

**91.** Explain four major points of differences between the unitary and federal forms of government.

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (1) In the federal system, the central government cannot order the state government to do something. But in the unitary system, province is subordinate to the central government.
- (2) In the federal system, the exact balance of power between the central and state governments varies from one federation to another. But in the unitary form, power is concentrated in the union. India is a good example of it.
- (3) In the federal system, the state government has powers of its own. The state government is not answerable to the central government, but in the unitary system independent powers of the state do not exist.
- (4) In the federal system, the fundamental provisions of the Constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by the union legislative ? But in the unitary system, it can be done by the union legislature.

**92.** Give two positive and negative features each of the federal system of government.

Ans :

Comp 2019

- (1) Positive features of the federal system :
  - (i) In the federal system, power is shared at different levels, especially the

Governor is at the top, and then there is the Council of Ministers, the Legislature and the High Court.

- 76.** Why were the linguistic states created ? What are their advantages ?

**Ans :** OD 2005

The linguistic states were created to ensure that the people who spoke the same language lived in the same state.

- (1) It has made the country more united and stronger.
- (2) It has also made administration easier.

- 77.** What is a Panchayati Raj ? What is its importance ?

**Ans :** Delhi 2009

The rural local government is known as the Panchayati Raj.

**Importance :**

- (1) It helps the people to directly participate in decision-making process.
- (2) It helps in the decentralisation of power.
- (3) It reduces the burden of the central government as well as state government.

- 78.** Mention any four difficulties of the local government in India.

**Ans :** SQP 2014

- (1) Most states have not transferred significant powers to the local governments.
- (2) There is a shortage of resources.
- (3) Elections are not held regularly.
- (4) The Gram Sabhas are not held regularly.

- 79.** Explain the importance of local self-government in the light of decentralisation.

**Ans :** Foreign 2019

**Importance of local self-government :**

- (1) There are a large number of problems and issues which are best settled at the local level. People have better knowledge of problems in their localities. They also have better ideas on where to spend money and how to manage things more efficiently.

- (2) It also helps to inculcate the habit of democratic participation among people.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 80.** State any three important features of Federalism.

**Ans :** SQP 2021, Comp 2020

**Key features of federalism :**

- (1) There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.
- (2) Different tiers of government govern the same citizens, but each tier has its own jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.
- (3) The jurisdictions of the respective levels or tiers of government are specified in the constitution.
- (4) The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by one level of government. Such changes require the consent of both the levels of government.
- (5) Courts have the power to interpret the constitution and the powers of different levels of government. The highest court acts as an umpire if disputes arise between different levels of government in the exercise of their respective powers.

- 81.** Describe any three steps taken by the government towards decentralization in the year 1992.

or

Describe any three provisions of amendment made in 'Indian Constitution' in 1992 for making 'Three-Tier' government more effective and powerful.

or

Explain the steps taken by the Indian government in the year 1992 to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful.

**Ans :** SQP 2021, 2019

Major steps taken by Indian Government towards decentralization in 1992.

- (1) In both Belgium and India, federal structure is mainly based on the linguistic division of the country. That is, separate states were created on the basis of language. These regional governments were given constitutional powers that were no longer dependent on the central government. The centre had only limited control over the states.
- (2) The federal system in India and Belgium differs mainly on the basis of the name of the community government. In Belgium, community government is elected by the people belonging to one language community — Dutch, French, German-speaking, no matter where they live. This government has power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues. Such a system of community government is not found in Indian federal system.
- 96.** How has federal power sharing in India become more effective than in early years after the Constitution came into force -? Explain.
- or
- 'Federal power sharing is more effective today than it was in the early years after the Constitution came into force.' Justify the statement by analysing the situation before and now.
- Ans :** SOP 2007
- (1) For a long time, the same party ruled both at the centre and in most of the states. As and when the ruling party at the state level was different, the parties that ruled at the centre tried to undermine the power of the states.
- (2) The centre would often misuse the Constitution to dismiss the state governments that were controlled by rival parties. This undermined the spirit of federalism. In recent times,
- (i) due to coalition governments at the centre, a new culture of power sharing and respect for the autonomy of state governments was developed.
- (ii) Also, a major judgment of the Supreme Court made difficult for the centre to dismiss state governments arbitrarily. Thus, federal power sharing is more effective today.
- 97.** What do you mean by decentralisation of powers ? What are the purposes or benefits of decentralisation. Give three points.
- or
- What is decentralisation ? In what three ways does it help, the successful functioning of democracy ?
- Ans :** Delhi 2012
- (1) When some power is taken away from the central or the state government and given to the local government, it is called decentralisation. The basic idea behind decentralisation is that a large number of problems and issues can be settled at local levels.
- (2) Following are the purposes or benefits of decentralisation :
- (i) The main purpose of decentralisation is to ensure community participation for proper growth and development of the community itself. It ensures social, economic and political development of the community.
- (ii) In decentralisation, there are two ways of power-sharing. First, power directly goes to the local bodies from the union and second, the powers of the state are shared by the local bodies and the state.
- (iii) Decentralisation is also oriented to ensure no or less interferences in the local affairs by the union and the state executive bodies. It has been executed to make village, little Republic'..
- 98.** "The decentralisation has led to strengthening of Panchayati Raj system in India". Justify.
- or
- "There has been qualitative and quantitative change in the powers of local government after constitutional Amendment Act 1992." Justify.

- (2) Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as scheduled languages by the Constitution.
- (3) A candidate in an examination conducted for the national government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages. States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned state.
- (4) Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965.
- 86.** What values differentiate the Federal and the Unitary Government ?

or

Which values distinguish Federal and Unitary Government ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

Values given below distinguish Federal and Unitary Government :

- (1) In unitary form of government there is only one central government for the whole country while in a federal form of government there is one central government and separate governments in the provinces.
- (2) In federal form of government, all the powers are vested in the hands of political units, but in the unitary government all powers vested in single unit.
- (3) In a federal form of government mostly the constitution is rigid while in case of unitary government it is not so.
- 87.** Write the number of countries having federal political system. What is the total population of these countries out of the world population ? If federalism works only in big countries, why did Belgium adopt it ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

- (1) Number and population of countries having federal system : The total number of countries having federal political system is 25 out of the world's 192 countries.

The total population of countries having federal political system is 40 per cent of the total world's population.

- (2) Belgium and federalism : It is an approach of administration in the facts and circumstances reviewed and when partisan attitude is found on the basis of language that reflects diversity in the womb of stereotypes, prejudices, inequality and discrimination. It is an accommodation of ailing minds in separate sanatoriums.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 88.** How has federal division of power in India help national unity ?

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (1) Irrespective of internal conflicts and disharmony, India still has maintained unity and integrity through power sharing—a consensus forming mechanism. It is manifested in issues relating to foreign affairs, diplomatic relations, unity at war-time (1965, 1971, 1999 wars with Pakistan).
- (2) Every state as well as Union Territories elect and send their representatives to Central Legislature. The members of Indian Parliament belong to entire country. They choose the Prime Minister of the country. The Prime Minister submits the lists of the Council of Ministers to the President of the country, who is a nominal head of the federal state of India.
- (3) During the emergency days, our federal system takes unitary form without losing a single second.
- (4) All Indians feel that they are part and parcel of the government. They feel that if the government is weak, they will remain weak and the country will remain backward and weak.

and efficient management to deal with problems.

- (2) Provisions : (i) It is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.  
(ii) Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes. Also, one-third of all positions are reserved for women.

- 102.** State any two achievements and any two problems of the Panchayati Raj system in India.

**Ans :** SOP 2012

The Panchayati Raj system of India is the largest experiment in democracy conducted anywhere in the world. Its achievements are as follows :

(1) Achievements :

- (i) The constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen roots of democracy in India.
- (ii) It has also increased representation and voice of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and women in Indian democracy through measures of reservation.

(2) Problems :

- (i) While elections are held regularly and enthusiastically, Gram Sabhas are not held regularly.
- (ii) Most state governments have not transferred significant powers to the local governments. Nor they have been given adequate resources. India is thus still a long away from realizing the ideals of self-government.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 103.** Describe the rationale behind the implementation of Decentralisation in India.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

The rationales behind the implementation of decentralisation in India are :

- (1) India is a vast country; central government is unable to hear the needs of people from different areas.
- (2) The local government can easily understand the needs and demands of their people.
- (3) It helps women to participate in decision making process because 33% seats are reserved for women in local government.
- (4) It takes off burden from central and state government.
- (5) It strengthens democracy.
- (6) At the local level it is possible for the people to directly participate in decision making.

- 104.** Describe any three steps taken by the Indian Government towards decentralisation of power in 1992.

**Ans :**

OD 2020, 2016

The major steps taken towards the decentralisation of powers in India in 1992 are given below :

- (1) It formalised the local self government (Panchayati Raj system).
- (2) It empowers lower level management or people participation in decision making to solve problems and issues at the local level.
- (3) To hold regular elections of the local governing bodies.
- (4) Reserve one third seats for the women in the local self government.
- (5) The state governments are needed for the purpose of sharing some powers and the revenue with local self governing bodies.
- (6) Prior to 1992, local government bodies were under the control of the government but after 1992, these bodies were given constitutional status. Seats are reserved for SC, ST and OBC in elected bodies and executive head of the Institutions to ensure their equal participation.

[Any Three]

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (1) The constitutional Amendment Act-1992 (73rd) created a three tier system of local government at village, block and district levels. At each level, members are elected in a democratic process.
- (2) It has led to participation of village community in power-sharing. Now village Panchayat is a more powerful and autonomous unit. Power is shared in democratic process.
- (3) Women, scheduled castes, other backward castes (OBC) and deprived sections have been provided reservation in the Panchayat to ensure uniformity in proper participation of deprived class in the government.
- (4) The village Panchayat has been given legislative, executive and judicial powers, and all these powers are mutually shared by the community.

Thus, decentralisation has led to moral democratisation and ensured community participation in village Panchayat.

- 99.** What do you mean by Panchayati Raj System? What are its significance ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2007

- (1) The rural local government is popularly known by the name of Panchayati Raj. Each village or a group of village (in some states) has a Gram Panchayat. This is a council consisting of several ward members, often called Panch, a President or Sarpanch. They are directly elected by the adult population living in the ward.
- (2) Following are the significance of Panchayati Raj :
  - (i) It has ensured greater participation of local people in power sharing through its three tier structure.
  - (ii) The processes of community participation and democratisation have been strengthened as a result of decentralisation of power in the form of Panchayati Raj.

- (iii) Social Justice and equitable development of the community have been executed through Panchayats.
- (iv) Since it is locally available government, it not only saves time and money of the people but also provides immediate and effective relief.

- 100.** Explain any three measures to decentralise powers in India.

**Ans :**

OD 2017, 2010

Following are the principal measures to decentralise powers in India :

- (1) Legislative measures : Under the 73rd and 74th Amendment Acts of 1992 and 1993 respectively, the Panchayati Raj and Nagar Palika have been given powers to make laws on the local issues.
- (2) Executive measures : Under the same acts, both the local bodies can implement, check and administer the local affairs independently. Provisions have also been made to ensure less bureaucratic interferences in the local affairs.
- (3) Judicial measures : Both, the Panchayati Raj and Nagar Palika have judicial powers to judge the legality and applicability of local legislation. The local judiciary can impose fine or give the prescribed mode of punishment to the accused.

- 101.** Give two arguments in favour of decentralisation of powers to local governments. Give two provisions under the amendment of 1992 which empowers local governments in India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

- (1) Arguments : (i) It fulfils the need of power sharing in a vast and diversified country like India, which cannot be run only through federal governments. Thus, it modifies the concept of democracy.
- (ii) It helps in settlement of large number of problems and issues at the local level because local people have better knowledge of problems in their localities. They also have better ideas

**108.** What makes India a federal country ? Discuss in brief, all major features of Indian federation.

**Ans :**

SOP 2014, Delhi 2011

The features of Indian Federalism :

- (1) Two tier system of government. Third tier added subsequently to government is that of Local Self-Government or Panchayati Raj through Zila Parishad and municipality.
- (2) Three organs of Government are : (a) Legislature, (b) Executive and (c) Judiciary.
- (3) Three lists containing subjects to be ruled are union list, state list and concurrent list. Residuary powers are also with the Central Government.
- (4) Division of powers with the President in executive, legislative, financial, judicial and emergency.
- (5) Fine accommodation of unitary and federal nature.
- (6) Written constitution with abundant scope for amendments in provisions.
- (7) Strong power sharing arrangements witnessed in policies, strategies, schemes, plans, projects and programmes.
- (8) Rational process of nation-wide consensus in law-making for the land.
- (9) Independent judiciary.

**109.** Examine the factors which are responsible for the formation of a federation in India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

There are some factors that encourage the independent states to form a federation. Some important factors are as under :

- (1) Fear of foreign invasion : Sensitive but non-resolute at physical level—the people of India; had experienced partition and prolong slavery of the British. They were, therefore, cautious in the matter of defence from foreign invasion.
- (2) Illusion of economic development as human development : It is all understood that India is lingering behind at HDI. We can say, therefore, that Indian Federation is misunderstood by its people comprising

professionals, administrators, political leaders, grocers and sellers including common people. HDI shows that among 177 countries of the world, India stands at 126 in terms of human development here.

**(3) Perspective of Economic Progress :** Small states, by remaining independent, individually—cannot make progress in the economic field. They cannot compete effectively in the world market, they cannot make very big projects in each state. They can form a federation and can act unitedly. Thus, the aim of economic progress is a strong factor in the formation of the federation, very big states become super-power and can take research work continuously in all fields of knowledge, science and technology etc.

**110.** Why central government been made more powerful in the federal structure of India ? Analyse three significant reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (1) Union List bears more subjects dealt with Central Government or the Union viz. 97 subjects.
- (2) Residual powers are exclusively conferred to centre.
- (3) In case, any controversy takes place between decisions made by the Centre and the State, the decision made by the Centre shall be deemed prevailing over the state.
- (4) The Central Government has emergency powers overriding other State governments because Governor in state acts as representative of the Central Government.

Three significant reasons for making Centre more powerful are the following :

- (1) The framers of the Indian Constitution aimed at a strong and united India.
- (2) By means of power sharing and allowing Centre, supreme power over nation-state, unity and integration among all levels of government can be fostered and made us of, in proper way.

union and the province. Thus it is more democratic in nature.

- (ii) In the federal system, both the unity and integrity of the nation, and the accommodation of regional diversities are together promoted. The different regional, sectional, linguistic and other groups have chances to realise their interest.
- (2) Negative features of federalism :
- (i) In the federal system, the conflict over power sharing between the union and state is very frequent. The conflict becomes more sharp when the union government is different from the state government.
  - (ii) Sometimes the regional interests clash with the national interest. In this situation, it becomes very difficult for the union to formulate a uniform law for widely diversified and stratified society.

93. "Do you agree that Indian political system is federal in form but unitary in nature ?" Justify your answer giving four reasons.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015, 2006

- (1) Power-sharing : The power sharing arrangement between the union and the state given in the Constitution of India clearly distributes powers between the two. In this sense, it is federal. But the system becomes unitary when the residuary power rests, with the union.
- (2) Concurrent list : Both the union and state have their separate subjects under union and state lists respectively. It shows federal nature of Indian government. Both can legislate over the state list but in case of conflict, union legislation is final. It reflects the unitary nature.
- (3) Financial : Both, union and state has its own financial institutions, sources and distribution of revenues. In this way it is federal. But state's demands of grants from the centre show of Indian government's unitary feature.
- (4) Judiciary : The provision of High Court for the state and Supreme Court for the

nation as a whole, is a federal feature. But, Supreme Court's superiority or domination over the High Courts is a unitary feature.

Thus, it can be reasonably concluded that Indian political system is federal in form but unitary in nature.

94. Explain any three ways in which federalism in India is practiced.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

Following are the ways in which federalism is practiced in India.

- (1) In India, the creation of linguistic states was the first and the major test for democracy and federal system. The linguistic division was done to insure the people who spoken the same language lived in the same state. Some states like Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand were created to recognise the differences based on culture, ethnicity and geography.
- (2) The second way India practices federalism is that our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language and till now 21 regional languages have been recognised as the scheduled languages.
- (3) Restructuring the centre-state relation is one more way in which federalism has been strengthened in practice. In the present day political scenario, the state governments are practicing their powers more independently. Now they do not follow the footprints of the central government. They can think their better self. This envisages the strengthening of federal nature of the government.

95. Give one feature each in which federalism in India is similar to and different from that of Belgium.

**Ans :**

OD 2011, Foreign 2014

Following are the ways in which federalism in India is similar to as well as different from that of Belgium :

*lakh elected representatives in the panchayats and municipalities etc., all over the country. This number is bigger than the population of many countries in the world. Constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen democracy in our country. It has also increased women's representation and voice in our democracy. At the same time, there are many difficulties. While elections are held regularly of Panchayats and people participate enthusiastically in it but meetings of gram sabhas are not held regularly.*

**Questions :**

1. Why is Indian decentralisation considered as the largest experiment in democracy ?
2. Analyse how constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen democracy in India ?
3. Explain any two steps taken by the Indian Government for decentralisation.

**Ans :**

1. The third tier of local government in India is the biggest in the world thanks to the decentralisation experiment. More than 35 lakh elected officials serve in panchayats and municipalities across the nation.
  2. The 73rd and 74th Constitutional Amendment Acts granted constitutional status to the third branch of government. As a result, the local government now operates more effectively and has more authority in a number of areas.
  3. Two steps taken by the government for decentralisation are as follows:
    - (a) Establishing the panchayats as the third level of government and giving them the authority and means to function effectively.
    - (b) Allowing for the reservation of one third of the seats. to the female members of local government to increase their involvement in political discussions and decision-making.
114. Read the given extract and answer all questions :

## DECENTRALISATION IN INDIA

*When power is taken away from Central and State governments and given to local government, it is called decentralization. The basic idea behind decentralization is that there are a large number of problems and issues which are best settled at the local level. People have better knowledge of problems in their localities. They also have better ideas on where to spend money and how to manage things more efficiently. Besides, at the local level it is possible for the people to directly participate in decision making. This helps to inculcate a habit of democratic participation. Local government is the best way to realise one important principle of democracy, namely local self-government.*

*The need for decentralisation was recognized in our Constitution. Since then, there have been several attempts to decentralize power to the level of villages and towns. Panchayats in villages and municipalities in urban areas were set up in all the States. But these were directly under the control of State Governments. Elections to these local governments were not held regularly.*

**Questions :**

1. Explain Decentralization in democracy.
2. Explain the importance of Local self Government in democracy.
3. Describe any two steps taken by Indian government for decentralization.

**Ans :**

1. Democratic decentralization is the process of devolving the functions and resources of the state from the centre to the elected representatives at the lower levels so as to facilitate greater direct participation of citizens in governance.
2. The local self-governmental institutions are the best centers for imparting democratic thoughts and education. People prefer democracy because they want to live in an environment of equality and liberty. In local self government, the members have close and intimate contact with the local people

**105.** Describe any three features of ‘federal government’.

Ans :

Delhi 2020

The features of ‘federal government’ are given below :

- (1) There are two or more levels (tiers) of government.
- (2) Each level of government has its own jurisdiction in matters of legislation, taxation and administration even though they govern the same citizens.
- (3) Powers and functions of each tier of government is specified and guaranteed by Constitution.
- (4) The Supreme Court has been given power to settle disputes between federal governments.
- (5) Fundamental provisions of Constitution cannot be altered by any one level of government.
- (6) The divisions of powers are defined by the Constitution and the legislative power.

[Any three]

**106.** Describe any three features of ‘unitary government’.

Ans :

Delhi 2020

The three features of ‘unitary government’ are given below :

- (1) Centralisation of Powers : All powers are centralised in the hands of the central government and the centre is the reservoir of all state powers. In this system, there are no provincial governments and the Constitution empowers the central government to legislate, execute and adjudicate with full might.
- (2) Single and Simple Government : A unitary government is very simple system. With the exception of Britain, there are neither provincial assemblies and executives nor the upper chambers at the center. There is a single central government at the center. There is a unicameral legislature popularly elected. The central legislature is there to legislate, executive to execute

and the judiciary to adjudicate without any share.

**(3)** Uniformity of Laws : Another characteristic of a unitary government is that the laws of the unitary system, unlike in a federation, are uniform because laws are made only by a single central government for the whole state. Laws made by the centre are equally enforced in the rest of the state without any territorial distinction while in a federation; the nature of the law varies from province to province.

**107.** How states were created in India on the basis of language ? Discuss it briefly.

Ans :

Foreign 2017

- (1) This system was started in the very year when Constitution was given effect or enforced in 1950 C.E. States Reorganisation Act was passed in 1956 but, the first new state on the basis of language was formed in 1953 C.E. as Andhra Pradesh, i.e. three years before the respective Act was passed.
- (2) In the 1950s the boundaries of several old states of India were changed in order to create new states. This was done to ensure that people who spoke the same language lived in the same state. Some states were created not on the basis of language but to recognise differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography. These include states like Nagaland, Uttarakhand and Jharkhand.
- (3) When the demand for the formation of states on the basis of language was raised, some national leaders feared that it would lead to the disintegration of the country. The Central Government resisted linguistic states for some time. But the experience has shown that the formation of linguistic states has actually made the country more united and stronger. It has also made administration easier than before.

*day-to-day administering of their state. Both these levels of governments enjoy their power independent of the other.*

**Questions :**

1. How is unitary form of government different from federal form of government?
2. Mention any one aspect of Federalism.
3. Differentiate between coming together and holding together federations.

**Ans :**

1. In the unitary form of government, there will be either one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government, whereas in a federal structure, the power is divided between a central authority and other sub-units. The sub-units are not answerable to the central government.
2. (a) Governments at different levels should agree to some rules of power-sharing.  
(b) They should also trust that each would abide by its part of the agreement.
3. Difference between coming together and holding together federations :

	<b>Coming together federations</b>	<b>Holding together federations</b>
(i)	Independent states come together on their own to form a bigger unit.	A large country divides its power between the central government and its sub-units.
(ii)	All states usually have equal power and are strong with regard to federal/central government.	The central government tends to be more powerful with regard to the states.
(iii)	Examples- The USA, Switzerland, Australia.	Examples- India, Spain, Belgium.

117. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Union List includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country,*

*foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency. They are included in this list because we need a uniform policy on these matters throughout the country. The Union Government alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the Union List.*

*State List contains subjects of State and local importance such as police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation. The State Governments alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the State List.*

*Concurrent List includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments, such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in this list. If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail.*

**Questions :**

1. How many items are listed in the Union List?
2. Which kind of subjects are listed in the state list?
3. Who makes laws in the concurrent list? If conflict occurs then what happen in the List?

**Ans :**

1. There are 100 numbered items listed in the Union List (before 97 numbered items were listed). These include subjects of national importance such as defence, foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency.
2. Subject like police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation are listed in State List. It is of state and local importance.
3. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in the Concurrent List.

If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail.

3. Major Step Towards Decentralisation
    - (a) Constitutionally mandatory for holding regular elections for local government bodies.
    - (b) Seats reserved in the elected bodies and executive heads of the institutions for Scheduled Tribes, Scheduled Castes, and Other Backward Classes.
    - (c) Creation of an independent institution called the State Election Commission in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
- 115.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language.*

*Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 per cent of Indians. Therefore, there were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages.*

*States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned state. Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi.*

*According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965. However, many non-Hindi speaking states demanded that the use of English continue. In Tamil Nadu, this movement took a violent form. The Central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes.*

*Many critics think that this solution favoured the English speaking elite. Promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of*

*the Government of India. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on states where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in.*

**Questions :**

1. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Why?
2. Evaluate the importance of continuing English as the official language of India.
3. State the differences between India and Sri Lanka on the basis of status of language.

**Ans :**

1. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language because Only 40 per cent people speak in Hindi. It is improper to give the status of national language to any particular language.
2. According to the Constitutions, the use of English for official purposes was to stop in 1965. But many non-Hindi speaking states demanded to continue English as an official language along with Hindi. Some states, specially states in South India, like Tamil Nadu revolted violently against the removal of English. Thus, Central Government took the decision to continue English as official language.
3. Sri Lanka declared Sinhala as the only official language whereas in our country, there is no national language.

- 116.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country. Usually, a federation has two levels of government. One is the government for the entire country that is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest. The others are governments at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the*

- the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned state. Although only 40% of Indians speak Hindi. Therefore the constitution of India safeguards the other languages and recognised 22 languages as the scheduled languages.
3. Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious altitude in spreading the use of Hindi. Therefore government of India agreed to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes.

Although, promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of the Government of India. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on states where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in.

- 120.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Union List includes subjects of national importance such as defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency. They are included in this list because we need a uniform policy on these matters throughout the country. The Union Government alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the Union List.*

*State List contains subjects of State and local importance such as police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation. The State Governments alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in the State List.*

*Concurrent List includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments, such as education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in this list. If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail.*

### Questions :

1. How many items are listed in the Union List?
2. Which kind of subjects are listed in the state list?
3. Who makes laws in the concurrent list? If conflict occurs then what happen in the List?

### Ans :

1. There are 100 numbered items listed in the Union List (before 97 numbered items were listed). These include subjects of national importance such as defence, foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency.
2. Subject like police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation are listed in State List. It is of state and local importance.
3. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in the Concurrent List.

If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will prevail.

- 121.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country. Usually, a federation has two levels of government. One is the government for the entire country that is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest. The others are governments at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the day-to-day administering of their state. Both these levels of governments enjoy their power independent of the other.*

*The Parliament cannot on its own change this arrangement. Any change to it has to be first passed by both the Houses of Parliament with at least two-thirds majority. Then it has to be ratified by the legislatures of at least half of the total States. The judiciary plays an important role in overseeing the implementation of constitutional provisions and procedures.*

*In case of any dispute about the division of powers, the High Courts and the Supreme Court make a decision. The Union and State governments have the power to raise resources by levying taxes in order to carry on the government and the responsibilities.*

*There were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages. States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by Federalism?
2. Why is the role of Judiciary important in democracy?
3. How many languages are recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution?

**Ans :**

1. Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country. Usually, a federation has two levels of government.
2. The judiciary plays an important role in overseeing the implementation of constitutional provisions and procedures.
3. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 13

## GENDER, RELIGION AND CASTE

### SUMMARY

1. Sexual Division of Labour : A system in which all work inside the home is either done by the women of the family, or organised by them through the domestic helpers.
2. Feminist : A woman or a man who believes in equal rights and opportunities for women and men.  
Patriarchy : A family system in which father occupies dominant position in all kinds of decision-making.
3. Urbanisation : Shift of population from rural areas to urban areas.
4. Occupational Mobility : Changing nature of occupation—not hereditary.
5. Caste Hierarchy : A ladder-like formation in which all the caste groups are placed from the 'highest' to the 'lowest' order.
6. Casteism : Superiority or inferiority complex owing to different ladders in caste hierarchy.
7. Communalism : It means to distinguish people on the basis of religion to treat the persons belonging to one's own religion as friends and others are enemies.
8. Inequality of Women : Gender bias in allocation, performance and valuation of works, acts, chores, occupations and in political recognition, etc.
9. Secularism : The belief that religion should not be involved in the organisation of society.
10. Untouchability : Social exclusion due to one's not falling in hierarchy of caste on account of certain violation to social norms/canons.
11. Minorities : Lesser number of people in any region, state, district or area under census.
12. Social Change : Modification in popular mode of seeing things and people, ideas, standards, pattern of behaviour etc.

13. Family Laws : Those laws that deal with family related matters such as marriages, divorce, adoption, inheritance, etc. In our country every community has its own family law.
14. Gender Division : It is a form of hierarchical social division based on social expectations and stereotypes.
15. Universal Adult Franchise : It implies that Right to Vote is given to every adult citizen of the country. It is one of the political rights of the people.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Read the given statements :
  - (1) India has no official religion.
  - (2) All the communities have freedom to profess and practice any religion in India.Which one of the following constitutional term is used for the above statements?
  - (a) Republic
  - (b) Secular
  - (c) Sovereign
  - (d) Socialist
- Ans : OD 2024  
(b) Secular
2. Read the following statements and choose the correct option:
  - I. There is no official religion in India.
  - II. Communities have freedom to profess and practice their religion.
  - III State helps communities by giving aid to educational institutions run by them.
  - IV. India believes in theocracy.

**Options:**

- (a) I, II and III  
 (b) I, II and IV  
 (c) II, III and IV  
 (d) I, III and IV

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (a) I, II and III

**3.** Which one of the following countries has the highest representation of women in their National Parliament?

- (a) Russia  
 (b) Australia  
 (c) Sweden  
 (d) India

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (c) Sweden

**4.** The participation of women in public life is very high in

- (a) Sweden  
 (b) Norway  
 (c) Finland  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (d) All of these

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**5.** Identify the kind of belief where:

- One religion is presented as superior to those of other religions.
- When the demand of one religious group are formed in opposition to another.
- When state power is used to establish the domination of one religious' group over rest.
- Sometimes this kind of belief can led to disintegration of Nation.

**Options**

- (a) Secularism  
 (b) Communalism  
 (c) One Nation  
 (d) One Religion

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (b) Communalism.

**6.** Observe the following table of child sex ratio 0-6 years in India between 1981-2011 and answer the question:

S.No.	Year	No. of Girls per 1000 Boys
1.	1981	962
2.	1991	945
3.	2001	927
4.	2021	919

Which reason is responsible for the decline in the child sex ratio in India?

- (a) Nature of patriarchal society.  
 (b) Attraction toward son over daughter.  
 (c) Even after legalization of ban over sex identification of unborn child, these activities are still revealing in society.  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (d) All of these

**7.** It is believed that the main responsibility of a girl is to:

- (a) take care of house  
 (b) look after children to cook  
 (c) to cook  
 (d) all of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (d) all of the above

**8.** **Assertion :** Universal Adult Franchise gives right to vote to everyone.

**Reason :** Right to vote should be given to people of upper caste and class for taking wise decision.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

9. Identify the person who said that:

- Religion can never be separated from Politics.
- Politics can be guided by ethics drawn from religion
- Those who believe religion and politics aren't connected don't understand either.
- Nations are born out of travail and suffering

#### Options

- (a) Mahatma Gandhi
- (b) BR Ambedkar
- (c) Jotiba Phule
- (d) Periyar Ramaswami Naiker

Ans :

OD 2019

- (a) Mahatma Gandhi

10. Which is not a threat to Indian democracy?

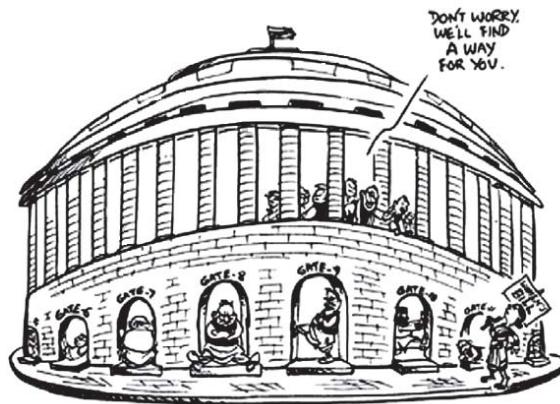
- (a) Low gender ratio
- (b) Caste system
- (c) Communalism
- (d) None of these

Ans :

Delhi 2018, 2015

- (a) Low gender ratio

11. The following picture talks about the reality of Indian Political System intended for:



- (a) Political Biasness against women for more representation in Parliament.
- (b) Lesser participation of women in Parliament.
- (c) Lack of women movements for more participation in Elected bodies.
- (d) Reluctant Ness in women for their political right.

Ans :

Comp 2014

- (a) Political Biasness against women for more representation in Parliament.

12. **Assertion :** Equal Remuneration Act, 1976, provides that equal wages should be paid for equal work, irrespective of gender and caste.

**Reason :** Women are physically weak so they are righteously paid less than men.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

Ans :

Delhi 2020

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

13. Choose the correct option about matriarchal society.

- (a) Educated society
- (b) Male dominated society
- (c) Female dominated society
- (d) Equal gender society

Ans :

OD 2017

- (c) Female dominated society

14. Arrange the following states of India (in the descending order) regarding their Child Sex Ratio as per Census-2011?

1. Arunachal Pradesh 972
2. Haryana 834
3. Jammu and Kashmir 862
4. Uttar pradesh 902

#### Options

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

Ans :

SQP 2009

- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1

15. Complete the following table with correct information with regard to the cultivation of wheat:

**29.** Who among the following fought against caste inequalities?

- (a) Periyar Ramaswami Naiker
- (b) BR Ambedkar
- (c) Jotiba Phule
- (d) All of them

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (d) All of them

**30. Assertion :** India is a secular state.

**Reason :** Constitution gives freedom to everyone to profess, practice and propagate any religion without prejudices or any discrimination.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**31.** The literacy rate among the women as compared to men in only:

- (a) 54%
- (b) 98%
- (c) 68%
- (d) 70%

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (a) 54%

**32.** Arrange the following regions in the ascending order of the percentage of Women in their national parliaments:

1. Europe
2. Nordic Countries
3. India
4. America

#### **Options**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2

**33.** Urban areas have become particularly ..... for women.

- (a) safe
- (b) Unsafe
- (c) both (a) and (b)
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2014

- (b) Unsafe

**34.** In 2011, sex ratio was

- (a) 914
- (b) 900
- (c) 850
- (d) 950

**Ans :**

SQP 2011

- (a) 914

**35.** Complete the following table with correct information with regard to the Secular state:

Secular state	Principle	India	Pakistan
	State have no religion	(A)-?	(B)-?

- (a) A - Not a secular state, B - A secular state

- (b) A - A secular state, B - Not a secular state

- (c) A - Not a secular state, B - Not a secular state

- (d) A - A secular state, B - A secular state

**Ans :**

Comp 2007

- (b) A - A secular state, B - Not a secular state.

**36.** The gender division is mainly:

- (a) private
- (b) public
- (c) both (a) and (b)
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

- (c) both (a) and (b)

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :** Foreign 2018

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

- 24.** Communal politics is based on the idea of  
 (a) caste is the basis of social community  
 (b) religion and caste are the basis of social community  
 (c) religion is the basis of social community  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :** Comp 2019

- (c) religion is the basis of social community

- 25.** Arrange India's Religious diversity as per census 2011:

1. Muslims
2. Sikhs
3. Hindus
4. Christians

#### Options

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :** Delhi 2011

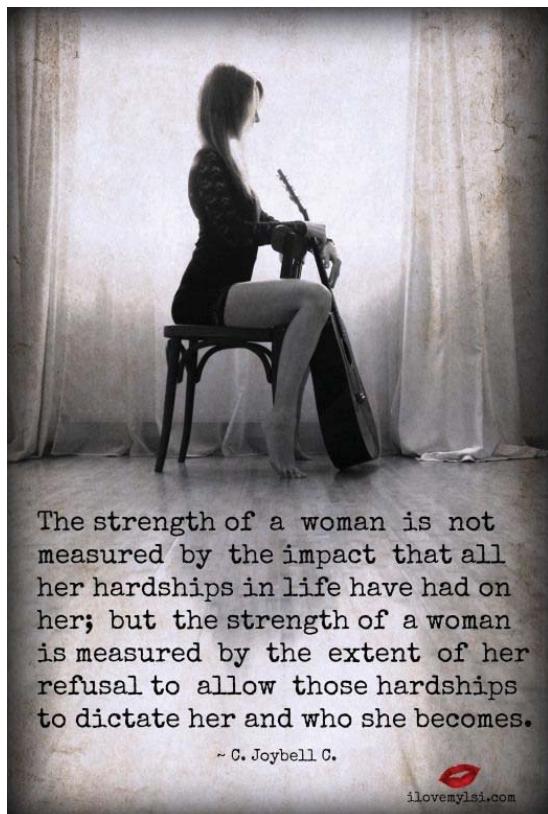
- (c) 3, 1, 4, 2

### DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

- 26.** Following picture of a woman portray about:



- (a) Struggle of a woman during Independence Era.

- (b) Poverty and Detroit condition of woman  
 (c) Woman's Strength  
 (d) Demand for more political rights

**Ans :** SQP 2007

- (c) Woman's Strength

- 27.** Which social division is unique to India?

- (a) Economic division
- (b) Caste division
- (c) Racial division
- (d) Religious division

**Ans :** Foreign 2020

- (b) Caste division

- 28.** Heredity, rituals, birth are the basis of

- (a) economic system
- (b) caste system
- (c) racial division
- (d) class system

**Ans :** OD 2012, 2010

- (b) caste system

Federalism	'holding together' federations	'coming together' federations
India	(A) -?	

- (a) A - USA  
 (b) A - France  
 (c) A - Russia  
 (d) A - Italy

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

- (a) A - USA

16. The hierarchical unequal roles assigned to men and women by the society is known as  
 (a) sex ratio  
 (b) equal wages ratio  
 (c) gender division  
 (d) male ratio

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (c) gender division

17. **Assertion :** Communalism is based on the idea that religion is the principal basis of social community.

**Reason :** Caste should be kept away from politics.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

18. "Religion can never be separated from politics" is said by  
 (a) BR Ambedkar  
 (b) GK Gokhale  
 (c) Mahatma Gandhi  
 (d) Swami Vivekananda

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (c) Mahatma Gandhi

19. Family law deals with  
 (a) marriage  
 (b) divorce  
 (c) adoption  
 (d) inheritance

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- (d) inheritance

20. Most of the victims of communal riots in our country are  
 (a) people from religious minorities  
 (b) women and children  
 (c) illiterate people  
 (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, OD 2012

- (a) people from religious minorities

21. Read the given data and find out which language has the highest proportion of speakers:

Language	Proportion of Speakers (%)	Language	Proportion of Speakers (%)
Assamese	1.28	Oriya	3.21
Bodo	0.13	Punjabi	2.83
Dogri	0.22	Tamil	5.91
Kannada	3.69	Telugu	7.19
Malayalam	3.21	Urdu	5.01

- (a) Urdu  
 (b) Telugu  
 (c) Kannada  
 (d) Tamil

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (b) Telugu

22. Communalism problem is associated with  
 (a) religion  
 (b) caste  
 (c) secularism  
 (d) inequalities

**Ans :**

SQP 2015, 2013

- (a) religion

23. **Assertion :** Stereotypical gender roles for males and females helps in avoiding conflicts.  
**Reason :** India is a matriarchal society.

**37.** The women's movement is called:

- (a) Women's movement
- (b) Female Agitation
- (c) Feminist Movement
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2013

(c) 3, 1, 4, 2

(d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2011, 2009

(d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**38. Assertion :** A casteist is a person who thinks that caste is the principal basis of community.  
Reason : All castes are equal and man-made.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

(c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**39.** Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the principal basis of :

- (a) social community
- (b) society
- (c) people
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

(b) society

**40.** Women also do outside work like:

- (a) fetching water
- (b) collecting fuel
- (c) working in fields
- (d) all of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

(d) all of the above

**41.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Social Reform Movement
2. Caste inequality
3. Caste system
4. Social community

**Options**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1

**42. Assertion :** Sex-selective abortion led to decline of sex ratio in India.

**Reason :** Desire of for a male child makes Indian families abort girl.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

(a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**43.** Which factor does not weaken the caste inequalities?

- (a) Urbanisation
- (b) Literacy growth
- (c) Education
- (d) Politics

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

(d) Politics

**44.** Gender means differentiation between male and female based on:

- (a) sex
- (b) society
- (c) religion
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2005

(a) sex

**45. Literacy rate means ratio of**

- (a) educated people in a country
- (b) uneducated people in a country
- (c) educated women in the country
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

(a) educated people in a country

*mistaken impression that the proportion of the Muslims in the country's population is going to overtake other religious communities. Expert estimates done for the Prime Minister's High Level Committee (popularly known as Sachar Committee) show that the proportion of the Muslims is expected to go up a little, by about 3 to 4 per cent, in the next 50 years. It proves that in overall terms, the population balance of different religious communities is not likely to change in a big way.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by atheist?
2. How much growth rate of Muslim population fall in compare to last decadal census?
3. What did happen in population proportion of six major religious communities in India since Independence?

**Ans :**

1. The atheist in the broadest sense means an absence of belief in the existence of deities or God or Goddess. In other sense an atheist believe in no religion.
  2. The population of Muslim witness sharp fall in growth rate to 24.60% in 2001-2011 decadal census from the previous figure of 29.52% (1991-2001). Such sharp fall in population growth rate for Muslims didnot happened in the last 6 decades.
  3. Since Independence, the total population of each community has increased substantially but their proportion in the country's population has not changed much. But in percentage terms, the population of the Hindus, Jains and Christians has declined marginally since 1961
- 104.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow :

*"Casteism is rooted in the belief that caste is the sole basis of social community. According to this way of thinking, people belonging to the same caste belong to a natural social community and have the same interests which do not share with anyone from another caste."*

**Questions :**

1. What is the main difference of caste system in India from others in other societies ?
2. How is caste system influencing the value of democracy in India ?

**Ans :**

1. It is different from other societies is that in this system, hereditary occupational division was sanctioned by rituals. Members of the same caste group were supposed to form a social community that practiced the same or similar occupation, married within the caste group and did not eat with members from other caste groups.
2. In India caste system too is undermining the value of democracy in the following ways :
  - (a) Political parties choose candidates in elections keeping in mind the caste composition of the electorate.
  - (b) At the time of formation of the governments political parties take care that representatives of different castes and tribes find a place in it.
  - (c) Political parties and the candidates make appeal to the voters on caste basis to get votes of their own caste.

- 105.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Communalism was and continues to be one of the major challenges to democracy in our country. The makers of our Constitution were aware of this challenge. That is why they chose the model of a secular state. This choice was reflected in several constitutional provisions that we studied last year. There is no official religion for the Indian state. Unlike the status of Buddhism in Sri Lanka, that of Islam in Pakistan and that of Christianity in England, our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion.*

*All societies have some kind of social inequality and some form of division of labour. In most societies, occupations are passed on from one*

C.	Group of bankers and traders who financed export of agriculture	3.	Collateral
D.	Caste system was based on exclusion and discrimination against	4.	Outcaste

**Options**

- (a) A – 4, B – 1, C – 3, D – 2
- (b) A – 3, B – 1, C – 2, D – 4
- (c) A – 2, B – 1, C – 3, D – 4
- (d) A – 2, B – 3, C – 4, D – 1

Ans :

Comp 2018

- (b) A – 3, B – 1, C – 2, D – 4

51. **Assertion :** Men and women should be given equal rights.

**Reason :** Men are superior to women physically and emotionally.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

OD 2015

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

52. “The assertion of social diversities in a democratic country is very normal and can be healthy.” Justify the statement with arguments.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

The assertion of social diversities in a democratic country is very normal and can be healthy because :

- (1) This allows various disadvantaged and marginal social groups to express their grievances and get the government to attend to them.

(2) Expression of various social diversity results in their cancelling one another out and thus reducing their intensity.

(3) They also help to uplift the marginalised or deprived section of society which also leads to strengthening of democracy.

53. “Social divisions affect politics.” Examine the statement.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

Yes, social division affect politics in the following ways :

- (1) It strengthens the idea of communal politics.
- (2) Government mainly supports the majority community, by denying the rights of minority community.
- (3) Politics of social division is very normal and can be healthy, it allows people to express their grievances.
- (4) Its outcome depends on how people perceive their identity, or how political leaders raise their demands, and it depends on how the government react to demands of different groups.

54. Explain the three factors that are crucial in deciding the outcome of politics of social divisions.

Ans :

Delhi 2018

Three factors which determine the outcome of politics of social division are :

- (1) Peoples’ perception of their identities : When this is singular, the accommodation of other identities becomes difficult.
- (2) Representation of a community by political leaders : While representing a community if politicians raise demands that are constitutional then it is easier to accommodate those demands.
- (3) The government’s reaction : If the reasonable demands of a community are suppressed by the government, then it leads to social division, which in turn threaten the integrity of the country.

**46. Assertion :** Sometimes a caste group becomes vote bank for a party.

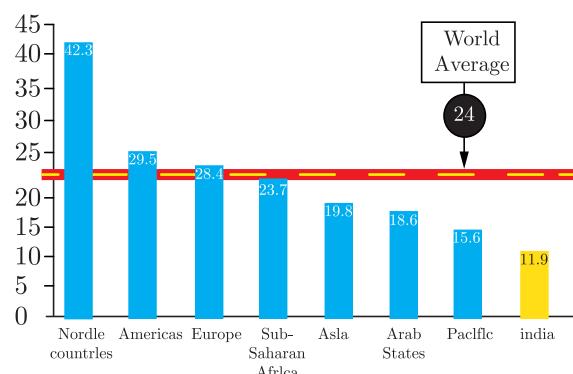
**Reason :** Selecting the candidate from same caste helps in ensuring better governance.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** OD 2005

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

**47.** Following picture tells the meagre participation of women in Indian Parliament which can be solved or improved by:



- (a) Making women aware about their rights
- (b) Making women motivated towards joining national or state level political parties
- (c) Telling their male counterpart to make more efforts for women participation
- (d) Make a legal binding to have a fair proportion of women in elected bodies

**Ans :** Delhi 2007

- (d) Make a legal binding to have a fair proportion of women in elected bodies

**48. Assertion :** Women face discrimination and disadvantage in India in many ways.

**Reason :** India is a patriarchal society.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion

- (c) Assertion is true but reason is false
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false

**Ans :**

OD 2017, 2015

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**49.** The most common expression of communalism is in everyday beliefs. These routinely involve religious prejudices, stereotypes of religious communities and belief in the superiority of one's religion over other religions. This is so common that we often fail to notice it, even when we believe in it.

Analyse the above given statement, considering one of the following correct option.

- (a) There is no official religion for the Indian State.
- (b) All societies have some kind of social inequality and some form of division of labour.
- (c) No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or community.
- (d) Communalism is based on the idea the religion is the principal basis of social community.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (d) Communalism is based on the idea the religion is the principal basis of social community.

**50.** Match the following items given in column A with those in Column B. Choose the correct answer from the options given below:

Column A	Column B
A. A form of guarantee against loan	1. Gomasthas
B. Supervise Weavers, collect supplies, and examine the quality of cloth	2. Shroffs and Chettairs

- 63.** Besides caste, which other factors do matter in electoral politics ? Explain.

**Ans :** SQP 2009

Besides caste, there are other factors which do matter in electoral politics.

- (1) The voters have strong attachment to political parties which is often stronger than their attachment to their caste or community.
- (2) People within the same community have different interests depending on their economic status. Rich and poor, men or women from the same caste often vote very differently.

- 64.** What are feminist movements ? Name any four social reformers who advocated and worked to establish a society in which caste inequalities are absent.

**Ans :** Foreign 2017

- (1) Feminist Movements : The movements which aimed at equality of men and women in all spheres of life.
- (2) Jotiba Phule, Gandhiji, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar and Periyar Ramaswami.

- 65.** What do you understand by the term 'Feminist movement' ? What were their main demands ?

**Ans :** Comp 2011

The movement which was started to grant equal status to women in the society is called Feminist movement :

Main demands of Feminist movement :

- (1) The movement lead by feminist demanded equal rights for women in all spheres of life.
- (2) As a result of the agitation led by feminist movement different countries extended the right to vote for women.
- (3) These movements also demanded for equal participation of women in career opportunities.

- 66.** What were Gandhiji's views about religion and politics ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, 2015

Gandhiji had very firm views about religion and politics. He often said that religion should never be separated from politics. But here his meaning of religion was not by any particular religion like Hinduism or Islam but the meaning of his religion was moral values which exist in all the religions. He was of the views that the ethics of all the religions should guide the politics and political system.

- 67.** "Unless women control power, their problems will not get adequate attention." How far do you agree with the above statement ?

**Ans :** OD 2012

Partly I agree with the above statement because 'democracy favours and believes in sharing of power and not controlling power by any particular gender or group.

I think women should get due share in power at all levels and capacity. Neither males or females should control power.

- 68.** Highlight the features of a secular state. On the basis of these features where do you place India ? Explain.

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

Following are the features of a secular state :

- (1) Secular state grants full freedom of practice of all religions, faiths and sects.
- (2) Such state keep itself secular or aloof in the matter of religion.

**Place of India :** India is a truly secular state. It believes and practises fully secularism. In India all citizens have full recognition, protection and religious freedom. They are provided equal opportunities to hold highest administrative or government posts.

- 69.** "Caste is not the only factor in determining the success of candidates in elections". Justify your answer by giving arguments.

**Ans :** OD 2008

It is a true that caste is not only factor in determining the success of candidates in election. The following points justify it :

- (1) Castes are scattered and not accumulated in majority in any states of India.
- (2) It is not necessary that all people in a caste are unenlightened. Some among them cast their votes in the nation's interest or for common good of all citizens.
70. Write any three steps taken by the government to improve the social status of women in the Indian society.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (1) Several programmes have been launched to promote women education in India.
- (2) Anti-dowry laws are being implemented strictly.
- (3) Female infanticide has been declared a criminal act. Strict laws were made against domestic violence against women.
- (4) Equal Wages Act has been made.
- (5) Under the Panchayati Raj system in India, one-third posts/seats in the Panchayats and Municipalities have been reserved for the women.
71. Explain with examples, the increasing role of women in public life.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (1) Women do all work inside the home such as cooking, cleaning, washing clothes, tailoring, looking after children etc.
- (2) In villages, women fetch water, collect fuel and work in the fields.
- (3) In urban areas, poor women work as domestic helper in middle class homes, while middle class women work in offices.
- (4) Now women are working as scientists, doctors, engineers, lawyers, managers and college and university teachers which were earlier not considered suitable for women.
72. How does the problem of communalism become more acute ?

**Ans :**

OD 2012

The problem of communalism become more acute in following ways :

- (1) When the people of various religions are treated differently.
- (2) When the demands of one religion are against the demands of the other religion, distrust among the people of other religion take place.
- (3) When the beliefs and ideology of one religion is shown to be superior over the beliefs and ideology of other religions.
- (4) Whenever state machinery used to show the domination of one particular religion against the others.

73. How have regional imbalances greatly affected Indian democracy ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2014

- Regional imbalances have greatly affected Indian democracy :
- (1) Regional imbalances create a psychological tension among the people of different regions. People belonging to various regions develop an attitude giving much stress on regional interests ignoring the national interest.
  - (2) Many political parties have been formed under the spell of regionalism. For example : D.M.K., A.I.A.D.M.K. and Akali Dal are regional politics parties:
  - (3) The voters cast their votes under the urge of regionalism. They do not caste their votes for national interests. Regionalism is posing a great threat to India's unity and it should spell out to save democracy.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

74. How did people belonging to different communities, regions or language groups develop a sense of collective belonging in the nineteenth century India? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

This sense of collective belonging came partly through the experience of united struggles. But there were also a variety of

cultural processes through which nationalism captured people's imagination.

- (1) History and fiction, folklore and songs, popular prints and symbols, all played a part in the making of nationalism.
  - (2) The identity of India came to be visually associated with the image of Bharat Mata, which was created in 1870 by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, who wrote ‘Vande Mataram’ as a hymn to the motherland. Inspired by the Swadeshi Movement, Abanindranath Tagore painted his famous image of Bharat Mata.
  - (3) The idea of nationalism was also developed through reviving Indian folklore. In late-nineteenth-century India, nationalists began recording folk tales sung by bards and they toured villages to gather folk songs and legends. This was done to promote the traditional culture that had been corrupted and damaged by outside forces.
75. “Our society is still a male dominated society.” Explain the statement with the help of examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

India is considered to be a patriarchal society.

- (1) Political participation of women in India is very less when compared to other countries. Only 10% of the total members in the Lok Sabha are women. The situation is worse in State Assemblies where only 5% of the total members are women. The Women reservation bill to encourage the participation of women is still pending since the past decade.
- (2) Women have entered, into every field but they are still paid less than their male counter parts. Proportion of women in highly paid jobs is still less and studies have shown that on an average they work more than men and yet are paid less. Although the Equal Remuneration Act provides provisions for equal wages to be paid for equal work.

(3) The literacy rate amongst women is also low when compared to men. Literacy rate is only 54% as compared to 76% among men. This shows the discrimination women have to face. Men are still considered to be the head of the family. A lot of dowry issues still emerge everywhere. Men are known to dominate women in every field using strength as a factor. Women are made to stay quiet even in cases of rapes, betrayal etc.

76. Discuss any three factors responsible for poor and miserable conditions of women in India.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2010

The following factors are responsible for poor and miserable conditions of women in India :

- (1) Illiteracy : This social evil is responsible for great extent for poor and miserable conditions of Indian women. Even today (after the independence of 62 years) the female illiteracy rate in our country is 54% only.
- (2) Sexual division of labour : Due to sexual division of labour, the women have been restricted to the four walls of the house and men have taken hold of the public life. Women are still far away from high pay and upper labour jobs or their number is very less in such jobs.
- (3) Lack of representation in politics : Even after constituting half of the country's population, women have low or negligible representation in the legislature (Indian Parliament or State Assemblies).

77. How far is it correct to say that it is not politics that gets caste ridden, but it is the caste that gets politicised? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

It is correct to say that it is not politics that gets caste ridden, but it is the caste that gets politicised. Caste can take various forms in politics.

- (1) Each caste group tries to become bigger by incorporating within it neighbouring castes or sub-castes which were earlier excluded from it.

- 55.** What do you mean by the term social equality?

or

Briefly mention the meaning of social equality.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

Meaning of the term social equality : Social equality refers no discrimination in society based on gender or caste or religion or on colour etc. All human being-male or female, people of all religions and faiths or sects as well as the people of low and upper castes or having white colour or black colour should be treated equally in society as well as before the law of the country.

- 56.** What do you mean by the term 'gender division'?

**Ans :**

SQP 2011, 2008

Meaning of the term Gender Division :A state (or situation) in which women feel injustice is done against them in allocation of work, chores, participation, contribution, opportunities and in distribution of wealth and property vis-a-vis men as a whole. When they feel themselves deserted, dominated, intimidated and humiliated.

- 57.** Which are the causes of communalism ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

Causes of communalism :

- (1) Religion is taken as the basis of the nation
- (2) When one religion is discriminated against other.
- (3) Demands of one religious group are formed in opposition to another.

- 58.** What does the concept sexual division of labour signifies ?

**Ans :**

OD 2017, SQP 2011

Sexual division of labour signifies that:

- (1) Gender division emphasis division on the basis of nature of work.
- (2) Division between men and women.

- 59.** Distinguish between social inequality and economic inequality by giving relevant examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (1) The social inequality is based on casteism.

In such a society, the people belonging to the higher caste exploit the people of lower castes.

- (2) The economic inequality in the society means that some people in the society are very

- 60.** Suggest some way to create communal harmony among various communities of India.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

The one way to create communal harmony among various communities of India are given below :

- (1) To show respect to the religion of others.
- (2) To prevent activities that exploits the right of other communities.
- (3) To celebrate all religious functions together.
- (4) To make others aware about the need for paying respect to the religion and social practices of people belonging to different faiths. [Any one]

- 61.** Why constitution framers wanted to make India a 'Secular State' ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, Delhi 2012

Constitution framers wanted to make India a secular state because of the fear of communalism. Many religions live here in India and they wanted that no religion should be given more importance than others. Equal importance should be given to all so that no communal riots could occur in the society.

- 62.** Why does Kerala have a lowest Infant Mortality Rate?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, 2010

The success of different programmes like neonatal resuscitation programme which is a training programme given to nurses and doctors on taking care of new borns has helped Kerala to record the lowest Infant Mortality Rate.

This strengthens the basic structure of democracy.

- (3) New groups : New kinds of caste groups have come up in the political arena like 'backward' and 'forward' caste system.
81. Mention any three provisions of the Indian Constitution which makes it a secular state.

Ans :

Foreign 2013

- (1) No official religion : There is no official religion of the Indian state. Unlike the status of Buddhism in Sri Lanka, Islam in Pakistan and Hinduism in Nepal, our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion.
- (2) Fundamental Rights : Under the Right to Freedom of Religion, our Constitution provides to all citizens freedom to profess, practise and propagate any religion, or not to follow any. Under the Cultural and Educational Right, our Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion.
- (3) Equality : The constitution allows the state to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities. To ensure equality, untouchability has been banned.

82. How gender equality was achieved by women?

Ans :

OD 2012

Women had very little role to play in public life in earlier times. But slowly and slowly gender issue was raised in politics.

- (1) Women started to organize themselves in different parts of the world and demanded equal rights.
- (2) They agitated to get right to vote for women.
- (3) They organized movements so that more and more legal, educational and career opportunities could be given to them. Many great men also raised their voice for women.
- (4) Many radical feminist movements were also started to achieve gender equality. With the help of all these activities women were able to achieve gender equality.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

83. 'Communalism can take various forms in politics.' Explain.

Ans :

OD 2020

Communalism can take various forms in politics are discussed below :

- (1) When religious beliefs of a person involve prejudices and stereotypes, claiming one religion's ideas to be superior to another.
- (2) When a majority community tries to establish its domination over the other communities with the help of the state. Minority communities under such circumstances, retaliates by demanding the formation of separate state for them. Political mobilisation on religious lines occurs when religious symbols and leaders make an emotional appeal to the people in order to bring the members of a particular community together.
- (3) Communal violence is the worst form of communalism. It acquires the political form when it is sponsored by the state.
- (4) Political mobilisation on religious lines is another frequent form of communalism. This involves the use of sacred symbols, religious leaders, emotional appeal and plain fear in order to bring the followers of one religion together in the political arena.
- (5) In a democracy, communalism may take the form when the majoritarian community starts believing in the superiority of their religion and ignores the wishes of the minorities.

84. "In India, women still lag behind men despite some improvement since Independence." Support the statement with examples.

Ans :

Delhi 2019, OD 2019

In our country, women still lag much behind men despite some improvements since Independence. Women face disadvantage, discrimination and oppression in various ways :

(2) Various caste groups are required to enter into a coalition with other castes or communities and thus enter into a dialogue and negotiation.

(3) New kinds of caste groups have come up in the political arena like 'backward' and 'forward' caste groups.

Caste plays different kinds of roles in politics. In some cases, politics gives many disadvantaged communities the opportunity to demand their share of power. Politics has helped people from OBCs and Dalits castes to gain better access to decision-making. But sometimes exclusive attention to caste can produce negative results like tension, conflicts and violence in our society.

- 78.** What is communal politics ? Explain the idea behind the communal politics.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

The use of religion in politics, where one religion is shown as superior to other religions is called communal politics. Here, one religious group is against the other religious group and the demands of one religious group are against the demands of the other religious group.

Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the basis of forming a community. It believes that followers of a one religion belong to the same community. Their interest, ideas and opinions are the same. It also follows that people belonging to different religions cannot be a part of the same community. Their ideas and demands are bound to be different.

In an extreme case of communalism, it follows that people from different religions are not equal citizens and cannot live together within one nation, which leads to partition of that country.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 79.** What is the difference between gender division and religious differences ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

	<b>Gender division</b>	<b>Religious differences</b>
1.	It is a universal difference.	It is only fairly wide-spread in the world today.
2.	It is not expressed in the field of politics. This expression of social division in the arena of politics is positive.	Religious differences are often expressed in the field of politics. Here, religious difference takes the form of a negative expression.
3.	Political expression of gender division and its political mobilisation has helped to improve women's role in public life.	Political mobilisation in religious lines is a form of communalism involving the use of emotional appeal and plain fear in order to bring the followers of one religion together in the political arena.

- 80.** 'Politics too influences the caste system'. Explain the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010, 2007

Politics too influences the caste system and caste identities by bringing them into the political arena. Thus, it is not the politics that get caste-ridden, it is the caste that get politicised. Politics in caste normally takes the following forms :

- (1) Wide base : Each caste tries to widen its base to gain majority. Each caste group tries to become bigger by incorporating within it the neighbouring castes or sub-castes which were earlier excluded from it.
- (2) Coalition : Various caste groups are required to enter into a coalition with other castes or communities, and thus enter into a dialogue and negotiation.

- (4) Political mobilisation on religious lines is another frequent form of communalism. This involves the use of sacred symbols, religious leaders, emotional appeal and plain fear in order to bring the followers of one religion together in the political arena.
- (5) Sometimes, communalism takes its most ugly form of communal violence, riots and massacre.

The makers of our Constitution were aware of this challenge. That is why they chose the model of a secular state. This choice was reflected in several constitutional provisions like :

- (1) There is no official religion for the Indian state.
- (2) The Constitution provides to all individuals and communities freedom to profess, practice and propagate any religion, or not to follow any.
- (3) The Constitution prohibits discrimination on grounds of religion.
- (4) At the same time, the Constitution allows the state to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities.

- 87.** “Three factors are crucial in deciding the outcome of politics of social divisions.” Elaborate upon the statement.

**Ans :**

SOP 2018

Three factors determining the outcome of politics of social divisions are:

- (1) How people perceive their identities. If people see their identities in single and exclusive terms, it becomes difficult to accommodate. As long as people in Northern Ireland saw themselves as only Catholic or Protestant, their differences were difficult to reconcile. It is easier if identities are complimentary with the national identity. This helps to stay together. This is how most people in our country see their identity. They feel and think as Indians as well as belonging to a state or a language group or a social or religious group.

- (2) How political leaders raise demands of any community. It is easier to accommodate demands that are within the constitutional framework and are not at the cost of another community. The demand for ‘only Sinhala’ was at the cost of the interest and identity of the Tamil community in Sri Lanka.
- (3) How Government reacts to demands of different groups. If the rulers are willing to share power and accommodate the reasonable demands of minority community, as in Belgium, social divisions become less threatening for the country. But if the demand is suppressed in the name of national unity, as in Sri Lanka, the end result is quite opposite. Such attempts at forced integration sow the seeds of disintegration.

- 88.** Women face disadvantage, discrimination and oppression in various ways even today. Assess the statement by giving five suitable arguments.

**Ans :**

SOP 2018

- (1) The literacy rate among women is only 54 per cent compared with 76 percent among men. Similarly, a smaller proportion of girl students go for higher studies. Many of them drop out because parents prefer to spend their resources for their boys’ education.
- (2) The proportion of women among the highly paid and valued jobs is still very small. On an average an Indian woman works one hour more than an average man every day. Yet much of her work is not paid and therefore often not valued.
- (3) The Equal Wages Act provides that equal wages should be paid to equal work. However, in almost all areas of work, from sports and cinema, to factories and fields, women are paid less than men, even when both do exactly the same work.
- (4) In many parts of India parents prefer to have sons and find ways to have the girl child aborted before she is born. Such sex-selective abortion led to a decline in child sex ratio.

- (5) Women are not safe even within their own home from beating, harassment and other forms of domestic violence.
89. Is caste system coming to an end ? Write your views.

or

Explain the factors that have led to the weakening of the caste system in India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (1) The Constitution of India prohibited any caste-based discrimination and laid the foundations of policies to reverse the injustices of the caste system. Yet caste has not disappeared from contemporary India. Some of the older aspects of caste have persisted. Even now most people marry within their own caste or tribe.
  - (2) No parliamentary constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste. So, every candidate and party needs to win the confidence of more than one caste and community to win elections.
  - (3) The voters have strong attachment to political parties which is often stronger than their attachment to their caste or community.
  - (4) People within the same caste or community have different interests depending on their economic condition. Rich and poor or men and women from the same caste often vote very differently.
  - (5) People's assessment of the performance of the government and the popularity rating of the leaders matter and are often decisive in election.
90. Describe the positive and negative aspects of relationship between caste and politics.

or

Highlight the positive and negative impact of casteism with regard to political expression.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017, 2014

- (1) Positive changes/Advantages
  - (i) Caste-politics has helped people from Dalits and OBCs to gain better access to decision-making.

(ii) Now people are making voice for the end of discrimination based on caste lines.

(iii) They are now asking for more dignity and more access to land and other resources and opportunities.

- (2) Negative changes/Disadvantages

- (i) Some political parties are known to favour some castes and are seen as their representatives. Sometimes, it promotes social differences.
- (ii) It can also divert attention from other pressing issues like poverty, development and corruption.
- (iii) Sometimes, it also disrupts social harmony.

91. How religion can be used in politics in a positive manner ? Express your viewpoint.

or

Can religion be used positively in politics ? Support your answer with arguments.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (1) Unlike gender differences, the religious differences are often expressed in the field of politics.
- (2) Politics must be guided by ethics drawn from religion. Gandhi used to say that religion can never be separated from politics and he meant by religion was moral values that inform all religions.
- (3) Ideas, ideals and values drawn from different religions can ..-nd perhaps should play a role in politics. People should be able to express in politics their needs, interests and demands as a member of a religious community.
- (4) Political power should, sometimes, be able to regulate the practice of religion so as to prevent discrimination and oppression.
- (5) The political acts are not wrong as long as they treat every religion equally.

92. How does communalism threaten the Indian Democracy ? Explain.

or

Communalism will weaken India's unity. Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- (1) Communalism involves religious prejudices, stereotypes of religious communities and belief in the superiority of one's religion over other religions.
- (2) A communal mind often leads to a quest for political dominance of one's own religious community.
- (3) Political mobilisation on religious lines is another frequent form of communalism. In electoral politics, this often involves special appeal to the interests or emotions of voters of one religion in preference to others.
- (4) Sometimes communalism in India takes its most ugly form of communal violence, riots and massacre.
- (5) Communal prejudices and propaganda need to be countered in everyday life and religion based mobilisation needs to be countered in the arena of politics.

**93.** Explain the status of women's representation in India's legislative bodies.

or

Assess the status of women's representation in India's legislative bodies.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, 2010

- (1) Central Legislature : Less than 10% of its total strength are women.
- (2) State Legislature : Less than 5% of its total strength are women.
- (3) Panchayati Raj : 1/3 of the seats are reserved for women.
- (4) India is among the bottom group of nations in the world, in this respect.
- (5) Women's organizations and activists have been demanding a similar reservation of at least 1/3 of seats in the Lok Sabha and State Assemblies. But, the bill to this effect, has not been passed.
- (6) In many parts of India, parents prefer to have sons and find ways to have the girl child aborted before her birth.
- (7) Decline in sex ratio : It is because, preference is given to male child. A girl is considered as a burden. The present sex

ratio is 914 (as per 2011 census) females per thousand males.

**94.** "It is not politics that gets caste hidden it is the caste that gets politicized." Comments.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

In India politics do not ride on casteism but in reality casteism dominate politics. It means casteism is more harmful than political system. We can give the following arguments:

- (1) There are certain pressure groups which are totally based on respective caste and they work and take political decisions only keeping in view in favour and interest of their own class-fellows. 455
- (2) There are certain political parties which are mainly supported by certain caste only. For example in Tamil Nadu AIADMK is mainly a political party of Brahmins while the DMK is political party of non-Brahmins. Similarly Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP) is consider a political party of Dalits mainly.
- (3) All political parties choose their candidates to contest election keeping in view the total number of voters of caste.
- (4) Voters cast their votes keeping in mind their own caste.
- (5) Even ministers are appointed on the basis of caste.

**95.** What is sexual division of labour ? Mention the political demand of the worldwide women's agitations.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (1) Sexual division of labour is a system in which all work inside the home is either done by the women of the family, or organised by them through the domestic helpers.
- (2) (i) Gradually the gender issue was raised in politics. Women in different parts of the world organised and agitated for equal rights.
- (ii) There were agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women.

- (1) The literacy rate among women is only 54 per cent as compared with 76 per cent among men.
- (2) Similarly, a smaller proportion of girl students go for higher studies. Girls are performing as well as boys in school. But they drop out because parents prefer to spend their resources for their boys education rather than spending equally on their sons and daughters.
- (3) The proportion of women among the highly paid and valued jobs is still very small. On an average an Indian women works one hour more than an average man everyday.
- (4) The Equal Wages Act provides that equal wages should be paid for equal work. However in almost all areas of work, from sports and cinema, to factories and fields, women are paid less than men, even when both do exactly the same work.
- (5) In many parts of India, parents prefer to have sons and find ways to have the girl child aborted before she is born. Such sex selective abortion led to a decline in child sex ratio.
- (6) The political representation of women is very poor. A very small percentage of women in India has political participation and representation. There are reports of various kinds of harassment, exploitation and violence against women. Urban areas are increasingly becoming unsafe for women.
- (7) Women face harassment, exploitation and violence on the domestic front.
- 85.** “Caste can take various forms in Politics.” Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2020 , 2016

Caste is the sole basis of social community. It can take various forms in politics due to following reasons :

(1) Selection of Candidates in Politics : When parties choose candidates in elections, they keep in mind the caste composition of the electorate and nominate candidates from different castes so as to muster

- necessary support to win elections. When governments are formed, political parties usually take care that representatives of different castes and tribes find a place in it.
- (2) Political Parties as the Representatives of Caste : Political parties and candidates in elections make appeals to caste sentiments to muster support. Some political parties are known to favour some castes and are seen as their representatives, e.g., BSP in India.
- (3) Caste influences Universal Adult Franchise : Universal adult franchise and the principle of one- person one-vote compelled political leaders to gear up to the task of mobilising and securing political support. It also brought new consciousness among the people of different castes that were hitherto treated as inferior and low.
- (4) Various caste groups are required to enter into a coalition with other castes or communities and thus enter into a dialogue and negotiation.
- (5) New kinds of caste groups have come up in the political arena like “backward” and “forward caste groups.”
- 86.** Mention any three forms in which communalism is expressed in politics. Describe the solution provided by the Constitution framers of India to meet this challenge?
- Ans :** SQP 2019
- Communalism can take various forms in politics :
- (1) The routinely beliefs involve religious prejudices, stereotypes of religious communities and belief in the superiority of one’s religion over other religions.
  - (2) A communal mind often leads to a quest for political dominance of one’s own religious community.
  - (3) For those belonging to majority community, this takes the form of majoritarian dominance. For those belonging to the minority community, it can take the form of a desire to form a separate political unit.

Political party follow the vote politics. Some party may favour the people of upper caste or some parties may favour the people of so-called Other Backward Castes (OBC) or Dalit. Similarly in United States of America, Republican may favour the Blacks and the Democrats may favour Blacks as well as migrants or in certain states Whites only. In democracy people prefer to caste their vote to people of different communities or castes or colours.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

98. Due to the socio-economic changes caste system in modern India has undergone many changes. Explain.

or

Mention any five socio-economic changes responsible for breaking down the old notion of caste hierarchy in India.

Ans : Delhi 2012

- (1) With economic development, large scale urbanisation, growth of literacy and education, occupational mobility, the weakening of the position of landlords in villages and the disappearing old notions of caste hierarchy have brought a great change in the caste system.
- (2) Urbanisation attracted people towards cities. The conditions in the cities do not permit them to follow their caste related practices like untouchability, etc. They have to work together, live together, eat together breaking their caste barriers.
- (3) Youths living in the cities, in many cases go for inter-caste marriages. It has also weakened the caste-systems. The credit also goes to modern education in the cities.
- (4) New generation is now exploiting new opportunities. They are leaving their traditional occupations.
- (5) The 'caste hierarchy' has now become irrelevant. The persons are now valued by their skills and abilities and not by their caste.

99. How is gender division understood in Indian society ? To what extent does the political mobilization on this question help to improve women's role in public life ?

or

How is gender division understood in Indian society? How does political mobilization of women on this question help to improve women's role in public life ?

Ans :

SQP 2016

- (1) (i) In India, gender division is based on social expectations and stereotypes. In most families, women are expected to do all works inside the home such as cooking, cleaning, washing clothes, tailoring, looking after children, etc.  
 (ii) In villages women fetch water, collect fuel and work in fields. In urban areas, poor women work as domestic help.  
 (iii) The middle class women in urban areas do some sort of jobs but their work is not valued and does not get recognition.
- (2) Political mobilization on this question helped to improve women's role in public life.  
 (i) Now women work as scientists, doctors, engineers, lawyers, managers and college and university teachers which were earlier not considered suitable for them.  
 (ii) Despite some improvements, ours is still a male dominated patriarchal society. Women still face disadvantage, discrimination and oppression in various ways.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

100. Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

*How many languages do we have in India ?  
The answer depends on how one counts it.  
The latest information that we have is from  
the Census of India held in 2011. This census  
recorded more than 1300 distinct languages*

- (iii) These agitations demanded enhancing the political and legal status of women and improving their educational and career opportunities.
- (iv) More radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well.
- (v) Women's movement has argued that family laws of all religions discriminate against women. So, they have demanded that government should change these laws to make them more equitable.
- 96.** How has casteism affected the Indian democratic system ? Suggest some methods to eradicate the evil effects of casteism.

or

Evaluate the impact of caste-system on Indian democracy.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

Casteism : Casteism has not only disturbed the amity of Hindu community it has also affected Indian politics. During the British period the government itself had tried to create rift between various communities and castes. After independence, two contradictory developments have taken place. The Constitution has established equality of all people, but high caste Hindu tried to dominate the politics. Casteism has become an integral part of Indian politics. Caste plays an important role in the elections.

Effects of Casteism on Democracy :

- (1) Democracy in India is getting support from casteism : Political parties which strengthen democracy are based on caste groups. Caste is a factor in putting up candidates for election, appointing ministers and other decision..
- (2) National interests are ignored : Caste considerations are determining policies and decisions on the national level. Caste interest gets priority and national interests are ignored.
- (3) Casteism creates suspicion and hatred : Various caste groups are now hating and suspecting each other. This creates

tension and enmity. They are organising themselves on caste basis to snatch more-and-more privileges in political, social and economic fields. There is overtension which often erupts into violence.

- (4) Casteism encourages violence : Casteism has led to violence and extremism in Indian politics. There are clashes between the Brahmins and Sudras, the Shias and the Sunnis, thus weakening the foundation of democracy. Elections on the basis of caste must be removed to make democracy successful in India.

Methods to eradicate the evils of Caste System :

- (1) The names of educational institutions referring to castes should be given up.
- (2) All the political parties should decide to discourage casteism.
- (3) The political parties based on casteism should be removed from the political horizon.

- 97.** With the help of two examples explain how social divisions have affected politics.

**Ans :**

OD 2010, 2007

Social divisions of one kind or another exist in most countries. It does not matter whether the countries are small or big. India is a vast country with many communities. Belgium is a small country. Social divisions have always affected politics of countries. We can give the following examples to explain the statement :

- (1) Social divisions takes place when some social differences overlap with other differences. The difference between the Blacks and Whites becomes a social division in the United States, because the Blacks tend to be poor, homeless and discriminated against the Whites.
- (2) In India, Dalit (or Damit) tend to be poor and landless. They, generally, face discrimination and injustice. Situations of this type produce social division. One type of social difference becomes more important than the other and people start feeling that they belong to different community.

**Ans :**

1. When state power is used to establish domination of one religious group over the rest of the groups and the demands of one religious group are formed in opposition to another, communalism happens at that time.
  2. If the followers of different religions have some communalities then, these will be superficial and immaterial from the stand point of communalism. Their interests should be different according to the believers of communal politics.
  3. Communal politics is able to suppress many voices within the same community when people of same religion do not have the same interests and aspirations and any attempt is made to bring all followers of same religion together.
- 102.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Boys and girls are brought up to believe that the main responsibility of women is housework and bringing up children. This is reflected in a Sexual Division of Labour in most families; women do all work inside the home such as cooking, cleaning, washing clothes, tailoring, looking after children, etc., and men do all the work outside the home. It is not that men cannot do housework; they simply think that it is for women to attend to these things. When these jobs are paid for, men are ready to take up these works, Most tailors or cooks in hotels are men. Similarly, it is not that women do not work outside their home. In villages, women fetch water, collect fuel and work in fields. In urban areas, poor women work as domestic helper in middle class homes, while middle class women work in offices. In fact the majority of women do some sort of paid work in addition to domestic labour. But their work is not valued and does not get recognition.*

**Questions :**

1. “Our society is still male-dominated patriarchal society”. Give an example to support the statement.
2. Mention any one feature of a patriarchal society.

3. How does the Indian Constitution ensure equal representation for women?

**Ans :**

1. In India, the literacy rate among women is only 54% compared to 76% among men. A smaller proportion of girl students go for higher education. This is because parents prefer to spend their resources for their boys' education rather than spending equally on their sons and daughters.
  2. In many parts of India, parents prefer to have sons and find ways to have the girl child aborted before she is born. Such sex-selective abortion is an example of patriarchal society.
- (iii)(a) The Equal Wages Act provides that equal wages should be paid to equal work.
- (b) One-third of seats in local government bodies - in panchayats and municipalities are reserved for women.

- 103.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*The Census of India records the religion of each and every Indian after every ten years. The person who fills the Census form visits every household and records the religion of each member of that household exactly the way each person describes it. If someone says she has ‘no religion’ or that he is an ‘atheist’, this is exactly how it is recorded. Thus we have reliable information on the proportion of different religious communities in the country and how it has changed over the years. The pie chart below presents the population proportion of six major religious communities in the country. Since Independence, the total population of each community has increased substantially but their proportion in the country’s population has not changed much. In percentage terms, the population of the Hindus, Jains and Christians has declined marginally since 1961. The proportion of Muslim, Sikh and Buddhist population has increased slightly. There is a common but*

which people mentioned as their mother tongues. These languages were grouped together under some major languages. For example languages like Bhojpuri, Magadhi, Bundelkhandi, Chhattisgarhi, Rajasthani and many others were grouped together under 'Hindi'. Even after this grouping, the Census found 121 major languages. Of these 22 languages are now included in the Eighth Schedule of the Indian Constitution and are therefore called 'Scheduled Languages'. Others are called 'Non-Scheduled Languages'. In terms of languages, India is perhaps the most diverse country in the world.

#### **Questions :**

1. Explain the importance of language diversity in India.
2. Differentiate between Scheduled and Non-Scheduled Languages.
3. The fusion of languages has united the country into one cultural entity.' Explain the statement with an example.

**Ans :**

1. Language diversity is very important in India because it reflects the country's rich cultural and social heritage.
  2. (a) Scheduled Languages are those 22 languages which are included in the Eight Schedule of the Indian Constitution.  
(b) Non-Scheduled Languages are those 99 languages which are not included in the Eight Schedule of the Indian Constitution.
  3. It means that India's diverse languages and cultures have merged to form a shared sense of national identity.<br />For example, the Indian Army developed the Camp language. Bollywood films are renowned for incorporating a variety of musical and linguistic styles.
- 101.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.
- Communalism becomes more acute when religion is expressed in politics in exclusive and partisan terms, when one religion and its followers are pitted against another.*

*This happens when beliefs of one religion are presented as superior to those of other religions, when the demands of one religious group are formed in opposition to another and when state power is used to establish domination of one religious group over the rest. This manner of using religion in politics is communal politics.*

*Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the principal basis of social community. Communalism involves thinking along the following lines. The followers of a particular religion must belong to one community. Their fundamental interests are the same. Any difference that they may have is irrelevant or trivial for community life. It also follows that people who follow different religions cannot belong to the same social community. If the followers of different religion have some commonalities these are superficial and immaterial. Their interests are bound to be different and involve a conflict. In its extreme form communalism leads to the belief that people belonging to different religions cannot live as equal citizens within one nation.*

*Either, one of them has to dominate the rest or they have to form different Nations.*

*This belief is fundamentally flawed. People of one religion do not have the same interests and aspirations in every context. Everyone has several other roles, positions and identities. There are many voices inside every community. All these voices have a right to be heard. Therefore, any attempt to bring all followers of one religion together in context other than religion is bound to suppress many voices within that community.*

#### **Questions :**

1. State the circumstances due to which communalism happen in our society
2. What are the consequences faced when the followers of different religion have some communalities?
3. When does a communal politics is able to suppress many voices within same community?

*generation to another. Caste system is an extreme form of this. This system, hereditary occupational division was sanctioned by rituals. Members of the same caste group were supposed to form a social community that practiced the same or similar occupation, married within the caste group and did not eat with members from other caste groups.*

*Caste system was based on exclusion of and discrimination against the ‘outcaste’ groups. They were subjected to the inhuman practice of untouchability. That is why political leaders and social reformers like Jotiba Phule, Gandhiji, B.R. Ambedkar and Periyar Ramaswami Naicker advocated and worked to establish a society in which caste inequalities are absent. Partly due to their efforts and partly due to other socio-economic changes, castes and caste system in modern India have undergone great changes.*

**Questions :**

1. What is the basic principle of secular state?
2. What is Caste system?
3. Write some important name of political leaders and social reformers.

**Ans :**

1. The basic principle of secular state is that there is no official religion for the Indian state.
2. Caste system is an expression of social division on the basis of caste. In this system, hereditary occupational division was sanctioned by rituals.
3. The political leaders and social reformers like Jotiba Phule, Gandhiji, B.R. Ambedkar and Periyar Ramaswami Naicker advocated and worked to establish a society in which caste inequalities are absent.

- 106.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*Boys and girls are brought up to believe that the main responsibility of women is housework and bringing up children. This is reflected in a SEXUAL DIVISION OF LABOUR in most*

*families: women do all work inside the home such as cooking, cleaning, washing clothes, tailoring, looking after children, etc., and men do all the work outside the home. It is not that men cannot do housework; they simply think that it is for women to attend to these things. When these jobs are paid for, men are ready to take up these works. Most tailors or cooks in hotels are men. Similarly, it is not that women do not work outside their home. In villages, women fetch water, collect fuel and work in the fields. In urban areas, poor women work as domestic helper in middle class homes, while middle class women work in offices. In fact the majority of women do some sort of paid work in addition to domestic labour. But their work is not valued and does not get recognition. The result of this division of labour is that although women constitute half of the humanity, their role in public life, especially politics, is minimal in most societies. Earlier, only men were allowed to participate in public affairs, vote and contest for public offices. Gradually the gender issue was raised in politics. Women in different parts of the world organised and agitated for equal rights. There were agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women. These agitations demanded enhancing the political and legal status of women and improving their educational and career opportunities. More radical women’s movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well. These movements are called FEMINIST movements.*

**Questions :**

1. Give an example of sexual division of labour in most families.
2. What will be the resultant of division of labour especially on the women?
3. What is feminist movement?

**Ans :**

1. An example of sexual division of labour in most families- women do all work inside the home such as cooking, cleaning, washing clothes, tailoring, looking after children, etc., and men do all the work outside the home.

2. The women constitute half of the humanity and if they are discriminated on the basis of gender then half of the legitimate population will be destitute.
3. (i) Women in different parts of the world organised and agitated for equal rights. There were agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women.  
(ii) These agitations demanded enhancing the political and legal status of women and improving their educational and career opportunities.  
(iii) More radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life as well. These movements are called FEMINIST movements.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- ***Word File of Material for Teachers***

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 14

## POLITICAL PARTIES

### SUMMARY

1. Political Party : A group of persons who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government.
2. Partisan : Supporter of any party group or fraction of the society.
3. Ruling Party : Political party that runs government.
4. Defection : To join political party other than one's own till then rival.
5. Politics : The policies involved in getting and using power in public life and being able to influence decisions that affect a country or a society.
6. Opposition : The main political party that is opposed to the government viz. parties in parliament but are not part of the government.
7. National Party : Political party which have secured not less than 4% of the total valid votes in four states in course of the previous general elections held.
8. State or Regional Party : Parties whose influence is upon federal units or states.
9. Recognised Political Parties : Parties listed by Election Commission of India.
10. Election Commission : It is an independent multi-member body which is constituted for the superintendence, direction and conduct of free and fair elections.
11. Affidavit : It is a signed judicial document submitted to election officer, where a contestant makes a sworn statement regarding his/her personal information.
12. One-Party/Mono-Party System : “Mono-party system” means a system in which only one party operates in the political system for various reasons. In this system there is no opposition e.g., China.

13. Two-Party or Bi-Party System : A political system where there are two major parties. In this system power usually changes between two main parties, e.g., United Kingdom and United States of America.
14. Multi-Party System : It is a political system where more than two parties exist and contest elections to come to power.  
Alliance : A political condition in multi-party system when several parties join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and acquiring power.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which one of the following countries have One Party System?
  - (a) China
  - (b) India
  - (c) Pakistan
  - (d) America

Ans :

OD 2023

- (a) China

2. A party that secures at least 6% of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a State and wins at least two seats is recognised as a
  - (a) Political party
  - (b) State Party
  - (c) National Party
  - (d) Regional Party

Ans :

Comp 2023

- (b) State Party

3. Which is the essential element of a political party?
- Organisation
  - National interest
  - Fundamental principles
  - All of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2020

- (d) All of the above

4. Choose the wrong statement about political party.
- Political party contests election.
  - Political party acts as an opposition party.
  - Political party does not make law.
  - None of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (c) Political party does not make law.

5. Which is not the component of a political party?
- The leaders
  - The followers
  - The active members
  - The ministers

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (d) The ministers

6. How many national parties are there in India.?
- |        |        |
|--------|--------|
| (a) 10 | (b) 12 |
| (c) 07 | (d) 20 |

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (c) 07

7. Which is not a function of political party?
- To contest election
  - Faith in violent methods
  - Political education to the people
  - Form public opinion

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (b) Faith in violent methods

8. Following Caricature about political parties of India portrays that:



- We have very large political parties base compared to any other country in the world.
- Political parties can have different opinions based upon different interest Groups.
- Most political parties have detailed agenda for development and progress during elections time but disappear during time of peril.
- In democracy, having large population all the promises written in party manifesto can't be fulfilled.

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- Most political parties have detailed agenda for development and progress during elections time but disappear during time of peril.

9. Identify the political party which have:

- Presence in Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur, West Bengal and Tripura
- In General Election 2019 got 4.09% vote share
- Was 4th largest party in Lok Sabha 2019
- Recognised as a national party in 2016

**Option :**

- Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)
- Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)
- Rashtriya Janata Dal (RJD)
- All India Trinmool Congress

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (d) All India Trinmool Congress

10. Arrange the following National Political parties in the correct sequence of their foundation year:

1. Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP)
2. Bhartiya Janta Party
3. Indian National Congress
4. Communist Party of India-Marxist (CPI-M)

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (c) 3, 4, 2, 1

11. .... is an organised group of person who come together to contest election and try to hold power in government.

- (a) Political party
- (b) Democracy
- (c) Parliament
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (a) Political party

12. Complete the given table with correct information:

Party	Symbol	Influences
Regional Party	A- ?	Particular region only
National Party	It has a permanent symbol. Can not be changed.	B - ?

**Option :**

- (a) A - Entire nation, B - It can be changed and repeated in another state
- (b) A - It can be changed and repeated in another state, B - It can be changed and repeated in another state
- (c) A - Entire nation, B - Entire nation
- (d) A - It can be changed and repeated in another state, B - Entire nation

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (d) A - It can be changed and repeated in another state, B - Entire nation

13. How many political parties are in India (approximately)?

- (a) 200
- (b) 750
- (c) 500
- (d) 650

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

- (b) 750

14. Under which system, only one-party is allowed to function?

- (a) Single-party system
- (b) Bi-Party system
- (c) Multi-party system
- (d) None of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012, 2008

- (a) Single-party system

15. Elephant is the election symbol of

- (a) Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP)
- (b) Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)
- (c) Indian National Congress (INC)
- (d) Rashtriya Janata Dal (RJD)

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (a) Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP)

16. Following Picture of Protest suggest that:



- (a) Everyone has the right to protest in democracy.

- (b) All such protests shall not be allowed as they are politically motivated.

- (c) Protests like this have no place in Democratic country like India.

- (d) These protests create very big challenges for the law and order and hence shall not be permitted.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2006

- (a) Everyone has the right to protest in democracy.

- 17.** Bhartiya Jana Sangh is the mother party of  
 (a) Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)  
 (b) Indian National Congress (INC)  
 (c) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)  
 (d) Samajwadi Party (SP)

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (a) Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)

- 18.** Identify the person who was :

- Prime minister of Italy and a top Businessmen
- Leader of Forza Italia
- Owns a bank and Football Club
- Owner of TV channels

**Option :**

- (a) Victor Emmanuel II  
 (b) Berlusconi  
 (c) Count Cavour  
 (d) Giuseppe Garibaldi

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2013

- (b) Berlusconi

- 19.** Bahujan Samaj Party stands for the cause of  
 (a) interest of literate  
 (b) interest of oppressed people  
 (c) interest of elite class  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (b) interest of oppressed people

- 20.** Which of the following is a regional party?  
 (a) Bhartiya Janta Party (BJP)  
 (b) Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP)  
 (c) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)  
 (d) Communist Party of India (Marxist) CPI

**Ans :**

SOP 2019

- (c) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)

- 21.** Arrange the following states according to the number of regional Political parties (as on January 2007) in the correct sequence:

1. Jammu Kashmir
2. Uttar Pradesh

3. Rajasthan

4. Sikkim

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3  
 (b) 2, 3, 4, 1  
 (c) 3, 2, 1, 4  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

- (a) 1, 2, 4, 3

- 22.** Political parties can be reformed by  
 (a) reducing the role of muscle power  
 (b) reducing the role of money  
 (c) state funding of election  
 (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

- (d) All of the above

- 23.** Name the party that emerged out of mass movement.

- (a) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)  
 (b) Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP)  
 (c) Rashtriya Janata Dal (RJD)  
 (d) Janta Dal

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (a) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)

- 24.** Lack of Internal democracy is the challenge faced by  
 (a) national party  
 (b) regional party  
 (c) political party  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (c) political party

- 25.** A political party is an association of:  
 (a) people  
 (b) children  
 (c) parties  
 (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (a) people

- 26.** The clearly visible institutions of a democracy are:  
 (a) people

- (b) societies
- (c) political parties
- (d) pressure groups

**Ans :**

SOP 2010, 2007

(c) political parties

27. Without the political parties, the utility of the government will remain:

- (a) uncertain
- (b) powerful
- (c) peaceful
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2008

(a) uncertain

28. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. But all political expression of social divisions need not be always dangerous.
2. Social divisions of one kind or the other exist in most countries.
3. Parties try to win political support by appealing to social divisions.
4. Some social differences may result in social divisions.

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1
- (c) 3, 2, 1, 4
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

(b) 4, 2, 3, 1

29. Parties are a necessary condition for a:

- (a) democracy
- (b) authoritarian
- (c) dictatorship
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

SOP 2012

(a) democracy

30. In a democratic country, any group of citizens is free to form:

- (a) a political party
- (b) society
- (c) religion
- (d) all of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

(a) a political party

31. **Assertion (A) :** Political Parties are important in the functioning of democracy.

**Reason (R) :** The media plays an important role in the making of Political Parties.

**Options:**

- (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (a).
- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (a).
- (c) (A) is true but (R) is false.
- (d) (A) is false but (R) is true.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (b) Both (A) and (R) are true but (R) is not the correct explanation of (a).

32. Political parties are there in a country to give people:

- (a) freedom
- (b) choice
- (c) protection
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019, 2010

- (b) choice

33. Complete the given table with correct information:

Party	Found- ation Year	Symbol	Found- er	Main AIM
Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP)	A-?		B-?	to represent and secure power for the bahujansamaj which includes the dalits, adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities.

**Option :**

- (a) A - 1984, B - Mayawati
- (b) A - 1984, B - Kanshi Ram
- (c) A - 1974, B - Mayawati
- (d) A - 1974, B - Kanshi Ram

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (b) A - 1984, B - Kanshi Ram

- which part it stands for, which policies it supports and whose interests it upholds.
3. To make programs and policies to win the support of public and to oppose government in the legislature.
  4. The leaders, the active members and the followers.
95. Read the following extract and answer the questions that follow:

*Parties shape public opinion. They raise and highlight issues. Parties have lakhs of members and activists spread all over the country. Many of the pressure groups are the extensions of political parties among different sections of society. Parties sometimes also launch movements for the resolution of problems faced by people. Often opinions in the society crystallise on the lines parties take.*

*Party system is not something any country can choose. It evolves over a long time, depending on the nature of society, its social and regional divisions, its history of politics and its system of elections. These cannot be changed very quickly. Each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances. For example, if India has evolved a multi-party system, it is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties. No system is ideal for all countries and all situations.*

*Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission. While the Commission treats all parties equally, it offers some special facilities to large and established parties. These parties are given a unique symbol – only the official candidates of that party can use that election symbol. Parties that get this privilege and some other special facilities are ‘recognised’ by the Election Commission for this purpose. That is why these parties are called, ‘recognised political parties’. The Election Commission has laid down detailed criteria of the proportion of votes and seats that a party must get in order to be a recognised party. A party that secures*

*at least 6 per cent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognised as a State party. A party that secures at least six per cent of total votes in Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognised as a national party.*

**Questions :**

1. Which function of political parties is highlighted here?
2. Which type of political party system is the best one? Why?
3. Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission. Why?

**Ans :**

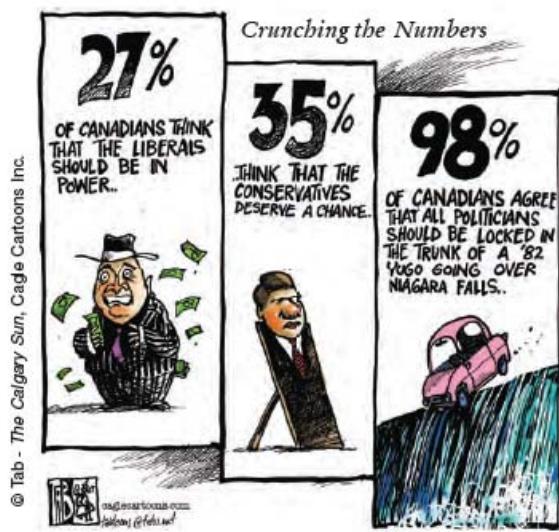
1. Political party shapes public opinion.
2. None is the best one because each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances. For example, if India has evolved a multi-party system, it is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties. No system is ideal for all countries and all situations.
3. Because it is already written in the Indian Constitution.

96. Read the following extract and answer the questions that follow:

*All India Trinamool Congress (AITC) was launched on 1 January 1998 under the leadership of Mamata Banerjee. Recognised as a national party in 2016. The party’s symbol is flowers and grass. Committed to secularism and federalism. Has been in power in West Bengal since 2011. Also has a presence in Arunachal Pradesh, Manipur and Tripura. In the General Elections held in 2014, it got 3.84% votes and won 34 seats, making it the fourth largest party in the Lok Sabha.*

*Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP) was formed in 1984 under the leadership of Kanshi Ram. Seeks to represent and secure power for the bahujansamaj which includes the dalits, adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities.*

41. The following cartoon tells about the:



- (a) Citizen's state of mind that they don't need politicians anymore.
- (b) Power to rule should be given alternatively to each political party.
- (c) All the democracies of the world have political party system.
- (d) Public opinion about the parties and politics differs from person to person.

Ans :

Comp 2013

- (a) Citizen's state of mind that they don't need politicians anymore.

42. Identity the kind of party system:

- Prevails in USA and UK
- Several small parties exist and won few seats
- Most of the seats are won by two major parties
- Fair election is assured by the constitution

**Option :**

- (a) Single Party System
- (b) Two Party System
- (c) Three Party System
- (d) Multy Party System

Ans :

Delhi 2010, 2013

- (b) Two Party System

43. What is the guiding philosophy of the Bharatiya Janta Party ?

- (A) Bahujan Samaj

- (B) Revolutionary democracy
- (C) Integral humanism
- (D) Rast rawad (Nationalism)

Ans :

Foreign 2006

- (C) Integral humanism.

44. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. All India Trinamool Congress (AITC)
2. Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP)
3. Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP)
4. Communist Party of India (CPI)

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1
- (c) 3, 2, 1, 4
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

Ans :

OD 2018

- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

45. Explain the role of Election Commission regarding recognition of Political Parties in India.

Ans :

OD 2023

The Election Commission plays an important role concerning the political parties:

- (1) Every party has to register itself with the Election Commission for contesting the elections. They are allotted symbols by the Election Commission.
- (2) The Election Commission also recognises the National Parties and State Parties based on some criteria and some special privileges are provided to these parties.

46. Explain the three components of political party.

Ans :

Delhi 2019

- (1) Leader : A leader is the one who takes the major decisions of the party and his decision is the supreme command for the party. He contests elections and performs the administrative job.

**34.** The political parties of a country have a fundamental political ..... in a society.

- (a) choice
- (b) division
- (c) support
- (d) power

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (b) division

**35.** Arrange the following political parties as per their year of foundation...

1. Bahujan Samaj Party
2. All India Trinamool Congress
3. Indian National Congress

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 3
- (b) 4, 2, 3
- (c) 3, 2, 1
- (d) 3, 1, 2

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

- (d) 3, 1, 2

**36.** Members of ruling party follows the directions of:

- (a) people
- (b) party leaders
- (c) pressure groups
- (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015, 2008

- (b) party leaders

**37.** Consider the following statements on parties.

- (i) Political parties do not enjoy much trust among the people.
- (ii) Parties are often rocked by scandals involving top party leaders.
- (iii) Parties are not necessary to run governments.

Which of the statements given above are correct?

- (a) (i), (ii), and (iii)
- (b) (i) and (ii)
- (c) (ii) and (iii)
- (d) (i) and (iii)

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (b) (i) and (ii)

**38.** Arrange the following countries (in ascending order) according to their Political Party membership in the world in the correct sequence:

1. India
2. China
3. Canada
4. Bangladesh

**Option :**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 2, 3, 4, 1
- (c) 3, 2, 1, 4
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2020

- (c) 3, 2, 1, 4

**39.** Who among the following is the founder of the Bahujan Samaj Party ?

- (A) Kanshi Ram
- (B) Sahu Maharaj
- (C) B.R. Ambedkar
- (D) Jyotiba Phule

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (a) Kanshi Ram.

**40.** Consider the following statements on parties:

- A. Political parties do not enjoy much trust among the people.
- B. Parties are often rocked by scandals involving top party leaders.
- C. Parties are not necessary to run governments.

Which of the statements given above are correct ?

- (a) A, B and C
- (b) A and B
- (c) B and C
- (d) A and C

**Ans :**

SQP 2015

- (b) A and B.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

Once we overcome a challenge, we automatically go to a higher level than before. State any two goals of development other than income.

- 53.** Discuss advantages of single political party system.

**Ans :** SQP 2011

Under a single party system, the country has only one political party, communist country like China a good example of a such system. We can describe main advantages and system in the following way.

Advantages of Single Party System :

- (1) This system makes the government very strong and powerful.
- (2) Generally the head or president or general secretary of the party has complete control over the functioning of the party within nation. As no body (members) can dare to challenge the biggest boss of the party, therefore complete discipline prevails in the party, government and even in the army.

- 54.** Write in short the disadvantages of single political party system.

**Ans :** OD 2017

Disadvantages of Single Party System :

- (1) Generally under this system the governments becomes totalitarian and its curbs the rights of the citizens.
- (2) Generally the head of the party acts like a dictator in the country. Infact political democracy does not prevails under such system. History tells us during the period of Stalin (the President of former USSR or the Soviet Union) was ruled by Stalin just a dictator. There was no freedom of press or expression.

- 55.** “Dynastic succession is one of the most serious challenges before the political parties.” Analyse the statement.

**Ans :** Comp 2019

Family members or people more close to top leaders are favoured at the time of granting

tickets for contesting elections. Sometimes deserving members are denied tickets. Political parties do not practice open and transparent procedures. Top positions such as President or General Secretary are always controlled by members of one family. This is unfair to the other members of the party. It is also bad for democracy because people without adequate experience come to occupy the top positions in the party. This tendency is present in some measure all over the world, including in some of the older democracies.

- 56.** What is a multi-party system? Why has India adopted a multi-party system? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

- (a) If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, it is called a multi-party system. In India, we have a multi-party system.
- (b) India has adopted multi-party system because the social and geographical diversity is not easily absorbed by two or three political parties.

Secondly, India is such a large country that it may not be possible for a political party to have its organisation or branches in every corner of the country.

Thirdly, people of different regions, castes, religions and communities have different problems which compel them to have their political party to press for demands for their welfare and development.

- 57.** What are National Political Party?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020, 2018

A national party has influence all over the country. It secures more than 4 per cent of total valid votes in the previous general elections atleast in four states.

There are six national political parties in India.

1. Congress (I).
2. Bharatiya Janta Party.
3. The Communist Party (Marxist).
4. The Communist Party of India.

- (2) Active Members : Another component of political party are the active members who contest elections for the party and are elected as representatives. They are the ones, who climb the ladder from being the follower and become the assistants of the leaders to gain knowledge about the politics.
- (3) Followers : The last one are the followers who support a political party and in elections make their party victorious. They are simply the ardent followers of the leaders and work under the able guidance of the active members.
47. State any three functions of the Election Commission of India.
- Ans :** SQP 2017
- (1) Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission.
  - (2) While the Commission treats all parties, equally, it offers some special facilities to large and established parties.
  - (3) The Election Commission has laid down detailed criteria of the proportion of votes and seats that a party must get in order to be a recognized party.
48. Name any three regional parties and the states to which they belong.
- Ans :** Foreign 2014
- (1) Janata Dal (U) — Uttar Pradesh and also in Jharkhand and Nagaland.
  - (2) Jammu and Kashmir People's Democratic Party — Jammu and Kashmir.
  - (3) Shiromani Akali Dal (1920) — Punjab
49. Highlight the ideologies and programmes of Indian National Congress.
- Ans :** Comp 2012, 2005
- (1) Indian National Congress (INC) was founded in 1885. So, it is one of the oldest parties of the world. It is a centrist party in its ideological orientation.
  - (2) This party supports secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities.
- (3) It supports new economic reforms but with a human face. Currently, it is a leading opposition party against the Bhartiya Janata Party (BJP) led coalition government at the Centre.
50. How has multi-party system strengthened Democracy in India ? Explain.
- Ans :** OD 2020
- (1) If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multi-party system.
  - (2) In this system, government is formed by various parties coming together in a coalition.
  - (3) This system allows a variety of interests and opinions to enjoy political representation.
51. What is a political alliance ? Highlight one merit and one demerit of it.
- Ans :** Delhi 2017, 2007
- When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance or a front.
- (1) Merit : This system allows a variety of interests and opinions to enjoy political representation.
  - (2) Demerit : It often appears messy and leads to political instability.
52. 'A challenge is not just any problem but an opportunity for progress.' Analyse the statement.
- Ans :** Delhi 2018
- A challenge is not a hurdle in the way of our success rather it's an opportunity for progress. Challenges always force us to prove our worth in a positive way. Different countries face different kinds of challenges :
- (1) Foundational challenge
  - (2) Challenge of expansion
  - (3) Deepening of democracy

- 62.** State the conditions as laid down by the Election Commission to recognize a ‘State party’ and ‘National Party’.

or

State the conditions required for a political party to be recognized as a National Party.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

- (1) Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission. The Election Commission has laid down detailed criteria of the proportion of votes and seats that a party must get in order to be a recognised party.
- (2) State Party : A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognised as a state party.
- (3) National Party : A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in the Lok Sabha election or Assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognized as a national party.

- 63.** “No party system is ideal for all countries and in all situations.” Analyse the statement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

“No party system is ideal for all countries and in all situations”. This statement is true because :

- (1) Party system is not something, any country -,an choose. It evolves over a long time depending on the nature of society, its social and regional divisions, its history of politics and its system of elections. These cannot be changed quickly.
- (2) Each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances.
- (3) For example, if India has evolved a multi-party system, it is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties.

- 64.** Discuss the main policies of the Communist Party of India and the Communist Party of India (Marxist).

**Ans :**

OD 2018, 2014

The main policies of the above given parties are the following :

- (1) These parties are against the imperialism and capitalism.
- (2) They want to establish democracy of the type in which there should be the government of the peasants and labourers, i.e. proletariates.
- (3) To nationalise all the banks, insurance companies and big industries.
- (4) To provide free and compulsory education.
- (5) To provide equal democratic right to women.

- 65.** How have state political parties become more important than National parties in India ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

State political parties have become more important than National parties in India because :

- (1) Over the last three decades, the number and strength of these parties has expanded.
- (2) This made the Parliament of India politically more and more diverse.
- (3) No one national party is able to secure on its own a majority in Lok Sabha. As a result, the national parties are compelled to form alliance with state parties.
- (4) Since 1996, nearly everyone of the State parties has got an opportunity to be a part of one or the other national level coalition government.
- (5) This has contributed to the strengthening of federalism and democracy in our country.

- 66.** Exhibit the role of money and muscle power among political parties during elections.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

Role of money and muscle power among political parties during elections :

- (7) There should be state funding of elections.  
The government should give parties money to support their election expenses.
- 74.** Describe the role of political parties in India.  
or  
Why do we need political parties? Explain.  
or  
Discuss the main functions of a political party.
- Ans :** SQP 2020, Comp. 2020
- The role of the political parties are as follows:
- (1) Parties contest elections. In most democracies, elections are fought mainly among the candidates put up by political parties.
  - (2) Parties put forward different policies and programmes and the voters choose from them.
  - (3) Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country.
  - (4) Parties form and run governments. The big policy decisions are taken by political executive that comes from the political parties.
  - (5) Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power, by voicing different views and criticising government for its failures or wrong policies.
  - (6) Parties shape public opinion. They raise and highlight issues. Parties sometimes launch movements for the resolution of problems faced by people. Often opinions in the society crystallise on the lines parties take.
  - (7) Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by governments.
- 75.** What are the characteristics of a political party ?

**Ans :** Delhi 2020

Characteristics of a political party :

- (1) A political party is a synonym to democracy all in the visible form.
- (2) A political party is a fundamental political division in a society.

- (3) A political party has three components : (a) the leaders, (b) the active members and (c) the transparent policy
  - (4) A political party makes effort to promote collective good for the society through its policies and plans.
  - (5) A political party tries to persuade people why its policies are better than other parties.
  - (6) Each political party is registered with Election Commission of India and drafts a manifesto containing list of works that party would perform if voted to power by people in respective elections.
  - (7) Each party puts forward, different policies and programmes and these are the people who choose, what is suitable to them.
- 76.** Describe the necessity of political parties in democratic countries.
- Ans :** OD 2020, Comp. 2020, 2018
- The reasons for the necessity of the political parties in India are given below :
- (1) Modern democracies cannot exist without political parties. The necessity of a political party in democracy can be understood from the given points. If every elected representative is independent, and then no one can make promise for any major policy changes. The government may be formed but its utility will remain always uncertain. Non-party based Panchayat election also creates same problems.
  - (2) The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. As society became larger and complicated, they also need some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government.
  - (3) Political parties inform the people about the working of the ruling party. They discuss the problems of the state, the working and failure of the government and give suggestion for the upliftment of masses.

- (2) The BJP is against to give special recognition and status to Jammu and Kashmir at political level.
- (3) Its motto is that all religions and people of India have same and uniform rights. In 1996, party was widely supported and accepted for governance.
- (4) On the basis of its ideology this party got recognition from all states of India at national level.
11. Describe the importance of regional political parties in strengthening democracy.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

The state parties also referred to as regional parties are not necessarily regional in ideology. Some of these parties are all India parties that happen to have succeeded only in some states. Over the last three decades, the number and strength of these parties has expanded. This made the parliament of India politically more and more diverse. No one national party is able to secure on its own a majority in the Lok Sabha.

As a result, the national parties are compelled to form alliances with state parties.

Since 1996, nearly every one of the state parties got an opportunity to be a part of one or the other national level coalition government. This has contributed to the strengthening of federalism and democracy in our country.

Examples of state parties having national level political organisation with units in several states are Samajwadi Party (SP), Rashtriya Janata Dal, Samata Party.

12. State any three functions of the Election Commission of India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

For the conduct of fair and impartial election the Constitution provides for an independent body in the form of Election Commission which consists of Chief Election Commissioner and such other commissioners.

It performs the following functions :

- (1) It prepares electoral rolls for the election of Parliament, state legislatures as well as local bodies.
- (2) It supervises and controls the election machinery throughout the country, lays down general rules for election and issues notification of dates and schedules of election.
- (3) It allots symbols and accords recognition to political parties.
- (4) Election Commissioner implements the Code of Conduct and punishes any candidate or party that violates it.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

73. Suggest and explain any five ways to reform Political Parties in India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

### Political Reforms to Strengthen Democracy :

- (1) To prevent defection, the law has been made so that if any MLA/MP changes his/her party, he/she will lose his/her seat in the legislature.
- (2) It has been made mandatory by the Supreme Court that every candidate who is contesting an election, has to file an affidavit giving details of his/ her property and criminal cases pending against him/ her.
- (3) The Election Commission passed an order making it necessary for political parties to hold their organisational elections and file their Income Tax Returns.
- (4) A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. e.g., following constitution, maintaining register of its members, holding internal elections.
- (5) It should be made mandatory for the parties to give one-third of their party tickets to women candidates.
- (6) In each party, there should be a quota for women in the decision-making bodies of the party.

5. Bahujan Samaj Party  
 6. Nationalist Congress Party
- 58.** Write a short note on Bahujan Samaj Party.  
**Ans :** Delhi 2013
- Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP) :  
 (1) This political party was formed in 1984 under the leadership of Late Kanshi Ram. This party seeks to represent and secure power for the Bahujan Samaj which includes the Dalits, Adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities. The party draws inspiration from the ideas and teachings of Sahu Maharaj, Mahatma Phule, Periyar Ramaswami Naicker and Dr.B.R. Ambedkar.  
 (2) Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP) stands for the cause of protecting the interests and welfare of the dalits and oppressed people.  
 (3) Now-a-days Ms. Mayawati is the most popular leader of the party. This party has its main base in the state of Uttar Pradesh and substantial presence in neighbouring states like Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Uttarakhand, Delhi and Punjab.
- 59.** Write a short note on Nationalist Congress Party.

**Ans :** OD 2010, 2006  
 Nationalist Congress Party was formed in 1999 following a split in the Indian National Congress. The party espouses democracy, Gandhian secularism, equity, social justice and federalism. This party wants that high offices in government be confined to natural born citizens of the country. A major party in Maharashtra and has a significant presence in Meghalaya, Manipur and Assam. A coalition partner in the state of Maharashtra in alliance with the Indian National Congress. Since 2004, NCP is a member of the United Progressive Alliance at centre. Sharad Pawar is its creator and most powerful leader.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 60.** How do political parties function within a democratic system? Explain.  
**Ans :** OD 2024
- The following are the functions of political parties within a democratic system:
- (1) They provide a platform and representation to various sections of society.
  - (2) They provide a platform for public debates and articulation of different opinions.
  - (3) They contest elections and form a government. Thus, they are a vehicle of democracy.
  - (4) They give shape to policies and legislation on the basis of their election manifestos.
- 61.** Explain any three functions of opposition political parties.

**Ans :** Delhi 2019  
 The Opposition's main role is to question the government of the day and hold them accountable to the public. In legislature, the Opposition Party has a major role and must act to discourage the party in power from acting against the interests of the country and the common man. They hustle to present themselves as a suitable alternative government.

- Following are the three functions of opposition parties:
- (1) They question the ruling government and make them accountable to the public.
  - (2) Their role is to ensure that the government should not take any step which is against the interest of the public.
  - (3) Their duty is to check and ensure that the action of the ruling party is for the benefit of the masses and to support the government in such things. They, thus, facilitate formation of public opinion and are a way in which the schemes of government are checked and communicated to the public.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
 DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- (4) Political party acts as a link between government and masses.
- (5) Political parties form and run governments. The executive body is formed by people from the ruling party. Various political leaders are assigned different ministries to carry out the task of governance.
77. "All over the world, people express their dissatisfaction with the failure of political parties to perform their functions well." Analyse the statement with arguments.

**Ans :** Foreign 2019

Arguments in support this statement :

- (1) In political parties there is a tendency towards the concentration of power in one or few leaders at the top. They do not keep membership registers, hold organisational meetings and conduct internal elections regularly. As a result, the ordinary members of the party do not get sufficient information on what happens inside the party.
- (2) Most of the political parties do not practice open and transparent procedures for their functioning. It leaves very few ways for an ordinary worker to rise to the top in a party. Besides, those who happen to be the leaders are in a position of unfair advantage to favour people close to them or even their family members certainly this is unfair to other members of the party and is bad for democracy.
- (3) Because the parties are focussed only on winning elections, they tend to use shortcuts methods to win elections. They desire to nominate those candidates who can raise lots of money. In some cases they support the candidates with criminal backgrounds to win elections. Obviously, this practice is not good for democracy.
- (4) The political parties do not seem to give a meaningful choice to the voters. Besides, in recent years there has been a decline in the ideological differences among the parties also. For this act, they face severe criticism also.

78. Discuss the impacts of regional political parties of India.

**Ans :**

OD 2011, 2005

The positive impacts of regional political parties : The positive impact of regional political parties gets reflected in the following:

1. It has extended the scope of decentralisation of powers or power sharing.
2. These parties are more in touch with regional ground realities.
3. These parties have created public awareness towards politics and partisanship.
4. These parties have made the electoral process more competitive.

Negative impacts of regional political parties: The negative impact of regional political parties gets reflected in the following :

1. Regional political parties are bound to affect the unity and integrity of a nation.
2. Many of the regional political parties do not hesitate to encourage violence or pursue violent means and methods to achieve their goals.
3. Abundant use of money and muscle power can be witnessed in regional politics.

79. "Modern democracies cannot exist without political parties." Examine the Statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

Political parties perform various functions such as contesting elections, formation of government, act as opposition party. We, therefore, need political parties in a democracy. But it question is raised why modern democracies cannot exist without political parties. The reasons for this are as mentioned below :

- (1) In the absence of political parties, every candidate in the elections will be independent. No one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes.
- (2) The government may be formed, but its unity will remain uncertain.

- (1) Since, parties are focussed only on winning elections, they tend to use shortcuts to win elections.
- (2) They tend to nominate those candidates who have or can raise lots of money.
- (3) Rich people and companies who give funds to the parties tend to have influence on the policies and decisions of the party.
- (4) In some cases, parties support criminals who can win elections.
- (5) Democrats all over the world are worried about the increasing role of rich people and big companies in democratic politics. (with explanation)
- 67.** Illustrate the situations which display lack of internal democracy within a political party.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2015

Situations which display lack of internal democracy within a political party :

- (1) Parties do not keep membership registers, do not hold organisational meetings, and do not conduct internal elections regularly.
- (2) Ordinary members of the party do not get sufficient information on what happens inside the party.
- (3) They do not have the means or the connections needed to influence the decisions. As a result the leaders assume greater power to make decisions in the name of the party.
- (4) Since, one or few leaders exercise paramount power in the party, those who disagree with the leadership find it difficult to continue in the party.
- (5) More than loyalty to party principles and policies, personal loyalty to the leader becomes more important.

- 68.** Mention and discuss the single order political party system.

or

Discuss briefly the following :

- (a) A Single party system
- (b) A Bi-party system
- (c) A Multi-party system

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

The Chief types of political party system : A political party is a body of several persons having similar views of the chief public issues. There are three types of party system :

- (a) A Single party system : This is the system wherein a country has only one political party, e.g., Russia and China.
- (b) A Bi-party System : Under this system two prominent political parties function in a country. England and United States of America has such system.
- (c) A Multi-party system : Under this system there are a number of small and large political parties in a country. Such a system exists there in India, France, Italy, etc.

- 69.** Write two opinions each in favour and against the value or importance of two-party system.

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

Value or in favour of two-party system :

- (1) It strengthens the national unity and integrity.
- (2) Democracy becomes more successful as this system given opportunity to only that political party to form government which secure absolute majority.

It is prevalent in U.K. (England).

Against :

- (1) India is a multi-cultural, linguistic religious country. Only multi-party system can provide chances to the people of all states under that system.
- (2) Multi-party system provides more choice to voters than two party system.

- 70.** Name the National Political Party which gets inspiration from India's ancient culture and values. Mention four features of that party.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2013

The National Political Party which gets inspiration from India's ancient culture and values is BJP (Bhartiya Janata Party). Its four main features are as follows :

- (1) Cultural nationalism (Hindutva) is an important element in its conception of Indian nationhood and politics.

- (5) Bahujan Samaj Party (BSP) : It was formed in 1984 under the leadership of Kanshi Ram. It seeks to represent and secure power for the Bahujan Samaj which includes the dalits, adivasis, OBCs and religious minorities.
- (6) Nationalist Congress Party (NCP) : It was formed in 1999 following a split in the Congress Party. It espouses democracy, Gandhian secularism, equity, social justice and federalism.
82. "Lack of internal democracy within parties is the major challenge to political parties all over the world." Analyse the statement.

or

"Lack of internal democracy within parties is a challenge to political parties." Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2013

- (1) There is the concentration of power in the hands of one or few leaders at the top.
- (2) Parties do not keep membership registers, do not hold organisational meetings and do not conduct internal elections regularly.
- (3) Ordinary members of the party do not get sufficient information on what happens inside the party.
- (4) They do not have means or the contacts needed to influence the decisions.
- (5) As a result, the leaders assume greater power to make decisions in the name of the party.
- (6) Since one or few leaders exercise paramount power in the party, those who disagree with the leadership, find it difficult to continue in the party.
- (7) More than loyalty to party principles and policies, personal loyalty to the leader becomes more important.

83. On what basis you support democracy in your respective country ? Explain.

Ans :

OD 2012, 2010

- (1) A democratic government is a better government because it is a more accountable form of government.

Democracy is better than any other form of government in responding to the needs of the people.

- (2) A democratic decision always involves many persons, discussions and meetings. This reduces the chances of rash or irresponsible decisions. Thus, democracy improves the quality of decision-making.
- (3) In any society, people are bound to have differences of opinions and interests. Democracy provides a method to deal with differences and conflicts. In a diverse country like India, democracy keeps our country together.
- (4) Democracy is based on the principle of political equality, on recognizing that the poorest and the least educated have the same status as the rich and the educated. Democracy enhances the dignity of citizens.
- (5) In a democracy mistakes cannot be hidden for long. There is a space for public discussion on these mistakes. And, there is a room for correction. Either the rulers have to change their decisions, or the rulers can be changed.

84. How is democracy a better form of government in comparison to other forms of governments? Explain.

or

Why is democracy considered a better form of government ? State any three reasons.

or

Why is a democratic government considered better than dictatorship? Explain any three reasons.

Ans :

Comp 2020

Democracy is considered a better form of government for the following reasons :

- (1) It improves the quality of decision-making by following a set procedure and giving participation to the representatives of the people in this process.
- (2) It protects rights of the people and takes care of the dignity of the individuals.
- (3) Democracy believes in the principle of common good. It provides methods

- and avenues to resolve conflicts among different sections of the society.
- (4) It promotes equality among citizens by providing them with equal opportunity for development.
- (5) If a mistake has been committed, there is always a room to correct it in a democracy.
- 85.** “Democracy is seen to be good in principle but felt to be not so good in practice.” Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- (1) Democracy is responsive and accountable but it often frustrates the needs of the people and often ignores the demands of a majority of its population.
- (2) If democracies are expected to produce good governments, then it is not fair to expect that they would also produce development. Evidence shows that in practice, many democracies did not fulfil this expectation.
- (3) When we see many developed, underdeveloped and developing countries throughout the world, over all, we cannot say that democracy is a guarantee of economic development.
- (4) It is expected in a democracy that there will be a just distribution of goods and opportunities. In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.
- (5) In democracies, all individuals have equal weight in electing representatives. Parallel to the process of bringing individual into the political arena on an equal footage, one can see growing economic inequalities. Rich people are becoming richer and among poor, poverty is increasing.

- 86.** When is democracy considered as successful? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (1) The examination that democracy has to undergo, never comes to an end. As one examination is passed, another begins. This is due to expectation that people have from democracy.

- (2) As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more and want to make democracy even better. When people are asked about the way democracy functions, they always come up with more expectations. This denotes the success of democracy.
- (3) Increasing expectations from and many complaints against democracy are routine observations. The fact that people are complaining is itself a testimony to the success of democracy.
- (4) People have developed awareness and the ability to expect and to look critically at power holders and the high and the mighty. This signals democracy's success.
- (5) A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of the democratic project.
- (6) People's thinking that their votes make a difference to the way the government is run and to their own self-interests.

- 87.** What are the various challenges faced by political parties ?

or

Describe the different challenges faced by political party ?

**Ans :**

OD 2010, 2008

In a democracy political parties face various different types of challenges. We can briefly mention these challenges under the following headings :

- (1) Meaningful choice to the voters : All political parties have to feel the pulse of the voters. Voters want a candidate which may prove himself or herself as a very good choice for them. In-fact all political parties know it that their opponents or rival political parties also try to give the same policy and programmes which are like by the majority of the voters. If we go deeply to find out the various types of policy and programmes and different political parties we find that there is no clear difference between them and during elections as such voters do not have a meaningful choice among the different political parties.

- (2) Lack of internal democracy : Generally, most of the political parties lack say internal democracy. A few leaders of the top position decide everything or every matter of the party. Even after thumping majority or good success, the ordinary members and even the public are completely ignored.
- (3) Dynastic succession : In India or even some other countries also real power in a political party is occupied by the members of a family. This dynastic rule sometimes proves a great hurdle in the functioning of political parties as well as far true democracy.
- (4) Money power and muscle power : Now-a-days elections are very costly. A lot of money is required to contest and win the elections. After winning the elections, the political parties try to fund wealth for the next election or for their near and dear. In other words we can say the role of money power promotes corruption before, during and even after elections.

Like money power, muscle power also play a major role in winning the elections. Criminals or even the law breakers get tickets from the political parties. They directly or indirectly threaten and provoke the voters. Poor or weaker sections of the society do not caste their votes freely.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

88. Read the given source and answer the questions that follow :

*The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. As we have seen, large societies need representative democracy. As societies became large and complex, they also needed some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government. They needed some ways, to bring various representatives together so that a responsible government could be formed. They*

*needed a mechanism to support or restrain the government, make policies, justify or oppose them. Political parties fulfil these needs that every representative government has. We can say that parties are a necessary condition for a democracy.*

### Questions :

1. Explain the meaning of a political party.
2. "The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies." Support this statement.
3. Why are political parties a necessary condition for a democracy ? Explain.

### Ans :

1. Political Party is a group of people who come together to contest election, form policies, mobilise voters to support their cause and policies, and hold power in the government. Political parties are required so that they make policies that help in fulfilling the needs of the citizens through the representatives.
2. Large scale societies need representative democracy. As societies became large and complex, they also needed some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government. They needed some way to bring various representatives together so that a responsible government could be formed. They needed a mechanism to support or restrain the government, make policies, justify or oppose them. Political parties fulfill these needs that every representative government has.
3. Political parties are necessary condition for a democracy because of following reason :
  - (a) Without political parties, democracies cannot exist. If we do not have political parties, every candidate will be independent.
  - (b) No one will be able to make any promises to people about major policy changes.
  - (c) Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituency for what they do in their locality but no

- (3) Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituency for what they do into at locality. But no one will be responsible for how the country is run.
- (4) It may be mentioned here that even during the non-party based elections to the Panchayats, the parties do not contest formally but it is generally noticed that the village gets it into more than one faction, each of which puts up a ‘panel’ of its candidates. This function performed by political parties in a democracy. That is why we need political parties in almost the countries of the world.
- (5) Modern large scale societies need representative democracy which in turn need some vacancy to gather different views on various issues and present these to the government. This function is done by political parties. Thus, parties are a necessary condition for democracy.
- 80.** What role do political parties play in competition and contestation ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

Political parties play a significant role in the proper functioning of democracy through competition and contestation at different stages.

In theory, democracy is a form of government in which the country is run by representatives of the people. This is done in two stages. At the first stage the people elect their representatives by voting. At the second stage, these elected representatives form a government that works in co-operation with its legislature.

In view of above stages of functioning, political parties play their role as under :

- (1) Election is contested by candidates on behalf of their parties.
- (2) Political parties nominate the candidates and organise an election campaign. When the campaign goes on in a constituency, it is not only the candidates who organise and speak at meetings but also important

leaders from their parties launch campaign for them.

- (3) After the declaration of results of elections, the candidates of the winning political party are elected to Lok-Sabha or Vidhan Sabha. If a single party gets clear majority or a combination of some political parties get the majority it forms the government and other political parties sit as the opposition in the house.
- (4) The leader of the winning political party or the concensus leader of the combination of parties select Prime Minister and the Chief Minister in the Centre and the state respectively.

**Conclusion :** In short, we can say that before election, during the election and after the election, the political parties are required to play very vital role in a democratic form of government.

- 81.** Name the six ‘National Political Parties’ in India in a chronological order.

**Ans :**

SQP 2016

- (1) Indian National Congress (INC) : Popularly known as the Congress Party. One of the oldest parties of the world founded in 1885.
- (2) Communist Party of India (CPI) : It was formed in 1925. The party believes in Marxism-Leninism, secularism and democracy. This is against the forces of secessionism and communalism.
- (3) Communist Party of India—Marxist (CPI-M) : It was founded in 1964. The party believes in Marxism-Leninism. It supports socialism, secularism and democracy and opposes imperialism and communalism.
- (4) Bharatiya Janata Party (BJP) : It was founded in 1980 by reviving the erstwhile Bharatiya Jana Sangh. It wants to build a strong and modern India by drawing inspiration from India’s ancient culture and values. Cultural nationalism (or Eindutva’) is an important element in its conception of Indian nationhood and politics.

*For example, if India has evolved a multi-party system, it is because the social and geographical diversity in such a large country is not easily absorbed by two or even three parties. No system is ideal for all countries and all situations.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you understand by multi-party system?
2. Why political parties are necessary in smooth functioning of democracy?
3. Highlight any two differences between multi-party and bi-party system.

**Ans :**

1. Multi-party system is a political system in which multiple political parties across the political spectrum run for national elections, and all have the capacity to gain control of government offices, separately or in coalition.
2. Political parties are essential institutions for smooth functioning of democracy. By competing in elections parties offer citizens a choice in governance and while in opposition they can hold governments accountable. When citizens join political parties, volunteer their time, donate money and vote for their leaders, they are exercising their basic democratic rights.
3. Differences between multi-party and bi-party system are

Multi-party System	Bi-party system
A multi-party system is one which has several (more than two) political parties to contest and gain control of the government.	A bi-party system, on the other hand, is the one which has only two parties who contest for gaining power and control of the government.
There are various political parties at regional and National levels.	There are two candidates from two major parties.

91. Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*We can understand the necessity of political parties by imagining a situation without parties. Every candidate in the elections will be independent. So, no one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes. The government may be formed, but its utility will remain ever uncertain.*

*Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituency for what they do in the locality. But, no one will be responsible for how the country will be run.*

*We can also think about it by looking at the non-party based elections to the panchayat in many states. Although, the parties do not contest formally, it is generally noticed that the village gets split into more than one faction, each of which puts up a 'panel' of its candidates.*

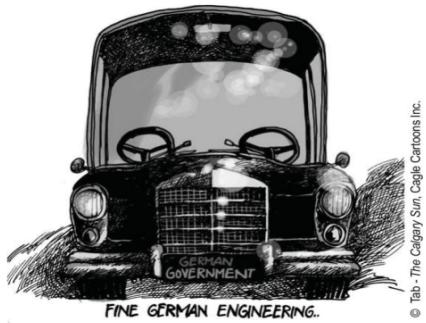
*Thus, it exactly what the party does. That is the reason, we find political parties in almost all countries of the world whether these countries are big or small, old or new, developed or developing .*

*The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. As we have seen, large societies need representative democracy. As societies became large and complex, they also needed some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government. They needed some ways, to bring various representatives together so that a responsible government could be formed. They needed a mechanism to support or restrain the government, make policies, justify or oppose them. Political parties fulfill these needs that every representative government has. We can say that parties are a necessary condition for a democracy.*

**Questions :**

1. What is the necessity of political parties in the efficient and effective running of the democracy?

- one will be responsible for how the country will run.
- (d) As societies become large and complex, they also need some agencies to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government.
89. Read the passage, observe the image given below and answer the questions that follow.



The cartoon above refers to the problems of running Germany's grand coalition government that includes the country's two major parties, namely the Christian Democratic Union and the Social Democratic Party. The two parties are rivals to each other. They had to form a coalition government because neither of them got a clear majority of seats on their own in the 2005 elections. They take divergent positions on several policy matters but jointly run the government.

#### Questions :

- Which disadvantage of coalition governments is the image highlighting?
- Why did the rival parties choose to make a coalition despite being rivals?
- How does a democratic system, at times, cause such a challenge?

Ans :

2023

- A coalition government may not agree on policy decisions which can affect a country's progress.
- The government at the centre enforces policy decisions that affect the entire country including the people who support each party, thus the rivals preferred to make a coalition.

- Democracy enables people to vote for their chosen representatives. In the absence of a clear majority, political parties may form a coalition.

- Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*In some countries, power usually changes between two main parties. Several other parties may exist, contest elections and win a few seats in the national legislatures. But, only the two main parties have a serious chance of winning majority of seats to form government. Such a party system is called two-party system. The United States of America and the United Kingdom are examples of two-party system.*

*If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multi-party system. Thus in India, we have a multi-party system. In this system, the government is formed by various parties coming together in a coalition. When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance or a front.*

*For example, in India there were three such major alliances in 2004 Parliamentary elections- the National Democratic Alliance, the United Progressive Alliance and the Left Front. The multi-party system often appears very messy and leads to political instability. At the same time, this system allows a variety of interests and opinions to enjoy political representation.*

*So, which of these is better? Perhaps the best answer to this very common question is that, this is not a very good question. Party system is not something any country can choose. It evolves over a long time, depending on the nature of society, its social and regional divisions, its history of politics and its system of elections. These cannot be changed very quickly. Each country develops a party system that is conditioned by its special circumstances.*

- 93.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Political parties are easily one of the most visible institutions in a democracy. For most ordinary citizens, democracy is equal to political parties. If you travel to remote parts of our country and speak to the less educated citizens, you could come across people who may not know anything about our Constitution or about the nature of our government. But chances are that they would know something about our political parties. At the same time this visibility does not mean popularity. Most people tend to be very critical of political parties. They tend to blame parties for all that is wrong with our democracy and our political life. Parties have become identified with social and political divisions.*

**Questions :**

1. What are the three main components of a political party?
2. Who is a partisan?
3. Explain one merit and one demerit of the opposition party.

**Ans :**

1. The three main components of a political party are :
    - (a) The leaders
    - (b) The active members
    - (c) The followers
  2. A person who is strongly committed to a party. A partisan person always take side of a group and is unable to give a balanced view.
  3. Merit- It voices different views and criticises government for its failures or wrong policies. Demerit- In many cases, opposition party tends to hinder the work of ruling party which can lead to delay in important decision-making.
- 94.** Read the following extract and answer the questions that follow:

*A political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government. They agree on some policies and programmes for the society with a view to*

*promote the collective good. Since there can be different views on what is good for all, parties try to persuade people why their policies are better than others. They seek to implement these policies by winning popular support through elections.*

*Thus, parties reflect fundamental political divisions in a society. Parties are about a part of the society and thus involve PARTISANSHIP. Thus, a party is known by which part it stands for, which policies it supports and whose interests it upholds. A political party has three components: the leaders, the active members and the followers.*

*The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. As we have seen, large scale societies need representative democracy. As societies became large and complex, they also needed some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government. They needed some way to bring various representatives together so that a responsible government could be formed. They needed a mechanism to support or restrain the government, make policies, justify or oppose them. Political parties fulfil these needs that every representative government has. We can say that parties are a necessary condition for a democracy.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by a political party?
2. Draw the relationship between parties and the society.
3. Write any two functions of the political parties.
4. What are the three components of any political party?

**Ans :**

1. Political party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government.
2. Parties reflect fundamental political divisions in a society. Parties are about a part of the society and thus involve partisanship. Thus, a party is known by

2. What do you understand by the term ‘responsible government’?
3. State any two features of representative democracy.

**Ans :**

1. Political parties are necessary for the effective and efficient running of the democracy because political parties contest elections. They play a decisive role in making laws for a country. They form and run governments and also play the role of opposition.
  2. Responsible government refers to a government that is responsible to the people. It takes the form of a Cabinet that depends on the support of an elected assembly, rather than a monarch or their representatives.
  3. Two features of representative democracy are
    - It is a form of governance in which the people of a nation elect the officials who will administer legislation and run the state on their behalf.
    - Elections are often held in a representative democracy on the basis of an all-adult franchise. It means that everyone, regardless of gender, caste, creed, area, language or culture, is eligible to cast a ballot in a general election after reaching the required age (such as 18 or 21 years old).
- 92.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*We have seen how crucial political parties are for the working of democracy. Since parties are the most visible face of democracy, it is natural that people blame parties for whatever is wrong with the working of democracy. All over the world, people express strong dissatisfaction with the failure of political parties to perform their functions well. This is the case in our country too. Popular dissatisfaction and criticism has focused on four problem areas in the working of political parties. Political parties need to face and*

*overcome these challenges in order to remain effective instruments of democracy.*

*In order to face these challenges, political parties need to be reformed. The question is: Are political parties willing to reform? If they are willing, what has prevented them from reforming so far? If they are not willing, is it possible to force them to reform? Citizens all over the world face this question. This is not a simple question to answer. In a democracy, the final decision is made by leaders who represent political parties. People can replace them, but only by another set of party leaders. If all of them do not wish to reform, how can anyone force them to change?*

**Questions :**

1. How can you say that there is lack of internal democracy within political parties?
2. List any one major challenge which the political parties face in the present era?
3. “Defection makes democracy weak” Explain the steps taken by our leaders to end defection.

**Ans :**

1. (a) The concentration of power is in the hands of one or few leaders at the top.  
(b) Ordinary members of the party do not get sufficient information about party decisions and those who disagree with the decisions find it difficult to continue in the party.
2. (a) Lack of internal democracy  
(b) Dynastic succession  
(c) Growing role of money and muscle power  
(d) Parties do not seem to offer a meaningful choice to the voters.
3. The Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing parties. This was done because many elected representatives were indulging in defection in order to become ministers or for cash rewards. Now the law states that if any MLA or MP changes parties, he or she will lose the seat in the legislature. This new law has helped bring defection down.

*Draws inspiration from the ideas and teachings of Sahu Maharaj, Mahatma Phule, Periyar Ramaswami Naicker and Babasaheb Ambedkar. Stands for the cause of securing the interests and welfare of the dalits and oppressed people.*

*Communist Party of India (CPI) was formed in 1925. Believes in Marxism-Leninism, secularism and democracy. Opposed to the forces of secessionism and communalism. Accepts parliamentary democracy as a means of promoting the interests of the working class, farmers and the poor. Became weak after the split in the party in 1964 that led to the formation of the CP (M).*

**Questions :**

1. When was All India Trinamool Congress (AITC) recognised as a national party?
2. From where Kanshi Ram draw inspiration while forming the political party?
3. What is the best example of parliamentary democracy according to the Communist Party of India (CPI)?

**Ans :**

1. All India Trinamool Congress (AITC) recognised as a national party in 2016.
  2. Kanshi Ram draw inspiration from the ideas and teachings of Sahu Maharaj, Mahatma Phule, Periyar Ramaswami Naicker and Babasaheb Ambedkar.
  3. Communist Party of India (CPI) accepts parliamentary democracy as a means of promoting the interests of the working class, farmers and the poor.
97. Read the following extract and answer the questions that follow:

*Muhammed Yunus is a famous economist of Bangladesh. He received several international honour for his efforts to promote socio-economic and social development for the benefit of the poor. He and the Grameen Bank, for this great initiative he started jointly received the Nobel peace prize for the year, 2006. In February, 2007 he decided to launch a political party and contest in the parliamentary elections. His objective was to*

*foster proper leadership, good governance and build a new Bangladesh. He felt that only a political party different from the traditional ones would bring about new political culture. His party would be democratic from the grassroot level.*

*The launching of the new party, called Nagarik Shakti (Citizens' Power), has caused a stir among the Bangladeshis. While many his decision welcomed, some did not like it. "Now I think Bangladesh will have a chance to choose between good and bad and eventually have a good government". said Shahedul Islam, a government official, "That government, we hope, would not only keep itself away from corruption but also make fighting corruption and black money a top priority."*

*But leaders of traditional political parties who dominated the country's politics for decades were apprehensive. "There was no debate (over him) winning the Nobel, but politics is different—very challenging and often controversial" said a senior leader of the Bangladesh Nationalist Party. Some others were highly critical. They asked why he was rushing into politics. "Is he being planted in politics by mentors from outside the country," asked one political observer.*

**Questions :**

1. Do you think Yunus made a right decision to float a new political party ?
2. Do you agree with the statements and fears expressed by various people ?
3. How do you want this new party organised to make it different from other parties ?
4. If you were the one to begin this political party how would you defend it ?

**Ans :**

1. Yes, it is a right decision of Muhammad Yunus to floating Nagrik Shakti (Citizens' Power) party in Bangladesh to fight corruption in Bangladesh.
2. No. I do not agree with statements and fears expressed by various people because these are baseless. It is usual that people have always different opinions because of their taking things for direct benefit or

- advantages. Corruption-free people like the first government officials, appreciate such steps while—the bureaucrats and representatives profiteering through corrupt practices, will naturally criticise likewise efforts.
3. It will make it different because of being its leader, eminent scholar (awardee of Nobel Peace Prize, 2006) and the fund, he has from Grameen Bank set-up by him. He can launch policies and programmes for common good of people in Bangladesh without any impediments—that generally bring in dead lock to implementation of policies.
  4. I would have defended likewise political party by opening branch offices in each nook and corner of the country. It would develop direct interaction with people in country side and towns. Time-to-time surveys, meetings, seminars, workshops etc., would have won the confidence of people. I would have also set-up a study cell to write articles on contemporary events, their consequences and an appropriate course of action that might have cured flaws and defects. My Grameen Bank would have launched certain plans, schemes to provide credit facilities at reasonable rate of interest with all needy people. These, all efforts would have definitely made my party's stronghold in Bangladesh.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

#### **DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- ***Word File of Material for Teachers***

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 15

## OUTCOME OF DEMOCRACY

### SUMMARY

1. Outcomes : The result or effect of an action or event.
2. Dignity : A sense of one's own importance and value.
3. Authoritarianism : Rule by imposition of authority e.g. absolutism.
4. Development : The gradual growth of mankind so that it becomes more advanced and stronger than before/existing.
5. Security : The activities involved in protecting a country, building or person against attack, danger etc.
6. Outcomes of Democracy : The results as witnessed through analysis of certain period under democracy.
7. Monarchy : The government ruled by the monarch or king of the country i.e., monarch or king is the head of the country who is hereditary.
8. Dignity : The word denotes privileged position, honourable rank or importance given to any particular post or personality.
9. Inequality : Absence of equal opportunities, equal treatment and equal status at any level, social, economic or political is known as inequality.
10. Transparency : Right or means to examine the process of decision-making.
11. Expectation of Democracy : An ideal ruling in which citizens attain to conscience of sustainable development abiding by the rule of co-existence thereby clashes, class-wars, conflicts and chances of unrest are reduced to minimum.
12. Regionalism : Priority given to regional interests over the national interests e.g. partisanship in minds.
13. Measures for Democratic Outcome : Regular free and fair elections, open public debate on major policies, right to information given to the people.
14. Accountable : Responsible, answerable, legitimate to the individual/posts and their needs and expectations.
15. Racial Discrimination : Superiority or inferiority complex among citizens on the basis of their ethnicity or race (caste) economy.
16. Rule of Law : Ruling with strict allegiance to constitution of a country.
17. Human Rights : Basic rights that everyone has to be equally treated fairly and not in a cruel way especially, by the government of a country.
18. Apartheid : Political, social and economic discrimination on the basis of colour, caste, and religion. e.g. apartheid in South Africa.
19. Civil Liberties : Rights of people to be free to say or do, what they want while respecting others and staying within the law.
20. Secession : An area or group becoming independent from the country or a larger group that it belongs to.
21. Democratic Reforms : An expertise of democratic government in meeting challenge of expanding democracy viz. Power Sharing, accommodation of diversity, managing education, widening in sight and positive thinking attitude cultured among people so as they respect national interest.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

17. Democracy can lead to  
 (a) handle social differences  
 (b) secular society  
 (c) harmonious social life  
 (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

- (d) All of the above

18. Identify the form of Govt. in which:  
 • There is no freedom of speech and so as to press  
 • Decisions are taken by single ruling authority without consulting other interest groups  
 • Prevails in most of gulf and African Country  
 • People have no right to protest and their voice is hardly heard by the ruler.

**Option :**

- (a) Dictatorship
- (b) Democracy
- (c) Monarchy
- (d) All of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2020, 2012

- (a) Dictatorship

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
 Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**  
**Every School conduct Pre-Board**  
**From These Sample Papers**

19. Arrange the following regimes and countries in ascending order of their economic growth Rates for year 1950-2000:

1. All democratic regimes
2. All dictatorial regimes
3. Poor countries under dictatorship
4. Poor countries under democracy

**Options :**

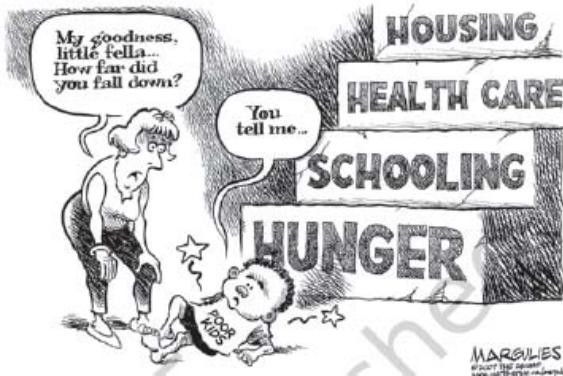
- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (d) 4, 2, 1, 3

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (b) 1, 2, 3, 4

20. Following cartoon talks about the condition of:



- (a) Lack of opportunity for the poor kids.
- (b) Hurdles for a poor kid to come over for his or her overall development.
- (c) Lack of transparencies in government policies for the development of all sections.
- (d) Government support is needed in section of poverty to eradicate this problem.

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (b) Hurdles for a poor kid to come over for his or her overall development.

21. Least expectation from democracy is that  
 (a) It cannot accommodate various social life  
 (b) It should produce a harmonious social life  
 (c) It develops procedure to conduct competition  
 (d) It reduces the possibility of violent tensions

**Ans :**

OD 2009, 2005

- (a) It cannot accommodate various social life

22. We can judge democracy by its:

- (a) people
- (b) outcomes
- (c) political parties
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (b) outcomes

23. Arrange the following countries (in the ascending order) as per their citizen's preference of democracy over dictatorship:

1. India
2. Nepal

9. Which country has democratic government since Independence?

- (a) India (b) Pakistan
- (c) Bhutan (d) Nepal

Ans :

Foreign 2017

- (a) India

10. Arrange the following democracies (from high to low) according to their degree of inequality of income:

1. South Africa
2. USA
3. Denmark
4. Russia

Options :

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3
- (b) 1, 3, 4, 2
- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (d) 4, 2, 3, 1

Ans :

Comp 2021, 2018

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3

11. Choose the correct statement.

- (a) Democracy not to lag behind dictatorship.
- (b) Democracy is not guarantee of economic development.
- (c) Economic growth is better in non-Democratic government.
- (d) USA is a democratic government but remarkable economic development.

Ans :

OD 2014

- (b) Democracy is not guarantee of economic development.

12. Rule of one individual is feature of

- (a) Dictatorship (b) Monarchy
- (c) Democracy (d) Communism

Ans :

Delhi 2019

- (a) Dictatorship

13. No deliberation and negotiation for taking decisions is part of

- (a) democratic government
- (b) non-democratic
- (c) monarchy
- (d) dictatorship

Ans :

SOP 2010, 2008

- (b) non-democratic

14. Following caricature on democracy illustrates that:



- (a) Democracy has to accommodate all the diverse demand from different section of society.
- (b) Various pressure and Interest groups have vested interests in all democracies.
- (c) Democracy can't be run or successful without diverse demand and pressure groups.
- (d) Democracy is meant to fulfil all the demands of people for the people.

Ans :

Foreign 2020

- (a) Democracy has to accommodate all the diverse demand from different section of society.

15. Democracy has failed on which grounds?

- (a) Corruption
- (b) Economic inequality
- (c) Literacy rate
- (d) All of these

Ans :

Comp 2021

- (d) All of these

16. Which government is superior to any other government in promoting dignity?

- (a) Monarchy
- (b) Dictatorship
- (c) Democracy
- (d) None of the above

Ans :

OD 2018, 2015

- (c) Democracy

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. What role do ‘checks and balances’ play in a democratic country? Choose the most suitable option from the following.

- (a) To establish a direct form of government without representatives
- (b) To create a separation of powers to prevent from authoritarianism
- (c) To prevent any change to the Constitution
- (d) To ensure absolute power for one branch of government

**Ans :** OD 2024

- (b) To create a separation of powers to prevent from authoritarianism

2. How many countries of the world have democratic set-up of government?

- (a) More than hundred countries
- (b) Less than hundred countries
- (c) Less than fifty countries
- (d) More than fifty countries

**Ans :** Comp 2023

- (a) More than hundred countries

3. Rule of law is the feature of which form of government?

- (a) Dictatorship
- (b) Democracy
- (c) Monarchy
- (d) All of these

**Ans :** OD 2020

- (b) Democracy

4. Democracy is preferred over dictatorship everywhere except

- |           |                |
|-----------|----------------|
| (a) Nepal | (b) Pakistan   |
| (c) India | (d) Bangladesh |

**Ans :** Delhi 2019

- (b) Pakistan

5. The record of democracies is not impressive because

- (a) It often frustrates the needs of the people
- (b) It often ignores demands of a majority of its population

- (c) Both a and b
- (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

- (c) Both a and b

6. Choose the wrong statement about democracy.

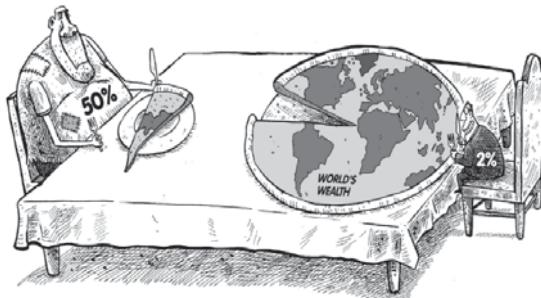
- (a) Promotes equality among citizens
- (b) Enhances the dignity of the individual
- (c) Provide a method to resolve conflicts
- (d) Does not have room to correct mistakes

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (d) Does not have room to correct mistakes

7. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Economic Distribution
- (b) Dignity and freedom of the citizens
- (c) Accommodation of social diversity
- (d) Economic growth and development

**Ans :**

OD 2017

- (a) Economic Distribution

8. Identify the form of Govt. which provide:

- Dignity and freedom to its citizens
- Mostly found in large countries
- Listens and try to accommodate the demand of various diverse sections
- Practised in India Since Independence

Option :

- (a) Dictatorship
- (b) Democracy
- (c) Monarchy
- (d) All of these

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (b) Democracy

3. Pakistan  
4. Sri Lanka

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3  
(b) 1, 3, 4, 2  
(c) 4, 1, 2, 3  
(d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

- (c) 4, 1, 2, 3

SQP 2019

24. Democracy attain people happiness by  
(a) government function to represent general view  
(b) equal distribution of resources  
(c) better governance  
(d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

- (d) All of the above

25. Many countries of the world claim and practice:  
(a) authoritarianism  
(b) democracy  
(c) dictatorship  
(d) none of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (a) uncertain

26. Why is the democratic government regarded as a better choice?  
(a) It promotes equality among citizen  
(b) It ensures economic development  
(c) It provides a method to resolve conflict  
(d) Both a and c

**Ans :**

OD 2014, SQP 2009

- (d) Both a and c

27. Complete the following table with correct information:

Name of the personality	Citizen of which country	Movement started by her	Famous for
Rosa parks	A-?	B-?	the Montgomery bus boycott

**Option :**

- (a) A - France, B - The women rights movement  
(b) A -France, B - The civil rights movement  
(c) A - America, B - The women rights movement  
(d) A - America, B - The civil rights movement

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (d) A - America, B - The civil rights movement

28. The political parties and democratic government is accountable to:  
(a) people  
(b) society  
(c) world  
(d) none of the above

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (a) people

29. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:  
1. Policies and programmes of the government  
2. Government  
3. Election  
4. Voter card

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3  
(b) 1, 3, 4, 2  
(c) 4, 3, 2, 1  
(d) 4, 3, 1, 2

**Ans :**

Foreign 2016

- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1

30. In the context of assessing democracy which among the following is odd one out. Democracies need to ensure :  
(a) free and fair elections  
(b) dignity of the individual  
(c) majority rule.  
(d) equal treatment before law.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (d) equal treatment before law.

31. Identify the country  
  - Except this country Democracy is preferred everywhere over dictatorship
  - It doesn't matter to its citizens who comes in power and go

- Have a long history of unstable democratic rule
- According to Oxford university 2007 data 14% of its citizens thinks that dictatorship is better than Democracy

**Option :**

- (a) India  
 (b) Pakistan  
 (c) Srilanka  
 (d) Bhutan

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

- (b) Pakistan

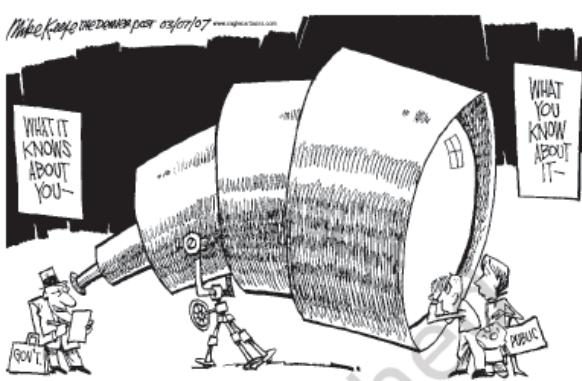
- 32.** Studies on political and social inequalities in democracy show that
- Democracy and development go together knowledge.
  - Law of democratic right exist in democracies.
  - Inequalities do not exist under dictatorship.
  - Dictatorship is better than democracy.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

- (b) Inequalities exist in democracies.

- 33.** Following picture about the confidentiality tells that:



- Government can invade the privacy of people but not vice versa.
- People can look into the Government matters if they desire to do so under various IT acts.
- It is worldwide practice especially in third world countries to invade the privacy of people by the Government.
- Such practices are now not common due to stringent IT laws.

**Ans :**

SQP 2008

- (a) Government can invade the privacy of people but not vice versa.

**VERY SHORT QUESTION**

- 34.** What factors sustain democracy in India ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The following factors sustain democracy in India :

- Democracy is liked by almost all Indians. It is based on the principle of equality, freedom and brotherhood.
- To achieve the prescribed goals (secularism, socialism, democratic republic, national unity and international security, etc.), the framers of the Indian Constitution revived completely on the norms of democracy.
- The framers of the Indian Constitution provided for a representative democracy in a liberal framework.

- 35.** How is social diversity accommodated in democracy? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2017 Term 2

It is a fair expectation that democracy should produce a harmonious social life. Democracy must fulfill two conditions in order to achieve social harmony even though there is social diversity.

- It is necessary to understand that democracy is not simply ruled by majority opinion. The majority always needs to work with the minority so that, the possibility of tensions, becoming explosive or violent reduces. Majority and minority opinions are not permanent.
- It is also necessary that rule of the majority does not become the rule of the majority community in terms of religion or race or linguistic group. Rule of the majority means that in case of every decision or every election, different

persons and groups may and should form a majority.

- 36.** How can democratic reforms be carried out by political conscious citizens?

Ans :

Delhi 2019

The most important concern should be to increase and improve the quality of political participation by ordinary citizens. When politically conscious citizens are aware of their duties and rights as entitled by the constitution, it gives them an upper hand for they are able to judge between right and wrong. They are also able to spread this awareness around by holding discussions or generally through word of mouth and help in formation of Public opinion. Politically aware citizens have better knowledge of diplomacy and world politics.

- 37.** How are the democratic governments better than the other forms of governments? Compare.

Ans :

SQP 2012, 2009

Democracy is better than any other form of government or dictatorship for the following reasons :

- (1) It promotes equality among citizens and the dignity of individuals.
- (2) As democracy is based on deliberations and negotiations, it improves the quality of decision making process.
- (3) It provides a proper method of conflict resolution and reduces tensions because the majority work with the majority.
- (4) In democracy there is ample scope of amendment. The deliberation and discussion in the legislature may change an existing or make an amendment in public interest.

- 38.** "Democracies produce an accountable, responsive and legitimate government." Support the statement with three suitable examples.

or

How does democracy produce a legitimate, accountable and responsive government ?

Ans :

Foreign 2016

- (1) Democracy is an accountable government because citizens have the right to choose their leaders and control over them, i.e., it is a representative government. Citizens have the rights and means to examine the process of decision-making.
- (2) Democracy is a responsive government because it promotes the formation of public opinion and cares about the opinions, needs and expectations of the citizens.
- (3) Democracy is a legitimate government as it is elected by people themselves through elections after every five years.

- 39.** "Democracy means delay in decision making". Justify the statement with any three arguments.

Ans :

Comp 2023

- (1) The cost of time that democracy pays in decision making is perhaps worth it. As democracy is based on the idea of deliberations and negotiations, some delay is bound to take place.
- (2) We can imagine a government that may take decision very fast. But it may take decisions that are not accepted by the people and may, therefore, face problems.
- (3) In contrast, the democratic government will take more time to follow procedures before arriving at decisions. But because it has followed a procedure, its decisions may be both more acceptable to the people and more effective.

- 40.** "Most negative feature of democracy is that its examination never gets over". Support the statement with three arguments.

Ans :

OD 2018

Following arguments can be given in support of this statement :

- (1) People always come up with more expectations from the democratic set up.
- (2) When people get advantage from democracy or when any of their problem is settled, they ask to solve a new problem and this trial never comes to an end.

- 99.** Read the extracts carefully and answer the following questions:

*Our interest in and fascination for democracy often pushes us into taking a position that democracy can address all socio-economic and political problems. If some of our expectations are not met, we start blaming the idea of democracy. Or, we start doubting if we are living in a democracy. The first step towards thinking carefully about the outcomes of democracy is to recognise that democracy is just a form of government. It can only create conditions for achieving something. The citizens have to take advantage of those conditions and achieve those goals.*

**Questions :**

1. State any two problems on which democracy has failed.
2. How does democracy create conditions for a better government? Explain by giving two examples.

**Ans :**

1. Corruption and Sharing information with the citizens.
2. (i) Democracy is an accountable responsive and legitimate government.  
(ii) Democracy maintains dignity and freedom of citizens.

- 100.** Read the following passage and answer the question that follow :

*Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual. Every individual wants to receive respect from fellow beings. Often conflicts arise among individuals because some feel that they are not treated with due respect. The passion for respect and freedom are the basics of democracy. Democracies throughout the world have recognized this, at least in principles. This has been achieved in various degrees in various democracies. For societies which have been built for long on the basics of subordination and domination, it is not a simple matter to recognize that all individuals are equal.*

**Questions :**

1. What are the basic values of democracy?
2. Why do conflicts arise among individuals in democracies ?

**Ans :**

1. The basic values of democracy are : (i) Equality, (ii) Freedom, (iii) Social equality and justice, (iv) Economic justification and freedom, (v) Political freedom, civil and fundamental rights.
2. Due to following reasons conflicts arise among individuals in democracy :
  - (i) Some feel that they are not treated with due respect (for example due to untouchability and hierachial caste system, the people of low castes are not treated with due respect).
  - (ii) In some democracies male dominates and considered superior to women. Women agitate to get equal social, economic and political status as well as rights.

- 101.** Read the extracts carefully and answer the following questions:

*Nannu is a daily wage earner. He lives in Welcome Mazdoor Colony, a slum habitation in East Delhi. He lost his ration card and applied for a duplicate one in January, 2004. He made several rounds of the local Food and Civil Supplies Office for the next three months. But the clerks and officials would not even look at him, leave alone do his job or bother to tell him the status of his application. Ultimately, when he filed an application under the Right to Information Act asking for the daily progress made on his application, names of the officials who were supposed to act on his application and what action would be taken against these officials for their inaction. Within a week of filing application under Right to Information Act, he was visited by an inspector from the Food Department, who informed him that the card had been made and he could collect it from the office. When Nannu went to collect his card next day, he was given a very warm treatment*

- (1) Democracies are expected to produce development; but rate of development may be slow as compared to dictatorship.
- (2) Development depends upon many factors like size of population, global situation, cooperation from other countries, etc.
- (3) In democracies, time is taken on discussion and reaching at a decision. So, it is slow, but it is not too behind.
- 46.** "Democracy provides a method to resolve conflicts." Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2016

- (1) Democracies usually develop a procedure to conduct their competition. For example, election to choose their representatives. This reduces the possibility of tensions becoming explosive or violent.
- (2) Democracies accommodate various social divisions. They make us learn to respect the differences and to evolve mechanisms to negotiate the differences. Democracy is best suited to produce this outcome.
- (3) Non-democratic regimes often turn a blind eye to or suppress internal social differences. Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflicts is thus, a definite plus point of democratic regimes. But, democracy remains democracy only as long as every citizen has a chance of being in majority at some point of time.
- 47.** How does democracy maintain the dignity of women? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

- (1) The respect to and equal treatment of women are necessary ingredients of a democratic society.
- (2) Actually, women are always not treated with respect. But, once the principle is recognised, it becomes easier for women to wage a struggle against what is now unacceptable legally and morally.
- (3) In a non-democratic set-up, this unacceptability would not have legal basis because the principle of individual freedom and dignity would not have the

legal and moral force there. In this way, democracy has maintained the dignity of women in the country.

- 48.** Explain any three demerits of democracy.

or

Why is a democratic government considered less efficient ? Give any three reasons.

or

Why does democracy lead to delay in decision-making ? Explain.

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

Democratic governments are less efficient for the following reasons :

- (1) Deliberations and discussions in the legislature consume a lot of time.
- (2) The fear of majority and public opinion is a big obstacle in the efficient working of the government.
- (3) Once a decision is made, there come many socio-politico and socio-economic issues in its way during implementation. It destroys the very essence of a decision and renders democracy less efficient.

- 49.** 'Complaints are treated as testimony to the success of democracy.' Justify this statement.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

Democracy provides scope for complaints through:

- (1) Freedom of speech and expression, carrying out of agitations and struggles through different methods by different sections of people. A democratic government is the only government that constantly improves itself. Complaints therefore help in improving a democracy. It is then that a democracy strengthens and deepens itself.
- (2) Complaints make a democratic government accountable and in the process ensure better decision-making.
- (3) A democratic government is legitimate and this makes ordinary citizens value their democratic rights and take a position that democracy can address all social, economic and political problems. Critical evaluation of the policies of the

- (3) More and more suggestions and complaints by the people is also a testimony to the success of democracy.
41. How can the principles of democracy be applied to all spheres of life ?

Ans :

Delhi 2013

The principles of democracy can be applied in such a way like :

- (1) The word democracy in its basic sense is a method of taking decisions. A democratic decision involves consultation and the consent of all those who are affected by the decision.
- (2) Every individual irrespective of his wealth, status and power has the same right in decision-making. This can equally apply to a government, a family or any other organization.

Thus, principles of democracy can be applied to any sphere of life.

42. What is the relationship of democracy with economic growth and economic inequalities ? Give any three points.

or

What are the economic outcomes of democracy ? Give any three points.

Ans :

SQP 2015

- (1) On an average, dictatorships have slightly higher rate of economic growth. But if we compare their record with democracies only in poor countries, this difference is negligible.
- (2) There is very high degree of inequalities within democratic countries. For example, in the countries like South Africa and Brazil, the share of 20% of their population in national income is more than 60%, while bottom 20% population shares less than 3% of the national income.
- (3) Poorer' sections in the democratic society face inequality of opportunity as well. They face extreme poverty. They cannot afford the costs of housing, health care, schooling, etc.

43. Examine any three factors responsible for making democracy less attractive to its alternative forms of governments.

Ans :

Foreign 2006

- (1) A small number of ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and income. Their share in the total income of the country has been increasing.
- (2) Those at the bottom of the society have very little to depend upon. Their incomes have been declining. Sometimes they find it difficult to meet their basic needs like food, clothing, house, education and health.
- (3) The democratically elected governments do not appear to be as keen to address the question of poverty: People in several poor democratic countries are dependent in the rich countries even for food supplies.

44. What outcome can one reasonably expect of democracies ?

or

How can we assess democracy on the basis of its expected outcome ?

Ans :

OD 2007

The following outcomes one can reasonably expect of democracy :

- (1) In the political sphere, it has been provided to the people in general the Right to vote and contest elections. In this way, people can participate in the government.
- (2) In the economic sphere, democracy takes a welfare view and works for common good. It is true that democracy has minimised economic inequalities.
- (3) In the social sphere, it has taken care of underprivileged and downtrodden people. It gives equal protection to women, SCs, STs and OBCs.

45. Establish the relationship between democracy and development.

Ans :

Comp 2021

Democracy and development :

**55.** In what ways a democratic government is better than its alternatives ?

or

How do you feel that democracy is better than any other form of government ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

Following are some ways in which a democratic government is certainly better than its alternatives :

- (1) A democratic government is a legitimate government. It may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive or clean. But a democratic government is people's own government. This is why there is an overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world.
- (2) As evidence from South Asia shows, the support exists in countries with democratic regimes as well as countries without democratic regimes.
- (3) People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them. They also believe that democracy is suitable for their country. Hence, democracy's ability to generate its own support is itself an outcome that cannot be ignored.

**56.** What is defection ? What measures have been taken to curb it ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009, 2005

- (1) In order to gain some favour or power or money, it has been seen that MLAs and MPs change their parties. This changing of party by an elected representative is called defection.
- (2) Following are the measures taken to curb defection:
  - (i) If any MLA/MP changes his/her party, he/ she will lose the seat in the legislature.
  - (ii) This new law has helped bring defection down.
  - (iii) At the same time, this has made any dissent even more difficult.
  - (iv) MPs and MLAs have to accept whatever the party leaders decide.

**57.** Examine any three features on the basis of which maximum number of countries claim to practice democratic politics ?

**Ans :**

OD 2012, 2008

- (1) They have made written Constitutions which provide basic guidelines to administer the country.
- (2) They use to hold free and fair elections on regular intervals.
- (3) They have given space to different opinions and policies adopted by different political parties.
- (4) Through the constitutional provision, they have guaranteed certain rights to their citizens.

**58.** Why do we criticize democracy ? How far is it logical?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

We criticize democracy because it may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive or clean.

It is not logical to criticize democracy because it is better than its alternatives as :

- (1) People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them.
- (2) They also believe that democracy is suitable for their country.
- (3) Democracy's ability to generate its own support is itself an outcome that cannot be ignored.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

**59.** What are the conditions under which democracies accommodate social diversities ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (1) Power sharing at grassroot levels.
- (2) Allowing equal participation in political process.
- (3) Majority is not taken in terms of perception i.e. recognition, ethnicity, language, etc., but in concept—all reasonable and duly thought over.

government by the electronic media and newspapers also results in a healthier and vibrant democracy.

- 50.** Why is a democratic government considered better than dictatorship? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (1) In a democratic set up, there are regular, free and fair elections.
- (2) Unlike dictatorship, in a democracy, there is open debates on major policy decisions.
- (3) A democracy is always attentive to the needs of the people.
- (4) Democratic governments have the popular support of the voters hence they are legitimate government.
- (5) Women and weaker sections of the society have better status in a democracy.

- 51.** Why do people prefer democracy ? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2010, 2007

- (1) Democracy promotes equality among citizens.
- (2) It enhances the dignity of the individual.
- (3) It improves the quality of decision-making.
- (4) It provides a method to resolve conflicts.
- (5) It allows rooms to correct mistakes.

- 52.** Do democracies lead to a just distribution of goods and opportunities ? Justify your answer by three suitable arguments.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

No. Reasons in support of my answer are as under :

- (1) Although individuals have political equality, we find growing economic inequalities. A small number of ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and incomes.
- (2) The income of those at the bottom of the society is declining so much so that it becomes difficult to meet their basic needs, such as food, clothing, housing etc.

- (3) Although the poor constitute a large proportion of voters, yet democratically elected governments do not provide them opportunities on equal footing.

- 53.** An ideal government should not only keep itself away from corruption but also make fighting corruption and black money a top priority. Justify the statement by highlighting the values attached to it.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

The values attached to the above statement signify the following practices and institutions:

- (1) An ideal government is always transparent. Its decisions are based on norms and procedures. The citizens have the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making.
- (2) Corruption and black money are closely linked to each other. They flourish when the government gropes them. Hence, it is the responsibility of the government to put these two closely linked issues on top priority and give punishment to all those who are indulged in them.
- (3) The government should give emphasis on building the character of its people. Only the men with high moral values will keep themselves away from corruption and money making business.

- 54.** What values make democracy better than her alternative ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2017

The values which make democracy better than her alternative are as under :

- (1) Democracy is a government of the people.
- (2) It ensures the value of dignity and equality.
- (3) It guarantees right to vote i.e. universal adult franchise.
- (4) It involves people in decision-making mechanism.
- (5) It always provides room to correct mistakes.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- (ii) Citizens have the right to evaluate the decisions-making process.
- (2) Democracy provides a responsible government in the following ways :
- Government is responsible towards the needs and aspirations of people. It promotes the formation of public opinions, needs and expectations of citizens.
  - There is proper deliberation and negotiation before arriving at any conclusion in decision-making.
- 64.** Examine any three conditions under which democracies accommodate social diversities.  
or  
Explain any three conditions that democracies must fulfil in order to accommodate diversities and divisions.

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- Democracy develops competitive attitude amongst its citizens.
- Democracy harmonizes social differences through sharing of power. Belgium is a good example of accommodation of diverse ethnic groups. Non-democratic governments ignore or suppress internal social differences.
- In democracy the majority works with minority and the government represents the general view of citizens.
- Rule by majority should not become religious minority or linguistic minority or racial minority. It implies in case of every decision or in every election, different persons or groups can form majority.

- 65.** Explain the necessary conditions required for democracy.
- or

Define the term democracy. Explain any four features of democracy.

or

Describe any five characteristics of democracy.

**Ans :**

OD 2013

Democracy is the form of government in which rulers are elected by the people take all the major decisions.

**Following are the features of a good democracy :**

- Unlike dictatorship or kingship, in a democracy, rulers are elected by the people. As rulers they are representatives of the people and are authorized to take decisions on behalf of the people.
- A good democracy provides its people an equal opportunity to get elected as representatives or elect their representatives.
- Free and fair elections in democracy give an opportunity and choice to the people to elect their representatives.
- A good democracy protects rights of the people.
- A good democracy works for the common good of the people and provides them with equal opportunity of development.

- 66.** “Although democracy is said to be the solution to all problems, yet it is believed that the economic growth rate in dictatorship is better than that in democratic rule”. Support the statement with any three suitable arguments.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- If we consider all democracies and all dictatorships for the fifty years between 1950 and 2000, dictatorships have slightly higher rate of economic growth.
- But, this alone cannot be reason to reject democracy. As economic development depends on several factors : country's population size, global situation, cooperation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country, etc.
- However, the difference in the rates of economic development between less developed countries with dictatorships and democracies is negligible.

Over all, we cannot say that democracy is a guarantee of economic development. But, we can expect democracy not to lag behind dictatorships in this respect.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- (4) Rule by majority should not become rule of a community in terms of religion or race or linguistic group. Every citizen should have a chance of being a part of majority in one case or the other for healthy democracy.
- 60.** How is democracy accountable and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens? Analyse.
- Ans :** OD 2020  
Democracy produces an accountable and responsive government in the ways as mentioned below :  
 (a) Accountability : There is transparency in the decision making process in a democracy. The decision making process is based on norms and procedures. So a citizen may know if decision was taken through the correct procedures or not. Such is not the case in non-democratic governments. Thus democracy is a government that follows procedures and is accountable to the people.  
 (b) Responsive : Generally it is expected from a democratic government that it is attentive to the needs and demands of the people and is largely free of corruption. But in practice it is not so. Democracies often frustrate the needs of the people and ignore the demands of a majority of its population. So it is not fully responsive. There are cases of corruption in democratic countries. On the whole, it can be stated that there should be free and fair election, public discussion on important issues and right to information to make democracy accountable and responsive. The government should look after the needs of the people and for that it must be corruption free too.
- 61.** Why is a democratic government called a legitimate government ?
- Ans :** Foreign 2020  
(1) Democratic government is people's own government that is why, there is an overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world.
- (2) People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them.  
 (3) They also believe that democracy is suitable for their country.  
 (4) Democracy has the ability to generate its own support which itself is an outcome that can not be ignored.  
 (5) It provides people the option to choose their own rulers.
- 62.** What should be the expected outcomes of a democracy?  
 or  
 What are the things that we should expect from democracy ?
- Ans :** Delhi 2020  
Democracy must provide the following things:  
 (1) The people should have the right to choose their rulers and they should have control over them. That is, the basic outcome of democracy should be that it produces a government accountable to the citizens.  
 (2) The people should be able to participate in decision-making that affects them all. That is, the democratic government should be responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens.  
 (3) Democracy should ensure that decision-making will be based on norms and procedures.  
 (4) There should be transparency in the process of decision-making. Citizens should have the right and the means to examine the process of decision-making.
- 63.** "The most basic outcome of democracy should be that it produces a government that is accountable to the citizens and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens." Support the statement.
- Ans :** SQP 2019, 2016  
(1) Democracy provides accountable government in the following ways :  
 (i) People have the right to elect the leaders to form government and if possible they participate in decision-making process.

or

How does the dissatisfaction of people show the success of democracy ? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2009, 2006

- (1) Expectations from democracy also function as the criteria for judging any democratic country. The distinctive feature about democracy is that its examination never gets over.
  - (2) As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more and want to make democracy even better and ask about the way democracy functions, and many complaints.
  - (3) The fact that people are complaining is itself a testimony to the success of democracy.
  - (4) A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of the democratic project: it transforms people from the status of a subject into that of a citizen.
  - (5) Most individuals today believe that their votes make a difference to the way the government is run and to their own self-interest.
- 72.** Discuss any three demerits or disadvantages of dictatorship.

Ans :

SQP 2014

Dictatorship means “rule by a few”. All the powers in the government are with a single person or with a single party. The following are the demerits of dictatorship :

- (1) Wrong Decisions Taken by the Dictator : All the decisions are taken by the dictator himself. He, generally, does not consult anybody before taking the decision. This means that the decisions taken by him can be wrong also. But the cost of such wrong decisions has to be paid by the citizens of the country.
- (2) Violence at Home : Since the masses are not consulted before taking decisions, there is, generally, dissatisfaction among them. This dissatisfaction often results in violent conflicts and protests against

the government. Dictatorship curbs individual liberty and leads to violence and tensions in the country.

- (3) Suppression of Civil Liberties : People are not allowed to disagree with the policies and programmes of the government. They have to follow the orders of the government. There is no liberty of thought, speech and writing and strict censorship is exercised over the mass media.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 73.** Analyse the positive outcomes of the democracy.

Ans :

OD 2024

Democracy can have many positive outcomes, including:

- (1) Accountable government : Democratic governments are responsive to the needs of citizens and are held to account. They are also more stable and responsible, and are expected to deliver effective results.
- (2) Improved decision making : Decisions are based on norms and procedures, and the process is transparent. Citizens have the right to examine the decision-making process.
- (3) Equality : Democracy promotes equality among citizens, and gives equal rights to people regardless of sex, religion, color, or caste. It also provides a redistributive mechanism to help underprivileged people, and governments can intervene to promote equity through the tax and benefits system.
- (4) Dignity : Democracy enhances the dignity of all individuals.
- (5) Conflict resolution : Democracy provides a method to resolve conflicts, and requires the majority and minority to work together and respect each other's opinions.

**67.** How is poverty a major challenge to democracy ? Explain.

Ans :

OD 2015, 2010

- (1) Evidence shows that in practice, democracies could not produce expected development. The inability of democracy to achieve higher economic development worries us.
- (2) If we consider all democracies and all dictatorships for the fifty years between 1950 and 2000, dictatorships have slightly higher rate of -economic growth.
- (3) Within democracies, there are very high degree of inequalities. A small number of ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and incomes. Those at the bottom of the society have very little to depend upon. Yet, democratically elected governments do not appear to be keen to address the question of poverty.

**68.** Describe the social outcome of democracy.

Ans :

Delhi 2013

Democracy produces a peaceful and harmonious life among citizens and accommodates various social divisions.

- (1) Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflicts is the basic outcome of democracy.
- (2) Non-democratic regimes often turn a blind eye to or suppress internal social differences.
- (3) No society can fully and permanently resolve conflict 3 among different groups but democracy evolves mechanisms to negotiate the differences.
- (4) Democracies usually develop a procedure to conduct their competition. This reduces the possibility of tensions becoming explosive or violent.
- (5) Democracy provides the only peaceful solution to this problem. In democracy, no one is a permanent winner. No one is a permanent loser. Different groups can live with one another peacefully.

In a diverse country like India, democracy keeps our country together.

**69.** "Democracy allows room to correct mistakes". Explain.

Ans :

Foreign 2018

- (1) No, form of government is free of mistakes. Mistakes do take place. Democracy too is no exception. It is a better form of government because it allows room to correct its own mistakes.
- (2) The advantage in democracy is that mistakes, if any, cannot be kept hidden for long. Sooner or later the public comes to know about them.
- (3) There is always a space for public discussion on these mistakes. And there is a room for correction as well.
- (4) Correction of mistakes results in either the rulers changing their decisions or the rulers themselves can be changed through an election.
- (5) Such a correction of mistakes or change cannot take place in non-democratic government.

**70.** On the basis of which values will it be a fair expectation that democracy should produce a harmonious social life? Explain.

Ans :

OD 2017 Term 2

The basic values of democracy which provides fair expectation that democracy will produce harmonious social life are : (a) Social Equality, (b) Freedom, (c) Justice, (d) Economic justification, (e) Political freedom, civil and fundamental rights.

Moreover, following can be understood.

- (1) Democracy is a form of government in which the supreme power is vested in the people and the representatives of the people are elected by the voters on the basis of adult franchise.
- (2) It promotes equality among citizens.
- (3) It looks after the interest of the people.
- (4) It allows accommodation of social diversity.

**71.** How are complaints treated as testimony to the success of democracy ? Explain.

It is people's own government, thus a legitimate government.

- (2) Democracy ensures that decision making will be based on norms and procedures. The government follows all the rules and regulations and is accountable to the people.
  - (3) In Democracy, the opposition parties question and criticise the policies of the government. This ensures that the laws being implemented are not prejudiced or autocratic.
  - (4) Democracy enhances the dignity and importance of every individual in a nation.
  - (5) Democracy generates trust and faith in the law and constitution among citizens.
  - (6) The elections are regular, free and representative. The feeling of belongingness is generated among its citizens.
- 78.** Discuss three merits of dictatorship or Authoritarianism.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

Dictatorship means "rule by a few". A particular individual has large powers in the government and he exercises his own will while taking the decisions. Dictatorship is admired by some, on the following grounds :

- (1) Quick and Decisive Action : The dictators take all the decisions themselves. They do not have to consult anybody before taking decisions. They also don't need to discuss the issue in the parliament before making decisions. This enables them to take quick and decisive decisions. This saves a lot of time and speeds up the process of decision-making.
- (2) Efficiency : Dictatorship regimes are efficient. All the decisions are taken by one individual or a party. The decisions get executed quickly also. This means the orders are carried out as soon as they are passed. This brings speed and efficiency in the system.
- (3) National Cohesion : Dictators do not allow any disagreement in the country. This keeps the people united in the country.

All the conflicts and divisive forces are kept in check under dictatorship.

- (4) Stability : There are no competing political parties in the system. There is no competition in the political system to win the elections. Also there are no opposition parties to criticise the ruling government. This ensures stability in the government.

- 79.** How is democratic government known as responsive government ? Explain with an example.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019, 2010

The meaning of democratic government is the government of the people, for the people and by the people. Therefore the democratic government is a responsible government due to the following reasons:

- (1) The Members of Parliament who are winners in election can be the members of the working government. The party which has the maximum number of MPs forms the government because majority of people has elected maximum number of MPs. The members of other parties form the opposite group. The governing body is responsible to answer the doubts of opposite group.
- (2) The governing body is active for the suggestions, needs and demands of the people. It is the responsibility of the government.
- (3) The government follows all the laws and acts of the constitution which are for the benefits of the people.
- (4) All the members are elected for five years so they fear that if they do not work according to the requirements of the people, they will not be given chance further in the next coming session.

For example : The government increased the prices of LPG, Petrol and Diesel and gave the reason for price hike. In the same way it has to be explain the reasons for price hike of food items. The opposition group will oppose for it. Thus they cannot do against the will of the people without certain reasons.

- (6) Economic growth : Democracy can lead to economic growth and development.
- (7) Social diversity : Democracy can accommodate social diversity, and ensures that people's individual choices are respected.
- (8) Citizen awareness : Democratic governments ensure that people are well-verses in basic political knowledge, so they can make informed decisions when voting.
74. Analyse the political outcomes associated with democracy.
- Ans :** OD 2024  
Democracy can have many political outcomes, including:
- (1) Accountability : A democratic government is accountable to the people and responsive to their needs and expectations. This is because citizens have the right to choose their representatives and participate in decision-making.
  - (2) Equality : Democracy can promote equality among people, including political, social, and economic equality. It can also reduce inequality and poverty by ensuring equality before the law.
  - (3) Dignity : Democracy can enhance the dignity of individuals and promote respect among people.
  - (4) Decision-making : Democracy can improve the quality of decision-making by allowing for open public debate and consensus among citizens.
  - (5) Conflict resolution : Democracy can provide methods to resolve conflicts.
75. Why is Democratic Government considered as Legitimate Government? Explain.
- Ans :** OD 2023
- (1) A Democratic Government is called a legitimate government because it is the people's government.
  - (2) It may be slow, less efficient and not very responsive and clean, but it is the people's government.

- (3) There is overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world. People of South Asia, Bangladesh, Sri Lanka, India, Pakistan and Nepal do not doubt the suitability of Democracy for their own countries.
- (4) People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them. Democracy's ability to generate its support makes it more legitimate.
76. How is Democracy a better form of government in comparison to dictatorship? Explain.
- Ans :** OD 2023  
Democracy is a better form of Government when compared with any other Form of Government because of the following reasons:
- (1) Democracy promotes equality among citizens. Every citizen of the country has equal rights before the law. All individuals have equal weight in electing representatives.
  - (2) Democracy enhances the dignity of the individual. Giving its citizens equal rights enhances the dignity and freedom of the individual. Democracy gives equal treatment and respect to women, deprived and discriminated castes in our society.
  - (3) Democracy improves the quality of decision-making. As there is an open debate on major issues in democracy thus, the quality of decisions improves.
  - (4) Democracy provides a method to resolve conflicts. Democracy reduces the possibility of social tension which leads to a peaceful social life. It allows room to correct mistakes.
  - (5) A Democratic Government is a legitimate government. Democracy gets the popular support of the people by holding regular, free and fair elections.

77. Describe any five outcomes of democracy.

- Ans :** Delhi 2019, 2017
- (1) Democracy is a form of government, in which the citizens have a right to elect their representatives, of their own choice.

several countries are now dependent on rich countries even for food supplies.

- 83.** Democracy is seem to be good in principle but fell to be not so good in practice. Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Democracy means the Government is made of the people, of the people and by the people. It should have all the characters which are ideal and good for the well beings of the people. It should have the following characters:

- (1) Moral soundness of the Citizens : The success of democracy depends on the moral soundness of the citizens. They should not focus only on their personal interests but take actions for the collectively good. They should place national interests above the personal interests.
- (2) Free and fair elections : Elections should be held regularly in the country. They should be in the impartial. The role money and muscle power should not be involve in elections.
- (3) Economic equality : There should be sufficient economic security for the individual. Any inequality in the ownership of the resources should be minimised.

Democracy is not so good in practice :

- (1) All the above mentioned features are true on paper but not in practice. As we see all people to work for the benefits of their own and never think about other citizens.
- (2) The process of elections is not fair. The use of money and muscle power is open everywhere. The person who has enough money and muscular powers can get maximum votes and win the election.
- (3) Every person works for its self interest to earn more money. He don't cares for others.

Thus it is clear that democracy is good in principle but not in practice.

- 84.** How can democracy adjust the dignity of women and caste discrimination in one system?

**Ans :**

OD 2011, 2008

- (1) Democracy promotes dignity and freedom of the individual. The passion for respect and freedom is the basis of democracy.
- (2) Democracies throughout the world have recognised this and also this has been achieved in various degrees in various democracies.
- (3) Most of the societies of the world were male dominated. Long struggles by women have created some sensitivity today that respect to and equal treatment of women are necessary ingredients of democratic society.
- (4) Once the democracies have accepted this in principle, it became easier for women to wage a struggle against what is now unacceptable legally and morally.
- (5) The same is true of caste inequalities. Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunities. No doubt, there are instances still of caste-based inequalities and atrocities, but these lack in the moral and legal sanction.

These are the things that only democracies can provide.

- 85.** 'A democratic government is efficient and effective.' Analyse the statement.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2008

- (1) Some people think that democracy produces less effective government on the following grounds :
  - (i) Democracy is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation which makes democratic government inefficient.
  - (ii) Non-democratic rulers do not have to bother about deliberation in assemblies or to worry about majorities and public opinion. So, they can be very quick and efficient in decision-making and implementation.
- (2) (i) In contrast, as it has to follow procedures, its decisions may be both more acceptable to the people and

of his property and criminal cases pending against him. It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to women candidates. Similarly, there should be a quota for women in the decision making bodies of the party. There should be state funding of elections. The government should give parties money to support their election expenses. This support could be given in kind : petrol, paper, telephone etc. Or it could be given in cash on the basis of the votes secured by the party in the last election.

**Questions :**

1. Explain the meaning of the term 'Defection' with reference to political party system of India.
2. Evaluate the significance of an Affidavit which is given by the candidate while contesting elections.
3. State any one suggestion which is made to reform the position of women in Indian political party system. What is the significance of this suggestion?

**Ans :**

1. Defection is changing party allegiance (a person's continued support for a political party) from the party on which a person got elected to a legislative body to a different party.
  2. Due to the Supreme Court order candidate has to give the details of his property and criminal case report through an Affidavit. It helps the public to decide the suitable candidate to elect.
  3. Many suggestions are made to reform political parties. Among these one of the most important reforms is to give at least one-third number of tickets to women candidate.  
This helps women to participate in direct politics and they can raise their voice for their own demands.
96. Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Democracies are based on political equality. All individuals have equal weight in electing*

*representatives. Parallel to the process of bringing individuals into the political arena on an equal footing, we find growing economic inequalities. A small number of ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and incomes. Not only that, their share in the total income of the country has been increasing. Those at the bottom of the society have very little to depend upon. Their incomes have been declining. Sometimes they find it difficult to meet their basic needs of life, such as food, clothing, house, education and health.*

**Questions :**

1. "Democracy ensures reduction of inequalities and poverty". Explain the statement.
2. List the factors that affect economic growth.
3. How can accommodation of social diversity work in a democracy?

**Ans :**

1. Democracy ensures equal distribution of goods, income and opportunities. A democratic government always tries to reduce poverty ratio and works for welfare of people.
  2. These are : population size, global situation, cooperation and economic priorities.
    - (a) In a democracy, the majority needs to work with minority so that the government functions to represent the general view.
    - (b) Every citizen has a chance of being in majority at some point of time.
97. Read the extracts carefully and answer the following questions:

*Every individual wants to receive respect from fellow beings. Often conflicts arise among individuals because some feel that they are not treated with due respect. The passion for respect and freedom are the basis of democracy. Democracies throughout the world have recognised this, at least in principle. This has been achieved in various degrees in various democracies.*

- (4) On the economic front also, we have achieved remarkable success.
- (5) We have great expectations from democracy in our country. Expectations from democracy also function as the criteria for judging any democratic country. What is most distinctive about democracy is that its examination never gets over. As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more. It shows that people have developed awareness and the ability to expect.
89. "Democratic government is attentive to the need and demands of the people and is largely free of corruption." Support your answer with arguments.  
or  
How is democracy accountable and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens? Analyse.
- Ans :** OD 2015
- (1) Democracy is better than any other form of government in responding to the needs of the people.
  - (2) People will have the right to choose their rulers and people will have control over the rulers. Whenever possible and necessary, citizens are able to participate in decision-making, that affects them all. That is why, democracy produces a government that is accountable to the citizens, and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens.
  - (3) Democracy ensures that decision-making will be based on norms and procedures. So, a citizen who wants to know if a decision was taken through the correct procedure can find this out. This is known as transparency.
  - (4) Democratic government develops mechanisms for citizens to hold the government accountable and mechanism for citizens to take part in decision-making whenever they think fit.
  - (5) Democracies have had greater success in setting up regular and free elections and in setting up conditions for open public debate.

90. How far can democracy prove to be a better form of government regarding economic growth of a country? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (1) It is true that during last 50 years dictatorships have shown slightly higher rate of economic growth in comparison to many of the democracies.
- (2) But, we all know that there are many other factors that determine the economic growth of a country like—population size, global situation, cooperation from other countries, economic priorities adopted by the country, etc.
- (3) So, even when there is a nominal difference in the rate of economic growth between countries under dictatorship and democracy, it is better to prefer democracy as it has several other positive outcomes. Some of these are given below:
  - (i) It enhances the dignity and freedom of the citizens which dictatorship and other forms of government do not believe in.
  - (ii) It accommodates various social divisions.
  - (iii) It leaves space and scope for correction of the mistakes that might be committed.
  - (iv) It provides an accountable, responsible and legitimate government.
  - (v) It is people's own government.
  - (vi) Most of its decisions are taken keeping in mind their acceptability to the people.
  - (vii) It provides transparent norms and procedure of decision-making.
  - (viii) It honestly tries to reduce inequality and poverty.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
 Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**  
**Every School conduct Pre-Board**  
**From These Sample Papers**

- 80.** “The ideals, principles and norms of democracy require certain conditions to be implemented”. Explain the statement.

Ans :

Comp 2012

These prerequisites are required in every sphere :

- (1) Social Conditions : The social conditions comprise social equality of status, equality before law and equality of opportunity; educationally and culturally developed citizenry; absence of all kinds of discrimination and equal opportunities to participate in social, cultural and educational processes.
- (2) Economic Conditions : Absence of widespread inequalities; fulfilment of minimum material needs for a dignified human existence; justifiable distribution of resources; equal opportunities for gainful employment, equal pay for equal work and protection against exploitation.
- (3) Political Conditions : Political conditions include rule of law; equality of citizens and equal opportunities for participation in political affairs; guaranteed and protected rights-particularly freedom of thought, belief and expression. It also include freedom of participation in civil and political processes; government by the people or their representatives, free and fair elections and respect for dissent and opposition.

- 81.** “Introduction of democracy in India in 1950 was a revolutionary act.” Explain it briefly.

Ans :

Delhi 2020

- (1) It was so because the prevailing conditions of India at that time were not very good. India was a poor country. Economic disparity in the country was at peak (top) and Indian agricultural industry, transports, communications—all were very backward. Most of the people were illiterate. In that dismal scenario of parliamentary democracy and universal adult franchise gave the Indian masses a sense of identity.

(2) The very first General Election of 1952 under the new Constitution was hailed as an apex achievement of a country of millions of illiterates. The successful working of a system of popular democratic government based on adult franchise, guaranteed fundamental rights and an independent judicial system was later on appreciated by scholars and observers. General elections at scheduled intervals and the peaceful and relatively efficient manner have demonstrated that inspite of their poverty and widespread illiteracy, people of India have allegiance to their constitutional right.

- 82.** “Do democracies lead to a just distribution of goods and opportunities”? Justify your answer by three suitable arguments.

or

“In actual life, democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.” Support this statement giving three arguments.

or

What is the main outcome of democracy with reference to reduction of inequality and poverty ? Give any two arguments to support your answer.

Ans :

SQP 2020

No, usually democracies do not lead to a just distribution of goods and opportunity due to following reasons :

- (1) A small number of ultra rich people enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and income.,
- (2) The poor are becoming poorer by the day so much, that they are unable to meet their basic necessities like food, clothing, housing, education, health, etc.
- (3) The poor who constitute a large proportion of voters are not provided with opportunities on an equal footing.
- (4) The democratically elected governments do not appear to be as keen to address the question of poverty.
- (5) In Bangladesh, more than half of the population lives in poverty. People in

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 94.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Arguments about democracy tend to be very passionate. This is how it should be, for democracy appeals to some of our deep values. These debates cannot be resolved in a simple manner. But some debates about democracy can and should be resolved by referring to some facts and figures. The debate about the economic outcomes of democracy is one such debate. Over the years many students of democracy have gathered careful evidence to see what the relationship of democracy with economic growth and economic inequalities is.*

*A particular study shows that on an average dictatorial regimes have had a slightly better record of economic growth. But when we compare their record only in poor countries, there is virtually no difference. While another study shows that within democracies there can be very high degree of inequalities. In democratic countries like South Africa and Brazil, the top 20 per cent people take away more than 60 per cent of the national income, leaving less than 3 per cent for the bottom 20 per cent population. Countries like Denmark and Hungary are much better in this respect.*

*One can easily infer that there is often inequality of opportunities available to the poorer sections.*

**Questions :**

1. Which type of outcomes of democracy can be resolved with the help of facts or figures analysis?
2. Benefits of higher national income are enjoyed by a' small proportion of its population while a larger proportion has to settle with the remaining small portion of the national income. What is strongly indicated by this fact?
3. Differentiate between democracy and dictatorship form of government.

**Ans :**

1. The economic outcomes of democracy can be resolved with the help of facts or figure analysis.
2. The given fact indicates that poorer sections are often ridden with unequal opportunities.
3. The differences between democracy and dictatorship are

<b>Democracy</b>	<b>Dictatorship</b>
In a democratic form of government, the head of the country is elected by the people in the form of votes through a general election.	In dictatorship form of government, the sole authority lies with one individual and no institution can keep a check over his powers.
The political control is provided through free and fair elections conducted after completion of a fixed tenure.	Elections didn't take place in such forms of government as it restricts political parties and associations.

- 95.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*The recent efforts and suggestions in our country to reform political parties and its leaders:*

*The Constitution was amended to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing parties. This was done because many elected representatives were indulging in Defection in order to become ministers or for cash rewards. Now the law says that if any MLA or MP changes parties, he or she will lose the seat in the Legislature.*

*This new law has helped bring defection down. At the same time this has made any dissent even more difficult. MPs and MLAs have to accept whatever the party leaders decide. The Supreme Court passed an order to reduce the influence of money and criminals. Now, it is mandatory for every candidate who contests elections to file an Affidavit giving details*

more effective. The cost of time that democracy pays is perhaps worth it.

- (ii) Democracy ensures that decision-making will be based on norms and procedures. Democracy produces a government that follows procedures and is accountable to the people.
- (iii) The democratic government develops mechanisms for citizens to hold the government accountable and mechanisms for citizens to take part in decision-making whenever they think fit.

**86.** How do people take part in decision-making in a democracy ? Explain.

Ans :

Comp 2014

- (1) Decisions are made by the representatives elected by the people. These representatives represent the ideas and opinions of those voters who have elected them to take decisions on their behalf.
- (2) In a democracy, people want to know if a decision was taken through correct procedures, can find this out. In this way, they have some degree of control over the whole process of decision-making.
- (3) In a democracy, people have the right and means to examine the process of decision-making.
- (4) Sometimes, important issues are put forward by the government for public debate before a decision is taken.
- (5) Demonstration, movement, pressure groups, etc. provide means in the hands of people to influence decision-making.

**87.** How has corruption become a serious problem for Indian democracy ? Explain with examples.

Ans :

Delhi 2005

Following are the ways in which corruption has become a serious problem for Indian democracy :

- (1) Use of money for winning an election : It has now become an accepted fact that leaders use money to win favour of the

voters. This lessens the very spirit of democratic values.

- (2) Increasing influence of rich people in political parties : There is an ever-increasing tendency among the political parties to give tickets to those who are rich. The parties think that they could win not only their own seats but also help the party monetarily.
- (3) Frequent scams : Now, scams by leaders and governments have become a routine tale in the Indian democracy. Many of the popular leaders are facing trials for corruption charges against them.
- (4) Favouritism : It has been seen that the wards of the prominent leaders of a political party easily get tickets for elections. The party workers keep serving for years but seldomly get the ticket.
- (5) Dynastic succession : It has now become a tradition in many of the popular political parties that the chair is inherited.

All these are enough to convince that democracy is not free from the evil of corruption which has become a serious problem for Indian democracy.

**88.** Describe any five factors that are responsible for the successful working of democracy in India.

or

Explain the factors that denote the successful working of democracy in India.

Ans :

Foreign 2016, 2013

- (1) Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity. Perhaps, it is the recognition that makes ordinary citizens value their democratic rights.
- (2) There has been regular, free and fair elections in India during almost 70 years of independence.
- (3) There has been open public debate on major policies and legislations. In this way, it has improved the quality of decision-making.

*Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in promoting dignity and freedom of the individual. Every individual wants to receive respect from fellow beings. Non-democratic regimes often turn a blind eye to or suppress internal social differences. Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflicts is thus a definite plus point of democratic regimes. It is necessary to understand that democracy is not simply rule by majority opinion.*

*Whenever possible and necessary, citizens should be able to participate in decision making that affects them all. Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity. There are instances still of caste-based inequalities and atrocities, but these lack the moral and legal foundations. Perhaps it is the recognition that makes ordinary citizens value their democratic rights.*

#### **Questions :**

1. What are the basis of democracy?
2. Why democracy is considered as the superior form of government?
3. How does the Indian democracy strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes?

**Ans :**

1. The passion for respect and freedom are the basis of democracy.
  2. The democracy is considered as the superior form of government because it promotes dignity and freedom of the individual.
  3. Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity as they are able to participate in decision making that affects them all.
98. Read the extracts carefully and answer the following questions:

*Over a hundred countries of the world today claim and practice some kind of democratic*

*politics: they have formal constitutions, they hold elections, they have parties and they guarantee rights of citizens. While these features are common to most of them, these democracies are very much different from each other in terms of their social situations, their economic achievements and their cultures. Clearly, what may be achieved or not achieved under each of these democracies will be very different.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Explain the fascination for democracy amongst various countries.
2. Explain democracy on the basis of expected and actual outcome.

**Ans :**

1. Fascination about democracy amongst various countries is because:
  - (i) It gives its people freedom of life and freedom of speech.
  - (ii) A democratic country has a strong economic system and all the people get equal opportunities.
2. The actual democracies on the basis of expected and actual outcomes are explained below:
  - (i) Regular, free and fair elections, open public debate on major policies and legislations.
  - (ii) Citizens right to information about the government and its functioning.

Democracies on the basis of actual outcomes are explained below:

  - (i) Holding elections that offer a fair chance to everyone.
  - (ii) Not every decisions comes forward in a public debate.
  - (iii) Sharing information with people rarely happens.
  - (iv) Democracies have never been free of corruption and government has failed to pay attention to the needs and expectations of people.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**91.** Explain the role of political equality in a democratic political system.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

Democracy is based on a fundamental principle of political equality which ensures each adult citizen must have one vote and each vote must have one value.

- (1) Democracy enhances the dignity of citizens. As democracy is based on the principle of political equality, on recognising that the poorest and the least educated has the same status as the rich and the educated.
- (2) People are not subjects of a ruler, they are the rulers themselves. Even when they make mistakes, they are responsible for their conduct.
- (3) The principle of Universal Adult Franchise has now come to be accepted almost all over the world. Yet, there are many instances of denial of equal right to vote.
  - (i) In Saudi Arabia, women do not have the right to vote.
  - (ii) Estonia has made its citizenship rules in such a way that people belonging to Russian minority find it difficult to get the right to vote.
  - (iii) In Fiji, the electoral system is such that the vote of an indigenous Fiji has more value than that of an Indian-Fijian.

**92.** “Do democracies lead to a just distribution of goods and opportunities ?” Justify your answer by three suitable arguments.

or

“Democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.” Describe the statement with five relevant facts.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018, 2014

No, usually democracies do not lead to a just distribution of goods and opportunity due to following reasons :

- (1) A small number of ultra-rich people enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and income.
- (2) The poor are becoming poorer so much, that they are unable to meet their basic necessities like food, clothing, housing, education, health, etc.
- (3) The poor who constitute a large proportion of voters are not provided with opportunities on an equal footing.
- (4) The democratically elected governments do not appear to be as keen to address the question of poverty.
- (5) In Bangladesh, more than half of the population lives in poverty. People in several countries are now dependent on rich countries even for food supplies.

**93.** How has democracy been able to reduce inequality and poverty in India ? Explain with examples.

or

How far has democracy reduced poverty in India ? Explain

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (1) So far as India is concerned, the success achieved in the arena of political equality to the individuals could not be achieved in the economic field also. We observe increasing inequalities.
- (2) A small number of ultra-rich people enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and incomes.
- (3) Not only that, their share in the total income of the country has been increasing.
- (4) Those at the bottom of the society have very little to depend upon. Their incomes have been declining.
- (5) Sometimes, people from lower level of the social ladder find it difficult to meet their basic needs of life, such as food, clothing, house, education and health.

So, it can be said that, in actual life, democratic government in India does not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.

by the Food and Supply Officer (FSO), who is the head of a circle. The FSO offered him tea and requested him to withdraw his application under Right to Information, since his work had already been done. [Impact of Right]

**Questions :**

1. What does Nannu's example show ?
2. What impact did Nannu's action have on officials ?
3. Ask your parents their experiences when they approach government officials to attend to their problems ?

**Ans :**

1. Nannu's example show that Right to Information Act is very important, useful and it forces the government official and head of the department to initiate action on time promptly as a part of duty.
2. The such offences in Food and Civil Supplies Department would strength the duty implementation applications of people like Nannu in future.
3. I have asked my parents about their experiences when they approach government official to attend their problems. They told me that likewise carelessness is adopted by officials in each government department or offices. They make people wandering to and fro even for the matters that fall in their routine. But overall of somehow protect the right's of civilian and

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- ***Word File of Material for Teachers***

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App



# CHAPTER 16

## DEVELOPMENT

### SUMMARY

1. Development : It means growth and advancement altogether and not separately.
2. Environmental Degradation : A process whereby various environmental elements like air, water, soil etc. get polluted and lose their usefulness.
3. Developed Economies : These are those economies which are characterised by high level of per capita income and high standard of living. Examples : USA, Japan, Germany, UK, Russia, Singapore etc.
4. Developing Economies : Those economies which are passing through the stages of growth and development. In such economies, significance of agriculture tends to decline whereas the industrial sector grows sharply. Example : China, India, Indonesia, Malaysia, etc.
5. Underdeveloped Economies : Underdeveloped economies are the economies which have low and miserable standard of living. Such economies are not able to exploit their natural resources. Example : Nepal, Myanmar (Burma), etc.
6. Developing Countries : These are poor countries trying to make their industry and economic system more advanced. Example : Pakistan, Bangladesh, etc.
7. Economic Development : Economic development is a process whereby the real per capita income of an economy increases over a long period of time.
8. Human Development Index : It measures the average achievement in basic three dimensions of human development i.e., long and healthy life, knowledge and decent standard of living.

9. Human Development Report : It is published by UNDP which compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.
10. Economic Growth : Development connected with the trade, industry and wealth of a country.
11. Economic Activities : All those activities that produce enough profit in perpetuity or regular manner.
12. Non-Economic Activities : Activities which do not earn any direct income in return.
13. Average Income : A calculation by adding several incomes together, finding a total and dividing it by the number of amount viz. total income of the country divided by its total population.
14. Income of a country : It means initially, the income of all the residents of the country.
15. Per Capita Income : Total income of a country divided by its total population viz. average income also is per capita income.
16. Consumption : The use of goods that meet the direct needs of the people.
17. National Income : The sum total of all the goods and services produced within a country during a period of one year plus net income from abroad is called National Income.
18. Full form of UNDP : United Nations Development Programme

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which one of the following indices is given priority by the World Bank with respect to development?
  - (a) Infant Mortality Rate
  - (b) Equality

- (c) Body Mass Index  
 (d) Per Capita Income

**Ans :**

OD 2024

- (d) Per Capita Income

- 2.** Suppose, the monthly income of the family members is as follows respectively :

1. Mother - Rs. 50,000/-
2. Father - Rs. 40,000/-
3. Son- Rs. 20,000/-
4. Daughter - Rs. 20,000/-

The average income of the family would be :

- (a) Rs. 32,000/-
- (b) Rs. 30,000/-
- (c) Rs. 32,500/-
- (d) Rs. 33,000/-

**Ans :**

OD 2024

- (c) Rs. 32,500/-

- 3.** Which of the following are developmental goals of a prosperous farmer? Choose the correct from the given options.

- I. Better wages
- II. Higher support prices for crops
- III. Assured high family income
- IV. More days for work

**Options :**

- (a) Only I and II are correct
- (b) Only II and IV are correct
- (c) Only II and III are correct
- (d) Only I and IV are correct

**Ans :**

OD 2024

- (c) Only II and III are correct

- 4.** Which one of the following organizations prepares the World Development Report'?

- (a) World Bank
- (b) International Monetary Fund
- (c) World Health Organisation
- (d) International Labour Organisation

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (a) World Bank

- 5.** Which one of the following is the preceding Government Agency of NITI Aayog?

- (a) Planning Commission
- (b) Election Commission

- (c) University Grants Commission  
 (d) Union Public Service Commission

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (a) Planning Commission

- 6.** Identify the kind of Income which is :

1. The total income of the country divided by its total population
2. Also known as Per capita Income
3. Provide a basis for the government to formulate their policy
4. Helps the Government to formulates the yearly budget

**Option :**

- (a) National Income
- (b) Personal Income
- (c) Total Income
- (d) Income

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- (a) National Income

- 7.** Arrange the following States from high to low as per their Literacy Rate % (2011 Census):

1. Haryana
  2. Kerala
  3. Bihar
  4. Goa
- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4
  - (b) 4, 3, 2, 1
  - (c) 1, 3, 4, 2
  - (d) 2, 4, 1, 3

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (d) 2, 4, 1, 3

- 8.** Assume there are four families in a locality. If the income of each family is ₹6,000, ₹4,000, ₹7,000 and ₹3,000 then find out the average income of the locality from the following options:

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| (a) ₹5,000 | (b) ₹3,000 |
| (c) ₹2,000 | (d) ₹6,000 |

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- (a) ₹5,000

- 9.** **Assertion (A):** Different people have different development goals.

- Reason (R):** People want freedom, equality, security and respect

**Options:**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.
- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.
- (c) A is true but R is false.
- (d) A is false but R is true.

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.

- 10.** Which one of the following is not a developmental goal for the landless rural labourers?
- (a) More days of work and better wages.
  - (b) Local school is able to provide quality education for their children.
  - (c) There is no social discrimination.
  - (d) They can not become leaders in the village.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2016

- (d) They can not become leaders in the village.

- 11.** Arrange the following countries according to their Human Development Index (HDI) rank in world (2018):

1. Sri Lanka
2. Pakistan
3. India
4. Bangladesh

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (b) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (c) 1, 3, 4, 2
- (d) 3, 4, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (c) 1, 3, 4, 2

- 12.** Which option signifies best this picture?

COUNTRY WITH NO RICH AND NO POOR



COUNTRY WITH RICH AND POOR



- (a) ‘Averages’ are useful for comparison, they also hide disparities.

- (b) People have different developmental goals.

- (c) Poor people have to share their seats
- (d) Rich people do not want to share

**Ans :**

OD 2011

- (a) ‘Averages’ are useful for comparison, they also hide disparities.

- 13.** **Assertion :** Suppose the literacy rate in a state is 78% and the net attendance ratio in secondary stage is 47%.

**Reason :** More than half of the students are going to other states for elementary education.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2008

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

- 14.** Which among the following is a developmental goal for the landless rural labourers?

- (a) To get electricity and water
- (b) To educate their children
- (c) More days of work and better wages
- (d) To shift to the cities

**Ans :**

Comp 2022, 2020

- (c) More days of work and better wages

- 15.** What would be the most appropriate aspiration of a prosperous farmer from Punjab?

- (a) local school is able to provide quality education for their children
- (b) there is no social discrimination
- (c) able to pursue her job in abroad.
- (d) proper supply for irrigation

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

- (d) proper supply for irrigation

- 16.** “Besides seeking more income, people also seek things like equal treatment, freedom,

2. The people seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security and respect of others because they wanted to avoid the discrimination.
  3. The job may give you less pay but enhances your sense of security because it offer regular employment.
  4. People seek:
    - (i) Income
    - (ii) Other aspects like security, health, equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect of others.
- 115.** Study the data given below in the table and answer the questions that follow :

Some Comparative Data on Punjab, Kerala and Bihar

State	Infant Mortality Rate per 1000 (2003)	Literacy Rate (%) (2001)	Net Attendance Ratio for Class I to V (1995-1996)
Punjab	49	70	81
Kerala	11	91	91
Bihar	60	47	41

**Questions :**

1. Which state has the highest infant mortality rate?
2. Why has this state the highest infant mortality rate ? Give two reasons.

**Ans :**

1. Bihar.
2. This state has the highest infant mortality rate due to following two reasons :
  - (a) In Bihar literacy rate is lower than Kerala and Punjab both.
  - (b) Net Attendance Ratio for Class I to V during 1995-96 was only 41. While in its comparison Kerala had 91 and Punjab had 81.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 116.** Answer the following questions on the basis of the table given below :

State	Infant Mortality Rate (2003)	Literacy Rate (%) (2001)
Punjab	49	70
Kerala	11	91
Bihar	60	47

**Questions :**

1. Which state has largest literacy rate ?
2. Which state has the lowest infant mortality rate ?
3. Identify the state which has the greatest Human Development Index (HDI).

**Ans :**

1. Kerala (2) Kerala (3) Kerala.

- 117.** Study the table given below and answer the following questions :

Country	Per capita income in US \$ 2004	HDI Rank in the World
Sri Lanka	4390	93
India	3139	126
Pakistan	2225	134

**Questions :**

1. Name any one country whose per capita income is more than that of India and by how much ?
2. What is the HDI Rank of India in the World ?

**Ans :**

1. Sri Lanka :  $4390 - 3139 = 1251$  US
2. 126

- 118.** Study the table given below and answer the following questions :

State	Infant Mortality Rate per 1000 (2003)	Literacy Rate (%) (2001)
Punjab	49	70
Kerala	11	91
Bihar	60	47

- (c) an indicator to show the living standard of people in a country
- (d) an indicator to show the living standard of children in a country

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (c) an indicator to show the living standard of people in a country

**23. Assertion :** A small town has a high rate of robbery; however, a locality in this town has well-maintained law and order.

**Reason :** The people in the locality are aware of the importance of having security guards, and they collectively pay to have the security guards in the locality.

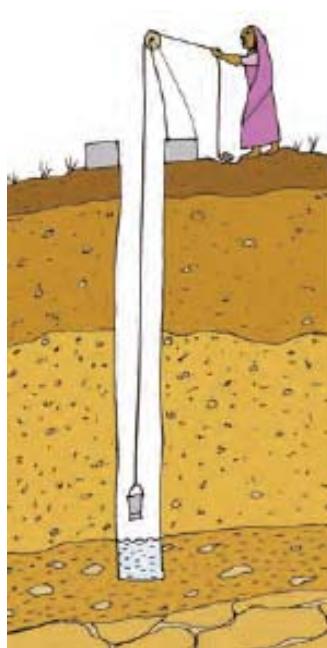
- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2011

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**24. Which option signifies best as the reason for the depletion of Groundwater as shown in the picture?**



- (a) Low pumping of water by tubewells.
- (b) If we use more water than what is being replenished by rain.
- (c) Use of tap instead of hand pumps.
- (d) Low annual rain-fall.

**Ans :**

Comp 2008

- (b) If we use more water than what is being replenished by rain.

**25. \_\_\_\_\_ is the number of deaths per 1,000 live births of children under one year of age. The rate for a given region is the number of children dying under one year of age, divided by the number of live births during the year, multiplied by 1,000.**

- (a) Neonatal Mortality Rate (NMR)
- (b) Post-Neonatal Mortality Rate (PNMR)
- (c) Infant mortality rate (IMR)
- (d) Under-5 Mortality Rate (U5MR)

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (c) Infant mortality rate (IMR)

**26. Identify the category of person based on the developmental goal for himself**

1. Higher income expected due to high support price for their crop from Government.
2. Looking for cheap labourer for their fields
3. Looking to settle its kids in abroad
4. Most of the persons in this state are into this profession.

**Option :**

- (a) Prosperous farmers from Punjab
- (b) Landless rural labourers
- (c) Urban unemployed youth
- (d) An adivasi from Narmada valley

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (a) Prosperous farmers from Punjab

**27. Assertion :** A country that was extremely rich in natural resources has mainly relied on oil extraction for revenue generation for several centuries. However, the scientists predict that the country may become poor in the future if other means of generating income are not devised.

**Reason :** Oil is a non-renewable resource, and it is likely to get exhausted if not used judiciously.

security and respect of others". What does the given statement signify?

- (a) Mixed goals are important for people for development.
- (b) Common goals are important for people for development.
- (c) Conflicting goals are important for people for development.
- (d) Similar goals are important for people for development.

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (c) Conflicting goals are important for people for development.

- 17.** Match the following and choose correct option:

Problems faced by farming sector	Some possible measures	
1. Unirrigated land	A.	a Setting up agro-based mills
2. Low prices for crops	B.	b Cooperative marketing societies
3. Debt burden	C.	c Procurement of food grains by government
4. No job in the off season	D.	d Construction of canals by the government
5. Compelled to sell their grains to the local traders soon after harvest	E.	e Banks to provide credit with low interest

- (a) 1-A 2-B 3-C 4-D 5-E
- (b) 1-D 2-C 3-E 4-A 5-B
- (c) 1-C 2-D 3-E 4-A 5-B
- (d) 1-B 2-C 3-E 4-D 5-A

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (b) 1-D 2-C 3-E 4-A 5-B

- 18.** **Assertion :** A state has a per capita income of Rs. 225,000 per annum. The infant mortality rate in the state is 2%. So, the state cannot be considered a developed state.

**Reason :** There are medical facilities in the state, but people fail to take their children to hospital in time.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

- 19.** Besides seeking more income, one-way or the other, people not seek things like

- (a) equal treatment
- (b) freedom
- (c) security
- (d) discrimination

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (d) discrimination

- 20.** Which one among the following is a development goal for the landless rural labourers?

- (a) To get electricity and water.
- (b) To educate their children.
- (c) More days of work and better wages.
- (d) To shift to the cities.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2005

- (c) More days of work and better wages

- 21.** If you get a job in a far off place before accepting it you would try to consider-

- (a) Facilities for the family
- (b) Job security
- (c) Opportunity to learn
- (d) all of these

**Ans :**

OD 2016, 2013

- (d) all of these

- 22.** What is per capita income?

- (a) an indicator to show the living standard of men in a country
- (b) an indicator to show the living standard of ministers in a country

32. Since the second half of the twentieth century, a number of scientists have been warning that  
 (a) Health and nutrition level is declining.  
 (b) Per capita income is unstable.  
 (c) Levels of resources are not sustainable.  
 (d) Levels of development are not sustainable.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

- (d) Levels of development are not sustainable

33. We have not inherited this earth from our forefathers; we have borrowed it from our children. who said these words?  
 (a) Mr. Rajendra Prasad  
 (b) Gandhiji  
 (c) Mr. Lester Brown  
 (d) Mr. George Brown

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013, 2011

- (c) Mr. Lester Brown

34. **Assertion :** Different people have different developmental goals.

**Reason :** The capitalist approach to development is detrimental to poor section of the society.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

35. “Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries.” which of the following statement not justify this statement.

- (a) Environmental degradation issue is no longer a regional or national issue.  
 (b) Our future is linked together. Sustainability of development is essential for all the mankind and it is our common responsibility to save the environment.

- (c) These days it is a matter of discussion among different countries of the world.  
 (d) Global warming, acid rain, etc., are to be controlled by one nation. It is a personal matter of thinking and finding the solutions.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (d) Global warming, acid rain, etc., are to be controlled by one nation. It is a personal matter of thinking and finding the solutions.

36. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Country with no rich and no poor  
 (b) Country with rich and poor  
 (c) Country with only poor  
 (d) Country with only rich

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (b) Country with rich and poor

37. **Assertion :** Sustainable development is essential for economic growth of the countries.

**Reason :** Sustainable development ensures that environment friendly measures are adopted for carrying out production processes.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2011

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 28.** What do you mean by Net Attendance Ratio?
- (a) It implies the total number of children of age group 6-10 attending school
- (b) It implies the total number of children of age group 12-15 attending school
- (c) It implies the total number of children of age group 14-16 attending school
- (d) It implies the total number of children of age group 17-19 attending school

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015, 2012

- (a) It implies the total number of children of age group 6-10 attending school

- 29.** “Girls in India in the rural sector are sometimes not able to get secondary level education” which of the following is not the correct reason for this situation.
- (a) Society’s mind set which prefers boys getting better secondary and higher education.
- (b) Due to Poverty people are unable to provide basic education to their children
- (c) In villages women also constitute a major agricultural workforce which again works to their disadvantage.
- (d) Decreasing crime against women

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

- (d) Decreasing crime against women

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
**Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**  
**Every School conduct Pre-Board**  
**From These Sample Papers**

- 30.** Complete the following table with correct information regarding BMI. Select the correct option for A and B.

BMI	How to calculate	BMI of a person who is under-nourished	BMI of a person who is overweight
Body Mass Index	A - ?	less than 18.5	B - ?

- (a) A-Divide the weight of a person (in kg) by the square of the height (in metres)  
 B-less than 25
- (b) A-Divide the weight of a person (in gram) by the square of the height (in metres)  
 B-More than 25
- (c) A-Divide the weight of a person (in kg) by the square of the height (in metres)  
 B-More than 25
- (d) A-Divide the weight of a person (in kg) by the square of the height (in metres)  
 B-More than 50

**Ans :**

Comp 2011

- (c) A- Divide the weight of a person (in kg) by the square of the height (in metres)  
 B- More than 25

- 31.** **Assertion :** The crude oil reserves are going down for the entire world, and the countries need to find substitute fuel for crude oil.

**Reason :** A country that is dependent on imports for crude oil will demand more crude oil in the future.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

3. Kerala

4. Bihar

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (b) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (c) 1, 3, 4, 2
- (d) 3, 4, 2, 1

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4

**45. Assertion :** A high average income is not indicative of the overall well-being or human development in a country.

**Reason :** Average income does not cover indicators like level of literacy rate, health facilities and public facilities in a country.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**46. Economy is said to be under developed if:**

1. About 60 to 80% of the population is engaged in agriculture and allied activities.
2. Burden of population and dependent population is very high
3. Capital formation is very low due to lack of saving.
4. Productivity of labour production facility and standard of living is very low.
5. Incidence of underemployment and unemployment is very high.

Which of the above statement are correct?

- (a) (i) and (ii)
- (b) (i), (ii) and (iii)
- (c) (i), (iii), (iv) and (v)
- (d) (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v)

**Ans :**

Comp 2008, 2006, 2005

- (d) (i), (ii), (iii), (iv) and (v)

**47. Identify the Indian State which according to Economic Survey 2018–19, it have**

- Per capita Income of 34,409
- Considered as a backward state
- Suffer lots of natural calamities eg. Floods etc every year
- Have high Infant Mortality rate year 2017

**Option :**

- |                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| (a) Goa         | (b) Bihar  |
| (c) Maharashtra | (d) Kerala |

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- (b) Bihar

**48. Complete the following table with correct information: Select the correct option for A and B.**

Countries with per capita income of (2017)	Are called	Example
US \$ 12,056 annum and above	Rich countries	B - ?
US \$ between 955 or 12,056	A - ?	India

(a) A low middle income countries, B-United States, Luxembourg, Ireland

(b) A high income countries, B- Bhutan, Pakistan, India

(c) A low middle income countries, B-Bhutan, Pakistan, India

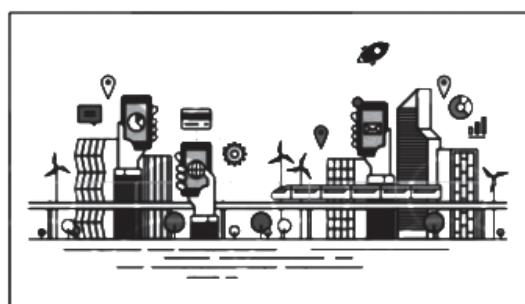
(d) A high income countries, B-United States, Luxembourg, Ireland

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

(a) A low middle income countries, B-United States, Luxembourg, Ireland

**49. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:**



2. For example, for industrialists mining means availability of natural resource for other developmental works, e.g., iron for steel.

For them it also generates revenue, income for local people, development of infrastructure of that area, generating employment. Whereas for another group of people it may mean deforestation, exploitation of resources and local people, environmental hazard and pollution, etc.

Thus there is no one notion of development.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 94.** How is the per capita consumption of electricity considered as an index of development? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

Per capita electricity consumption is considered an index of development because it indicates how much of a country's population has access to electricity. Electricity is considered an important part of a developing country, and the more areas that are covered by electricity, the more the country is developing.

Per capita electricity consumption also indicates that people are using electricity for many things in their daily lives, such as:

1. Machines: Electricity powers machines such as pumps for agriculture and household appliances
2. Transportation: Electricity is used for transportation
3. Healthcare: Electricity is used for healthcare

There is a strong correlation between per capita electricity consumption and the Human Development Index (HDI). The HDI is a single index measure that aims to record the three key dimensions of human development: access to knowledge, a decent standard of living, and long and healthy life.

- 95.** Explain with examples the significance of the usage of non-conventional sources of energy for the country.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

Non-conventional energy sources, also known as renewable energy sources, are becoming increasingly important due to the depletion of fossil fuels, rising energy demands, and the need to reduce pollution. They offer a clean, sustainable alternative to conventional energy sources. Some of the benefits of using non-conventional energy sources include:

1. Reduced pollution: They produce minimal waste and don't emit greenhouse gases or other pollutants.
2. Sustainability: They are naturally replenished and can meet the energy demands of present and future generations.
3. Security of energy supply: They help reduce dependence on fossil fuels, which are finite and subject to price fluctuations and potential shortages.
4. Cost-effectiveness: They can be obtained at a low cost.
5. Wide availability: They are abundant in nature.

- 96.** Is it correct to say that environmental degradation is not just a national issue ? Illustrate with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

1. It is correct to say that environmental degradation is not just a national issue. It is no longer region or nation specific. Development has caused a high degree of environmental degradation in many countries. When the 'tsunami' hit the South and South-East Asian coasts, various countries of the world came forward to help the victims. The ice in the Arctic and Antarctic is melting because of increased emission of green house gases into the atmosphere. This may cause floods in low lying areas like Bangladesh and the Maldives.

2. The environmental degradation as a global problem : In the long run, the

- which plays an important role in providing food security to the people.
3. Improving infrastructure facilities like railway, airways, waterways, banking etc. to become affordable for common people.
  55. Give the meaning of economic development. What are the two indicators to measure the development of a country ?

or

What is meant by economic development ? Write the two basis of measuring the economic development of a country.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

Economic development is a process through which per capita income and economic welfare of the people increases in a long term process.

**Indicators to measure the development of a country :**

1. National Income : It is the sum total of all factor income of the country during a period of one year.
2. Per Capita Income :  $\frac{\text{National Income}}{\text{Total Population}}$

56. Describe any three public facilities needed for development.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020, 2018

Public facilities needed for development are as follows:

1. Pollution free environment : Government should take care to provide pollution free environment by setting industries outside residential areas, by keeping check on vehicles, by planting more trees etc.
2. Government should open more schools and colleges so that most of the children get educated and should also arrange it at most nominal cost.
3. Collective security for the whole locality : It should be government's responsibility to provide security to the people for the localities as a whole.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

57. What is meant by human development ? Mention various criteria of measuring human development.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

1. Meaning of Human Development : Human development touches upon social, economic, political and cultural aspects of human life with special emphasis on reduction in poverty and narrowing down the gap of inequality and unemployment.
2. Various criteria of measuring Human Development : A long and healthy life, to get education, information and knowledge, to have opportunities to earn livelihood, to have access to the natural resources for a decent standard of life, to have a personal and social security, equality and enjoyment of human rights.

58. Suggest some ways which can be helpful in creating employment in rural areas.

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

Some measures to create employment in rural areas are :

1. By promoting rural industries like craft industry and other small scale industry.
2. By providing them skill based training.
3. By supporting them financially to establish self-employment.

59. Explain 'national income' and 'per capita income'.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

National income is defined as the total value of all final goods and services produced within a country plus net income from transactions (like export and import) with other countries. When total national income is divided by the total population, it is called per capita income. It is also called average income.

60. Why is per capita income of different countries calculated in dollars and not in their own currencies by the World Bank ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

Dollar is a hard currency. It is accepted by all member nations of the World Bank.

38. Which of the following neighboring country has a better performance in terms of human development than India?

(a) Bangladesh      (b) Sri Lanka  
(c) Nepal            (d) Pakistan

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

(b) Sri Lanka

39. **Assertion :** Non-renewable resources are abundant in nature.

**Reason :** Non-renewable resources can be replenished over a period of time.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
(b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
(c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2019

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

40. The development goals can be classified into which one of the following groups?

- (a) Material and spiritual  
(b) Physical and mental  
(c) Short-term and long-term  
(d) Material and non-material

**Ans :**

SQP 2010, 2008

(d) Material and non-material

41. How would you calculate Body Mass Index?

- (a) Dividing the weight by the square of the height.  
(b) Dividing the height by weight.  
(c) Dividing the weight by height.  
(d) Adding height to the weight of the person.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007

(a) Dividing the weight by the square of the height

42. Infant mortality rate refers to the number of the children that die :

- (a) before the age of one year as a proportion to 1000 live births in that particular year.  
(b) before the age of five years as a proportion to 1000 live births in that particular year.

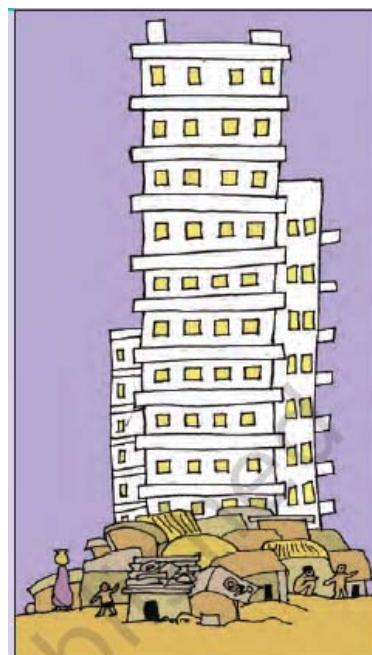
- (c) before the age of one year as a proportion to 100 live births in that particular year.  
(d) out of 1000 live births in that particular year.

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (a) before the age of one year as a proportion to 1000 live births in that particular year.

43. Look at the picture carefully. What should be the prime developmental goal for such an area?



- (a) Slums should be removed from here  
(b) The number of storey of the building should be increased.  
(c) Through regular work and better wages, the income of slum area people should be increased.  
(d) Availability of amusement park.

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- (c) Through regular work and better wages, the income of slum area people should be increased.

44. Arrange the following as PER CAPITA INCOME of these STATES (from high to low):

1. Goa
2. Haryana

centralised control and direction over economy and society.

- 67.** How education can play an important role in development ?

Ans :

OD 2020

Education of good quality is the need of hour. Learning is a life long process. It includes not only academic qualification but also professional and occupational education based on morality and ethics. Free and compulsory education must be given upto senior secondary level. Special arrangement of good schools should be made for all needy, poor and backward sections of the society. Schools and colleges are not only needed in urban areas but also in rural areas. An ample arrangement of professional education and training is equally necessary.

- 68.** Mention any three characteristics of development.

Ans :

SOP 2016

1. Per capita income : This is the total national income (GDP) divided by the total population.
2. Life expectancy at birth : This is the number of years, a new born child is expected to live if subject to the mortality risks prevailing for the population concerned.
3. Literacy rate : This is the total percentage of the population of an area at a particular time aged 7 years or above, who can read and write with understanding atleast one language.

- 69.** Landless rural labourers also have developmental goals for them. State any three such goals.

Ans :

Delhi 2006

1. There should not be social discrimination in the village on the basis of economic position or status.
2. More days of work and better wages. It will provide them more working days and more income.

3. Quality education for their children. Everybody desires better generation of their families.

- 70.** A girl from a rich urban family has some development goals for her. State any three of such goals.

Ans :

Comp 2019

1. She wants to get as much freedom as her brother has.
2. She wishes to be able to decide what she wants to do in life.
3. Her brother should also share in the household work.
4. She should be able to pursue her studies abroad.

- 71.** What do you mean by human development index ? What are its three components ?

Ans :

Foreign 2015, 2011

1. HDI means Human Development Index. It is another measure of the level of development of a country. It includes other things than income. It compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.
2. It comprises : (i) Life expectancy, (ii) Gross Enrolment Ratio and (iii) Per Capita Income.

- 72.** What is meant by economic development? What are the two bases of measuring economic development of a country ?

Ans :

Comp 2015

1. Economic Development means a long term increase in the per capita income along with rise in standard of living.

2. It is measured by calculating the average or per capita income.

Another bases of measuring economic development are : Per Capita Income and National Income.

- 73.** What is Public Distribution system ? Explain its two advantages.

Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Development      (b) Per capita income
- (c) Average income    (d) Sustainability

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

- (a) Development

**50. Assertion :** The average income of a country is about US\$ 12,056; however, the country is still not a developed country.

**Reason :** The income levels are highly skewed for the country.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**51. How to create more employment in rural areas? Explain with examples.**

**Ans :**

OD 2023

There are several ways to create more employment in rural areas:

1. There should be the promotion of other manufacturing and service-based activities in the villages so that the dependence on the agriculture industry gets reduced.
  2. The Self Help Groups and the cooperatives should work to establish and promote new economic activities like the establishment of cottage industries in the village which can employ the people.
- 52. 'The issue of sustainability is important for development.' Examine the statement.**

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

1. Sustainable development aims at fulfilling the needs of today without compromising the needs of the future generation.
2. Sustainability is the capability to use the resources judiciously and maintain the ecological balance.
3. It lays emphasis on environmental protection and check environmental degradation.
4. Sustainability is important to stop over exploitation and over use of resources.

**53. "Different persons can have different developmental goals." Support the statement with example.**

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

Different persons can have different developmental goals. People have varied growth goals because their needs, wants, and ways of living vary from one another.

1. For instance, a landless worker in the countryside may have wage growth as one of his development goals. Farmers who rely on rain to grow their crops may expect more rain to provide healthy crops that will support their livelihood.
2. A wealthy farmer, for example, may want to ensure a high family income through greater support prices for their crops, hard labour, and inexpensive labourers, children to be settled overseas, whereas a landless rural labourer may prefer more days of work and better salaries.

**54. Suggest any three ways to improve public facilities in India.**

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

The three ways to improve public facilities in India are given below :

1. Imparting education because it is the most important public facility which is required both by the rich as well as the poor.
2. Improving Public Distribution System because it is another important facility

3. The government to provide the loans at cheap rates in case of any calamity like drought etc.
- (b) (i) More ornaments and beautiful clothes.  
(ii) To provide good education to her children.  
(iii) To marry her children in good families.
80. What can be aspirations/goals of a rural woman from land owning family ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009, 2005

1. More ornaments and beautiful clothes.
2. To provide good education to her children.
3. To marry her children in good families.

81. Explain the causes of environmental degradation.

**Ans :**

SOP 2013

Causes of environmental degradation :

1. Population is increasing on one hand and awakening civilization has made aware of so many articles of comforts and luxuries on the other hand.
2. The demand for the necessities, comforts and luxuries has been increasing with the flood of knowledge and awakening. It has led the man to bigger exploitation of the natural resources.
3. The over cultivation of these natural gifts has disturbed the ecological balance and it has created environment problems- range from national to local levels. All these have created such an atmosphere in which it has become difficult to live in.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

82. How is the issue of sustainability important for development? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

1. Sustainable development is a development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs.

2. The issue of sustainability is important for development because if the natural resources are not used carefully, they may not be available for future generations.
3. The depleting resources of a country may ultimately result in a lack of development of the country.

83. Why is the issue of sustainability important for development? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

The issue of sustainability is important for the development for a variety of reasons:

1. The fast pace of development has caused serious environmental concerns to environment as land degradation, exploitation of resources, loss of habitat for living organisms and many more. These things are causing a great threat to survival and have to be dealt with efficiently.
2. There is a rise in different kinds of pollution like land, air, water and noise which are harming the environment. It is the need of the hour to adopt a model of sustainable development which meets the demands of the present without compromising the future.
3. Sustainable development has become the necessity of the hour if we have continued to exploit the resources at the same rate as we are now then the future of our upcoming generations will be under severe threat.

84. "Money in your pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that you need to live well." Explain giving suitable examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

1. The per capita income of Punjab is higher than Kerala, but still it lacks behind in education and health facilities.
2. In Kerala, out of 1000 children born alive, 11 die before completing one year of age but in Punjab the proportion of children dying within one year of birth is 49, which is nearly five times more.

Therefore every country calculates its per capita income in dollars to provide real and exact picture of its economic growth as well as economic standard of their people. It is very easy to compare the per capita incomes of different countries having the datas of different countries in one important currency like dollars.

**61. What contributes to the human development?**

Ans :

SQP 2011

There are many economic as well as non-economic factors which contribute to the human development.

1. Living a long and a healthy life.
2. To have education, information and knowledge.
3. Enjoying a decent standard of living.
4. To have equality and enjoyment of human rights.
5. Enjoying basic fundamental rights like freedom, security, education etc.

**62. What are the aspirations or developmental goals of landless rural labourers ?**

Ans :

OD 2005

1. More days of work and better wages.
2. Educational facilities to provide quality education to their children.
3. There should be no social discrimination so that their children could became leaders in the village.

**63. What can be the aspirations or goals of prosperous farmers of Punjab ?**

Ans :

Foreign 2020

1. Higher support prices for their crops.
2. Hard working and cheap labourers.
3. To settle their children abroad.

**64. Why do you think average income is an important criterion for development ? Explain.**

Ans :

Comp 2022

1. For comparing countries, their income is considered to be one of the most important attributes.

2. Countries with higher income are more developed than others with less income.
3. This is based on the understanding that more income means more of all the things that human beings need. Whatever people like, and should have, they will be able to get with greater income. So, greater income itself is considered to be one important goal.

**65. Explain the following terms :**

- (a) Infant Mortality Rate.
- (b) Net Attendance Ratio
- (c) Literacy Rate

Ans :

OD 2017

- (a) Infant Mortality Rate : It indicates the number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year.
- (b) Net Attendance Ratio : It is total number of children of age group 6-10 attending school in a percentage of total number of children in the same age group.
- (c) Literacy Rate : It measures the proportion of literate population in the 7 and above age group.

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

**66. Explain the meaning of the following terms :**

- (a) Macro-Economics,
- (b) Economic Growth
- (c) Central Planning

Ans :

Foreign 2017, 2015

- (a) Macro-Economics : Study of large economic systems such as those of whole country or areas of the world.
- (b) Economic Growth : Development connected with the trade, industry and wealth of a country.
- (c) Central Planning : A form of economic and social planning associated with state

Note : This criterion is not applicable to growing children as their speed of growth is generally extra-ordinary.

89. Why do different persons have different notions of development ? Discuss.

Ans :

SQP 2019, 2015

Causes responsible to have different notions of development : Different persons have different notions of development because life situations of persons are different. Some persons are poor and some are rich. They think about those things which are most important to them. Poor person will think about his basic needs such as food, clothing and shelter. He cannot think about costly things like car. On the other hand, a rich person think of having another luxurious car. Thus people have different notions of development and think according to their life situations.

90. What is meant by National Development ? Give your own opinion.

Ans :

Comp 2019

The notion of national development is varied. Every individual has his own developmental goal which may sometimes differ or even conflict with goals of others. However, the idea is to benefit large number of people. It may include :

1. fair and just path for all.
2. provide pollution free environment.
3. provide best health, education facilities.
4. develop best kind of infrastructure, i.e. , road, railways, industry, etc.
5. increase per capita income.
6. increase purchasing power parity.

91. What does sustainability of development mean ? How can sustainable development be achieved?

Ans :

SQP 2008

Sustainability of development is an important issue because :

1. Suppose presently, a particular country is quite developed. We would certainly like

this level of development to go up further or atleast be maintained for future generations.

2. Since, the second half of the 20th century, a number of scientists have been warning that the type and levels of development are not sustainable.
3. Groundwater is an example of renewable resource. But if we use more than what is replenished by nature, then we would be overusing this resource.
4. Once the non-renewable resources would be exhausted, we won't be able to use them in future. So, using the resources judiciously will help in maintaining the sustainability of development of our ecosystem.

92. Distinguish between developed and underdeveloped countries.

Ans :

Comp 2016, 2011

Developed Countries :

1. These countries have high per capita income.
2. The standard of living of the people is high.
3. For example, USA, UK, Japan etc.

Underdeveloped Countries :

1. These countries have low per capita income.
2. The standard of living of the people is low.
3. For example, Nepal, Pakistan etc.

93. With the help of an example show how two groups may have different notions of development.

Ans :

Foreign 2009

1. For example, two groups of people may have different notions of development. Industrialists may consider construction of dams as development as it provides electricity that they need. Tribals, farmers and other groups may resent this as the construction of dam may lead to submergence of their land and thus lead to displacement and loss of livelihood.

*Why are only ‘final goods and services’ counted? In contrast to final goods, goods such as wheat and the wheat flour in this example are intermediate goods. Intermediate goods are used up in producing final goods and services. The value of final goods already includes the value of all the intermediate goods that are used in making the final goods. Hence, the value of ₹ 60 for the biscuits (final good) already includes the value of flour (₹ 10). Similarly, the value of all other intermediate goods would have been included. To count the value of the flour and wheat separately is therefore not correct because then, we would be counting the value of the same things a number of times. First as wheat, then as flour and finally as biscuits. The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of production in the three sectors gives is called the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. It is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year. GDP shows how big the economy is. In India, the mammoth task of measuring GDP is undertaken by a Central Government Ministry. This Ministry, with the help of various government departments of all the Indian states and Union Territories, collects information relating to total volume of goods and services and their prices and then estimates the GDP.*

#### Questions :

1. What do you understand by term GDP?
2. Why only final goods are counted while calculating GDP?
3. Highlight the difference between final and intermediary goods.

Ans :

1. Gross Domestic Product (GDP) is the total monetary or market value of all the finished goods and services produced within a country’s borders in a specific time period. As a broad measure of overall domestic production, it functions

as a comprehensive scorecard of a given country’s economic health.

2. GDP is the sum of the money value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year within a country. Only the value of final goods and services are counted in GDP because the value of final goods already includes the value of all the intermediate goods.
3. Differences between final and intermediary goods are

Basis for Comparison	Final Goods	Intermediate Goods
Meaning	Final goods are the goods ready for sale to the ultimate consumer, to satisfy their wants.	Intermediate goods are goods which can be used as raw materials for production of other goods.
Nature	Finished goods	Unfinished or partly-finished goods

108. Study the given data carefully and answer the following questions:

Table: INDIA : Growth of GDP and major sectors in (%).

Sector	2002-2007 (10th plan project)	2007-2012 (11th plan project)
Agriculture	1.7	4.1
Industries	8.3	10.5
Services	9.0	9.9
GDP	7.2	9.0

#### Questions :

1. What was the growth rate of India’s GDP in 11th Five Year Plan?

ecology crisis will adversely affect all of us. Actions of one country effect not only other countries but future generations as well. If, all non-renewable resources are exhausted then nothing will be left for future generations. Thus, the environmental degradation has become an international issue and must be tackled by all countries jointly, otherwise future generations will suffer all over the world.

- 97.** "Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of economic development". Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

The statement can be justified through the following point :

1. As no country is self-sufficient in all resources, it cannot survive without international trade.
2. If the balance of international trade is favourable in a country, it will be able to earn more foreign exchange.
3. International trade encourages a country to develop secondary and tertiary sectors for exporting those goods which can fetch more foreign exchange.
4. A country's economic development and prosperity can be gauged by the health of its international trade.
5. A country can earn large amount of foreign exchange through international trade. India exports approximately 7500 commodities to about 190 countries and imports about 6000 commodities from 140 countries. India exported commodities worth US \$ 318.2 billion in 2014. And India's share in export is increasing every year.

- 98.** Why people should be healthy and ornamented with education ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

1. Causes of importance of education for the people in the process of development : People of a country or human resource available there is the most valuable wealth. Without people, we cannot

imagine a society or a nation. Number of the people is not so vital as their's being in good health and education not confined merely to subjects but imbued in thorough knowledge upon sustainable-living for all (viz. peaceful co-existence with eco-system as a whole).

2. For development of personality of individuals : Healthy mind is in a healthy body. If we want building a powerful nation, we should be very careful about the health of the people comprising physical, mental and spiritual (intuitive) health-all at a place viz. at and within each individual.
3. Education modifies the behaviour of people : Education is second important factor after health care. Education modifies behaviour of every person. It extracts of the best of an individual. Without education, man is merely a mammal like cattle and cats. Better the education, the better will be the people of the country.
4. Education impoves the skills of the people : A well educated or well trained person in a profession or skill is definitely can work better as an engineer, as a doctor, as a planner, as an industrialist or even as a ordinary worker than totally uneducated or untrained person. For an individual, for family, for society or for country and even now a days in unified world educated population is a blessings because he can contribute for tackling global problems in a better way such as environment protection or problem of earth warming or pollution, deforestation, low level of earth water, air pollution etc.

- 99.** What do you understand by the term natural resources? How does exhaustion of natural resources become a great problem ? Suggest some steps to solve various problems related with natural resources.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017, 2012

Natural resources are available with nature. Land, water, minerals and forests are some

**Ans :**

OD 2011

1. Public Distribution System is a system to distribute ration to the poor at a reasonable rate through government ration shops.
  1. Poor people get ration items at a subsidized rate.
  2. Health and nutritional status of the poor can be improved.
- 74.** Explain the concepts of Human Development Index (HDI) and that of the per capita income.

**Ans :**

SOP 2014

1. Human Development Index and per capita income are two measures to evaluate the level of development of a country. They are based on different criterion.
  2. HDI is average of educational level index, health status index and per capita income index, whereas per capita income is average income of the country, i.e., total income of the country divided by its total population.
- 75.** Why is literacy essential for the economic development? Explain.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2014

Literacy is essential for economic development because it :

1. gives knowledge and skill and generates employment.
2. develops the ability to implement modern technology and establishes new enterprise.
3. reduces health cost by making people aware about sanitation, hygiene, different kinds of illness and ways to prevent them.
4. does researches to invent better technologies to improve productivity and follows the path of sustainable development.

- 76.** Explain the following terms :

1. Life expectancy at birth
2. Gross enrolment ratio
3. Per capita income in dollars

**Ans :**

Comp 2008, 2006

1. Life expectancy at birth denotes average expected length of life of a person at the time of birth.
  2. Gross Enrolment Ratio for three levels means enrolment ratio for primary school, secondary school and higher education beyond secondary school.
  3. Per Capita Income, i.e., nation's average income is calculated in dollars for all countries so that it can be compared with that of other countries.
- 77.** What is the meaning of 'Infant Mortality Rate' (IMR)? Give two main reasons for low IMR in Kerala.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

1. Infant Mortality Rate indicates the number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year.
2. Reasons for low IMR in Kerala :
  - (i) High literacy rate
  - (ii) Good health facilities.

- 78.** Explain any three main aspects of measuring Human Development Index according to UNDP Report of 1990.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

1. Per Capita Income - It means total income generated divided by the total population of a country.
2. Life Expectancy at Birth - It denotes average expected length of life of a person at the time of birth.
3. Gross Enrolment Ratio for three levels - It means enrolment ratio for primary school, secondary school and higher education beyond secondary school.

- 79.** What can be the aspirations or goals of farmers who depend only on rain for growing crop ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

1. Sufficient rain at the proper time.
2. The prosperous farmers in the village to provide the food grains in case of failure of rains.

picture of a country. This system hides disparities among people.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 102.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Besides seeking more income, one way or the other, people also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect for others. They resent discrimination. All these are important goals. In fact, in some cases, these may be more important than more income or more consumption because material goods are not all that you need to live.*

*Money, or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But the quality of our life also depends on non-material things mentioned above. If it is not obvious to you, then just think of the role of your friends in your life. You may desire their friendship. Similarly, there are many things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot to our lives. These are often ignored. However, it will be wrong to conclude that what cannot be measured is not important. Consider another example. If you get a job in a far off place, before accepting it you would try to consider many factors, apart from income, such as facilities for your family, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn. In another case, a job may give you less pay but may offer regular employment that enhances your sense of security. Another job, however, may offer high pay but no job security and also leave no time for your family. This will reduce your sense of security and freedom.*

**Questions :**

1. Do you think an enhanced income is the only goal of one's life? Substantiate your answer with any two examples.
2. Which factors would you consider before you accept a job?

**Ans :**

2024

1. Equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect for others. All these are important goals besides an enhanced income. We don't live by just material needs. Friends in our lives are very important and their friendship mean a lot in our lives.
2. I would consider accepting a job which gives me the required pay along with facilities for my family and the time to spend with them. It should have a good working atmosphere enabling good opportunity to learn and job security. I should have a sense of security and freedom.

- 103.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

*For comparing countries, their income is considered to be one of the most important attributes. Countries with higher income are more developed than others with less income. This is based on the understanding that more income means more of all things that human beings need. Whatever people like, and should have, they will be able to get with greater income. So, greater income itself is considered to be one important goal. Now, what is the income of a country? Intuitively, the income of the country is the income of all the residents of the country. This gives us the total income of the country. However, for comparison between countries, total income is not such an useful measure. Since, countries have different populations, comparing total income will not tell us what an average person is likely to earn. Are people in one country better off than others in a different country? Hence, we compare the average income which is the total income of the country divided by its total population. The average income is also called per capita income. In World Development Reports, out by the World Bank, this criterion is used in classifying countries.*

**Questions :**

1. Explain the significance of per capita Income.

3. Money or higher per capita income cannot buy a pollution-free environment or good health.
  4. Money cannot buy peace and democracy. In short we can say that money is important but it is not everything.
- 85.** Explain any three aspects of comparison of economic development of different nations/states.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

The bases or aspects of comparison of economic development :

1. National Income : A country with higher level of national income is considered more developed/advanced than a country which has a low level of national income. As the size of national income expands there is more availability of goods and services in the country. More goods and services mean higher level of consumption and standard of living of the people.
  2. Per Capita Income : Per capita income is considered as a better indication of economic development. Increase in per capita income leads to improvement in the standard of living.
  3. Life expectancy at birth : It indicates the number of years newborn is expected to live.
  4. Gross enrolment ratio : It refers to enrolment ratio for primary schools, secondary schools and higher education beyond secondary schools.
- 86.** Why are countries of the Middle East not called ‘developed’ in spite of high per capita income ?

**Ans :**

OD 2011

Countries of the Middle East are not called ‘developed’ because their performance on various indicators related to development is low. For example,

1. There is no freedom of speech and expression in many countries.
2. Women and men are not treated equally.
3. Preferential treatment to people belonging to one religion.

4. Disparity among people.
5. Health indicators are not good.
6. Literacy level is low.

- 87.** Why are public facilities needed for the development of the country ? Explain any four public facilities.

or

What do you mean by public facilities ? Why are they important? Name two public facilities available in India.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

1. Public facilities refer to facilities which a person cannot purchase or arrange at individual level; these are provided by the government.

These are important because money in our pocket cannot buy all services required for a better quality of life. For example, pollution free environment, better transport, safety, protection from infectious diseases.

2. Following are the main public facilities which are needed for development :
- (i) Pollution free environment
  - (ii) Protection from infectious diseases
  - (iii) Good infrastructure
  - (iv) Good law and order situation
  - (v) Provision for safe drinking water, sanitation and public distribution system.

- 88.** How is BMI calculated ?

**Ans :**

OD 2013

BMI or Body Mass Index is calculated by taking the following three steps :

Step No. 1 : Weight of person in kg and height in metres is taken.

Step No. 2 : Divide the weight by the square of the height.

$$\text{BMI} = \frac{\text{Weight}}{(\text{Height})^2}$$

Step No. 3 : If  $\text{BMI} < 18.5$ , then person is undernourished.

If  $\text{BMI} > 25$ , then person is overweight.

relationship between poverty and population.

Ans :

2024

1. Investments in better healthcare provide people with access to essential healthcare services, such as vaccinations, prenatal care, and treatment for common diseases. This can help to reduce the number of people who die from preventable diseases (mortality) and who suffer from chronic conditions (morbidity).
2. An expanding population can exert pressure on a country's resources, including food, water, and land, which can consequently result in heightened poverty levels as individuals may face insufficient access to nourishment and adequate housing.  
(to be assessed as a whole)
3. Population growth can strain resources and infrastructure, potentially increasing poverty.
  - (a) The age structure of a population affects labour markets and social support systems, which can impact poverty levels.
  - (b) Rural-urban distribution determines access to essential services and economic opportunities, further influencing poverty rates.
  - (c) Poverty can contribute to specific population dynamics, such as high fertility rates and limited access to healthcare, perpetuating the cycle of poverty.
  - (d) any other relevant point  
(two points to be assessed for two marks)

- 106.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*However, for comparison between countries, total income is not such an useful measure. Since, countries have different populations, comparing total income will not tell us what an average person is likely to earn. Hence, we compare the average income which is the total income of the country divided by its total*

*population. The average income is also called Per Capita Income.*

*In World Development Reports, brought out by the World Bank, this criterion is used in classifying countries. Countries with Per Capita Income of US \$ 12,056 per annum and above in 2017, are called rich countries and those with her capita income of US \$ 955 or less are called low-income-countries. India comes in the category of low middle income countries because its Per Capita Income in 2017 was just US \$ 1820 per annum. The rich countries, excluding countries of Middle East and certain other small countries, are generally called developed countries.*

#### Questions :

1. Which factors are not considered while calculating total income?
2. What is the significance of classification of countries by the World Bank?
3. World Development Report has categorised the India as low middle income country. Do you agree with the results of this report.

Ans :

1. The total income calculates the sum total of income earned only. It does not consider the total number of population into which that income is divided.
2. Classification of countries by the World Bank is a way to know how many countries fall in rich, middle and low income groups. With this information, the World Bank terms the countries as developed or developing.
3. Yes, World Development Report on categorising India as low middle income country is correct because India's per capita income is much lower than the income of developed countries like US. At the same time, the per capita income of India is higher than low income countries. Therefore, India's category as a low middle income country is correct.

- 107.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

of the natural resources. Minerals are non-renewable resources.

#### **Exhaustion of natural resources and other problems :**

If the natural resources such as minerals are used indiscriminately, they will be exhausted. For example, if people in the world continue to use crude oil in the present manner, it will run out of stock in next 43 years. Then there are countries like USA which are using their military and economic power to get maximum oil from other countries. India is dependent on other countries for oil and spending a lot of foreign exchange on its import.

#### **Steps for solving problems :**

In view of the above problems, steps should be taken for the sustainability of development.

1. Natural resources like crude oil should not be used indiscriminately.
2. Alternate modes of energy i.e., solar energy or wind energy and others should be used so that a part of limited natural resources may be preserved for future generations.
3. There should be planned and judicious use of natural resources.
4. In countries like India where a large amount of foreign exchange is being spent on import of crude oil, efforts must be made for its planned and judicious use.

- 100.** Describe various efforts made by the Government of India in the field of health.

or

What efforts have been made by the government to provide health services after independence ?

**Ans :**

OD 2016

1. The government has created an extensive network of Community Health Centres, Primary Health Centres (PHC) and sub-centres to take care of health services in rural areas.
2. In the field of health a wide range of activities are covered under health such as population control, family welfare, prevention of food adulteration, drug control, immunization and eradication

of major communicable and non-communicable diseases and health concerns.

3. The mortality rate has been going down because of National Health Programmes such as to control and eradication of malaria, tuberculosis, AIDS, leprosy, blindness, cancer, iodine deficiency, diabetes etc. The infant mortality rate declined from 134 per thousand at the time of independence to about 64 in 2006 in case of male and about 67 in case of female children per thousand. Life expectancy has risen from 32 years (1974) to about 64 years (2006).

- 101.** What is the main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries ? What are the limitations of this criterion, if any ?

or

Describe the main criterion used by World Bank to classify different countries of the World.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015, 2010

- I. **Average Income or Per Capita Income :** In World Development Report, 2006, the World Bank has used the criterion of average income or per capita income in classifying different countries. The average income or the per capita income is the total income of the country divided by its population. According to above report, countries with per capita income of Rs. 4,53,000 per annum and above in 2004 are called rich countries and those with per capita income of Rs. 37,000 or less are called low income countries.

- II. **Limitations :** Limitations of this criterion are that while average income is useful for competition, it does not tell us how this income is distributed among people. A country may have more equitable distribution. People may be neither very rich nor extremely poor. But in another country with same average income, one person may be extremely rich, while others may be very poor. So, the method of average income does not give correct

2. What was the growth rate in agriculture in the 11th Plan, i.e., 2007-12?
3. Mention any factor responsible for the low growth rate of the agricultural sector.

**Ans :**

1. Growth rate in 2007-12 = 9.
2. About four per cent.
3. (a) The government has reduced the public investment in the agriculture sector, particularly in irrigation, power, rural roads, market and mechanisation.
- (b) Subsidy on fertilisers and the inputs has been decreased leading to an increase in the cost of production.

- 109.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Large MNCs in developed countries place orders for production with small producers. Garments, footwear, sports items are examples of industries where production is carried out by a large number of small producers around the world. The products are supplied to the , MNCs, which then sell these under their own brand names to the customers. These large MNCs have tremendous power to determine price, quality, delivery and labour conditions for these distant producers.*

*Thus, we see that there are a variety of ways in which the MNCs are spreading their production and interacting with local producers in various countries across the globe.*

*By setting up partnerships with local companies, by using the local companies for supplies, by closely competing with the local companies or buying them up, MNCs are exerting a strong influence on production at these distant locations. As a result, production in these widely dispersed locations is getting interlinked.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Explain the term ‘small producers.
2. State the reason due to which large MNCs are invited by a government in a country.
3. How MNCs interlink production? Explain.

**Ans :**

1. Small producers refer to those producers who are producing consumer goods of small value like footwear, garments, sports items, etc.
2. Government invites large MNCs for the following reasons
  - The large MNCs invest in the country by opening factories, offices which provide employment to people.
  - Large MNCs support local producers by giving them bulk orders.
3. MNCs interlink production by
  - Buying the local companies completely.
  - Setting up partnership with local companies.

- 110.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions that follow :

*“Money in your pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that you may need to live well. So, income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use. For example, normally, your money cannot buy you a pollution-free environment or ensure that you get unadulterated medicines, unless you can afford to shift to a community that already has all these things. Money may also not be able to protect you from infectious diseases, unless the whole of your community takes preventive steps.”*

#### **Questions :**

1. Between Punjab and Kerala which state has more average income but lags behind in public facilities ?
2. What is the value of providing some services collectively? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

1. Punjab.
2. It is cheaper and valuable to provide some goods and services collectively. For example, a school cannot be opened by the rich for their only son or a daughter. There should be a school where all children are able to study. Similarly

2. What are the classifications of countries based on per capita income, and which entity is responsible for determining these classifications?"

**Ans :** 2024

- The Per capita income enables comparisons between countries and provides insights into the relative economic performance and living standards across different nations.  
Per capita income also serves as an important indicator of the standard of living in a country.
  - The countries are classified into "High income or Rich countries and low income countries based on their per capita Income. If it is US \$ 49,300 per annum they will be classified as rich country and if the per capita income is US\$ 2500 per annum it will be called a poor country. World Bank determines this classification.
- 104.** Read the information about climate-smart agriculture and answer the question that follows.

*Climate-smart agriculture (CSA) is an approach that helps guide actions to transform agri-food systems towards green and climate-resilient practices. CSA supports reaching internationally-agreed goals such as the Sustainable Development Goals and the Paris Agreement on climate change. CSA supports the Food and Agriculture Organisation Strategic Framework 2022-2031 based on the Four Betters: better production, better nutrition, a better environment and a better life for all, leaving no one behind.*

*Source (edited): Food and Agriculture Organisation*

#### Questions :

- A CSA expert suggested increased production and consumption of millets in India. Justify their stance.
- What is the necessity to think of CSA in India?
- Suggest two methods through which India can shift towards CSA.

**Ans :**

2024

- Millets have high nutritional value.
  - They are rainfed, hardly need any irrigation facilities and hence can be grown in arid and semi-arid regions.
  - Millets do not require a lot of investment to flourish which can help them be great commercial grain substitutes in poorer nations.
- It is important to start planning for CSA in India because of the changing climate due to global warming.
- (a) use of genetically-modified seeds resistant to insect damage for cropping  
(b) shift towards organic and natural farming methods

- 105.** Read the passage given below and answer the questions followed:

*Population trends and dynamics can have an enormous effect on prospects for poverty reduction and sustainable development. Poverty is influenced by – and influences – population dynamics, including population growth, age structure, and rural-urban distribution. All of this has a critical impact on a country's development prospects and prospects for raising living standards for the poor. Investments in better health, including reproductive health, are essential for individual security and for reducing mortality and morbidity (the condition of suffering from a disease or medical condition), which in turn improve a country's productivity and development prospects.*

#### Questions :

- How does investing in improved healthcare infrastructure contribute to the reduction of preventable diseases and chronic conditions?
- Explain the relationship between population trends and poverty reduction.
- 'Poverty is influenced by – and influences – population dynamics, including population growth, age structure, and rural-urban distribution.' Analyse the statement and highlight the mutual

in classifying countries. Countries with per capita income of US \$ 12,056 per annum and above in 2017, are called rich countries and those with per capita income of US \$ 955 or less are called low-income countries. India comes in the category of low middle income countries because its per capita income in 2017 was just US \$ 1820 per annum.

Groundwater is an example of renewable resources. These resources are replenished by nature as in the case of crops and plants. However, even these resources may be overused. For example, in the case of groundwater, if we use more than what is being replenished by rain then we would be overusing this resource.

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by economic development?
2. Why India comes in the category of low middle income countries?
3. Why groundwater is the best example of renewable resources?

**Ans :**

1. The economic development is the process of improving economic well-being and quality of life of a nation, region or local community.
2. India comes in the category of low middle income countries because its per capita income in 2017 was just US \$ 1820 per annum.
3. The groundwater is the best example of renewable resources because these resources are replenished by nature as in the case of crops and plants.

114. Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*Besides seeking more income, one-way or the other, people also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect of others. They resent discrimination. All these are important goals. In fact, in some cases, these may be more important than more income or more consumption because material goods are not all that you need to live. Money, or material things that one can buy with it,*

*is one factor on which our life depends. But the quality of our life also depends on non-material things mentioned above. If it is not obvious to you, then just think of the role of your friends in your life. You may desire their friendship. Similarly, there are many things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot to our lives. These are often ignored. However, it will be wrong to conclude that what cannot be measured is not important. Consider another example, if you get a job in a far off place, before accepting it you would try to consider many factors, apart from income, such as facilities for your family, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn. In another case, a job may give you less pay but may offer regular employment that enhances your sense of security.*

*Another job, however, may offer high pay but no job security and also leave no time for your family. This will reduce your sense of security and freedom. Similarly, for development, people look at a mix of goals. It is true that if women are engaged in paid work, their dignity in the household and society increases. However, it is also the case that if there is respect for women there would be more sharing of housework and a greater acceptance of women working outside. A safe and secure environment may allow more women to take up a variety of jobs or run a business. Hence, the developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.*

**Questions :**

1. What do you mean by income?
2. Why people seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect of others?
3. Why does job may give you less pay but enhances your sense of security?
4. What are the things people seek for development?

**Ans :**

1. The term income refer to the financial gain occurring over a given time period.

security arrangement in an area should be made collectively and not on individual basis to make it valuable and successful.

- 111.** Study the given table carefully, and answer the questions that follow :

Country	Human Development Index of India and its Neighbours				
	Per Capita Income in US \$	Life expectancy at birth	Literacy rate for 15 + yrs population	Gross enrolment ratio for three levels	HDI rank in the world
India	3139	64	61	60	126
Myanmar	1027	61	90	48	130
Pakistan	2225	63	50	35	134
Bangladesh	1870	63	41	53	137
Nepal	1490	62	50	61	138
Sri Lanka	4390	74	91	69	93

**Questions :**

- What are the components of human development ?
- Why is Sri Lanka's rank higher than India ?
- What is the per capita income of India ?
- Which country has the highest per capita income?

**Ans :**

- Per capital income, longevity and education.
- Because Sri Lanka leads in all components like the per capita income, education and longevity.
- \$ 3,139.
- Sri Lanka, i.e., \$ 4,390.

- 112.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*Besides seeking more income, one way or the other, people also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect of others. They resent discrimination. All these are important goals. In fact, in some cases, these may be more important than more income or more consumption because material goods are not all that you need to live. Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But the quality of our life also depends on non-material things mentioned above. If it is not obvious to you, then just think of the role of*

*your friends in your life. You may desire their friendship. Similarly, there are many things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot to our lives. These are often ignored.*

*For development, people look at a mix of goals. It is true that if women are engaged in paid work, their dignity in the household and society increases. However, it is also the case that if there is respect for women there would be more sharing of housework and a greater acceptance of women working outside. A safe and secure environment may allow more women to take up a variety of jobs or run a business. Hence, the developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.*

**Questions :**

- What are the things other than income which people seek for living?
- Write any two developmental goals of middle-class woman.
- What is the role of other important things than income, in life?

**Ans :**

- Engagement in paid work, their dignity in the household and society
- Income gives good standard of living but other important things than income give quality of life.
- Equal treatment, freedom, security and respect of others

- 113.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*The idea of development or progress has always been with us. We have aspirations or desires about what we would like to do and how we would like to live. Similarly, we have ideas about what a country should be like. What are the essential things that we require? Can life be better for all? How should people live together? Can there be more equality? Development involves thinking about these questions and about the ways in which we can work towards achieving these goals.*

*In World Development Reports, brought out by the World Bank, this criterion is used*

**Questions :**

- Calculate the difference in the infant mortality rate of Punjab and Kerala.
- Calculate the difference in literacy rate of Kerala and Bihar.
- Which state has the lowest HDI and why?

**Ans :**

- $49 - 11 = 38$
- $91 - 47 = 44\%$
- Because the Infant Mortality Rate of Bihar is high, i.e., 60, and its literacy level is low, i.e., 47%, so Bihar has the lowest HDI.

**119.** Study the table given below and answer the following questions :

State	Per capita income for 2002 - 2003 (in Rs.)
Punjab	26000
Kerala	22800
Bihar	5700

**Questions :**

- Which state has the lowest per capita income and why?
- Which state has the highest per capita income and why?

**Ans :**

- Bihar has the lowest per capita income because its literacy rate is low, health status is also poor and there is unemployment in Bihar.
- Per capita income of Kerala is the highest because literacy rate is high, there is better health status and more avenues of employment.

**120.** On the basis of the given table answer the following questions :

**COMPARISON OF TWO COUNTRIES**

	I	II	III	IV	V	Average
Country A	9500	10500	9800	10000	10200	
Country B	500	500	500	500	48000	

**Questions :**

- Calculate the average income of countries A and B.

- Are both the countries equally developed?
- Which country is better and why ?

**Ans :**

- The sum of income of country A is  

$$= 9500 + 10500 + 9800 + 10000 + 10200$$

$$= 50000$$

The average income is

$$= \frac{50000}{5} = 10000$$

Similarly, for country B

$$= \frac{500 + 500 + 500 + 500 + 48000}{5}$$

$$= 10000$$

- The national average of income of both the countries is the same, however, country A is more equitably developed as the income is equitably distributed. In country B, most of the people are poor except one section whose income is 48000.
- Country A is better because the citizens of country A are equally prosperous.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)
**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- ***Word File of Material for Teachers***

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App



# CHAPTER 17

## SECTORS OF THE INDIAN ECONOMY

### SUMMARY

1. Sector : A group of particular economic activities e.g. Primary, Secondary sectors.
2. Service Sector : All kinds of economic activities worth exchange in money, that cater to human needs and of public utility within and even outside a country through interstate and international trade.
3. Occupation : An economic activity known as job, profession, vocation, business etc.
4. Double Counting : It occurs when we count the value of the same commodity more than once. This creates a problem in the calculation of GDP.
5. Intermediate Goods : Those goods which are used up in production of another good e.g., cloth is used up in production of a pair of jeans.
6. Primary Activity : Primary activity includes those occupations which are closely related to man's natural environment. Gathering, hunting, fishing, lumbering, animal rearing, farming and mining are some of the important examples of primary activity.
7. Secondary Activity : The occupations which produce finished goods by using the products of primary activities as raw materials are included in the secondary activity. Manufacturing of cloth from cotton, sugar from sugarcane and steel from iron-ore are important examples of secondary activities.  
Tertiary Activity : Tertiary activity consists of all service occupations. Transport, communication, trade, health, education and administration are important examples of tertiary activity.

8. Private Sector : The private sector is owned and controlled by individuals or a group of individuals with the objective of profit making.
9. Public Sector : Public sectors are controlled and owned by the government with the aim of social welfare in general.
10. NREGA, 2005 : Under NREGA 2005, all those (villagers) who are able to tend in need of work have been guaranteed 100 days of employment in a year by the government. If the government fails to provide employment it will have to give unemployment allowances to the people.
11. Organised Sector : It covers those enterprises or places of work which are registered by the government and follow government rules and regulations under the Factories Act.
12. Un-organised Sector : It covers those small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government.
13. Employment : It is an activity undertaken for the sake of income in cash or kind.
14. Unemployment : It refers to a situation in which all able and willing persons do not get suitable jobs.
15. Seasonal Unemployment : Unemployment caused by the change in season.
16. Disguised Unemployment : A situation in which more persons are employed on a work than are actually required.
17. Quarternary Sector : A group of economic activities—that require high intelligence and initiation as also thought study upon three sectors to make them more viable, efficient and productive than these are in existing material form e.g., technical know-how, techniques, framework, road map, re-

- structurisation etc. This is popularly called Research and Development (R & D) sector.
18. Interdependence : An integral or inseparable link between or among different units or fractions of the whole in which one remains inert if another is not added to the same. e.g., interdependence of the words upon the brain while writing.
19. G.D.P. : Gross Domestic Product – The total value of final goods and services produced in a year within a country or nation. It includes contribution of all sectors (Primary, Secondary and Tertiary) of economy.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Which one of the following is an example of organized sector activities?
- A farmer irrigating his field
  - A handloom weaver working in her house
  - A headload worker carrying cement
  - A teacher taking classes in a government school

**Ans :** OD 2024

- (d) A teacher taking classes in a government school

2. Which one of the following pairs is correctly matched?
- Primary Sector – Money Lender
  - Secondary Sector – Priest
  - Tertiary Sector – Bank
  - Manufacturing Sector – Gardener

**Ans :** OD 2023

- (c) Tertiary Sector – Bank

3. Which one of the following is an activity of the unorganized sector?
- A teacher teaching in a school.
  - A worker going to work in a big factory.
  - A doctor treating patients in a hospital.
  - A daily wage labourer working under a contractor.

**Ans :** OD 2023

- (d) A daily wage labourer working under a contractor.

4. Which one of the following activities comes under ‘Primary sector’ ?
- Mining
  - Transport
  - Education
  - Storage

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) Mining

5. Which of the following profession belongs to the tertiary sector of economy ?
- Fisherman
  - Farmer
  - Factory worker
  - Teacher

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (d) Teacher

6. The employment and non-employment figures are taken from \_\_\_\_\_ to study the data.
- Real-Time Handbook of Statistics on Indian Economy.
  - National Statistical Office (NSSO)
  - NITI Aayog
  - Statistics information Bureau

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (b) National Statistical Office (NSSO)

7. What is the secondary sector?
- production of a good by exploiting natural resources
  - activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing
  - activities, by themselves, do not produce a good but they are an aid or support for the production process.
  - Mineral excavation

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020, 2017

- (b) activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing

8. Identify the sector:

- It provides various things needed by the society as a whole which the private sector will not provide at a reasonable price.
- The purpose of this sector is not just to earn profits but to social service also.

3. It creates employment opportunities through creation and expansion of infrastructure  
 4. It controls private monopolies.

**Option :**

- (a) Public Sector
- (b) Tertiary sector
- (c) Primary Sector
- (d) Private Sector

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (a) Public Sector

- 9. Assertion :** Employment opportunities in the organized sector have been expanding slowly.

**Reason :** Many organized sector enterprises work in the manner of unorganized sector, and the organized sectors don't want to give high wages to the workers.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 20112

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 10. From the given option select the functioning activity of the Tertiary sector.**

- (a) goods that are produced would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops
- (b) this sector gradually became associated with the different kinds of industries
- (c) activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing
- (d) produce a good by exploiting natural resources

**Ans :**

SOP 2020, 2015

- (a) goods that are produced would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops

- 11. Choose the incorrect option from the following :**

	List I	List II
(a)	Courier	Tertiary Sector
(b)	Fisherman	Primary Sector
(c)	Carpenter	Primary Sector
(d)	Banker	Tertiary Sector

**Ans :**

OD 2020

- (c) Carpenter - Primary Sector

- 12.** “Harita attends her office from 9:30 am to 5:30 pm. She gets her salary regularly at the end of every month. In addition to the salary, she also gets Provident Fund and other facilities as per the rules laid down by the Government.”

Identify the employment sector in which Harita is working.

- (a) Public Sector
- (b) Organized sector
- (c) unorganized sector
- (d) Private Sector

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (b) Organized sector

- 13. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:**

1. Large workers enter unorganized sector.
2. Many organized sector enterprises work in the manner of unorganized sector.
3. The organized sectors don't want to give high wages to the workers.
4. Employment opportunities in the organized sector have been expanding slowly.

**Option :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 3, 1, 4, 2 |
| (c) 2, 1, 3, 4 | (d) 4, 1, 2, 3 |

**Ans :**

SQP 2008

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4

- 14. Assertion :** GDP shows how big an economy is.

**Reason :** GDP is the value of all goods and services produced within the domestic territory of a country in a year.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

Comp 2012

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

15. In India, percentage of population employed in Agriculture has ..... from period of independence to the current date.

- (a) increased  
 (b) decreased  
 (c) remained constant  
 (d) nothing can be said

Ans :

SQP 2009

- (b) decreased

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

16. Which of these can be an indicator of economic growth for a country?

- (a) Balance of payment position  
 (b) Increase in government spending on defence  
 (c) increase in labour productivity  
 (d) demographic changes

Ans :

OD 2005

- (c) increase in labour productivity

17. Complete the following table with correct information and choose correct option.

Primary	Secondary	Tertiary
Raw materials for goods and services are provided for the Primary Sector.	A - ?	This sector provides services to both the primary and secondary sector

The primary sector uses traditional techniques and is mostly unorganised.	The secondary sector uses more reliable methods of production and is organised.	This sector uses modern-day logistics methods to execute its functions and is well organised.
This sector consists of forestry, agriculture and mining activities.	It involves manufacturing units, large firms, small scale units and multinational organisations.	B - ?

- (a) A-Secondary sector changes one good into another by building more from it. B- It involves dairy, minerals activities.
- (b) A-Secondary sector changes one good into another by building more from it. B-Insurance trade, Banking and communications come under this sector.
- (c) A-Secondary sector forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make. B- It involves houses and buildings
- (d) A-Secondary sector may not directly help in the production of goods. B-Insurance trade, Banking and communications come under this sector.

Ans :

Delhi 2008

- (b) A-Secondary sector changes one good into another by building more from it. B-Insurance trade, Banking and communications come under this sector.

18. In India, Contribution of Agriculture to GDP (in absolute amount terms) has ..... from period of independence to the current date.
- (a) increased  
 (b) decreased  
 (c) remained constant  
 (d) nothing can be said

Ans :

OD 2011

- (a) increased

19. The economic activity shown in the picture is related to which sector?



- (a) Public Sector      (b) Private Sector  
(c) Primary sector    (d) Secondary Sector

Ans : Camp 2010

20. Which of the following statements is correct?

  - (a) Service sector contributes more than half of the GDP of India.
  - (b) The scope of attracting tourists is limited as there is hardly any place of tourist attraction in India.
  - (c) As an economy grows, first service sector grows and then agriculture and industrial sector grows.
  - (d) None of the above

**Ans :** OD 2019, 2015

- (a) Service sector contributes more than half of the GDP of India.

- 21. Assertion :** The development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of service sector.

**Reason :** As the primary and secondary sectors develop, the demand for transport, storage structures, banks, insurance, etc., increases.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
  - (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
  - (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
  - (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** Foreign 2010

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

22. In India, contribution of agriculture to GDP (in percentage terms) has ..... from period of independence to the current date.

  - (a) increased
  - (b) decreased
  - (c) remained constant
  - (d) nothing can be said

Ans

OD 2018

23. Which of the following statements is correct with regards to India?

  - (a) Tertiary sector contributes the maximum to GDP.
  - (b) India is basically a socialist economy.
  - (c) In India, distribution of income and wealth is quite equitable.
  - (d) None of the above

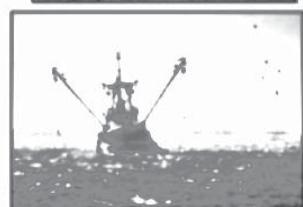
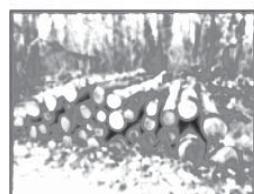
Ans. 9

Delhi 2017

- (a) Tertiary sector contributes the maximum to GDP

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 24.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Primary Sector
  - (b) Secondary Sector
  - (c) Tertiary Sector
  - (d) All of the above

Ans.

OD 2009

- ### (a) Primary Sector

*cost.*

**Questions :**

1. On what basis the bifurcation of public and private sector takes place?
2. Define the reason behind counting the railways and post office as a public sector.
3. Why public sector is needed in our country?

**Ans :**

1. The bifurcation of public and private sector is based on who owns the assets and is responsible for delivery of services.
2. Railways and post office are counted in public sector due to
  - Railways is owned by the government and not by any private individual.
  - Government is responsible for the delivery of various services through post offices.,
3. Public Sector is needed in India due to
  - Public Sector spends in different activities that are needed by the society which private sector cannot provide.
  - Private sector will not provide services at reasonable price, so public sector is needed.

119. Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Over a long time (more than hundred years), and especially because new methods of manufacturing were introduced, factories came up and started expanding. Those people who had earlier worked on farms, now began to work in factories in large numbers. People began to use many more goods that were produced in factories at cheap rates. Secondary sector gradually became the most important in total production and employment. Hence, over time, a shift had taken place. This means that the importance of the sectors had changed.*

*The unorganised sector is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations, but these are not followed. Jobs here are low-paid and often not regular. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness*

*etc. Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave. A lot also depends on the whims of the employer. This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own doing small jobs such as selling on the street or doing repair work. Similarly, farmers work on their own and hire labourers as and when they require.*

*More than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector, mainly in agriculture, producing only a quarter of the GDP. In contrast to this, the secondary and tertiary sectors produce three fourth of the products whereas they employ less than half of the people. Does this mean that the workers in agriculture are not producing as much as they could? What it means is that there are more people in agriculture than is necessary. So, even if you move a few people out, production will not be affected. In other words, workers in agricultural sector are underemployed.*

**Question :**

1. This means that the importance of the sectors had changed. Which sector has lost its prior importance?
2. Why do most people engage in unorganized sector in spite of its bad working conditions?
3. “What it means is that there are more people in agriculture than is necessary. So, even if you move a few people out, production will not be affected”. What type of employment or unemployment situation is referred by this statement?

**Ans :**

1. Primary sector.
2. Because the opportunity to work in organized sector is very less in India. Again, engagement in that sector involves more human resource, which is also very less here.
3. Disguised unemployment.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Sugar making
- (b) Jaggery making
- (c) Colour making
- (d) Potato boiling

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (b) Jaggery making

**32.** **Assertion :** Leela works five days a week, receives her income on the last day of each month and gets medical facilities from her firm.

**Reason :** Leela is working in organized sector.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**33.** Which of the following does not come under Primary sector?

- (a) Cotton cultivation
- (b) Milk production
- (c) Fishermen
- (d) Priest

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (d) Priest

**34.** Identify the sector:

1. It deals with raw materials and their production.
2. It includes all those activities the end purpose of which consists in exploiting natural resources.
3. also called as agricultural and allied sector services
4. examples- agriculture, fishing, forestry, mining, deposits

**Option :**

- (a) Public Sector

- (b) Tertiary sector
- (c) Primary Sector
- (d) Secondary Sector

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (c) Primary Sector

**35.** Complete the following table with correct information and choose correct option.

Act	Full Form	Passed in year	Main aim
MGNREGA	Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act	A -.? B -.?	

(a) A- 2000, B-to enhance livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work

(b) A-2005, B-to enhance livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work

(c) A-2010, B-to down livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work

(d) A-2015, B-to enhance livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work

**Ans :** Comp 2015, 2010

(b) A-2005, B- to enhance livelihood security in rural areas by providing at least 100 days of wage employment in a financial year to every household whose adult members volunteer to do unskilled manual work

25. Which of the following occupied the highest place in growth rate during the 10<sup>th</sup> Plan period 2002-2007?

- (a) Agricultural sector
- (b) Service sector
- (c) Industrial sector
- (d) Mining

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (b) service sector

26. The share of service sector to GDP in India is showing a/an ..... trend.

- (a) increasing
- (b) decreasing
- (c) constant
- (d) none of the above

**Ans :**

SQP 2017, 2011

- (a) increasing

27. Read following table which gives the GDP in Rupees (Corers) by the three sectors:

Year	Primary	Secondary	Tertiary
2000	52,000	48,500	1,33,500
2013	8,00,500	10,74,000	38,68,000

What conclusion can we draw from the table?

- (a) In 2000, the share of primary sector is 22.22%.
- (b) In 2013, the share of secondary sector is 18.70%.
- (c) The share of the tertiary sector in the GDP has increased by 10%.
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- (d) All of the above

28. **Assertion :** Rakesh is an educated and skilled worker who earns a high monthly salary as he is employed in a private bank in a city.

**Reason :** All service sectors in India are growing extremely well and each individual engaged in any kind of tertiary activity earns a high income.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

29. The ..... is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government.

- (a) Primary sector
- (b) Organised sector
- (c) Unorganised sector
- (d) Tertiary sector

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (c) Unorganised sector

30. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Processing of the raw material in the factory.
2. The carriers take the product of the market.
3. Raw material is transported to the factory.
4. Final product packed and loaded into carriers.

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4
- (b) 3, 1, 4, 2
- (c) 2, 1, 3, 4
- (d) 4, 1, 2, 3

**Ans :**

SQP 2016, 2013

- (b) 3, 1, 4, 2

31. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

42. The sectors are classified into public and private sector on the basis of  
 (a) employment conditions  
 (b) the nature of economic activity  
 (c) ownership of enterprises  
 (d) number of workers employed in the enterprise

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (c) ownership of enterprises

43. As the methods of farming changed and the agriculture sector began to prosper, most of the goods produced were \_\_\_\_\_ from the primary sector and most people were also employed in this sector?  
 (a) Synthetic products  
 (b) Involved machines  
 (c) Natural products  
 (d) Mixed products

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

- (c) Natural products

44. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:  
 1. Transporting cloth to the work shops  
 2. Sale in shops and showrooms  
 3. Spinning the yarn  
 4. Weaving of the fabric

**Option :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 4, 3, 2 | (b) 3, 4, 1, 2 |
| (c) 4, 2, 1, 3 | (d) 1, 3, 4, 2 |

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (b) 3, 4, 1, 2

45. **Assertion :** An individual who manufactures flour from wheat is engaged in primary sector.  
**Reason :** When some process of manufacturing is used the product is a part of secondary sector.  
 (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

46. Which of the following statements about agricultural sector in the economy of India is/are correct?

- A. Agricultural growth has reduced poverty of the people locally and, through its external effects, also in many other parts of the country.  
 B. Food and nutrition security in the country has increased substantially.  
 C. The area of cultivation has increased in recent past as agriculture has become a full-time employment for the people, which was not so a few years back.  
 (a) Only A  
 (b) Only B  
 (c) Only C  
 (d) Both A and B

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (d) Both A and B

47. Consider the following statement :

1. Agriculture and related sector is called the primary sector of the economy.
2. Primary activities are those which are directly produced from natural resources.

Which of the above statement are correct?

- (a) Only 1  
 (b) Only 2  
 (c) Both 1 and 2  
 (d) none

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (c) Both 1 and 2

48. **Assertion :** There are several goods and services that the society needs; however, the private sector does not produce all of them.

**Reason :** Private sector is profit driven.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**36. Assertion :** Mohan is a shopkeeper who pays his taxes on time. He has employed two workers Rakesh and Raghu in his shop. He pays them well, however, none of the workers get any paid leaves in the year.

**Reason :** Rakesh and Raghu are employed in unorganized sector.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2015

(a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion. If Rakesh and Raghu were employed in organized sector, they would receive benefits such as paid leaves, medical insurance and pension schemes from the employer. Mohan is not following labour laws as he does not provide any paid leave to his employees in the year.

**37.** When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the  
 (a) Secondary sector (b) Primary sector  
 (c) Tertiary sector (d) Essential sector

**Ans :**

Delhi 2005

- (b) Primary sector

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**38.** Which sector is also called agricultural related sector?

- (a) Primary (b) Secondary
- (c) Tertiary (d) Private

**Ans :**

SOP 2015, 2012

- (a) Primary

**39.** Identify the employment act, under which the following activity is given and solely meant for the rural sector:



- (a) Employment Rights Act.
- (b) MGNREGA.
- (c) Equal Remuneration Act.
- (d) Industrial Disputes Act.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (b) MGNREGA

**40.** The ..... covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing that we associate with industrial activity.

- (a) Secondary sector
- (b) Primary sector
- (c) Tertiary sector
- (d) Industries

**Ans :**

Comp 2014

- (a) Secondary sector

**41. Assertion :** When calculating the total value of goods and services produced in a country, the value of all goods and services at each stage of production should be calculated.

**Reason :** At each stage of production some value is added to a good or service, therefore, the value added at each stage of production is added to derive the total value of goods and services in an economy.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (d) 4, 2, 3, 1

**54.** The Kirana shop shown in the picture is related to which sector?



- (a) Public Sector      (b) Private Sector  
 (c) Primary sector    (d) Secondary Sector

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (b) Private Sector

**55.** **Assertion :** In India, the primary sector is the largest employer.

**Reason :** The demand for services has increased enormously.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**56.** **Assertion :** Reliance industries is a privately-owned firm.

**Reason :** Government is a major stakeholder in reliance industries.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2005

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**57.** Differentiate between organized and unorganized sectors.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

Organized Sector		Unorganized Sector	
1.	Terms of employment are regular.	1.	Terms of employment are scattered and depends on the whims of employer.
2.	They are registered by the government.	2.	They are largely outside the control of the government.
3.	They have to follow rules and regulations such as Factories Act, Minimum Wages Act etc.	3.	Rules and regulations are not followed.
4.	They enjoy job security.	4.	There is no job security.

**58.** Why has the government taken up the responsibility of public sector activities in a country like India ? Explain any three reasons.

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- Because some of these activities need spending large sums of money.
- Collecting money from thousands of people is not easy.

**71.** Mention any three types of benefits which the workers of organised sector enjoy.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

1. Workers in organised sector enjoy security of employment.
2. There is provision of overtime.
3. They get paid leave, payment during holiday, provident fund, gratuity, etc.
4. They get medical benefits and pensions also.

**72.** Do you agree that agriculture is an activity of the unorganised sector in India? Give any four points.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

1. There is no fixed number of working hours. The labourers have to work normally for 10-12 hours without paid overtime.
2. Agriculture labourers get no other allowances apart from daily wages.
3. Agriculture labourers have no job security.
4. Government rules and regulations to protect the labourers are not followed.

**73.** Explain with suitable examples that which part of the service sector is not growing in importance.

**Ans :**

OD 2014

1. The unorganised sector of the service sector is not growing in importance.
2. A large number of workers in small-scale industries are casual workers as in construction, trade and transport, vendors and load workers etc. hardly manage to earn a living, but still they are working because they do not have any alternative.
3. Their earnings are low and not regular.
4. They are paid a very low salary and there is no job security.

**74.** Write two groups of people working in unorganised sector who are in need of protection. How can the government protect them ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

1. Landless agricultural labourers, marginal farmers, etc. need to be supported through

adequate facility for timely delivery of seeds, agricultural inputs, credit, storage facilities, etc.

2. Casual workers in small scale industry. These industries need government's support for procuring raw materials and marketing of output.
3. Workers from SC, ST and OBC communities find themselves in unorganised sector. They get irregular and low paid work. They also face social discrimination. The government needs to protect and support them through laws, ensuring dignity to individuals.

**75.** What is skill development ? How does it help in creating employment ?

**Ans :**

OD 2011

Skill development is the development of a particular skill with proper professional training.

Way to creating employment : A trained person can get employment easily than the non-skilled labour.

1. Suppose the government opens new schools to educate people, the teachers will be required to run the schools.
2. A study conducted by the Planning Commission estimates that nearly 20 lakh jobs can be created in the education sector alone.
3. Similarly, if we have to improve the health situation, we need many more doctors, nurses, health workers, etc. to work in various parts of our country.

**76.** Explain any three points of importance of public sector in our society ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

The public sector contributes to the economic development of a nation in following ways :

1. Improving infrastructure : Economic development depends upon the creation of basic infrastructure such as power, transportation, communication, irrigation, education, etc. Public sector enterprises can arrange the large investment necessary for economy.

1. In this sector natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing.
  2. The activities of this sector help in the development of primary and tertiary sectors.
  3. All industrial activities are associated with this sector.
  4. The output of this sector makes competition possible in the economy.
- 65.** Explain the reasons for rising importance of primary sector in the Indian economy.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

The following are the reasons of importance of primary sector in the Indian economy :

1. It is the base of livelihood of the most of the population.
  2. This sector uses those activities which directly using natural resources.
  3. It forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make.
  4. It forms the base for other sectors of the economy.
- 66.** ‘Economic activities, though grouped into three different categories, are highly interdependent.’ Discuss.

**Ans :**

SOP 2014

1. Secondary sector uses goods produced in primary sector and changes their forms. For example, sugarcane into sugar.
2. The tertiary sector provides services like transport for transporting sugarcane to factories or sugar from factories to the markets.
3. Primary sector uses machinery produced in the secondary sector and services’ in tertiary as well.

So, they are all interdependent.

- 67.** Describe the change in the different sectors of the economy over a period of time.

**Ans :**

OD 2018

1. In farming sector, the methods of farming have changed. Use of chemical pesticides, increased production of cash crop, reduced dependence on rainfall,

use of modern equipments for farming, sprinkling of water, precision farming, etc. are some noticeable changes.

2. In manufacturing sector, new machines and tools are being used in production, factories are expanding. Secondary sector became most important in total production and employment.
3. In service sector, new services are being included and expanding rapidly. Knowledge Process Outsourcing has become the buzzword of this sector.

- 68.** Classify the following occupations under primary, secondary and tertiary activities.

- |                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Farmer          | 2. Fisherman        |
| 3. Cashier in Bank | 4. Truck Driver     |
| 5. Making a car    | 6. Making of bricks |

**Ans :**

SOP 2011

1. Primary activities — Farmer, Fisherman,
2. Secondary activities — Making of bricks, Making a car,
3. Tertiary activities — Cashier in Bank, Truck Driver.

- 69.** Explain the term GDP. Why are only ‘final goods and services’ counted in GDP ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

1. GDP is the sum of the money value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year within domestic territory of a country.
2. Only the value of final goods and services are counted in GDP because the value of final goods already includes the value of all the intermediate goods.

- 70.** Why can more job be created in the field of education? Give any three reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

1. There are about 200 million children in the school-going age group. Out of these only about two-third are attending schools.
2. Drop out ratio is also high.
3. Scarcity of schools and teachers is also there.

Therefore, more jobs can be created.

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

SOP 2008

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 49.** Which of the statements below are true?  
 A. Agriculture accounts for more than half of national income and engages more than half of the population in India.  
 B. Service sector employs around 34% of India's working population.  
 C. Industries account for less than 10% of India's working population.

Select the correct option.

- (a) A and B  
 (b) only C  
 (c) A, B and C  
 (d) Only B

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011, 2009

- (d) Only B

- 50.** The National Development Fund was created by the Government of India a few years ago. What was the purpose of the fund?  
 A. To boost investment in social sector projects to promote education, healthcare, and employment.  
 B. To make capital investments in selected profitable PSEs to yield adequate returns.  
 C. To fund revision in the pay structure of Central Government employees.  
 (a) Only A  
 (b) Only B  
 (c) Only C  
 (d) Both A and B

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (d) Both A and B

- 51.** **Assertion :** In India, over the forty years between 1973-74 and 2013-14, while production in all the three sectors has increased, it has increased the most in the tertiary sector.

**Reason :** Tertiary sector is the only organized sector in the economy so the government spends a lot of money for creating jobs in tertiary sector.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

- 52.** Identify the type of unemployment:

- This refers to a situation where labour that is employed in a job is not actually utilised for the production of goods and services.
- Such employment does not contribute to the output of an economy and is thus taking to a form of unemployment.
- Example of this type of unemployment- If a piece of land requires only three people to work on it and instead five people are working on it
- Also called as disguised unemployment

**Option :**

- (a) Regular Unemployment  
 (b) Hidden Unemployment  
 (c) Under-wage Unemployment  
 (d) Unregulated Unemployment

**Ans :**

SOP 2011, 2005

- (b) Hidden Unemployment

- 53.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Sale of the cloth in the market.
2. Using cotton fibre to make yarn and then weave cloths.
3. Transportation of weave cloth to the market.
4. Farming of cotton plants.

**Option :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4  
 (b) 3, 1, 4, 2  
 (c) 2, 1, 3, 4  
 (d) 4, 2, 3, 1

2. Export promotion : A large number of public enterprises has been set-up to promote India's export.
3. Reduction in regional disparities : The government sets-up industries in underdeveloped regions to reduce and overcome regional disparities in development.
77. Classify the economy on the basis of economic activities. How could a person's activity be placed in the primary, secondary or tertiary sectors ?

Ans :

SQP 2017

1. Primary sector : It includes those activities that are undertaken by directly using natural resources. This sector involves agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry and mining activities. For example, the cultivation of wheat.
  2. Secondary sector : It covers those activities in which natural or primary products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing. For example, from bamboo plant, we manufacture paper.
  3. Tertiary sector : This sector includes those activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. For example, railways, shopkeeper, lawyer, etc.
78. Describe the role played by National Rural Employment Guarantee Act in improving the employment situation in India.

Ans :

OD 2006

1. Government of India recently made a law implementing the Right to Work. It is called National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 (NREGA, 2005).
2. All those who are able to work and are in need of work have been guaranteed 100 days of employment in a year by the government.
3. If the government fails in its duty to provide employment, it will give unemployment allowances to the people.

79. Explain the term secondary sector. Why is it called industrial sector ?

Ans :

Comp 2010

1. (i) The secondary sector covers those activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing that we associate with industrial activity.
- (ii) The secondary sector product is not produced by nature but has to be made. So, some process of manufacturing is essential which could be in a factory, a workshop or at home. For example, paper manufacturing from bamboo fibre, sugar manufacturing from sugar cane etc.
2. This is also called industrial sector because this sector gradually became associated with the different kinds of industries.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

80. Underemployment continues to be rampant in the rural areas. Suggest any three ways through which employment for rural people can be generated.

Ans :

SQP 2020

Employment can be generated for rural people in several ways. Three ways in which it can be generated are :

1. People can be employed in projects like construction of dams, canals and roads in the village.
2. If government invests in transport and storage, it can provide productive employment to not just farmers but also others, such as those in services like transport or trade.
3. Government may encourage and promote location of industries in semi-rural areas where rural people can be engaged and employed. Government can also open centres to train and give financial assistance to the rural poor to generate self-employment.

3. Private sector charges high rate for these services.
  4. Govt. has to undertake such heavy expenditure and ensure that these facilities are available for everyone.
- 59.** Explain with suitable examples that which part of the service sector is not growing in importance.

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

1. Unorganised sector or unskilled worker of the service sector is not growing in importance.
  2. There are a very large number of workers engaged in service sector such as small shopkeepers, repair persons, transport persons, etc.
  3. Casual workers in urban areas who have to search for daily employment. They are employed as printers, plumbers, repair persons and doing other odd jobs. Many of them don't find work everyday. Sometimes, they may spend the whole day but earn very little.
- 60.** Classify the following into primary, secondary and tertiary occupations :

Mining, sugar mills, banking, lumbering, iron and steel industry, transportation, doctors, textile mills, animal-rearing.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

1. Primary occupations : Mining, lumbering and animal rearing.
  2. Secondary occupations : Iron and steel industry, textile mills, sugar mills.
  3. Tertiary occupations : Banking, transportation and doctors.
- 61.** Differentiate between economic and non-economic activities. Give any two points of difference.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020, 2016

All activities that give an income return are called economic activities.

Example : People going for work in factories, farms, banks, hospitals, school etc.

All activities which do not give any income in return are called non-economic activities. Example : doing social work, helping the poor, going to temple, etc.

- 62.** Why should we be worried about the problem of underemployment ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

1. Underemployment is the situation when the people are visibly employed but they are actually unemployed. In this situation, more people are engaged in a work than required. That is, they are made to work less than potential. This situation is also known as disguised or hidden unemployment.
2. It is a matter of great worry because lakhs of people are underemployed in India. This situation is generally found in agricultural sector. In addition, it also exists in other sectors such as casual workers in the service sector in urban areas. If these people work elsewhere, the income earned by them would increase the total income of their families.

- 63.** What is an organised sector ? Give any three advantages of it.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Organised sector covers those enterprises or places of work where the terms of employment are regular and therefore, people have assured work.

**Advantages of the organised sector :**

1. Workers enjoy security of employment.
2. If they are asked to work for longer hours, they are paid extra money for overtime.
3. They get paid leaves, holidays, provident fund and gratuity etc.

- 64.** Explain the importance of secondary sector in the Indian economy.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

The importance of secondary sector in the Indian economy :

3. Industrial unemployment : India is also using labour savings devices in industries like European advanced countries. It has made workers unemployed.
  4. Educational unemployment : Unemployment among the educated person is posing a great threat to our country. Lakhs of educated persons are unemployed.
- 85.** How does public sector contribute in developing nation?

Ans :

Comp 2010

Three examples are :

- (a) Railways : The government has taken this up for the following reasons :
  - (i) Only the government can invest large sums of money on a public project with long gestation period.
  - (ii) To ensure and provide transportation at cheap rates.
- (b) Electric power generation by NTPC : The government has taken this up to provide electricity at a reasonable rate to consumers.
- (c) AIIMS : To provide quality health services at a reasonable rate was the main purpose of the government to start this, besides medical education.

- 86.** Discuss the impact of growing population on sectors of economy in developing and developed countries.

Ans :

SQP 2017

1. In the developing countries, the number of non-working population consisting of children and old people is in excess of working population. This means that each person in the working population has to support a large number of dependent. There is unemployment among the youth, as the number of persons seeking employment is increasing faster than the number of jobs available.
2. In developed countries the population is not growing rapidly, the number of youth seeking employment is less, thus they are able to get jobs. The number of

the dependent children is less. There are large number of old people due to greater longevity. The working population is more than the dependent population. Standard of living and per capita income is high.

- 87.** In what way can employment be increased in urban areas ?

or

Suggest three ways to create more employment in urban sector.

Ans :

Foreign 2020

Remedies to urban unemployment.

1. Reforms in the educational system to make it vocational at the school stage. Moreover, habit of self-sufficiency is to be cultivated among them.
2. Concrete action will have to be taken to promote decentralisation and dispersal of industrial activities.
3. Promotion of small scale industries and encouragement to self-employment by banks.
4. Development of production techniques that can be implemented with low capital intensity.

- 88.** How do we calculate the G.D.P. ?

Ans :

SQP 2019

We calculate the GDP (Gross Domestic Product) in the following way :

1. The value of goods and services in the three sectors (primary, secondary and tertiary) are calculated and then added up.
2. The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year, provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of the production in three sectors gives up Gross Domestic Product or GDP.
3. Not every goods or service provided and sold require to be calculated. It makes sense only to include final goods and services. For example, a farmer sells wheat to a flour mill for Rs. 8 per kg. The mill grinds the wheat and sells the

flour to a biscuit company for Rs. 10 per kg. Biscuit company uses flour, sugar and oil to make the packets of biscuits it sells biscuits in the market to consumer for Rs. 16 per packet. Now, biscuits are the final goods, i.e., goods that reach the customer.

- 89.** What is National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 ? State three measures taken under NREGA 2005 to help the rural poor.

or

Describe the role Played by NREGA in improving the employment situation in India.,

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, 2009

The law recently made by the central government to implement the right to work in 200 districts which will be extended to 600 districts is called National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005.

Following are the three measures taken under NREGA 2005 to help the rural poor :

1. This act provides 100 days assured employment every year to every rural households.
2. One third of the proposed jobs would be reserved for women.
3. If an applicant is not provided employment within fifteen days, he or she will be entitled to a daily employment allowance.

- 90.** What is primary sector ? Why is this sector called primary sector or agriculture and related sector ?

or

What do you mean by primary sector ? Enlist any four activities of this sector.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

1. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. This sector includes agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry and mining activities. For example, the cultivation of wheat. Wheat is cultivated within a crop season by directly using

natural resources. For the growth of the wheat plant, we depend mainly on natural factors like soil, rainfall, sunshine and climate. And the product of this activity, wheat is a natural product.

2. (i) This sector is called primary sector because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make.
- (ii) Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, and forestry, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector.

- 91.** Give the meaning of tertiary sector. How is it different from the other two sectors ? Why is it also called service sector ?

or

Service sector in India employs different kinds of people. Explain with example.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

1. This sector includes those activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. For example, the goods that are produced in the primary or secondary sector, e.g., wheat or books, would need to be transported by roadways, railways or airways for marketing purposes. Thus, this sector includes transport, storage, communication, banking, insurance and trade activities.
2. This sector is different from other two sectors because primary and secondary sectors produce goods but the service sector activities, by themselves do not produce a good but they are an aid or a support for the production process. That is, they help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors.
3. Since these activities generate services, this sector is also called the service sector.

- 92.** What is the difference between final goods and intermediate goods ? Why are only final goods and services counted to know the total production in each sector of the economy ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

1. (i) Final goods : Final goods are those goods that reach the consumers. For

example, chocolate, biscuit, almirah, etc.

(ii) Intermediate goods : These are the goods which are used up in producing final goods and services. For example, steel.

However, some goods may be both. For example, sugar, milk which are directly consumed but also used to make products like chocolate, biscuit, etc.

2. While calculating the total production of the economy, only final goods and services are counted. This is so because the value of final goods already includes the value of all the intermediate goods that are used in making final goods. For example, if we count the value of sugar cane, sugar and chocolate separately, we would be counting the value of the same things a number of times. First as sugar cane, then as sugar and finally as chocolate. That is why, we should count only final good, i.e., chocolate.

93. How do we count the various goods and services and know the total production in each sector ?

or

How do we count the various goods and services of each economic sector ? Explain with examples.

Ans :

OD 2009

1. We count the value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year. This provides the total production of the sector for that year.
2. Remarkably, the values of goods and services are used rather than adding up the actual numbers.
3. For example, if 10,000 kg of rice is sold at ₹ 5 per kg. the value of rice will be ₹ 1,50,000. The value of 10,000 T.V sets at ₹ 10,000 per set will be ₹ 10,00,00,000.
4. Similarly, the value of goods and services in the three sectors are calculated and then added up.

94. What is Gross Domestic Product (GDP). In India, which institution measures it ?

or

What is Gross Domestic Product (GDP) ? Which organisation in India under-takes the task of measuring GDP ?

Ans :

Foreign 2016, 2014

1. The sum of production in three sectors gives Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. Thus, GDP is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year. It shows the strength of the economy.
2. In India, GDP is measured by a central government ministry with the help of various government departments of all the Indian states and union territories. They collect information relating to total volume of goods and services and their prices and then estimates the GDP.

95. Why is the tertiary sector growing so rapidly in India? Explain it with four reasons.

Ans :

Comp 2010

1. The development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services such as trade, transport, storage, etc.
2. As income levels rise, certain sections of people start demanding many more services like eating out, tourism, shopping, private hospitals, private schools, professional training, etc.
3. Over the past decade or so, certain new services such as those based on information and communication technology have become important and essential.
4. A large number of workers engaged in services such as small shopkeepers, repair persons, transport persons, etc.

96. Where are most of the people employed ? Why did not a similar shift out of primary sector happen in case of employment ?

Ans :

SQP 2005

1. The most of the working people are still employed in primary sector. Though

- 81.** “Tertiary sector activities help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors.” Evaluate the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

“Tertiary sector activities help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors” because of following reasons :

1. Tertiary sector activities, by themselves, do not produce any good but they are an aid or support for the primary and secondary sectors production process. For example the transport, trade, storage, etc. helps the primary, sector industries like agriculture.
2. Tertiary sector comprises of several essential services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, defence, transports, banks, etc. All these are required as a basic service that helps the primary and secondary sectors.
3. Over the past decade or so, certain new services such as those based on information and communication technology have become important and essential.

- 82.** “Primary sector’ was the most important sector of economic activity at initial stages of development.” Evaluate the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020 , 2015

“Primary sector was the most important sector of economic activity at initial stages of development” because of :

1. The history of developed countries indicates that in the initial stage of development, the primary sector was the most important sector of economic activities. As the methods of farming changed and agriculture sector began to prosper, it started producing much more food than before and most people were also employed in this sector.
2. Primary sector is still the largest economic sector and plays a significant role in the overall socio-economic development of the country.

3. The well being of the secondary sector depend on the on the primary sector. This sector generally takes the output of primary sector as raw material to manufacture finished goods. Flourishing primary sector help in the development of strong secondary and tertiary sectors. All of these sectors are required for the development of the country.

- 83.** Show how tertiary sector has emerged as the largest producing sector in India.

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

**Importance of Tertiary Sector :**

1. Basic services like hospitals, educational institutions, defence, and transport are the part of tertiary sector.
2. Development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services.
3. As the income level rises, tourism, shopping, private schools and professional training also expands. People start demanding more services, this leads to the expansion of the tertiary sector.
3. Information and communication technology also play an important role in this expansion.
4. Large number of workers are engaged in this sector, as the demand for services grow.

- 84.** Explain any three types of unemployment found in India.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

Different types of unemployment found in India are as under :

1. Disguised unemployment : Disguised unemployment exists when Marginal Physical Productivity (MPP) of labour is zero or sometimes it becomes negative. In India, disguised unemployment is 25% to 30%.
2. Seasonal unemployment : Agriculture is a seasonal industry and India has an agrarian economy. Therefore, seasonal unemployment exists in India among 166 lakhs people.

3. Targeted employment generation programmes, like skill development programme, etc.
- 100.** Define unorganised sector. What are the conditions of work in this sector ?

or

What is an unorganised sector ? Describe the working procedure of this sector.

**Ans :**

SQP 2009, 2006

The unorganised sector includes small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations but these are not followed.

1. There is no formal process and procedures. The person is not given any formal letter by the employer. Jobs are low-paid and often not regular.
  2. There is no job security. People can be asked to leave any time without any reason by his employer. There is no fixed number of working hours. Also, there is no provision of overtime.
  3. People get daily wages. There is no provision of other benefits apart from daily wages. There is no leave, paid holidays or leave due to sickness, etc.
- 101.** Explain the difference in employment conditions in organised and unorganised sectors.

or

Compare the employment conditions prevailing in organised and unorganised sectors.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

	Working conditions in organized sector	Working conditions in unorganized Sector
1.	High salaries are provided.	Low salaries.
2.	Job security.	No job security.
3.	Working conditions are good.	Working conditions are poor.

4.	Working hours are ideal.	No limitation on working hours.
5.	Provision for over-time allowance.	No provision for over-time allowance.
6.	Employee benefit schemes.	No employee benefit scheme.

- 102.** Describe any three problems faced by workers in the unorganised sector.

or

Do you agree that workers are exploited in the unorganised sector? Support your answer with any three arguments.

**Ans :**

SQP 2017

1. This sector does not follow government rules and regulations.
2. Low salary; minimum wages are not fixed and there is no regular employment.
3. There is no provision of overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness, etc.
4. There is no job security. People may be asked to leave without any reason, or when there is less work or on the whim of the employer.
5. Many people work on their own doing small jobs such as selling on the streets; they have no safety yet.

- 103.** Explain how public sector contributes to the economic development of India.

**Ans :**

OD 2005

1. Public sector contributes in providing economic infrastructure facilities like roads, bridges, railways, etc.
2. This sector undertakes railways, shipping, currency, etc. They help in promoting all industries.
3. It runs educational institutions, hospitals, water supply, electricity supply which is useful in economic development of a nation.
4. Welfare of the people is the main aim of this sector.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- there has been a change in the share of the three sectors in GDP, but a similar shift has not taken place in employment. The primary sector continues to be the largest employer even in the year 2000.
2. There had not been a similar shift out of primary sector in case of employment. This has the following reasons :
- (i) Secondary sectors did not create enough jobs to absorb people from primary sector. Though industrial production went up by 8 times during 1973 to 2003, employment in the industry went up by only 2.5 times.
  - (ii) Tertiary sector also did not create sufficient jobs. The production in the service sector rose by 11 times during 1973-2003, employment in this sector increased by less than 3 times.
  - (iii) More than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector. But, they are producing only a quarter of the GDP.
  - (iv) There are more people in agriculture than is necessary. That is, workers in agriculture sector are underemployed.
97. Define underemployment or disguised unemployment with an example. In which sector is this underemployment found ?
- or
- Explain what is meant by disguised unemployment? Give examples from rural and urban areas where disguised unemployment exists.
- Ans :** Comp 2012
1. (i) Underemployment or disguised unemployment is the situation when the people are visibly employed but actually unemployed.
  - (ii) In this situation, more people are engaged in a work than required. That is, they are made to work less than their potential.
  2. (i) Underemployment is generally found in agriculture sector. For example, a family of 9 people has an agricultural plot where they all find work. The work requires the service of 5 people only but all 9 family members are engaged. Thus, 4 people are extra. So, these 4 people are said to be underemployed or disguisedly employed.
  - (ii) Apart from agriculture, underemployment also exists in other sectors such as casual workers in the service sector in urban areas, e.g., repair persons, hawkers, the person selling something on a cart, etc. They spend the whole day but earn very little.
98. Explain the objectives of implementing the NREGA 2005.
- or
- Write three provisions of National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005.
- Ans :** Delhi 2007
- Provisions under NREGA are :
1. All those who are able to and are in need of work have been guaranteed 100 days of employment in a year by the government.
  2. If the government fails in its duty to provide employment within 15 days, it will give unemployment allowance to the people.
  3. The types of work that would in future help to increase the production from land will be given preference under the Act.
  4. It promotes decentralisation of planning and empowers panchayats to plan and execute them.
99. Suggest three ways in which states or regions can increase their income and employment opportunities of their people.
- Ans :** OD 2011
- To increase income and employment of people of a region we will have to identify the resources that are available in that area and accordingly plan a mechanism to put into its optimum use. Thus the steps to be taken have to be region specific. Few activities are
1. Promote tourism.
  2. Development and promotion of regional craft industry.

Sumit, on the other hand, works in the unorganised sector which is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations but these are not followed. So, his job will be low-paid and often not regular. There will be no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness, etc. Employment is not secure. He can be asked to leave without any reason when there is less work, such as, during some seasons. A lot also depends on the whims of his employer.

- 108.** What steps should be taken to create more employment? Explain.

- Ans :** SOP 2015
1. Education system should be made employment-oriented. Vocational training should be merged in mainstream education pattern.
  2. Government should encourage cottage and small-scale industries, agro-based, handicraft industries, etc.
  3. Cheap credit should be provided so that people may take up new enterprises.
  4. Labour intensive techniques should be adopted in place of capital intensive techniques.
  5. Cheap credit should be provided so that people may take up new enterprises.
  6. Encouraging foreign investments will also generate employment.
  7. Research and development work in all sectors must be promoted to evolve new avenues of generating employment.
  8. Government should frame policies to promote business activities to enhance growth and employment.
  9. Sectors like education, health, banking must be promoted which have huge job opportunities.

- 109.** Define the term 'Public sector'. Explain any three demerits of Private sector.

- Ans :** OD 2011

**Public sector :** The Public sector is that sector of the economy in which the government

owns most of the assets and provides all the services e.g., Railways, post and telegraph.

#### **Demerits of Private sector :**

1. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits and not welfare of the people.
2. There are several services needed by the society which the private sector cannot provide at a reasonable price. Activities like construction of roads, bridges, railways, irrigation through dams, etc., require huge amount of money which is beyond the capacity of the Private sector. Private sector charges high rates for the use of these services.
3. It is difficult for the Private sector to collect money from thousands of people who use these services.
4. The Private sector sometimes ignores regional balanced development, equality of income and development of basic industries.

- 110.** How can the workers in the unorganised sector be protected ? Explain.

or

Suggest any four ways to protect workers in the unorganised sector.

- Ans :** Foreign 2010, 2007
1. Farmers need to be supported through timely delivery of seeds, agricultural inputs, credit marketing, storage facilities.
  2. In urban areas, casual workers need government support for procuring raw material.
  3. Small-scale industry also needs support for procuring raw material, marketing, loans at cheap rate.
  4. Implementation of Minimum Wages Act.
  5. Government should devise schemes for their literacy, skill development, social-security.
  6. A Board can be set up for overlooking as well as suggesting over the law for protection of people from unorganised sector.

- 104.** What is Gross Domestic Product (GDP)? How do we count the various goods and services for calculating Gross Domestic Product ? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2005

GDP is the market value of final goods and services produced in a country in a year.

1. The final value of goods and services produced in a sector is calculated.
2. Only the final value of a product or service is taken into account to avoid double counting. For example, suppose a farmer sells wheat to a flour, it to a baker for Rs. 10 and then baker after converting it into a bread sells to a consumer for Rs. 20. Here the final product is bread, so Rs. 20 should be added not Rs. 8 + Rs. 10 + Rs. 20 = Rs. 38.
3. Similarly, the final value of products or services produced is calculated.
4. The sum total of all the final goods and services produced in all the sectors provides GDP.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 105.** ‘Tertiary sector is playing a significant role in the development of Indian Economy’. Justify the statement.

or

Why is the tertiary sector becoming more important in India ? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2021 SOP, 2022

Yes , It is true that Tertiary sector is playing a significant role in the development of the Country.

1. It provides basic services to the people like Transport, Communication, etc.
2. It provides employment to the large number of people.
3. The development of Primary and secondary sector leads to the development of tertiary sector.
4. As Income level rise, certain sections of people start demanding the services like eating out, tourism etc.

5. Due to Globalization, people have become more aware of new services like Transport, Communication because of which Tertiary sector has gained more importance.
6. The sector has a big contribution to the growth of Indian Economy.

- 106.** ‘Public sector contributes to the economic development of India.’ Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

SOP, 2020 Comp 2021

Public sector contributes to the economic development of India because

1. It promotes rapid economic development through creation and expansion of infrastructure.
2. It creates employment opportunities.
3. It generates financial resources for development.
4. It is ensuring equality of income, wealth and thus, a balanced regional development
5. It encourages development of small, medium and cottage industries.
6. It ensures easy availability of goods at moderate rates.
7. Contributes to community development, Human Development Index i.e. health and educational services.

- 107.** Rohan works in a bank as a clerk while Sumit works on a construction site as a labourer. Find out the difference in their conditions of work and judge the benefits and drawbacks of working in the respective sectors.

**Ans :**

SOP 2018

Rohan works in the organised sector. He will thus enjoy security of employment. He will be expected to work only a fixed number of hours. If he works more, he will have to be paid overtime by the employer. He will also get several other benefits from the employers like getting paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity etc. He is supposed to get medical benefits and, under the laws, the bank manager has to ensure facilities like drinking water and. a safe working environment. When he will retire, he will get pension as well.

- time to time to promote and expand social and infrastructure services.
2. India has adopted new economic policy. Globalisation, liberalisation and internationalism have been followed by Indian Government since last decade of 20th century. Due to globalisation and liberalisation there is a great demand of Indian experts-doctors, engineers, teachers, technicians etc. in other countries.
  3. Due to scientific inventions, new discoveries, arrival of latest technology, establishment of multinational corporations in India, expansion of service sector is taking place of reasonably good space. Some Indian business households and companies have establish their own industry and units in other countries.
  4. Due to internet services, website, e-mail services, mass media, new opportunities of employment and promotions are informed to the people, several agencies are working on commission basis to provide new job opportunities to service class people.
- 114.** Is it necessary to have the public sector ? Substantiate your answer by examining the role of the government.
- Ans :** SQP 2006
- Yes, it is necessary to have the public sector. This has the following reasons :
1. Only the government can invest large sums of money on the essential public projects like roads, bridges, railways, harbours, electricity, irrigation through dams, etc.. The government spends huge money on them to ensure that these facilities are available for everyone.
  2. It helps private enterprises. The private sector may not continue their production without the government's help. To encourage private sector small-scale units, the government provides electricity at the price lower than the actual cost. The government buys foodgrains from farmers and stores them in its godowns and then sells at a lower price through ration shops.
3. There are a large number of activities which are the primary responsibilities of the government. For example, education, health, security, safe drinking water, housing facilities, etc. The government has to spend on them.
  4. It is also the duty of the government to take care of the backward regions of the country through increased spending. It has to create employment opportunities. Public sector is also necessary for redistribution of income and wealth.
- 115.** How can income and employment be increased if farmers are provided with a loan or irrigation facility? Explain with the help of an example.
- or
- How would a farmer increase his income and employment if he is provided with loan, irrigation facilities and means of transportation ?
- Ans :** OD 2012
1. **Loan facility :**
    - (i) As we have seen in the case of Laxmi in our textbook, farmers need seeds, fertilizers, agricultural equipments and pump sets to draw water. Poor farmers cannot afford many of these. So, they have to borrow money from village moneylenders and pay a high rate of interest.
    - (ii) If they are provided loan to buy these inputs at a reasonable rate of interest, they can save money given as high interest and increase their income.
    - (iii) If they get loan easily at a reasonable rate of interest, they will be able to take second and third crops. In this way, they will be able to increase their employment opportunities.
  2. **Irrigation facilities :**
    - (i) Water is essential for agricultural production. But rainfall, in many areas, is not only inadequate but also uncertain. So, in these areas,

- 111.** Differentiate between sectors on the basis of ownership with examples.

or

Distinguish between public and private sectors giving at least two examples from each sector.

or

Differentiate between the public and private sectors on the basis of assets and services. Give at least one example from each sector.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

	<b>Public Sector</b>	<b>Private Sector</b>
1.	Most of the assets are owned by the government.	Assets are owned by private individuals.
2.	All the services are provided by the Government.	Services are provided or are in the hands of individuals.
3.	Activities of public sector are guided by the interest of the nation as a whole.	Activities are guided by the motive to earn profit.
4.	Employees feel secured and there is discipline and regular work.	Jobs of the employees are less secured and the whims of the owners are above all.
5.	Government raises money through taxes and other ways.	To get such services we have to pay money.
6.	For example, 'Railways or Post Office.	For example, TISCO, Reliance industries.

- 112.** What historical changes have been brought about in the primary, secondary and tertiary sectors ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007

#### **Historical changes in primary sector :**

- As the methods of farming changed and the agricultural sector started to prosper, it produced much more food than before.
- Several people could now take up other activities. Infact buying and selling activities increase many time in primary sector.
- However, at this stage most of the goods produced from natural products from the primary sector and most people working employed in this sector.

#### **Historical changes in secondary sector:**

- Over a long time, and specially because new methods of manufacturing work introduced, factories came up and started expanding day by day.
- Some of those people who had earlier worked on farms now began to work in factories or mills at cheap rate By and by secondary sector became the most important sector in the total production and employment.

#### **Historical changes in the tertiary sector :**

- In the passed more than 100 years, there have been a further shift from secondary to tertiary sector in developed countries.
- The service sector have became the most important in terms of total production.
- Most of the working people are also employed in the service sector and this is the general pattern observed in developed countries.

- 113.** Why has tertiary sector becomes the largest producer in India over the last 30 years ? Explain four reasons.

or

Why is the tertiary sector growing so rapidly in India? Explain it with four reasons.

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

Tertiary sector has becomes the largest producer in India over the last 30 years due to many reasons. Out of these four reasons are explained below :

- The Government of India as well as of state and local levels are encouraging this sector directly or indirectly. Huge funds, grants and donations are provided from

rice from farmers at a 'fair price'. This it stores in its godowns and sells at a lower price to consumers through ration shops. The government has to bear some of the cost. In this way, the government supports both farmers and consumers. There are a large number of activities which are the primary responsibility of the government. The government must spend on these. Providing health and education facilities for all is one example. Running proper schools and providing quality education, particularly elementary education, is the duty of the government. India's size of illiterate population is one of the largest in the world. Similarly, we know that nearly half of India's children are malnourished and a quarter of them are critically ill. The infant mortality rate of Odisha (40) or Madhya Pradesh (48) is higher than some of the poorest regions of the world. Government also needs to pay attention to aspects of human development such as availability of safe drinking water, housing facilities for the poor and food and nutrition. It is also the duty of the government to take care of the poorest and most ignored regions of the country through increased spending in such areas.

#### Questions :

1. Why is there a need of public sector in an economy?
2. Give some examples of public sector.
3. Differentiate between the private and public sectors.

**Ans :**

1. There are several things needed by the society as a whole but which the private sector will not provide at a reasonable cost. The private sector may not continue their production or business unless government encourages it.
2. Providing health and education facilities for all is one example. Running proper schools and providing quality education, particularly elementary education, is the duty of the government.
3. Difference between the private and public sectors.

	<b>Private Sector</b>	<b>Public Sector</b>
(i)	Private sector organisations are owned, controlled and managed by individuals or groups or business entities.	Public sector organisations are owned, controlled and managed by the government or other state-run bodies.
(ii)	The main motive of these organisations is to earn profits from their business operations.	The main motive of these organisations is to engage in activities that serve the general public.

- 118.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Another way of classifying economic activities into sectors could be on the basis of who owns assets and is responsible for the delivery of services. In the public sector, the government owns most of the assets and provides all the services. In the private sector, ownership of assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies.*

*Railways or post office is an example of the public sector whereas companies like Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited (TISCO) or Reliance Industries Limited (RIL) are privately owned.*

*Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits. To get such services we have to pay money to these individuals and companies.*

*The purpose of the public sector is not just to earn profits. Governments raise money through taxes and other ways to meet expenses on the services rendered by it.*

*Modern day governments spend on a whole range of activities. There are several things needed by the society as a whole but which the private sector will not provide at a reasonable*

irrigation facilities will be helpful in growing more than one crop in the year.

- (ii) Obviously, as we grow more crops, mere income and employment will be generated on the same piece of land.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 116.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Over the forty years between 1973-74 and 2013-14, while production in all the three sectors has increased, it has increased the most in the tertiary sector. As a result, in the year 2013-14, the tertiary sector has emerged as the largest producing sector in India replacing the primary sector. Why is the tertiary sector becoming so important in India? There could be several reasons. First, in any country several services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, village administrative offices, municipal corporations, defence transport, banks, insurance companies, etc, are required. These can be considered as basic services. In a developing country the government has to take responsibility for the provision of these services.*

*Second, the development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services such as transport, trade, storage and the like, as we have already seen. Greater the development of the primary and secondary sectors, more would be the demand for such services.*

*Third as income levels rise, certain sections of people start demanding many more services like eating out, tourism, shopping, private hospitals, private schools, professional training etc. You can see this change quite sharply in cities, especially in big cities. Fourth, over the past decade or so certain new services such as those based on information*

*and communication technology have become important and essential. The production of these services has been rising rapidly.*

### Questions :

- What do you understand about the primary sector of an economy?
- What is the reason behind shift in the labour force from primary sector to secondary and tertiary sectors?
- Briefly define the differences between primary and tertiary sector.

**Ans :**

- Primary Sector (or Agriculture sector) includes all those economic activities which are connected with extraction and production of natural resources.
- As the economy grows, there is a shift in the labour force from primary sector to Secondary and tertiary sectors. This takes place due to following reasons
  - Increase in demand for goods and services produced by Secondary and Tertiary sectors
  - Improved techniques of production in agriculture, leading to less need for human resources in that area

- Primary Sector (or Agriculture sector) includes all those economic activities which are connected with extraction and production of natural resources.

On the other hand, Tertiary Sector (or Service sector) is concerned with providing support services to the primary and secondary sector and includes transport, banking, insurance, warehousing, communication, advertising, etc.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

- 117.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*The Government in India buys wheat and*

- 120.** Study the given sources and answer the questions that follows:

*Over the thirty years between 1973 and 2003, while production in all the three sectors has increased, it has increased the most in the tertiary sector. As a result, in the year 2003, the tertiary sector has emerged as the largest producing sector in India replacing the primary sector.*

*Every state or region has potential for increasing the income and employment for people in that area. It could be tourism, or regional craft industry, or new services like IT. Some of these would require proper planning and support from the government. For example, a study by the Planning Commission says that if tourism as a sector is improved, every year we can give additional employment to more than 35 lakh people.*

*Workers in the organised sector enjoy security of employment. They are expected to work only a fixed number of hours. If they work more, they have to be paid overtime by the employer. They also get several other benefits from the employers. What are these benefits? They get paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity etc. They are supposed to get medical benefits, and, under the laws, the factory manager has to ensure facilities like drinking water and a safe working environment. When they retire, these workers get pensions as well.*

**Questions :**

1. Which sector has the highest share in the year 2003?
2. How to create more employment in rural areas?
3. Write any two benefits of organised sector employees.

**Ans :**

1. Tertiary sector.
2. Focusing on tourism and regional craft industry.
3. They get paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity, and medical benefits.

- 121.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

*Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But the quality of our life also depends on non-material things mentioned above. If it is not obvious to you, then just think of the role of your friends in your life. You may desire their friendship. Similarly, there are many things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot to our lives. These are often ignored. However, it will be wrong to conclude that what cannot be measured is not important.*

*Consider another example. If you get a job in a far-off place, before accepting it you would try to consider many factors, apart from income, such as facilities for your family, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn. In another case, a job may give you less pay but may offer regular employment that enhances your sense of security. Another job, however, may offer high pay but no job security and also leave no time for your family. This will reduce your sense of security and freedom. Similarly, for development, people look at a mix of goals. It is true that if women are engaged in paid work, their dignity in the household and society increases. However, it is also the case that if there is respect for women there would be more sharing of household work and a greater acceptance of women working outside. A safe and secure environment may allow more women to take up a variety of jobs or run a business. Hence, the developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.*

**Questions :**

1. “It will be wrong to conclude that what cannot be measured is not important.” Explain the statement in the context of development.
2. What do you mean by the term ‘Job Security’?
3. What is the role of a safe and secure environment in case of women?
4. What can be a development goal for an employee?

**Ans :**

1. Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But the quality of our life also depends on non-material things. For example, we may consider the role of our friends in our lives, in the form of their friendship. Similarly, there are many things that are not easily measured but they mean a lot to our lives.
  2. A job may give you less pay but may offer regular employment. This is regarded as sense of security of the job.
  3. A safe and secure environment may allow more women to take up a variety of jobs or run a business.
  4. Promotion with job security.
- 122.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*The central government in India made a law implementing the Right to Work in about 625 districts of India. It is called Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (MGNREGA 2005). Under MGNREGA 2005, all those who are able to, and are in need of work in rural areas are guaranteed 100 days of employment in a year by the government.*

*The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of production in the three sectors gives what is called the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. It is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year.*

*Another way of classifying economic activities into sectors could be on the basis of who owns assets and is responsible for the delivery of services. In the public sector, the government owns most of the assets and provides all the services. In the private sector, ownership of assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies. Railways or post office is an example of the public sector whereas companies like Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited (TISCO) or Reliance Industries Limited (RIL) are privately owned.*

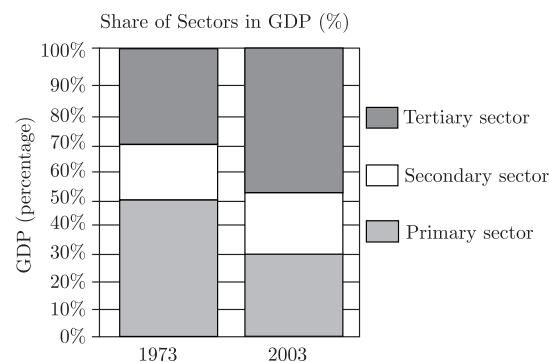
**Questions :**

1. How many days of employment in a year are guaranteed by the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005?
2. What does the Gross Domestic Product (GDP)?
3. Which sector of economies managed by the individual or company?

**Ans :**

1. 100 days of employment in a year are guaranteed by the Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005.
2. The Gross Domestic Product (GDP) shows how small or big economy is.
3. In the private sector, ownership of assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies.

- 123.** Study the given diagram and answer the questions that follow :

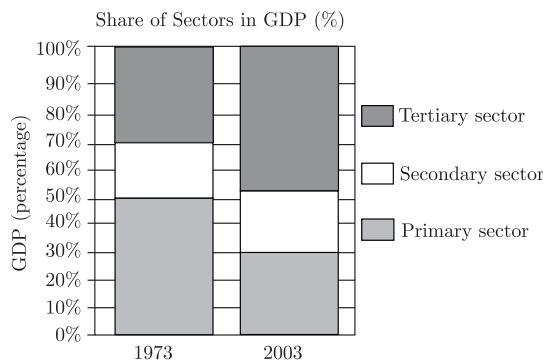


1. Which sector shows the highest increase in share of G.D.P. in the given period ?
2. Which sector shows the decreasing trend in the share of its G.D.P. ?
3. Why has the primary sector remained more important than other sectors in spite of its smaller share in G.D.P. ? Give one reason.

**Ans :**

1. Tertiary sector.
2. Primary sector.
3. More than half of the workers in the country are still working in the primary sector.

- 124.** Study the graph given below and answer the following questions :



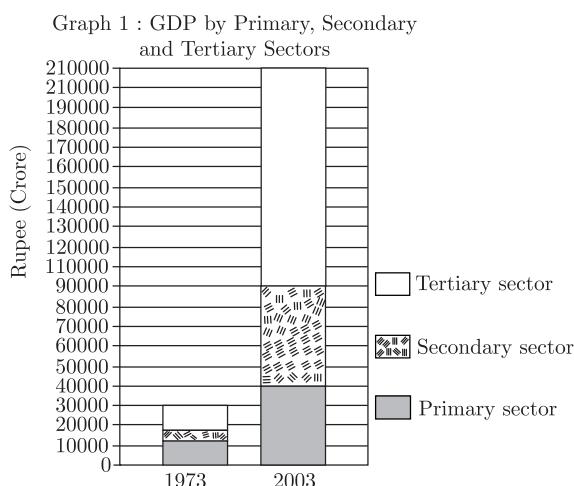
**Questions :**

- Which was the largest producing sector in 1973 ?
- Which was the largest producing sector in 2003 ?
- How much percent is the contribution of secondary sector to total GDP in 2003 ?
- What is the approximate share of tertiary sector in GDP (%) in 1973 ?

**Ans :**

- Primary sector
- Tertiary sector
- 24% approximately
- 35% approximately

- 125.** Study the graph given below and answer the following questions :



**Questions :**

- Which was the largest producing sector in 1973 ?

- Which was the largest producing sector in 2003 ?
  - Which sector has grown the most over thirty years ?
  - What was the GDP of India in 2003 ?
- Ans :**
- Primary sector,
  - Tertiary sector,
  - Tertiary sector,
  - Rs 210,000 crore.

- 126.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*There are many activities that are undertaken by directly using natural resources. Take, for example, the cultivation of cotton. It takes place within a crop season. For the growth of the cotton plant, we depend mainly, but not entirely, on natural factors like rainfall, sunshine and climate. The product of this activity, cotton, is a natural product. Similarly, in the case of an activity like dairy, we are dependent on the biological process of the animals and availability of fodder etc. The product here, milk, also is a natural product. Similarly, minerals and ores are also natural products. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. This is because it forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry, this sector is also called agriculture and related sector. The secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing that we associate with industrial activity. It is the next step after primary sector activities if the product is not produced by nature but has to be made and therefore some process of manufacturing is essential. After primary and secondary sector activities there is a third category of activities that falls under tertiary sector and is different from the above two. These are activities that help in the development*

of the primary and secondary sectors. These activities, by themselves, do not produce a good but they are an aid or a support for the production process. For example, goods that are produced in the primary or secondary sector would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops.

**Questions :**

1. What do you understand by primary sector? What is the other name of primary sector?
2. What do you understand by secondary activities?
3. What do you understand by tertiary activities? What is the other name for tertiary sector?

**Ans :**

1. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, then it is called the primary sector. Primary sector is also known as agriculture sector.
2. When the natural products are changed into other forms by ways of manufacturing then it is called as secondary activities.
3. The activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors is called as a tertiary activities. The other name for the tertiary sector is service sector.

127. Read the source given below and answer questions that follow by choosing the most appropriate option:

The table above shows the estimated number of workers in India in the organized and unorganized sectors. Read the table carefully. Fill in the missing data and answer the questions that follow.

Worker in Different Sectors (in Millions)			
Sector	Organised	Unorganised	Total
Primary	2		242
Secondary	9	54	63
Tertiary		76	93
Total	28		398

Worker in Different Sectors (in Millions)			
Sector	Organised	Unorganised	Total
Primary	2		242
Total %	7 %	93 %	100%

**Questions :**

1. What is the number of persons engaged in the unorganized sector?
2. Which is the most important sector that provides the most jobs to the people?
3. How many workers are working in the tertiary sector ?
4. Which organised sector is most important and why ?

**Ans :**

1. We complete the table by doing calculation as given below.

Worker in Different Sectors (in Millions)			
Sector	Organised	Unorganised	Total
Primary	2	240	242
Secondary	9	54	63
Tertiary	17	76	93
Total	28	370	398
Total %	7 %	93 %	100%

The number of people engaged in the unorganized sector is 370 million.

2. Primary sector is the most important sector that provides the most jobs to the people?
3. 93 million.
4. Tertiary sector is most important organised because more workers are here than any other organized sector.

# CHAPTER 18

## MONEY AND CREDIT

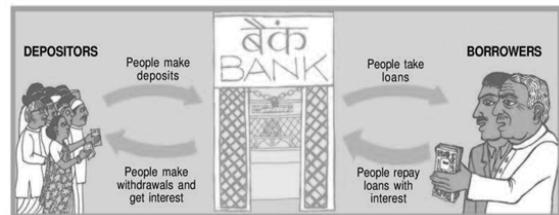
### SUMMARY

1. Money : Anything that is generally acceptable as a means of exchange and at the same time acts as a measure and store of value.
2. Barter System : The system of exchanging goods is known as the barter system.
3. Credit : (Loan) refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.
4. Cash Reserve Ratio (CRR) : Banks always keep some part of the total amount deposited as cash reserve to meet the needs of the depositors. That part of the total deposits which the bank keeps with itself in the cash form is called the Cash Reserve Ratio.
5. Double Coincidence of Wants : It means both parties, i.e., the buyer and the seller have to agree to sell and buy each others commodities.
6. Formal Lender Resources : These include those resources which are controlled by the government. Banks and cooperatives fall into the formal category.
7. Informal Lender Resources : These include moneylenders, traders, relatives and friends.
8. Medium of Exchange : When money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process, it is called as medium of exchange.
9. Currency : It is modern form of money like paper notes and coins.
10. Cheque : A cheque is a paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount from the person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.
11. Demand Deposits : Demand deposit is that deposit in the bank accounts which can be withdrawn on demand any time.

12. Monetary System : A system of exchange in which every good or service is sold against money and in return for money another good or service can be purchased.
13. Collateral : An asset that the borrower owns and uses as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.
14. Bank Rate : It is the rate at which Central Bank of a country lends money to its member banks.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Look at the given picture carefully and infer the income of the bank.



Choose the correct option from the following.

- (a) The difference between the amount deposited and borrowed by the bank to Reserve Bank of India
- (b) The difference of amount of interest between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors
- (c) The difference of interest rate between what is charged from borrowers and what is charged from depositor
- (d) The difference between the amount deposited by the depositor and borrowed by the borrower

**Ans :**

OD 2024

- (b) The difference of amount of interest between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors
2. Why do lenders often require collateral before lending loan? Choose the most suitable option from the following.
- (a) To lower interest rates for borrowers
  - (b) To establish personal relations
  - (c) To increase their profit margins
  - (d) To mitigate the risk of loan default

**Ans :**

OD 2024

- (d) To mitigate the risk of loan default
3. Who among the following takes the decision regarding saving and loan activities in the Self Help Groups (SHGs)?
- (a) Manager of a Bank
  - (b) Members of Non-Governmental Organisation (NGO)
  - (c) Local Money Lenders
  - (d) Members of Self-Help Group (SHG)
- Ans : OD 2023
- (d) Members of Self-Help Group (SHG)

4. Most of the agricultural labourers like Mohan depend upon loans from informal sector. Which of the following statements about this sector is correct –
- (a) There are government bodies to supervise informal sector.
  - (b) Money lenders ask for a reasonable rate of interest.
  - (c) Cost of informal loans to the borrower is quite high.
  - (d) Money lenders use fair means to get their money back.

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (c) Cost of informal loans to the borrower is quite high.
5. Which one of the following options describe ‘Collateral’?
- (a) Double coincidence of wants
  - (b) Certain products for barter
  - (c) Trade in barter
  - (d) Asset as guarantee for loan

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (d) Asset as guarantee for loan
6. The exchange of goods with a commodity is known as :
- (a) Double coincidence of wants
  - (b) Local trade
  - (c) Domestic trade
  - (d) Foreign trade

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) Double coincidence of wants
7. Which one of the following mediums of exchange is convenient ?
- (a) Money
  - (b) Commodity
  - (c) Gold
  - (d) Silver

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (a) Money
8. Which of the following authorities of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central Government ?
- (a) The State Bank of India
  - (b) The Reserve Bank of India
  - (c) The Allahabad Bank
  - (d) The Punjab National Bank

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (b) The Reserve Bank of India
9. Which one of the following is a formal source of loan ?
- (a) Relatives
  - (b) Landlord
  - (c) Bank
  - (d) Friend

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (c) Bank
10. Which one of the following options provides assured payment ?
- (a) Voucher
  - (b) Demand Deposit
  - (c) Cheque
  - (d) Collateral

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (b) Demand Deposit

**11.** Find the incorrect option :

- (a) Demand deposit share the essential features of money.
- (b) With demand deposit payments can be made without cash.
- (c) Demand deposits are safe way of money transformation.
- (d) Demand deposit facility is like cheque.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (d) Demand deposit facility is like cheque.

**12.** Rita has taken a loan of 7 lakhs from the bank to purchase a car. The annual interest rate on the loan is 14.5 per cent and the loan is to be repaid in 3 years in monthly instalments. The bank retained the papers of the new car as collateral, which will be returned to Rita only when she repays the entire loan with interest.

**Analyse the loan information given above, considering one of the following correct option :**

- (a) Mode of re-payment
- (b) Terms of credit
- (c) Interest on loan
- (d) Deposit criteria

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- (b) Terms of credit

**13.** Which among the following issues currency notes on behalf of the Central Government ?

- (a) State Bank of India
- (b) Reserve Bank of India
- (c) Commercial Bank of India
- (d) Union Bank of India

**Ans :**

OD 2020

- (b) Reserve Bank of India

**14.** A system where goods were exchanged without using money is better known as

- (a) goods system
- (b) exchange system
- (c) barter system
- (d) no-money system

**Ans :**

SQP 2018, 2013

- (c) no-money system

**15.** A porter making pots, wants to exchange pots for wheat. Luckily, he meets a farmer who has wheat and is willing to exchange it for the pots. What is this situation known as?

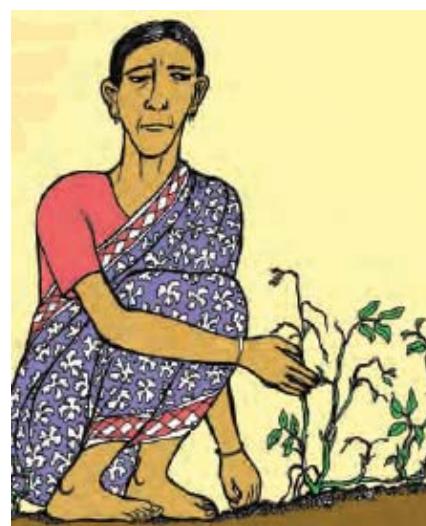
- (a) Incidence of wants
- (b) Double coincidence of wants
- (c) Barter system of wants
- (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- (b) Double coincidence of wants

**16.** Identify the biggest problem faced by the small farmers during cultivation season:



- (a) lack of Government Support and Subsidies.

- (b) Debt trap from the money lenders

- (c) Small piece of land

- (d) Lack of using modern mode of cultivation

**Ans :**

Comp 2016

- (b) Debt trap from the money lenders

**17.** The problem of similar wants made exchange difficult, so a new medium of exchange was developed known as

- (a) capital
- (b) cost
- (c) rent
- (d) money

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (d) money

*Modern forms of money include currency – paper notes and coins. Unlike the things that were used as money earlier, modern currency is not made of precious metal such as gold, silver and copper. And unlike grain and cattle, they are neither of everyday use. The modern currency is without any use of its own. Then, why is it accepted as a medium of exchange? It is accepted as a medium of exchange because the currency is authorised by the government of the country.*

*The other form in which people hold money is as deposits with banks. At a point of time, people need only some currency for their day-to-day needs. For instance, workers who receive their salaries at the end of each month have extra cash at the beginning of the month. What do people do with this extra cash? They deposit it with the banks by opening a bank account in their name. Banks accept the deposits and also pay an interest rate on the deposits. In this way people's money is safe with the banks and it earns an interest. People also have the provision to withdraw the money as and when they require. Since the deposits in the bank accounts can be withdrawn on demand, these deposits are called demand deposits.*

#### Questions :

1. In which system, double coincidence of wants is an essential feature?
2. Why are paper notes and coins accepted as a medium of exchange?
3. Why do people prefer demand deposits?

**Ans :**

1. In barter system, double coincidence of wants is an essential feature.
2. Because they are authorised by the government of the country.
3. Because demand deposits in the bank accounts can be withdrawn on demand.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

137. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows :

*Every loan agreement specifies an interest rate which the borrower must pay to the lender along with the repayment of the principal. In addition, lenders may demand collateral (security) against loans. Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestocks, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.*

*The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. For instance, we have seen that the banks maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The RBI monitors the banks in actually maintaining cash balance.*

*Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves. For example, banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash. This is kept as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Since, on any particular day, only some of its many depositors come to withdraw cash, the bank is able to manage with this cash.*

#### Questions :

1. What do you mean by collateral in banking system?
2. Who supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans?
3. What per cent of deposits is used as cash by Bank?

**Ans :**

1. Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestocks, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

- 25.** Raghav has surplus money so he opens a bank account and deposits in it. Whenever he needs money, he can go to his bank and withdraw from there. This kind of deposit with the banks are known as
- (a) demand deposit  
 (b) term deposit  
 (c) fixed deposit  
 (d) surplus deposit

**Ans :**

Foreign 2011

- (a) demand deposit

- 26.** Read the given data and find out which country has most equitable distribution of income.

Countries	Monthly Income of Citizens in four Countries in 2018					
	Citizen I	Citizen II	Citizen III	Citizen IV	Citizen V	Average
Country A	10,500	11,200	10,800	11,000	10,700	10,840
Country B	600	5,000	600	600	600	1,480
Country C	550	10,500	400	7,500	2000	4,190
Country D	800	4,800	700	5,000	750	2,410

- (a) Country A  
 (b) Country B  
 (c) Country C  
 (d) Country D

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (a) Country A

- 27.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence
1. Commodity money
  2. Paper notes and coins
  3. Bank money and digital payments
  4. Metallic coins.

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3  
 (b) 3, 4, 2, 1  
 (c) 3, 4, 2, 1  
 (d) 1, 3, 2, 4

**Ans :**

SQP 2008

- (a) 1, 4, 2, 3

- 28.** A person can withdraw money by issuing a cheque. What is a cheque?
- (a) Loan taken by the bank.  
 (b) Loan taken by the depositor from the bank.  
 (c) Paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount.  
 (d) Paper valid to withdraw money

**Ans :**

OD 2014

- (c) Paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount.

- 29.** **Assertion :** Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves.  
**Reason :** Banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.
- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 30.** What is the most important function of the banks?
- (a) Accept deposits and extend loans.  
 (b) Give loans to government.  
 (c) Open as many bank accounts as possible.  
 (d) Give loans to businesses.

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (a) Accept deposits and extend loans.

**18. Assertion :** The modern currency is used as a medium of exchange; however, it does not have a use of its own.

**Reason :** Modern currency is easy to carry

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2010, 2008

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**19. Read the information given below and select the correct answer:**

Rajaram is a landlord who grants loan to farmers for sowing new crops and purchasing farm inputs. He grants the loan at a higher rate of interest. If the farmer fails to repay the loan, he has to work on Rajaram's field as a bonded labour. Also, a farmer cannot get another credit till the time he had cleared his previous dues. Which of the following Rajaram is offering?

- (a) Informal sector credit
- (b) Formal sector credit
- (c) Banking credit
- (d) Community credit

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (a) Informal sector credit

**20. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:**

1. Banks give loans to borrowers
2. Banks keep a small amount of the deposits as cash
3. Banks deposit the savings from lenders
4. Banks pay interest to the lenders

**Options :**

- (a) 2, 4, 3, 1
- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1
- (c) 4, 3, 2, 1
- (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2011

- (b) 3, 4, 2, 1

**21. Modern forms of money include which of the following?**

- (a) Currency notes and coins
- (b) Cowrie shells and stones
- (c) Gold and silver coins
- (d) Grains and cattle

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (a) Currency notes and coins

**22. What is the most important function of money?**

- (a) Used in banking transactions
- (b) Payment of loans
- (c) Medium of exchange
- (d) Stock market exchange

**Ans :**

Comp 2010

- (c) Medium of exchange

**23. Identify the kind of such groups present in some part of rural India.**



- (a) Self Help groups

- (b) Panchayats

- (c) Small rural banks

- (d) Women empowerment movements

**Ans :**

OD 2005

- (a) Self Help groups

**24. Assertion :** The facility of demand deposits makes it possible to settle payments without the use of cash.

**Reason :** Demand deposits are paper orders which make it possible to transfer money from one person's account to another person's account.

**39.** **Assertion :** Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits.

**Reason :** The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income.

- Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

(a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**40.** Which of the following is not a feature of Self Help Groups (SHGs)?

- It consists of 15-20 members or more.
- Here members pool their savings which acts as collateral.
- Loans are given at nominal rate of interest.
- It is an informal source of credit.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

(d) It is an informal source of credit.

**41.** Ram and Shyam are small farmers. Ram has taken credit 1.5% per month on ₹ 20000 from a trader while Shyam has taken credit at 8% per annum from bank on the same amount. Who is better off?

- Ram is better because he has to do no paperwork.
- Shyam is better because his interest payment is less.
- Ram is better because he has not paid any collateral.
- Both Ram and Shyam are equal so no one is better off.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2020

(b) Shyam is better because his interest payment is less.

**42.** Observe the following picture cautiously which depicts about.



(a) The ancient system of economic activity

(b) The barter system

(c) Non-economic based activities

(d) Both (a) and (b)

**Ans :**

SQP 2019

(d) both (a) and (b)

**43.** **Assertion :** Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestock, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.

**Reason :** Collateral is given as the lender can sell the collateral to recover the loan amount if the borrower fails to repay the loan.

- Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2017

(a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**44.** Identify the bank:

- Which has the presence in neighbour country of India.
- Started in 1970s.
- Most of the borrower are women.
- Professor Muhammad Yunus was the founder of this bank.

**Option :**

- National Bank Of Bangladesh
- Grameen Bank Of Bangladesh.
- Rural Bank Of Bangladesh.
- State Bank Of Bangladesh.

portion of the deposits to extend loans.

(iv) They mediate between those who have surplus funds and those who are in need of these funds. They charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits. The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income.

**117.** Why are the poor households still dependent on informal sources of credit ? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2007

Following are the main reasons for formal credit not being available to the rural poor :

- (1) There is need for collateral or complicated paper work which the rural poor are not capable of providing.
- (2) The moneylenders and rich landowners continue to extend loans to defaulters even if the previous loan is unpaid.
- (3) The banks are mostly unwilling to lend loans to small farmers because the repayment of loans is dependent on the income from farming. In case of crop failure, repayment becomes impossible. So, the recovery from small farmers becomes difficult.
- (4) They are hesitant and unsure about the functioning of the banks.
- (5) They may not have access to banks in their villages.

**118.** How do banks play an important role in the economy of India ? Explain.

or

What is the role of a bank in the economic development of a country ? Explain.

or

“Banks are playing an important role in the development of the Indian economy.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

Banks play an important role in the economy of India as is given below :

- (1) Banks mediate between those who have surplus money and those who need money. They take deposits from those who have surplus money and use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans.
- (2) They account for 25% of rural credit in India. In this way, they help in increasing economic activities of the borrowers.
- (3) In India, banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, small borrowers, etc.
- (4) Undoubtedly, cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country’s development. It helps to grow crops, to meet working capital needs of production and in setting up new industries or trade in goods.
- (5) In this way, they help poor people to increase their standard of living. If credit is available to the poor people at low rate of interest and on reasonable terms and conditions, they can improve their economic conditions.

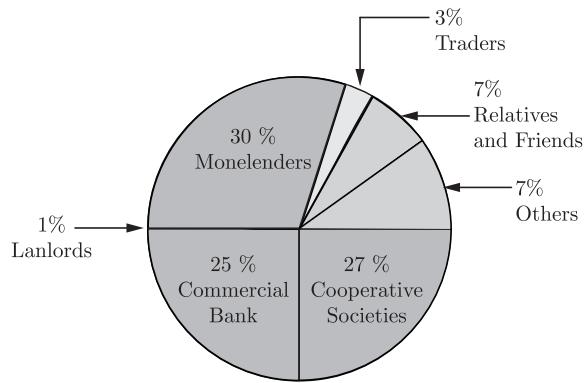
**119.** How do SHGs act to provide a platform for women to address their various social issues ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, 2006

- (1) A Self-Help Group is an organisation of rural poor, particularly women who pool their savings.
- (2) The SHG encourages its members for savings and enables them to take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs. In this way, it addresses their economic issue that is the base of many social issues.
- (3) SHGs are the building blocks of organisation of the rural poor. Not only does it help women to become financially self-reliant, the regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence, etc.
- (4) The SHG provides self-employment opportunities to its members by providing them loans for meeting working capital needs, for housing materials, for acquiring

50. Study the pie chart and answer the given questions:



- Which are the formal sources of credit for rural households in India?
- Which is the most dominant source of credit for rural household? Why?
- What is the total percentage of informal sources of credit for rural household?

Ans :

Comp 2016

- Commercial Banks and Cooperative societies.
- Moneylenders, as they are ready to give loan without collateral and borrower can get loans even without repaying their earlier loans.
- 48%

51. Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

- Uses as medium of exchange
- Authorised medium of exchange
- Currency
- Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 3, 4, 2, 1 | (b) 3, 1, 4, 2 |
| (c) 1, 3, 2, 4 | (d) 1, 4, 3, 2 |

Ans :

Foreign 2015

- (b) 3, 1, 4, 2

52. Read the information given below and select the correct answer:

Ramesh has approached the bank for securing loan. The bank asked him to keep the papers of his home to avail the loan. Ramesh has agreed for the same. Ramesh has used ..... to secure loan from the bank.

- Credit
- Collateral
- Guarantee
- Interest

Ans :

OD 2014

- (b) Collateral

53. **Assertion :** The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.

**Reason :** The RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small scale industries, to small borrowers etc.

- Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

SQP 2007, 2005

- Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

54. Assume there are four families in a country. The average per capita income of these families is ₹ 6000. If the incomes of three families are ₹ 5000, ₹ 8000, and ₹ 4000 respectively, what is the income of the fourth family?

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| (a) ₹ 5500 | (b) ₹ 2000 |
| (c) ₹ 3000 | (d) ₹ 7000 |

Ans :

Delhi 2019

- (d) ₹ 7000

55. Neha has taken a loan of ₹ 5 lakhs from the bank to purchase a house. The annual interest rate on the loan is 12 percent and the loan is to be repaid in 10 years in monthly instalments. Neha had to submit to the bank, documents showing her employment records and salary before the bank agreed to give her the loan. What are the documents required for the loan?

- Blue print of the house to be made
- Employment records and salary



- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** Foreign 2011

- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

- 61.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence  
 1. Applied for tractor loan by a farmer  
 2. Sanctioned loan by the cooperative bank  
 3. Collateral security demanded by the bank  
 4. Terms of credit told to the farmer.

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 2, 4, 3, 1 | (b) 3, 4, 2, 1 |
| (c) 4, 3, 2, 1 | (d) 1, 4, 3, 2 |

**Ans :** OD 2006  
 (d) 1, 4, 3, 2

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

- 62.** “The use of money spans a very large part of our everyday life.” Support the statement.

**Ans :** Comp 2021

Money is used in everyday life. There are several transactions involving money in any single day.

- (1) In many of these transactions, goods are bought and sold with the use of money. In some other transactions, services are exchanged with money. For some, there might not be any actual transfer of money taking place now but, a promise to pay money later.
- (2) For example, we purchase books, pencils, chocolates from money. We give doctor's fee and school fee in money. My father receives a monthly salary in money.

- 63.** Why do banks and cooperative societies need to lend more ? Explain.

**Ans :** SQP 2020

Banks and cooperative societies need to lend more because :

- (1) This would lead to higher incomes and many people could then borrow cheaply for a variety of needs.

- (2) People could grow crops, so business, set up small-scale industries etc.

- (3) It is important to save and reduce the dependence on informal sources of credit.

- 64.** How do the Demand Deposits offer facilities?

**Ans :** Comp 2019

The demand deposits in the bank can be used as a medium of exchange and it is accepted by all. For example, payments can be made by cheques instead of cash. This facility of cheques against demand deposits makes it possible to settle payments directly without using cash. Demand deposits are widely accepted as a means of payment.

- 65.** Describe the bad effects of informal sources of credit on borrowers.

**Ans :** Delhi 2019

Following are the bad effects of informal sources of credit :

- (1) They are not subordinate to any government organisation like RBI, thus there is no official backing or monitoring agency.
- (2) Absence of a fixed interest rate increases the scope of exploitation.
- (3) Increases the probability of scope of using unfair means to get back their payment.
- (4) Higher interest rates, with no official records, often lead to debt traps.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**  
**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 66.** Why are formal sources of credit preferred over the informal source of credit? Give three reasons.

**Ans :** SQP 2019

Formal sources of credit preferred over Informal sources of credit because :

- (1) Formal sources have low cost of borrowing.
- (2) Higher Income through cheap borrowing.
- (3) No exploitation and debt trap.
- (4) Any other relevant point.

**67.** What is a cheque ? How and why do we issue cheque ?

Ans : OD 2017

- (1) A cheque is a paper instructing the bank to pay a specific amount from the person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been made.
- (2) For payment through cheque, the payer who has an account with the bank, makes out a cheque for a specific amount.
- (3) The facility of cheques, i.e., we issue cheques against demand deposits, which make it possible to directly settle payments without the use of cash.

**68.** Explain collateral. Give some common examples of collateral used for borrowing.

Ans : Foreign 2011, 2009

- (1) Collateral is an asset that borrower owns and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid. If the borrower fails to repay the loan, the lender has the right to sell the asset or collateral to obtain payment.
- (2) The asset such as : Land, buildings, vehicles, live stocks are some common examples of collateral used for borrowing.

**69.** Why is cheap and affordable credit important for the country's development? Explain any three reasons.

Ans : OD 2018

Cheap and affordable credit plays a crucial role for the country's development. Reasons are :

- (1) Credit helps people to meet the on going expenses of production and thereby develop their business in agricultural and industrial areas.
- (2) For middle class people, loans help a lot in constructing their houses and to get rid of monthly rents.
- (3) It raises the standard of living and social status of the common man by enabling them to buy automobiles, electronic items etc.

**70.** Amrita is a government employee and belongs to a rich urban household whereas Rani works as a helper on a construction site and comes from a poor rural household. Both have a crisis at home and wish to take loan. Create a list of arguments explaining who between the two would successfully be able to get the loan from a formal source.

Ans : SQP 2018

Amrita would successfully get the loan from a formal source because:

- (1) Amrita because of her background is literate and will be able to complete the documentation and fulfil the formalities required by the banks, whereas it would be difficult for Rani to do this.
- (2) Amrita can easily arrange for collateral or guarantee for her loan whereas Rani will have difficulty in finding a guarantor.
- (3) Amrita is from a well-to do family and the banks will feel safer as far as repayment of loan is concerned as she can do so through EMIs from her salary. Whereas the bank may not feel safe in case of Rani as she does not have a regular source of income.

**71.** Explain any three loan activities of banks in India.

Ans : OD 2017

Activities of banks in India who are involved in providing loan :

- (1) Banks provide loans for various economic activities.
- (2) Banks intermediate between those who have surplus funds and those who are in need of these funds.
- (3) Banks offer very less interest on deposits than what they demand on loans.

**72.** What are the reasons why the banks might not be willing to lend to certain borrowers ?

Ans : SQP 2012

- (1) Bank loans require proper documents and collateral. Most of the 'poor' people don't possess anything to collateral.
- (2) The formal sources provide loan only for productive purposes, whereas the

poor people may demand loan for non-productive purposes like marriages, etc.

- 73.** Why money is referred to as a medium of exchange, give two reason ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2009

Money is accepted as medium of exchange because ;

- (1) it can be easily exchanged for any commodity or service.
- (2) it eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants.
- (3) it acts as an intermediate in the exchange process.

- 74.** Name two formal and two informal sources of rural credit in India ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2006

Formal sources of rural credit in India :

- (1) Cooperative Societies
- (2) Regular Commercial Banks

Two informal sources of rural credit in India are :

- (1) Relatives and friends
- (2) Local moneylenders

- 75.** State any two advantages of formal sources of credit ?

**Ans :**

OD 2016

Advantages of formal source of credit are:

- (1) These sources work under the supervision of Reserve Bank of India. The policy is transparent and open to all. There is least chance of dishonesty while dealing with the rural customers.
- (2) The rate of interest of formal source of credit is always lower than the informal ones.

- 76.** What are functions of money ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

Functions of Money :

- (A) Primary Functions : (a) Medium of Exchange, (b) Measure of Value.
- (B) Secondary Functions : (a) Store of Value, (b) Standard for Deferred Payments, (c) Transfer of value.

- 77.** Give two reasons, why the supervision of RBI over other banks is necessary ?

**Ans :**

OD 2013

The supervision of RBI is necessary due to the following reasons :

- (1) It ensures safety to the bank deposits of people.
- (2) It helps in collection of economic data all over the country.
- (3) It contains corrupt practices that may creep within banks.

- 78.** State which requirement a borrower has to fulfil before taking a housing loan ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

- (1) First of all, borrower need a certificate of source of income.
- (2) Documents in sustainable economic records.
- (3) Then all the papers of the purchased property handed over to the banks as collateral security.
- (4) If not fully satisfied, the bank can ask for one/two sureties of borrower who are ready to repay the loan, in case the borrower fails to repay his loan.

- 79.** How is the facility of cheque useful ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020, 2017

- (1) The cheques or demand deposits have the essential features of money.
- (2) They make it possible to directly settle payments without the use of cash.
- (3) Since cheques/demand drafts are widely accepted as a means of payment along with currency, they constitute money in the modern economy.

- 80.** Mention any three limitations of the barter system.

**Ans :**

OD 2012

- (1) Two people with different types of needs and goods must be these to satisfy each other's needs.
- (2) There are many products which cannot be divided.
- (3) Valuation of goods is very difficult.

Ans :

Comp 2012, 2009

(b) Grameen Bank Of Bangladesh.

**45.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:

1. Barter system
2. Legal currency
3. Banking system
4. Medium of exchange in transactions

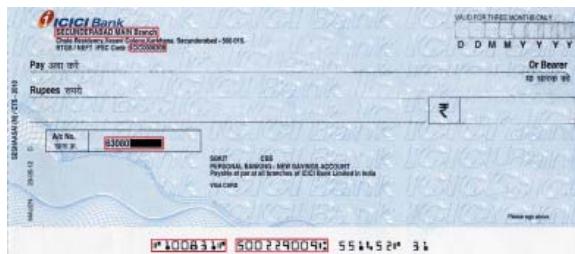
**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 2, 4, 3, 1 | (b) 3, 4, 2, 1 |
| (c) 1, 2, 4, 3 | (d) 4, 3, 2, 1 |

Ans :

OD 2014

(c) 1, 2, 4, 3

**46.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:

Which of the following aspect best signifies the above image?

- (a) Bank Cheque
- (b) Bank Draft
- (c) Terms of Credit
- (d) Letters of Payment

Ans :

Foreign 2012

(a) Bank Cheque

**47.** Read the information given below and select the correct option:

Mohan is an agricultural labourer. There are several months in a year when he has no work and needs credit to meet his daily expenses. He depends upon his employer, the landowner for credit who charges an interest rate of 5 per cent per month. Mohan repays the money by working physically for the landowner on his farmland. Over the years his debt will:

- (a) Increase- because of increasing interest and non-payment of monthly amount.
- (b) Remain constant- as he is working for the employer but is repaying less.

(c) Reduce- as amount equivalent to his salary is being counted as monthly repayment.

(d) Be totally repaid- as he is repaying the debt in the form of physical labour.

Ans :

SQP 2021

(a) Increase- because of increasing interest and non-payment of monthly amount.

**48.** **Assertion :** Credit would be useful or not depends on the risk involved in a situation.**Reason :** The chance of benefitting from credit is highest in agriculture sector.

(a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

(b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

(c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

(d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Ans :

OD 2018

(c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.

**49.** Most of the agricultural labourers like Mohan depend upon loans from informal sector. Which of the following statements about this sector is correct:

- (a) There are govt. bodies to supervise informal sector
- (b) Money lenders ask for a reasonable rate of interest
- (c) Cost of informal loans to the borrower is quite high
- (d) Money lenders use fair means to get their money back

Ans :

OD 2015

(c) Cost of informal loans to the borrower is quite high

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**  
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

**88.** Explain money and its modern forms. Classify it in different kinds. Before the introduction of coins, what objects were used as money ?

Ans :

SOP 2011

- (1) Money is a medium of exchange and store of value.
- (2) The modern forms of money include currency and deposits, i.e., it can be classified into :
  - (i) Coins;
  - (ii) Paper notes; and
  - (iii) Credit money or deposits with banks.
- (3) Before the introduction of coins, a variety of objects such as grains and cattle in the early ages and metallic coins like gold, silver, and copper coins till the last century were used as money.

**89.** State modern forms of money. Why do demand deposits constitute money in the modern economy ?

Ans :

Comp 2010

- (1) The modern forms of money are currency and deposits with banks. That is, money can be classified into :
  - (i) Coins;
  - (ii) Paper notes; and
  - (iii) Demand deposits or credit money.
- (2) Since demand deposits are accepted widely as a means of payment along with currency, they constitute money in the modern economy.

They are closely linked to the working of the modern banking system.

**90.** State any two positive and two negative role of credit.

Ans :

OD 2017

- (1) Positive role :
  - (i) Credit helps to meet the working capital needs of production.
  - (ii) It helps in setting up new industries, or trade in goods.
- (2) Negative role :
  - (i) In the case of high risk, credit pushes the borrower into a debt-trap. That is, credit in this case pushes the

borrower into a situation from which recovery is very painful.

- (ii) Instead of improvement in earnings, the borrower is much worse off than before. Farmers have to sell part of land to repay the loan.

**91.** What is meant by term credit ? What does it include?

Ans :

Delhi 2017

- (1) Credit loan refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.
- (2) Credit includes the following elements :
  - (i) Interest rate which the borrower must pay to the lender along with the repayment of the principal.
  - (ii) Collaterals such as land titles, deposits with banks, livestock, etc. and documentation required.
  - (iii) Mode of payment.

### NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

**92.** How is money used in everyday life ? Explain with examples.

Ans :

SQP 2009

- (1) The use of money spans a very large part of our everyday life. There are several transactions involving money in any single day.
- (2) In many of these transactions, goods are bought and sold with the use of money. In some other transactions, services are exchanged with money. For some, there might not be any actual transfer of money taking place now but, a promise to pay money later.
- (3) For example, we purchase books, pencils, chocolates from money. We give doctor's fee and school fee in money. My father receives monthly salary in money. Hence, money is used in everyday life.

- (c) Proof of the present house  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :**

SQP 2018

- (b) Employment records and salary

- 56.** Mohan produces ice creams and wants to sell it to people. He also requires sugar to make ice cream, so he wishes to buy sugar. Now, Mohan is unable to find a person who will exchange sugar for ice cream. Which of the following terms explain the problem that Mohan is facing?  
 (a) Lack of trade expertise  
 (b) Double coincidence of wants  
 (c) Irrational consumer behavior  
 (d) Future expectations

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

- (b) Double coincidence of wants

- 57.** Study the paragraph and fill up the table:  
 Megha has taken a loan of ₹ 5 lakhs from the bank to purchase a house. The annual interest rate on the loan is 12 percent and the loan is to be repaid in 10 years in monthly instalments. Megha had to submit to the bank, documents showing her employment records and salary before the bank agreed to give her the loan. The bank retained as collateral the papers of the new house, which will be returned to Megha only when she repays the entire loan with interest.

Loan amount (in ₹)	?
Documents required	?
Interest rate	?
Collateral	?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

<b>Loan amount (in ₹)</b>	<b>5 lakhs</b>
Documents required	employment records and salary
Interest rate	12 per cent
Collateral	papers of the new house

- 58. Assertion :** In India, no individual can refuse to accept a payment made in rupees.

**Reason :** Rupee is the legal tender in India.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2005

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 59.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Medium of exchange  
 (b) Cheque Payments  
 (c) Loan Certificate  
 (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

OD 2015, 2011

- (a) Medium of exchange

- 60. Assertion :** Rohan took credit in the form of advance payment from a buyer and he delivered the goods to the buyer on time and also earned profit. The credit made Rohan better off in this situation.

**Reason :** Credit can never push a person into a debt trap.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 98.** "Credit sometimes pushes the borrower into a situation from which recovery is very painful." Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

Bank usually referred as a formal source of credit and in some situations the borrower would not able to repay loan. This pushes them in the situation of debt trap. Example:

- (1) In case of rural areas if crop fails due to natural factors it will be difficult for the farmers to pay loan.
- (2) In case of failure of a business. It will be difficult for the businessman to repay the credit.
- (3) In case of informal sector, rate of interest is very high. If due to crop failure previous loan is not repaid interest rate further mounts.
- (4) In case of high risk activities failure without some support can push borrower in painful situation.
- (5) In many cases people has to sell their land and fixed assets to repay loan.

- 99.** Why is it necessary to increase a large number of banks mainly in rural areas? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

It is important to open more banks in the rural areas as formal sector of credit is missing. The practise of borrowing from the informal sector that currently exists in rural areas, for example local moneylenders, has a number of disadvantages.

- (1) The informal sector charges a higher rate of interest. Informal sector make loans very expensive as there are no external organizations controlling the credit activities of lenders.
- (2) Informal sector involves high degree of risk as there are no proper set of rules for repayment and there is a lot of exploitation of poor farmers.
- (3) Lenders may exploit the borrowers, they may engage in threats and intimidation to ensure repayment of lo

There is no written agreement between the lender and the borrower. There is no legal recourse in case of informal sources of credit.

- 100.** Why are service conditions of formal sector loans better than informal sector? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Formal sector :

- (1) This sector is mainly supervised by the RBI.
- (2) It includes banks and cooperatives, thus every clause is in writing and clear to comprehend.
- (3) In this sector of credit, collateral is required. It provides loans comparatively at lower rates.
- (3) It doesn't lead to a debt trap.

Informal sector :

- (1) No external organisation supervises this sector.
- (2) The lenders are mainly moneylenders, friends, relatives, traders and landowners etc.
- (3) Collateral is not required, thus it involves risk.
- (4) This sector charges higher interest rates without any rules or regulation.
- (5) This could lead to a debt trap.

- 101.** How is money used in everyday life? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2016, 2017

Money is that thing through which we can make our transactions easily in society, country and abroad. We use it in our daily life in the following way:

- (1) It helps us in purchasing the commodity from market and else where easily
- (2) We can value the things with the help of money.
- (3) It can be used at any time at everywhere according to requirements.
- (4) It can be saved in banks for future. We can withdraw it according to the need.
- (5) It provides prestige and status among the members of the society.

**81.** Write any three advantages of money.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (1) Money is used as a medium of exchange.
- (2) Money offers economic freedom to the people.
- (3) Money is used for purchasing goods and services. It is also easy to store money.

**82.** “The credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged.” Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

In the rural areas the poor households have to pay a large amount for borrowing. Because only the half credit needs are met from informal sources. Most loans from informal lenders carry a high interest rate. They do little to increase the income of the borrowers. so, it is necessary that banks and co-operatives increase their lending particularly in the rural areas, which may reduce the dependence on informal sources of credit.

**83.** The rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange, Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2008

- (1) It is authorised by the government of the country.
- (2) Its demand and supply can be controlled by the central bank of the country.
- (3) In India, the law legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transactions in India.
- (4) In India, the value of each good or services is measured in rupee.

**84.** Using an example explain the problem of lack of double coincidence of wants in a barter economy.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2007, 2002

Problem of lack of double coincidence of wants in a barter economy: Double coincidence of wants is a precondition for the barter system of exchange. Double coincidence of wants implies that goods in possession of the two different individuals are needed by each other. But it is not so simple. It is difficult

to find a person who wants your horse and at the same time possesses a cow that you want to buy. Accordingly, under the barter system, exchange remained extremely limited.

**85.** What are demand deposits ? For what reasons they are considered as money ?

**Ans :**

OD 2014

Demand Deposits : The deposit in the bank accounts which can be withdrawn on demand at any time are called demand deposits.

They are considered as money because they can be withdrawn against demand deposits makes it possible to settle payments without the use of money. Since, the (Demand deposits) are accepted widely as a means of payment, along with currency they constitute money in the current economy.

**86.** For what reasons Reserve Bank of India supervise the functioning of the bank ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2018

RBI (Reserve bank of India) supervise the functioning of the bank on account of following reasons :

- (1) To supervises whether the bank has maintain minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive.
- (2) To monitors that the banks actually maintain the cash balance.
- (3) To supervises that the small cultivators, small scale industries, small borrowers, etc. has got sufficient share of credit or not.

**87.** Evaluate the role loans with reference to India ?

**Ans :**

OD 2013

Role of Loans in India.

- (1) If a lender charge a high rate of interests, it leads to create a situation of debt trap.
- (2) High cost of borrowing leads to a major share of profits to be paid as interest.
- (3) More Loans are given (provided) by banks and cooperative.
- (4) At times, higher ratio lead to higher interest than the principal amount.

**106.** Why is it necessary for the banks and co-operative societies to increase their lending facilities in rural areas ? Explain.

**Ans :**

OD 2008, 2005

It is necessary for the banks and co-operative societies to increase their lending activities in rural areas due to following :

- (1) Most of the informal lenders charge a much higher rate of interest on loans. The moneylenders in the village sometimes charge 5% per month i.e., 60% per annum.
- (2) As a result of it, larger part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan in some cases, the amount to be repaid becomes greater than the income of the borrower. This leads to debt-trap.
- (3) These reasons make it necessary to expand the formal sources of credit i.e., banks and co-operatives which make available cheap and affordable credit to the people.

**107.** Explain with examples, how people are involved with the banks.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

Bank is that institution which is the friend in real sense. Bank is associated with the people in the following ways :

- (1) Source of loan : Bank provides loan to public at their needs. It receives nominal rate of interest from the borrowers. It does not give any pressure to the borrower to return loan. It gives loan as much as anyone requires.
- (2) Opening the Account : Any body can open his account in the bank to save money for future. He can deposit his money and take back at any time in working day
- (3) It gives interest on the deposit money. Thus a person earns interest on his deposit.
- (4) Bank is honest and functions as a good friend with the businessmen. It helps in issuing true picture of income and sale to the income tax and sales tax department on which they have faith.

**108.** What are the two categories of sources of credit ? Mention four features of each.

**Ans :**

OD 2011

Two categories of sources of credit are:

- (1) Formal sources of credit
- (2) Informal sources of credit
- (3) Formal credit sector is known as organised sector. This sector provides loan at low rate of interest. This sector includes banks, co-operative societies. The rate of interest is usually very low in sources of this sector. In formal sector of loans there is no exploitation as in the case with the informal sector of loans.
- (4) The informal credit sector includes moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends. In the case of informal sector of loans, the rate of interest is quite high. In the informal sector the traders would desire to buy the produce of the farmers at a low price but a bank would never resort to such an exploitation.

**109.** How does the use of money make exchange of things easier ? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

Uses of money as the medium of exchange :

- (1) People exchange goods and services through the medium of money. In this way money acts as a medium of payments.
- (2) A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity (goods) or service that he or she might desire.
- (3) Money acts as an intermediary in the process of exchange. Money can be split in smallest unit or can be combined in higher unit of currency. In this way the purchase of smallest commodity or the biggest commodity becomes easier for the purchaser or seller.

For Example : Exchange of animal against money or exchange of services of teacher or doctor or an engineer by any person is acceptable between mutual certain.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

**93.** 'Formal sector of credit better than informal sector.' Give arguments in support of your answer.

**Ans :**

OD 2024

Formal sector of credit is better as -

- (1) It provides regular repayment options.
- (2) The rate of interest is lower as compared to the informal system of credit.
- (3) It is regulated by Reserve Bank of India whereas informal system of credit is unregulated.
- (4) There are lesser chances of falling into debt trap as compared to the informal sector.

**94.** Distinguish between formal and informal sources of credit.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

Formal credit is generally available with banks and cooperatives. They charge lesser rates of interest than informal institutions. The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) supervises the functioning of the formal sources of loans. Informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc. They charge much higher interest on loans. There is no one to stop them from using unfair means to get their money back.

**95.** Imagine yourself to be XYZ, a member of a women Self-Help Group. Analyse the ways through which your group provides loan to the members.

**Ans :**

SQP 2021

- (1) Self Help Groups pool their savings.
- (2) A typical SHG has 15-20 members, usually belonging to one neighbourhood, who meet and save regularly.
- (3) Saving per member varies from Rs. 25 to Rs. 100 or more, depending on the ability of the people to save.
- (4) Members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs.

(5) The group charges interest on these loans but this is still less than what the moneylender charges.

**96.** Describe the importance of formal sources of credit in the economic development.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019 , 2010

Importance of formal sources of credit in economic development are as follows :

- (1) It is monitored by the Reserve Bank of India or regulated by the Government of India and thus helps in bringing order to the system of lending and borrowing in the country.
- (2) Provides fixed interest rate to all sections of society.
- (3) Limits the scope of using unfair means to repay the payment.
- (4) Less interest rate and accessible to all, rich or poor.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**97.** Explain the role of Self Help Groups in the rural economy.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

Self-Help Groups consist of certain members who pool their savings and constitute a fund which is further used in making finance and advances to other members. A typical Self-Help Group has 15 to 20 members. The members pool their savings and after some time, it becomes a large amount which is used to give loans to the needy ones at a very nominal rate of interest. This helps to reduce the functioning of informal sectors of credit.

- (1) They help borrowers overcome the problem of lack of collateral.
- (2) They can get timely loans for variety of purposes and at a reasonable interest rate. They are building blocks of the organisation of the rural poor.
- (3) It helps women to become self-reliant. The regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on various social issues.

- (6) When commercial bank fails to get financial accommodation from anywhere, it approaches Reserve Bank of India as a last resort. Reserve Bank of India advances loan to such banks against approved securities. It ensures that the banking system of the country does not suffer from any setback and money market remains stable.
- (7) It acts as a banker to the government and is the custodian of the foreign exchange reserves of the economy.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- 114.** Why do we need to expand formal sources of credit in India ? Explain.

**Ans :** SQP 2020  
The formal sources of credit need to be expanded in India because of the following reasons :  
(1) Compared to the formal lenders, most of the informal lenders charge a much higher interest on loan. Thus, the cost to the borrower of informal loans is much higher.

(2) Higher cost of borrowing means a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan. Hence, the borrowers have less income left for themselves. It sometimes means, the amount to be repaid is greater than the income of the borrower. This can lead to increasing debt and debt trap. People who may wish to start an enterprise may not do so because of the high cost of borrowing.

(3) People will be protected from coercion, humiliation and persecution that generally inflicted by formal sources like, moneylenders, landlords, etc.  
(4) This would also lead to higher incomes and many people could then borrow cheaply for a variety of needs.  
(5) Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development.

- 115.** Why do the rural borrowers depend on the informal sector of credit ? What steps can be taken to encourage them to take loans from the formal sources ? Explain any two.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012, 2009

The rural borrowers depend on informal sector of credit because :

- (1) There is no need for collateral and complicated paper work. The moneylenders and landowners continue to extend loans at high interest rates to defaulters even if previous loan is unpaid.
- (2) They are hesitant and unsure about the functioning of the bank.
- (3) They may not have access to banks in their village.

**Steps to encourage to take loans from formal sources :**

- (1) Set up more banks in the rural areas to save them from the moneylenders' high rate of interest and debt trap.
- (2) Cheap and easily available credit should be provided for self-employment like small-scale industries or business.
- (3) Setting up of cooperatives and encourage Self-Help Groups.

- 116.** What are the commercial banks ? Mention any four of their functions.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

- (1) Commercial bank or a bank is a profit-making institution that accepts the deposits, pays an amount as interest on the deposits and extends loans to the needy people.
- (2) The following are the functions of a commercial bank :
  - (i) Commercial banks accept the deposits from those who have surplus money.
  - (ii) They pay an amount as interest on the deposits.
  - (iii) Banks in India hold about 15% of their deposits as cash as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day and use the major

- 110.** Explain the role of credit for economic development.

**Ans :**

OD 2020

The roles of credit for economic development are given below :

- (1) It helps in increasing economic activities of the country; thus, helps in its development.
  - (2) Credit availability at cheaper rates of interest encourages the business or firms to borrow more. Borrowing more money will facilitate the growth of business or increase in production in the economy.
  - (3) It also needs to be manipulated and kept under an administrative hold because loans from the informal sector include high interest rates that may be more harmful than good. For this reason, it is important that the formal sector gives out more loans so that borrowers are not duped by moneylenders, and can ultimately contribute to national development. So, credit supply is the key factor for economic development.
- 111.** “Bank plays an important role in the economic development of the country.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

Bank plays an important role in the economic development of the country in many ways :

- (1) Bank provides loan in rural area for crop production ultimately resulting in the development of many places.
- (2) Bank provides loan to create fixed assets that will create employment opportunities.
- (3) It acts as a link between savers and investors.
- (4) Banks accept the deposit and pay an amount as interest on the deposit which mobilises savings.
- (6) Bank uses major portion of these deposits to extend loan for various profitable events.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 112.** “Credit pushes the borrower into situations from which recovery is very painful.” Support the statement.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

Bank usually referred as a formal source of credit and in some situations the borrower would not able to repay loan. This pushes them in the situation of debt trap. Example :

- (1) In case of rural areas if crop fails due to natural factors it will be difficult for the farmers to pay loan.
- (2) In case of failure of a business. It will be difficult for the businessman to repay the credit.
- (3) In case of informal sector, rate of interest is very high. If due to crop failure previous loan is not repaid interest rate further mounts.
- (4) In case of high risk activities failure without some support can push borrower in painful situation.
- (5) In many cases people has to sell their land and fixed assets to repay loan.

- 113.** Describe the significance of the Reserve Bank of India.

**Ans :**

OD 2020, 2018

The significances of the Reserve Bank of India are discussed below :

- (1) It issues currency notes on behalf of the central government.
- (2) It supervises the functioning of formal source of loan.
- (3) It monitors the banks and ensure that they maintain minimum reserves as per the guidelines of Central Bank.
- (4) It also sees that banks give loans not just for profit making to traders but also to small borrowers, small cultivators etc.
- (5) Periodically banks have to submit information to RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rate, etc.

assets like sewing machine, handlooms, cattle, etc.

- (5) The group charges interest on these loans but this is still less than what the money-lenders charge.

**120.** Self-Help Groups enjoy a lot of freedom in their functioning. Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (1) In Self-Help Groups, there is no provision of certain number of members or certain amount to deposit. Members are free to their number and amount to deposit in the group.
- (2) Most of the important decision regarding the savings and loan activities are taken by the group members.
- (3) The group decides as regards the loans to be granted — the purpose, amount, interest to be charged, repayment schedule, etc.
- (4) Also, it is the group which is responsible for the repayment of the loan. In any case of non-repayment of loan by anyone, the member is followed up seriously by other members in the group.
- (5) The SHGs help borrowers overcome the problem of lack of collateral and documentation requirement. Besides, the regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence, etc.

**121.** Why are informal sources of credit preferred in rural areas ? Give five reasons.

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

Informal sources of credit are preferred in rural areas for the following reasons :

- (1) There is no need for collateral such as land, building, vehicles, deposits with banks. The rural poor people are unable to provide collateral.
- (2) Also, there is no need for complicated paper work which the rural poor are not capable of providing.

(3) These moneylenders, traders and rich landlords continue to extend loans to defaulters even if the previous loan is unpaid.

- (4) They are hesitant and unsure about the functioning of the banks.
- (5) They may not have access to banks in their villages.
- (6) The procedure of giving credit is often very simple.

**122.** Why are credit arrangements not fair for all sections of society ? Give three reasons. Suggest two remedies for the problem.

or

Why is the share of formal sector credit higher for the richer households compared to the poorer households? Give any three reasons responsible for this.

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (1) Undoubtedly, credit arrangements are not very fair for all sections of society. The share of formal sector credit is higher for the richer households as compared to the poorer households. This has the following reasons :
  - (i) Poverty affects poor households' capacity to borrow. Formal sector credit requires proper documents and collateral as security against loans. Collateral is an asset. So, poor people lack in providing such things which affect their capacity to borrow.
  - (ii) The poor people do not repay loan on time because of the various day-to-day needs.
  - (iii) The people in villages may not have access to banks in their village. Also, they are hesitant and unsure about the functioning of the banks.
- (2) (i) More credit facilities should be made available in rural areas by opening more banks there.
- (ii) The procedure of giving loans should be made easier and simpler.

**102.** Describe any two sources each of formal and informal credit in India.

Ans :

Comp 2021

#### **Formal Credit Sector :**

- (1) Commercial Banks : Banks accept deposits from the public. Banks maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The balance of cash is used by banks to lend loans.
- (2) Cooperative Societies : This is another form of formal source of credit in India. They accept deposits from their members and provide loans to them.

#### **Informal Credit Sector :**

- (1) Informal credit sectors in India include credit given by unorganised sectors. These sectors meet the credit needs of poor households. No organisation supervises and controls the lending activities of informal sector.
- (2) The main informal credit sources are — local money lenders, traders, relatives and friends.

**103.** Define credit. What role does credit play in modern business ?

Ans :

OD 2013

- (1) Credit or loan refers to an agreement in which the sender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.
- (2) (i) Credit plays a vital role in modern business. A large number of transaction in our day-to-day activities involve credit in some form or the other.  
 (ii) The credit helps the entrepreneur to meet the ongoing expenses of production, complete production on time, and thereby increase his earnings.  
 (iii) The credit helps in establishing new industries or trade in goods.

**104.** How does money solve the problem of double coincidence of wants ? Explain with an example.

or

What is meant by double coincidence of wants ? Explain with an example.

or

How does the use of money eliminate the condition of double coincidence of wants ? Explain with an example.

Ans :

Foreign 2009

- (1) When there was barter system, exchanging of goods was difficult. Demand of two persons for each other's commodity should have raised at the same time, otherwise exchange was not possible. This is called double coincidence of wants.
- (2) Money by providing the crucial intermediate step, eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants.
- (3) For example, it would not be necessary for the farmer to look for cloth manufacturer who will buy his grains and at the same time, sell him cloth. Thus, money has solved this problem because now people do not have to search for one who will be ready to exchange his goods. This is because, now money acts as a medium of exchange.

**105.** How do banks mediate between those who have surplus money and those who need money ?

Ans :

Delhi 2010

Banks mediate between those who have surplus money and those who need money in the following ways :

- (1) Banks take deposits from those who have surplus money.
- (2) Banks keep only a small proportion of deposits as cash with themselves. This is kept as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day.
- (3) Since on any particular day, only some of its depositors come to withdraw cash, the bank is able to manage with this cash.
- (4) Banks use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans. Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits. The difference between these two interest rates is their main source of income.

Only then, Manav would select the formal or informal source the most facilitating and suitable to his capacity of repayment.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 126.** Read the given extract and answer questions that follow.

*Mahesh tells us that every season he needs loans for cultivation on his 1.5 acres of land. Till a few years back, he would borrow money from the village moneylender at an interest rate of five per cent per month (60% per annum). For the last few years, Mahesh has been borrowing from an agricultural trader in the village at an interest rate of three per cent per month. At the beginning of the cropping season, the trader supplies the farm inputs on credit, which is to be repaid when the crops are ready for harvest.*

*Besides the interest charge on the loan, the trader also makes the farmers promise to sell the crop to him. This way the trader can ensure that the money is repaid promptly. Also, since the crop prices are low after the harvest, the trader is able to make a profit from buying the crop at a low price from the farmers and then selling it later when the price has risen.*

*We next meet Arun who is supervising the work of one farm labourer. Arun has seven acres of land. He is one of the few persons in Sonpur to receive a bank loan for cultivation.*

*The interest rate on the loan is 8.5 per cent per annum, and can be repaid anytime in the next three years. Arun plans to repay the loan after harvest by selling a part of the crop. He then intends to store the rest of the potatoes in a cold storage and apply for a fresh loan from the bank against the cold storage receipt. The bank offers this facility to farmers who have taken crop loans from them.*

**Questions :**

- When Mahesh was borrowing from a local agricultural trader, he paid a lesser interest rate. Why?

- In the above case/source, which is the most favourable term of credit/loan borrowed by Arun for land cultivation?
- State the merits of formal sector of credit.

**Ans :**

- When Mahesh was borrowing from a local agricultural trader in the village, he paid a lesser interest rate because a part of credit was to be paid in kind and other in cash.
- The most favourable terms of credit/loan borrowed by Arun for land cultivation are specified rate of interest and fixed time period.
- The merits of formal sector of credit are
  - It provides loans at a fixed rate and terms.
  - It gives loans not just for profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries and small borrowers, etc.

- 127.** Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

*The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc.*

*The people are divided into four groups, from poor to rich. 85 per cent of the loans taken by poor households in the urban areas are from informal sources. Compare this with the rich urban households. Only 10 per cent of their loans are from informal sources, while 90 per cent are from formal sources. A similar pattern is also found in rural areas. The rich households are availing cheap credit from formal lenders whereas the poor households have to pay a heavy price for borrowing! What does all this suggest? First, the formal sector still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the rural people. The remaining credit needs are met from informal sources.*

*Most loans from informal lenders carry a very high interest rate and do little to increase the*

- 123.** What is the difference between formal sector loans and informal sector loans ? Give two examples of each.

or

Mention three points of difference between formal sector and informal sector loans.

**Ans :**

SQP 2011

Following are the differences between formal sector loans and informal sector loans :

	Formal Sector Loans	Informal Sector Loans
(1)	Comparatively rate of interest charged is lower than that of the informal sector loans.	Higher interest rates on loan is charged.
(2)	RBI supervises their function of giving loans.	No organisation is there to supervise its lending activities.
(3)	Collateral is required to obtain credit.	They are ready to give loans without collateral.
(4)	Rich urban households depend largely on formal sources of credit.	Poor households largely depend on informal sources.
(5)	Examples : Banks and Co-operatives.	Examples : Traders, employers, money-lenders, relatives, friends, etc.

- 124.** In what ways does the Reserve Bank of India supervise the functioning of banks ? Why is this necessary ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. For instance, we have seen that the banks maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain the cash balance.

Similarly, the RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small scale industries and small borrowers, etc. Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom and at what interest rate, etc.

The supervision of RBI is necessary due to the following reasons :

- (1) It ensures safety to the bank deposits of people.
- (2) It helps in collection of economic data all over the country.
- (3) It contains corrupt practices that may creep within banks.
- (4) It supports the doctrine of equity and justice in circulation of money through accepting deposits and lending in an orderly manner.
- (5) Information sent by banks to RBI helps Ministry of Finance in drafting and submission of National Budget each year.

- 125.** Manav needs a loan to set up a small business. On what basis will Manav decide whether to borrow from the bank or the moneylender ? Discuss.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013, 2011

Manav will decide to borrow from the bank or the moneylender on the following basis :

- (1) Difference between rate of interest charged by formal and informal sources at the material time. Financial institutions including banks will be contacted for this purpose.
- (2) Perusal upon terms of credit viz. paper work, security, collateral, etc. made necessary by respective sources.
- (3) Mode of payment viz., size of instalment, frequency (monthly, quarterly, half-yearly or annually) or full repayment at the end of certain period i.e., two years, three years and so on.
- (4) His own capacity to repayment.
- (5) A thorough analysis of information collected.

The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans. For instance, we have seen that the banks maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The RBI monitors the banks in actually maintaining cash balance.

Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves. For example, banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash. This is kept as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Since, on any particular day, only some of its many depositors come to withdraw cash, the bank is able to manage with this cash.

#### **Questions :**

1. What do you mean by collateral in banking system?
2. Who supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans?
3. What per cent of deposits is used as cash by Bank?

**Ans :**

1. Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestocks, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.
2. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.
3. Banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.

- 130.** Read the extracts/sources carefully and answer the following questions :

*Rama is working in a neighbouring field. She works as an agricultural labourer. There are several months in the year when Rama has no work, and needs credit to meet the daily expenses. Expenses on sudden illnesses or*

*functions in the family are also met through loans. Rama has to depend on her employer, a medium landowner in Sonpur, for credit.*

*The landowner charges an interest rate of 5 per cent per month. Rama repays the money by working for the landowner. Most of the time, Rama has to take a fresh loan, before the previous loan has been repaid.*

*At present, she owes the landowner ₹ 5,000. Though the landowner doesn't treat her well, she continues to work for him since she can get loans from him when in need. Rama tells us that the only source of credit for the landless people in Outpour is the landowner-employers.*

#### **Questions :**

1. Is Rama taking a loan from formal or informal sector of credit.
2. 'Credit is useful as well harmful' what is your opinion as regards Rama's case?

**Ans :**

1. Informal sector; Moneylender.
2. In Rama's case, credit is harmful as over the years, his debt will rise and he will be in debt trap.

- 131.** Read the extracts/sources carefully and answer the following questions :

Banks are not present everywhere in rural India. Even when they are present, getting a loan from a bank is much more difficult than taking a loan from informal sources.

#### **Questions :**

1. Why is it difficult for the poor to take a loan from a bank?
2. Suggest any two ways to increase the availability of credit in rural India.

**Ans :**

1. Banks need documents and collateral which the poor usually don't have.
2. Establishing SHGs and Organising Cooperatives.

- 132.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow :

*Modern forms of money include currency—paper notes and coins. Unlike the things that*

income of the borrowers. Thus, it is necessary that banks and cooperatives increase their lending particularly in the rural areas, so that the dependence on informal sources of credit reduces.

**Questions :**

1. Give any one example of formal sector source and of informal sector source of credit in India.
2. Which sector is dominant source of rural credit in India?
3. Why is it necessary to reduce dependence on informal sources of credit?

**Ans :**

1. Example of formal sector source- Bank  
Example of informal sector source- Moneylender
2. Informal sector
3. Because informal sector charges higher interest on loans which badly affects financial condition of the common people.

- 128.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Money is a fascinating subject and full of curiosities. The history of money and how various forms were used at different times is an interesting story. Modern forms of money are linked to the banking system. The present situation in India, where newer forms of money are slowly spreading with computerisation of the banking system, offers many opportunities to students to explore on their own. We need not get into a formal discussion of the ‘functions of money’ but let it come up as questions. The stock of money consists of currency held by the public and the demand deposits that they hold with the banks. This is the money that people can use as they wish and the government has to ensure that the system works smoothly. What would happen when the government declares that some of the currency notes used by people would be made invalid and would be replaced by new currency? In India, during November 2016, currency notes in the denomination of ₹ 500 and ₹ 1,000 were declared invalid. People were asked to surrender these notes to*

*the bank by a specific period and receive new ₹ 500, ₹ 2,000 or other currency notes. This is known as ‘demonetisation’.*

*Since then, people were also encouraged to use their bank deposits rather than cash for transactions. Hence, digital transactions started by using bank-to-bank transfer through the internet or mobile phones, cheques, ATM cards, credit cards and Point of Sale (POS) swipe machines at shops. This is promoted to reduce the requirement of cash for transactions and also control corruption.*

**Questions :**

1. What can be counted as a modern form of money?
2. Which factor according to the given case primarily facilitates the expansion of newer currency?
3. State the possible benefits from demonetisation.

**Ans :**

1. Paper currency and coins made up of alloys, ATM cards and cheques can be counted as a modern form of money.
2. Computerisation of banking systems primarily facilitates the expansion of newer currency.
3. The possible benefits from demonetisation include
  - Reducing Counterfeit Currency This allows the government to weed out counterfeit currency from the market.
  - Curbs Anti-social Activities Through the medium of cash many anti-social activities are discouraged.

- 129.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows :

*Every loan agreement specifies an interest rate which the borrower must pay to the lender along with the repayment of the principal. In addition, lenders may demand collateral (security) against loans. Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestocks, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.*

2004, Ford Motors was selling 27, 000 cars in the Indian markets, while 24,000 cars were exported from India to South Africa, Mexico and Brazil. The company wants to develop Ford India as a component supplying base for its other plants across the globe.

**Questions :**

1. Why is Ford Motors an MNC?
2. How much did Ford Motors invest in India?
3. Where did Ford Motors establish its first plant in India?
4. Name two countries who import Ford Motors manufactured in India.

**Ans :**

1. Ford Motors is an MNC because its production is spread over 26 countries of the world.
2. ₹ 1700 crores.
3. Chennai.
4. Mexico and Brazil.

135. Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow :

*The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector loans and informal sector loans. Among the former are loans from banks and cooperatives. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc.*

*The people are divided into four groups, from poor to rich. 85 per cent of the loans taken by poor households in the urban areas are from informal sources. Compare this with the rich urban households. Only 10 per cent of their loans are from informal sources, while 90 per cent are from formal sources. A similar pattern is also found in rural areas. The rich households are availing cheap credit from formal lenders whereas the poor households have to pay a heavy price for borrowing! What does all this suggest? First, the formal sector still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the rural people. The remaining credit needs are met from informal sources.*

*Most loans from informal lenders carry a very high interest rate and do little to increase the*

*income of the borrowers. Thus, it is necessary that banks and cooperatives increase their lending particularly in the rural areas, so that the dependence on informal sources of credit reduces.*

**Questions :**

1. Give any one example of formal sector source and of informal sector source of credit in India.
2. Which sector is dominant source of rural credit in India?
3. Why is it necessary to reduce dependence on informal sources of credit?

**Ans :**

1. Example of formal sector source- Bank  
Example of informal sector source- Moneylender
2. Informal sector
3. Because informal sector charges higher interest on loans which badly affects financial condition of the common people.

136. Study the sources given below and answer the questions that follow :

*A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want. Thus, everyone prefers to receive payments in money and then exchange the money for things that they want. Take the case of a shoe manufacturer. He wants to sell shoes in the market and buy wheat. The shoe manufacturer will first exchange shoes that he has produced for money, and then exchange the money for wheat. Imagine how much more difficult it would be if the shoe manufacturer had to directly exchange shoes for wheat without the use of money. He would have to look for a wheat growing farmer who not only wants to sell wheat but also wants to buy the shoes in exchange. That is, both parties have to agree to sell and buy each other's commodities. This is known as double coincidence of wants. What a person desires to sell is exactly what the other wishes to buy. In a barter system where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money, double coincidence of wants is an essential feature.*

were used as money earlier, modern currency is not made of precious metals such as gold, silver and copper. And unlike grain and cattle, they are neither of everyday use. The modern currency is without any use of its own.

Then, why is it accepted as a medium of exchange? It is accepted as a medium of exchange because the currency is authorised by the government of the country.

In India, the Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the central government. As per Indian law, no other individual or organisation is allowed to issue currency. Moreover, the law legalises the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transactions in India. No individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees. Hence, the rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.

#### Questions :

1. What are the modern forms of money?
2. Why is money accepted as a medium of exchange?
3. What is the major function of RBI?
4. Can any individual in India legally refuse a payment made in rupees?

**Ans :**

1. Paper notes and coins
2. Money is accepted as a medium of exchange because the currency is authorised by the government of the country.
3. Issuing currency notes on behalf of the central government.
4. No individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees.

**133. Read the extract and answer the following :**

*What do the banks do with the deposits which they accept from the public? There is an interesting mechanism at work here. Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves. For example, banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash. This is kept as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given*

*day. Since, on any particular day, only some of its many depositors come to withdraw cash, the bank is able to manage with this cash.*

*Banks use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans. There is a huge demand for loans for various economic activities. Banks make use of the deposits to meet the loan requirements of the people. In this way, banks mediate between those who have surplus funds (the depositors) and those who are in need of these funds (the borrowers). Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits.*

*The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income.*

#### Questions :

1. How do banks act as mediator between the funds supplier and needy persons?
2. What is the profit source of banks?
3. Why people prefer to save funds in banks?
4. In the extract, what two functions of banks are found?

**Ans :**

1. Banks accept deposits from the funds supplier i.e., public and make use of the deposits to meet the loan requirements of the people i.e., needy persons.
2. The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of profit of banks.
3. Because they feel safe to do so.
4. Accepting deposits from public and advancing loans to needy persons.

**134. Read the extract and answer the questions that follow :**

*Ford Motors, an American company, is one of the world's largest automobile manufacturers with production spread over 26 countries of the world. Ford Motors came to India in 1995 and spent ₹ 1700 crores to set up a large plant near Chennai. This was done in collaboration with Mahindra and Mahindra, a major Indian manufacturer of jeeps and trucks. By the year*

2. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.
  3. Banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.
- 138.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*There is an interesting mechanism at work here. Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves. For example, banks in India these days hold about 15 percent of their deposits as cash. This is kept as provision to pay the depositors who might come to withdraw money from the bank on any given day. Since, on any particular day, only some of its many depositors come to withdraw cash, the bank is able to manage with this cash. Banks use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans. There is a huge demand for loans for various economic activities. We shall read more about this in the following sections. Banks make use of the deposits to meet the loan requirements of the people. In this way, banks mediate between those who have surplus funds (the depositors) and those who are in need of these funds (the borrowers). Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits. The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income. A large number of transactions in our day to-day activities involve credit in some form or the other. Credit (loan) refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.*

**Questions :**

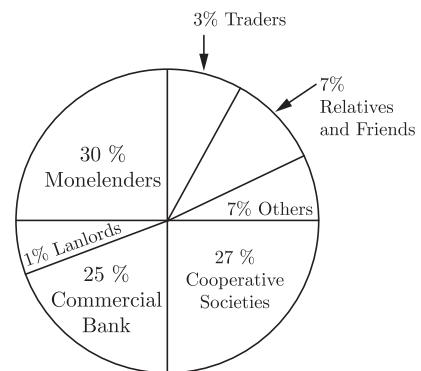
1. What do you understand by the term credit?
2. Who will mediate between those who have surplus funds (the depositors) and those who are in need of these funds (the borrowers)?
3. What does bank do with the deposits of public?

**Ans :**

1. Credit (loan) refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.
2. Bank will mediate between those who have surplus funds (the depositors) and those who are in need of these funds (the borrowers).
3. Banks make use of the deposits to meet the loan requirements of the people.

- 139.** Study the diagram given below and answer the questions that follow :

Sources of Credit for Rural households in India in 2003



**Questions :**

1. Which are the two major sources of credit for rural households in India?
2. Which one of them is the most dominant source of credit for rural households ?
3. Why is it the most dominant source of credit ? Give two reasons.

**Ans :**

1. Moneylenders and cooperative societies.
2. Moneylenders
3. It is because, (i) Small farmers are poor and cannot fulfil the conditions of collaterals (security). (ii) Small farmers are semi-literate or illiterate, therefore, opt for the earliest source irrespective of being it the harvest or emergency demand.

**140.** In India, about 80 percent of farmers are small farmers, who need credit for cultivation.

**Questions :**

- (1) Why might banks be unwilling to lend to small farmers ?
- (2) What are the other sources from which the small farmers can borrow ?
- (3) Explain with an example how the terms of credit can be unfavourable for the small farmer.
- (4) Suggest some ways by which small farmers can get cheap credit.

**Ans :**

- (1) Small farmers have no collateral against loans. Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid. That is why banks have no interest to lend to small farmers.
- (2) These small farmers take loans from informal lenders including money lenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc.
- (3) The terms of credit can be unfavourable for the small farmers because of the crop failure. In this situation credit pushes the farmers into debt trap.
- (4) The formal sector still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the small farmers. The remaining credit needs are met from informal sources. So banks and co-operative societies need to lend more. This would lead to higher incomes because many people could, then borrow cheaply for a variety of different needs. They could grow crops, do business set up small scale industries, etc. Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS**

Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

**DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

**Every School conduct Pre-Board  
From These Sample Papers**

# CHAPTER 19

## GLOBALIZATION AND THE INDIAN ECONOMY

### SUMMARY

1. Globalisation : Phenomenon of rapid improvement in technology, liberalisation of trade and investment policies and pressures from international organisation viz. WTO.
2. Liberalisation : Removal of trade barriers and allow free flow of goods and services in the country.
3. Privatisation : Phase wise handing over public sector companies to the private sector or companies run by individuals e.g. out of 17 public sector companies only three are existed now.
4. World Trade Organization : An international organisation, a product of Uruguay round of Ministerial Conference that ran eight years continuously to decide pattern of globalisation. It has encouraged economic liberalisation in the world.
5. Brain Drain : The migration of skilled people to other countries in search of better opportunities and employment.
6. Import Quotas : Restriction on the amount of commodities to be imported is referred to as import quotas.
7. Export Quotas : A fixed quantum of items to be exported from countries outside India.
8. Special Economic Zones : SEZs are those industrial units which have world class facilities of electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities. Companies who set up production units in the SEZs do not have to pay taxes for a period of defixed years.
9. Sustainable economic development : A process of perpetual development of mankind without any disturbances to the eco-system or the environment.

10. Investment : The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, buildings, machines and other equipment is called investment.
  11. Foreign Investment : Investment made by MNCs.
  12. Liberalisation of trade : Removing restrictions or barriers set by the government is called liberalisation of trade.
  13. Fiscal deficit : Total deficit in receipts and expenditure managed in order to arrive at zero liability on the government. It happens through intervention of Ministry of Finance.
  14. Laissez faire : Leave the market to decide price of goods and services – A French term coined by Adam Smith, the father of economics. It is a synonym to liberalisation of economy.
  15. IMF (International Monetary Fund) : An international financial institution that makes available foreign exchange to member nations to overcome the scarcity of foreign exchange.
  16. World Bank : An international financial institution that extends financial assistance to member nations for development purposes.
- Economic reforms : A change in the set of economic policy and programmes for the betterment of economy or people of the state.

### MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTION

1. Choose the correct option to fill the blank. Removing barriers or restrictions on business and trade set by the government is called as \_\_\_\_\_.  
(a) Disinvestment  
(b) Special Economic Zones  
(c) Liberalisation  
(d) Foreign Direct Investment

Ans :

(c) is correct option.

OD 2024

2. Which one of the following is a major benefit to a local company which goes for joint production with an MNC?
- MNC provides Money and Technology to local company.
  - MNC takes all decisions to reduce burden of local company.
  - MNC purchases all shares of local company for faster production.
  - MNC might ask for labour and capital investment from local company.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- MNC provides Money and Technology to local company.

3. When did the Indian Government introduced a policy of liberalisation known as ‘New Economic Policy’?
- 1980
  - 2000
  - 1994
  - 1991

**Ans :**

Comp 2023

- 1991

4. To check the free flow of Chinese goods in the Indian markets, what the Indian government can do?

- Ban trade with China
- Impose tax on imports
- Impose tax on exports
- Complain to UNO

**Ans :**

OD 2019

- Impose tax on imports

5. Arrange the following steps by which Foreign investments are attracted in a country

- SEZ(Special economic zone) is being setup
- Companies need not to pay tax for 5 years
- Flexible labour laws are formulated
- Intense working hours for the labour

**Options :**

- 1, 2, 3, 4
- 4, 1, 4, 2
- 1, 3, 2, 4
- 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- 1, 2, 3, 4

6. **Assertion :** Global production has a complex structure.

**Reason :** Production of one good may take place in different parts of the world. For instance, an equipment may be formed by combining components produced in different countries.

- Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010, 2006

- Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

7. Why did the Indian Government restricted foreign trade after independence?

- To protect domestic producers
- To increase competition
- To know the international level of quality
- All of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- To protect domestic producers

8. The money spent on buying assets such as land, building, machinery etc is known as

- capital
- rent
- investment
- production

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

- investment

9. The biggest problem based by the small TRADERS as seen in below picture is:



- (a) Stiff competition by the MNCs and cheap import.
- (b) Lack of entrepreneurship.
- (c) Lack of Funds and credit available to them.
- (d) Competition from the local producers.

**Ans :**

Comp 2012

- (a) Stiff competition by the MNCs and cheap import

- 10.** A company that owns or controls production in more than one country is called
- (a) big company
  - (b) international company
  - (c) foreign company
  - (d) multinational company

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

- (d) multinational company

- 11.** **Assertion :** The removal of barriers to trade is known as liberalization.

**Reason :** federalization of trade allows businesses to freely decide which goods to import and export.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2015

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

- 12.** The reason due to which multinational companies set up their branches in other countries is
- (a) cheap labour and resources
  - (b) welfare motive
  - (c) to generate employment
  - (d) to generate income

**Ans :**

Comp 2013

- (a) cheap labour and resources

- 13.** Enabling producers of one country to sell their goods in other countries is known as
- (a) globalisation
  - (b) trade
  - (c) foreign trade
  - (d) international trade

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2011

- (c) foreign trade

- 14.** Arrange the following in the correct sequence:
1. Set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these countries
  2. Owns or controls production in more than one nation
  3. Foreign investment
  4. MNCs

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 2, 3, 1 |
| (c) 1, 3, 2, 4 | (d) 4, 3, 2, 1 |

**Ans :**

SQP 2010

- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1

- 15.** A situation in which all the countries reap equally the benefits of foreign trades equally is known as

- (a) Internationalisation
- (b) Fair globalisation
- (c) Liberalisation
- (d) Equal globalisation

**Ans :**

OD 2007

- (b) Fair globalisation

- 16.** **Assertion :** A tax on imports makes the market for imported goods lucrative in terms of earning higher profits.

**Reason :** Taxes are imposed to ensure smooth trade between nations and higher tax revenues for the governments of the countries.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

Parakh Foods had built a large marketing network in various parts of India, where its brand was well-reputed. Also, Parakh Foods had four oil refineries, whose control has now shifted to Cargill. Cargill is now the largest producer of edible oil in India, with a capacity to make 5 million pouches daily.

- 120.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:

*Until the middle of the twentieth century, production was largely organised within countries. What crossed the boundaries of these countries were raw material, food stuff and finished products. Colonies such as India exported raw materials and food stuff and imported finished goods. Trade was the main channel connecting distant countries. This was before large companies called Multinational Corporations (MNCs) emerged on the scene.*

*Foreign trade creates an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets, i.e., markets of their own countries. Producers can sell their produce not only in markets located within the country but can also compete in markets located in other countries of the world. Similarly, for the buyers, import of goods produced in another country is one way of expanding the choice of goods beyond what is domestically produced.*

*Globalisation and greater competition among producers—both local and foreign producers—has been of advantage to consumers, particularly the well-off sections in the urban areas. There is greater choice before these consumers who now enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products. As a result, these people today, enjoy much higher standards of living than was possible earlier.*

#### Questions :

1. How are MNCs a major force in connecting the countries of the world?
2. How does foreign trade become a main channel in connecting countries?
3. How is globalisation beneficial for consumers?

**Ans :**

1. MNCs play an important role in the process of globalisation. They bring not only their products to a country but also the new business policies and cultures. They also help in increasing competitiveness among the Indian companies. At present, most of us are able to use the latest models of cars and this could be possible because of globalisation. Because of hordes of MNCs in our country, most of the urban Indians have become broad-minded in their outlook
2. The foreign trade becomes a main channel in connecting countries because trade in the past was restricted to finished goods being produced in one market, and sold in other markets. In today's time, besides trade; capital, technology, people, and service flow is also taking place all over the world. Today, the world is connected in a way that even production takes place across different countries.
3. The benefits of the globalisation for the consumers are given below:
  - (i) It created opportunities in terms of investment, employment for many developing and underdeveloped countries and brought about greater integration of economies.
  - (ii) It enhances choices to the consumers, brought about increased movement of goods, people, and ideas.
  - (iii) It has led to the establishment of many foreign brands in the country, widening our choices and created preferences.
  - (iv) It has expanded the scope of the market.

- 121.** Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follows:

*Colonies such as India exported raw materials and food stuff and imported finished goods. Trade was the main channel connecting distant countries. This was before large companies called multinational corporations (MNCs) emerged on the scene. A MNC is a*

- (c) trade relations
- (d) shigh price and quality

**Ans :**

Delhi 2010

- (a) low price and variety

**25. Assertion :** Foreign trade and foreign investment results in disintegration of production across countries.

**Reason :** MNCs disrupt the production processes in domestic country.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**26. Choose the reason for which MNCs are attracted to India for investments.**

- (a) India has educated English speaking people
- (b) India has skilled professionals
- (c) India has lot of natural resources
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

- (d) All of the above

**27. The past two decades of globalisation has seen rapid movements in :**

- (a) Goods, services and people between countries.
- (b) Goods, services and investments between countries.
- (c) Goods, investments and people between countries.
- (d) All of the above

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (b) Goods, services and investments between countries.

**28. With the rapid globalization and liberalization, the picture below indicates:**



- (a) Indians getting Jobs.
- (b) India is becoming hub of Outsource Industry.
- (c) Indians being getting exploited over low working standards by MNCs.
- (d) Indians are providing customer services to global Client.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018, 2016

- (b, d)

**29. Assertion :** Due to foreign trade, producers in different countries closely compete with each other.

**Reason :** Foreign trade leads to similar prices of good across boundaries, and the producers who do not offer competitive prices may lose the market share.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2008

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**30. The most common route for investments by MNCs in countries around the world is to :**

- (a) Set up new factories.
- (b) Buy existing local companies.
- (c) Form partnerships with local companies.
- (d) None of the above

**Ans :**

Delhi 2005

- (b) Buy existing local companies.

**Ans :**

Comp 2016, 2014

- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

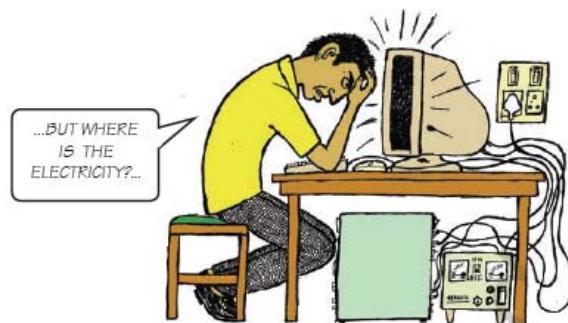
- 17.** Till which time period, production was organised within the countries?  
 (a) Middle of twentieth century  
 (b) End of twentieth century  
 (c) Starting of twentieth century  
 (d) Till nineteenth century

**Ans :**

OD 2015

- (a) Middle of twentieth century

- 18.** Identify the core of the problem for the below mentioned picture :



- (a) Lack of infrastructure which is needed for revolution in IT sector.  
 (b) Unavailability of Quality equipment by the local producer.  
 (c) Lack of skilled personnel's to repair such IT products.  
 (d) Unavailability of bandwidth which is needed for such Equipment.

**Ans :**

SOP 2008, 2005

- (a) Lack of infrastructure which is needed for revolution in IT sector.

- 19.** In earlier times, trade consisted of which of the following things?  
 (a) Finished goods  
 (b) Raw materials  
 (c) Food stuffs  
 (d) All of these

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (d) All of these

- 20.** The process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries due to

greater foreign investment and foreign trade is known as

- (a) Integration of markets  
 (b) International trade  
 (c) MNC  
 (d) Globalisation

**Ans :**

Delhi 2009

- (d) Globalisation

- 21.** **Assertion :** Local businesses may set up joint production process with MNCs and earn higher profits.

**Reason :** MNCs can provide money for additional investments, like buying new machines for faster production.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 22.** An important factor causing globalisation is

- (a) more income  
 (b) expansion of markets  
 (c) technological developments  
 (d) urbanisation

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

- (c) technological developments

- 23.** Foreign trade gives more number of choices for

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| (a) producers | (b) sellers    |
| (c) buyers    | (d) government |

**Ans :**

Foreign 2012

- (c) buyers

- 24.** In the competition between Indian and Chinese toys in Indian markets, China proved better because of

- (a) low price and variety  
 (b) good shape

3. The consumers in Norlock, now, have a wide variety of goods to choose from.
4. Norlock opened its economy to the world and allowed foreign traders to sell their goods.

**Options :**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| (a) 1, 2, 3, 4 | (b) 4, 2, 3, 1 |
| (c) 1, 3, 2, 4 | (d) 4, 3, 2, 1 |

**Ans :**

OD 2010

- (b) 4, 2, 3, 1

- 37.** Match the columns P and column Q and select correct option :

Column P	Column Q
A. MNCs buy at cheap rates from small producers	1. Automobiles machinery memo.
B. Quotas and taxes on imports are used to regulate trade items.	2. Garments, foot wear, sports.
C. Indian companies who have invested abroad.	3. Call centres.
D. IT has helped in spreading of production of services.	4. Tata Motors, Infosys, Ranbaxy
E. Several MNCs have invested in setting up factories in India for production.	5. Trade barriers

**Option :**

- (a) A - 4, B - 3, C - 2, D - 5, E - 1
- (b) A - 2, B - 1, C - 3, D - 5, E - 4
- (c) A - 4, B - 1, C - 2, D - 3, E - 5
- (d) A - 2, B - 5, C - 4, D - 3, E - 1

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013, 2011

- (d) A - 2, B - 5, C - 4, D - 3, E - 1

- 38.** Rajiv has a textile firm. For carrying out production, Rajiv spent money on procuring thread from traders, buying machine and equipment and built a warehouse to store the

cloth produced. The expenditure incurred by Rajiv for conducting the production process is termed as ..... .

- (a) investment
- (b) profits
- (c) equity
- (d) interest

**Ans :**

OD 2016

- (a) investment

- 39.** **Assertion :** MNCs can exert a strong influence on production at distant locations.

**Reason :** MNCs set up partnerships with local companies, use local companies for supplies, compete with local companies or buy them up.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

- 40.** Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Liberalisation
- (b) Trade
- (c) WTO
- (d) Internet

**Ans :**

Comp 2019

- (d) Internet

31. Globalisation has led to improvement in living conditions  
 (a) of all the people  
 (b) of people in the developed countries  
 (c) of workers in the developing countries  
 (d) none of the above.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

- (b) of people in the developed countries.

32. **Assertion :** Foreign trade creates an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets.

**Reason :** Foreign trade expands the choice of goods beyond what is domestically produced.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

OD 2006

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

33. Arrange the process of globalization in order of occurrence

1. Govt opens up the Economy for Foreign Players
2. Large big Indian companies emerges as multinationals
3. New Opportunity for the IT sectors
4. Various outsource jobs shifted to India

**Options :**

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4  
 (b) 4, 1, 4, 2  
 (c) 1, 3, 2, 4  
 (d) 4, 3, 2, 1

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (a) 1, 2, 3, 4

34. Study the picture and answer the question that follows:



Which of the following aspect best signifies above image?

- (a) Liberalisation  
 (b) Trade  
 (c) WTO  
 (d) Internet

**Ans :**

SQP 2009

- (c) Liberalisation

35. **Assertion :** Rapid improvement in technology has been one major factor that has stimulated the globalization process.

**Reason :** Developing countries are likely to become at par with developed countries in terms of technological development due to globalization.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
 (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.  
 (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2012

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

36. Arrange the following statements in a logical order.

1. Foreign trade helped Norlock integrate its market with world market.
2. The opening up of economy caused the producers in Norlock to compete with local as well as international producers.

**Ans :**

Comp 2015

Investment : The money that is spent to buy assets such as land building machine, and other equipment is called investment.

Foreign Investment : Investment made by an MNC in another countries nations to set up their units for production is called foreign investment.

- 47.** What is the meaning of liberalisation of foreign trade? Explain.

**Ans :**

SQP 2011, 2009

- (1) Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is what is known as liberalization.
- (2) With liberalization of trade, business are allowed to make decisions freely about what they wish to import or export.
- (3) The government imposes much less restrictions than before and is therefore, said to be more liberal.

- 48.** Explain the term ‘trade barrier’ with an example.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

- (1) Trade barriers refer to the restrictions, laws, institutions or practices which make trade between countries more difficult or expensive than trade within countries.
- (2) Tax on import is an example of trade barrier. It is called a barrier because some restriction has been set up.
- (3) Governments can use trade barriers to increase or decrease (regulate) foreign trade and to decide what kinds of goods and how much of each, should come into the country.

- 49.** Explain any three effects of WTO on Indian economy.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

The three effects of WTO on Indian economy are as follow :

- (1) There has been an increase in income through liberalisation of foreign trade.
- (2) Reduction of trade barriers and in domestic subsidies raises the price of domestic agricultural products in International markets.

- (3) It has encouraged India to increase the exports of textile and clothing.

- 50.** What is WTO ? What is its main aim ? Mention any one of its limitation.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2007

- (1) WTO is an organisation dealing with rules of international trade.

- (2) Its main aim is to liberalize international trade. It establishes rules regarding international trade and sees that these rules are obeyed.

- (3) Though WTO is supposed to allow free trade for all, in practice, it is seen that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers.

- 51.** Suppose you find two people arguing. One is saying globalization has hurt our country's development. The other is saying globalization is helping India to develop. How would you respond to their arguments ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2017

- (1) The response would be that globalisation has not hurt our country's development but is helping India to develop.

- (2) But, it has benefitted well off consumers and producers with skill, education and wealth. On the other hand, many small producers and workers have suffered as a result of the rising competition. They have not shared the benefits of globalization.

- 52.** How the globalization and greater competition amongst the producers have been of advantage to the consumers ? Explain any three points in this regard.

or

Describe the impact of globalisation on lives of consumers.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012

- (1) There is greater choice before consumers.
- (2) They now enjoy improved quality.
- (3) They get several products on lower prices.
- (4) As a result, these people today, enjoy much higher standards of living than before.

- 64.** Discuss, write any three negative impacts of Globalisation.

Ans :

Foreign 2012

Negative impacts of Globalisation :

- (1) There are a number of industries such as toys, tyres, batteries, plastics, dairy products, vegetable oils where, the small manufacturers have been hit hard due to foreign competition.
- (2) Thousands of uneducated and unskilled labourers have become jobless due to closure of various units.
- (3) Globalisation has negative impact on the most of the small industries which employ the largest number of workers after agriculture.

- 65.** Why have the barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment been removed to a large extent by the Indian Government? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2010

The Indian Government has removed the barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment due to the following reasons :

- (1) The Indian government took on the basis of perception, membership of WTO an international organisation.
- (2) It was thought that WTO would protect India from the pressures of stronger trading partners as WTO's rules envisage non-discrimination in the form of national treatment and most favoured nation (MFN) treatment to India's exports in the market of other WTO members.
- (3) It was said that members would not discriminate tariff regimes among various WTO members as also would honour their respective rules, regulation and incentive etc.

However, in implementation, WTO agreements did just contrary to what was envisaged in its rules.

- 66.** Why did 'Ford Motor Company' want to develop Ford India as a component supplying base for its other plants across the globe ? Explain.

Ans :

OD 2007

This has the following reasons :

- (1) Cost of labour and other resources is cheap in India. There are a large number of skilled and unskilled labourers available at low wages.
- (2) A number of local manufacturers in India supply auto-parts to Ford Motors which has tremendous power to determine price, quality, delivery and labour conditions.
- (3) The company wants to develop India as a base for manufacturing car components because India and its neighbour, China have a large number of prospective buyers. They have great purchasing power.

- 67.** What does WTO stand for ? Write its four features.

Ans :

Foreign 2014, 2013

WTO stands for World Trade Organisation. Nearly 160 countries of the world were the members of the WTO in June 2014.

#### Features:

- (1) World Trade Organisation (WTO) is a powerful international organisation.
- (2) It aims at liberalising international trade.
- (3) It establishes rules regarding international trade and ensures that these rules are obeyed.
- (4) It oversees the implementation, administration and operations of the covered agreements.
- (5) It is also a centre of economic research and analysis.
- (6) WTO is supposed to allow free trade for all countries. But in practice, it is found that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers.

- 68.** What way is an MNC different from the national companies ? Highlight any three points of distinction.

or

In what ways is an MNC different from other companies ? Explain.

Ans :

Delhi 2018

In the following ways, an MNC is different from other companies :

Thus a few years back, there were only few brands of different goods in the markets. A consumer did not have real choice and had no option to purchase a particular brand. But now he has a number of options between Indian as well as foreign brands.

- 60.** How does globalisation make the whole world a single market and rapidly integrates various countries ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

- (1) Globalisation is the process of rapid integration of countries. This is happening through greater foreign trade and foreign investment. MNCs are playing a major role in the globalisation process.
- (2) Technology, particularly IT, has played a big role in organizing production across countries.
- (3) In addition, liberalisation of trade and investment has facilitated globalization by removing barriers to trade and investment.

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTION

- 61.** How has globalization affected the life of Indians? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

OD 2019

Globalization has contributed in booming the Indian economy in following ways :

- (1) Greater competition among producers resulting from globalisation is a great advantage to consumers as there is wider choice regarding every product before them.
- (2) Due to globalisation, many MNCs have increased their investments in India, this has not only helped in the inflow of capital but also largely helped in employment generation.
- (3) Local companies supplying raw materials to industries that have been set as a result of the globalization, have prospered leaps and bounds.

(4) Large Indian companies have emerged as multinational companies. This has helped our country to increase our contacts around the world. Globalisation has helped increase our GDP and per capita income, thus making the living standards better across the globe.

- 62.** 'The impact of globalization has not been uniform.' Explain this statement.

**Ans :**

SQP 2014

- (1) Globalization has enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinational such as Tata motors, Infosys, Ranbaxy, etc.
- (2) On the other hand, small-scale industries had to close down their units. For example, Ravi's company producing capacitors and many small companies have closed their units in Hyderabad and Chennai.
- (3) Similarly, SEZ will benefit the MNCs but they would ruin and impoverish thousands of peasants, displace them and make their future dark.
- (4) Globalization is beneficial to MNCs but quite harmful to workers, small industries and traders who can't compete with MNCs.

- 63.** How does Government attract foreign investment ? Explain different ways.

or

Mention any three steps which have been taken by the Government of India to attract foreign investment in recent years ?

**Ans :**

Comp 2022

- (1) Special Economic Zones have been set up to have world-class facilities such as cheap electricity, roads, transport, storage, etc.
- (2) The companies set up their units in SEZs which are exempted to pay tax for initial period of five years.
- (3) Labour laws are made flexible.
- (4) Instead of hiring workers on a regular basis, companies hire worker's 'flexibility' for short periods when there is intense pressure of work.

**41.** **Assertion :** Globalization leads to increased competition in international and domestic markets.

**Reason :** Globalization also makes the consumers better off as they have a wider variety of goods to choose from at lower prices.

- (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
- (c) Assertion is true, but reason is false.
- (d) Both assertion and reason are false.

**Ans :** OD 2009

- (b) Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

## VERY SHORT QUESTION

**42.** The industries have undergone significant changes due to advancement in technology and shifts in consumer preferences.' Justify the statement.

**Ans :** OD 2024

The statement holds true as industries worldwide have witnessed transformative shifts propelled by technological advancements and evolving consumer preferences.

- (1) The industry has become more efficient and competitive.
- (2) With the changing consumer preferences, the industries have adopted worldwide used standards.
- (3) Industries are diversifying their business using modern technology.

**43.** What do you understand by globalisation ? Explain in your own words.

**Ans :** SQP 2020, 2018

Globalisation means that various economies of the world move in a manner that leads

to emergence of well integrated and cohesive global economy.

MNCs have contributed greatly in the process of globalisation (i) by setting up production centres in various countries and (ii) by supplying produced goods, services and technology.

The countries of the world have come closer. It has also increased the movement of people between countries.

**44.** Write any two steps taken by the government to ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better ?

**Ans :**

OD 2018

Those steps are given below :

- (1) To ensure the proper implementation of labour laws
- (2) To support small producers to improve their performance
- (3) Using the trade and investment barriers, if necessary.

**45.** A news magazine published for London readers is to be designed and printed in Delhi. The text of the magazine is sent through Internet to the Delhi office. The designers in the Delhi office get orders on how to design the magazine from the office in London using telecommunication facilities. The designing is done on a computer. After printing, the magazines are sent by air to London. Even the payment of money for designing and printing from a bank in London to a bank in Delhi is done instantly through the Internet (e-banking)! Analyse the role of Information Technology in globalisation by giving three reasons.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2017

- (i) IT enables the quick transfer of data and ideas globally.
- (ii) IT plays a major role beyond national boundaries.
- (iii) IT has made financial transactions very easy across the globe.

**46.** Differentiate between investment and foreign investment.

	Multinational Company	Other (National) Company
1.	It owns or controls production in more than one nation.	It owns or controls production within the country.
2.	It sets up offices and factories for production in regions where it can get cheap labour and other resources.	It has no such option.
3.	Since the cost of production for an MNC is lower, it can earn greater profits.	

69. Analyse any three impacts of globalization in India.

or

Explain visible impacts of globalization on the Indian economy with two examples.

Ans : SQP 2020

- (1) MNCs have invested large sums of money.
- (2) New jobs have been created in industries where MNCs have invested such as electronics, fast food, cell phones, etc.
- (3) Many Indian companies have acquired the status of MNCs. For example : Tata motors, Ranbaxy, Infosys, TCS, etc
- (4) Labourers have no job security and poor working conditions prevail.
- (5) No benefits to workers due to seasonal employment.

70. How has information and communication technology stimulated globalisation process ? Explain with examples.

Ans : OD 2016

The factors are as follows :

- (1) Transportation of Technology : Rapid improvement in transportation technology has been one major factor that has stimulated the globalisation process. There are fast trains connecting every remote and corner of the country

and faster planes that cover the distance within a few hours between one country to another. Similarly, the cost of air transport has fallen for goods services.

(2) Information and Communication Technology : In recent times communication and information technology got a boost from the invention of computers and internet, etc.

(3) Information Technology (IT) has played a major role in spreading out production of services. For example, a news magazine published for London readers is to be designed and printed in Delhi.

71. Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that the benefits of globalisation are better share. What role can government play in making this possible ?

Ans :

Comp 2021

We are living in the age of globalisation. Every good citizen or supporter of liberalisation favours fair situation for successful globalisation. Governments of all countries favouring liberalisation and globalisation can take certain steps to ensure fair globalisation. Some of the steps are being mentioned here under :

- (1) Labour laws should be implemented properly.
- (2) Negotiate at the World Trade Organisation (WTO) for 'fairer' rules.
- (3) Small producers should be supported at least by the governments of developing countries.
- (4) Use trade and investment barriers efficiently to check hegemony of big or super powers or more advanced or developed countries.

72. How do we feel the impact of globalisation on our daily life? Explain with examples.

Ans :

OD 2018 , 2011

Impact of Globalization in our daily life :

- (1) Transportation technology has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible and that too at lower rates.

**53.** How would flexibility in labour laws help companies? Explain.

or

Describe any three ways in which flexibility in the labour laws help companies.

**Ans :**

Comp 2020

- (1) Companies could employ workers on a temporary basis so that they do not have to pay them for the whole year.
- (2) Long working hours and night shifts on a regular basis during the peak seasons.
- (3) Pay low wages to the workers and force them to work overtime to earn high profits.

**54.** Evaluate the role of MNCs in the economic development of a country.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

Role of MNCs in the economic development :

- (1) MNCs place order for production with small producers.
- (2) MNCs are setting up partnerships with local companies.
- (3) They are interlinking markets all over the world.

**55.** What are Special Economic Zones (SEZs) ? Why have they been set up ?

**Ans :**

OD 2013

Special Economic Zones are those industrial areas which have been specially set up to attract foreign companies to invest in India. In such Special Economic Zones, world class facilities like electricity, water, transport, storage, roads, recreational and educational facilities are available. Moreover, in such Special Economic Zones, those companies who set up their units are provided relaxation in taxes an initial period of five years.

**56.** What is the role of MNCs in the globalisation process?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2018

Role of MNCs in process of globalisation : Globalisation is the process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries. MNCs are playing a major role in the globalisation

process. More and more goods and services, investments and technology are moving between countries. Most regions of the world are in closer contact with each other than a few decades ago.

**57.** Why is India preferred destination for setting of MNCs ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

India is preferred destination for setting up MNCs unit due to following reasons :

- (1) India has highly skilled engineers who can understand the technical aspects of production.
- (2) It has also educated English speaking youths who can provide customer care services.
- (3) India has cheap labour resources.

**58.** How can the government make benefits of globalisation available to all section of the society ? Give any three steps ?

**Ans :**

OD 2014, 2011

Government benefited of globalisation process available to all section of the society Following three steps makes it possible :

- (1) Government initiated its support to small producer to improve their performance.
- (2) It is necessary for government to use trade and investment barriers as a tool for development healthy competition.
- (3) Government can negotiate at the WTO for fairer rules.

**59.** In recent years how our markets have been transformed? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015

In the last few years, our markets have been transformed as mentioned below :

- (1) There is a wide choice of goods and services in the markets.
- (2) The latest models of digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions made by the leading manufacturers of the world are available in the markets. Not only this these products are affordable and within reach of the people.

Eastern Europe are useful for their closeness to the markets in the United States (US) and Europe.

- (3) Besides these, MNCs also require skilled engineers and IT personnels and a large number of English speaking people who are able to provide customer care services: (India possibly tops in this area).
  - (4) All these factors help MNCs in saving costs of production by 50-60%.
77. 'Barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent in India since 1991.' Justify the statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

The Indian Government has removed the barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment due to the following reasons :

- (1) The Indian government took on the basis of perception, membership of WTO an international organisation.
- (2) It was thought that WTO would protect India from the pressures of stronger trading partners as WTO's rules envisage non-discrimination in the form of national treatment and most favoured nation (MFN) treatment to India's exports in the market of other WTO members.
- (3) It was said that members would not discriminate tariff regimes among various WTO members as also would honour their respective rules, regulation and incentive etc.

However, in implementation, WTO agreements did just contrary to what was envisaged in its rules.

78. "Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its economic prosperity". Elaborate with examples.

**Ans :**

SOP 2019

Advancement of International Trade :

- (1) Trade between two countries through sea, air or land route helps in the development of country.
- (2) No country can survive without International trade.

- (3) Export and Import are the component of trade.
- (4) Commodities in export-agriculture and allied products, areas and minerals, gems and jewellery etc.
- (5) The commodities imported to India include Petroleum and its products, precious stones, chemicals etc.

79. How can consumers and producers be benefited from 'foreign trade'? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018

Consumers and producers both are benefitted from foreign trade:

- (1) The basic function of foreign trade is to create opportunities for the producers to reach beyond domestic markets (markets of their own countries), both for selling their goods and for buying raw materials.
- (2) Producers can compete with other manufacturers in foreign markets. Import of goods allows buyers to have more choice of goods produced in other countries also.
- (3) 'Foreign Trade' has facilitated the travel of goods from one market to another. It is one way of expanding the choice of goods for the buyers.
- (4) Producers of different countries have to compete in different markets.
- (5) Prices of similar goods in two markets in two different countries become almost equal.

80. What is liberalisation? Describe any four effects of liberalisation on the Indian economy.

**Ans :**

OD 2017

Liberalisation of the economy means to free the trade from direct or physical controls imposed by the government. The four effects of liberalisation on the Indian economy are :

- (1) Competition would improve the performance of producers within the country.
- (2) Barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent. This meant that goods could be imported and exported easily.

- With this advantage, Cargill is now the largest producer of edible oil in India.
- (5) Also, MNCs control production by placing orders around the world with a large number of small producers of items, like garments, footwears, sports items, etc. Then MNC sells these products under its brand name.
- (6) As a result, production of MNCs in widely dispersed location is getting interlinked.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS  
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

94. Analyse any five positive effects of globalisation on the Indian economy.

Ans : OD 2010

The visible impacts of globalisation on Indian economy can be described in the following ways :

- (1) There is a wide choice of goods and services in the market. For e.g., The latest models of digital cameras, mobile phones and television made by the leading manufacturers of the world are available in the markets. These products are affordable as well as within reach of the people.
- (2) Several improvements in the transportation technology has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible and that too on lower rates.
- (3) The improvement in information and tele-communication technology is even more remarkable. The invention and use of computer, internet, mobile phone, fax, etc., has made contact with each other around the world quite easy.
- (4) New jobs have been created in industries where MNCs have invested such as electronics, fast foods, cell phones etc.
- (5) Some Indian companies have become multinational by themselves due to globalisation, such as Tata Motors (automobiles), Ranbaxy (Medicines), Infosys (Computer and Information Technology) and L & T (construction).

95. How has foreign trade been integrating markets of different countries? Explain with examples.

Ans :

SOP 2018

- (1) Foreign trade provides an opportunity for both producers and buyers to reach beyond the markets of their own country.
- (2) Goods travel from one country to another. There is a huge competition among producers of one country and producers of other country.
- (3) Competition among buyers also prevails because they have more choice of goods, over domestically produced goods.
- (4) With the opening of trade, goods travel from one market to another and varieties of goods on the markets rises. Price of similar goods in two markets tend to become equal.
- (5) For e.g., During Diwali season, buyers in India have the option of choosing between Indian and Chinese lights and bulbs, Chinese lights manufacturers provide an opportunity to expand their business as these lights are cheap and available in larger quantities easily.

96. "Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that benefits of globalisation are shared better." Support the statement.

Ans :

Foreign 2014

- (a) At present everyone has not benefited from globalisation. People with education, skill and wealth have made the best use of the new opportunities. On the other hand, there are many people who have not shared the benefits e.g., small producers and developing countries because the developed countries have their own interests and are biased against the developing countries. They have unfairly retained trade barriers. An example of this is the debate on trade in agriculture products. In the USA, the share of agriculture in GDP is 1% and its share in total employment a tiny 0.5%.

to another. Prices of similar goods in two markets tend to become equal. And producers in the two countries now closely compete against each other even though they are separated by thousands of miles. Foreign trade, thus, results in connecting the markets or integration of markets in different countries.

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

- 85.** “Globalisation is the process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries.” Explain the statement with examples.

**Ans :** OD 2024

- (1) Goods and services are produced globally and traded around the world as restrictions on trade has decreased.
- (2) Multinational companies set up factories and offices for production in other countries which leads to foreign investment in different parts of the world.
- (3) Latest technology are moving between countries.
- (4) Choice of goods in the markets have increased and producers in countries now closely compete against each other.
- (5) The movement of people between countries has also led to rapid integration between countries.
- (6) Most regions of the world are in closer contact with each other than a few decades back.

- 86.** ‘Improvement in technology has stimulated the globalisation process.’ Explain the statement with examples.

**Ans :** OD 2024

- (1) Technology has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible at lower costs.
- (2) Telecommunication facilities are used to contact one another around the world, to access information instantly, and to communicate from remote areas.

- (3) This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.
- (4) Internet also allows us to send instant electronic mail (e-mail) and talk (voice-mail) across the world at negligible costs.
- (5) Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out production of services across countries.

- 87.** “Liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment policy have shown far reaching changes in India.” Support the statement with suitable arguments.

**Ans :**

OD 2023

- (1) Foreign direct investment has significantly increased as a result of liberalisation. After India adopted the policy of liberalisation, many MNCs entered the Indian market.
- (2) The public sector’s monopoly has been restrained with the introduction of liberalisation.
- (3) A game-changing outcome of liberalisation was an increase in employment opportunities.
- (4) Employment opportunities increased as a result of increased investment in the Indian market. The nation’s economic development increased as new industries, such as information technology and communication, developed.
- (5) With the entry of MNCs, the Indian market became more competitive. As a result, technological advancement brought on by the use of foreign technology in industrial applications was inevitable.
- (6) The liberalisation, privatisation, and globalisation policies were implemented in India. Indian consumers can choose from a wide range of lower-priced products on the market. They now live much more comfortably than was previously possible as a result.

- 88.** ‘Among produces and workers, the impact of globalization has not been uniform.’ Support the statement with suitable arguments.

- (2) The invention of computers, internet, mobile phones and fax has made contacting each other around the world quite easy.
- (3) New jobs have been created in industries where MNCs have invested.
- (4) The prices of various products have come down due to competition among the producers and manufacturers.
- (5) People are getting more employment because some Indian companies have become multinational themselves due to globalisation.
- 73.** How has improvement in technology stimulated the globalization process ? Explain with three examples.

**Ans :**

SOP 2013

**Technology and the process of Globalisation :**

- (1) Several improvements in the transportation technology have made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible and that too at lower rates.
- (2) The improvement in information and telecommunication technology is even more remarkable. The invention and use of computers, internet, mobile phones, fax, etc. has made contact with each other around the world quite easy. Now we have access to any information instantly.
- (3) Information and communication technology has also played a major role in spreading out production of their services. For instance, a news magazine for London readers can be printed in Delhi with the help of internet technology.
- 74.** “Efficient means of transport are pre-requisites for the fast development. ” Express your views in favour of this statement.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2016

Efficient means of transport are pre-requisites for the fast development for following reasons:

- (1) Transport and communication are the basic arteries of nation’s economy. Economic development of a region or country very largely depends upon

the dense network of transport and communication.

- (2) They help in individual development by assemblage of raw material and distribution of finished goods.
- (3) They link areas of production with consumption, agriculture with industry and villages with towns and cities.
- (4) They help in the balanced regional development.

- 75.** “Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been advantageous to consumers.” Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015, 2009

Globalisation and competition among producers has been of advantage to the consumers in the ways as mentioned below :

- (1) Now there is more choice for the consumers in the markets. For example in the field of toys, the markets are flooded with Chinese toys which are cheaper and of better quality than Indian toys. People now have a choice between Indian toys and Chinese toys.
- (2) The consumers now have products of better quality.
- (3) The prices of various products have come down due to competition among the producers manufacturers.
- (4) Globalisation has led to improvement in the standard of living of people.

- 76.** How do multinational companies manage to keep the cost of production of their goods low ? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2009

- (1) Multinational Companies (MNCs) set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can get cheap labour and other resources like raw material.

For example, countries like China, Bangladesh and India provide with the advantage of cheap manufacturing locations.

- (2) M.N.Cs. also need nearby markets for their manufactured goods. Mexico and

**Ans :**

Delhi 2019

The incentives and facilities offered to the units in SEZs for attracting investments into the SEZs, including foreign investment include :

- (1) Duty free import/domestic procurement of goods for development, operation and maintenance of SEZ units.
  - (2) 100% Income Tax exemption on export income for SEZ units under Section 10AA of the Income Tax Act for first 5 years, 50% for next 5 years thereafter, and 50% of the ploughed back export profit for next 5 years.
  - (3) Exemption from Central Sales Tax, exemption from Service Tax and exemption from State sales tax. These have now subsumed into GST and supplies to SEZs are zero rated under the IGST Act, 2017.
  - (4) Single window clearance for Central and State level approvals.
  - (5) Flexibility in labour laws also attracts foreign investments.
- 92.** How have our markets been transformed in recent years? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Comp 2018, 2016

Markets have been transformed completely in recent years. This transformation has been largely brought about by globalisation.

- (1) Greater competition among producers (both local and foreign) has been advantageous to consumers, particularly the well-off section. Rich people enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products and enjoy a higher standard of living. We have a wide choice of goods and services before us.
- (2) MNCs have increased their investments in India over the past 20 years in industries such as cell phones, automobiles, electronics, soft drinks, fast food and services such as banking thereby providing consumers with a vast variety of products. The latest models of digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions

made by leading manufacturers of the world are within our reach.

- (3) Today, Indians are buying cars produced by nearly all the top companies in the world. Every season new models of automobiles can be seen on Indian roads.
  - (4) A similar explosion of brands can be seen for many other goods; from shirts to televisions to processed fruit juices.
  - (5) Top Indian companies have benefitted from competition. They have invested in newer technology and production methods indirectly benefitting the consumers in the Indian markets who now enjoy a much higher standard of living than ever before.
- 93.** How do Multi-National Corporations (MNCs) interlink production across countries? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014

Multi-National Corporations (MNCs) interlink their production across countries in various ways :

- (1) A multinational corporation (MNC) is usually a large company that owns and controls production in more than one nation. MNCs set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can easily get cheap labour and other resources. This is done to minimise the cost of production and to maximise the profit.
- (2) The MNCs not only sell its finished products globally, but more importantly, the goods and services are produced globally.
- (3) The production process is divided into small parts and spread out across the globe.
- (4) The most common route for MNC investments is to buy local companies and then to expand production. For example : Cargill Foods, a very large American MNC had bought over an Indian company Parakh foods which had their large marketing network in various parts of India and also has a good reputation.

- (3) Foreign companies could set up factories and offices to boost up production.
- (4) It allows to make decisions freely.
- (5) The competition would improve the performance of producers within the country since they have to improve their quality.
- 81.** How is free and fair trade necessary for the promotion of economic welfare activities? Explain.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

- (1) Only free and fair trade would create opportunities for all.
- (2) It would ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.
- (3) While globalisation has benefitted well-off consumers and also producers with skill, education and wealth, many small producers and workers have suffered as a result of the rising competition. In this way, there are many people who have not shared the benefits of trade. However, free and fair trade would ensure the benefits for the segments of society also.

- 82.** What is globalisation? Why there is a need to make globalisation fair? Explain any two reasons.

**Ans :**

OD 2009

- (1) Globalisation is the process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries. MNCs are playing a major role in the globalisation process. More and more goods and services, investments and technology are moving between countries.
- (2) (i) While globalisation has benefitted well-off consumers and also producers with skill, education and wealth, many small producers and workers have suffered as a result of the rising competition.
- (ii) Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.

- 83.** Do you think that more Indian companies should emerge as MNCs? Explain four reasons to support your answer.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2013

Yes, I think that more Indian companies should emerge as MNCs.

This has the following reasons :

- (1) In that particular industries and services, new jobs would be created.
- (2) Local companies supplying raw materials, etc. to these MNCs would prosper. Several of the top Indian companies have been able to benefit from the increased competition.
- (3) They will invest in latest technology and production methods and raise their production standards.
- (4) Also, these companies would certainly gain from successful collaborations with foreign companies.

- 84.** "Foreign trade integrates the markets in different countries." Support the statement with arguments.

**Ans :**

Delhi 2015, 2013

- (1) Foreign trade leads to integration of markets across countries because it creates an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets i.e., markets of their own countries. Producers can sell their products in the markets of their own country as well as in other countries all over the world. They can also compete in markets located in other countries of the world.
- (2) The buyers too have a choice between the goods produced in different parts of the world. It enables the consumer to buy according to his requirement.
- (3) The competition among the producers bring them closer to each other.
- (4) Sometimes the producers of other countries set up joint ventures as AIG have set up joint venture in insurance sector and are selling their products in India. Thus in general, with the opening of trade, goods travel from one market

And this very small percentage of people who are engaged in agriculture in the US receive massive sums of money from the US government for production and for exports to other countries at low prices.

On the other hand, the developing countries like India have been asked to put restrictions on the provision of subsidised foodgrains. This is unfair for the developing countries who should ask the developed countries to have free and fair trade in the world and protect their interests.

- (b) The following steps may be taken to make globalisation more fair :
  - (i) Labour laws should be implemented properly to avoid exploitation of the workers.
  - (ii) The government should negotiate at the WTO for "fairer rules".

**97.** How has globalisation helped the Indian economy ? Explain with suitable Examples ?

**Ans :**

SQP 2015, 2009

Globalisation has helped the Indian economy in the following ways :

- (1) Increase in foreign investments : The foreign investments in India has increased over the past 20 years.
- (2) Emergence of Indian companies as multinational : Globalisation has enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinationals themselves like Tata Motors (Auto-motives), Infosys (IT), Ranbaxy (medicine), Asian Paints (Paints), TATA Steel etc. are some Indian companies which are spreading their organisation worldwide.
- (3) Wide choice of goods and services: Due to globalisation, we now have a cheaper wide choice of goods and services before us. The latest models of cars, digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions made by the leading manufacturing companies of the world are now easily available.
- (4) Creation of new opportunities : Globalisation has also created new

opportunities for Indian companies providing services particularly those involving I.T. The Indian company producing a magazine for the London based company and call centres are some examples.

- (5) Entry of food processing companies: Many food processing companies such as Coca-Cola, Pepsi have entered the country and are providing cold drinks and food products as well.
- (6) Creation of new jobs : Globalisation has created new jobs and has helped in reducing unemployment to some extent.
- (7) Availability of goods of good quality at lower prices : Globalisation and greater competition among producers-both local and foreign producer has been of advantage to the consumers. They now enjoy improved quality at lower prices.

**98.** Compare the positive and the negative impact of globalisation.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2013

#### **Positive impacts of globalisation :**

- (1) MNCs have increased their investments over the past 25 years. They have been interested in industries such as cell phones, automobiles etc.
- (2) In these industries and services, new jobs have been created. Also, local companies supplying raw materials etc. to these industries have prospered.
- (3) Several of the top companies have been able to benefit from the increased competition.

#### **Negative impacts of globalisation :**

- (1) MNCs are exerting a strong influence on production posing a great threat for domestic industries.
- (2) While job prospects have increased, wages are low and workers are forced to work overtime to make both ends meet.
- (3) For a large number of small producers and workers globalisation has posed major challenges. Globalisation has not been fair for all.

**Ans :**

OD 2023, 2020

- The impact of globalisation has not been the same for the producers and the workers:
- (1) There is only a small fraction of the producers who have successfully got access to foreign markets and are selling their products at competitive prices.
  - (2) On the other hand a large section of the producers are facing stringent competition from Multi-National Companies who have far superior technology and capital at their disposal and have possessed a threat to the local producers.
  - (3) There is no doubt that globalisation has led to an increase in employment opportunities for workers. However, the salaries are lucrative for highly qualified professionals only they are not good for unqualified workers.
  - (4) Due to the high supply and low demand of the workers the MNCs are appointing the workers at lower wages which are proving detrimental to the financial health of the worker.
  - (5) The development in the manufacturing sector is very slow in the nation which has put a high burden on the import of electronic goods and hurts the local manufacturers which are facing the problem of lack of technology and shortage of capital.
- 89.** Describe the role of technology in promoting globalisation process.

**Ans :**

SQP 2020

Rapid improvements in technology have been one major factor that has stimulated the globalisation process.

- (1) There have been several improvements in transportation technology in the past fifty years, which has made faster delivery of goods across long distances at lower costs possible.
- (2) There have been remarkable developments in information and communication technology. In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications,

computers, internet has been changing rapidly.

- (3) Telecommunication facilities, such as telegraph, telephone including mobile phone, fax are used to connect to one another around the world, to access information instantly, and to communicate from remote areas.
- (4) This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.
- (5) Computers have entered every field of activity and one can share and receive information on almost anything within few minutes through internet services.

- 90.** How is the government of India trying to attract more foreign investment? Explain with examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2013

India is a developing country. There is much scope for increasing trade, establishing new industries and constructing buildings. There is need of money for such activities which is less in India. So to compensate this loss government invites foreigners to invest money in India. Indian government is using the following ways to attract foreigners.

1. It is giving high ratio of interest to the investors.
2. It is giving opportunity for partnership in industries to the foreigners.
3. It has the provision to give maximum percentage of profit.
4. Indian government is attracting foreigners by appointing them on higher posts.
5. It is abolishing trade barriers like foreign trade licensing.
6. The government has established special Economic Zones (SEZs) just to attract foreign investment. It is given initial approval policy matter after conflict within state with center.

- 91.** Explain any five facilities available in the special economic zones developed by the Central and State governments to attract foreign investment.

**102.** "Globalisation and greater competition among producers has been advantageous to consumers." Support the statement with examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, 2010

- (1) Undoubtedly, globalisation and greater competition among producers—both local and foreign producers—has been of advantage to consumers, particularly in the well-off sections in the urban areas.
- (2) There is greater choice before these consumers who now enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products. As a result, these people today, enjoy much higher standard of living than was possible earlier.
- (3) For example, the latest models of digital cameras, mobile phones and televisions made by the leading manufacturers of the world, are within our reach.
- (4) Today, Indians are buying cars produced by nearly all the top companies in the world.
- (5) A similar explosion of brands can be seen for many other goods : from shirts to televisions to processed fruit juices.

Such wide-ranging choice of goods in our markets is a relatively recent phenomenon.

**103.** What problems would be faced by the workers if employers cut down the cost of production to compete in the global market ?

**Ans :**

Foreign 2010

As cost of raw materials can not be reduced, employers try to cut their labour costs to compete in the global market. As a result, workers have to face the following problems :

- (1) Where earlier 'a factory used to employ workers on a permanent basis, now they employ workers only on a temporary basis so that they do not have to pay workers for the whole year. That is, their jobs are no longer secure.
- (2) Workers also have to put in very long working hours.
- (3) They have to work night shifts on a regular basis during the peak season.

- (4) Wages are low and workers are forced to work overtime to make both ends meet.
- (5) Workers are denied fair share of benefits brought about by globalisation.

**104.** "Globalisation has been advantageous to consumers as well as to producers." Support the statement with suitable examples.

**Ans :**

SQP 2007

#### **To Consumers :**

- (1) Globalisation and greater competition among producers have been of advantage to consumers, particularly the well-off sections in the urban areas.
- (2) There is greater choice before these consumers.
- (3) They now enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products.
- (4) Today, these people enjoy much higher standards of living than was possible earlier.

#### **To Producers :**

- (1) MNCs are able to find the cheapest goods in order to maximise their profits.
- (2) Globalisation has enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinational corporations themselves. For example, Tata Motors, Infosys, etc.
- (3) Globalisation has created new opportunities for companies providing services, particularly those involving IT.

**105.** Give any five arguments against globalisation.  
or

'Bigger companies mean more exploitation.'  
Give arguments to support the statement.

**Ans :**

OD 2011

- (1) Entry of MNCs in a domestic market, may prove harmful for small-scale producers who are not able to compete with them.
- (2) MNCs buy local companies. The most common route for MNCs investments is to buy up local companies and then to expand production. MNCs with huge wealth can quite easily do so.
- (3) The large MNCs have tremendous power to determine price, quality, delivery and

- 99.** Explain any three factors that have enabled globalisation possible.

**Ans :** OD 2010

Following are the factors that have enabled the process of globalisation :

- (1) Improvement in transportation : This has made possible much faster delivery of goods across long distances at lower cost.
- (2) Improvement in information and communication technology : It has played a major role in spreading out production of services across countries. Telecommunication facilities are used to contact one another around the world to access information instantly and to communicate from remote areas.
- (3) Liberalisation : Nations have removed many of the barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment and thus, promoted and facilitated globalisation.
- (4) Multilateral trade agreement : This is to promote foreign trade and free flow of investment.
- (5) Multinational Corporations : MNCs have increased foreign investment and foreign trade which has led to greater integration of production and markets across countries and thereby globalisation process.

- 100.** How do the large companies manipulate the market ? Explain with examples.

**Ans :** Comp 2022, 2020

The large companies manipulate the market in the following ways :

- (1) The large MNCs have tremendous power to determine price, quality, delivery and labour conditions for the small producers of other countries.
- (2) So, they have posed major challenges for large number of small producers.
- (3) For example batteries, capacitors, plastics, toys, dairy products and vegetable oils are some of the main industries where the small manufacturers have been hit hard due to competition.

- (4) Several of the units have shut down rendering many workers jobless.

- (5) Ford Motors, an American company came to India in 1995 and spent 1700 crores to set up a large plant near Chennai. By the year 2014, Ford Motors was selling 77,000 cars in the Indian markets, while another 77,000 cars were exported from India to South Africa, Mexico and Brazil.

- 101.** Explain the impact of globalisation on Indian agriculture.

or

What is the meaning of globalisation ? Explain its any four impacts on Indian agriculture.

**Ans :** Delhi 2010

Globalisation is the process by which the whole world becomes a single market.

- (1) The impact of globalisation on Indian agriculture has not been positive. The agriculture sector in India has been badly affected by the globalisation.
- (2) Indian agriculture has been hit hard due to foreign competition.
- (3) The liberalisation of foreign trade and investment in India was supported by some very powerful international organisations. World Trade Organisation (WTO) is one such organisation whose aim is to liberalise international trade. But in practice, it is seen that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers e.g., on agricultural products.
- (4) More than 60% of Indian population is still engaged in agriculture sector while in the US, the share of this sector in total employment is a tiny 0.5%. Yet, this very small percentage of people in the U.S. receives massive sums of money from the US government for production and for exports to other countries.
- (5) That is why, US farmers can sell the farm products at abnormally low prices that adversely affects farmers in the countries like India.

information on almost anything that we want to know.

- (5) IT has created various new opportunities. The Indian company producing a magazine for the London based company and various call centres are some significant examples.

- 109.** Why is globalisation necessary for an economy? Give any five reasons.

or

Give five arguments in favour of globalisation.

**Ans :**

Foreign 2014, 2012

- (1) MNCs have increased their investments over the past 25 years. They have been interested in industries such as cell phones, automobiles, electronics, soft drinks etc. These products have a large number of well-off buyers.
- (2) In these Industries and services, new jobs have been created. Also, local companies supplying raw materials, etc. to these industries have been prospered.
- (3) Several of the top Indian companies have been able to benefit from the increased competition. They have invested in the newer technology and production methods and raised their production standards.
- (4) Moreo Ter, globalisation has enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinationals themselves e.g., Tata Motors, Infosys, etc.
- (5) Globalisation has been created new opportunities for companies providing services, particularly those involving Information Technology.

- 110.** What was the reason for putting barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment by the Indian government? Why did it wish to remove these barriers?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2006

Causes responsible for putting barriers :

- (1) Because the government wanted to protect the interests of Indian industries — cottage, small scale and the large scale industries.

- (2) India was a backward country. It was not in a position to compete international market earlier.

- (3) The government of India desired to promote only the investment of India's capital.

#### **Reasons for removal of trade barriers :**

- (1) The government took on the basis of perception, membership of W.T.O., an international organisation. Presently, 149 countries are its member nations.
- (2) It was thought that WTO would protect India from the pressures of stronger trading partners as WTO's rules envisage non-discrimination in the form of National Treatment and most favoured nation (MFN) treatment to India's exports in the market of other WTO members.
- (3) It was said that members would not discriminate tariff regimes among various WTO members as also would honour their respective rules, regulations and incentives, etc.

However, in implementation, WTO agreements did just contrary to what was envisaged in its rules.

- 111.** What are the various ways in which MNCs set up, or control production in other countries ?

or

Explain any four ways by which MNCs exercise control on production.

**Ans :**

Comp 2021

- (1) MNCs set up production units close to the markets; abundant supply of working people and other inputs including favourable government policies.
- (2) The money that spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment, they received from USA in the most cases because about 90% MNCs are American origin.
- (3) They set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these countries. Initially, the benefit to the local company of such joint production was two-fold because MNCs gave it

- capital necessary for purchase of capital assets i.e., machinery, plants etc. coupled with technical know-how.
- (4) During some years, it carried on business with local company as partner but finished product bore the brand-name of MNC.
  - (5) The product was launched in the Indian market at the most competitive price and thus, consumers preferred MNC's product over that of local company. It resulted in winding-up of local company.
  - (6) When Indian company lost its market, the MNC came forward to buy its business with all assets and good-will. Thus, local company was eliminated e.g., Hero-Honda, Maruti and Parakh Foods.
- 112.** 'The impact of globalisation has not been uniform'. Explain this statement.

**Ans :**

OD 2010

The impact of globalisation is not uniform. For some countries, it has been useful, while it is manifested and promote economic slavery imposed on several other nation.

- (1) Producers : Globalisation and greater competition among producers-both local and foreign producers-have been of advantage to consumers, particularly the well-off sections in the urban areas but it has snatched basic needs from the vulnerable sections of Indian society.
- (2) Labourers and local business houses : A few wealthy companies are benefited and growing MNCs in their size like parasites while local producers in majority are left with no other option but to close their business. Unskilled labourers are not accepted by MNCs or very rich companies.
- (3) Effect on skilled labourers : A few skilled and technically qualified workers are looking globalisation as full moon while for majority of others, look it as a threat for national economy. It is because flexible labour laws and stiff competition will economy snatched their sources of survival.

- 113.** Globalisation will continue in the future. Can you imagine what the world would be like twenty years. from now ? Give reasons for your answer.

**Ans :**

SQP 2012, 2007

Yes, I think the entire world would become a single market i.e., a global village like twenty years from now.

My answer is based on the following reasons :

- (1) MNCs would produce goods and services in those locations around the world which would be cheap for their production.
- (2) Foreign investment by MNCs would increase much more.
- (3) Foreign trade between countries would sufficiently rise.
- (4) A large part of the foreign trade would be controlled by MNCs.
- (5) More and more goods and services, investment and technology would move between countries.
- (6) There would be greater integration of production and markets across countries due to greater foreign investment and foreign trade.

- 114.** Supposing you find two people arguing : One is saying globalisation has hurt our country's development. The other is telling, globalisation is helping India to develop. How would you respond to these arguments ?

**Ans :**

Delhi 2020

- (1) I would respond that globalisation has not hurt our country's development but is helping India to develop. But it has benefited well-off consumers and producers with skill, education and wealth.
- (2) On the other hand, many small producers and workers have suffered as a result of the rising competition. They have not shared the benefits of globalisation.
- (3) The government should try to make globalisation more fair. Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.

Thus, both the arguments have some truth in them. However, if steps are taken to have a fair globalisation then the adverse effects may be minimised and may not hurt the country's interest in development.

## CASE BASED QUESTION

- 115.** Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow.

*Chinese manufacturers learn of an opportunity to export toys to India, where toys are sold at a high price. They start exporting plastic toys to India. Buyers in India now have the option of choosing between Indian and Chinese toys. Because of the cheaper prices and new designs, Chinese toys have become more popular in the Indian markets. Within a year, 70 to 80 per cent of the toy shops have replaced Indian toys with Chinese toys.*

*Toys are now cheaper in the Indian markets than earlier. What is happening here? As a result of trade, Chinese toys come into the Indian markets. In the competition between Indian and Chinese toys, Chinese toys prove better. Indian buyers have a greater choice of toys and at lower prices. For the Chinese toy makers, this provides an opportunity to expand business. The opposite is true for Indian toy makers. They face losses, as their toys are selling much less.*

**Questions :**

- What was the most appropriate reason for calling exporting toys to India by the Chinese 'an opportunity'?
- What stands true in reference to the consumer behaviour as shown by Indian buyers in the toy market?
- Why Chinese toys have taken over the Indian toy market?

**Ans :**

- The most appropriate reason for calling exporting toys to India by the Chinese 'an opportunity' was that the price of

Indian toys was higher as compared to Chinese ones.

- The statement that is true in reference to the consumer behaviour shown by Indian buyers in the toy market is that consumers try to optimise in both quality and price items.
- The Chinese toys have made a global presence including the Indian markets. The reason behind the huge popularity of Chinese toys in the Indian markets is the affordable prices and the wide variety of products availability in the market. They have clearly targeted the lower income group and middle income group.

- 116.** Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*In June 1992, more than 100 heads of states met in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, for the first International Earth Summit. The Summit was convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level. The assembled leaders signed the Declaration on Global Climatic Change and Biological Diversity. The Rio Convention endorsed the global Forest Principles and adopted Agenda 21 for achieving Sustainable Development in the 21st century.*

*It is the declaration signed by world leaders in 1992 at the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED), which took place at Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. It aims at achieving global sustainable development. It is an agenda to combat environmental damage, poverty, disease through global co-operation on common interests, mutual needs and shared responsibilities. One major objective of the Agenda 21 is that every local government should draw its own local Agenda 21.*

**Questions :**

- When and where was the first International Earth Summit held?
- Analyse the reason for adopting Agenda 21 for achieving Sustainable Development in the 21st century.

labour conditions for the small producers of other countries.

- (4) MNCs have posed major challenges for large number of small producers. They have been hit hard due to competition.
- (5) The small industries in India employ the largest number of workers in the country next only to agriculture. Several of these units have shut down due to tough competition by MNCs. As a result, many workers became jobless. These days most employers prefer to employ workers flexibly. So, the workers' jobs are no longer secure.

**106.** Explain any three steps taken by the Central and State Governments to attract foreign companies to invest in India.

**Ans :** OD 2005

Government attracts foreign investment in the following ways :

- (1) Special Economic Zones have been set up to have world-class facilities such as cheap electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities, etc.
- (2) The companies set up their units in SEZs which are exempted to pay tax for initial period of five years.
- (3) Labour laws are made flexible.
- (4) Instead of hiring workers on a regular basis, companies may hire worker's 'flexibly' for short periods when there is intense pressure of work. This is done to reduce the cost of labour for the company.
- (5) Governments remove barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment so that goods could be imported and exported easily and also foreign companies could set up factories and offices here.

**107.** "Only fair globalisation can give new shape to the world economy". Explain.

**Ans :** Delhi 2009

Only fair globalisation can give new shape to the world economy. This has the following reasons :

- (1) Many evidences indicate that not everyone has benefitted from globalisation. For example, small producers, workers, etc. have not been benefitted from this.
- (2) People with education, skill and wealth have made the best use of the new opportunities. On the other hand, there are many people who have not shared the benefits.
- (3) Only fair globalisation would create opportunities for all, and also ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.
- (4) The government can play a major role in making this possible. Its policies must protect the interests, not only of the rich and the powerful, but also of all the people in the country.
- (5) People can also play an important role in the struggle for fair globalisation. In the past few years, massive campaigns and representation by people's organisations have influenced important decisions relating to trade and investments at the World Trade Organisation.

**108.** "Information and communication technology has increased the pace of globalisation." Justify the statement,

**Ans :** SQP 2013

- (1) Undoubtedly, information and communication technology has increased the pace of globalisation. It has played a major role in spreading out production of services across countries.
- (2) In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications, computers, internet has been changing rapidly.
- (3) Telecommunication facilities such as telephone including mobile phones, fax, etc. are used to contact one another around the world, to access information instantly, and to communicate from remote areas. This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.
- (4) Computers have now entered almost every field of activity. As a result of internet services, we can obtain and share

*other country markets at low prices, adversely affecting farmers in these countries.*

*Developing countries are, therefore, asking the developed country governments, "We have reduced trade barriers as per WTO rules. But you have ignored the rules of WTO and have continued to pay your farmers vast sums of money. You have asked our governments to stop supporting our farmers, but you are doing so yourselves. Is this free and fair trade?"*

**Questions :**

1. Name an institution which has an aim to liberalise the international trade.
2. How far has the institution responsible for free and fair trade succeeded in its aim? Explain by giving two reasons.

**Ans :**

1. WTO.
2. WTO establishes rules regarding international trade and sees that these rules are followed. But, in practice it is seen that the developed countries don't follow WTO rules and retain trade barriers, whereas on the other hand developing countries are forced to remove trade barriers.

**119.** Read the extract and answer the questions that follow:

In general, MNCs set up production where it is close to the markets, where there is skilled and unskilled labour available at low costs and where the availability of other factors of production is assured. In addition,

*MNCs might look for government policies that look after their interests. Having assured themselves of these conditions, MNCs set up factories and offices for production. The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called investment. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment. Any investment is made with the hope that these assets will earn profits.*

*At times, MNCs set up production jointly with some of the local companies of these*

*countries. The benefit to the local company of such joint production is two-fold. First, MNCs can provide money for additional investments, like buying new machines for faster production. Second, MNCs might bring with them the latest technology for production.*

*But the most common route for MNC investments is to buy up local companies and then to expand production. MNCs with huge wealth can quite easily do so. To take an example, Cargill Foods, a very large American MNC, has bought over smaller Indian companies such as Parakh Foods. Parakh Foods had built a large marketing network in various parts of India, where its brand was well-reputed. Also, Parakh Foods had four oil refineries, whose control has now shifted to Cargill. Cargill is now the largest producer of edible oil in India, with a capacity to make 5 million pouches daily. In fact, many of the top MNCs have wealth exceeding the entire budgets of the developing country governments. With such enormous wealth, imagine the power and influence of these MNCs.*

**Questions :**

1. Write any two conveniences for which MNCs set production.
2. What is the difference between investment and foreign investment?
3. What is the common route for MNC investments? Give an example.

**Ans :**

1. MNCs set up production where it is close to the markets, where there is skilled and unskilled labour available at low costs.
2. The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called investment. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment.
3. The common route for MNC investments is to buy up local companies and then to expand production. MNCs with huge wealth can quite easily do so. To take an example, Cargill Foods, a very large American MNC, has bought over smaller Indian companies such as Parakh Foods.

3. Mention the aims of United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED), which took place at Rio de Janeiro.

**Ans :**

1. It was held from 3 June to 14 June, 1992 in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil.
  2. The reason for adopting Agenda 21 was to fight environmental damage, poverty, disease through global cooperation on common interests, mutual needs and shared responsibilities.
  3. (a) To address urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level.  
 (b) To achieve global sustainable development.
117. Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

*Most regions of the world are getting increasingly interconnected. While this interconnectedness across countries has many dimensions — cultural, political, social and economic - this chapter looks at globalisation in a more limited sense. It defines globalisation as the integration between countries through foreign trade and foreign investments by Multinational Corporations (MNCs).*

*If we look at the past thirty years or so, we find that MNCs have been a major force in the globalisation process connecting distant regions of the world. Why are the MNCs spreading their production to other countries and what are the ways in which they are doing so? In order to discuss this rather than relying on quantitative estimates, the rapid rise and influence of the MNCs has been shown through a variety of examples, mainly drawn from the Indian context. Globalisation has been facilitated by several factors.*

*Three of these have been highlighted: rapid improvements in technology, liberalisation of trade and investment policies and pressures from international organisations such as*

*the WTO. Improvement in technology is a fascinating area for students and you may, with a few directions, encourage them to do their own explorations.*

**Questions :**

1. Which factors are kept in mind by the MNC's for setting up the production?
2. How an MNC exert strong influence on production at distant locations?
3. State the factors which facilitated Globalisation.

**Ans :**

1. The factors which are kept in mind by the MNC's for setting up the production in another country includes
  - (i) Availability of cheap skilled labour
  - (ii) Proximity to markets
  - (iii) Favourable government policies
2. MNCs are exerting a strong influence on production at distant locations by setting up partnership with local companies, for supplies and by competing with local companies or buying them.
3. Globalisation has been facilitated by several factors such as
  - (i) Rapid improvements in technology across the globe especially in the developed countries.
  - (ii) Liberalisation of trade and investment policies being adopted across the world.

118. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow :

*The agriculture sector provides the bulk of employment and a significant portion of the GDP in India. Compare this to a developed country such as the US with the share of agriculture in GDP at 1% and, its share in total employment a tiny 0.5%. And, yet this very small percentage of people who are engaged in agriculture in the US receive massive sums of money from the US government for production and for exports to other countries. Due to this massive money that they receive, US farmers can sell the farm products at abnormally low prices. The surplus farm products are sold in*

*company that owns or controls production in more than one nation. MNCs set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can get cheap labour and other resources.*

*MNCs set up factories and offices for production: The money that is spent to buy assets such as land, building, machines and other equipment is called investment. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment. Any investment is made with the hope that these assets will earn profits.*

*Even more remarkable have been the developments in information and communication technology. In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications, computers, Internet has been changing rapidly. Telecommunication facilities (telegraph, telephone including mobile phones, fax) are used to contact one another around the world, to access information instantly, and to communicate from remote areas. This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.*

**Questions :**

1. Why some companies called multinational corporations (MNCs)?
2. What do you understand by foreign investment?
3. What type of technology are used to contact one another around the world?

**Ans :**

1. Some companies called multinational corporations (MNCs) because these companies own or controls production in more than one nation.
2. Investment made by MNCs is called foreign investment.
3. Telecommunication facilities (telegraph, telephone including mobile phones, fax) are used to contact one another around the world.

122. Read the extract and answer the questions that follows:

*Tax on imports is an example of trade barrier. It is called a barrier because some restriction*

*has been set up. Governments can use trade barriers to increase or decrease (regulate) foreign trade and to decide what kinds of goods and how much of each, should come into the country. The Indian government, after Independence, had put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment. This was considered necessary to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition. Industries were just coming up in the 1950s and 1960s, and competition from imports at that stage would not have allowed these industries to come up. Thus, India allowed imports of only essential items such as machinery, fertilisers, petroleum etc. Note that all developed countries, during the early stages of development, have given protection to domestic producers through a variety of means. Starting around 1991, some far reaching changes in policy were made in India. The government decided that the time had come for Indian producers to compete with producers around the globe. It felt that competition would improve the performance of producers within the country since they would have to improve their quality. This decision was supported by powerful international organisations. Thus, barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent. This meant that goods could be imported and exported easily and also foreign companies could set up factories and offices here. Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is what is known as liberalisation.*

**Questions :**

1. What is trade barrier? Give one example.
2. What do you mean by the term liberalisation?
3. How does government regulate foreign trade?

**Ans :**

1. When the government puts some restriction on the foreign trade and foreign investment then it is called trade barrier. One example of trade barrier is tax.

2. Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is known as liberalisation.
3. Governments can use trade barriers:
  - (i) To increase or decrease (regulate) foreign trade.
  - (ii) To decide what kinds of goods and how much of each should come into the country.

[www.nodia.in](http://www.nodia.in)

**DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP**

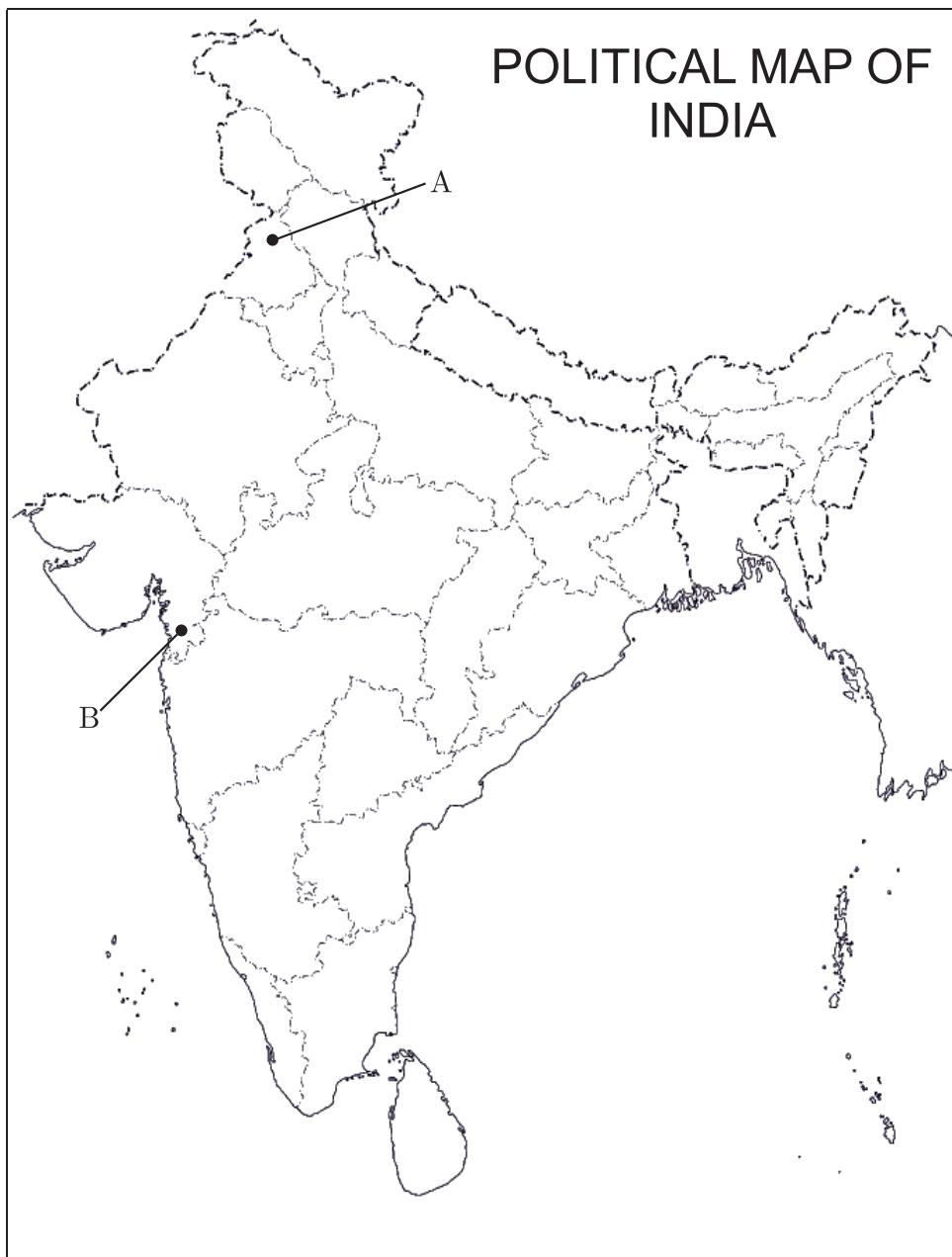
- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- *Word File of Material for Teachers*

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

# CHAPTER 20

## MAP WORK

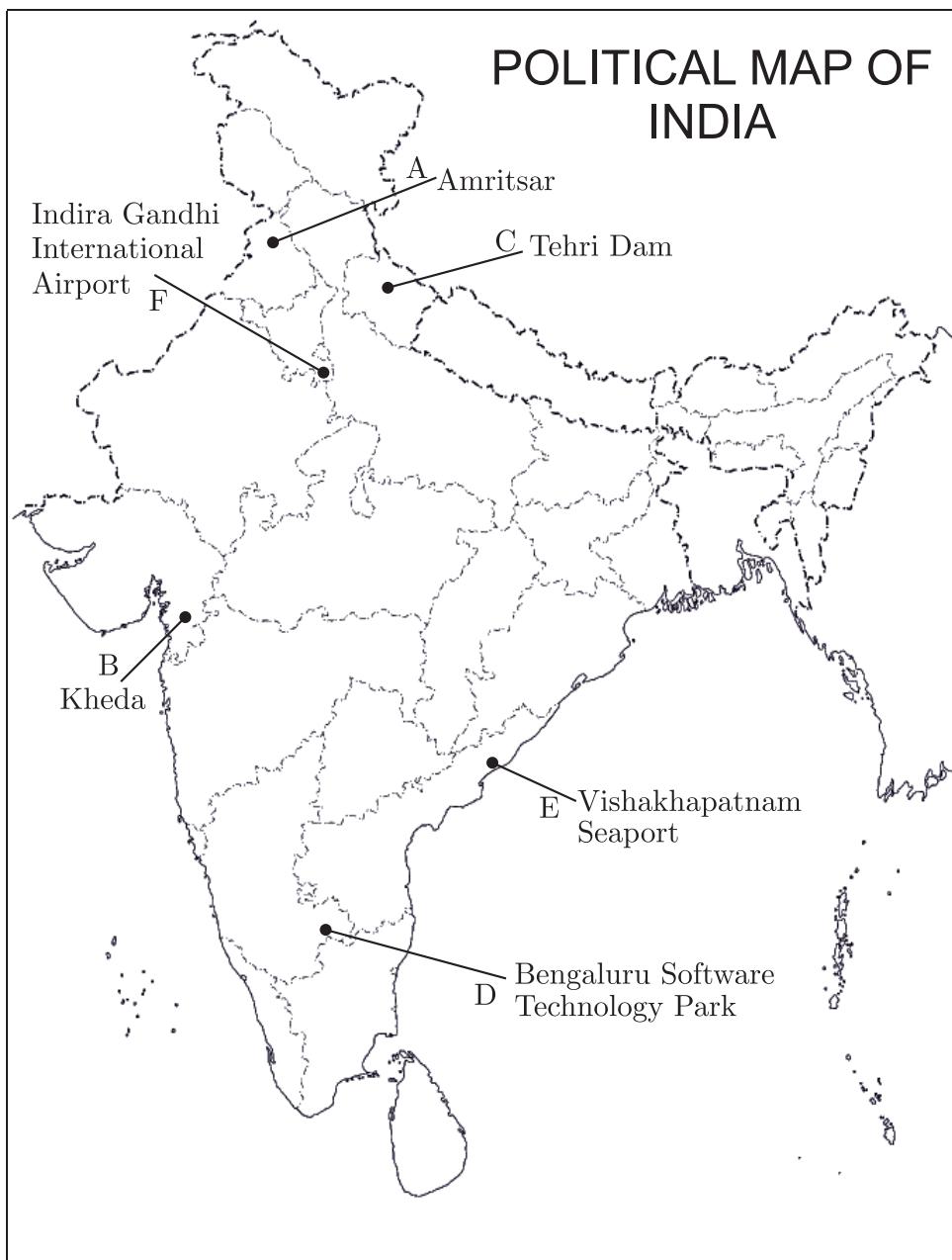
1. (a) Two places A and B have been marked on the outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the line drawn near them.
- A. A place associated with Jallianwala Bagh incident.
  - B. A place associated with Peasants Satyagraha.



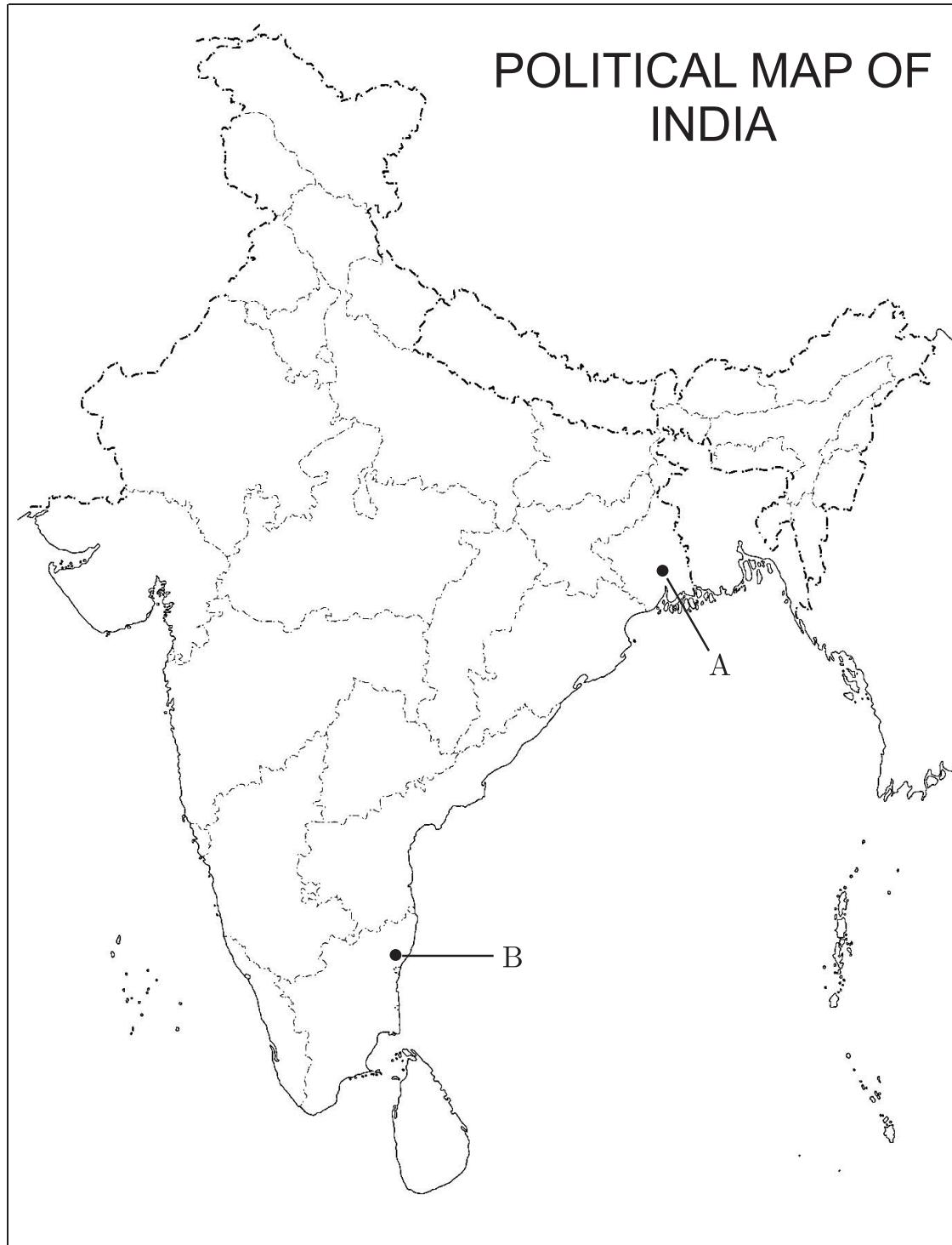
(b) On the same political outline map of India, locate and label any three among the following with suitable symbols.

- C. A dam in Uttarakhand
- D. A Software Technology Park in Karnataka
- E. A seaport in Andhra Pradesh
- F. Indira Gandhi International Airport

Ans :



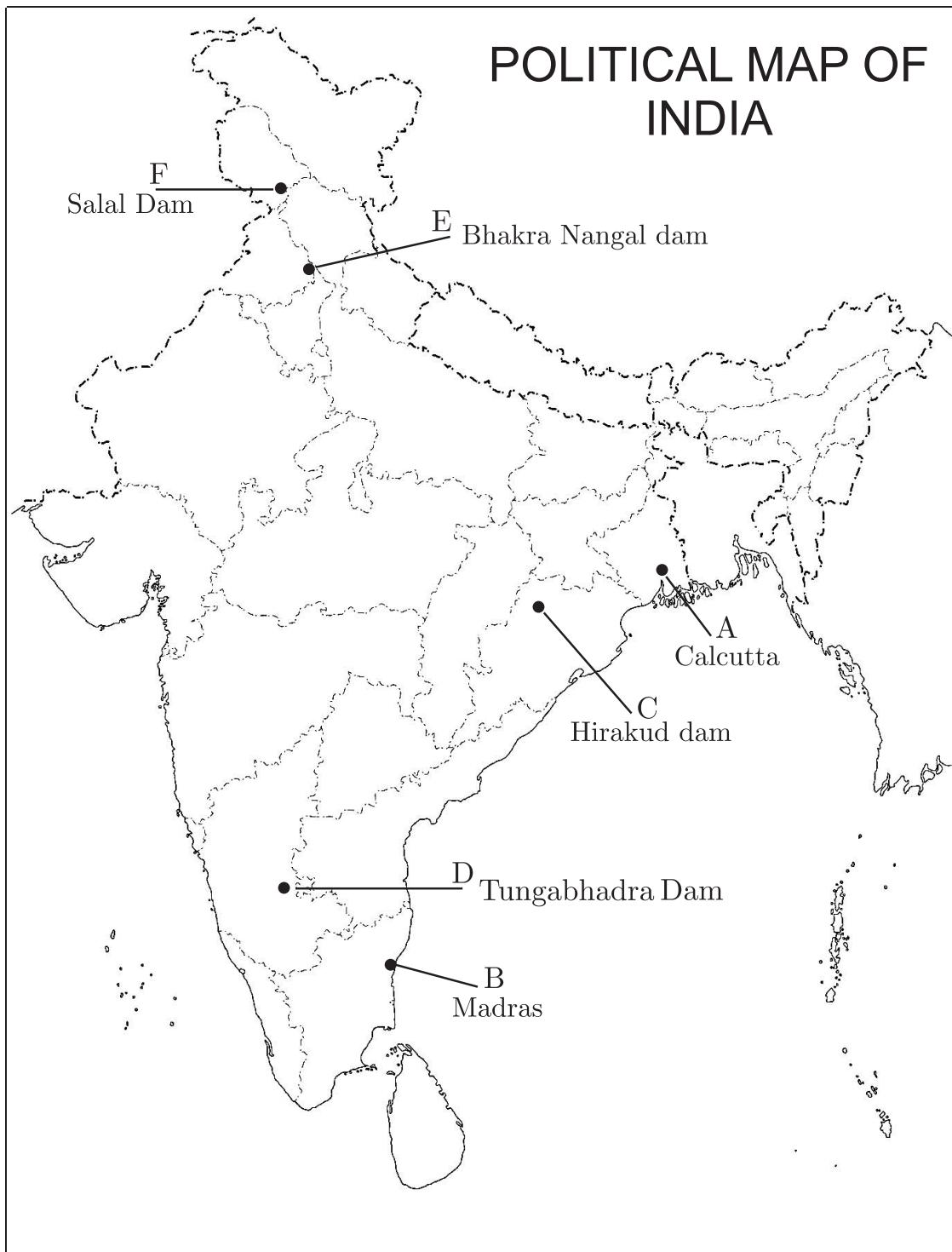
2. (a) Two places A and B have been marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them on the map and write their correct names on the line drawn near them.
- A. A place where Congress session was held in 1920.  
B. A place where Congress session was held in 1927.



(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

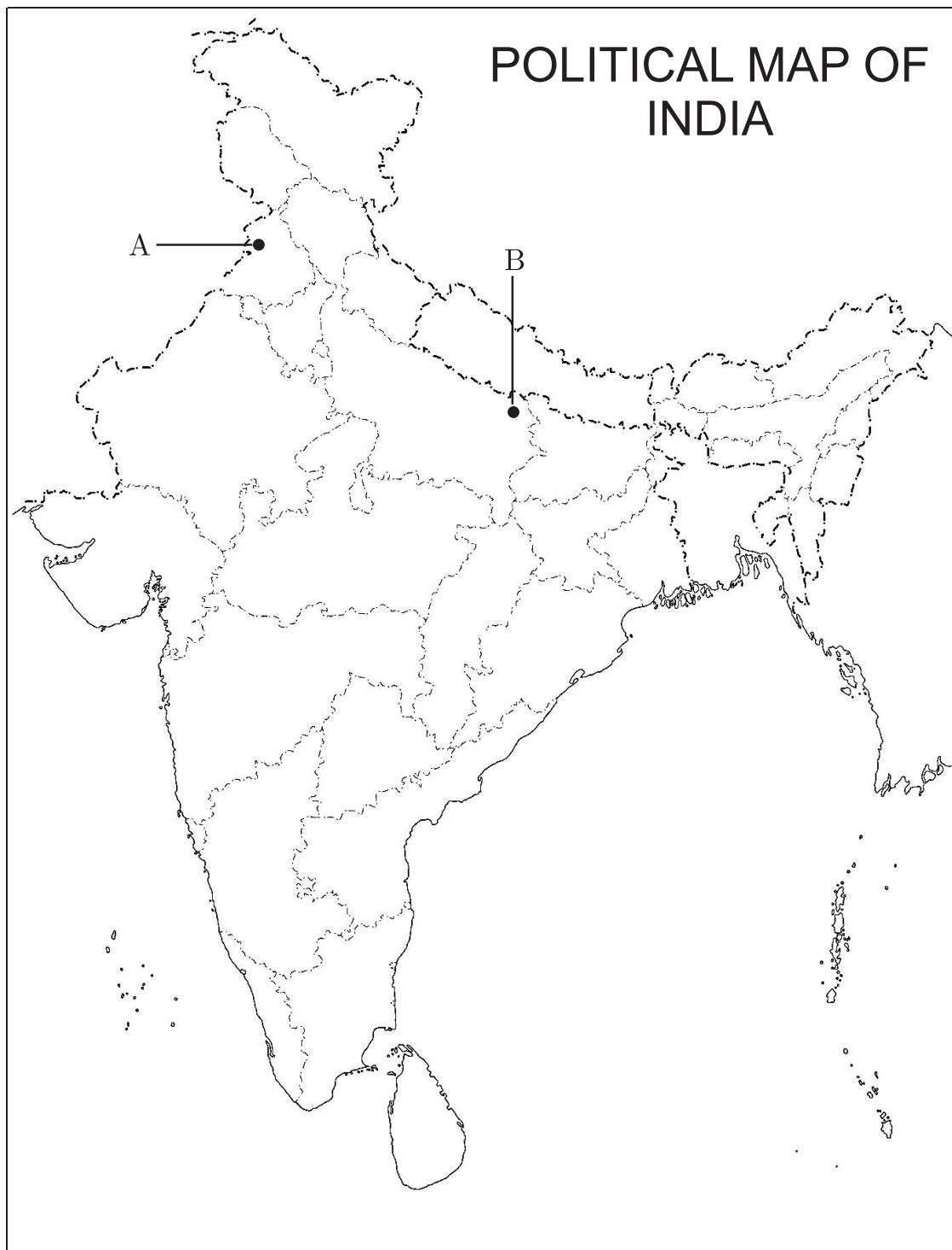
- C. Hirakud dam
- D. Tungabhadra darm
- E. Bhakra Nangal dam
- F. Salal dam

Ans :



3. (a) Two places A and B have been marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them on the map and write their correct names on the line drawn near them.

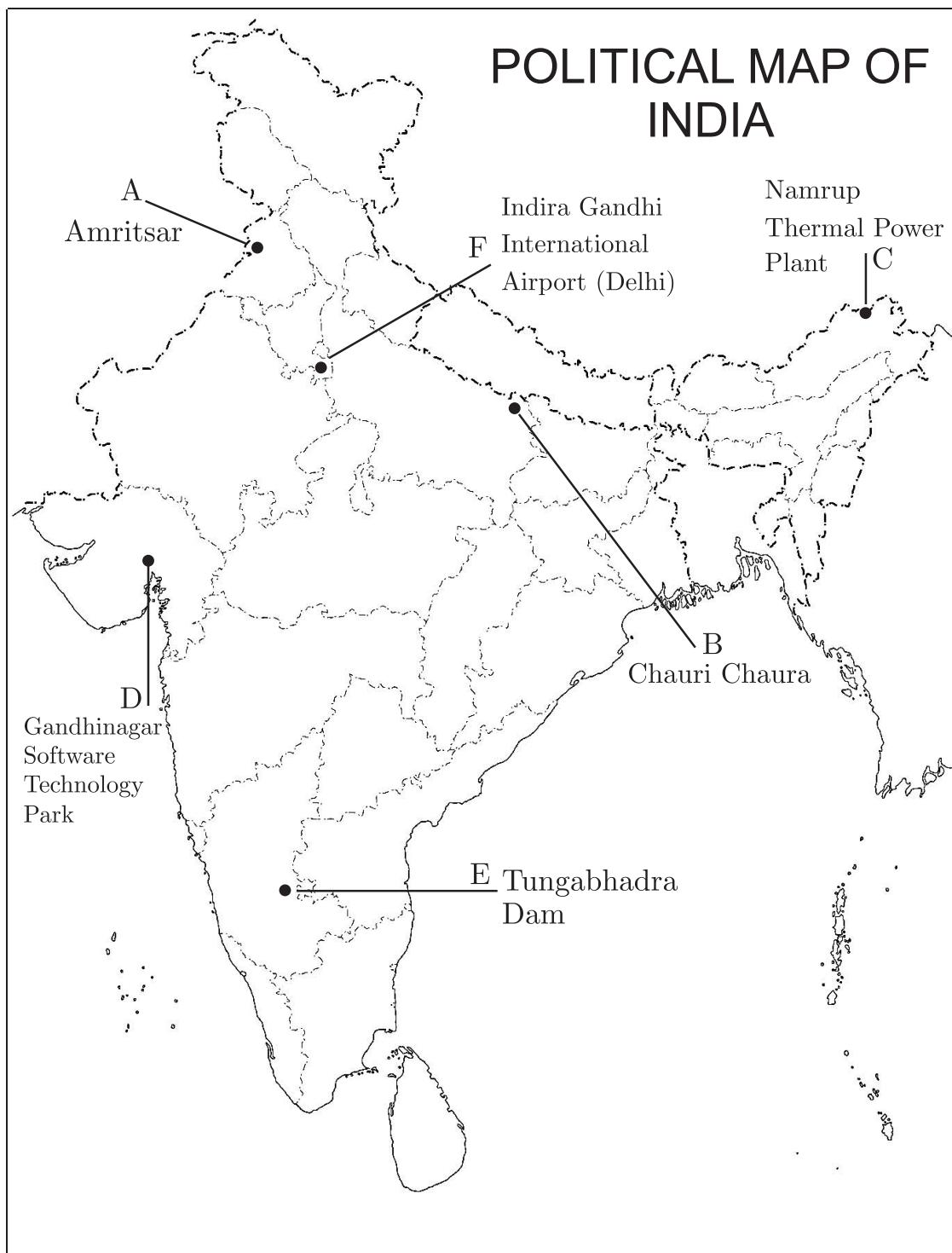
- A. Jallianwala Bagh Incident
- B. Calling of the Non-Cooperation Movement.



(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

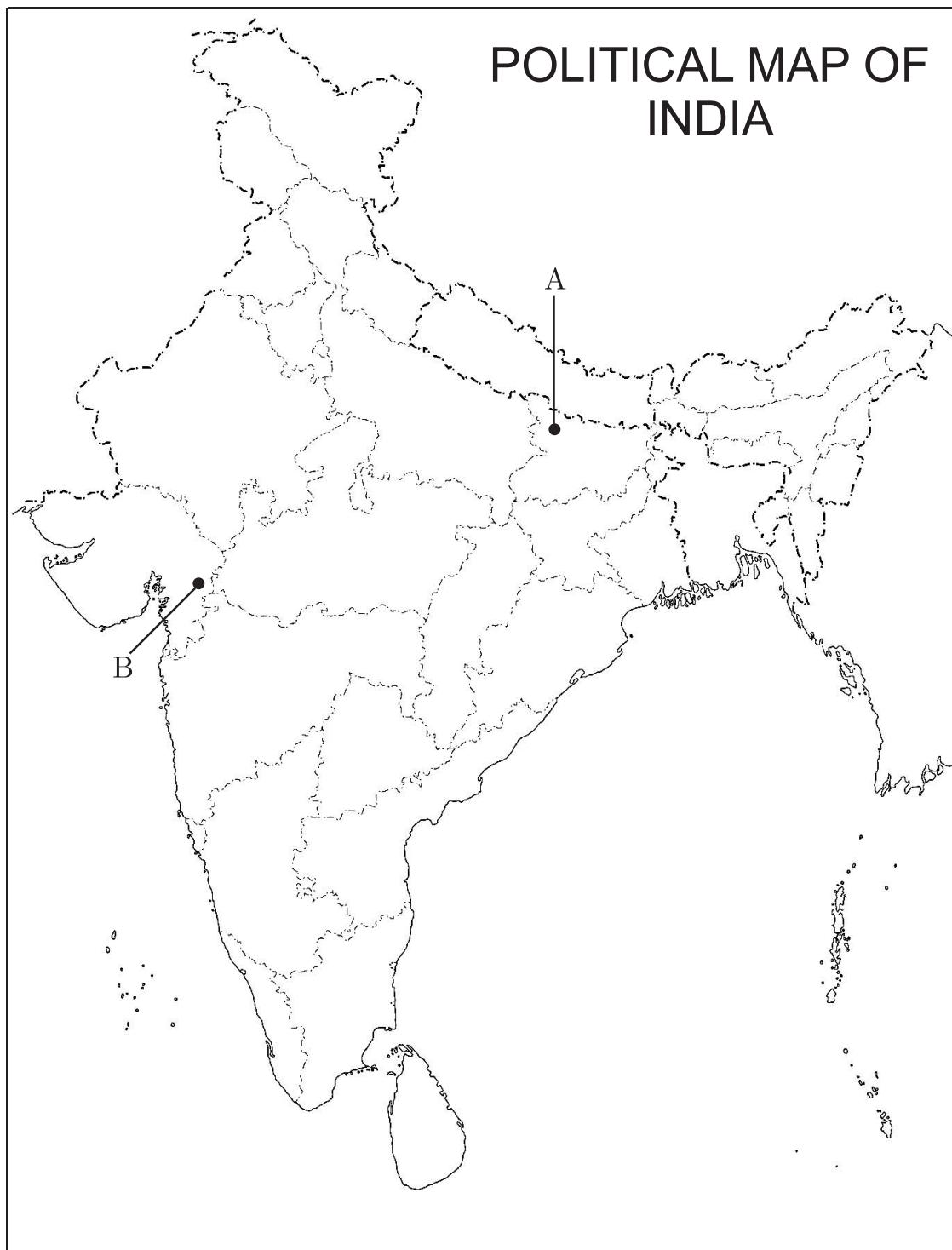
- C. Namrup Thermal Power Plant
- D. Gandhinagar Software Technology Park
- E. Tungabhadra dam
- F. An International Airport in Delhi NCR.

Ans :



4. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the line drawn near them.

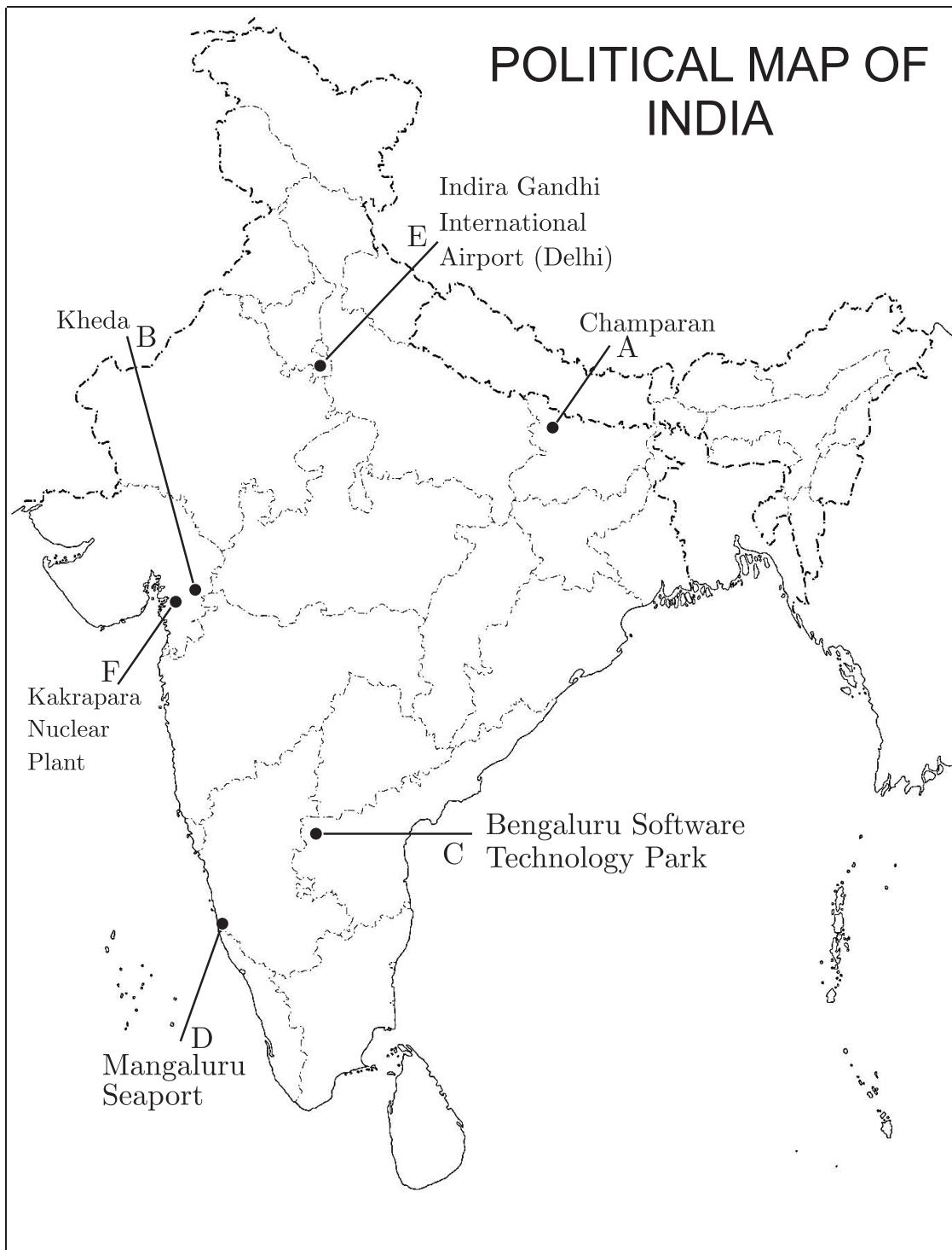
- A. Movement of Indigo Planters  
B. Peasant Satyagraha



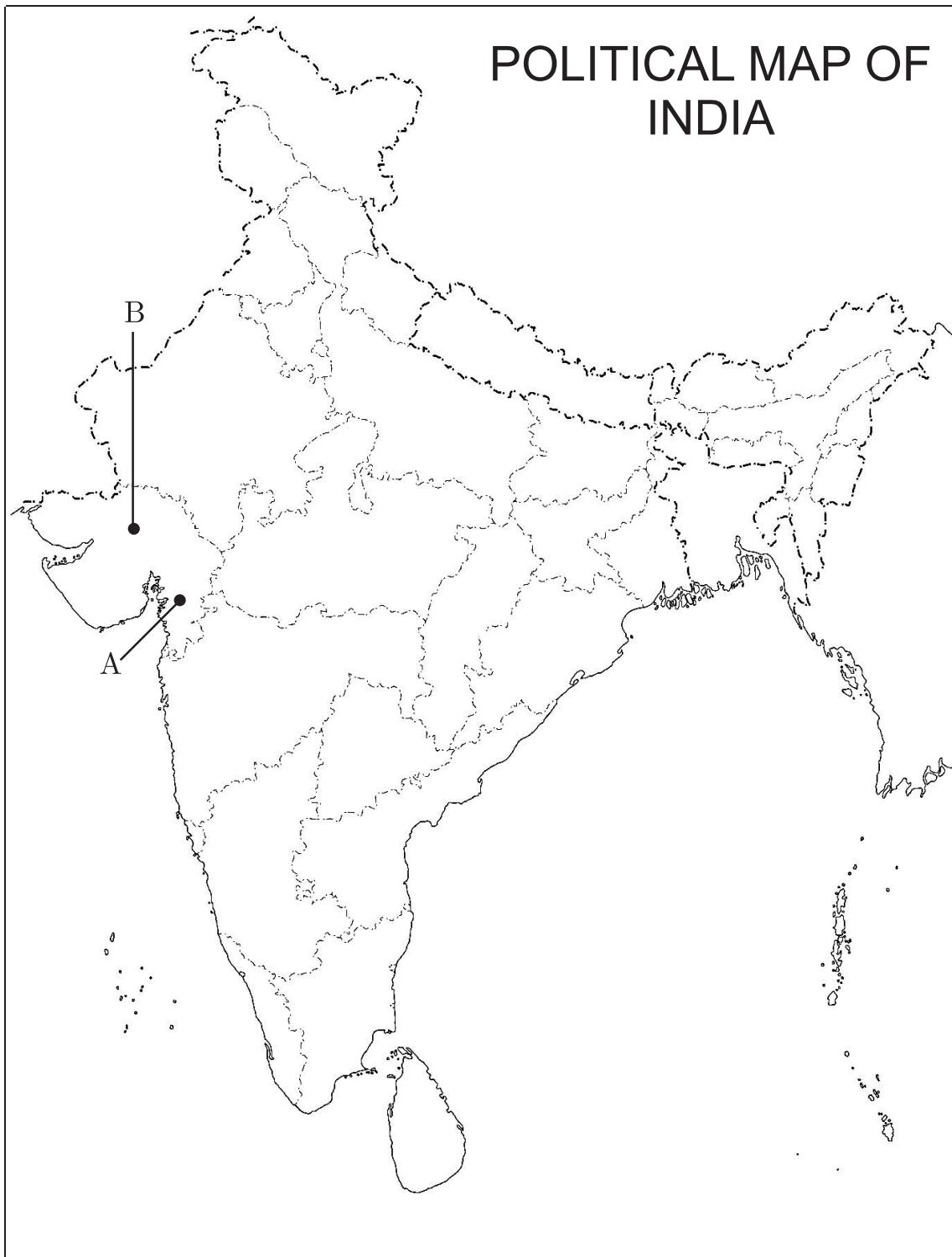
(b) On the same map of India, locate and label any three among the following with suitable symbols.

- C. Bengaluru Software Technology Park
- D. Mangaluru Seaport
- E. Indira Gandhi International Airport (Delhi)
- F. Kakrapara Nuclear Plant

Ans :



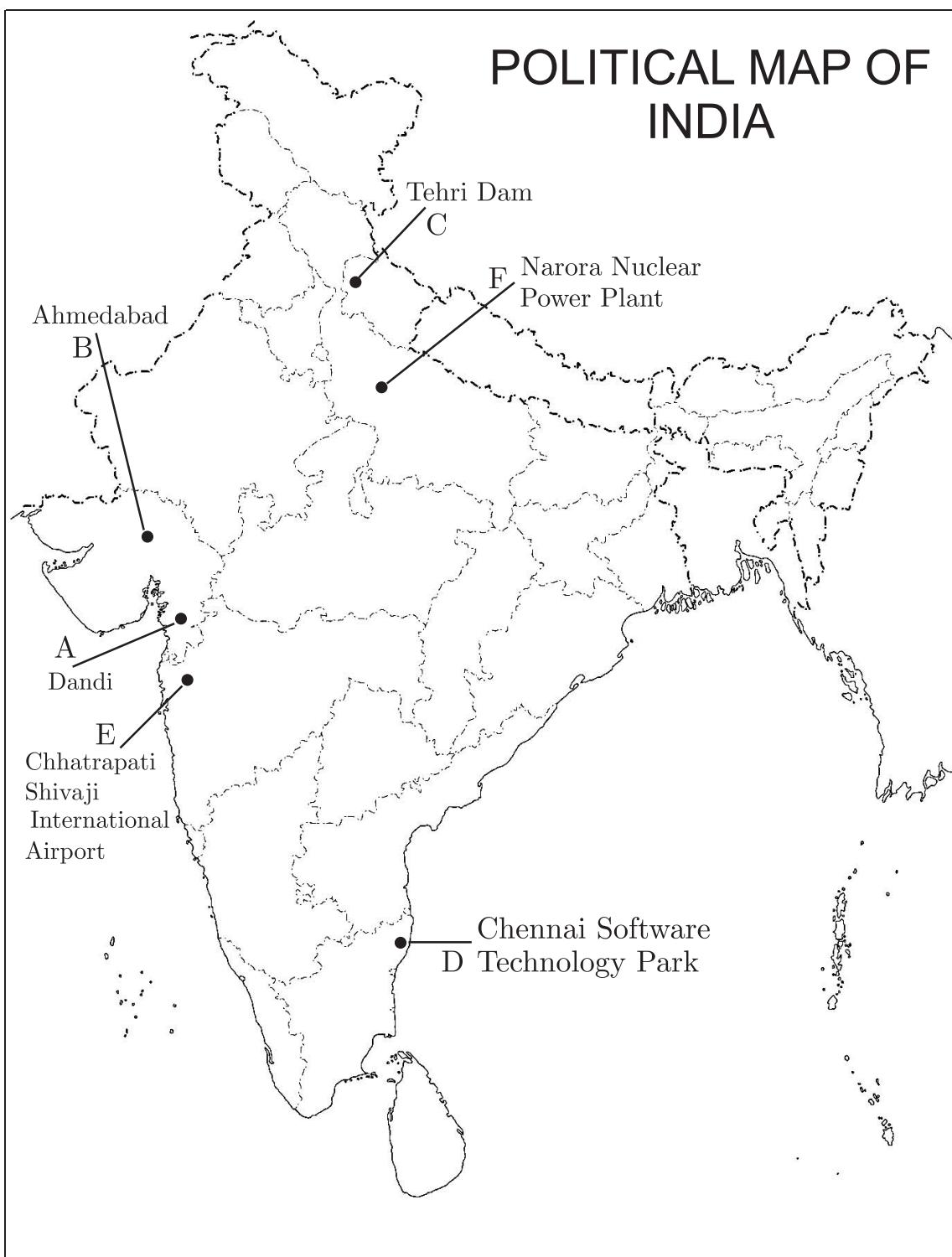
5. (a) Two places A and B are marked on that given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- A. A place where Civil Disobedience Movement started.  
B. A place where Gandhiji went to organise a Satyagraha Movement amongst cotton mill workers.



(b) On the same map of India, locate and label any three among the following with symbol.

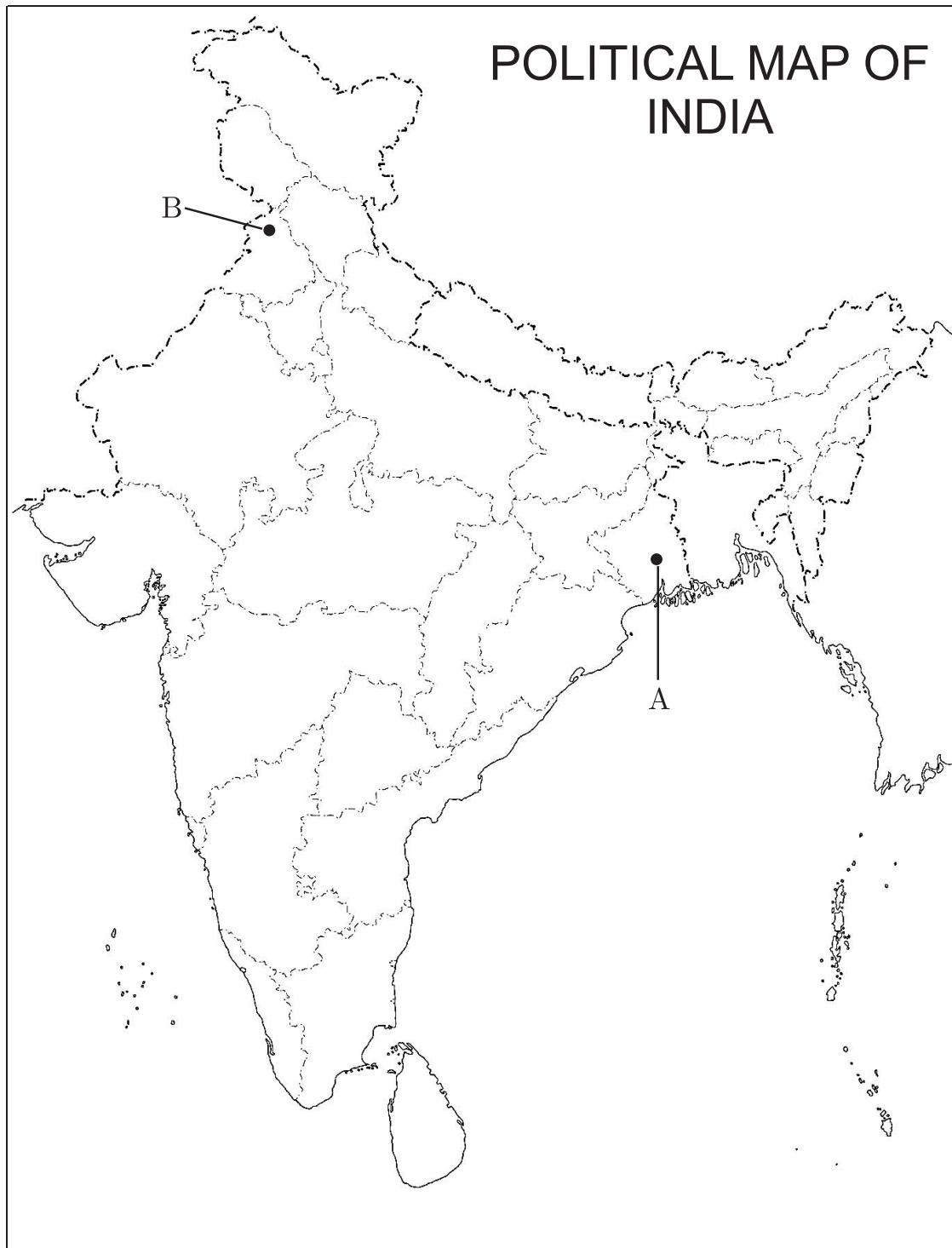
- C. Tehri Dam
- D. Chennai Software Technology Park
- E. Chhatrapati Shivaji International Airport
- F. Narora Nuclear Power Plant

Ans :



6. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.

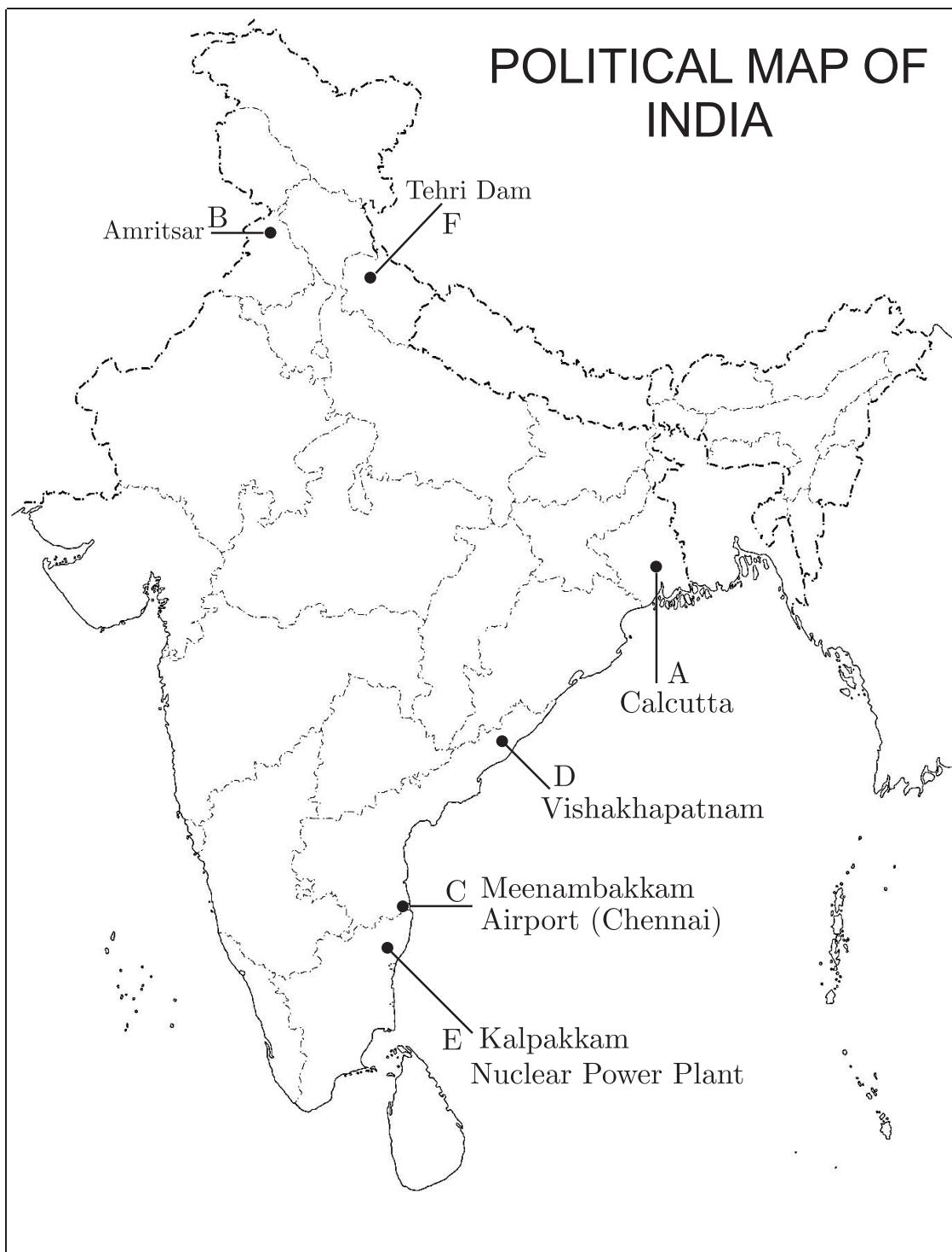
- A. The place where the Indian National Congress Session was held in September 1920.
- B. The place where the Jallianwala Bagh incident took place.



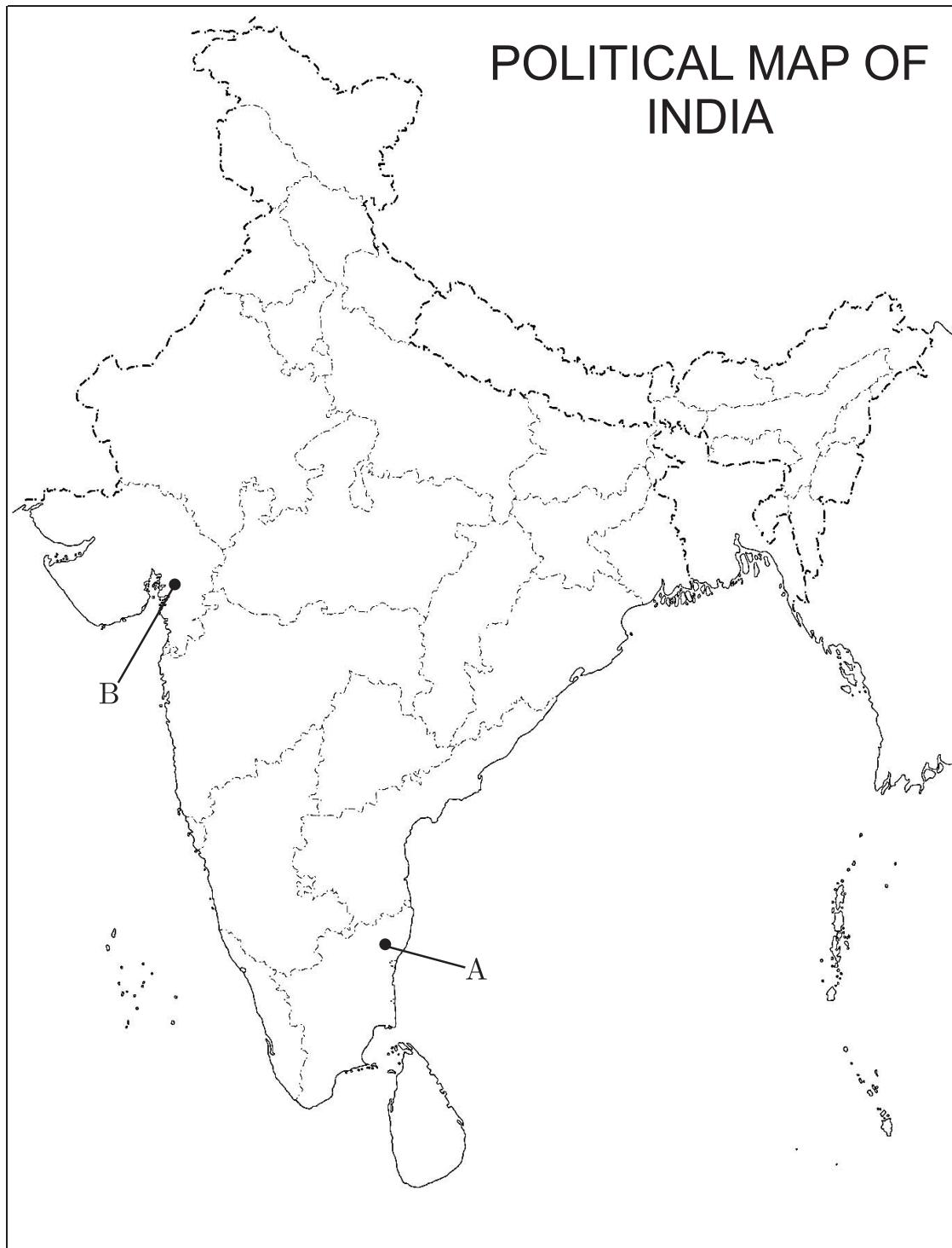
(b) On the same outline map of India, locate any three features of the following with suitable symbols.

- C. Meenambakkam Airport (Chennai)
- D. A major port in Andhra Pradesh
- E. A Nuclear Power Plant
- F. Tehri Dam

Ans :



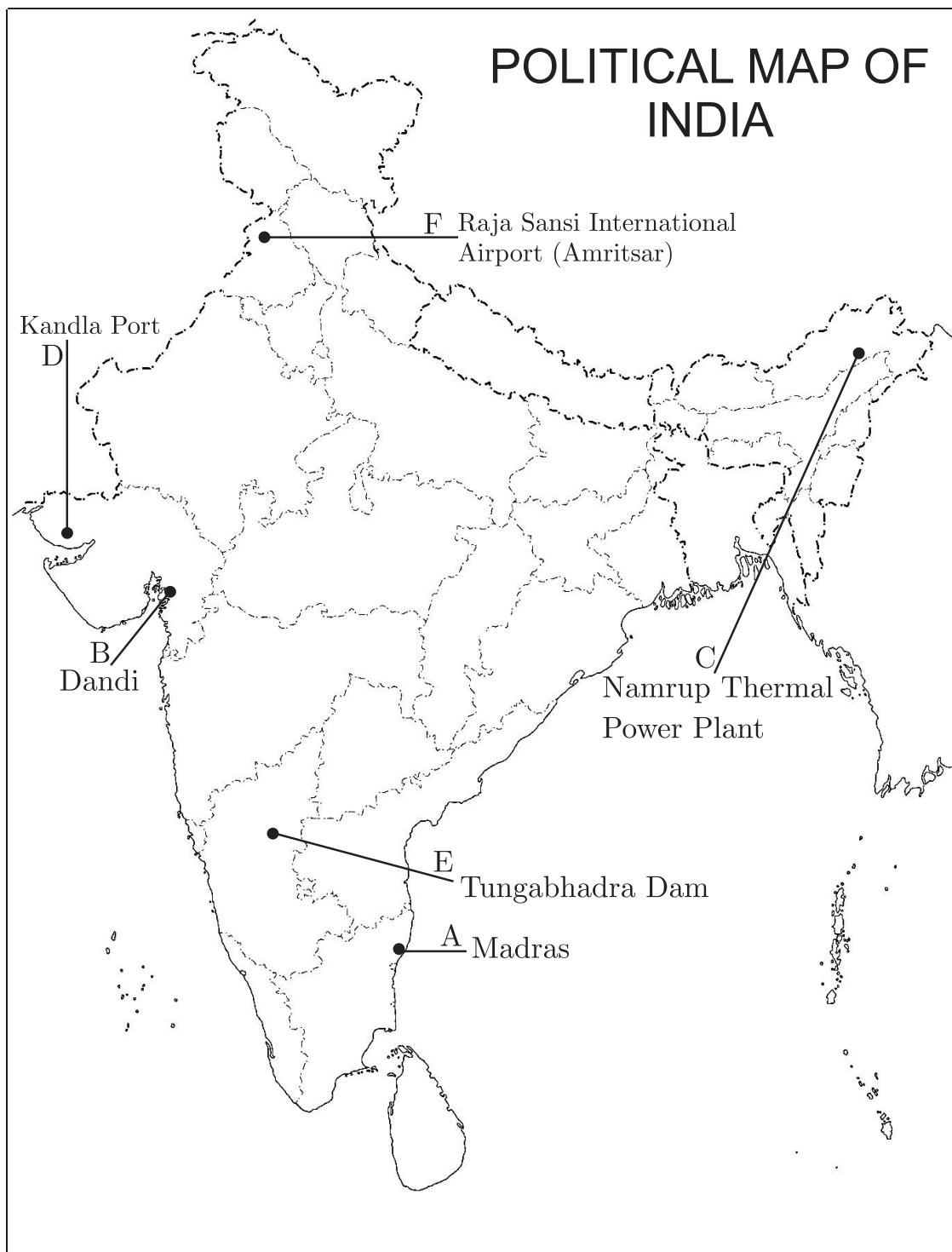
7. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- A. The location of Indian National Congress Session of 1927.  
B. The place where the Civil Disobedience Movement started.



(b) On the same political map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

- C. Namrup Thermal Power Plant
- D. Kandla Port
- E. Tungabhadra Dam
- F. Raja Sansi International Airport

Ans :



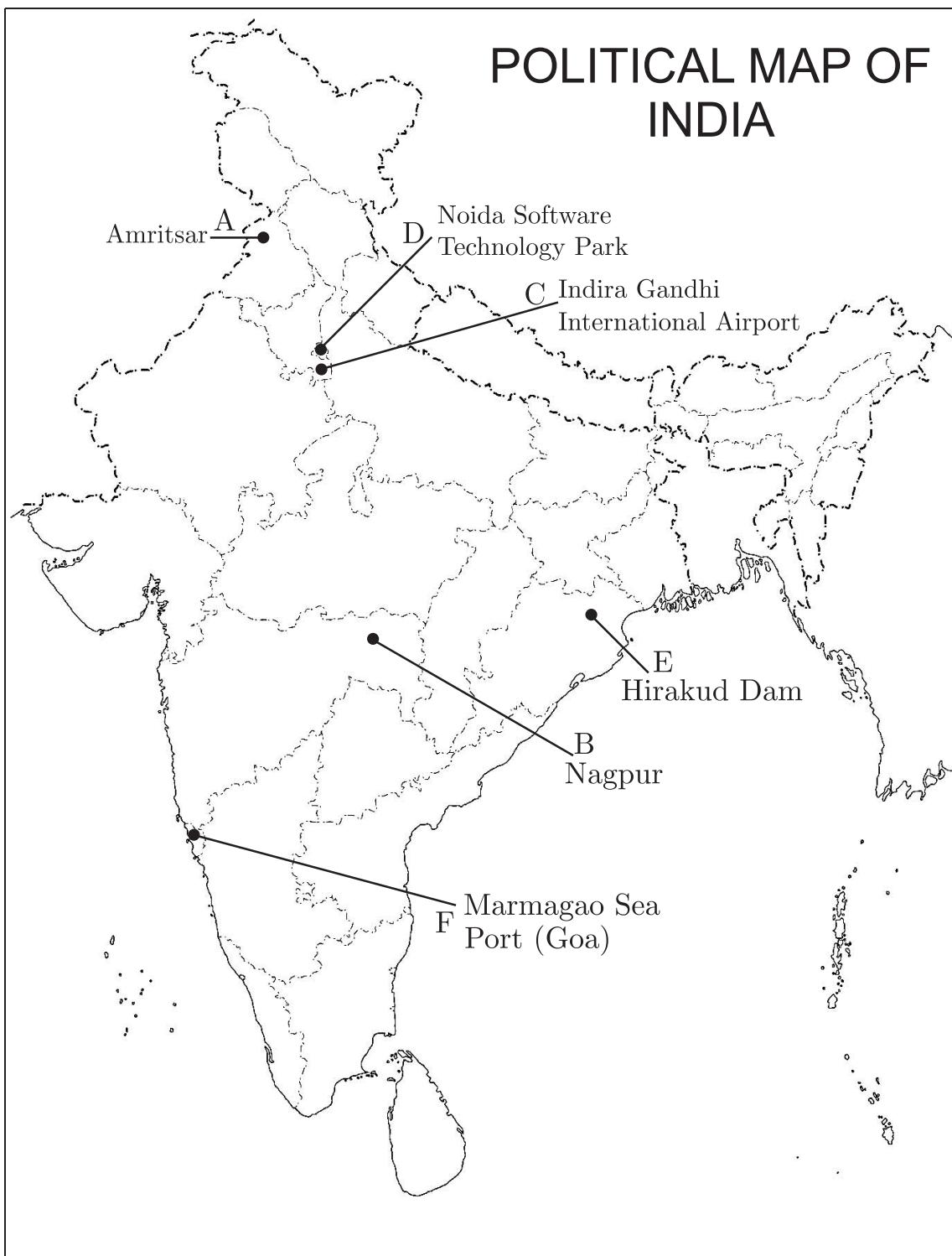
8. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- A. The place associated with the Jallianwala Bagh incident.  
B. The place where the December 1920 session of the Indian National Congress took place.



(b) On the outline map of India, mark and locate the following with suitable symbols.

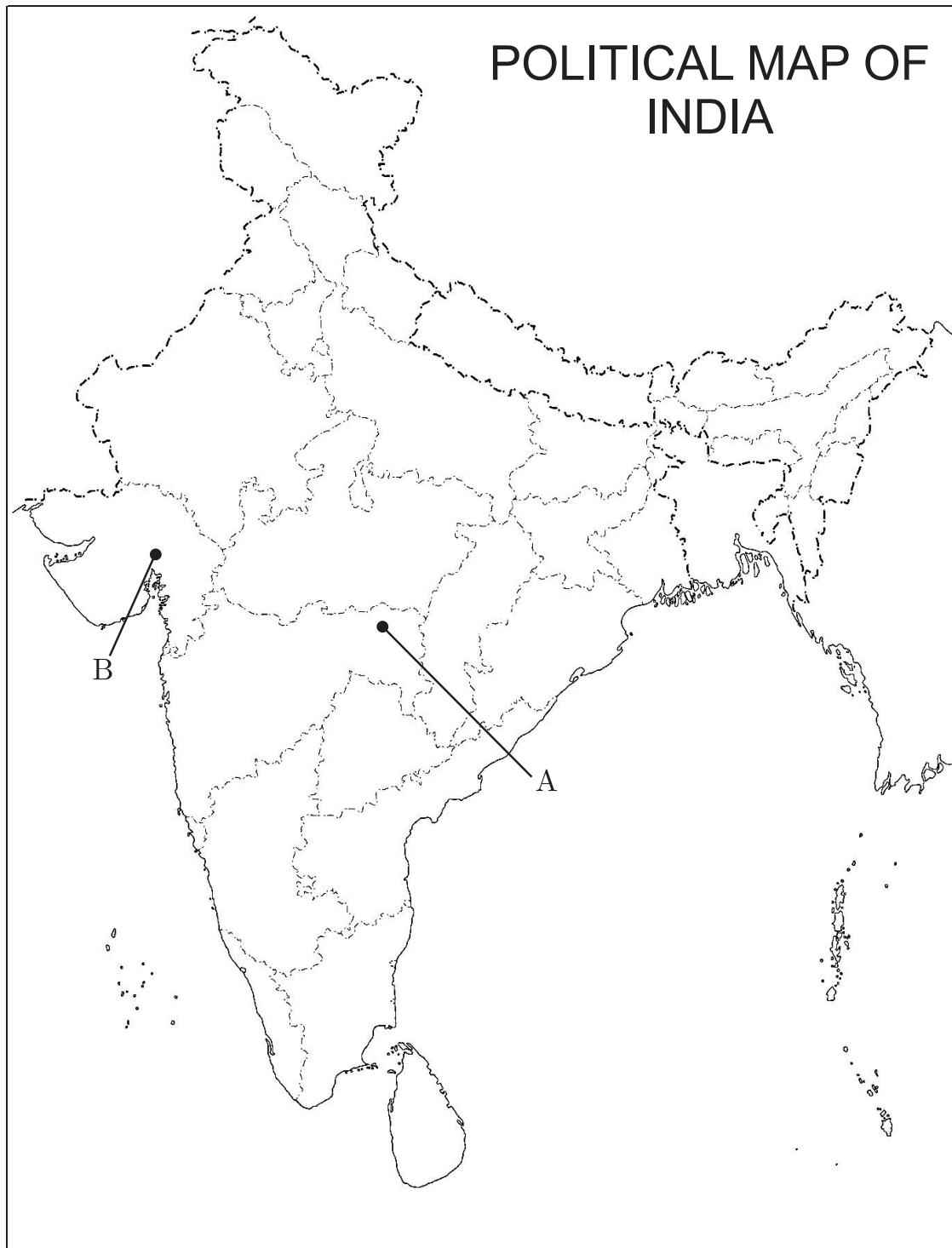
- C. An airport
- D. A software technology park
- E. A dam
- F. A seaport in Goa

Ans :



9. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.

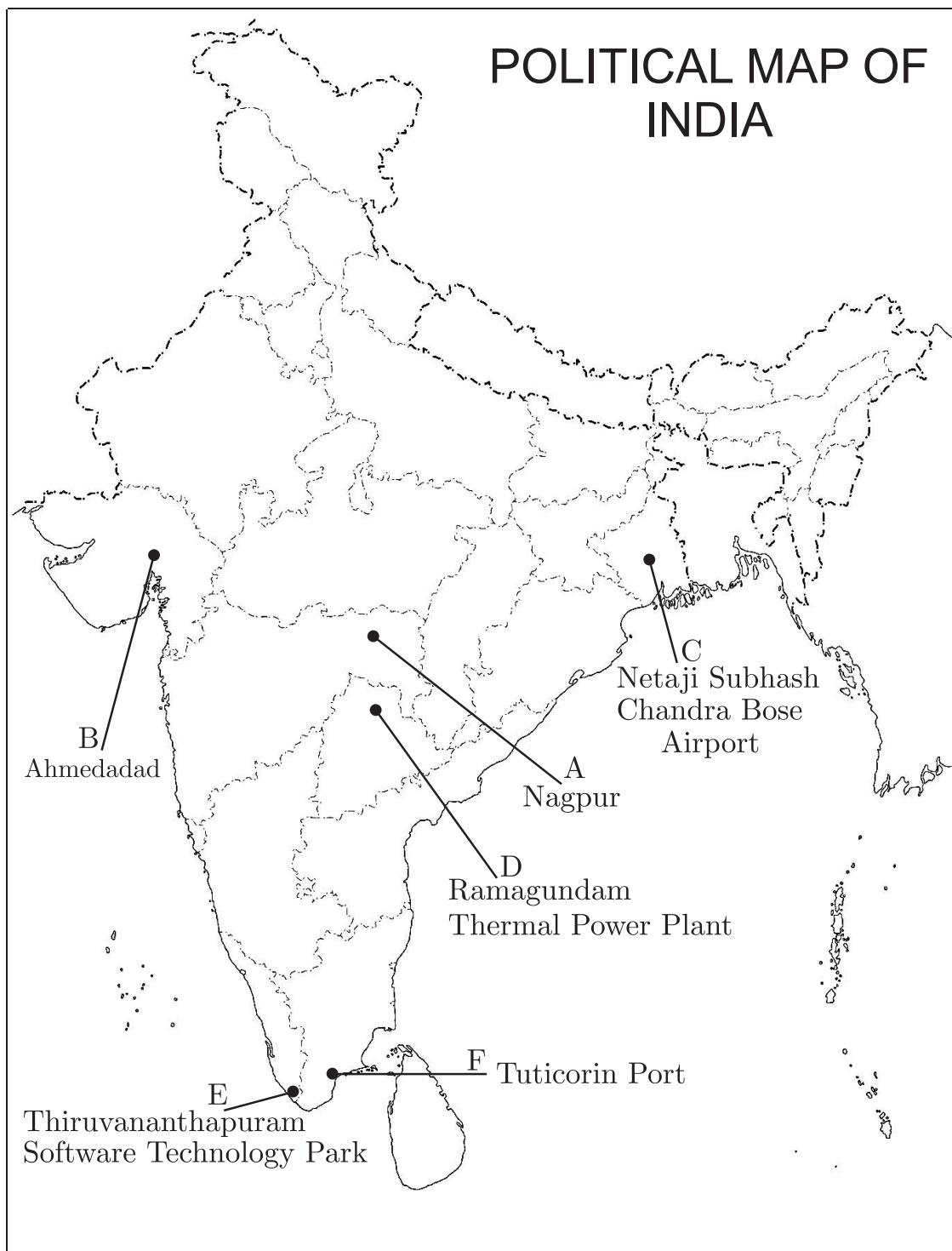
- A. The place where the Indian National Congress Session was held in December 1920.
- B. The place where the Cotton Mill Workers Satyagraha was conducted.



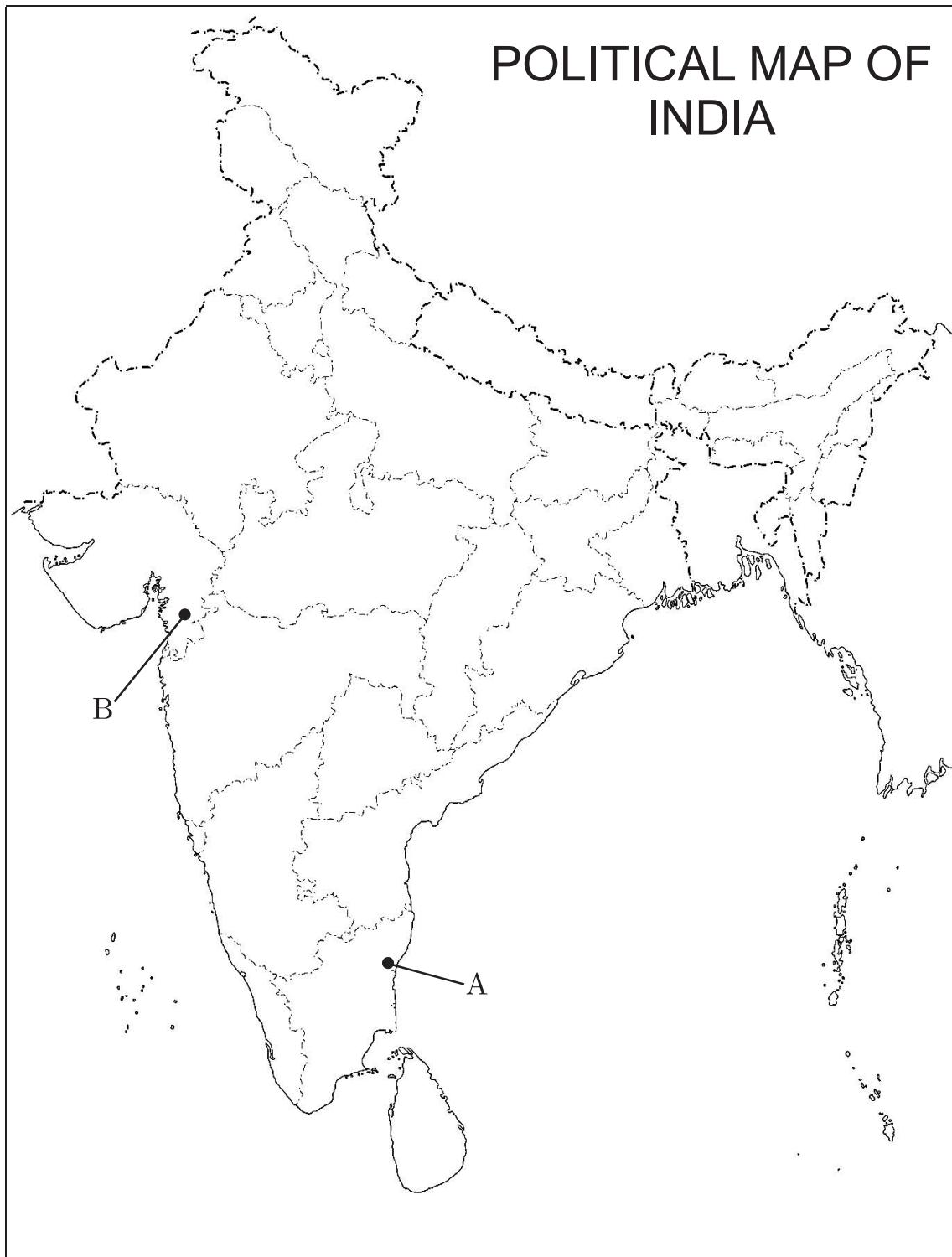
(b) On the same outline map of India, locate any three features of the following with suitable symbols.

- C. An Airport in West Bengal
- D. Ramagundam Thermal Power Plant
- E. Thiruvananthapuram Software Technology Park
- F. Tuticorin Port

Ans :



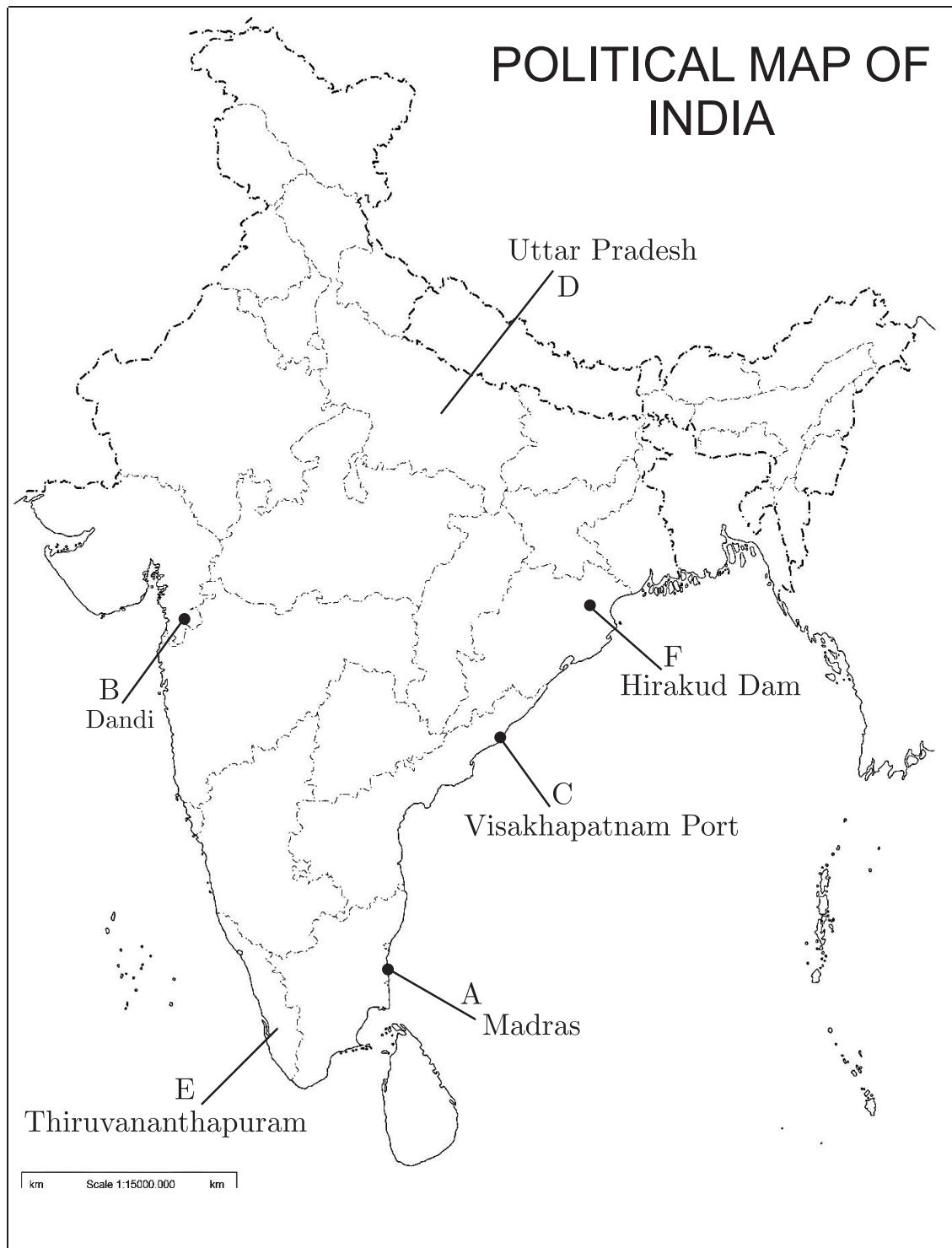
10. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- A. The location of the Indian National Congress Session of 1927.  
B. A place where Gandhiji ceremonially violated the Salt Law and manufactured salt by boiling salt sea water.



(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

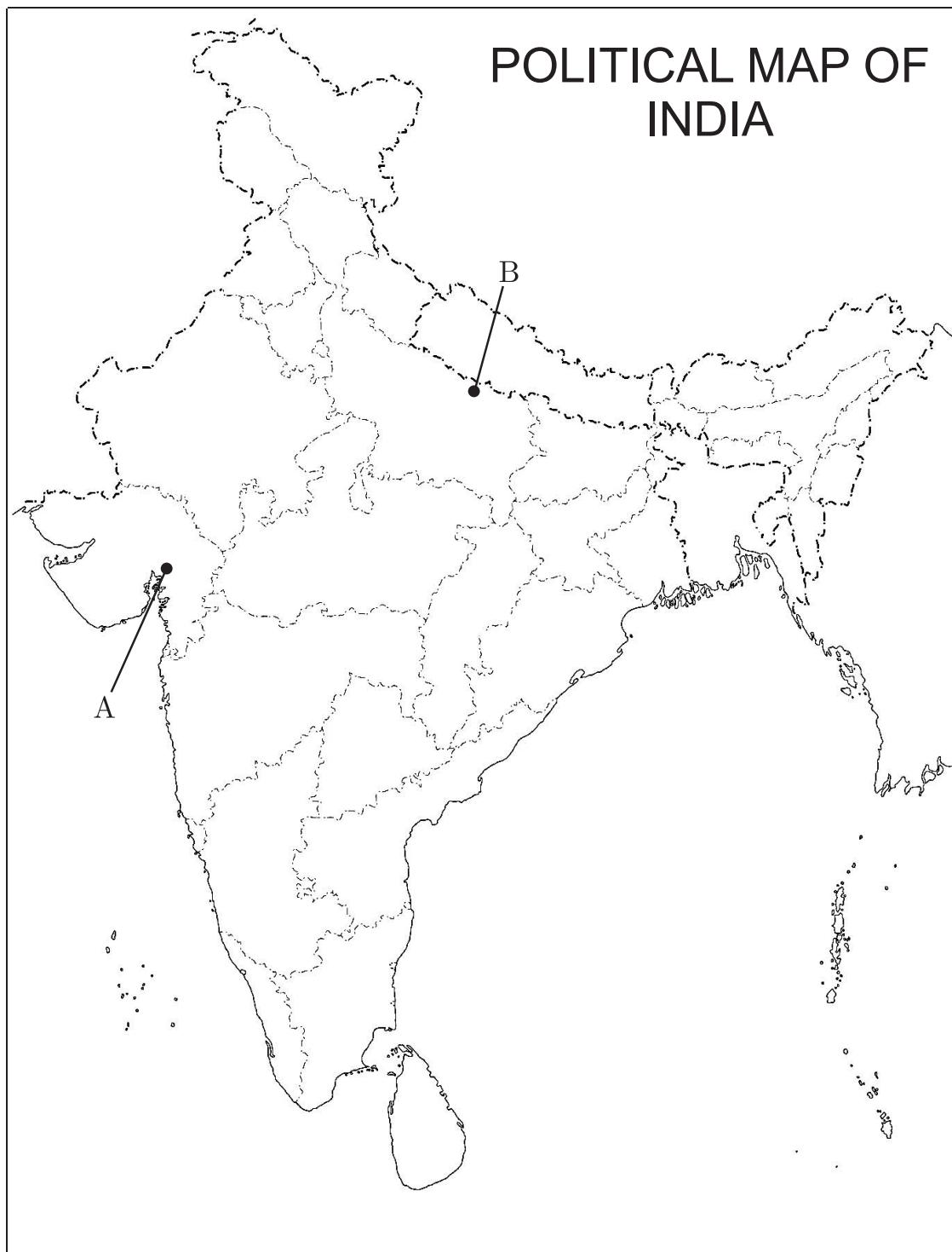
- C. A major port on the South-East coast of India.
- D. A major sugarcane producing state.
- E. A Software Technology Park
- F. A major dam in Odisha.

Ans :



11. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.

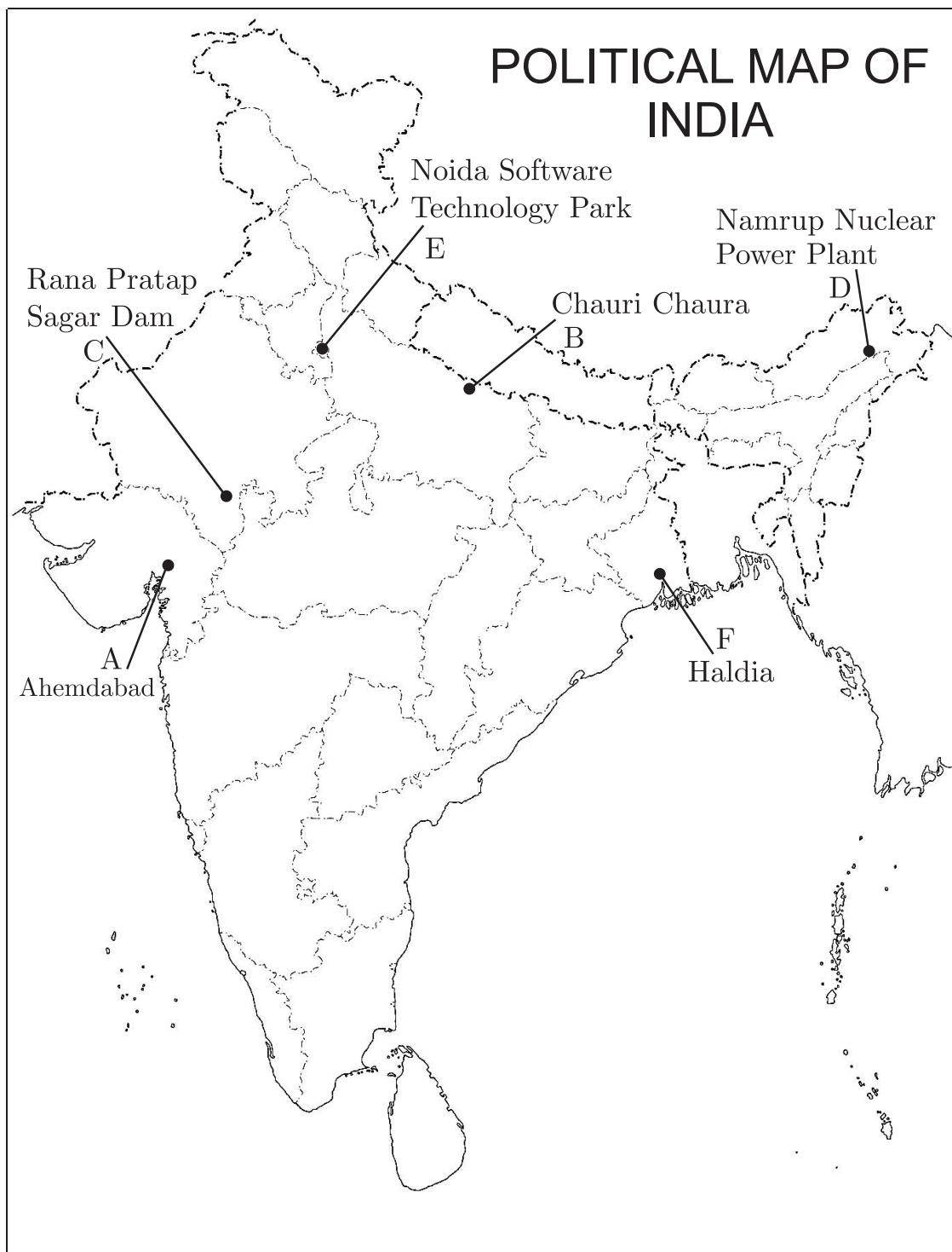
- A. The place associated with the cotton Mill's worker's Satyagraha
- B. The place where an incident occurred due to which Mahatma Gandhi called off the Non-Cooperation Movement.



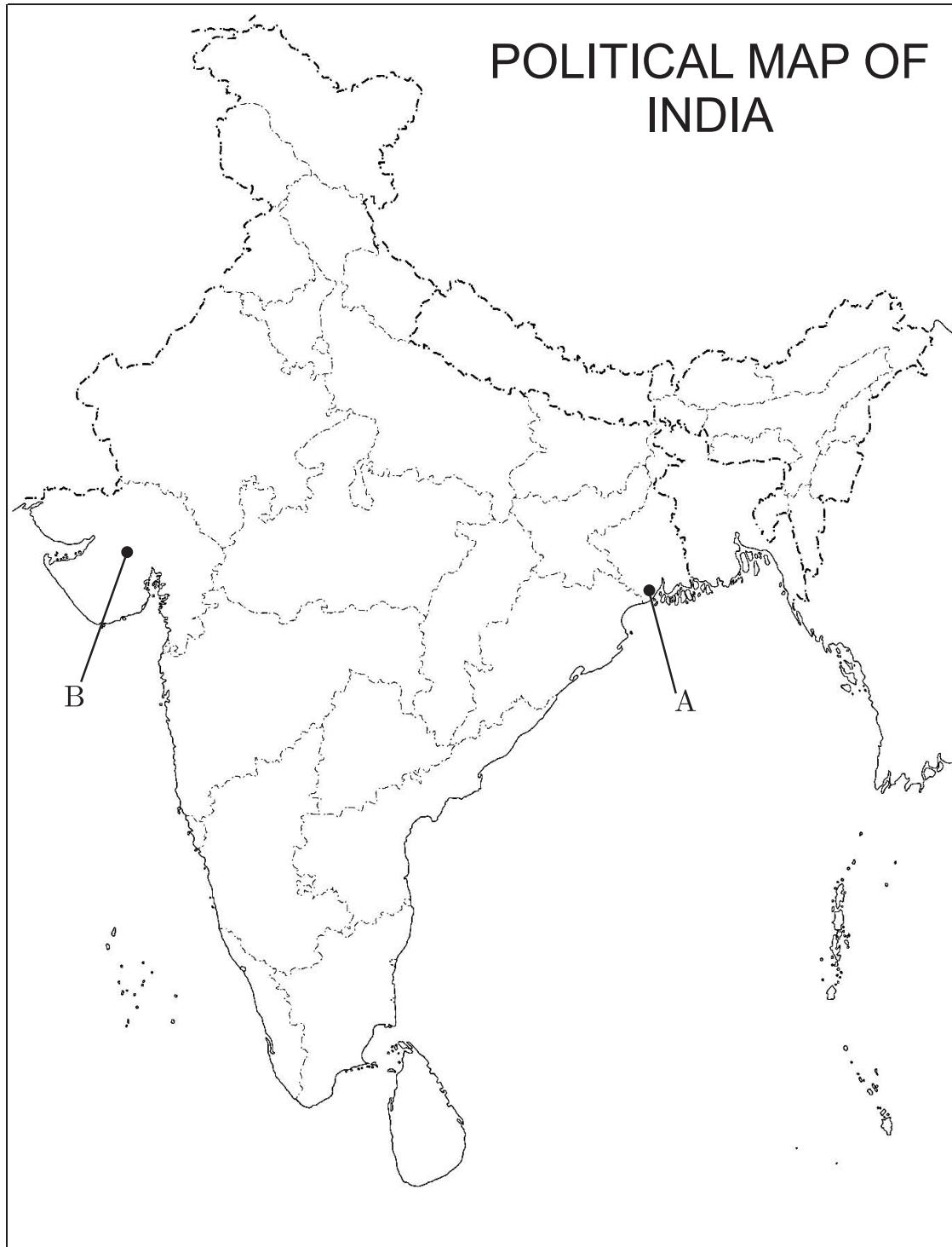
(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

- C. A dam in Rajasthan
- D. Namrup Nuclear Power Plant
- E. A Software Technology Park in Uttar Pradesh
- F. A Seaport in West Bengal

Ans :



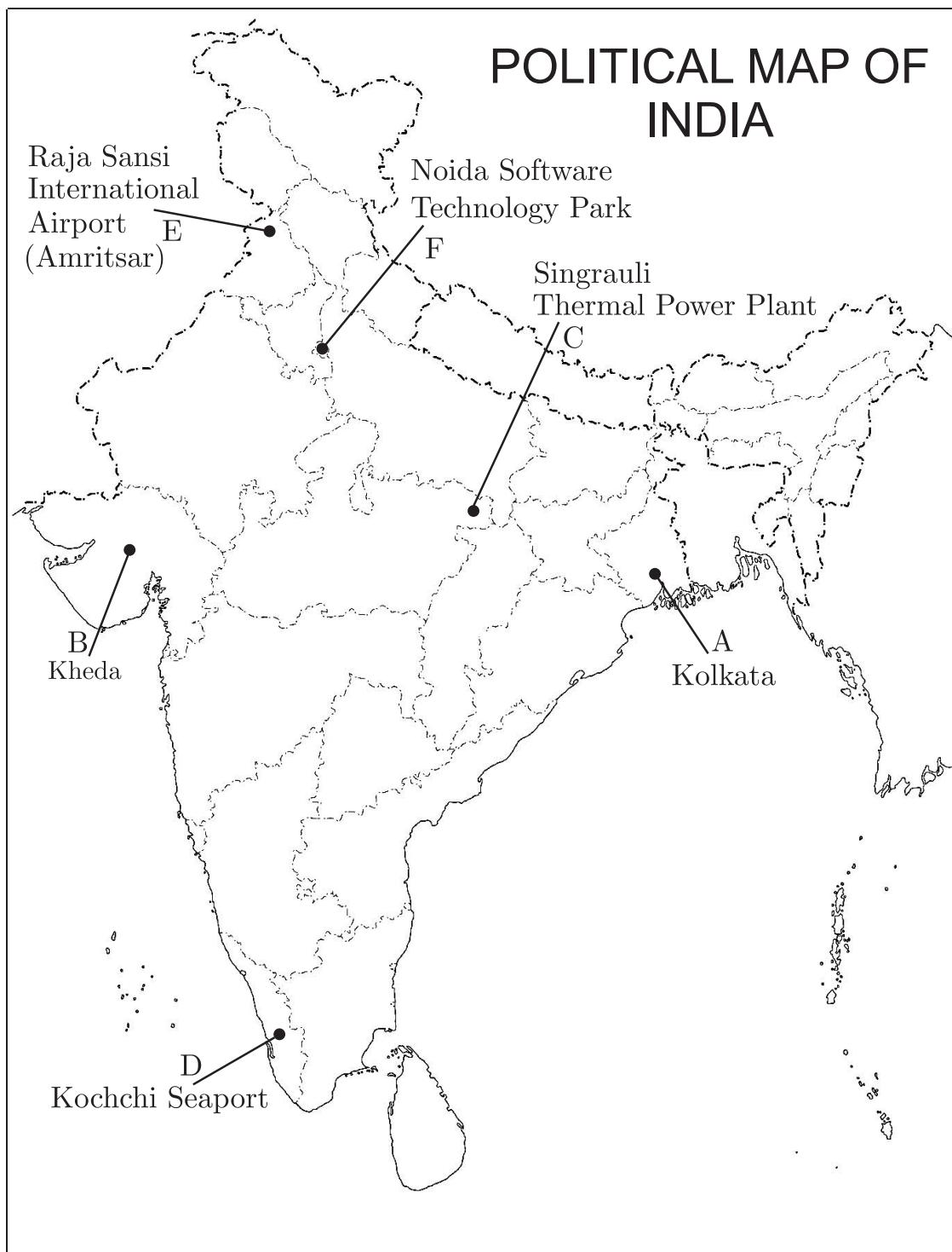
12. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.
- A. The place where Congress Session was held in September 1920.  
B. A place associated with Peasant Satyagraha.



(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

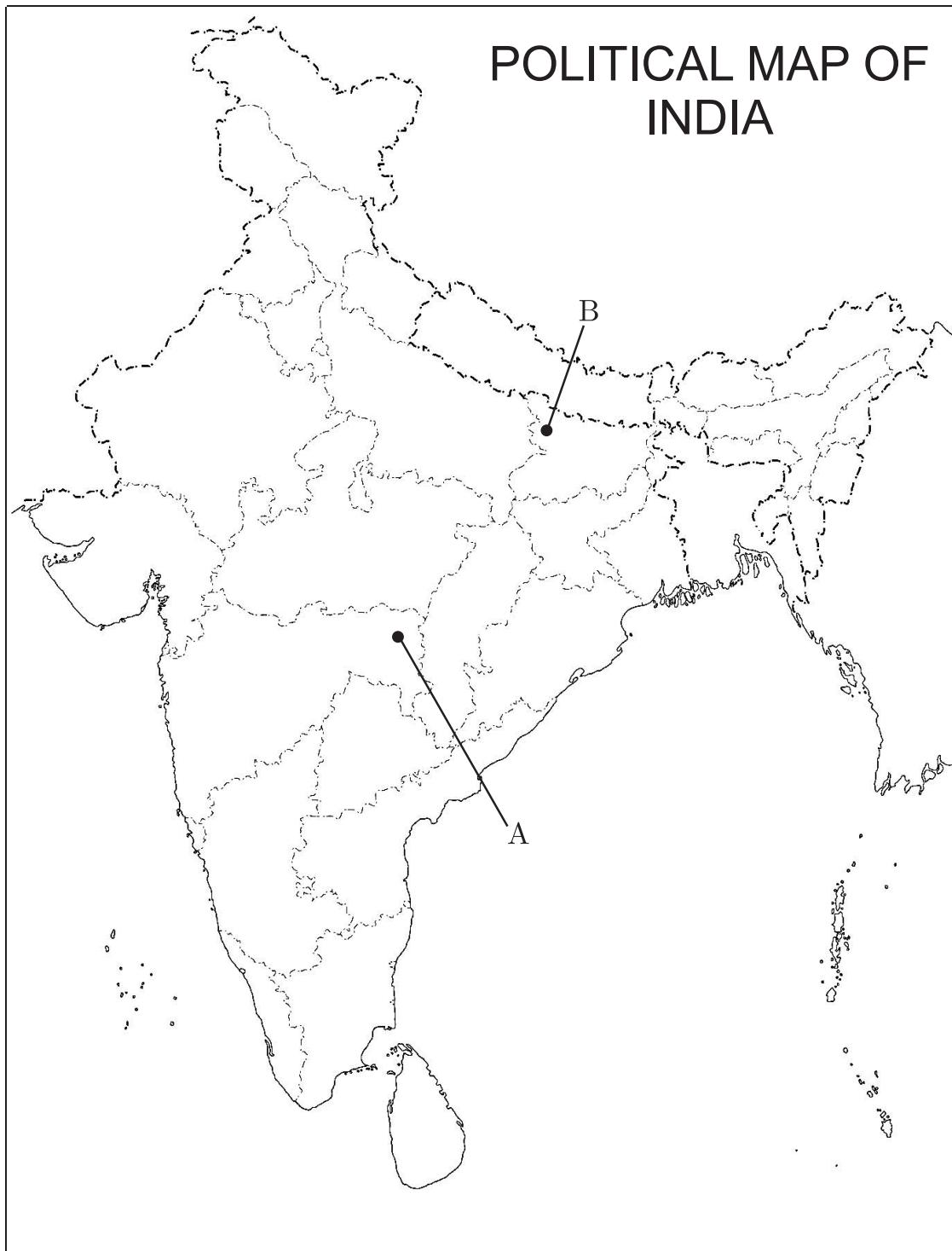
- C. Singrauli Thermal Power Plant
- D. A Major Seaport in Kerala
- E. An International Airport in Punjab
- F. A Software Technology Park in Uttar Pradesh.

Ans :



13. (a) Two places A and B are marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them. Identify the following features marked on the map.

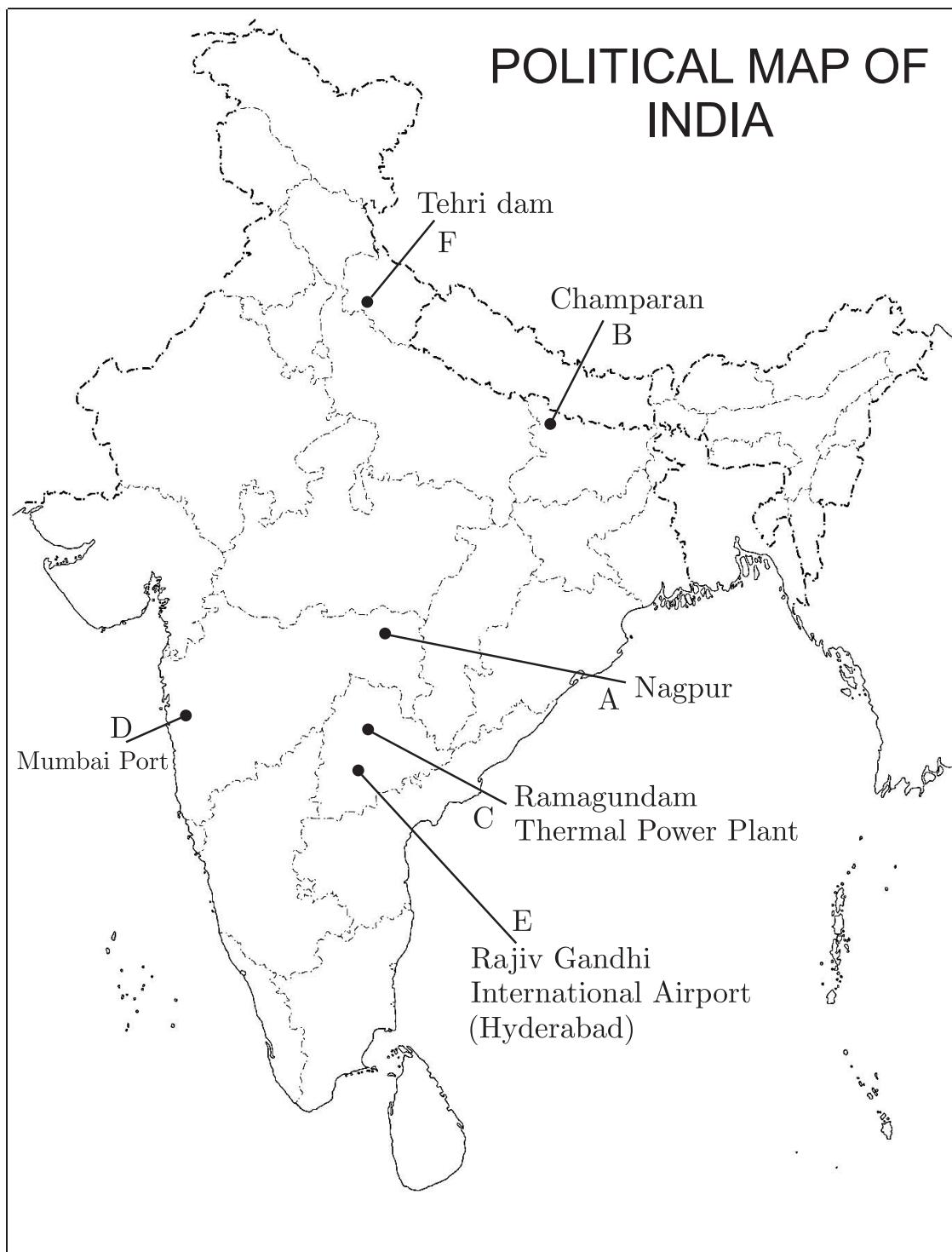
- A. The place where the Congress Session adopted the Non-Cooperation Programme.
- B. The place where the Movement of Indigo Planters took place.



(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

- C. Rarnagundam Thermal Power Plant
- D. Mumbai Port
- E. Hyderabad International Airport
- F. Tehri Dam

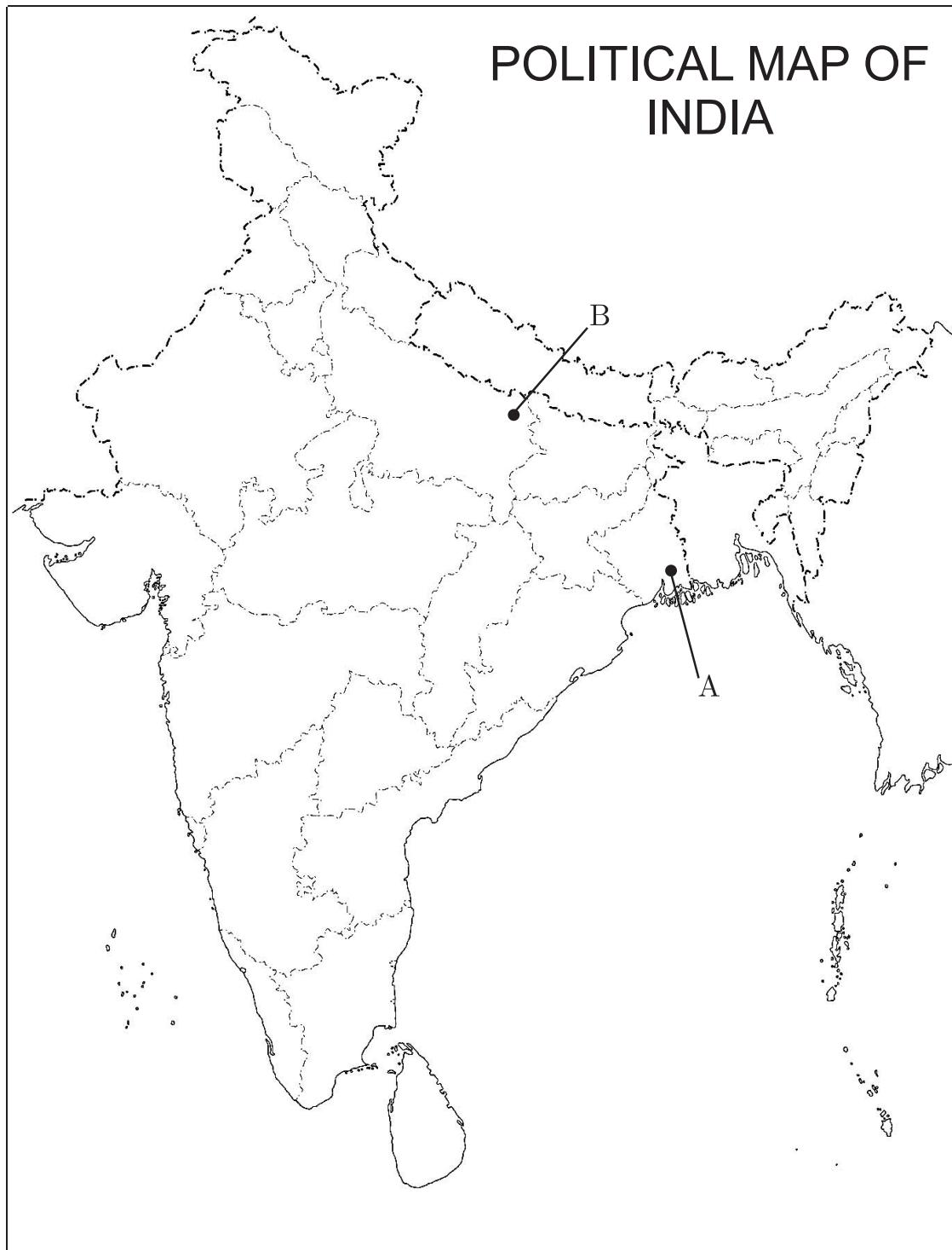
Ans :



14. (a) Two places A and B have been marked on the outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the line drawn near them.

A. The place associated with the Congress session of September 1920.

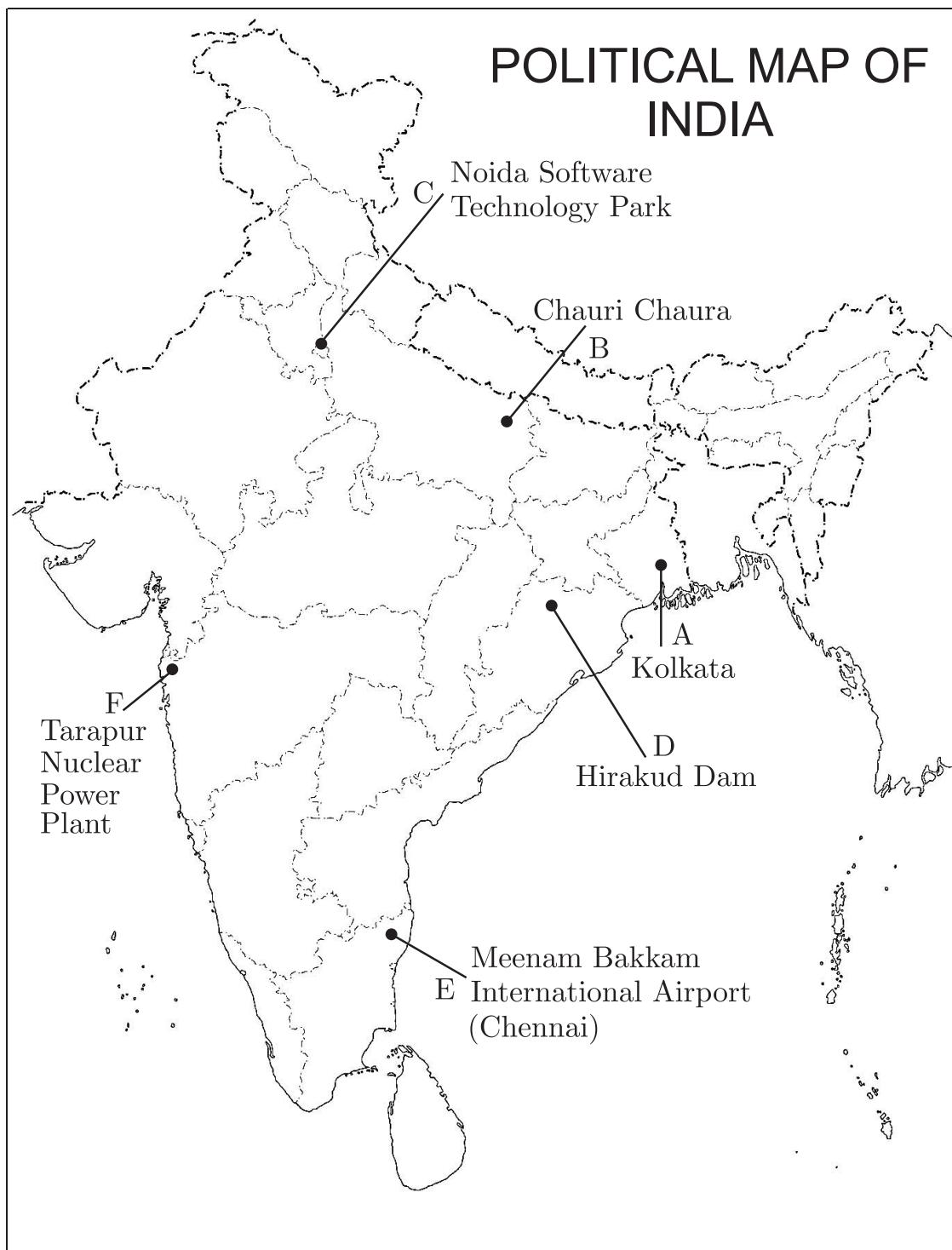
B. The place where a violent incident caused Mahatma Gandhi to call off the Non-Cooperation Movement.



(b) On the same outline map of India label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

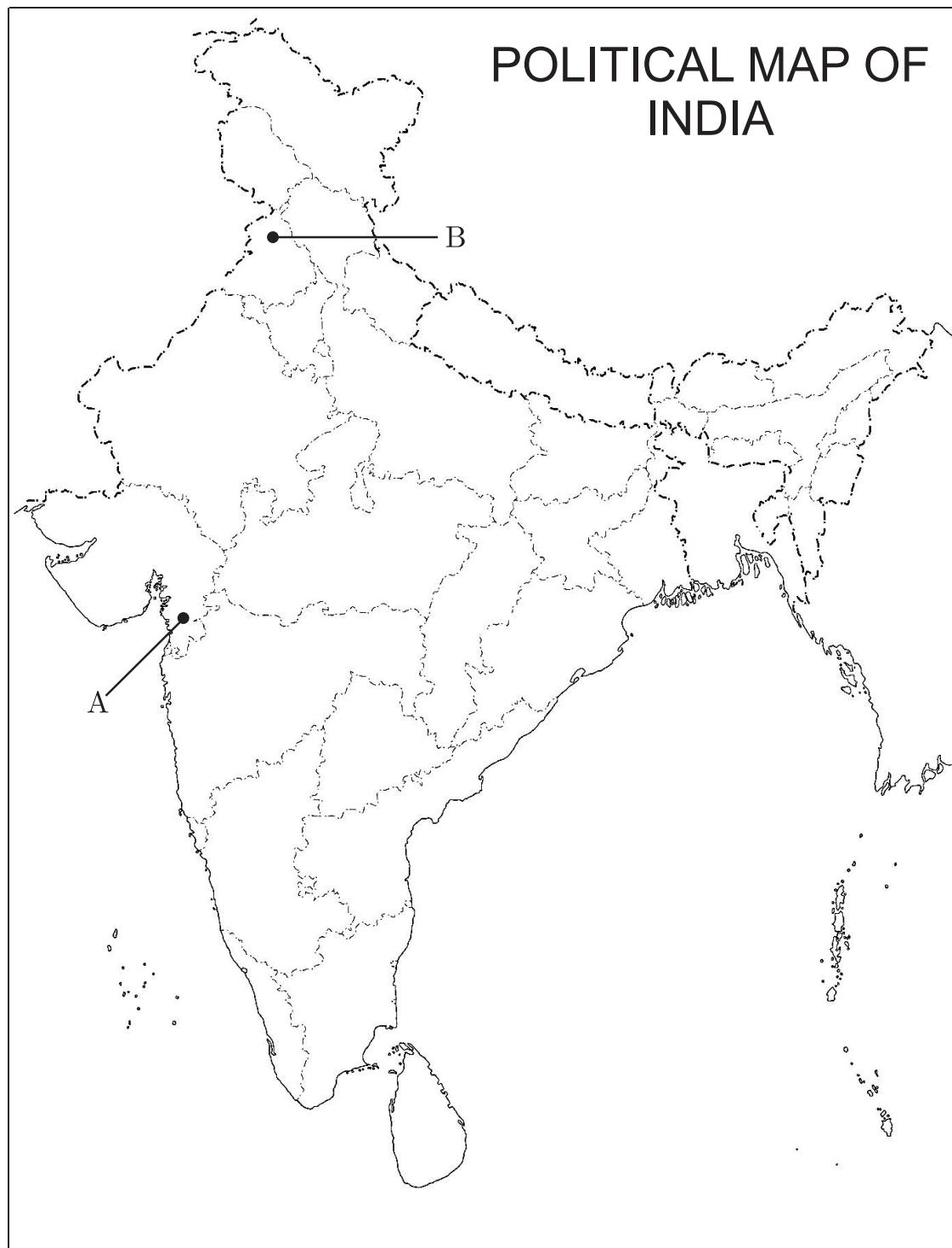
- C. Noida Software Technology Park
- D. A dam located in Mahanadi river
- E. An airport in Chennai
- F. Tarapur nuclear power plant

Ans :



15. (a) Two places A and B have been marked on the given outline map of India. Identify them and write their correct names on the lines drawn near them.

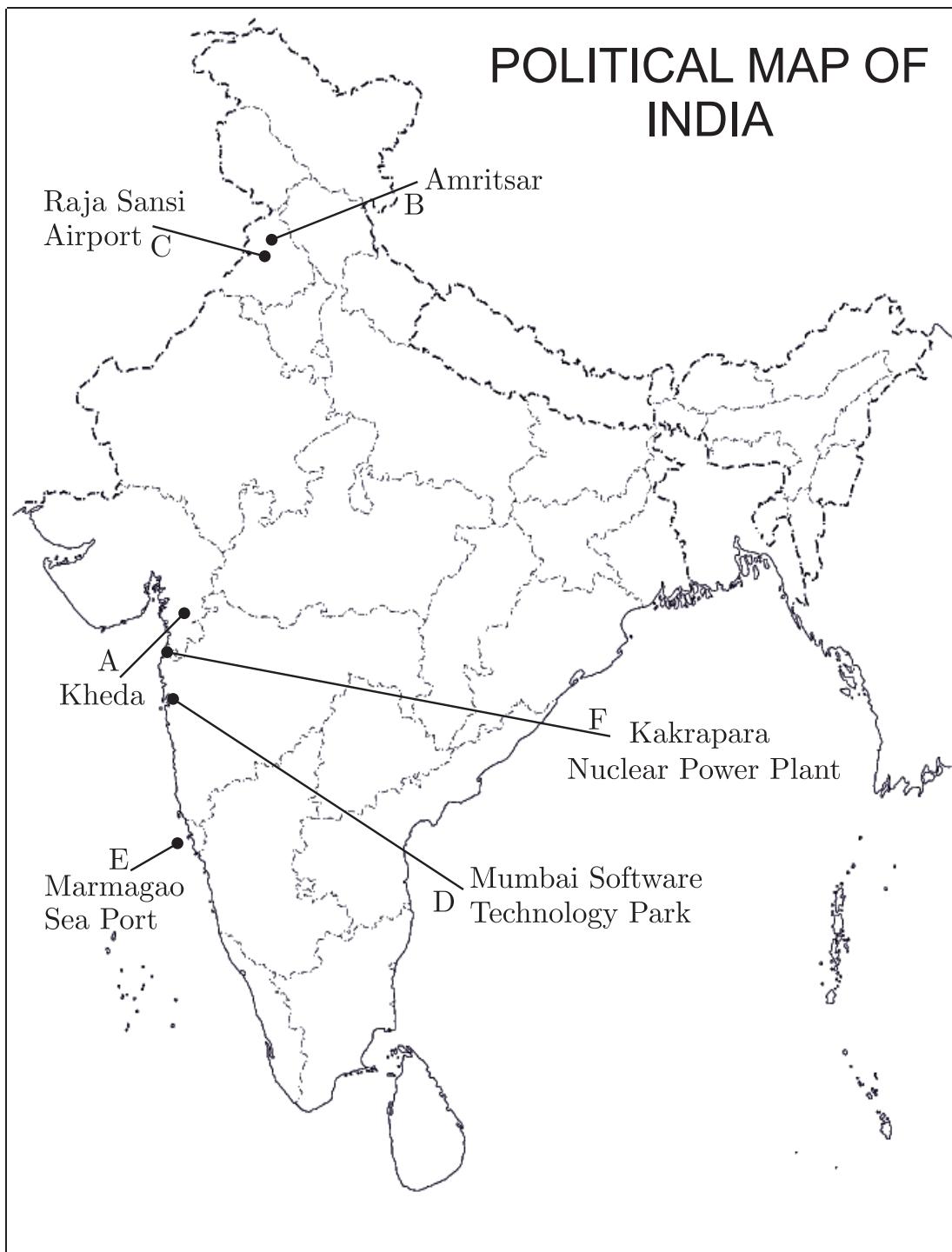
- A. The place where Peasant Satyagraha took place.
- B. The place associated with Jallianwala Bagh incident.



(b) On the same outline map of India, locate and label any three of the following with suitable symbols.

- C. Airport in Punjab
- D. Software Technology Park in Maharashtra
- E. Marmagao Sea Port
- F. Kakrapara Nuclear Power Plant

Ans :



**CBSE CLASS 10  
SOCIAL SCIENCE**

**CHAPTERWISE QUESTION BANK  
20 Years (2024-2005) Solved Exam Papers**

**TOTAL 63 PAPERS**

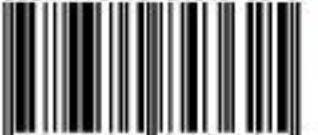
Fully Solved Questions of All India, Delhi,  
Foreign, SQP and Compartment Papers

Available all Subjects for all Class on **AMAZON**

**NODIA PRESS**

125, Sector 6, Vidyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039

ISBN 978-93-84843-62-5



9 789384 843625 >

**MRP 630.00**